37
Revised as of July 1, 2000

Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

Containing a Codification of documents of general applicability and future effect

As of July 1, 2000

With Ancillaries

Published by
Office of the Federal Register
National Archives and Records Administration

As a Special Edition of the Federal Register
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Title 37:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter I—Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter II—Copyright Office, Library of Congress</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter IV—Assistant Secretary for Technology Policy, Department of Commerce</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter V—Under Secretary for Technology, Department of Commerce</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>501</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Finding Aids:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>567</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table of CFR Titles and Chapters</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>569</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>587</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List of CFR Sections Affected</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cite this Code: CFR

To cite the regulations in this volume use title, part and section number. Thus, 37 CFR 1.1 refers to title 37, part 1, section 1.
Explanation

The Code of Federal Regulations is a codification of the general and permanent rules published in the Federal Register by the Executive departments and agencies of the Federal Government. The Code is divided into 50 titles which represent broad areas subject to Federal regulation. Each title is divided into chapters which usually bear the name of the issuing agency. Each chapter is further subdivided into parts covering specific regulatory areas.

Each volume of the Code is revised at least once each calendar year and issued on a quarterly basis approximately as follows:

- Title 1 through Title 16 ..............................................................as of January 1
- Title 17 through Title 27 .................................................................as of April 1
- Title 28 through Title 41 .............................................................as of July 1
- Title 42 through Title 50 .............................................................as of October 1

The appropriate revision date is printed on the cover of each volume.

LEGAL STATUS

The contents of the Federal Register are required to be judicially noticed (44 U.S.C. 1507). The Code of Federal Regulations is prima facie evidence of the text of the original documents (44 U.S.C. 1510).

HOW TO USE THE CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

The Code of Federal Regulations is kept up to date by the individual issues of the Federal Register. These two publications must be used together to determine the latest version of any given rule.

To determine whether a Code volume has been amended since its revision date (in this case, July 1, 2000), consult the “List of CFR Sections Affected (LSA),” which is issued monthly, and the “Cumulative List of Parts Affected,” which appears in the Reader Aids section of the daily Federal Register. These two lists will identify the Federal Register page number of the latest amendment of any given rule.

EFFECTIVE AND EXPIRATION DATES

Each volume of the Code contains amendments published in the Federal Register since the last revision of that volume of the Code. Source citations for the regulations are referred to by volume number and page number of the Federal Register and date of publication. Publication dates and effective dates are usually not the same and care must be exercised by the user in determining the actual effective date. In instances where the effective date is beyond the cutoff date for the Code a note has been inserted to reflect the future effective date. In those instances where a regulation published in the Federal Register states a date certain for expiration, an appropriate note will be inserted following the text.

OMB CONTROL NUMBERS

The Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96-511) requires Federal agencies to display an OMB control number with their information collection request.
Many agencies have begun publishing numerous OMB control numbers as amendments to existing regulations in the CFR. These OMB numbers are placed as close as possible to the applicable recordkeeping or reporting requirements.

**OBSOLETE PROVISIONS**

Provisions that become obsolete before the revision date stated on the cover of each volume are not carried. Code users may find the text of provisions in effect on a given date in the past by using the appropriate numerical list of sections affected. For the period before January 1, 1986, consult either the List of CFR Sections Affected, 1949-1963, 1964-1972, or 1973-1985, published in seven separate volumes. For the period beginning January 1, 1986, a “List of CFR Sections Affected” is published at the end of each CFR volume.

**INCLUSION BY REFERENCE**

Incorporation by reference was established by statute and allows Federal agencies to meet the requirement to publish regulations in the Federal Register by referring to materials already published elsewhere. For an incorporation to be valid, the Director of the Federal Register must approve it. The legal effect of incorporation by reference is that the material is treated as if it were published in full in the Federal Register (5 U.S.C. 552(a)). This material, like any other properly issued regulation, has the force of law.

What is incorporation by reference? The Director of the Federal Register will approve an incorporation by reference only when the requirements of 1 CFR part 51 are met. Some of the elements on which approval is based are:

(a) The incorporation will substantially reduce the volume of material published in the Federal Register.

(b) The matter incorporated is in fact available to the extent necessary to afford fairness and uniformity in the administrative process.

(c) The incorporating document is drafted and submitted for publication in accordance with 1 CFR part 51.

Properly approved incorporations by reference in this volume are listed in the Finding Aids at the end of this volume.

What if the material incorporated by reference cannot be found? If you have any problem locating or obtaining a copy of material listed in the Finding Aids of this volume as an approved incorporation by reference, please contact the agency that issued the regulation containing that incorporation. If, after contacting the agency, you find the material is not available, please notify the Director of the Federal Register, National Archives and Records Administration, Washington DC 20408, or call (202) 523-4534.

**CFR INDEXES AND TABULAR GUIDES**

A subject index to the Code of Federal Regulations is contained in a separate volume, revised annually as of January 1, entitled CFR INDEX AND FINDING AIDS. This volume contains the Parallel Table of Statutory Authorities and Agency Rules (Table 1). A list of CFR titles, chapters, and parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are also included in this volume.

An index to the text of “Title 3—The President” is carried within that volume.

The Federal Register Index is issued monthly in cumulative form. This index is based on a consolidation of the “Contents” entries in the daily Federal Register.

A List of CFR Sections Affected (LSA) is published monthly, keyed to the revision dates of the 50 CFR titles.
REPUBLICATION OF MATERIAL

There are no restrictions on the republication of material appearing in the Code of Federal Regulations.

INQUIRIES

For a legal interpretation or explanation of any regulation in this volume, contact the issuing agency. The issuing agency's name appears at the top of odd-numbered pages.

For inquiries concerning CFR reference assistance, call 202-523-5227 or write to the Director, Office of the Federal Register, National Archives and Records Administration, Washington, DC 20408 or e-mail info@fedreg.nara.gov.

SALES

The Government Printing Office (GPO) processes all sales and distribution of the CFR. For payment by credit card, call 202-512-1800, M-F, 8 a.m. to 4 p.m. e.s.t. or fax your order to 202-512-2233, 24 hours a day. For payment by check, write to the Superintendent of Documents, Attn: New Orders, P.O. Box 371954, Pittsburgh, PA 15250-7954. For GPO Customer Service call 202-512-1803.

ELECTRONIC SERVICES


The Office of the Federal Register also offers a free service on the National Archives and Records Administration's (NARA) World Wide Web site for public law numbers, Federal Register finding aids, and related information. Connect to NARA's web site at www.nara.gov/fedreg. The NARA site also contains links to GPO Access.

RAYMOND A. MOSLEY,
Director,
Office of the Federal Register.

July 1, 2000.
THIS TITLE

Title 37—Patents, Trademarks and Copyrights is composed of one volume. The contents of this volume represent all current regulations codified under this title of the CFR as of July 1, 2000.

In this revision, the parts in chapter I, subchapter A are regrouped according to subject matter. All parts pertaining to patents—parts 1 and 5—appear sequentially. All parts pertaining to trademarks—parts 2 and 6—follow, also in sequence. Part 3 which pertains to both patents and trademarks follows part 1. Appropriate notes are inserted in the text to guide the user.

For this volume, Melanie L. Marcec was Chief Editor. The Code of Federal Regulations publication program is under the direction of Frances D. McDonald, assisted by Alomha S. Morris.
Would you like to know...

If any changes have been made to the Code of Federal Regulations or what documents have been published in the Federal Register without reading the Federal Register every day? If so, you may wish to subscribe to the LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected), the Federal Register Index, or both.

LSA
The LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected) is designed to lead users of the Code of Federal Regulations to amendatory actions published in the Federal Register. The LSA is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries indicate the nature of the changes—such as revised, removed, or corrected. $31 per year.

Federal Register Index
The index, covering the contents of the daily Federal Register, is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries are carried primarily under the names of the issuing agencies. Significant subjects are carried as cross-references. $28 per year.

A finding aid is included in each publication which lists Federal Register page numbers with the date of publication in the Federal Register.

Superintendent of Documents Subscription Order Form

Order Processing Code: ☐ YES, send me the following indicated subscriptions for one year:
☐ LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected), (LCS) for $31 per year.
☐ Federal Register Index (FRSU) $28 per year.

The total cost of my order is $___________.
Price is subject to change. International customers please add 25%.

Company or personal name

Street address

City, State, ZIP code

Daytime phone with area code

Purchase order No. (optional)

Fax your orders (202) 512–2250
Phone your orders (202) 512–1800

(Includes regular shipping and handling.)

For privacy check box below:
☐ Do not make my name available to other mailers

Check method of payment:
☐ Check payable to Superintendent of Documents
☐ GPO Deposit Account [ ]
☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard [ ] (expiration date)

Credit card No. (must be 20 digits)

Thank you for your order!

Authorizing signature

Mail To: Superintendent of Documents
P.O. Box 371964
Pittsburgh, PA 15250–7954
Title 37—Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

CHAPTER I—Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce ................................................................. 1
CHAPTER II—Copyright Office, Library of Congress .............. 201
CHAPTER IV—Assistant Secretary for Technology Policy, Department of Commerce ........................................... 401
CHAPTER V—Under Secretary for Technology, Department of Commerce ............................................................. 501
CHAPTER I—PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

EDITORIAL NOTE: Chapter I—Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce, Subchapter A—General, contains patent and trademark regulations. Subchapter A has been restructured to allow parts pertaining to patent regulations and trademark regulations to be grouped separately.

SUBCHAPTER A—GENERAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>PATENTS</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Rules of practice in patent cases</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Assignment, recording and rights of assignee</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Complaints regarding invention promoters</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Secrecy of certain inventions and licenses to export and file applications in foreign countries</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>[Reserved]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index I—Rules relating to patents</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TRADEMARKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>TRADEMARKS</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Rules of practice in trademark cases</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Classification of goods and services under the Trademark Act</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>[Reserved]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index II—Rules relating to trademarks</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Practice Before the Patent and Trademark Office</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Representation of others before the Patent and Trademark Office</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-15a</td>
<td>[Reserved]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index III—Rules relating to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBCHAPTER B—GOVERNMENT INVENTIONS JURISDICTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>SUBCHAPTER B—GOVERNMENT INVENTIONS JURISDICTION</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100-102</td>
<td>[Reserved]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBCHAPTER C—PROTECTION OF FOREIGN MASK WORKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>SUBCHAPTER C—PROTECTION OF FOREIGN MASK WORKS</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Requests for Presidential proclamations pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 902(a)(2)</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUBCHAPTER A—GENERAL

PATENTS

PART 1—RULES OF PRACTICE IN PATENT CASES

Subpart A—General Provisions

GENERAL INFORMATION AND CORRESPONDENCE

Sec.
1.1 Addresses for correspondence with the Patent and Trademark Office.
1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.
1.3 Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy.
1.4 Nature of correspondence and signature requirements.
1.5 Identification of application, patent or registration.
1.6 Receipt of correspondence.
1.7 Times for taking action; Expiration on Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday.
1.8 Certificate of mailing or transmission.
1.9 Definitions.
1.10 Filing of correspondence by “Express Mail.”

RECORDS AND FILES OF THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

1.11 Files open to the public.
1.12 Assignment records open to public inspection.
1.13 Copies and certified copies.
1.14 Patent applications preserved in confidence.
1.15 Requests for identifiable records.

FEES AND PAYMENT OF MONEY

1.16 National application filing fees.
1.17 Patent application processing fees.
1.18 Patent issue fees.
1.19 Document supply fees.
1.20 Post issuance fees.
1.21 Miscellaneous fees and charges.
1.22 Fees payable in advance.
1.23 Methods of payment.
1.24 Coupons.
1.25 Deposit accounts.
1.26 Refunds.
1.27 Statement of status as small entity.
1.28 Effect on fees of failure to establish status, or change status, as a small entity.

Subpart B—National Processing Provisions

PROSECUTION OF APPLICATION AND APPOINTMENT OF ATTORNEY OR AGENT

1.31 Applicants may be represented by a registered attorney or agent.
1.32 [Reserved]
1.33 Correspondence respecting patent applications, reexamination proceedings, and other proceedings.
1.34 Recognition for representation.
1.36 Revocation of power of attorney or authorization; withdrawal of attorney or agent.

WHO MAY APPLY FOR A PATENT

1.41 Applicant for patent.
1.42 When the inventor is dead.
1.43 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.
1.44 Proof of authority.
1.45 Joint inventors.
1.46 Assigned inventions and patents.
1.47 Filing when an inventor refuses to sign or cannot be reached.
1.48 Correction of inventorship in a patent application, other than a reissue application.

THE APPLICATION

1.51 General requisites of an application.
1.52 Language, paper, writing, margins.
1.53 Application number, filing date, and completion of application.
1.54 Parts of application to be filed together; filing receipt.
1.55 Claim for foreign priority.
1.56 Duty to disclose information material to patentability.
1.57 [Reserved]
1.58 Chemical and mathematical formulæ and tables.
1.59 Expungement of information or copy of papers in application file.
1.60-162 [Reserved]

OATH OR DECLARATION

1.63 Oath or declaration.
1.64 Person making oath or declaration.
1.66 Officers authorized to administer oaths.
1.67 Supplemental oath or declaration.
1.68 Declaration in lieu of oath.
1.69 Foreign language oaths and declarations.
1.70 [Reserved]

SPECIFICATION

1.71 Detailed description and specification of the invention.
1.72 Title and abstract.
1.73 Summary of the invention.
1.74 Reference to drawings.
1.75 Claim(s).
1.77 Arrangement of application elements.
1.78 Claiming benefit of earlier filing date and cross-references to other applications.
1.79 Reservation clauses not permitted.
THE DRAWINGS

1.81 Drawings required in patent application.
1.83 Content of drawings.
1.84 Standards for drawings.
1.85 Corrections to drawings.
1.88 [Reserved]

MODELS, EXHIBITS, SPECIMENS

1.91 Models or exhibits not generally admitted as part of application or patent.
1.92 [Reserved]
1.93 Specimens.
1.94 Return of models, exhibits or specimens.
1.95 Copies of exhibits.
1.96 Submission of computer program listings.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

1.97 Filing information disclosure statement.
1.98 Content of information disclosure statement.
1.99 [Reserved]

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

1.101 [Reserved]
1.102 Advancement of examination.
1.103 Suspension of action.
1.104 Nature of examination.
1.105-1.109 [Reserved]
1.110 Inventorship and date of invention of the subject matter of individual claims.

ACTION BY APPLICANT AND FURTHER CONSIDERATION

1.111 Reply by applicant or patent owner.
1.112 Reconsideration before final action.
1.113 Final rejection or action.
1.114 Request for continued examination.

AMENDMENTS

1.115 [Reserved]
1.116 Amendments after final action or appeal.
1.117-1.139 [Reserved]
1.121 Manner of making amendments.
1.122-1.124 [Reserved]
1.125 Substitute specification.
1.126 Numbering of claims.
1.127 Petition from refusal to admit amendment.

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

1.129 Transitional procedures for limited examination after final rejection and restriction practice.

AFFIDAVITS OVERCOMING REJECTIONS

1.130 Affidavit or declaration to disqualify commonly owned patent as prior art.
1.131 Affidavit or declaration of prior invention to overcome cited patent or publication.

1.132 Affidavits or declarations traversing grounds of rejection.

INTERVIEWS

1.133 Interviews.

TIME FOR REPLY BY APPLICANT; ABANDONMENT OF APPLICATION

1.134 Time period for reply to an Office action.
1.135 Abandonment for failure to reply within time period.
1.136 Extensions of time.
1.137 Revival of abandoned application or lapsed patent.
1.138 Express abandonment.
1.139 [Reserved]

JOINER OF INVENTIONS IN ONE APPLICATION; RESTRICTION

1.141 Different inventions in one national application.
1.142 Requirement for restriction.
1.143 Reconsideration of requirement.
1.144 Petition from requirement for restriction.
1.145 Subsequent presentation of claims for different invention.
1.146 Election of species.

DESIGN PATENTS

1.151 Rules applicable.
1.152 Design drawings.
1.153 Title, description and claim, oath or declaration.
1.154 Arrangement of application elements.
1.155 Issue of design patents.

PLANT PATENTS

1.161 Rules applicable.
1.162 Applicant, oath or declaration.
1.163 Specification and arrangement of application elements.
1.164 Claim.
1.165 Plant drawings.
1.166 Specimens.
1.167 Examination.

REISSUES

1.171 Application for reissue.
1.172 Applicants, assignees.
1.173 Specification.
1.174 Drawings.
1.175 Reissue oath or declaration.
1.176 Examination of reissue.
1.177 Reissue in divisions.
1.178 Original patent.
1.179 Notice of reissue application.

PETITIONS AND ACTION BY THE COMMISSIONER

1.181 Petition to the Commissioner.
1.182 Questions not specifically provided for.
1.183 Suspension of rules.
1.184 [Reserved]
1.191 Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.
1.192 Appellant's brief.
1.193 Examiner's answer and reply brief.
1.194 Oral hearing.
1.195 Affidavits or declarations after appeal.
1.196 Decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.
1.197 Action following decision.
1.198 Reopening after decision.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
1.248 Service of papers; manner of service; proof of service in cases other than interferences.

PROTESTS AND PUBLIC USE PROCEEDINGS
1.291 Protests by the public against pending applications.
1.292 Public use proceedings.
1.293 Statutory invention registration.
1.294 Examination of request for publication of a statutory invention registration and patent application to which the request is directed.
1.295 Review of decision finally refusing to publish a statutory invention registration.
1.296 Withdrawal of request for publication of statutory invention registration.
1.297 Publication of statutory invention registration.

REVIEW OF PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE DECISIONS BY COURT
1.301 Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.
1.302 Notice of appeal.
1.304 Time for appeal or civil action.

ALLOWANCE AND ISSUE OF PATENT
1.311 Notice of allowance.
1.312 Amendments after allowance.
1.313 Withdrawal from issue.
1.314 Issuance of patent.
1.315 Delivery of patent.
1.316 Application abandoned for failure to pay issue fee.
1.317 Lapsed patents; delayed payment of balance of issue fee.
1.318 [Reserved]

DISCLAIMER
1.321 Statutory disclaimers, including terminal disclaimers.

CORRECTION OF ERRORS IN PATENT
1.322 Certificate of correction of Office mistake.
1.323 Certificate of correction of applicant's mistake.
1.324 Correction of inventorship in patent.
1.325 Other mistakes not corrected.

ARBITRATION AWARDS
1.331–1.334 [Reserved]
1.335 Filing of notice of arbitration awards.

AMENDMENT OF RULES
1.351 Amendments to rules will be published.
1.352 [Reserved]

MAINTENANCE FEES
1.362 Time for payment of maintenance fees.
1.363 Fee address for maintenance fee purposes.
1.366 Submission of maintenance fees.
1.377 Review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of patent.
1.378 Acceptance of delayed payment of maintenance fee in expired patent to reinstate patent.

Subpart C—International Processing Provisions

GENERAL INFORMATION
1.401 Definitions of terms under the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
1.412 The United States Receiving Office.
1.413 The United States International Searching Authority.
1.414 The United States Patent and Trademark Office as a Designated Office or Elected Office.
1.415 The International Bureau.
1.416 The United States International Preliminary Examining Authority.
1.419 Display of currently valid control number under the Paperwork Reduction Act.

WHO MAY FILE AN INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION
1.421 Applicant for international application.
1.422 When the inventor is dead.
1.423 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.
1.424 Joint inventors.
1.425 Filing by other than inventor.

THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION
1.431 International application requirements.
1.432 Designation of States and payment of designation and confirmation fees.
1.433 Physical requirements of international application.
1.434 The request.
1.435 The description.
1.436 The claims.
1.437 The drawings.
1.438 The abstract.

FEES
1.445 International application filing, processing and search fees.
1.446 Refund of international application filing and processing fees.

PRIORITY
1.451 The priority claim and priority document in an international application.

REPRESENTATION
1.455 Representation in international applications.

TRANSMITTAL OF RECORD COPY
1.461 Procedures for transmittal of record copy to the International Bureau.

TIMING
1.465 Timing of application processing based on the priority date.
1.468 Delays in meeting time limits.

AMENDMENTS
1.471 Corrections and amendments during international processing.
1.472 Changes in person, name, or address of applicants and inventors.

UNITY OF INVENTION
1.475 Unity of invention before the International Searching Authority, the International Preliminary Examining Authority and during the national stage.
1.476 Determination of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.
1.477 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION
1.480 Demand for international preliminary examination.
1.481 Payment of international preliminary examination fees.
1.482 International preliminary examination fees.
1.484 Conduct of international preliminary examination.
1.485 Amendments by applicant during international preliminary examination.
1.488 Determination of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.
1.489 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

NATIONAL STAGE
1.491 Entry into the national stage.
1.492 National stage fees.

37 CFR Ch. I (7-1-00 Edition)

1.494 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as a Designated Office.
1.495 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as an Elected Office.
1.496 Examination of international applications in the national stage.
1.497 Oath or declaration under 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).
1.499 Unity of invention during the national stage.

Subpart D—Reexamination of Patents

CITATION OF PRIOR ART
1.501 Citation of prior art in patent files.

REQUEST FOR REEXAMINATION
1.510 Request for reexamination.

REEXAMINATION
1.525 Order to reexamine.
1.530 Statement; amendment by patent owner.
1.535 Reply by requester.
1.540 Consideration of responses.
1.550 Conduct of reexamination proceedings.
1.552 Scope of reexamination in reexamination proceedings.
1.555 Information material to patentability in reexamination proceedings.
1.560 Interviews in reexamination proceedings.
1.565 Concurrent office proceedings.

CERTIFICATE
1.570 Issuance of reexamination certificate after reexamination proceedings.

Subpart E—Interferences

1.601 Scope of rules, definitions.
1.602 Interest in applications and patents involved in an interference.
1.603 Interference between applications; subject matter of the interference.
1.604 Request for interference between applications by an applicant.
1.605 Suggestion of claim to applicant by examiner.
1.606 interference between an application and a patent; subject matter of the interference.
1.607 Request by applicant for interference with patent.
1.608 Interference between an application and a patent; prima facie showing by applicant.
1.609 Preparation of interference papers by examiner.
1.610 Assignment of interference to administrative patent judge, time period for completing interference.
1.611 Declaration of interference.
1.612 Access to applications.
1.613 Lead attorney, same attorney representing different parties in an interference, withdrawal of attorney or agent.
1.614 Jurisdiction over interference.
1.615 Suspension of ex parte prosecution.
1.616 Sanctions for failure to comply with rules or order or for taking and maintaining a frivolous position.
1.617 Summary judgment against applicant.
1.618 Return of unauthorized papers.
1.619 Preliminary statement, time for filing, notice of filing.
1.620 Preliminary statement; invention made in United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
1.621 Preliminary statement; invention made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
1.622 Preliminary statement; derivation by an opponent.
1.623 Preliminary statement; earlier application.
1.624 Preliminary statement; sealing before filing, opening of statement.
1.625 Preliminary statement; correction of error.
1.626 Effect of preliminary statement.
1.627 Access to preliminary statement, service of preliminary statement.
1.628 Notice of intent to argue abandonment, suppression, or concealment by opponent.
1.629 Preliminary motions.
1.630 Motion to correct inventorship.
1.631 Motion to correct inventorship.
1.632 Notice of intention to argue abandonment, suppression, or concealment by opponent.
1.633 Preliminary motions.
1.634 Motion for summary judgment.
1.635 Motion to correct inventorship.
1.636 Motions, time for filing.
1.637 Content of motions.
1.638 Opposition and reply; time for filing opposition and reply.
1.639 Evidence in support of motion, opposition, or reply.
1.640 Motions, hearing and decision, reconsideration of interference, order to show cause.
1.641 Unpatentability discovered by administrative patent judge.
1.642 Addition of application or patent to interference.
1.643 Prosecution of interference by assignee.
1.644 Petitions in interferences.
1.645 Extension of time, late papers, stay of proceedings.
1.646 Service of papers, proof of service.
1.647 Translation of document in foreign language.

1.650 Setting times for discovery and taking testimony, parties entitled to take testimony.
1.651 Judgment for failure to take testimony or file record.
1.652 Record and exhibits.
1.653 Final hearing.
1.654 Matter considered in rendering a final decision.
1.655 Burden of proof as to date of invention.
1.656 Briefs for final hearing.
1.657 Recommendation.
1.658 Notice of reexamination, reissue, protest, or litigation.
1.659 Termination of interference after judgment.
1.660 Request for entry of adverse judgment; reissue filed by patentee.
1.661 Status of claim of defeated applicant after interference.
1.662 Action after interference.
1.663 Action after interference.
1.664 Filing of interference settlement agreements.
1.665 Evidence must comply with rules.
1.666 Manner of taking testimony.
1.667 Notice of examination of witness.
1.668 Persons before whom depositions may be taken.
1.669 Examination of witness, reading and signing transcript of deposition.
1.670 Certification and filing by officer, marking exhibits.
1.671 Form of affidavit or a transcript of deposition.
1.672 Time for filing transcript of deposition.
1.673 Inspection of transcript.
1.674 Official records and printed publications.
1.675 Testimony in another interference, proceeding, or action.
1.676 Errors and irregularities in depositions.
1.677 Additional discovery.
1.678 Use of discovery.
1.679 Arbitration of interferences.

Subpart F—Extension of Patent Term
1.700 Extension of patent term due to prosecution delay.
1.710 Patents subject to extension of the patent term.
1.720 Conditions for extension of patent term.
1.730 Applicant for extension of patent term.
1.740 Application for extension of patent term.
1.750 Determination of eligibility for extension of patent term.
§ 1.1

1.760 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(e)(2).
1.765 Duty of disclosure in patent term extension proceedings.
1.770 Express withdrawal of application for extension of patent term.
1.775 Calculation of patent term extension for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product.
1.780 Certificate of extension of patent term.
1.785 Multiple applications for extension of term of the same patent or of different patents for the same regulatory review period for a product.

Subpart A—General Provisions

GENERAL INFORMATION AND CORRESPONDENCE

§ 1.1 Addresses for correspondence with the Patent and Trademark Office.

(a) Except for §1.1(a)(3)(i) and (ii), all correspondence intended for the Patent and Trademark Office must be addressed to either “Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231” or to specific areas within the Office as set out in paragraphs (a)(1), (2) and (3)(iii) of this section. When appropriate, correspondence should also be marked for the attention of a particular office or individual.

(1) Patent correspondence. All correspondence concerning patent matters processed by organizations reporting to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents should be addressed to “Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.”

(2) Trademark correspondence. (i) Send all trademark filings and correspondence, except as specified below or unless submitting electronically, to: Assistant Commissioner for Trademarks, 2900 Crystal Drive, Arlington, Virginia 22202-3513.

(ii) Send trademark-related documents for the Assignment Division to record to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box Assignment, Washington, DC 20231.

(iii) Send requests for certified or uncertified copies of trademark applications and registrations, other than coupon orders for uncertified copies of registrations, to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box 10, Washington, DC 20231.

(iv) Send requests for coupon orders for uncertified copies of registrations to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box 9, Washington, DC 20231.
(v) An applicant may transmit an application for trademark registration electronically, but only if the applicant uses the Patent and Trademark Office's electronic form.

(3) Office of Solicitor correspondence. (i) Correspondence relating to pending litigation required by court rule or order to be served on the Solicitor shall be hand-delivered to the Office of the Solicitor or shall be mailed to: Office of the Solicitor, P.O. Box 15667, Arlington, Virginia 22215; or such other address as may be designated in writing in the litigation. See §§1.302(c) and 2.145(b)(3) for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.

(ii) Correspondence relating to disciplinary proceedings pending before an Administrative Law Judge or the Commissioner shall be mailed to: Office of the Solicitor, P.O. Box 16116, Arlington, Virginia 22215.

(iii) All other correspondence to the Office of the Solicitor shall be addressed to: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

(iv) Correspondence improperly addressed to a Post Office Box specified in paragraphs (a)(3) (i) and (ii) of this section will not be filed elsewhere in the Patent and Trademark Office, and may be returned.

(b) Letters and other communications relating to international applications during the international stage and prior to the assignment of a national serial number should be additionally marked “Box PCT.”

(c) Requests for reexamination should be additionally marked “Box Reexam.”

(d) Payments of maintenance fees in patents and other communications relating thereto should be additionally marked “Box M. Fee.”

(e) Communications relating to interferences and applications or patents involved in an interference should be additionally marked “BOX INTERFERENCE.”

(f) All applications for extension of patent term and all communications relating thereto intended for the Patent and Trademark Office should be additionally marked “Box Patent Ext.” When appropriate, the communication should also be marked to the attention of a particular individual, as where a decision has been rendered.

(g) [Reserved]

(h) In applications under section 1(b) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(b), all statements of use filed under section 1(d) of the Act, and requests for extensions of time therefor, should be additionally marked “Box ITU.”

(i) The filing of all provisional applications and any communications relating thereto should be additionally marked “Box Provisional Patent Application.”

NOTE: Sections 1.1 to 1.26 are applicable to trademark cases as well as to national and international patent cases except for provisions specifically directed to patent cases. See §1.9 for definitions of “national application” and “international application.”


§ 1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.

All business with the Patent and Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

§ 1.3 Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy.

Applicants and their attorneys or agents are required to conduct their business with the Patent and Trademark Office with decorum and courtesy. Papers presented in violation of this requirement will be submitted to the Commissioner and will be returned by the Commissioner's direct order. Complaints against examiners and other employees must be made in correspondence separate from other papers.

[61 FR 56446, Nov. 1, 1996]
§ 1.4 Nature of correspondence and signature requirements.

(a) Correspondence with the Patent and Trademark Office comprises:
   (1) Correspondence relating to services and facilities of the Office, such as general inquiries, requests for publications supplied by the Office, orders for printed copies of patents or trademark registrations, orders for copies of records, transmission of assignments for recording, and the like, and
   (2) Correspondence in and relating to a particular application or other proceeding in the Office. See particularly the rules relating to the filing, processing, or other proceedings of national applications in subpart B, §§ 1.31 to 1.37; of international applications in subpart C, §§ 1.401 to 1.499; of reexamination of patents in subpart D, §§ 1.501 to 1.570; of interferences in subpart E, §§ 1.601 to 1.690; of extension of patent term in subpart F, §§ 1.710 to 1.785; and of trademark applications and registrations, §§ 2.11 to 2.186.

(b) Since each application file should be complete in itself, a separate copy of every paper to be filed in an application should be furnished for each application to which the paper pertains, even though the contents of the papers filed in two or more applications may be identical.

(c) Since different matters may be considered by different branches or sections of the Patent and Trademark Office, each distinct subject, inquiry or order should be contained in a separate letter to avoid confusion and delay in answering letters dealing with different subjects.

(d)(1) Each piece of correspondence, except as provided in paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section, filed in an application, patent file, trademark registration file, or other proceeding in the Office which requires a person's signature, must:
   (i) Be an original, that is, have an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by that person; or
   (ii) Be a direct or indirect copy, such as a photocopy or facsimile transmission (§ 1.6(d)), of an original. In the event that a copy of the original is filed, the original should be retained as evidence of authenticity. If a question of authenticity arises, the Office may require submission of the original; or
   (iii) Where an electronically transmitted trademark filing is permitted, the person who signs the filing must either:
      (A) Place a symbol comprised of numbers and/or letters between two forward slash marks in the signature block on the electronic submission; and print, sign and date in permanent ink, and maintain a paper copy of the electronic submission; or
      (B) Sign the verified statement using some other form of electronic signature specified by the Commissioner.

(2) The presentation to the Office (whether by signing, filing, submitting, or later advocating) of any paper by a party, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, constitutes a certification under § 10.18(b) of this chapter. Violations of § 10.18(b)(2) of this chapter by a party, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, may result in the imposition of sanctions under § 10.18(c) of this chapter. Any practitioner violating § 10.18(b) may also be subject to disciplinary action. See §§ 10.18(d) and 10.23(c)(15).

(e) Correspondence requiring a person's signature and relating to registration to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in patent cases, enrollment and disciplinary investigations, or disciplinary proceedings must be submitted with an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by that person.

(f) When a document that is required by statute to be certified must be filed, a copy, including a photocopy or facsimile transmission, of the certification is not acceptable.

(g) An applicant who has not made of record a registered attorney or agent may be required to state whether assistance was received in the preparation or prosecution of the patent application, for which any compensation or consideration was given or charged, and if so, to disclose the name or names of the person or persons providing such assistance. Assistance includes the preparation for the applicant of the specification and amendments or other papers to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office, as well as other assistance in such matters,
Patent and Trademark Office, Commerce § 1.5

but does not include merely making drawings by draftsmen or stenographic services in typing papers.


§ 1.5 Identification of application, patent or registration.

(a) No correspondence relating to an application should be filed prior to receipt of the application number from the Patent and Trademark Office. When a letter directed to the Patent and Trademark Office concerns a previously filed application for a patent, it must identify on the top page in a conspicuous location, the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number; e.g., 07/123,456), or the serial number and filing date assigned to that application by the Patent and Trademark Office, or the international application number of the international application. Any correspondence not containing such identification will be returned to the sender where a return address is available. The returned correspondence will be accompanied by a cover letter which will indicate to the sender that if the returned correspondence is resubmitted to the Patent and Trademark Office within two weeks of the mailing date on the cover letter, the original date of receipt of the correspondence will be considered by the Patent and Trademark Office as the date of receipt of the correspondence. Applicants may use either the Certificate of Mailing or Transmission procedure under § 1.8 or the Express Mail procedure under § 1.10 for resubmissions of returned correspondence if they desire to have the benefit of the date of deposit with the United States Postal Service. If the returned correspondence is not resubmitted within the two-week period, the date of receipt of the resubmission will be considered to be the date of receipt of the correspondence. The two-week period to resubmit the returned correspondence will not be extended. In addition to the application number, all letters directed to the Patent and Trademark Office concerning applications for patents should also state the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the date of filing the same, and, if known, the group art unit or other unit within the Patent and Trademark Office responsible for considering the letter and the name of the examiner or other person to which it has been assigned.

(b) When the letter concerns a patent other than for purposes of paying a maintenance fee, it should state the number and date of issue of the patent, the name of the patentee, and the title of the invention. For letters concerning payment of a maintenance fee in a patent, see the provisions of § 1.366(c).

(c)(1) A letter about a trademark application should identify the serial number, the name of the applicant, and the mark.

(2) A letter about a registered trademark should identify the registration number, the name of the registrant, and the mark.

(d) A letter relating to a reexamination proceeding should identify it as such by the number of the patent undergoing reexamination, the reexamination request control number assigned to such proceeding and, if known, the group art unit and name of the examiner to which it has been assigned.

(e) When a paper concerns an interference, it should state the names of the parties and the number of the interference. The name of the examiner-in-chief assigned to the interference (§ 1.610) and the name of the party filing the paper should appear conspicuously on the first page of the paper.

(f) When a paper concerns a provisional application, it should identify the application as such and include the application number.


13
§ 1.6 Receipt of correspondence.

(a) Date of receipt and Express Mail date of deposit. Correspondence received in the Patent and Trademark Office is stamped with the date of receipt except as follows:

(1) The Patent and Trademark Office is not open for the filing of correspondence on any day that is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. Except for correspondence transmitted by facsimile under paragraph (a)(3) of this section, or filed electronically under paragraph (a)(4) of this section, no correspondence is received in the Office on Saturdays, Sundays, or Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

(2) Correspondence filed in accordance with § 1.10 will be stamped with the date of deposit as “Express Mail” with the United States Postal Service.

(3) Correspondence transmitted by facsimile to the Patent and Trademark Office will be stamped with the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Patent and Trademark Office unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, in which case the date stamped will be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia.

(4) Trademark-related correspondence transmitted electronically will be stamped with the date on which the Office receives the transmission.

(b) Patent and Trademark Office Post Office pouch. Mail placed in the Patent and Trademark Office pouch up to midnight on any day, except Saturdays, Sundays and Federal holidays within the District of Columbia, by the post office at Washington, DC, serving the Patent and Trademark Office, is considered as having been received in the Patent and Trademark Office on the day it was so placed in the pouch by the U.S. Postal Service.

(c) Correspondence delivered by hand. In addition to being mailed, correspondence may be delivered by hand during hours the Office is open to receive correspondence.

(d) Facsimile transmission. Except in the cases enumerated below, correspondence including authorizations to charge a deposit account, may be transmitted by facsimile. The receipt date accorded to the correspondence will be the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Patent and Trademark Office, unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. See § 1.6(a)(3). To facilitate proper processing, each transmission session should be limited to correspondence to be filed in a single application or other proceeding before the Patent and Trademark Office. The application number of a patent or trademark application, the control number of a reexamination proceeding, the interference number of an interference proceeding, the patent number of a patent, or the registration number of a trademark should be entered as a part of the sender’s identification on a facsimile cover sheet. Facsimile transmissions are not permitted and if submitted, will not be accorded a date of receipt, in the following situations:

(1) Correspondence as specified in § 1.4(e), requiring an original signature;

(2) Certified documents as specified in §1.4(f);

(3) Correspondence which cannot receive the benefit of the certificate of mailing or transmission as specified in § 1.8(a)(2)(i) (A) through (D) and (F), § 1.8(a)(2)(i)(A), and § 1.8(a)(2)(ii)(A), except that a continued prosecution application under § 1.53(d) may be transmitted to the Office by facsimile;

(4) Drawings submitted under §§ 1.81, 1.83 through 1.85, 1.152, 1.163, 1.174, 1.437, 2.51, 2.52, or 2.72;

(5) A request for reexamination under § 1.510;

(6) Correspondence to be filed in a patent application subject to a secrecy order under §§ 3.1 through 3.5 of this chapter and directly related to the secrecy order content of the application;

(7) Requests for cancellation or amendment of a registration under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1057(e); and certificates of registration surrendered for cancellation or amendment under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1057(e);

(8) Correspondence to be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, except the notice of ex parte appeal;

(9) Correspondence to be filed in an interference proceeding which consists
§ 1.8 Certificate of mailing or transmission.

(a) Except in the cases enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, correspondence required to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within a set period of time will be considered as being timely filed if the procedure described in this section is followed. The actual date of receipt will be used for all other purposes.

(1) Correspondence will be considered as being timely filed if:

(i) The correspondence is mailed or transmitted prior to expiration of the set period of time by being:

(A) Addressed as set out in §1.1(a) and deposited with the U.S. Postal Service; or

(B) Addressed as set out in §1.1(a) and transmitted to and received in the Office on the date in question.

(2) The Office may require additional evidence to determine if the application was transmitted to and received in the Office on the date in question.


§ 1.7 Times for taking action; Expiration on Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday.

(a) Whenever periods of time are specified in this part in days, calendar days are intended. When the day, or the last day fixed by statute or by or under this part for taking any action or paying any fee in the United States Patent and Trademark Office falls on Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the action may be taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding business day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday. See §1.304 for time for appeal or for commencing civil action.

(b) If the day that is twelve months after the filing date of a provisional application under 35 U.S.C. 111(b) and §1.53(c) falls on Saturday, Sunday, or on a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the period of pendency shall be extended to the next succeeding secular or business day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday.

[65 FR 14871, Mar. 20, 2000]
§ 1.9 Definitions.

(a)(1) A national application as used in this chapter means a U.S. application for patent which was either filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111, or which entered the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371.

(2) A provisional application as used in this chapter means a U.S. national application for patent filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111(b).

(3) A nonprovisional application as used in this chapter means a U.S. national application for patent which was either filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111(a), or which entered the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371.

(b) An international application as used in this chapter means an international application for patent filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty prior to entering national processing at the Designated Office stage.

(b) Service with sufficient postage as first class mail; or

(B) Transmitted by facsimile to the Patent and Trademark Office in accordance with §1.6(d); and

(ii) The correspondence includes a certificate for each piece of correspondence stating the date of deposit or transmission. The person signing the certificate should have reasonable basis to expect that the correspondence would be mailed or transmitted on or before the date indicated.

(2) The procedure described in paragraph (a)(1) of this section does not apply to, and no benefit will be given to a Certificate of Mailing or Transmission on the following:

(i) Relative to Patents and Patent Applications—

(A) The filing of a national patent application specification and drawing or other correspondence for the purpose of obtaining an application filing date, including a request for a continued prosecution application under §1.53(d);

(B) The filing of correspondence in an interference which an examiner-in-chief orders to be filed by hand or “Ex

Press Mail”;

(C) The filing of agreements between parties to an interference under 35 U.S.C. 135(c);

(D) The filing of an international application for patent;

(E) The filing of correspondence in an international application before the U.S. Receiving Office, the U.S. International Searching Authority, or the U.S. International Preliminary Examining Authority;

(F) The filing of a copy of the international application and the basic national fee necessary to enter the national stage, as specified in §1.494(b) or §1.496(b).

(ii) Relative to Trademark Registrations and Trademark Applications—

(A) The filing of a trademark application.

(b)(F) [Reserved]

(iii) Relative to Disciplinary Proceedings—

(A) Correspondence filed in connection with a disciplinary proceeding under part 10 of this chapter.

(B) [Reserved]

(b) In the event that correspondence is considered timely filed by being mailed or transmitted in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, but not received in the Patent and Trademark Office, and the application is held to be abandoned or the proceeding is dismissed, terminated, or decided with prejudice, the correspondence will be considered timely if the party who forwarded such correspondence:

(1) Informs the Office of the previous mailing or transmission of the correspondence promptly after becoming aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;

(2) Supplies an additional copy of the previously mailed or transmitted correspondence and certificate; and

(3) Includes a statement which attests on a personal knowledge basis or to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to the previous timely mailing or transmission. If the correspondence was sent by facsimile transmission, a copy of the sending unit’s report confirming transmission may be used to support this statement.

(c) The Office may require additional evidence to determine if the correspondence was timely filed.

§ 1.10 Filing of correspondence by "Express Mail."

(a) Any correspondence received by the Patent and Trademark Office (Office) that was delivered by the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service of the United States Postal Service (USPS) will be considered filed in the Office on the date of deposit with the USPS. The date of deposit with the USPS is shown by the "date-in" on the "Express Mail" mailing label or other official USPS notation. If the USPS deposit date cannot be determined, the correspondence will be accorded the Office receipt date as the filing date. See §1.6(a).

(b) Correspondence should be deposited directly with an employee of the USPS to ensure that the person depositing the correspondence receives a legible copy of the "Express Mail" mailing label with the "date-in" clearly marked. Persons dealing indirectly with the employees of the USPS (such as by deposit in an "Express Mail" drop box) do so at the risk of not receiving a copy of the "Express Mail" mailing label with the desired "date-in" clearly marked. The paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence should also include the "Express Mail" mailing label number thereon. See paragraphs (c), (d) and (e) of this section.

(c) Any person filing correspondence under this section that was received by the Office and delivered by the "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service of the USPS, who can show that there is a discrepancy between the filing date accorded by the Office to the correspondence and the date of deposit as shown by the "date-in" on the "Express Mail" mailing label or other
§ 1.10

official USPS notation, may petition the Commissioner to accord the correspondence a filing date as of the “date-in” on the “Express Mail” mailing label or other official USPS notation, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed promptly after the person becomes aware that the Office has accorded, or will accord, a filing date other than the USPS deposit date;

(2) The number of the “Express Mail” mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence prior to the original mailing by “Express Mail”; and

(3) The petition includes a true copy of the “Express Mail” mailing label showing the “date-in,” and of any other official notation by the USPS relied upon to show the date of deposit.

(d) Any person filing correspondence under this section that was received by the Office and delivered by the “Express Mail Post Office to Addressee” service of the USPS, who can show that the “date-in” on the “Express Mail” mailing label thereon, a copy of any returned postcard receipt, a copy of the “Express Mail” mailing label showing the “date-in,” a copy of any other official notation by the USPS relied upon to show the date of deposit, and, if the requested filing date is a date other than the “date-in” on the “Express Mail” mailing label or other official notation entered by the USPS, may petition the Commissioner to accord the correspondence a filing date as of the date the correspondence was deposited in the “Express Mail Post Office to Addressee” service prior to the last scheduled pickup for that day; and

(e) Any person mailing correspondence addressed as set out in §1.1(a) to the Office with sufficient postage utilizing the “Express Mail Post Office to Addressee” service of the USPS but not received by the Office, may petition the Commissioner to consider such correspondence filed in the Office on the USPS deposit date, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed promptly after the person becomes aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;

(2) The number of the “Express Mail” mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence prior to the original mailing by “Express Mail”; and

(3) The petition includes a showing which establishes, to the satisfaction of the Commissioner, that the requested filing date was the date the correspondence was deposited in the “Express Mail Post Office to Addressee” service prior to the last scheduled pickup for that day; and

(f) The Office may require additional evidence to determine if the correspondence was deposited as “Express
RECORDS AND FILES OF THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

§ 1.11 Files open to the public.

(a) After a patent has been issued or a statutory invention registration has been published, the specification, drawings and all papers relating to the case in the file of the patent or statutory invention registration are open to inspection by the public, and copies may be obtained upon paying the fee therefor. See §2.27 for trademark files.

(b) All reissue applications, all applications in which the Office has accepted a request to open the complete application to inspection by the public, and related papers in the application file, are open to inspection by the public, and copies may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor. The filing of reissue applications, other than continued prosecution applications under §1.53(d) of reissue applications, will be announced in the Official Gazette. The announcement shall include at least the filing date, reissue application and original patent numbers, title, class and subclass, name of the inventor, name of the owner of record, name of the attorney or agent of record, and examining group to which the reissue application is assigned.

(c) All requests for reexamination for which the fee under §1.20(c) has been paid, will be announced in the Official Gazette. Any reexaminations at the initiative of the Commissioner pursuant to §1.520 will also be announced in the Official Gazette. The announcement shall include at least the date of the request, if any, the reexamination request control number or the Commissioner initiated order number, patent number, title, class and subclass, name of the inventor, name of the patent owner of record, and the examining group to which the reexamination is assigned.

(d) All papers or copies thereof relating to a reexamination proceeding which have been entered of record in the patent or reexamination file are open to inspection by the public, and copies may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor.

(e) The file of any interference involving a patent, a statutory invention registration, a reissue application, or an application on which a patent has been issued or which has been published as a statutory invention registration, is open to inspection by the public, and copies may be obtained upon paying the fee therefor, if:

(1) The interference has terminated or

(2) An award of priority or judgment has been entered as to all parties and all counts.

§ 1.12 Assignment records open to public inspection.

(a)(1) Separate assignment records are maintained in the Patent and Trademark Office for patents and trademarks. The assignment records, relating to original or reissue patents, including digests and indexes, for assignments recorded on or after May 1, 1957, and assignment records relating to pending or abandoned trademark applications and to trademark registrations, for assignments recorded on or after January 1, 1955, are open to public inspection at the Patent and Trademark Office, and copies of those assignment records may be obtained upon request and payment of the fee set forth in §§1.19 and 2.6 of this chapter.

(2) All records of assignments of patents recorded before May 1, 1957, and all records of trademark assignments recorded before January 1, 1955, are maintained by the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). The records are open to public inspection. Certified and uncertified copies of those assignment records are provided by NARA upon request and payment of the fees required by NARA.

(b) Assignment records, digests, and indexes, relating to any pending or abandoned patent application are not available to the public. Copies of any
such assignment records and information with respect thereto shall be obtainable only upon written authority of the applicant or applicant's assignee or attorney or agent or upon a showing that the person seeking such information is a bona fide prospective or actual purchaser, mortgagee, or licensee of such application, unless it shall be necessary to the proper conduct of business before the Office or as provided by these rules.

(c) Any request by a member of the public seeking copies of any assignment records of any pending or abandoned patent application preserved in confidence under §1.14, or any information with respect thereto, must:

(1) Be in the form of a petition accompanied by the petition fee set forth in §1.17(i); or

(2) Include written authority granting access to the member of the public to the particular assignment records from the applicant or applicant's assignee or attorney or agent of record.

(d) An order for a copy of an assignment or other document should identify the reel and frame number where the assignment or document is recorded. If a document is identified without specifying its correct reel and frame, an extra charge as set forth in §1.21(j) will be made for the time consumed in making a search for such assignment.

§ 1.13 Copies and certified copies.

(a) Non-certified copies of patents and trademark registrations and of any records, books, papers, or drawings within the jurisdiction of the Patent and Trademark Office and open to the public or persons entitled thereto will be authenticated by the seal of the Patent and Trademark Office and certified by the Commissioner, or in his name attested by an officer of the Patent and Trademark Office authorized by the Commissioner, upon payment of the fee for the certified copy.

§ 1.14 Patent applications preserved in confidence.

(a) Patent applications are generally preserved in confidence pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122. No information will be given concerning the filing, pendency, or subject matter of any application for patent, and no access will be given to, or copies furnished of, any application or papers relating thereto, except as set forth in this section.

(i) Status information includes information such as whether the application is pending, abandoned, or patented, as well as the application number and filing date (or international filing date or date of entry into the national stage).

(ii) Status information concerning an application may be supplied:

(A) When copies of, or access to, the application may be provided pursuant to paragraph (a)(3) of this section;

(B) When the application is identified by application number or serial number and filing date in a published patent document or in a U.S. application open to public inspection; or

(C) When the application is the national stage of an international application in which the United States of America has been indicated as a Designated State.

(b) Copies of an application-as-filed may be provided to any person, upon written request accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.19(b)(1), without notice to the applicant, if the application is incorporated by reference in a U.S. patent.
(3) Copies of (upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.19(b)(2)), and access to, an application file wrapper and contents may be provided to any person, upon written request, without notice to the applicant, when the application file is available and:

(i) It has been determined by the Commissioner to be necessary for the proper conduct of business before the Office or warranted by other special circumstances;

(ii) The application is open to the public as provided in § 1.11(b);

(iii) Written authority in that application from the applicant, the assignee of the application, or the attorney or agent of record has been granted; or

(iv) The application is abandoned, but not if the application is in the file jacket of a pending application under § 1.53(d), and is:

(A) Referred to in a U.S. patent;

(B) Referred to in a U.S. application open to public inspection;

(C) An application which claims the benefit of the filing date of a U.S. application open to public inspection; or

(D) An application in which the applicant has filed an authorization to lay open the complete application to the public.

(b) Complete applications (§ 1.51(a)) which are abandoned may be destroyed and hence may not be available for access or copies as permitted by paragraph (a)(3)(iv) of this section after 20 years from their filing date, except those to which particular attention has been called and which have been marked for preservation.

(c) Applications for patents which disclose, or which appear to disclose, or which purport to disclose, inventions or discoveries relating to atomic energy are reported to the Department of Energy, which Department will be given access to such applications, but such reporting does not constitute a determination that the subject matter of such an application so reported is in fact useful or an invention or discovery or that such application in fact discloses subject matter in categories specified by sections 151(c) and 151(d) of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, 68 Stat. 919; 42 U.S.C. 2181 (c) and (d).

(d) Any decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, or any decision of the Commissioner on petition, not otherwise open to public inspection shall be published or made available for public inspection if:

(1) The Commissioner believes the decision involves an interpretation of patent laws or regulations that would be of important precedent value; and

(2) The applicant, or any party involved in the interference, does not within one month after being notified of the intention to make the decision public, object in writing on the ground that the decision discloses a trade secret or other confidential information.

If a decision discloses such information, the applicant or party shall identify the deletions in the text of the decision considered necessary to protect the information. If it is considered the entire decision must be withheld from the public to protect such information, the applicant or party must explain why. Applicants or parties will be given time, not less than twenty days, to request reconsideration and seek court review before any portions of decisions are made public over their objection. See § 2.27 for trademark applications.

(e) Any request by a member of the public seeking access to, or copies of, any pending or abandoned application preserved in confidence pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, or any papers relating thereto, must:

(1) Be in the form of a petition and be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(i); or

(2) Include written authority granting access to the member of the public in that particular application from the applicant or the applicant’s assignee or attorney or agent of record.

(f) Information as to the filing of an application will be published in the Official Gazette in accordance with § 1.47(a) and (b).

(g) Copies of an application file for which the United States acted as the International Preliminary Examining Authority, or copies of a document in such an application file, will be furnished in accordance with Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) Rule 94.2 or 94.3, upon payment of the appropriate fee (§ 1.19(b)(2) or § 1.19(b)(3)).
§ 1.15 Requests for identifiable records.

(a) Requests for records, not disclosed to the public as part of the regular informational activity of the Patent and Trademark Office and which are not otherwise dealt with in the rules in this part, shall be made in writing, with the envelope and the letter clearly marked “Freedom of Information Request.” Each such request, so marked, should be submitted by mail addressed to the “Patent and Trademark Office, Freedom of Information Request Control Desk, Box 8, Washington, DC 20231,” or hand delivered to the Office of the Solicitor, Patent and Trademark Office, Arlington, Virginia. The request will be processed in accordance with the procedures set forth in part 4 of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

(b) Any person whose request for records has been initially denied in whole or in part, or has not been timely determined, may submit a written appeal as provided in §4.8 of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

(c) Procedures applicable in the event of service of process or in connection with testimony of employees on official matters and production of official documents of the Patent and Trademark Office in civil legal proceedings not involving the United States shall be those established in parts 15 and 15a of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

[53 FR 47686, Nov. 25, 1988]

FEES AND PAYMENT OF MONEY

§ 1.16 National application filing fees.

(a) Basic fee for filing each application for an original patent, except provisional, design or plant applications:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$345.00

By other than a small entity—$690.00

(b) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim in excess of 3:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$39.00

By other than a small entity—$78.00

(c) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, for filing or later presentation of each claim in excess of 20 (Note that §1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee purposes):

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$9.00

By other than a small entity—$18.00

(d) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, if the application contains, or is amended to contain, a multiple dependent claim(s), per application:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$130.00

By other than a small entity—$260.00

(e) Surcharge for filing the basic filing fee or oath or declaration on a date later than the filing date of the application, except provisional applications:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$65.00

By other than a small entity—$130.00

(f) Basic fee for filing each design application:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$155.00

By other than a small entity—$310.00

(g) Basic fee for filing each plant application, except provisional applications:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$240.00

By other than a small entity—$480.00

(h) Basic fee for filing each reissue application:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$345.00

By other than a small entity—$690.00

(i) In addition to the basic filing fee in a reissue application, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim which is in excess of the number of independent claims in the original patent:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$39.00

By other than a small entity—$78.00

(j) In addition to the basic filing fee in a reissue application, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 and also in excess of the number of claims in the original patent
(Note that §1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee purposes):
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$9.00
By other than a small entity—$18.00

(k) Basic fee for filing each provisional application:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$75.00
By other than a small entity—$150.00

(l) Surcharge for filing the basic filing fee or cover sheet (§1.51(c)(1)) on a date later than the filing date of the provisional application:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$25.00
By other than a small entity—$50.00

(m) If the additional fees required by paragraphs (b), (c), (d), (i) and (j) of this section are not paid on filing or on later presentation of the claims for which the additional fees are due, they must be paid or the claims must be canceled by amendment, prior to the expiration of the time period set for reply by the Office in any notice of fee deficiency.

Note: See §§1.445, 1.482 and 1.492 for international application filing and processing fees.


§ 1.17 Patent application processing fees.

(a) Extension fees pursuant to §1.136(a):

(1) For reply within first month:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$55.00
By other than a small entity—$110.00

(2) For reply within second month:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$190.00
By other than a small entity—$380.00

(3) For reply within third month:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$435.00
By other than a small entity—$870.00

(4) For reply within fourth month:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$680.00
By other than a small entity—$1,360.00

(5) For reply within fifth month:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$925.00
By other than a small entity—$1,850.00

(b) For filing a notice of appeal from the examiner to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$150.00
By other than a small entity—$300.00

(c) In addition to the fee for filing a notice of appeal, for filing a brief in support of an appeal:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$150.00
By other than a small entity—$300.00

(d) For filing a request for an oral hearing before the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 134:
By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$130.00
By other than a small entity—$260.00

(e) To request continued examination pursuant to §1.114:
By a small entity—$345.00
By other than a small entity—$690.00

(f)±(g) [Reserved]

(h) For filing a petition to the Commissioner under a section listed below which refers to this paragraph—$130.00
§1.182—For decision on a question not specifically provided for.
§1.183—To suspend the rules.
§1.295—For review of refusal to publish a statutory invention registration.
§1.377—For review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of a patent.
§1.378(e)—For reconsideration of decision on petition refusing to accept delayed payment of maintenance fee in an expired patent.
§1.644(e)—For petition in an interference.
§1.644(f)—For request for reconsideration of a decision on petition in an interference.
§1.666(c)—For late filing of interference settlement agreement.
§1.12—For expedited handling of a foreign filing license.
§1.15—For changing the scope of a license.
§1.25—For retroactive license.

(i) For filing a petition to the Commissioner under one of the following sections which refers to this paragraph—$130.00
§1.12—For access to an assignment record.
§1.14—For access to an application.
§1.41—to supply the name or names of the inventor or inventors after the filing date without an oath or declaration as prescribed by §1.63, except in provisional applications.
§1.47—for filing by other than all the inventors or a person not the inventor.
§1.48—for correction of inventorship, except in provisional applications.
§1.53—for filing date, except in provisional applications.
§1.53(c)—to convert a provisional application filed under §1.53(c) to a nonprovisional application under §1.53(b).
§ 1.18 Patent issue fees.

(a) Issue fee for issuing each original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$605.00
By other than a small entity—$1,210.00

(b) Issue fee for issuing a design patent:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$215.00
By other than a small entity—$430.00

(c) Issue fee for issuing a plant patent:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$290.00
By other than a small entity—$580.00

[63 FR 67580, Dec. 8, 1998]

§ 1.19 Document supply fees.

The Patent and Trademark Office will supply copies of the following documents upon payment of the fees indicated:

(a) Uncertified copies of patents:

(1) Printed copy of a patent, including a design patent, statutory invention registration, or defensive publication document, except patent or statutory invention registration containing color drawing:

(i) Regular service, which includes preparation of copies by the PTO within 2-3 business days and delivery by United States Postal Service or to a...
§ 1.20 Post issuance fees.

(a) For providing a certificate of correction for applicant's mistake: (§ 1.323)—$100.00

(b) Petition for correction of inventorship in patent (§ 1.324)—$130.00

(c) For filing a request for reexamination (§ 1.510(a))—$2,520.00

(d) For filing each statutory disclaimer (§ 1.321): By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$55.00 By other than a small entity—$110.00

(e) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond four years; the fee is due by three years and six months after the original grant: By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$415.00 By other than a small entity—$830.00

(f) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond eight years; the fee is due by seven years and six months after the original grant: By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$950.00 By other than a small entity—$1,900.00

(g) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond twelve years; the fee is due by eleven years and six months after the original grant: By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$1,455.00 By other than a small entity—$2,910.00

(h) Surcharge for paying a maintenance fee during the six-month grace period following the expiration of three years and six months, seven years and six months, and eleven years and six months after the date of the original grant of a patent based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980: By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$65.00 By other than a small entity—$130.00

(i) Surcharge for accepting a maintenance fee after expiration of a patent for non-timely payment of a maintenance fee where the delay in payment is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to have been: (1) Unavoidable—$700.00 (2) Unintentional—$1,640.00

(j) For filing an application for extension of the term of a patent (§ 1.740)—$1,060.00

(1) Application for extension under § 1.740—$1,120.00
§ 1.21 Miscellaneous fees and charges.

The Patent and Trademark Office has established the following fees for the services indicated:

(a) Registration of attorneys and agents:

(1) For admission to examination for registration to practice:
   (i) Application Fee (non-refundable) — $40.00
   (ii) Registration examination fee — $310.00

(2) On registration to practice — $100.00

(3) For reinstatement to practice — $40.00

(4) For certificate of good standing as an attorney or agent — $10.00

Suitable for framing — $20.00

(b) Deposit accounts:

(1) For establishing a deposit account — $10.00

(2) Service charge for each month when the balance at the end of the month is below $1,000 — $25.00

(3) Service charge for each month when the balance at the end of the month is below $300 for restricted subscription deposit accounts used exclusively for subscription order of patent copies as issued — $25.00

(c) Disclosure document: For filing a disclosure document — $10.00

(d) Delivery box: Local delivery box rental, per annum — $50.00

(e) International type search reports: For preparing an international type search report of an international type search made at the time of the first action on the merits in a national patent application — $40.00

(f) [Reserved]

(g) Self-service copy charge, per page — $0.25

(h) For recording each assignment, agreement or other paper relating to the property in a patent or application, per property — $40.00

(i) For publication in Official Gazette: For publication in the Official Gazette of a notice of the availability of an application or a patent for licensing or sale:

Each application or patent — $25.00

(j) Labor charges for services, per hour or fraction thereof — $40.00

(k) For items and services that the Commissioner finds may be supplied, for which fees are not specified by statute or by this part, such charges as may be determined by the Commissioner with respect to each such item or service — Actual Cost

(l) For processing and retaining any application abandoned pursuant to § 1.53(f), unless the required basic filing fee (§ 1.16) has been paid — $130.00

(m) For processing each payment refused (including a check returned “unpaid”) or charged back by a financial institution — $50.00

(n) For handling an application in which proceedings are terminated pursuant to § 1.53(e) — $130.00

(o) Marginal cost, paid in advance, for each hour of terminal session time, including print time, using Automated Patent System full-text search capabilities, prorated for the actual time used. The Commissioner may waive the payment by an individual for access to the Automated Patent System full-text search capability (APS-Text) upon a showing of need or hardship, and if such waiver is in the public interest — $40.00


EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 65 FR 33455, May 24, 2000, § 1.21 was amended by revising paragraph (m), effective July 24, 2000. For your convenience, the superseded text follows:
§ 1.21 Miscellaneous fees and charges.

(m) For processing each check returned "unpaid" by a bank—$50.00.

§ 1.22 Fees payable in advance.

(a) Patent and trademark fees and charges payable to the Patent and Trademark Office are required to be paid in advance, that is, at the time of requesting any action by the Office for which a fee or charge is payable with the exception that under § 1.53 applications for patent may be assigned a filing date without payment of the basic filing fee.

(b) All patent and trademark fees paid to the Patent and Trademark Office should be itemized in each individual application, patent or other proceeding in such a manner that it is clear for which purpose the fees are paid.

§ 1.23 Methods of payment.

(a) All payments of money required for United States Patent and Trademark Office fees, including fees for the processing of international applications (§ 1.445), shall be made in U.S. dollars and in the form of a cashier’s or certified check, Treasury note, national bank notes, or United States Postal Service money order. If sent in any other form, the Office may delay or cancel the credit until collection is made. Checks and money orders must be made payable to the Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office. (Checks made payable to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks will continue to be accepted.) Payments from foreign countries must be payable and immediately negotiable in the United States for the full amount of the fee required. Money sent to the Office by mail will be at the risk of the sender, and letters containing money should be registered with the United States Postal Service.

(b) Payments of money required for United States Patent and Trademark Office fees may also be made by credit card. Payment of a fee by credit card must specify the amount to be charged to the credit card and such other information as is necessary to process the charge, and is subject to collection of the fee. The Office will not accept a general authorization to charge fees to a credit card. If credit card information is provided on a form or document other than a form provided by the Office for the payment of fees by credit card, the Office will not be liable if the credit card number becomes public knowledge.

§ 1.24 Coupons.

Coupons in denominations of three dollars, for the purchase of patents, designs, defensive publications, statutory invention registrations, and trademark registrations are sold by the Patent and Trademark Office for the convenience of the general public; these coupons may not be used for any other purpose. The three-dollar coupons are sold individually and in books of 50 for $150.00. These coupons are good until used; they may be transferred but cannot be redeemed.

§ 1.25 Deposit accounts.

(a) For the convenience of attorneys, and the general public in paying any fees due, in ordering services offered by the Office, copies of records, etc., deposit accounts may be established in the Patent and Trademark Office upon payment of the fee for establishing a deposit account (§ 1.21(b)(1)). A minimum deposit of $1,000 is required for paying any fees due or in ordering any services offered by the Office. However, a minimum deposit of $300 may be paid to establish a restricted subscription deposit account used exclusively for subscription order of patent copies as issued. At the end of each month, a deposit account statement will be rendered. A remittance must be made promptly upon receipt of the statement to cover the value of items or services charged to the account and thus restore the account to its established normal deposit. An amount sufficient to cover all fees, services, copies, etc.,
§ 1.26

requested must always be on deposit. Charges to accounts with insufficient funds will not be accepted. A service charge (§1.21(b)(2)) will be assessed for each month that the balance at the end of the month is below $1,000. For restricted subscription deposit accounts, a service charge (§1.21(b)(3)) will be assessed for each month that the balance at the end of the month is below $300.

(b) Filing, issue, appeal, international-type search report, international application processing, petition, and post-issuance fees may be charged against these accounts if sufficient funds are on deposit to cover such fees. A general authorization to charge all fees, or only certain fees, set forth in §§1.16 to 1.18 to a deposit account containing sufficient funds may be filed in an individual application, either for the entire pendency of the application or with respect to a particular paper filed. An authorization to charge to a deposit account the fee for a request for reexamination pursuant to §1.510 and any other fees required in a reexamination proceeding in a patent may also be filed with the request for reexamination. An authorization to charge a fee to a deposit account will not be considered payment of the fee on the date the authorization to charge the fee is effective as to the particular fee to be charged unless sufficient funds are present in the account to cover the fee.

[49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984, as amended at 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985]

§ 1.27

Statement of status as small entity.

(a) Any person seeking to establish status as a small entity (§1.9(f) of this part) for purposes of paying fees in an application or a patent must file a statement in the application or patent prior to or with the first fee paid as a small entity. Such a statement need only be filed once in an application or patent and remains in effect until changed.

(b) When establishing status as a small entity pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, any statement filed on behalf of an independent inventor must be signed by the independent inventor except as provided in §1.42, §1.43, or §1.47 of this part and must state that the inventor qualifies as an independent inventor in accordance with §1.9(c) of this part. Where there are joint inventors in an application, each inventor must file a statement establishing status as an independent inventor in order to qualify as a small entity. Where any rights have been assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, or there is an obligation to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights to a small business concern, a nonprofit organization, or any other individual, a statement must be filed by the individual, the owner of the small business concern, or an official of the small business concern or nonprofit organization empowered to act on behalf of the small business concern or nonprofit organization identifying their status. For purposes of a statement under this paragraph, a license to a Federal agency resulting from a funding agreement with that agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not constitute a license as set forth in §1.9 of this part.

(c) If the Commissioner decides not to institute a reexamination proceeding, a refund of $1,690 will be made to the requester of the proceeding. Reexamination requesters should indicate whether any refund should be made by check or by credit to a deposit account.

(c)(1) Any statement filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section on behalf of a small business concern must:

(i) Be signed by the owner or an official of the small business concern empowered to act on behalf of the concern;

(ii) State that the concern qualifies as a small business concern as defined in §1.9(d); and

(iii) State that the exclusive rights to the invention have been conveyed to and remain with the small business concern or, if the rights are not exclusive, that all other rights belong to small entities as defined in §1.9.

(2) Where the rights of the small business concern as a small entity are not exclusive, a statement must also be filed by the other small entities having rights stating their status as such. For purposes of a statement under this paragraph, a license to a Federal agency resulting from a funding agreement with that agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not constitute a license as set forth in §1.9.

(d)(1) Any statement filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section on behalf of a nonprofit organization must:

(i) Be signed by an official of the nonprofit organization empowered to act on behalf of the organization;

(ii) State that the organization qualifies as a nonprofit organization as defined in §1.9(e) of this part specifying under which one of §1.9(e) (1), (2), (3), or (4) of this part the organization qualifies; and

(iii) State that exclusive rights to the invention have been conveyed to and remain with the organization or if the rights are not exclusive that all other rights belong to small entities as defined in §1.9 of this part.

(2) Where the rights of the nonprofit organization as a small entity are not exclusive, a statement must also be filed by the other small entities having rights stating their status as such. For purposes of a statement under this paragraph, a license to a Federal agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not constitute a conveyance of rights as set forth in this paragraph.

(62 FR 53183, Oct. 10, 1997)
basic statutory filing fee will be treated as such a reference for purposes of this section.

(3) Once status as a small entity has been established in an application or patent, the status remains in that application or patent without the filing of a further statement pursuant to §1.27 of this part unless the Office is notified of a change in status.

(b) Once status as a small entity has been established in an application or patent, fees as a small entity may thereafter be paid in that application or patent without regard to a change in status until the issue fee is due or any maintenance fee is due. Notification of any change in status resulting in loss of entitlement to small entity status must be filed in the application or patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest of the issue fee or any maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity is no longer appropriate pursuant to §1.9 of this part. The notification of change in status may be signed by the applicant, any person authorized to sign on behalf of the assignee, or an attorney or agent of record or acting in a representative capacity pursuant to §1.34(a) of this part.

(c) If status as a small entity is established in good faith, and fees as a small entity are paid in good faith, in any application or patent, and it is later discovered that such status as a small entity was established in error or that through error the Office was not notified of a change in status as required by paragraph (b) of this section, the error will be excused upon payment of the deficiency between the amount paid and the amount due. The deficiency is based on the amount of the fee, for other than a small entity, in effect at the time the deficiency is paid in full.

(d)(1) Any attempt to fraudulently (i) establish status as a small entity or (ii) pay fees as a small entity shall be considered as a fraud practiced or attempted on the Office.

(3) Improperly and with intent to deceive

(i) Establishing status as a small entity, or

(ii) Paying fees as a small entity shall be considered as a fraud practiced or attempted on the Office.


Subpart B—National Processing Provisions

Prosecution of Application and Appointment of Attorney or Agent

§1.31 Applicants may be represented by a registered attorney or agent.

An applicant for a patent may file and prosecute his or her own case, or he or she may be represented by a registered attorney, registered agent, or other individual authorized to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in patent cases. See §§10.6 and 10.9 of this subchapter. The Patent and Trademark Office cannot aid in the selection of a registered attorney or agent.

50 F.R. 5171, Feb. 6, 1985

§1.32 [Reserved]

§1.33 Correspondence respecting patent applications, reexamination proceedings, and other proceedings.

(a) The applicant, the assignee(s) of the entire interest (see §§3.71 and 3.73) or an attorney or agent of record (see §1.34(b)) may specify a correspondence address to which communications about the application are to be directed. All notices, official letters, and other communications in the application will be directed to the correspondence address or, if no such correspondence address is specified, to an attorney or agent of record (see §1.34(b)), or, if no attorney or agent is of record, to the applicant, so long as a post office box address has been furnished in the application.

Double correspondence with an applicant and an attorney or agent, or with more than one attorney or agent, will not be undertaken. If more than one attorney or agent is made of record and a correspondence address has not been specified, correspondence will be held with the one last made of record.
(b) Amendments and other papers filed in the application must be signed by:

1. An attorney or agent of record appointed in compliance with §1.34(b);
2. A registered attorney or agent not of record who acts in a representative capacity under the provisions of §1.34(a);
3. The assignee of record of the entire interest, if there is an assignee of record of the entire interest;
4. An assignee of record of an undivided part interest, and any assignee(s) of the remaining interest and any applicant retaining an interest, if there is an assignee of record of an undivided part interest; or
5. All of the applicants (§§ 1.42, 1.43 and 1.47) for patent, unless there is an assignee of record of the entire interest and such assignee has taken action in the application in accordance with §§3.71 and 3.73.

(c) All notices, official letters, and other communications for the patent owner or owners in a reexamination proceeding will be directed to the attorney or agent of record (see §1.34(b)) in the patent file at the address listed on the register of patent attorneys and agents maintained pursuant to §§10.5 and 10.11 or, if no attorney or agent is of record, to the patent owner or owners at the address or addresses of record. Amendments and other papers filed in a reexamination proceeding on behalf of the patent owner must be signed by the patent owner, or if there is more than one owner by all the owners, or by an attorney or agent of record in the patent file, or by a registered attorney or agent or not of record who acts in a representative capacity under the provisions of §1.34(a). Double correspondence with the patent owner or owners and the patent owner's attorney or agent, or with more than one attorney or agent, will not be undertaken. If more than one attorney or agent is of record and a correspondence address has not been specified, correspondence will be held with the last attorney or agent made of record.

(d) A “correspondence address” or change thereto may be filed with the Patent and Trademark Office during the enforceable life of the patent. The “correspondence address” will be used in any correspondence relating to maintenance fees unless a separate “fee address” has been specified. See §1.363 for “fee address” used solely for maintenance fee purposes.

§ 1.34 Recognition for representation.

(a) When a registered attorney or agent acting in a representative capacity appears in person or signs a paper in practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in a patent case, his or her personal appearance or signature shall constitute a representation to the Patent and Trademark Office that under the provisions of this subchapter and the law, he or she is authorized to represent the particular party in whose behalf he or she acts. In filing such a paper, the registered attorney or agent should specify his or her registration number with his or her signature. Further proof of authority to act in a representative capacity may be required.

(b) When an attorney or agent shall have filed his or her power of attorney, or authorization, duly executed by the person or persons entitled to prosecute an application or a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding, he or she is a principal attorney of record in the case. A principal attorney or agent, so appointed, may appoint an associate attorney or agent who shall also then be of record.

§ 1.36 Revocation of power of attorney or authorization; withdrawal of attorney or agent.

A power of attorney or authorization of agent may be revoked at any stage in the proceedings of a case, and an attorney or agent may withdraw, upon application to and approval by the Commissioner. An attorney or agent, except an associate attorney or agent whose address is the same as that of the principal attorney or agent, will be notified of the revocation of the power of attorney or authorization, and the applicant or patent owner will be notified of the withdrawal of the attorney.
or agent. An assignment will not of itself operate as a revocation of a power or authorization previously given, but the assignee of the entire interest may revoke previous powers and be represented by an attorney or agent of the assignee's own selection. See §1.613(d) for withdrawal of an attorney or agent of record in an interference.

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984]

WHO MAY APPLY FOR A PATENT

§ 1.41 Applicant for patent.

(a) A patent is applied for in the name or names of the actual inventor or inventors.

(1) The inventorship of a nonprovisional application is that inventorship set forth in the oath or declaration as prescribed by §1.63, except as provided for in §1.53(d)(4) and §1.63(d). If an oath or declaration as prescribed by §1.63 is not filed during the pendency of a nonprovisional application, the inventorship is that inventorship set forth in the application papers filed pursuant to §1.53(b), unless a petition under this paragraph accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(i) is filed supplying or changing the name or names of the inventor or inventors.

(2) The inventorship of a provisional application is that inventorship set forth in the cover sheet as prescribed by §1.51(c)(1). If a cover sheet as prescribed by §1.51(c)(1) is not filed during the pendency of a provisional application, the inventorship is that inventorship set forth in the application papers filed pursuant to §1.53(c), unless a petition under this paragraph accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(q) is filed supplying or changing the name or names of the inventor or inventors.

(3) In a nonprovisional application filed without an oath or declaration as prescribed by §1.63 or a provisional application filed without a cover sheet as prescribed by §1.51(c)(1), the name or names of person or persons believed to be the actual inventor or inventors should be provided for identification purposes when the application papers pursuant to §1.53(b) or (c) are filed. If no name of a person believed to be an actual inventor is provided, the application should include an applicant identifier consisting of alphanumeric characters.

(b) Unless the contrary is indicated the word “applicant” when used in these sections refers to the inventor or joint inventors who are applying for a patent, or to the person mentioned in §§1.42, 1.43, or 1.47 who is applying for a patent in place of the inventor.

(c) Any person authorized by the applicant may file an application for patent on behalf of the inventor or inventors, but an oath or declaration for the application (§1.63) can only be made in accordance with §1.64.

(d) A showing may be required from the person filing the application that the filing was authorized where such authorization comes into question.


§ 1.42 When the inventor is dead.

In case of the death of the inventor, the legal representative (executor, administrator, etc.) of the deceased inventor may make the necessary oath or declaration, and apply for and obtain the patent. Where the inventor dies during the time intervening between the filing of the application and the granting of a patent thereon, the letters patent may be issued to the legal representative upon proper intervention.


§ 1.43 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.

In case an inventor is insane or otherwise legally incapacitated, the legal representative (guardian, conservator, etc.) of such inventor may make the necessary oath or declaration, and apply for and obtain the patent.


§ 1.44 Proof of authority.

In the cases mentioned in §§1.42 and 1.43, proof of the power or authority of the legal representative must be recorded in the Patent and Trademark
§ 1.45 Joint inventors.

(a) Joint inventors must apply for a patent jointly and each must make the required oath or declaration: neither of them alone, nor less than the entire number, can apply for a patent for an invention invented by them jointly, except as provided in §1.47.

(b) Inventors may apply for a patent jointly even though

(1) They did not physically work together or at the same time,
(2) Each inventor did not make the same type or amount of contribution, or
(3) Each inventor did not make a contribution to the subject matter of every claim of the application.

(c) If multiple inventors are named in a nonprovisional application, each named inventor must have made a contribution, individually or jointly, to the subject matter of at least one claim of the application and the application will be considered to be a joint application under 35 U.S.C. 116. If multiple inventors are named in a provisional application, each named inventor must have made a contribution, individually or jointly, to the subject matter disclosed in the provisional application and the provisional application will be considered to be a joint application under 35 U.S.C. 116.


§ 1.46 Assigned inventions and patents.

In case the whole or a part interest in the invention or in the patent to be issued is assigned, the application must still be made or authorized to be made, and an oath or declaration signed, by the inventor or one of the persons mentioned in §1.42, 1.43, or 1.47. However, the patent may be issued to the assignee or jointly to the inventor and the assignee as provided in §3.81.


§ 1.47 Filing when an inventor refuses to sign or cannot be reached.

(a) If a joint inventor refuses to join in an application for patent or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, the application may be made by the other inventor on behalf of himself or herself and the nonsigning inventor. The oath or declaration in such an application must be accompanied by a petition including proof of the pertinent facts, the fee set forth in §1.17(i) and the last known address of the nonsigning inventor. The Patent and Trademark Office shall, except in a continued prosecution application under §1.53(d), forward notice of the filing of the application to the nonsigning inventor at said address and publish notice of the filing of the application in the Official Gazette. The nonsigning inventor may subsequently join in the application on filing an oath or declaration complying with §1.63.

(b) Whenever all of the inventors refuse to execute an application for patent, or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, a person to whom an inventor has assigned or agreed in writing to assign the invention or who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter justifying such action may make application for patent on behalf of and as agent for all the inventors. The oath or declaration in such an application must be accompanied by a petition including proof of the pertinent facts, a showing that such action is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties or to prevent irreparable damage, the fee set forth in §1.17(i), and the last known address of all of the inventors. The Office shall, except in a continued prosecution application under §1.53(d), forward notice of the filing of the application to all of the inventors at the addresses stated in the application and publish notice of the filing of the application in the Official Gazette. An inventor may subsequently join in the application on filing an oath or declaration complying with §1.63.

(62 FR 53184, Oct. 10, 1997)
§ 1.48 Correction of inventorship in a patent application, other than a reissue application.

(a) If the inventive entity is set forth in error in an executed §1.63 oath or declaration in an application, other than a reissue application, and such error arose without any deceptive intention on the part of the person named as an inventor in error or on the part of the person who through error was not named as an inventor, the application may be amended to name only the actual inventor or inventors. When the application is involved in an interference, the amendment must comply with the requirements of this section and must be accompanied by a motion under §1.634. Such amendment must be accompanied by:

(1) A petition including a statement from each person being added as an inventor and from each person being deleted as an inventor that the error in inventorship occurred without deceptive intention on his or her part;
(2) An oath or declaration by the actual inventor or inventors as required by §1.63 or as permitted by §§1.42, 1.43 or 1.47;
(3) The fee set forth in §1.17(i); and
(4) If an assignment has been executed by any of the original named inventors, the written consent of the assignee (see §3.73(b)).

(b) If the correct inventors are named in a nonprovisional application, other than a reissue application, and the prosecution of the application results in the amendment or cancellation of claims so that fewer than all of the currently named inventors are the actual inventors of the invention being claimed in the application, an amendment must be filed deleting the name or names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed. When the application is involved in an interference, the amendment must comply with the requirements of this section and must be accompanied by a motion under §1.634. Such amendment must be accompanied by:

(1) A petition including a statement identifying each named inventor who is being deleted and acknowledging that the inventor's invention is no longer being claimed in the application; and
(2) The fee set forth in §1.17(i).

(c) If a nonprovisional application, other than a reissue application, discloses unclaimed subject matter by an inventor or inventors not named in the application, the application may be amended to add claims to the subject matter and name the correct inventors for the application. When the application is involved in an interference, the amendment must comply with the requirements of this section and must be accompanied by a motion under §1.634. Such amendment must be accompanied by:

(1) A petition including a statement from each person being added as an inventor that the amendment is necessitated by amendment of the claims and that the inventorship error occurred without deceptive intention on his or her part;
(2) An oath or declaration by the actual inventor or inventors as required by §1.63 or as permitted by §§1.42, 1.43 or 1.47;
(3) The fee set forth in §1.17(i); and
(4) If an assignment has been executed by any of the original named inventors, the written consent of the assignee (see §3.73(b)).

(d) If the name or names of an inventor or inventors were omitted in a provisional application through error without any deceptive intention on the part of the omitted inventor or inventors, the provisional application may be amended to add the name or names of the omitted inventor or inventors. Such amendment must be accompanied by:

(1) A petition including a statement that the inventorship error occurred without deceptive intention on the part of the omitted inventor or inventors; and
(2) The fee set forth in §1.17(g).

(e) If a person or persons were named as an inventor or inventors in a provisional application through error without any deceptive intention on the part of such person or persons, an amendment may be filed in the provisional application deleting the name or names of the person or persons who were erroneously named. Such amendment must be accompanied by:

(1) A petition including a statement by the person or persons whose name
or names are being deleted that the inventorship error occurred without deceptive intention on the part of such person or persons;

(2) The fee set forth in §1.17(q); and

(3) If an assignment has been executed by any of the original named inventors, the written consent of the assignee (see §3.73(b)).

(f) (1) If the correct inventor or inventors are not named on filing a non-provisional application under §1.53(b) without an executed oath or declaration under §1.63, the later submission of an executed oath or declaration under §1.63 during the pendency of the application will act to correct the earlier identification of inventorship.

(2) If the correct inventor or inventors are not named on filing a provisional application under §1.53(c) without a cover sheet under §1.51(c)(1), the later submission of a cover sheet under §1.51(c)(1) during the pendency of the application will act to correct the earlier identification of inventorship.

(g) The Office may require such other information as may be deemed appropriate under the particular circumstances surrounding the correction of inventorship.


§ 1.52 Language, paper, writing, margins.

(a) The application, any amendments or corrections thereto, and the oath or declaration must be in the English language except as provided for in §1.69 and paragraph (d) of this section, or be accompanied by a translation of the application and a translation of any corrections or amendments into the English language together with a statement that the translation is accurate. All papers which are to become a part of the permanent records of the Patent and Trademark Office must be legibly written either by a typewriter or mechanical printer in permanent dark ink or its equivalent in portrait orientation on flexible, strong, smooth, non-shiny, durable, and white paper. All of the application papers must be presented in a form having sufficient clarity and contrast between the paper and the writing thereon to permit the direct reproduction of readily legible copies in any number by use of photographic, electrostatic, photo-offset, and microfilming processes and electronic reproduction by use of digital
imaging and optical character recognition. If the papers are not of the required quality, substitute typewritten or mechanically printed papers of suitable quality will be required. See §1.125 for filing substitute typewritten or mechanically printed papers constituting a substitute specification when required by the Office.

(b) Except for drawings, the application papers (specification, including claims, abstract, oath or declaration, and papers as provided for in this part) and also papers subsequently filed, must have each page plainly written on only one side of a sheet of paper, with the claim or claims commencing on a separate sheet and the abstract commencing on a separate sheet. See §§1.72(b) and 1.75(h). The sheets of paper must be the same size and either 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4) or 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8½ by 11 inches). Each sheet must include a top margin of at least 2.0 cm. (¾ inch), a left side margin of at least 2.5 cm. (1 inch), a right side margin of at least 2.0 cm. (¾ inch), and a bottom margin of at least 2.0 cm. (¾ inch), and no holes should be made in the sheets as submitted. The lines of the specification, and any amendments to the specification, must be 1½ or double spaced. The pages of the specification including claims and abstract must be numbered consecutively, starting with 1, the numbers being centrally located above or preferably, below, the text. See §1.84 for drawings.

(c) Any interlineation, erasure, cancellation or other alteration of the application papers filed should be made on or before the signing of any accompanying oath or declaration pursuant to §1.63 referring to those application papers and should be dated and initialed or signed by the applicant on the same sheet of paper. Application papers containing alterations made after the signing of an oath or declaration pursuant to §1.63 referring to those application papers and should be dated and initialed or signed by the applicant on the same sheet of paper. Application papers containing alterations made after the signing of an oath or declaration referring to those application papers must be supported by a supplemental oath or declaration under §1.67(c). After the signing of the oath or declaration referring to the application papers, amendments may only be made in the manner provided by §1.121.

(d) An application may be filed in a language other than English. An English translation of the non-English language application, a statement that the translation is accurate, and the fee set forth in §1.17(k) are required to be filed with the application or within such time as may be set by the Office.
on which a specification as prescribed by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112, and any drawing required by §1.81(a) are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. No amendment, other than to make the provisional application comply with the patent statute and all applicable regulations, may be made to the provisional application after the filing date of the provisional application.

(1) A provisional application must also include the cover sheet required by §1.51(c)(1) or a cover letter identifying the application as a provisional application. Otherwise, the application will be treated as an application filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(2) An application for patent filed under paragraph (b) of this section may be converted to a provisional application and be accorded the original filing date of the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(i) Provided that a petition requesting the conversion, with the fee set forth in §1.17(q), is filed prior to the earliest of:

(A) Abandonment of the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section;

(B) Payment of the issue fee on the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section;

(C) Expiration of twelve months after the filing date of the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section;

(D) The filing of a request for a statutory invention registration under §1.293 in the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(ii) The grant of any such petition will not entitle applicant to a refund of the fees which were properly paid in the application filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(3) A provisional application filed under paragraph (c) of this section may be converted to a nonprovisional application under paragraph (b) of this section and accorded the original filing date of the provisional application. The conversion of a provisional application to a nonprovisional application will not result in either the refund of any fee properly paid in the provisional application or the application of any such fee to the filing fees or any other fee, for the nonprovisional application. A request to convert a provisional application to a nonprovisional application must be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(i) and an amendment including at least one claim as prescribed by the second paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112, unless the provisional application under paragraph (c) of this section otherwise contains at least one claim as prescribed by the second paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. A request to convert a provisional application to a nonprovisional application must also be filed prior to the earliest of:

(i) Abandonment of the provisional application filed under paragraph (c) of this section; or

(ii) Expiration of twelve months after the filing date of the provisional application filed under paragraph (c) of this section.

(4) A provisional application is not entitled to the right of priority under 35 U.S.C. 119 or 365(a) or §1.55, or to the benefit of an earlier filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c) or §1.78 of any other application. No claim for priority under §1.78(a)(3) may be made in a design application based on a provisional application. No request under §1.293 for a statutory invention registration may be filed in a provisional application. The requirements of §§1.821 through 1.825 regarding application disclosures containing nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences are not mandatory for provisional applications.

(d) Application filing requirements—Continued prosecution (nonprovisional) application. (1) A continuation or divisional application (but not a continuation-in-part) of a prior nonprovisional application may be filed as a continued prosecution application under this paragraph, provided that:

(i) The prior nonprovisional application is:

(A) A utility or plant application that was filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) before May 29, 2000, and is complete as defined by §1.51(b);

(B) A design application that is complete as defined by §1.51(b); or

(C) The national stage of an international application that was filed under 35 U.S.C. 363 before May 29, 2000, and is in compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371; and
§ 1.53

(ii) The application under this paragraph is filed before the earliest of:

(A) Payment of the issue fee on the prior application, unless a petition under §1.313(c) is granted in the prior application;

(B) Abandonment of the prior application; or

(C) Termination of proceedings on the prior application.

(2) The filing date of a continued prosecution application is the date on which a request on a separate paper for an application under this paragraph is filed. An application filed under this paragraph:

(i) Must identify the prior application;

(ii) Discloses and claims only subject matter disclosed in the prior application;

(iii) Names as inventors the same inventors named in the prior application on the date the application under this paragraph was filed, except as provided in paragraph (d)(4) of this section;

(iv) Includes the request for an application under this paragraph, will utilize the file jacket and contents of the prior application, including the specification, drawings and oath or declaration from the prior application, to constitute the new application, and will be assigned the application number of the prior application for identification purposes; and

(v) Is a request to expressly abandon the prior application as of the filing date of the request for an application under this paragraph.

(3) The filing fee for a continued prosecution application filed under this paragraph is:

(i) The basic filing fee as set forth in §1.16 and

(ii) Any additional §1.16 fee due based on the number of claims remaining in the application after entry of any amendment accompanying the request for an application under this paragraph and entry of any amendments under §1.116 unentered in the prior application which applicant has requested to be entered in the continued prosecution application.

(4) An application filed under this paragraph may be filed by fewer than all the inventors named in the prior application, provided that the request for an application under this paragraph when filed is accompanied by a statement requesting deletion of the name or names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed in the new application. No person may be named as an inventor in an application filed under this paragraph who was not named as an inventor in the prior application on the date the application under this paragraph was filed, except by way of a petition under §1.48.

(5) Any new change must be made in the form of an amendment to the prior application as it existed prior to the filing of an application under this paragraph. No amendment in an application under this paragraph (a continued prosecution application) may introduce new matter or matter that would have been new matter in the prior application. Any new specification filed with the request for an application under this paragraph will not be considered part of the original application papers, but will be treated as a substitute specification in accordance with §1.125.

(6) The filing of a continued prosecution application under this paragraph will be construed to include a waiver of confidentiality by the applicant under 35 U.S.C. 122 to the extent that any member of the public, who is entitled under the provisions of §1.14 to access to, copies of, or information concerning either the prior application or any continuing application filed under the provisions of this paragraph, may be given similar access to, copies of, or similar information concerning the other application or applications in the file jacket.

(7) A request for an application under this paragraph is the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 120 to every application assigned the application number identified in such request. No amendment in an application under this paragraph may delete this specific reference to any prior application.

(8) In addition to identifying the application number of the prior application, applicant should furnish in the request for an application under this paragraph the following information relating to the prior application to the best of his or her ability:

(i) Title of invention;
§ 1.53

(ii) Name of applicant(s); and
(iii) Correspondence address.
(9) Envelopes containing only requests and fees for filing an application under this paragraph should be marked “Box CPA.” Requests for an application under this paragraph filed by facsimile transmission should be clearly marked “Box CPA.”
(e) Failure to meet filing date requirements. (1) If an application deposited under paragraph (b), (c), or (d) of this section does not meet the requirements of such paragraph to be entitled to a filing date, applicant will be so notified, if a correspondence address has been provided, and given a time period within which to correct the filing error.
(2) Any request for review of a notification pursuant to paragraph (e)(1) of this section, or a notification that the original application papers lack a portion of the specification or drawing(s), must be by way of a petition pursuant to this paragraph. Any petition under this paragraph must be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(i) in an application filed under paragraphs (b) or (d) of this section, and the fee set forth in §1.17(q) in an application filed under paragraph (c) of this section. In the absence of a timely (§1.181(f)) petition pursuant to this paragraph, the filing date of an application in which the applicant was notified of a filing error pursuant to paragraph (e)(1) of this section will be the date the filing error is corrected.
(3) If an applicant is notified of a filing error pursuant to paragraph (e)(1) of this section, but fails to correct the filing error within the given time period or otherwise timely (§1.181(f)) petition pursuant to this paragraph, proceedings in the application will be considered terminated. Where proceedings in an application are terminated pursuant to this paragraph, the application may be disposed of, and any filing fees, less the handling fee set forth in §1.21(n), will be refunded.
(f) Completion of application subsequent to filing—Provisional application. If a provisional application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section does not include the appropriate filing fee or the cover sheet required by §1.51(c)(1), applicant will be so notified, if a correspondence address has been provided, and given a period of time within which to file the fee, cover sheet, and the surcharge as set forth in §1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. See §1.63(d) concerning the submission of a copy of the oath or declaration from the prior application for a continuation or divisional application. If the required filing fee is not timely paid, or if the processing and retention fee set forth in §1.21(l) is not paid within one year of the date of mailing of the notification required by this paragraph, the application may be disposed of. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section. If no correspondence address is included in the application, applicant has two months from the filing date to file the basic filing fee, the oath or declaration in an application under paragraph (b) of this section, and the surcharge as set forth in §1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application; or, if no basic filing fee has been paid, one year from the filing date to pay the processing and retention fee set forth in §1.21(l) to prevent disposal of the application.
(g) Completion of application subsequent to filing—Provisional application. If a provisional application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section does not include the appropriate filing fee or an oath or declaration by the applicant pursuant to §1.63 or §1.175, or, if an application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section does not include the appropriate filing fee, applicant will be so notified, if a correspondence address has been provided, and given a period of time within which to file the fee, oath or declaration, and the surcharge as set forth in §1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. See §1.63(d) concerning the submission of a copy of the oath or declaration from the prior application for a continuation or divisional application. If the required filing fee is not timely paid, or if the processing and retention fee set forth in §1.21(l) is not paid within one year of the date of mailing of the notification required by this paragraph, the application may be disposed of. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section. If no correspondence address is included in the application, applicant has two months from the filing date to file the basic filing fee, the oath or declaration in an application under paragraph (b) of this section, and the surcharge as set forth in §1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application; or, if no basic filing fee has been paid, one year from the filing date to pay the processing and retention fee set forth in §1.21(l) to prevent disposal of the application.
§ 1.54

Parts of application to be filed together; filing receipt.

(a) It is desirable that all parts of the complete application be deposited in the Office together; otherwise, a letter must accompany each part, accurately and clearly connecting it with the other parts of the application. See §1.53(f) and (g) with regard to completion of an application.

(b) Applicant will be informed of the application number and filing date by a filing receipt, unless the application is an application filed under §1.53(d).


§ 1.55

Claim for foreign priority.

(a) An applicant in a nonprovisional application may claim the benefit of the filing date of one or more prior foreign applications under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 119(a) through (d) and 172. The claim to priority need be in no special form and may be made by the attorney or agent if the foreign application is referred to in the oath or declaration as required by §1.63. The claim for priority and the certified copy of the foreign application specified in 35 U.S.C. 119(b) must be filed in the case of an interference (§1.630), when necessary to overcome the date of a reference relied upon by the examiner, when specifically required by the examiner, and in all other situations, before the patent is granted. If the claim for priority or the certified copy of the foreign application is filed after the date the issue fee is paid, it must be accompanied by a petition requesting entry and by the fee set forth in §1.17(i). If the certified copy is not in the English language, a translation need not be filed except in the case of interference; or when necessary to overcome the date of a reference relied upon by the examiner; or when specifically required by the examiner, in which event an English language translation must be filed together with a statement that the translation of the certified copy is accurate.

(b) An applicant in a nonprovisional application may under certain circumstances claim priority on the basis of one or more applications for an inventor's certificate in a country granting both inventor's certificates and patents. To claim the right of priority on the basis of an application for an inventor's certificate in such a country under 35 U.S.C. 119(d), the applicant when submitting a claim for such right as specified in paragraph (a) of this section, shall include an affidavit or declaration. The affidavit or declaration must include a specific statement that, upon an investigation, he or she is satisfied that to the best of his or her knowledge, the applicant, when filing the application for the inventor's certificate, had the option to file an application for either a patent or an inventor's certificate as to the subject matter of the identified claim or claims forming the basis for the claim of priority.

§ 1.56 Duty to disclose information material to patentability.

(a) A patent by its very nature is affected with a public interest. The public interest is best served, and the most effective patent examination occurs when, at the time an application is being examined, the Office is aware of and evaluates the teachings of all information material to patentability. Each individual associated with the filing and prosecution of a patent application has a duty of candor and good faith in dealing with the Office, which includes a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to that individual to be material to patentability as defined in this section. The duty to disclose information exists with respect to each pending claim until the claim is cancelled or withdrawn from consideration, or the application becomes abandoned. Information material to the patentability of a claim that is cancelled or withdrawn from consideration need not be submitted if the information is not material to the patentability of any claim remaining under consideration in the application. There is no duty to submit information which is not material to the patentability of any existing claim. The duty to disclose all information known to be material to patentability is deemed to be satisfied if all information known to be material to patentability of any claim issued in a patent was cited by the Office or submitted to the Office in the manner prescribed by §§ 1.97(b)-(d) and 1.98. However, no patent will be granted on an application in connection with which fraud on the Office was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or intentional misconduct. The Office encourages applicants to carefully examine:

(1) Prior art cited in search reports of a foreign patent office in a counterpart application, and

(2) The closest information over which individuals associated with the filing or prosecution of a patent application believe any pending claim patently defines, to make sure that any material information contained therein is disclosed to the Office.

(b) Under this section, information is material to patentability when it is not cumulative to information already of record or being made of record in the application, and

(1) It establishes, by itself or in combination with other information, a prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim; or

(2) It refutes, or is inconsistent with, a position the applicant takes in:

(i) Opposing an argument of unpatentability relied on by the Office, or

(ii) Asserting an argument of patentability.

A prima facie case of unpatentability is established when the information compels a conclusion that a claim is unpatentable under the preponderance of evidence, burden-of-proof standard, giving each term in the claim its broadest reasonable construction consistent with the specification, and before any consideration is given to evidence which may be submitted in an attempt to establish a contrary conclusion of patentability.

(c) Individuals associated with the filing or prosecution of a patent application within the meaning of this section are:

(1) Each inventor named in the application;

(2) Each attorney or agent who prepares or prosecutes the application; and

(3) Every other person who is substantively involved in the preparation or prosecution of the application and who is associated with the inventor, with the assignee or with anyone to whom there is an obligation to assign the application.

(d) Individuals other than the attorney, agent or inventor may comply with this section by disclosing information to the attorney, agent, or inventor.

[57 FR 2034, Jan. 17, 1992]

§ 1.57 [Reserved]

§ 1.58 Chemical and mathematical formulae and tables.

(a) The specification, including the claims, may contain chemical and mathematical formulas, but shall not contain drawings or flow diagrams. The description portion of the specification
may contain tables; claims may contain tables either if necessary to conform to 35 U.S.C. 112 or if otherwise found to be desirable.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) Chemical and mathematical formulae and tables must be presented in compliance with §1.52 (a) and (b), except that chemical and mathematical formulae or tables may be placed in a landscape orientation if they cannot be presented satisfactorily in a portrait orientation. Typewritten characters used in such formulae and tables must be chosen from a block (nonscript) type font or lettering style having capital letters which are at least 0.21 cm. (0.08 inch) high (e.g., elite type). A space at least 0.64 cm. (\(\frac{1}{4}\) inch) high should be provided between complex formulae and tables and the text. Tables should have the lines and columns of data closely spaced to conserve space, consistent with a high degree of legibility.


§ 1.59 Expungement of information or copy of papers in application file.

(a)(1) Information in an application will not be expunged and returned, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. See §1.618 for return of unauthorized and improper papers in interferences.

(2) Information forming part of the original disclosure (i.e., written specification including the claims, drawings, and any preliminary amendment specifically incorporated into an executed oath or declaration under §§1.63 and 1.175) will not be expunged from the application file.

(b) Information, other than what is excluded by paragraph (a)(2) of this section, may be requested to be expunged and returned to applicant upon petition under this paragraph and payment of the petition fee set forth in §1.17(i). Any petition to expunge and return information from an application must establish to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the return of the information is appropriate.

(c) Upon request by an applicant and payment of the fee specified in §1.19(b), the Office will furnish copies of an application, unless the application has been disposed of (see §1.53 (e), (f) and (g)). The Office cannot provide or certify copies of an application that has been disposed of.


§§ 1.60–1.62 [Reserved]

OATH OR DECLARATION

§ 1.63 Oath or declaration.

(a) An oath or declaration filed under §1.51(b)(2) as a part of an application must:

(1) Be executed in accordance with either §1.66 or §1.68;

(2) Identify the specification to which it is directed;

(3) Identify each inventor by: full name, including the family name, and at least one given name without abbreviation together with any other given name or initial, and the residence, post office address and country of citizenship of each inventor; and

(4) State whether the inventor is a sole or joint inventor of the invention claimed.

(b) In addition to meeting the requirements of paragraph (a), the oath or declaration must state that the person making the oath or declaration:

(1) Has reviewed and understands the contents of the specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to in the oath or declaration;

(2) Believes the named inventor or inventors to be the original and first inventor or inventors of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought; and

(3) Acknowledges the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to the person to be material to patentability as defined in §1.56.

(c) In addition to meeting the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the oath or declaration in any application in which a claim for foreign priority is made pursuant to §1.55 must identify the foreign application for patent or inventor’s certificate on which priority is claimed, and any foreign application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed, by specifying the
§ 1.64 Person making oath or declaration.

(a) The oath or declaration must be made by all of the actual inventors except as provided for in §1.42, 1.43, or 1.47.

(b) If the person making the oath or declaration is not the inventor (§1.42, 1.43, or 1.47), the oath or declaration must be filed in any continuation or divisional application naming an inventor not named in the prior application.

(c) A newly executed oath or declaration must be filed in a continuation or divisional application naming an inventor not named in the prior application.

(d)(1) A newly executed oath or declaration is not required under §1.51(b)(2) and §1.53(f) in a continuation or divisional application, provided that:

(i) The prior nonprovisional application contained an oath or declaration as prescribed by paragraphs (a) through (c) of this section;

(ii) The continuation or divisional application was filed by all or by fewer than all of the inventors named in the prior application;

(iii) The specification and drawings filed in the continuation or divisional application contain no matter that would have been new matter in the prior application; and

(iv) A copy of the executed oath or declaration filed in the prior application, showing the signature or an indication thereon that it was signed, is submitted for the continuation or divisional application.

(2) The copy of the executed oath or declaration submitted under this paragraph for a continuation or divisional application must be accompanied by a statement requesting the deletion of the name or names of the person or persons who are not inventors in the continuation or divisional application.

(3) Where the executed oath or declaration of which a copy is submitted for a continuation or divisional application was originally filed in a prior application accorded status under §1.47, the copy of the executed oath or declaration for such prior application must be accompanied by:

(i) A copy of the decision granting a petition to accord §1.47 status to the prior application, unless all inventors or legal representatives have filed an oath or declaration to join in an application accorded status under §1.47 of which the continuation or divisional application claims a benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c); and

(ii) If one or more inventor(s) or legal representative(s) who refused to join in the prior application or could not be found or reached has subsequently joined in the prior application or another application of which the continuation or divisional application claims a benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c), a copy of the subsequently executed oath(s) or declaration(s) filed by the inventor or legal representative to join in the application.

(4) Where the power of attorney (or authorization of agent) or correspondence address was changed during the prosecution of the prior application, the change in power of attorney (or authorization of agent) or correspondence address must be identified in the continuation or divisional application. Otherwise, the Office may not recognize in the continuation or divisional application the change of power of attorney (or authorization of agent) or correspondence address during the prosecution of the prior application.

(5) A newly executed oath or declaration must be filed in a continuation or divisional application naming an inventor not named in the prior application.

(e) A newly executed oath or declaration must be filed in any continuation-in-part application, which application may name all, more, or fewer than all of the inventors named in the prior application. The oath or declaration in any continuation-in-part application must also state that the person making the oath or declaration acknowledges the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to the person to be material to patentability as defined in §1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of the continuation-in-part application.

§ 1.66 Officers authorized to administer oaths.

(a) The oath or affirmation may be made before any person within the United States authorized by law to administer oaths. An oath made in a foreign country may be made before any diplomatic or consular officer of the United States authorized to administer oaths, or before any officer having an official seal and authorized to administer oaths in the foreign country in which the applicant may be, whose authority shall be proved by a certificate of a diplomatic or consular officer of the United States, or by an apostille of an official designated by a foreign country which, by treaty or convention, accords like effect to apostilles of designated officials in the United States. The oath shall be attested in all cases in this and other countries, by the proper official seal of the officer before whom the oath or affirmation is made. Such oath or affirmation shall be valid as to execution if it complies with the laws of the State or country where made. When the person before whom the oath or affirmation is made in this country is not provided with a seal, his official character shall be established by competent evidence, as by a certificate from a clerk of a court of record or other proper officer having a seal.

(b) When the oath is taken before an officer in a country foreign to the United States, any accompanying application papers, except the drawings, must be attached together with the oath and a ribbon passed one or more times through all the sheets of the application, except the drawings, and the ends of said ribbon brought together under the seal before the latter is affixed and impressed, or each sheet must be impressed with the official seal of the officer before whom the oath is taken. If the papers as filed are not properly ribboned or each sheet impressed with the seal, the case will be accepted for examination, but before it is allowed, duplicate papers, prepared in compliance with the foregoing sentence, must be filed.

37 CFR Ch. I (7–1–00 Edition)

§ 1.67 Supplemental oath or declaration.

(a) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of § 1.63 may be required to be filed to correct any deficiencies or inaccuracies present in an earlier filed oath or declaration.

(b) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of § 1.63 must be filed when a claim is presented for matter originally shown or described but not substantially embraced in the statement of invention or claims originally presented or when an oath or declaration submitted in accordance with §1.53(f) after the filing of the specification and any required drawings specifically and improperly refers to an amendment which includes new matter. No new matter may be introduced into a nonprovisional application after its filing date even if a supplemental oath or declaration is filed. In proper situations, the oath or declaration here required may be made on information and belief by an applicant other than the inventor.

(c) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of § 1.63 must also be filed if the application was altered after the oath or declaration was signed or if the oath or declaration was signed:

(1) In blank;

(2) Without review thereof by the person making the oath or declaration; or

(3) Without review of the specification, including the claims, as required by § 1.63(b)(1).

§ 1.68 Declaration in lieu of oath.

Any document to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office and which is required by any law, rule, or other regulation to be under oath may be subscribed to by a written declaration.
Such declaration may be used in lieu of the oath otherwise required, if, and only if, the declarant is on the same document, warned that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. 1001) and may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon. The declarant must set forth in the body of the declaration that all statements made of the declarant’s own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

§ 1.69 Foreign language oaths and declarations.

(a) Whenever an individual making an oath or declaration cannot understand English, the oath or declaration must be in a language that such individual can understand and shall state that such individual understands the content of any documents to which the oath or declaration relates.

(b) Unless the text of any oath or declaration in a language other than English is a form provided or approved by the Patent and Trademark Office, it must be accompanied by an English translation together with a statement that the translation is accurate, except that in the case of an oath or declaration filed under § 1.63, the translation may be filed in the Office no later than two months from the date applicant is notified to file the translation.

§ 1.70 [Reserved]

§ 1.71 Detailed description and specification of the invention.

(a) The specification must include a written description of the invention or discovery and of the manner and process of making and using the same, and is required to be in such full, clear, concise, and exact terms as to enable any person skilled in the art or science to which the invention or discovery appertains, or with which it is most nearly connected, to make and use the same.

(b) The specification must set forth the precise invention for which a patent is solicited, in such manner as to distinguish it from other inventions and from what is old. It must describe completely a specific embodiment of the process, machine, manufacture, composition of matter or improvement invented, and must explain the mode of operation or principle whenever applicable. The best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out his invention must be set forth.

(c) In the case of an improvement, the specification must particularly point out the part or parts of the process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter to which the improvement relates, and the description should be confined to the specific improvement and to such parts as necessarily cooperate with it or as may be necessary to a complete understanding or description of it.

(d) A copyright or mask work notice may be placed in a design or utility patent application adjacent to copyright and mask work material contained therein. The notice may appear at any appropriate portion of the patent application disclosure. For notices in drawings, see § 1.84(s). The content of the notice must be limited to only those elements provided for by law. For example, “©1983 John Doe” (17 U.S.C. 401) and “*M* John Doe” (17 U.S.C. 909) would be properly limited and, under current statutes, legally sufficient notices of copyright and mask work, respectively. Inclusion of a copyright or mask work notice will be permitted only if the authorization language set forth in paragraph (e) of this section is included at the beginning (preferably as the first paragraph) of the specification.

(e) The authorization shall read as follows:

A portion of the disclosure of this patent document contains material which is subject to (copyright or mask work) protection. The (copyright or mask work) owner has no objection to the facsimile reproduction by anyone of the patent document or the patent disclosure, as it appears in the Patent and Trademark Office patent file or records, but
§ 1.72 Title and abstract.

(a) The title of the invention, which should be as short and specific as possible, should appear as a heading on the first page of the specification, if it does not otherwise appear at the beginning of the application.

(b) A brief abstract of the technical disclosure in the specification must commence on a separate sheet, preferably following the claims, under the heading “Abstract of the Disclosure.” The purpose of the abstract is to enable the Patent and Trademark Office and the public generally to determine quickly from a cursory inspection the nature and gist of the technical disclosure. The abstract shall not be used for interpreting the scope of the claims.

§ 1.73 Summary of the invention.

A brief summary of the invention indicating its nature and substance, which may include a statement of the object of the invention, should precede the detailed description. Such summary should, when set forth, be commensurate with the invention as claimed and any object recited should be that of the invention as claimed.

§ 1.74 Reference to drawings.

When there are drawings, there shall be a brief description of the several views of the drawings and the detailed description of the invention shall refer to the different views by specifying the numbers of the figures and to the different parts by use of reference letters or numerals (preferably the latter).

§ 1.75 Claim(s).

(a) The specification must conclude with a claim particularly pointing out and distinctly claiming the subject matter which the applicant regards as his invention or discovery.

(b) More than one claim may be presented provided they differ substantially from each other and are not unduly multiplied.

(c) One or more claims may be presented in dependent form, referring back to and further limiting another claim or claims in the same application. Any dependent claim which refers to more than one other claim (“multiple dependent claim”) shall refer to such other claims in the alternative only. A multiple dependent claim shall not serve as a basis for any other multiple dependent claim. For fee calculation purposes under §1.16, a multiple dependent claim will be considered to be that number of claims to which direct reference is made therein. For fee calculation purposes, also, any claim depending from a multiple dependent claim will be considered to be that number of claims to which direct reference is made in that multiple dependent claim. In addition to the other filing fees, any original application which is filed with, or is amended to include, multiple dependent claims must have paid therein the fee set forth in §1.16(d). Claims in dependent form shall be construed to include all the limitations of the claim incorporated by reference into the dependent claim. A multiple dependent claim shall be construed to incorporate by reference all the limitations of each of the particular claims in relation to which it is being considered.

(d)(1) The claim or claims must conform to the invention as set forth in the remainder of the specification and the terms and phrases used in the claims must find clear support or antecedent basis in the description so that the meaning of the terms in the claims may be ascertainable by reference to the description. (See §1.58(a).)

(2) See §§1.141 to 1.146 as to claiming different inventions in one application.

(e) Where the nature of the case admits, as in the case of an improvement, any independent claim should contain in the following order:

(1) A preamble comprising a general description of all the elements or steps of the claimed combination which are conventional or known,

(2) A phrase such as “wherein the improvement comprises,” and

(3) Those elements, steps and/or relationships which constitute that portion
of the claimed combination which the applicant considers as the new or improved portion.

(f) If there are several claims, they shall be numbered consecutively in Arabic numerals.

(g) The least restrictive claim should be presented as claim number 1, and all dependent claims should be grouped together with the claim or claims to which they refer to the extent practicable.

(h) The claim or claims must commence on a separate sheet.

(i) Where a claim sets forth a plurality of elements or steps, each element or step of the claim should be separated by a line indentation.


§ 1.78 Claiming benefit of earlier filing date and cross-references to other applications.

(a)(1) A nonprovisional application may claim an invention disclosed in one or more prior filed copending nonprovisional applications or copending international applications designating the United States of America. In order for a nonprovisional application to claim the benefit of a prior filed copending nonprovisional application or copending international application designating the United States of America, each prior application must name as an inventor at least one inventor named in the later filed nonprovisional application and disclose the named inventor’s invention claimed in at least one claim of the later filed nonprovisional application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. In addition, each prior application must be:

(i) An international application entitled to a filing date in accordance with PCT Article 11 and designating the United States of America; or

(ii) Complete as set forth in § 1.51(b); or

(iii) Entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b) and include the basic filing fee set forth in § 1.16; or

(iv) Entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b) and have paid therein the processing and retention fee set forth in § 1.21(i) within the time period set forth in § 1.53(f).

(2) Except for a continued prosecution application filed under § 1.53(d), any nonprovisional application claiming the benefit of one or more prior filed copending nonprovisional applications or international applications designating the United States of America must contain or be amended to contain in the first sentence of the specification following the title a reference to each such prior application, identifying it by application number (consisting of the series code and serial number) or international application number and
international filing date and indicating the relationship of the applications. The request for a continued prosecution application under §1.53(d) is the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 120 to the prior application. The identification of an application by application number under this section is the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 120 to every application assigned that application number. Cross-references to other related applications may be made when appropriate (see §1.14(a)).

(3) A nonprovisional application other than for a design patent may claim an invention disclosed in one or more prior filed provisional applications. In order for a nonprovisional application to claim the benefit of one or more prior filed provisional applications, each prior provisional application must name as an inventor at least one inventor named in the later filed nonprovisional application and disclose the named inventor's invention claimed in at least one claim of the later filed nonprovisional application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. In addition, each prior provisional application must be entitled to a filing date as set forth in §1.53(c), have any required English-language translation filed therein within the time period set forth in §1.52(d), and have paid therein the basic filing fee set forth in §1.16(k) within the time period set forth in §1.53(g).

(4) Any nonprovisional application claiming the benefit of one or more prior filed copending provisional applications must contain or be amended to contain in the first sentence of the specification following the title a reference to each such prior provisional application, identifying it as a provisional application, and including the provisional application number (consisting of series code and serial number).

(b) Where two or more applications filed by the same applicant contain conflicting claims, elimination of such claims from all but one application may be required in the absence of good and sufficient reason for their retention during pendency in more than one application.

(c) Where an application or a patent under reexamination and at least one other application naming different inventors are owned by the same party and contain conflicting claims, and there is no statement of record indicating that the claimed inventions were commonly owned or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person at the time the later invention was made, the assignee may be called upon to state whether the claimed inventions were commonly owned or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person at the time the later invention was made, and if not, indicate which named inventor is the prior inventor.


§1.79 Reservation clauses not permitted.

A reservation for a future application of subject matter disclosed but not claimed in a pending application will not be permitted in the pending application, but an application disclosing unclaimed subject matter may contain a reference to a later filed application of the same applicant or owned by a common assignee disclosing and claiming that subject matter.

THE DRAWINGS

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.81 to 1.88 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 113.

§1.81 Drawings required in patent application.

(a) The applicant for a patent is required to furnish a drawing of his or her invention where necessary for the understanding of the subject matter sought to be patented; this drawing, or a high quality copy thereof, must be filed with the application. Since corrections are the responsibility of the applicant, the original drawing(s) should be retained by the applicant for any necessary future correction.

(b) Drawings may include illustrations which facilitate an understanding
of the invention (for example, flow sheets in cases of processes, and diagrammatic views).

(c) Whenever the nature of the subject matter sought to be patented admits of illustration by a drawing without its being necessary for the understanding of the subject matter and the applicant has not furnished such a drawing, the examiner will require its submission within a time period of not less than two months from the date of the sending of a notice thereof.

(d) Drawings submitted after the filing date of the application may not be used to overcome any insufficiency of the specification due to lack of an enabling disclosure or otherwise inadequate disclosure therein, or to supplement the original disclosure thereof for the purpose of interpretation of the scope of any claim.

§ 1.83 Content of drawing.

(a) The drawing in a nonprovisional application must show every feature of the invention specified in the claims. However, conventional features disclosed in the description and claims, where their detailed illustration is not essential for a proper understanding of the invention, should be illustrated in the drawing in the form of a graphical drawing symbol or a labeled representation (e.g., a labeled rectangular box).

(b) When the invention consists of an improvement on an old machine the drawing must when possible exhibit, in one or more views, the improved portion itself, disconnected from the old structure, and also in another view, so much only of the old structure as will suffice to show the connection of the invention therewith.

(c) Where the drawings in a nonprovisional application do not comply with the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the examiner shall require such additional illustration within a time period of not less than two months from the date of the sending of a notice thereof. Such corrections are subject to the requirements of §1.81(d).

§ 1.84 Standards for drawings.

(a) Drawings. There are two acceptable categories for presenting drawings in utility patent applications:

(1) Black ink. Black and white drawings are normally required. India ink, or its equivalent that secures solid black lines, must be used for drawings, or

(2) Color. On rare occasions, color drawings may be necessary as the only practical medium by which to disclose the subject matter sought to be patented in a utility patent application or the subject matter of a statutory invention registration. The Patent and Trademark Office will accept color drawings in utility patent applications and statutory invention registrations only after granting a petition filed under this paragraph explaining why the color drawings are necessary. Any such petition must include the following:

(i) The fee set forth in §1.17(i);
(ii) Three (3) sets of color drawings; and
(iii) The specification must contain the following language as the first paragraph in that portion of the specification relating to the brief description of the drawing:

The file of this patent contains at least one drawing executed in color. Copies of this patent with color drawing(s) will be provided by the Patent and Trademark Office upon request and payment of the necessary fee.

If the language is not in the specification, a proposed amendment to insert the language must accompany the petition.

(b) Photographs—(1) Black and white. Photographs are not ordinarily permitted in utility patent applications. However, the Office will accept photographs in utility patent applications only after the granting of a petition filed under this paragraph which requests that photographs be accepted. Any such petition must include the following:

(i) The fee set forth in §1.17(i); and
(ii) Three (3) sets of photographs. Photographs must either be developed on double weight photographic paper or be permanently mounted on bristol board. The photographs must be of sufficient quality so that all details in the
drawings are reproducible in the printed patent.

(2) Color. Color photographs will be accepted in utility patent applications if the conditions for accepting color drawings have been satisfied. See paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(c) Identification of drawings. Identifying indicia, if provided, should include the application number or the title of the invention, inventor’s name, docket number (if any), and the name and telephone number of a person to call if the Office is unable to match the drawings to the proper application. This information should be placed on the back of each sheet of drawings a minimum distance of 1.5 cm. (5/8 inch) down from the top of the page. In addition, a reference to the application number, or, if an application number has not been assigned, the inventor’s name, may be included in the left-hand corner, provided that the reference appears within 1.5 cm. (5/8 inch) from the top of the sheet.

(d) Graphic forms in drawings. Chemical or mathematical formulae, tables, and waveforms may be submitted as drawings, and are subject to the same requirements as drawings. Each chemical or mathematical formula must be labeled as a separate figure, using brackets when necessary, to show that information is properly integrated. Each group of waveforms must be presented as a single figure, using a common vertical axis with time extending along the horizontal axis. Each individual waveform discussed in the specification must be identified with a separate letter designation adjacent to the vertical axis.

(e) Type of paper. Drawings submitted to the Office must be made on paper which is flexible, strong, white, smooth, non-shiny, and durable. All sheets must be free from cracks, creases, and folds. Only one side of the sheet shall be used for the drawing. Each sheet must be reasonably free from erasures and must be free from alterations, overwritings, and interlineations. Photographs must either be developed on double weight photographic paper or be permanently mounted on bristol board. See paragraph (b) of this section for other requirements for photographs.

(f) Size of paper. All drawing sheets in an application must be the same size. One of the shorter sides of the sheet is regarded as its top. The size of the sheets on which drawings are made must be:

(1) 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4), or
(2) 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 by 11 inches).

(g) Margins. The sheets must not contain frames around the sight (i.e., the usable surface), but should have scan target points (i.e., cross-hairs) printed on two catercorner margin corners. Each sheet must include a top margin of at least 2.5 cm. (1 inch), a left side margin of at least 2.5 cm. (1 inch), a right side margin of at least 1.5 cm. (5/8 inch), and a bottom margin of at least 1.0 cm. (1 inch), thereby leaving a sight no greater than 17.0 cm. by 26.2 cm. on 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4) drawing sheets, and a sight no greater than 17.6 cm. by 24.4 cm. (6 5/8 by 9 5/8 inches) on 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 by 11 inch) drawing sheets.

(h) Views. The drawing must contain as many views as necessary to show the invention. The views may be plan, elevation, section, or perspective views. Detail views of portions of elements, on a larger scale if necessary, may also be used. All views of the drawing must be grouped together and arranged on the sheet(s) without wasting space, preferably in an upright position, clearly separated from one another, and must not be included in the sheets containing the specifications, claims, or abstract. Views must not be connected by projection lines and must not contain center lines. Waveforms of electrical signals may be connected by dashed lines to show the relative timing of the waveforms.

(1) Exploded views. Exploded views, with the separated parts embraced by a bracket, to show the relationship or order of assembly of various parts are permissible. When an exploded view is shown in a figure which is on the same sheet as another figure, the exploded view should be placed in brackets.

(2) Partial views. When necessary, a view of a large machine or device in its entirety may be broken into partial views on a single sheet, or extended over several sheets if there is no loss in
facility of understanding the view. Partial views drawn on separate sheets must always be capable of being linked edge to edge so that no partial view contains parts of another partial view. A smaller scale view should be included showing the whole formed by the partial views and indicating the positions of the parts shown. When a portion of a view is enlarged for magnification purposes, the view and the enlarged view must each be labeled as separate views.

(i) Where views on two or more sheets form, in effect, a single complete view, the views on the several sheets must be so arranged that the complete figure can be assembled without concealing any part of any of the views appearing on the various sheets. (ii) A very long view may be divided into several parts placed one above the other on a single sheet. However, the relationship between the different parts must be clear and unambiguous.

(3) Sectional views. The plane upon which a sectional view is taken should be indicated on the view from which the section is cut by a broken line. The ends of the broken line should be designated by Arabic or Roman numerals corresponding to the view number of the sectional view, and should have arrows to indicate the direction of sight. Hatching must be used to indicate section portions of an object, and must be made by regularly spaced oblique parallel lines spaced sufficiently apart to enable the lines to be distinguished without difficulty. Hatching should not impede the clear reading of the reference characters and lead lines. If it is not possible to place reference characters outside the hatched area, the hatching may be broken off wherever reference characters are inserted. Hatching must be at a substantial angle to the surrounding axes or principal lines, preferably 45°. A cross section must be set out and drawn to show all of the materials as they are shown in the view from which the cross section was taken. The parts in cross section must show proper material(s) by hatching with regularly spaced parallel oblique strokes, the space between strokes being chosen on the basis of the total area to be hatched. The various parts of a cross section of the same item should be hatched in the same manner and should accurately and graphically indicate the nature of the material(s) that is illustrated in cross section. The hatching of juxtaposed different elements must be angled in a different way. In the case of large areas, hatching may be confined to an edging drawn around the entire inside of the outline of the area to be hatched. Different types of hatching should have different conventional meanings as regards the nature of a material seen in cross section.

(4) Alternate position. A moved position may be shown by a broken line superimposed upon a suitable view if this can be done without crowding; otherwise, a separate view must be used for this purpose.

(5) Modified forms. Modified forms of construction must be shown in separate views.

(i) Arrangement of views. One view must not be placed upon another or within the outline of another. All views on the same sheet should stand in the same direction and, if possible, stand so that they can be read with the sheet held in an upright position. If views wider than the width of the sheet are necessary for the clearest illustration of the invention, the sheet may be turned on its side so that the top of the sheet, with the appropriate top margin to be used as the heading space, is on the right-hand side. Words must appear in a horizontal, left-to-right fashion when the page is either upright or turned so that the top becomes the right side, except for graphs utilizing standard scientific convention to denote the axis of abscissas (of X) and the axis of ordinates (of Y).

(j) View for Official Gazette. One of the views should be suitable for publication in the Official Gazette as the illustration of the invention.

(k) Scale. (i) The scale to which a drawing is made must be large enough to show the mechanism without crowding when the drawing is reduced in size to two-thirds in reproduction. Views of portions of the mechanism on a larger scale should be used when necessary to show details clearly. Two or more sheets may be used if one does not give sufficient room. The number of sheets should be kept to a minimum.
(2) When approved by the examiner, the scale of the drawing may be graphically represented. Indications such as "actual size" or "scale ½" on the drawings, are not permitted, since these lose their meaning with reproduction in a different format.

(3) Elements of the same view must be in proportion to each other, unless a difference in proportion is indispensable for the clarity of the view. Instead of showing elements in different proportion, a supplementary view may be added giving a larger-scale illustration of the element of the initial view. The enlarged element shown in the second view should be surrounded by a finely drawn or "dot-dash" circle in the first view indicating its location without obscuring the view.

(l) Character of lines, numbers, and letters. All drawings must be made by a process which will give them satisfactory reproduction characteristics. Every line, number, and letter must be durable, clean, black (except for color drawings), sufficiently dense and dark, and uniformly thick and well-defined. The weight of all lines and letters must be heavy enough to permit adequate reproduction. This requirement applies to all lines however fine, to shading, and to lines representing cut surfaces in sectional views. Lines and strokes of different thicknesses may be used in the same drawing where different thicknesses have a different meaning. Lines and strokes of different thicknesses may be used in the same drawing where different thicknesses have a different meaning.

(m) Shading. The use of shading in views is encouraged if it aids in understanding the invention and if it does not reduce legibility. Shading is used to indicate the surface or shape of spherical, cylindrical, and conical elements of an object. Flat parts may also be lightly shaded. Such shading is preferred in the case of parts shown in perspective, but not for cross sections. See paragraph (h)(3) of this section. Spaced lines for shading are preferred. These lines must be thin, as few in number as practicable, and they must contrast with the rest of the drawings. As a substitute for shading, heavy lines on the shade side of objects can be used except where they superimpose on each other or obscure reference characters. Light should come from the upper left corner at an angle of 45°. Surface delineations should preferably be shown by proper shading. Solid black shading areas are not permitted, except when used to represent bar graphs or color.

(n) Symbols. Graphical drawing symbols may be used for conventional elements when appropriate. The elements for which such symbols and labeled representations are used must be adequately identified in the specification. Known devices should be illustrated by symbols which have a universally recognized conventional meaning and are generally accepted in the art. Other symbols which are not universally recognized may be used, subject to approval by the Office, if they are not likely to be confused with existing conventional symbols, and if they are readily identifiable.

(o) Legends. Suitable descriptive legends may be used, or may be required by the Examiner, where necessary for understanding of the drawing, subject to approval by the Office. They should contain as few words as possible.

(p) Numbers, letters, and reference characters. (1) Reference characters (numerals are preferred), sheet numbers, and view numbers must be plain and legible, and must not be used in association with brackets or inverted commas, or enclosed within outlines, e.g., circled. They must be oriented in the same direction as the view so as to avoid having to rotate the sheet. Reference characters should be arranged to follow the profile of the object depicted.

(2) The English alphabet must be used for letters, except where another alphabet is customarily used, such as the Greek alphabet to indicate angles, wavelengths, and mathematical formulas.

(3) Numbers, letters, and reference characters must measure at least .32 cm. (¼ inch) in height. They should not be placed in the drawing so as to interfere with its comprehension. Therefore, they should not cross or mingle with the lines. They should not be placed upon hatched or shaded surfaces. When necessary, such as indicating a surface or cross section, a reference character may be underlined and a blank space may be left in the hatching or shading where the character occurs so that it appears distinct.
(4) The same part of an invention appearing in more than one view of the drawing must always be designated by the same reference character, and the same reference character must never be used to designate different parts.

(5) Reference characters not mentioned in the description shall not appear in the drawings. Reference characters mentioned in the description must appear in the drawings.

(6) Lead lines. Lead lines are those lines between the reference characters and the details referred to. Such lines may be straight or curved and should be as short as possible. They must originate in the immediate proximity of the reference character and extend to the feature indicated. Lead lines must not cross each other. Lead lines are required for each reference character except for those which indicate the surface or cross section on which they are placed. Such a reference character must be underlined to make it clear that a lead line has not been left out by mistake. Lead lines must be executed in the same way as lines in the drawing. See paragraph (l) of this section.

(7) Arrows. Arrows may be used at the ends of the lines, provided that their meaning is clear, as follows:

(1) On a lead line, a freestanding arrow to indicate the entire section towards which it points;

(2) On a lead line, an arrow touching a line to indicate the surface shown by the line looking along the direction of the arrow; or

(3) To show the direction of movement.

(8) Copyright or Mask Work Notice. A copyright or mask work notice may appear in the drawing, but must be placed within the sight of the drawing immediately below the figure representing the copyright or mask work material and be limited to letters having a print size of .32 cm. to .64 cm. (1/8 to 1/4 inches) high. The content of the notice must be limited to only those elements provided for by law. For example, "© 1983 John Doe" (17 U.S.C. 401) and "® M John Doe" (17 U.S.C. 909) would be properly limited and, under current statutes, legally sufficient notices of copyright and mask work, respectively. Inclusion of a copyright or mask work notice will be permitted only if the authorization language set forth in §1.71(e) is included at the beginning (preferably as the first paragraph) of the specification.

(9) Numbering of sheets of drawings. The sheets of drawings should be numbered in consecutive Arabic numerals, starting with 1, within the sight as defined in paragraph (g) of this section. These numbers, if present, must be placed in the middle of the top of the sheet, but not in the margin. The numbers can be placed on the right-hand side if the drawing extends too close to the middle of the top edge of the usable surface. The drawing sheet numbering must be clear and larger than the numbers used as reference characters to avoid confusion. The number of each sheet should be shown by two Arabic numerals placed on either side of an oblique line, with the first being the sheet number, and the second being the total number of sheets of drawings, with no other marking.

(10) Numbering of views. (1) The different views must be numbered in consecutive Arabic numerals, starting with 1, independent of the numbering of the sheets and, if possible, in the order in which they appear on the drawing sheet(s). Partial views intended to form one complete view, on one or several sheets, must be identified by the same number followed by a capital letter. View numbers must be preceded by the abbreviation "FIG." Where only a single view is used in an application to illustrate the claimed invention, it must not be numbered and the abbreviation "FIG." must not appear.

(2) Numbers and letters identifying the views must be simple and clear and must not be used in association with brackets, circles, or inverted commas. The view numbers must be larger than the numbers used for reference characters.

(11) Security markings. Authorized security markings may be placed on the drawings provided they are outside the sight, preferably centered in the top margin.

(12) Corrections. Any corrections on drawings submitted to the Office must be durable and permanent.
§ 1.85 Corrections to drawings.

(a) The requirements of § 1.84 relating to drawings will be strictly enforced. A drawing not executed in conformity thereto, if suitable for reproduction, may be admitted for examination but in such case a new drawing must be furnished.

(b) The Patent and Trademark Office will not release drawings in applications having a filing date after January 1, 1989, or any drawings from any applications after January 1, 1991, for purposes of correction. If corrections are necessary, new corrected drawings must be submitted within the time set by the Office.

(c) When corrected drawings are required to be submitted at the time of allowance, the applicant is required to submit acceptable drawings within three months from the mailing of the “Notice of Allowability.” Within that three-month period, two weeks should be allowed for review of the drawings by the Drafting Branch. If the Office finds that correction is necessary, the applicant must submit a new corrected drawing to the Office within the original three-month period to avoid the necessity of obtaining an extension of time and paying the extension fee. Therefore, the applicant should file corrected drawings as soon as possible following the receipt of the Notice of Allowability. The provisions with respect to obtaining an extension of time relates only to the late filing of corrected drawings. The time limit for payment of the issue fee is a fixed three-month period which cannot be extended as set forth in 35 U.S.C. 151.

[53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988]

§ 1.88 [Reserved]

§ 1.89 Models or exhibits not generally admitted as part of application or patent.

(a) A model or exhibit will not be admitted as part of the record of an application unless it:

(1) Substantially conforms to the requirements of § 1.52 or § 1.84;

(2) Is specifically required by the Office; or

(3) Is filed with a petition under this section including:

(i) The petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(i); and

(ii) An explanation of why entry of the model or exhibit in the file record is necessary to demonstrate patentability.

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section, a model, working model, or other physical exhibit may be required by the Office if deemed necessary for any purpose in examination of the application.


§ 1.92 [Reserved]

§ 1.93 Specimens.

When the invention relates to a composition of matter, the applicant may be required to furnish specimens of the composition, or of its ingredients or intermediates, for the purpose of inspection or experiment.

§ 1.94 Return of models, exhibits or specimens.

Models, exhibits, or specimens in applications which have become abandoned, and also in other applications on conclusion of the prosecution, may be returned to the applicant upon demand and at his expense, unless it be deemed necessary that they be preserved in the Office. Such physical exhibits in contested cases may be returned to the parties at their expense. If not claimed within a reasonable time, they may be disposed of at the discretion of the Commissioner.

§ 1.95 Copies of exhibits.

Copies of models or other physical exhibits will not ordinarily be furnished by the Office, and any model or exhibit in an application or patent shall not be taken from the Office except in the custody of an employee of
§ 1.96 Submission of computer program listings.

(a) General. Descriptions of the operation and general content of computer program listings should appear in the description portion of the specification. A computer program listing for the purpose of this section is defined as a printout that lists in appropriate sequence the instructions, routines, and other contents of a program for a computer. The program listing may be either in machine or machine-independent (object or source) language which will cause a computer to perform a desired procedure or task such as solve a problem, regulate the flow of work in a computer, or control or monitor events. Computer program listings may be submitted in patent applications as set forth in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) Material which will be printed in the patent. If the computer program listing is contained on ten printout pages or less, it must be submitted either as drawings or as part of the specification.

(1) Drawings. If the listing is submitted as drawings, it must be submitted in the manner and complying with the requirements for drawings as provided in §1.84. At least one figure numeral is required on each sheet of drawing.

(2) Specification. (i) If the listing is submitted as part of the specification, it must be submitted in accordance with the provisions of §1.52, at the end of the description but before the claims.

(ii) Any listing submitted as part of the specification must be direct printouts (i.e., not copies) from the computer’s printer with dark solid black letters not less than 0.21 cm. high, on white, unshaded and unlined paper, and the sheets should be submitted in a protective cover. Any amendments must be made by way of submission of substitute sheets.

(iii) As an appendix which will not be printed. If a computer program listing printout is eleven or more pages long, applicants must submit such listing in the form of microfiche, referred to in the specification (see §1.77(a)(6)). Such microfiche filed with a patent application is to be referred to as a “microfiche appendix.” The “microfiche appendix” will not be part of the printed patent. Reference in the application to the “microfiche appendix” must be made at the beginning of the specification at the location indicated in §1.77(a)(6). Any amendments thereto must be made by way of revised microfiche.

(1) Availability of appendix. Such computer program listings on microfiche will be available to the public for inspection, and microfiche copies thereof will be available for purchase with the file wrapper and contents, after a patent based on such application is granted or the application is otherwise made publicly available.

(ii) Submission requirements. Except as modified or clarified in this paragraph (c)(2), computer-generated information submitted as a “microfiche appendix” to an application shall be in accordance with the standards set forth in 36 CFR part 1230 (Micrographics).

(i) Film submitted shall be a first generation (camera film) negative appearing microfiche (with emulsion on the back side of the film when viewed with the images right-reading).

(ii) Reduction ratio of microfiche submitted should be 24:1 or a similar ratio where variation from said ratio is required in order to fit the documents into the image area of the microfiche format used.

(iii) At least the left-most third (50 mm.×12 mm.) of the header or title area of each microfiche submitted shall be clear or positive appearing so that the Patent and Trademark Office can apply an application number and filing date thereon in an eye-readable form. The middle portion of the header shall be used by applicant to apply an eye-readable application identification such as the title and/or the first inventor’s name. The attorney’s docket number may be included. The final right-hand portion of the microfiche shall contain sequence information for the microfiche, such as 1 of 4, 2 of 4, etc.

(iv) Additional requirements which apply specifically to microfiche of filmed paper copy:
§ 1.97 Filing of information disclosure statement.

(a) In order for an applicant for a patent or for a reissue of a patent to have an information disclosure statement in compliance with §1.98 considered by the Office during the pendency of the application, it must satisfy paragraph (b), (c), or (d) of this section.

(b) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed by the applicant within any one of the following time periods:

(1) Within three months of the filing date of a national application;
(2) Within three months of the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in §1.491 in an international application;
(3)Before the mailing of a first Office action on the merits; or
(4) Before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under §1.114.

(c) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed by the applicant after the period specified in paragraph (b) of this section, provided that the information disclosure statement is filed before the mailing date of either a final action under §1.113, or a notice of allowance under §1.311, whichever occurs first, and is accompanied by either:

(1) A statement as specified in paragraph (e) of this section; or
(2) The fee set forth in §1.17(p).

(d) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed by the applicant after the period specified in paragraph (c) of this section, provided that the information disclosure statement is filed on or before payment of the issue fee and is accompanied by:

(1) A statement as specified in paragraph (e) of this section;
(2) A petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement; and
(3) The petition fee set forth in §1.17(i).

(e) A statement under this section must state either:

(1) That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement; or
(2) That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the statement after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual.
designated in §1.56(c) more than three
months prior to the filing of the infor-
mation disclosure statement.

(f) No extensions of time for filing an
information disclosure statement are
permitted under §1.136. If a bona fide
attempt is made to comply with §1.98,
but part of the required content is in-
advertently omitted, additional time
may be given to enable full compli-
ance.

(g) An information disclosure state-
ment filed in accordance with this sec-
tion shall not be construed as a rep-
resentation that a search has been made.

(h) The filing of an information dis-
closure statement shall not be con-
strued to be an admission that the in-
formation cited in the statement is, or
is considered to be, material to patent-
ability as defined in §1.56(b).

(i) Information disclosure state-
ments, filed before the grant of a pat-
ent, which do not comply with this sec-
tion and §1.98 will be placed in the file,
but will not be considered by the Offi-
cese.

§1.98 Content of information disclo-
sure statement.

(a) Any information disclosure state-
ment filed under §1.97 shall include:

(1) A list of all patents, publications,
or other information submitted for con-
ideration by the Office;

(2) A legible copy of:

(i) Each U.S. and foreign patent;

(ii) Each publication or that portion
which caused it to be listed; and

(iii) All other information or that
portion which caused it to be listed, ex-
cept that no copy of a U.S. patent ap-
lication need be included; and

(3) A concise explanation of the re-
levance, as it is presently understood by
the individual designated in §1.56(c)
most knowledgeable about the content
of the information, of each patent, pub-
lication, or other information listed
that is not in the English language.
The concise explanation may be either
separate from the specification or in-
corporated therein.

(b) Each U.S. patent listed in an in-
formation disclosure statement shall
be identified by patentee, patent num-
ber and issue date. Each foreign patent
or published foreign patent application
shall be identified by the country or
patent office which issued the patent
or published the application, an appro-
priate document number, and the pub-
lication date indicated on the patent or
published application. Each publica-
tion shall be identified by author (if
any), title, relevant pages of the publi-
cation, date and place of publication.

(c) When the disclosures of two or
more patents or publications listed in
an information disclosure statement
are substantively cumulative, a copy of
one of the patents or publications may
be submitted without copies of the
other patents or publications provided
that a statement is made that these
other patents or publications are cu-
mulative. If a written English-language
translation of a non-English language
document, or portion thereof, is within
the possession, custody or control of,
or is readily available to any indi-
vidual designated in §1.56(c), a copy of
the translation shall accompany the
statement.

(d) A copy of any patent, publication
or other information listed in an infor-
mation disclosure statement is not re-
quired to be provided if it was pre-
viously cited by or submitted to the Offi-
cese in a prior application, provided
that the prior application is properly
identified in the statement and relied
upon for an earlier filing date under 35
U.S.C. 120.

§1.99 [Reserved]

§1.101 [Reserved]

§1.102 Advancement of examination.

(a) Applications will not be advanced
out of turn for examination or for fur-
ther action except as provided by this
part, or upon order of the Commis-

sioner to expedite the business of the
Office, or upon filing of a request under
paragraph (b) of this section or upon filing a petition under paragraphs (c) or (d) of this section with a showing which, in the opinion of the Commissioner, will justify so advancing it.

(b) Applications wherein the inventions are deemed of peculiar importance to some branch of the public service and the head of some department of the Government requests immediate action for that reason, may be advanced for examination.

c) A petition to make an application special may be filed without a fee if the basis for the petition is the applicant’s age or health or that the invention will materially enhance the quality of the environment or materially contribute to the development or conservation of energy resources.

d) A petition to make an application special on grounds other than those referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in §1.17(i).


§ 1.104 Nature of examination.

(a) Examiner’s action. (1) On taking up an application for examination or a patent in a reexamination proceeding, the examiner shall make a thorough study thereof and shall make a thorough investigation of the available prior art relating to the subject matter of the claimed invention. The examination shall be complete with respect both to compliance of the application or patent under reexamination with the applicable statutes and rules and to the patentability of the invention as claimed, as well as with respect to matters of form, unless otherwise indicated.

(2) The applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, both the patent owner and the requester, will be notified of the examiner’s action. The reasons for any adverse action or any objection or requirement will be stated and such information or references will be given as may be useful in aiding the applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding the patent owner, to judge the propriety of continuing the prosecution.

(3) An international-type search will be made in all national applications filed on and after June 1, 1978.

(4) Any national application may also have an international-type search report prepared thereon at the time of the national examination on the merits, upon specific written request therefor and payment of the international-type search fee set forth in §1.21(e). The Patent and Trademark Office does not require that a formal report of an international-type search be prepared in order to obtain a search fee refund in a later filed international application.

(5) Copending applications will be considered by the examiner to be owned by, or subject to an obligation of assignment to, the same person if:

(i) The application files refer to assignments recorded in the Patent and
Trademark Office in accordance with part 3 of this chapter which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization; or

(ii) Copies of unrecorded assignments which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization are filed in each of the applications; or

(iii) An affidavit or declaration by the common owner is filed which states that there is common ownership and states facts which explain why the affiant or declarant believes there is common ownership, which affidavit or declaration may be signed by an official of the corporation or organization empowered to act on behalf of the corporation or organization when the common owner is a corporation or other organization; or

(iv) Other evidence is submitted which establishes common ownership of the applications.

(b) Completeness of examiner’s action. The examiner’s action will be complete as to all matters, except that in appropriate circumstances, such as misjoinder of invention, fundamental defects in the application, and the like, the action of the examiner may be limited to such matters before further action is made. However, matters of form need not be raised by the examiner until a claim is found allowable.

(c) Rejection of claims. (1) If the invention is not considered patentable, or not considered patentable as claimed, the claims, or those considered unpatentable will be rejected.

(2) In rejecting claims for want of novelty or for obviousness, the examiner must cite the best references at his or her command. When a reference is complex or shows or describes inventions other than that claimed by the applicant, the particular part relied on must be designated as nearly as practicable. The pertinence of each reference, if not apparent, must be clearly explained and each rejected claim specified.

(3) In rejecting claims the examiner may rely upon admissions by the applicant, or the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding, as to any matter affecting patentability and, insofar as rejections in applications are concerned, may also rely upon facts within his or her knowledge pursuant to paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(4) Subject matter which is developed by another person which qualifies as prior art only under 35 U.S.C. 102(e), (f) or (g) may be used as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103 against a claimed invention unless the entire rights to the subject matter and the claimed invention were commonly owned by the same person or organization or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person or organization at the time the claimed invention was made.

(5) The claims in any original application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the same subject matter is claimed in the application and the statutory invention registration. The claims in any reissue application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the reissue application seeks to claim subject matter:

(i) Which was not covered by claims issued in the patent prior to the date of publication of the statutory invention registration; and

(ii) Which was the same subject matter waived in the statutory invention registration.

(d) Citation of references. (1) If domestic patents are cited by the examiner, their numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees must be stated. If foreign published applications or patents are cited, their nationality or country, numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees must be stated, and such other data must be furnished as may be necessary to enable the applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, the patent owner, to identify the published applications or patents cited. In citing foreign published applications or patents, in case only a part of the document is involved, the particular pages and sheets containing the parts relied upon must be identified. If printed publications are cited, the author (if any), title, date, pages or plates, and place of publication, or place where a copy can be found, shall be given.
§§ 1.105–1.109

(2) When a rejection in an application is based on facts within the personal knowledge of an employee of the Office, the data shall be as specific as possible, and the reference must be supported, when called for by the applicant, by the affidavit of such employee, and such affidavit shall be subject to contradiction or explanation by the affidavits of the applicant and other persons.

(e) Reasons for allowance. If the examiner believes that the record of the prosecution as a whole does not make clear his or her reasons for allowing a claim or claims, the examiner may set forth such reasoning. The reasons shall be incorporated into an Office action rejecting other claims of the application or patent under reexamination proceeding, must reply thereto and may request reconsideration or further examination, with or without amendment.

§ 1.110 Inventorship and date of invention of the subject matter of individual claims.

When more than one inventor is named in an application or patent, the Patent and Trademark Office, when necessary for purposes of an Office proceeding, may require an applicant, patentee, or owner to identify the inventive entity of the subject matter of each claim in the application or patent. Where appropriate, the invention dates of the subject matter of each claim and the ownership of the subject matter on the date of invention may be required of the applicant, patentee or owner. See also §§ 1.78(c) and 1.130.

[61 FR 42805, Aug. 19, 1996]
the amendments avoid such references or objections. (See §§1.135 and 1.136 for time for reply.)


§ 1.112 Reconsideration before final action.

After reply by applicant or patent owner (§1.111) to a non-final action, the application or patent under reexamination will be reconsidered and again examined. The applicant or patent owner will be notified if claims are rejected, or objections or requirements made, in the same manner as after the first examination. Applicant or patent owner may reply to such Office action in the same manner provided in §1.111, with or without amendment, unless such Office action indicates that it is made final (§1.113).


§ 1.113 Final rejection or action.

(a) On the second or any subsequent examination or consideration by the examiner the rejection or other action may be made final, whereupon applicant’s or patent owner’s reply is limited to appeal in the case of rejection of any claim (§1.191), or to amendment as specified in §1.114 or §1.116. Petition may be taken to the Commissioner in the case of objections or requirements not involved in the rejection of any claim (§1.181). Reply to a final rejection or action must comply with §1.114 or paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) In making such final rejection, the examiner shall repeat or state all grounds of rejection then considered applicable to the claims in the application, clearly stating the reasons in support thereof.

(c) Reply to a final rejection or action must include cancellation of, or appeal from the rejection of, each rejected claim. If any claim stands allowed, the reply to a final rejection or action must comply with any requirements or objections as to form.

[65 FR 14872, Mar. 20, 2000]

§ 1.114 Request for continued examination.

(a) An applicant may request continued examination of the application by filing a submission and the fee set forth in §1.17(e) prior to the earliest of:

(1) Payment of the issue fee, unless a petition under §1.313 is granted;

(2) Abandonment of the application;

or

(3) The filing of a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit under 35 U.S.C. 141, or the commencement of a civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145 or 146, unless the appeal or civil action is terminated.

(b) A submission as used in this section includes, but is not limited to, an information disclosure statement, an amendment to the written description, claims, or drawings, new arguments, or new evidence in support of patentability. If reply to an Office action under 35 U.S.C. 132 is outstanding, the submission must meet the reply requirements of §1.111.

(c) If an applicant timely files a submission and fee set forth in §1.17(e), the Office will withdraw the finality of any Office action and the submission will be entered and considered. If an applicant files a request for continued examination under this section after appeal, but prior to a decision on the appeal, it will be treated as a request to withdraw the appeal and to reopen prosecution of the application before the examiner. An appeal brief under §1.192 or a reply brief under §1.193(b), or related papers, will not be considered a submission under this section.

(d) The provisions of this section do not apply in any application in which the Office has not mailed at least one of an Office action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151. The provisions of this section also do not apply to:

(1) A provisional application;

(2) An application for a utility or plant patent filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) before June 8, 1995;

(3) An international application filed under 35 U.S.C. 363 before June 8, 1995;

(4) An application for a design patent; or

(5) A patent under reexamination.

[65 FR 14872, Mar. 20, 2000]

AMENDMENTS

Authority: Secs. 1.115 to 1.127 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 132.
§ 1.115 [Reserved]

§ 1.116 Amendments after final action or appeal.

(a) An amendment after final action or appeal must comply with §1.114 or this section.

(b) After a final rejection or other final action (§1.113), amendments may be made canceling claims or complying with any requirement of form expressly set forth in a previous Office action. Amendments presenting rejected claims in better form for consideration on appeal may be admitted. The admission of, or refusal to admit, any amendment after final rejection, and any related proceedings, will not operate to relieve the application or patent under reexamination from its condition as subject to appeal or to save the application from abandonment under §1.135.

(c) If amendments touching the merits of the application or patent under reexamination are presented after final rejection, or after appeal has been taken, or when such amendment might not otherwise be proper, they may be admitted upon a showing of good and sufficient reasons why they are necessary and were not earlier presented.

(d) No amendment can be made as a matter of right in appealed cases. After decision on appeal, amendments can only be made as provided in §1.198, or to carry into effect a recommendation under §1.196.

§§ 1.117-1.119 [Reserved]

§ 1.121 Manner of making amendments.

(a) Amendments in nonprovisional applications, other than reissue applications: Amendments in nonprovisional applications, excluding reissue applications, are made by filing a paper, in compliance with §1.52, directing that specified amendments be made.

(i) Specification other than the claims. Except as provided in §1.125, amendments to add matter to, or delete matter from, the specification, other than to the claims, may only be made as follows:

(ii) Instructions for insertions: The precise point in the specification must be indicated where an insertion is to be made, and the matter to be inserted must be set forth.

(iii) Instructions for deletions: The precise point in the specification must be indicated where a deletion is to be made, and the matter to be deleted must be set forth or otherwise indicated.

(iv) Matter deleted by amendment can be reinstated only by a subsequent amendment presenting the previously deleted matter as a new insertion.

(b) Claims. Amendments to the claims may only be made as follows:

(i) Instructions for insertions and deletions: A claim may be amended by specifying only the exact matter to be deleted or inserted by an amendment and the precise point where the deletion or insertion is to be made, where the changes are limited to:

(A) Deletions and/or

(B) The addition of no more than five (5) words in any one claim; or

(ii) Claim cancellation or rewriting: A claim may be amended by directions to cancel the claim or by rewriting such claim with underlining below the matter added and brackets around the matter deleted. The rewriting of a claim in this form will be construed as directing the deletion of the previous version of that claim. If a previously rewritten claim is again rewritten, underlining and bracketing will be applied relative to the previous version of the claim, with the parenthetical expression “twice amended,” “three times amended,” etc., following the original claim number. The original claim number followed by that parenthetical expression must be used for the rewritten claim. No interlineations or deletions of any prior amendment may appear in the currently submitted version of the claim. A claim canceled by amendment (not deleted and rewritten) can be reinstated only by a subsequent amendment presenting the claim as a new claim with a new claim number.

(3) Drawings. (i) Amendments to the original application drawings are not permitted. Any change to the application drawings must be by way of a substitute sheet of drawings for each sheet changed submitted in compliance with §1.84.
(ii) Where a change to the drawings is desired, a sketch in permanent ink showing proposed changes in red, to become part of the record, must be filed for approval by the examiner and should be in a separate paper.

(4) [Reserved]

(5) The disclosure must be amended, when required by the Office, to correct inaccuracies of description and definition, and to secure substantial correspondence between the claims, the remainder of the specification, and the drawings.

(6) No amendment may introduce new matter into the disclosure of an application.

(b) Amendments in reissue applications: Amendments in reissue applications are made by filing a paper, in compliance with §1.52, directing that specified amendments be made.

(1) Specification other than the claims. Amendments to the specification, other than to the claims, may only be made as follows:

(i) Amendments must be made by submission of the entire text of a newly added or rewritten paragraph(s) with markings pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(iii) of this section, except that an entire paragraph may be deleted by a statement deleting the paragraph without presentation of the text of the paragraph.

(ii) The precise point in the specification must be indicated where the paragraph to be amended is located.

(iii) Underlining below the subject matter added to the patent and brackets around the subject matter deleted from the patent are to be used to mark the amendments being made.

(2) Claims. Amendments to the claims may only be made as follows:

(i) The amendment must be made relative to the patent claims in accordance with paragraph (b)(6) of this section and must include the entire text of each claim which is being amended by the current amendment and of each claim being added by the current amendment with markings pursuant to paragraph (b)(2)(ii)(C) of this section, except that a patent claim or added claim should be cancelled by a statement cancelling the patent claim or added claim without presentation of the text of the patent claim or added claim.

(B) Patent claims must not be renumbered and the numbering of any claims added to the patent must follow the number of the highest numbered patent claim.

(C) Underlining below the subject matter added to the patent and brackets around the subject matter deleted from the patent are to be used to mark the amendments being made. If a claim is amended pursuant to paragraph (b)(2)(ii)(A) of this section, a parenthetical expression “amended,” “twice amended,” etc., should follow the original claim number.

(ii) Each amendment submission must set forth the status (i.e., pending or cancelled) as of the date of the amendment, of all patent claims and of all added claims.

(iii) Each amendment when originally submitted must be accompanied by an explanation of the support in the disclosure of the patent for the amendment along with any additional comments on page(s) separate from the page(s) containing the amendment.

(3) Drawings. (i) Amendments to the original patent drawings are not permitted. Any change to the patent drawings must be by way of a new sheet of drawings with the amended figures identified as “amended” and with added figures identified as “new” for each sheet changed submitted in compliance with §1.84.

(ii) Where a change to the drawings is desired, a sketch in permanent ink showing proposed changes in red, to become part of the record, must be filed for approval by the examiner and should be in a separate paper.

(4) The disclosure must be amended, when required by the Office, to correct inaccuracies of description and definition, and to secure substantial correspondence between the claims, the remainder of the specification, and the drawings.

(5) No reissue patent shall be granted enlarging the scope of the claims of the original patent unless applied for within two years from the grant of the original patent, pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 251. No amendment to the patent may introduce new matter or be made in an expired patent.
§ 1.122–1.24

6 All amendments must be made relative to the patent specification, including the claims, and drawings, which is in effect as of the date of filing of the reissue application.

(c) Amendments in reexamination proceedings: Any proposed amendment to the description and claims in patents involved in reexamination proceedings must be made in accordance with §1.530(d).


§§ 1.122–1.24 [Reserved]

§ 1.125 Substitute specification.

(a) If the number or nature of the amendments or the legibility of the application papers renders it difficult to consider the application, or to arrange the papers for printing or copying, the Office may require the entire specification, including the claims, or any part thereof, be rewritten.

(b) A substitute specification, excluding the claims, may be filed at any point up to payment of the issue fee if it is accompanied by:
   (1) A statement that the substitute specification includes no new matter; and
   (2) A marked-up copy of the substitute specification showing the matter being added to and the matter being deleted from the specification of record.

(c) A substitute specification submitted under this section must be submitted in clean form without markings as to amended material.

(d) A substitute specification under this section is not permitted in a reissue application or in a reexamination proceeding.


§ 1.126 Numbering of claims.

The original numbering of the claims must be preserved throughout the prosecution. When claims are canceled the remaining claims must not be renumbered. When claims are added, they must be numbered by the applicant consecutively beginning with the number next following the highest numbered claim previously presented (whether entered or not). When the application is ready for allowance, the examiner, if necessary, will renumber the claims consecutively in the order in which they appear or in such order as may have been requested by applicant.


§ 1.127 Petition from refusal to admit amendment.

From the refusal of the primary examiner to admit an amendment, in whole or in part, a petition will lie to the Commissioner under §1.181.

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.129 Transitional procedures for limited examination after final rejection and restriction practice.

(a) An applicant in an application, other than for reissue or a design patent, that has been pending for at least two years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference made in such application to any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c), is entitled to have a first submission entered and considered on the merits after final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the first submission and the fee set forth in §1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the fee set forth in §1.17(r). If a subsequent final rejection is made in the application, applicant is entitled to have a second submission entered and considered on the merits after the subsequent final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the second submission and a second fee set forth in §1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the subsequent final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the second fee set forth in §1.17(r). Any submission filed after a final rejection made in an application subsequent to the fee set forth in §1.17(r) having been twice paid will be treated as set forth
in §1.116. A submission as used in this paragraph includes, but is not limited to, an information disclosure statement, an amendment to the written description, claims or drawings and a new substantive argument or new evidence in support of patentability.

(b)(1) In an application, other than for reissue or a design patent, that has been pending for at least three years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference made in the application to any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c), no requirement for restriction or for the filing of divisional applications shall be made or maintained in the application after June 8, 1995, except where:

(i) The requirement was first made in the application or any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c) prior to April 8, 1995;

(ii) The examiner has not made a requirement for restriction in the present or parent application prior to April 8, 1995, due to actions by the applicant; or

(iii) The required fee for examination of each additional invention was not paid.

(2) If the application contains more than one independent and distinct invention and a requirement for restriction or for the filing of divisional applications cannot be made or maintained pursuant to this paragraph, applicant will be so notified and given a time period to:

(i) Elect the invention or inventions to be searched and examined, if no election has been made prior to the notice, and pay the fee set forth in $1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in excess of one which applicant elects;

(ii) Confirm an election made prior to the notice and pay the fee set forth in §1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in addition to the one invention which applicant previously elected; or

(iii) File a petition under this section traversing the requirement. If the required petition is filed in a timely manner, the original time period for electing and paying the fee set forth in §1.17(s) will be deferred and any decision on the petition affirming or modifying the requirement will set a new time period to elect the invention or inventions to be searched and examined and to pay the fee set forth in §1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in excess of one which applicant elects.

(3) The additional inventions for which the required fee has not been paid will be withdrawn from consideration under §1.142(b). An applicant who desires examination of an invention so withdrawn from consideration can file a divisional application under 35 U.S.C. 121.

(c) The provisions of this section shall not be applicable to any application filed after June 8, 1995.

[60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995]

AFFIDAVITS OVERCOMING REJECTIONS

§1.130 Affidavit or declaration to disqualify commonly owned patent as prior art.

(a) When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103 in view of a U.S. patent which is not prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(b), and the inventions defined by the claims in the application or patent under reexamination and by the claims in the patent are not identical but are not patentably distinct, and the inventions are owned by the same party, the applicant or owner of the patent under reexamination may disqualify the patent as prior art. The patent can be disqualified as prior art by submission of:

(1) A terminal disclaimer in accordance with §1.321(c), and

(2) An oath or declaration stating that the application or patent under reexamination and the patent are currently owned by the same party, and that the inventor named in the application or patent under reexamination is the prior inventor under 35 U.S.C. 104.

(b) When an application or a patent under reexamination claims an invention which is not patentably distinct from an invention claimed in a commonly owned patent with the same or a different inventive entity, a double patenting rejection will be made in the application or a patent under reexamination. A judicially created double
§ 1.131 Affidavit or declaration of prior invention to overcome cited patent or publication.

(a) (1) When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102 (a) or (e), or 35 U.S.C. 103 based on a U.S. patent to another or others which is prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102 (a) or (e) and which substantially shows or describes but does not claim the same patentable invention, as defined in §1.601(n), or on reference to a foreign patent or to a printed publication, the inventor of the subject matter of the rejected claim, the owner of the patent under reexamination, or the party qualified under §§1.42, 1.43, or 1.47, may submit an appropriate oath or declaration to overcome the patent or publication. The oath or declaration must include facts showing a completion of the invention in this country or in a NAFTA or WTO member country before the filing date of the application on which the U.S. patent issued, or before the date of the foreign patent, or before the date of the printed publication. When an appropriate oath or declaration is made, the patent or publication cited shall not bar the grant of a patent to the inventor or the confirmation of the patentability of the claims of the patent, unless the date of such patent or printed publication is more than one year prior to the date on which the inventor’s or patent owner's application was filed in this country.

(2) A date of completion of the invention may not be established under this section before December 8, 1993, in a NAFTA country, or before January 1, 1996, in a WTO member country other than a NAFTA country.

(b) The showing of facts shall be such, in character and weight, as to establish reduction to practice prior to the effective date of the reference, or conception of the invention prior to the effective date of the reference coupled with due diligence from prior to said date to a subsequent reduction to practice or to the filing of the application. Original exhibits of drawings or records, or photocopies thereof, must accompany and form part of the affidavit or declaration of their absence satisfactorily explained.

§ 1.132 Affidavits or declarations traversing grounds of rejection.

When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected on reference to a U.S. patent which substantially shows or describes but does not claim the same patentable invention, as defined in §1.601(n), on reference to a foreign patent, on reference to a printed publication, or on reference to facts within the personal knowledge of an employee of the Office, or when rejected upon a mode or capability of operation attributed to a reference, or because the alleged invention is held to be inoperative, lacking in utility, frivolous, or injurious to public health or morals, affidavits or declarations traversing these references or objections may be received.

§ 1.133 Interviews.

(a) Interviews with examiners concerning applications and other matters pending before the Office must be had in the examiners’ rooms at such times, within office hours, as the respective examiners may designate. Interviews will not be permitted at any other time or place without the authority of the Commissioner. Interviews for the discussion of the patentability of pending applications will not be had before the first official action thereon. Interviews should be arranged for in advance.

(b) In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for reply to Office actions as specified in §§1.111 and 1.135.

37 CFR Ch. 1 (7–1–00 Edition)
§ 1.134 Time period for reply to an Office action.

An Office action will notify the applicant of any non-statutory or shortened statutory time period set for reply to an Office action. Unless the applicant is notified in writing that a reply is required in less than six months, a maximum period of six months is allowed.


§ 1.135 Abandonment for failure to reply within time period.

(a) If an applicant of a patent application fails to reply within the time period provided under §1.134 and §1.136, the application will become abandoned unless an Office action indicates otherwise.

(b) Prosecution of an application to save it from abandonment pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section must include such complete and proper reply as the condition of the application may require. The admission of, or refusal to admit, any amendment after final rejection or any amendment not responsive to the last action, or any related proceedings, will not operate to save the application from abandonment.

(c) When reply by the applicant is a bona fide attempt to advance the application to final action, and is substantially a complete reply to the non-final Office action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, applicant may be given a new time period for reply under §1.134 to supply the omission.


§ 1.136 Extensions of time.

(a)(1) If an applicant is required to reply within a nonstatutory or shortened statutory time period, applicant may extend the time period for reply up to the earlier of the expiration of any maximum period set by statute or five months after the time period set for reply, if a petition for an extension of time and the fee set in §1.17(a) are filed, unless:

(i) Applicant is notified otherwise in an Office action;

(ii) The reply is a reply brief submitted pursuant to §1.193(b);

(iii) The reply is a request for an oral hearing submitted pursuant to §1.194(b);

(iv) The reply is to a decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences pursuant to §1.196, §1.197 or §1.304; or

(v) The application is involved in an interference declared pursuant to §1.611.

(2) The date on which the petition and the fee have been filed is the date for purposes of determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee. The expiration of the time period is determined by the amount of the fee paid. A reply must be filed prior to the expiration of the period of extension to avoid abandonment of the application (§1.135), but in no situation may an applicant reply later than the maximum time period set by statute, or be granted an extension of time under paragraph (b) of this section when the provisions of this paragraph are available. See §1.136(b) for extensions of time relating to proceedings pursuant to §§1.193(b), 1.194, 1.196 or 1.197; §1.304 for extension of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action; §1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings; and §1.645 for extension of time in interference proceedings.

(3) A written request may be submitted in an application that is an authorization to treat any concurrent or future reply, requiring a petition for an extension of time under this paragraph for its timely submission, as incorporating a petition for extension of time for the appropriate length of time. An authorization to charge all required fees, fees under §1.17, or all required extension of time fees will be treated as a constructive petition for an extension of time in any concurrent or future reply requiring a petition for an extension of time under this paragraph for its timely submission. Submission of the fee set forth in §1.17(a) will also be treated as a constructive
petition for an extension of time in any concurrent reply requiring a petition for an extension of time under this paragraph for its timely submission.

(b) When a reply cannot be filed within the time period set for such reply and the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section are not available, the period for reply will be extended only for sufficient cause and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for an extension of time under this paragraph must be filed on or before the day on which such reply is due, but the mere filing of such a request will not effect any extension under this paragraph. In no situation can any extension carry the date on which reply is due beyond the maximum time period set by statute. See §1.304 for extension of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action; §1.645 for extension of time in interference proceedings; and §1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings.


§ 1.137 Revival of abandoned application or lapsed patent.

(a) Unavoidable. Where the delay in reply was unavoidable, a petition may be filed to revive an abandoned application or a lapsed patent pursuant to this paragraph. A grantable petition pursuant to this paragraph must be accompanied by:

(1) The required reply, unless previously filed. In a nonprovisional application abandoned for failure to prosecute, the required reply may be met by the filing of a continuing application. In an application or patent, abandoned or lapsed for failure to pay the issue fee or any portion thereof, the required reply must be the payment of the issue fee or any outstanding balance thereof;

(2) The petition fee as set forth in §1.17(m);

(3) A statement that the entire delay in filing the required reply from the due date for the reply until the filing of a grantable petition pursuant to this paragraph was unavoidable. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and

(4) Any terminal disclaimer (and fee as set forth in §1.20(d)) required pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) Unintentional. Where the delay in reply was unintentional, a petition may be filed to revive an abandoned application or a lapsed patent pursuant to this paragraph. A grantable petition pursuant to this paragraph must be accompanied by:

(1) The required reply, unless previously filed. In a nonprovisional application abandoned for failure to prosecute, the required reply may be met by the filing of a continuing application. In an application or patent, abandoned or lapsed for failure to pay the issue fee or any portion thereof, the required reply must be the payment of the issue fee or any outstanding balance thereof;

(2) The petition fee as set forth in §1.17(m);

(3) A statement that the entire delay in filing the required reply from the due date for the reply until the filing of a grantable petition pursuant to this paragraph was unintentional. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and

(4) Any terminal disclaimer (and fee as set forth in §1.20(d)) required pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) In a design application, a utility application filed before June 8, 1995, or a plant application filed before June 8, 1995, any petition to revive pursuant to this section must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer and fee as set forth in §1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. Any terminal disclaimer pursuant to this paragraph must also apply to any patent granted on any continuing application that contains a specific reference under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c) to the application for which revival is sought. The provisions of this paragraph do not apply to lapsed patents.

(d) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to revive an abandoned application or lapsed patent upon petition filed pursuant to this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to revive or within such time as set in the decision. Unless a decision indicates
otherwise, this time period may be extended under the provisions of §1.136.

(e) A provisional application, abandoned for failure to timely respond to an Office requirement, may be revived pursuant to this section so as to be pending for a period of no longer than twelve months from its filing date. Under no circumstances will a provisional application be regarded as pending after twelve months from its filing date.


§1.138 Express abandonment.
An application may be expressly abandoned by filing in the Patent and Trademark Office a written declaration of abandonment signed by the applicant and the assignee of record, if any, and identifying the application. An application may also be expressly abandoned by filing a written declaration of abandonment signed by the attorney or agent of record. A registered attorney or agent acting under the provision of §1.34(a), or of record, may also expressly abandon a prior application as of the filing date granted to a continuing application when filing such a continuing application. Express abandonment of the application may not be recognized by the Office unless it is actually received by appropriate officials in time to act thereon before the date of issue.

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984]

§1.139 [Reserved]

§1.141 Different inventions in one national application.
(a) Two or more independent and distinct inventions may not be claimed in one national application, except that more than one species of an invention, not to exceed a reasonable number, may be specifically claimed in different claims in one national application, provided the application also includes an allowable claim generic to all the claimed species and all the claims to species in excess of one are written in dependent form (§1.75) or otherwise include all the limitations of the generic claim.

(b) Where claims to all three categories, product, process of making, and process of use, are included in a national application, a three way requirement for restriction can only be made where the process of making is distinct from the product. If the process of making and the product are not distinct, the process of using may be joined with the claims directed to the product and the process of making the product even though a showing of distinctness between the product and process of using the product can be made.

[52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987]

§1.142 Requirement for restriction.
(a) If two or more independent and distinct inventions are claimed in a single application, the examiner in an Office action will require the applicant in the reply to that action to elect an invention to which the claims will be restricted, this official action being called a requirement for restriction (also known as a requirement for division). Such requirement will normally be made before any action on the merits; however, it may be made at any time before final action.

(b) Claims to the invention or inventions not elected, if not canceled, are nevertheless withdrawn from further consideration by the examiner by the election, subject however to reinstatement in the event the requirement for restriction is withdrawn or overruled.


§1.143 Reconsideration of requirement.
If the applicant disagrees with the requirement for restriction, he may request reconsideration and withdrawal or modification of the requirement, giving the reasons therefor. (See §1.111.) In requesting reconsideration the applicant must indicate a provisional election of one invention for prosecution, which invention shall be
§ 1.144 Petition from requirement for restriction.

After a final requirement for restriction, the applicant, in addition to making any reply due on the remainder of the action, may petition the Commissioner to review the requirement. Petition may be deferred until after final action on or allowance of claims to the invention elected, but must be filed not later than appeal. A petition will not be considered if reconsideration of the requirement was not requested (see §1.181).


§ 1.145 Subsequent presentation of claims for different invention.

If, after an office action on an application, the applicant presents claims directed to an invention distinct from and independent of the invention previously claimed, the applicant will be required to restrict the claims to the invention previously claimed if the amendment is entered, subject to reconsideration and review as provided in §§1.143 and 1.144.

§ 1.146 Election of species.

In the first action on an application containing a generic claim to a generic invention (genus) and claims to more than one patentably distinct species embraced thereby, the examiner may require the applicant in the reply to that action to elect a species of his or her invention to which his or her claim will be restricted if no claim to the genus is found to be allowable. However, if such application contains claims directed to more than a reasonable number of species, the examiner may require restriction of the claims to not more than a reasonable number of species before taking further action in the application.


37 CFR Ch. I (7-1–00 Edition)

DESIGN PATENTS

§ 1.151 Rules applicable.

The rules relating to applications for patents for other inventions or discoveries are also applicable to applications for patents for designs except as otherwise provided.

(35 U.S.C. 171)

§ 1.152 Design drawings.

(a) The design must be represented by a drawing that complies with the requirements of §1.84, and must contain a sufficient number of views to constitute a complete disclosure of the appearance of the design.

(1) Appropriate and adequate surface shading should be used to show the character or contour of the surfaces represented. Solid black surface shading is not permitted except when used to represent the color black as well as color contrast. Broken lines may be used to show visible environmental structure, but may not be used to show hidden planes and surfaces which cannot be seen through opaque materials. Alternate positions of a design component, illustrated by full and broken lines in the same view are not permitted in a design drawing.

(b) Any detail shown in the ink or color drawings or photographs (formal or informal) deposited with the original application papers constitutes an integral part of the disclosed and claimed design, except as otherwise provided in this paragraph. This detail may include, but is not limited to, color or contrast, graphic or written indicia, including identifying indicia of a proprietary nature, surface ornamentation on an article, or any combination thereof.

(1) When any detail shown in informal drawings or photographs does not constitute an integral part of the disclosed and claimed design, a specific disclaimer must appear in the original application papers either in the specification or directly on the drawings or photographs. This specific disclaimer in the original application papers will provide antecedent basis for the omission of the disclaimed detail(s) in later-filed drawings or photographs.

(2) When informal color drawings or photographs are deposited with the original application papers without a disclaimer pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section, formal color drawings or photographs, or a black and white drawing lined to represent color, will be required.


§ 1.153 Title, description and claim, oath or declaration.

(a) The title of the design must designate the particular article. No description, other than a reference to the drawing, is ordinarily required. The claim shall be in formal terms to the ornamental design for the article (specifying name) as shown, or as shown and described. More than one claim is neither required nor permitted.

(b) The oath or declaration required of the applicant must comply with § 1.153(b).


§ 1.154 Arrangement of application elements.

(a) The elements of the design application, if applicable, should appear in the following order:

(1) Design Application Transmittal Form.

(2) Fee Transmittal Form.

(3) Preamble, stating name of the applicant, title of the design, and a brief description of the nature and intended use of the article in which the design is embodied.

(4) Cross-reference to related applications.

(5) Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development.

(6) Description of the figure or figures of the drawing.

(7) Feature Description.

(8) A single claim.

(9) Drawings or photographs.

(10) Executed oath or declaration (See § 1.153(b)).

[Reserved]


§ 1.155 Issue of design patents.

If, on examination, it appears that the applicant is entitled to a design patent under the law, a notice of allowance will be sent to the applicant, or applicant's attorney or agent, calling for the payment of the issue fee (§ 1.18(b)). If this issue fee is not paid within three months of the date of the notice of allowance, the application shall be regarded as abandoned.


PLANT PATENTS

§ 1.161 Rules applicable.

The rules relating to applications for patent for other inventions or discoveries are also applicable to applications for patents for plants except as otherwise provided.

§ 1.162 Applicant, oath or declaration.

The applicant for a plant patent must be the person who has invented or discovered and asexually reproduced the new and distinct variety of plant for which a patent is sought (or as provided in §§ 1.42, 1.43, and 1.47). The oath or declaration required of the applicant, in addition to the averments required by § 1.63, must state that he or she has asexually reproduced the plant. Where the plant is a newly found plant the oath or declaration must also state that it was found in a cultivated area.


§ 1.163 Specification and arrangement of application elements.

(a) The specification must contain as full and complete a disclosure as possible of the plant and the characteristics thereof that distinguish the same over related known varieties, and its antecedents, and must particularly point out where and in what manner the variety of plant has been asexually reproduced. In the case of a newly found plant, the specification must particularly point out the location and character of the area where the plant was discovered.

(b) Two copies of the specification (including the claim) must be submitted, but only one signed oath or declaration is required.

(c) The elements of the plant application, if applicable, should appear in the following order:

1. Plant Application Transmittal Form.
2. Fee Transmittal Form.
3. Title of the invention.
5. Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development.
6. Background of the invention.
7. Brief summary of the invention.
8. Brief description of the drawing.
9. Detailed Botanical Description.
10. A single claim.
13. Executed oath or declaration.

(d) A plant color coding sheet as used in this section means a sheet that specifies a color coding system as designated in a color dictionary, and lists every plant structure to which color is a distinguishing feature and the corresponding color code which best represents that plant structure.


§ 1.164 Claim.

The claim shall be in formal terms to the new and distinct variety of the specified plant as described and illustrated, and may also recite the principal distinguishing characteristics. More than one claim is not permitted.

(35 U.S.C. 162)

§ 1.165 Plant drawings.

(a) Plant patent drawings should be artistically and competently executed and must comply with the requirements of §1.84. View numbers and reference characters need not be employed unless required by the examiner. The drawing must disclose all the distinctive characteristics of the plant capable of visual representation.

(b) The drawing may be in color and when color is a distinguishing characteristic of the new variety, the drawing must be in color. Two copies of color drawings or color photographs must be submitted.

[58 FR 38726, July 20, 1993]

§ 1.166 Specimens.

The applicant may be required to furnish specimens of the plant, its flower or fruit, in a quantity and at a time in its stage of growth as may be designated, for study and inspection. Such specimens, properly packed, must be forwarded in conformity with instructions furnished to the applicant. When it is not possible to forward such specimens, plants must be made available for official inspection where grown.

(35 U.S.C. 114, 161)


§ 1.167 Examination.

Applications may be submitted by the Patent and Trademark Office to the Department of Agriculture for study and report.


REISSUES

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.171 to 1.179 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 251.

§ 1.171 Application for reissue.

An application for reissue must contain the same parts required for an application for an original patent, complying with all the rules relating thereto except as otherwise provided, and in
addition, must comply with the requirements of the rules relating to reissue applications.


§ 1.172 Applicants, assignees.

(a) A reissue oath must be signed and sworn to or declaration made by the inventor or inventors except as otherwise provided (see §§1.42, 1.43, 1.47), and must be accompanied by the written consent of all assignees, if any, owning an undivided interest in the patent, but a reissue oath may be made and sworn to or declaration made by the assignee of the entire interest if the application does not seek to enlarge the scope of the claims of the original patent. All assignees consenting to the reissue must establish their ownership interest in the patent by filing in the reissue application a submission in accordance with the provisions of §3.73(b) of this chapter.

(b) A reissue will be granted to the original patentee, his legal representatives or assigns as the interest may appear.


§ 1.173 Specification.

The specification of the reissue application must include the entire specification and claims of the patent, with the matter to be omitted by reissue enclosed in square brackets; and any additions made by the reissue must be underlined, so that the old and the new specifications and claims may be readily compared. Claims should not be renumbered and the numbering of claims added by reissue should follow the number of the highest numbered patent claim. No new matter shall be introduced into the specification.

§ 1.174 Drawings.

(a) The drawings upon which the original patent was issued may be used in reissue applications if no changes whatsoever are to be made in the drawings. In such cases, when the reissue application is filed, the applicant must submit a temporary drawing which may consist of a copy of the printed drawings of the patent or a photoprint of the original drawings of the size required for original drawing.

(b) Amendments which can be made in a reissue drawing, that is, changes from the drawing of the patent, are restricted.


§ 1.175 Reissue oath or declaration.

(a) The reissue oath or declaration in addition to complying with the requirements of §1.63, must also state that:

(1) The applicant believes the original patent to be wholly or partly inoperative or invalid by reason of a defective specification or drawing, or by reason of the patentee claiming more or less than the patentee had the right to claim in the patent, stating at least one error being relied upon as the basis for reissue; and

(2) All errors being corrected in the reissue application up to the time of filing of the oath or declaration under this paragraph arose without any deceptive intention on the part of the applicant.

(b)(1) For any error corrected, which is not covered by the oath or declaration submitted under paragraph (a) of this section, applicant must submit a supplemental oath or declaration stating that every such error arose without any deceptive intention on the part of the applicant. Any supplemental oath or declaration required by this paragraph must be submitted before allowance and may be submitted:

(i) With any amendment prior to allowance; or

(ii) In order to overcome a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 251 made by the examiner where it is indicated that the submission of a supplemental oath or declaration as required by this paragraph will overcome the rejection.

(2) For any error sought to be corrected after allowance, a supplemental oath or declaration must accompany the requested correction stating that the error(s) to be corrected arose without any deceptive intention on the part of the applicant.
§ 1.176 Examination of reissue.

(c) Having once stated an error upon which the reissue is based, as set forth in paragraph (a)(1), unless all errors previously stated in the oath or declaration are no longer being corrected, a subsequent oath or declaration under paragraph (b) of this section need not specifically identify any other error or errors being corrected.

(d) The oath or declaration required by paragraph (a) of this section may be submitted under the provisions of § 1.53(f).


§ 1.177 Reissue in divisions.

The Commissioner may, in his or her discretion, cause several patents to be issued for distinct and separate parts of the thing patented, upon demand of the applicant, and upon payment of the required fee for each division. Each division of a reissue constitutes the subject of a separate specification descriptive of the part or parts of the invention claimed in such division; and the drawings may represent only such part or parts, subject to the provisions of §§ 1.83 and 1.84. On filing divisional reissue applications, they shall be referred to the Commissioner. Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner upon petition and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(i), all the divisions of a reissue will issue simultaneously; if there is any controversy as to one division, the others will be withheld from issue until the controversy is ended, unless the Commissioner orders otherwise.

[60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.178 Original patent.

The application for a reissue must be accompanied by an offer to surrender the original patent. The application should also be accompanied by the original patent, or if the original is lost or inaccessible, by an affidavit or declaration to that effect. The application may be accepted for examination in the absence of the original patent or the affidavit or declaration, but one or the other must be supplied before the case is allowed. If a reissue be refused, the original patent will be returned to applicant upon his request.


§ 1.179 Notice of reissue application.

When an application for a reissue is filed, there will be placed in the file of the original patent a notice stating that an application for reissue has been filed. When the reissue is granted or the reissue application is otherwise terminated, the fact will be added to the notice in the file of the original patent.

PETITIONS AND ACTION BY THE COMMISSIONER


§ 1.181 Petition to the Commissioner.

(a) Petition may be taken to the Commissioner:

(1) From any action or requirement of any examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application which is not subject to appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or to the court;

(2) In cases in which a statute or the rules specify that the matter is to be determined directly by or reviewed by the Commissioner; and

(3) To invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner in appropriate circumstances. For petitions in interferences, see § 1.644.

(b) Any such petition must contain a statement of the facts involved and the point or points to be reviewed and the action requested. Briefs or memoranda, if any, in support thereof should accompany or be embodied in the petition; and where facts are to be proven,
§ 1.191 Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(a) Every applicant for a patent or for reissue of a patent, and every owner of a patent under reexamination, any of whose claims has been twice or finally (§ 1.113) rejected, may appeal from the decision of the examiner to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences by filing a notice of appeal and the fee set forth in § 1.17(b) within the time period provided under §§ 1.134 and 1.136 for patent applications or § 1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings.

(b) The signature requirement of § 1.33 does not apply to a notice of appeal filed under this section.

(c) An appeal when taken must be taken from the rejection of all claims under rejection which the applicant or patent owner proposes to contest. Questions relating to matters not affecting the merits of the invention may be required to be settled before an appeal can be considered.

(d) The time periods set forth in §§ 1.191 and 1.192 are subject to the provisions of § 1.136 for patent applications and § 1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. The time periods set forth in §§ 1.193, 1.194, 1.196 and 1.197 are subject to the provisions of § 1.136(b) for patent applications or § 1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for

§ 1.183 Suspension of rules.

In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of the regulations in this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee, sua sponte, or on petition of the interested party, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed. Any petition under this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

[47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982]

§ 1.184 [Reserved]

APPEAL TO THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.191 to 1.198 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 134.

§ 1.191 Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(a) Every applicant for a patent or for reissue of a patent, and every owner of a patent under reexamination, any of whose claims has been twice or finally (§ 1.113) rejected, may appeal from the decision of the examiner to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences by filing a notice of appeal and the fee set forth in § 1.17(b) within the time period provided under §§ 1.134 and 1.136 for patent applications.

(b) The signature requirement of § 1.33 does not apply to a notice of appeal filed under this section.

(c) An appeal when taken must be taken from the rejection of all claims under rejection which the applicant or patent owner proposes to contest. Questions relating to matters not affecting the merits of the invention may be required to be settled before an appeal can be considered.

(d) The time periods set forth in §§ 1.191 and 1.192 are subject to the provisions of § 1.136 for patent applications and § 1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. The time periods set forth in §§ 1.193, 1.194, 1.196 and 1.197 are subject to the provisions of § 1.136(b) for patent applications or § 1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for
the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action.

(e) Jurisdiction over the application or patent under reexamination passes to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences upon transmittal of the file, including all briefs and examiner's answers, to the Board. Prior to the entry of a decision on the appeal, the Commissioner may sua sponte order the application remanded to the examiner.


§ 1.192 Appellant's brief.

(a) Appellant must, within two months from the date of the notice of appeal under §1.191 or within the time allowed for reply to the action from which the appeal was taken, if such time is later, file a brief in triplicate. The brief must be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(c) and must set forth the authorities and arguments on which appellant will rely to maintain the appeal. Any arguments or authorities not included in the brief will be refused consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, unless good cause is shown.

(b) On failure to file the brief, accompanied by the requisite fee, within the time allowed, the appeal shall stand dismissed.

(c) The brief shall contain the following items under appropriate headings and in the order indicated below unless the brief is filed by an applicant who is not represented by a registered practitioner:

1. Real party in interest. A statement identifying the real party in interest, if the party named in the caption of the brief is not the real party in interest.

2. Related appeals and interferences. A Statement identifying by number and filing date all other appeals or interferences known to appellant, the appellant's legal representative, or assignee which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending appeal.

3. Status of claims. A statement of the status of all the claims, pending or cancelled, and identifying the claims appealed.


5. Summary of invention. A concise explanation of the invention defined in the claims involved in the appeal, which shall refer to the specification by page and line number, and to the drawing, if any, by reference characters.


7. Grouping of claims. For each ground of rejection which appellant contests and which applies to a group of two or more claims, the Board shall select a single claim from the group and shall decide the appeal as to the ground of rejection on the basis of that claim alone unless a statement is included that the claims of the group do not stand or fall together and, in the argument under paragraph (c)(8) of this section, appellant explains why the claims of the group are believed to be separately patentable. Merely pointing out differences in what the claims cover is not an argument as to why the claims are separately patentable.

8. Argument. The contentions of appellant with respect to each of the issues presented for review in paragraph (c)(6) of this section, and the basis therefor, with citations of the authorities, statutes, and parts of the record relied on. Each issue should be treated under a separate heading.

(i) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and how the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112 is complied with, including, as appropriate, how the specification and drawings, if any,

(A) Describe the subject matter defined by each of the rejected claims,

(B) Enable any person skilled in the art to make and use the subject matter defined by each of the rejected claims, and

(C) Set forth the best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out his or her invention.

(ii) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and how the claims particularly point
§ 1.193 Examiner's answer and reply brief.

(a)(1) The primary examiner may, within such time as may be directed by the Commissioner, furnish a written statement in answer to appellant's brief including such explanation of the invention claimed and of the references and grounds of rejection as may be necessary, supplying a copy to appellant. If the primary examiner finds that the appeal is not regular in form or does not relate to an appealable action, the primary examiner shall so state.

(2) An examiner's answer must not include a new ground of rejection, but if an amendment under §1.116 proposes to add or amend one or more claims and appellant was advised that the amendment under §1.116 would be entered for purposes of appeal and which individual rejection(s) set forth in the action from which the appeal was taken would be used to reject the added or amended claim(s), then the appeal brief must address the rejection(s) of the claim(s) added or amended by the amendment under §1.116 as appellant was so advised and the examiner's answer may include the rejection(s) of the claim(s) added or amended by the amendment under §1.116 as appellant was so advised. The filing of an amendment under §1.116 which is entered for purposes of appeal represents appellant's consent that when so advised any appeal proceed on those claim(s) added or amended by the amendment under §1.116 subject to any rejection set forth in the action from which the appeal was taken.

(b)(1) Appellant may file a reply brief to an examiner's answer within two months from the date of such examiner's answer. See §1.133(b) for extensions of time for filing a reply brief in a patent application and §1.550(c) for extensions of time for filing a reply brief.
§ 1.194 Oral hearing.

(a) An oral hearing should be requested only in those circumstances in which appellant considers such a hearing necessary or desirable for a proper presentation of the appeal. An appeal decided without an oral hearing will receive the same consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences as appeals decided after oral hearing.

(b) If appellant desires an oral hearing, appellant must file, in a separate paper, a written request for such hearing accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(d) within two months from the date of the examiner's answer. If appellant requests an oral hearing and submits therewith the fee set forth in §1.17(d), an oral argument may be presented by, or on behalf of, the primary examiner if considered desirable by either the primary examiner or the Board. See §1.136(b) for extensions of time for requesting an oral hearing in a patent application and §1.550(c) for extensions of time for requesting an oral hearing in a reexamination proceeding.

(c) If no request and fee for oral hearing have been timely filed by appellant, the appeal will be assigned for consideration and decision. If appellant has requested an oral hearing and has submitted the fee set forth in §1.17(d), a day of hearing will be set, and due notice thereof given to appellant and to the primary examiner. A hearing will be held as stated in the notice, and oral argument will be limited to twenty minutes for appellant and fifteen minutes for the primary examiner unless otherwise ordered before the hearing begins. If the Board decides that a hearing is not necessary, the Board will so notify appellant.


§ 1.195 Affidavits or declarations after appeal.

Affidavits, declarations, or exhibits submitted after the case has been appealed will not be admitted without a showing of good and sufficient reasons why they were not earlier presented.

[34 FR 18858, Nov. 26, 1969]

§ 1.196 Decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(a) The Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, in its decision, may affirm or reverse the decision of the examiner in whole or in part on the grounds and on the claims specified by the examiner or remand the application to the examiner for further consideration. The affirmance of the rejection of a claim on any of the grounds specified constitutes a general affirmance of the decision of the examiner on that claim, except as to any ground specifically reversed.

(b) Should the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences have knowledge of any grounds not involved in the appeal for rejecting any pending claim, it may include in the decision a statement to that effect with its reasons for so holding, which statement constitutes a new ground of rejection of the claim. A new ground of rejection shall not be considered final for purposes of judicial review. When the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences makes a new ground of rejection, the appellant, within two months from the date of the decision, must exercise one of the following two options.
with respect to the new ground of rejection to avoid termination of proceedings (§ 1.197(c)) as to the rejected claims:

(1) Submit an appropriate amendment of the claims so rejected or a showing of facts relating to the claims so rejected, or both, and have the matter reconsidered by the examiner, in which event the application will be remanded to the examiner. The new ground of rejection is binding upon the examiner unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record be made which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the new ground of rejection stated in the decision. Should the examiner reject the claims, appellant may again appeal pursuant to §§ 1.191 through 1.195 to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(2) Request that the application be reheard under § 1.197(b) by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences upon the same record. The request for rehearing must address the new ground of rejection and state with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision and also state all other grounds upon which rehearing is sought. Where request for such rehearing is made, the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences shall rehear the new ground of rejection and, if necessary, render a new decision which shall include all grounds of rejection upon which a patent is refused. The decision on rehearing is deemed to incorporate the earlier decision for purposes of appeal, except for those portions specifically withdrawn on rehearing, and is final for the purpose of judicial review, except when noted otherwise in the decision.

(c) Should the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences include an explicit statement that a claim may be allowed in amended form, appellant shall have the right to amend in conformity with such statement which shall be binding on the examiner in the absence of new references or grounds of rejection.

(d) The Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences may require appellant to address any matter that is deemed appropriate for a reasoned decision on the pending appeal. Appellant will be given a non-extendable time period within which to respond to such a requirement.

(e) Whenever a decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences includes or allows a remand, that decision shall not be considered a final decision. When appropriate, upon conclusion of proceedings on remand before the examiner, the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences may enter an order otherwise making its decision final.

(f) See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time to take action under this section in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.


§ 1.197 Action following decision.

(a) After decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, the application will be returned to the examiner, subject to appellant’s right of appeal or other review, for such further action by appellant or by the examiner, as the condition of the application may require, to carry into effect the decision.

(b) Appellant may file a single request for rehearing within two months from the date of the original decision, unless the original decision is so modified by the decision on rehearing as to become, in effect, a new decision, and the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences so states. The request for rehearing must state with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision and also state all other grounds upon which rehearing is sought. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time for seeking rehearing in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time for seeking rehearing in a reexamination proceeding.

(c) Termination of proceedings. Proceedings are considered terminated by the dismissal of an appeal or the failure to timely file an appeal to the court or a civil action (§ 1.304) except:

(1) Where claims stand allowed in an application or
§ 1.198

(2) Where the nature of the decision requires further action by the examiner.

The date of termination of proceedings is the date on which the appeal is dismissed or the date on which the time for appeal to the court or review by civil action (§ 1.304) expires. If an appeal to the court or a civil action has been filed, proceedings are considered terminated when the appeal or civil action is terminated. An appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit is terminated when the mandate is received by the Office. A civil action is terminated when the time to appeal the judgment expires.


§ 1.198 Reopening after decision.

Cases which have been decided by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences will not be reopened or reconsidered by the primary examiner except under the provisions of §1.114 or §1.196 without the written authority of the Commissioner, and then only for the consideration of matters not already adjudicated, sufficient cause being shown.

[65 FR 14873, Mar. 20, 2000]

§ 1.198 Reopening after decision.

Cases which have been decided by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences will not be reopened or reconsidered by the primary examiner except under the provisions of §1.114 or §1.196 without the written authority of the Commissioner, and then only for the consideration of matters not already adjudicated, sufficient cause being shown.


§ 1.248 Service of papers; manner of service; proof of service in cases other than interferences.

(a) Service of papers must be on the attorney or agent of the party if there be such or on the party if there is no attorney or agent, and may be made in any of the following ways:

(1) By delivering a copy of the paper to the person served;

(2) By leaving a copy at the usual place of business of the person served with someone in his employment;

(3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy at the person's residence, with some person of suitable age and discretion who resides there;

(4) Transmission by first class mail.

When service is by mail the date of mailing will be regarded as the date of service;

(5) Whenever it shall be satisfactorily shown to the Commissioner that none of the above modes of obtaining or serving the paper is practicable, service may be by notice published in the Official Gazette.

(b) Papers filed in the Patent and Trademark Office which are required to be served shall contain proof of service. Proof of service may appear on or be affixed to papers filed. Proof of service shall include the date and manner of service. In the case of personal service, proof of service shall also include the name of any person served, certified by the person who made service. Proof of service may be made by:

(1) An acknowledgement of service by or on behalf of the person served or

(2) A statement signed by the attorney or agent containing the information required by this section.

(c) See §1.646 for service of papers in interferences.

(2) The protest is either served upon the applicant in accordance with §1.248, or filed with the Office in duplicate in the event service is not possible.

(b) Protests raising fraud or other inequitable conduct issues will be entered in the application file, generally without comment on those issues. Protests which do not adequately identify a pending patent application will be returned to the protestor and will not be further considered by the Office. A protest submitted in accordance with the second sentence of paragraph (a) of this section will be considered by the Office if the application is still pending when the protest and application file are brought before the examiner and it includes:

(1) A listing of the patents, publications, or other information relied upon;

(2) A concise explanation of the relevance of each listed item;

(3) A copy of each listed patent or publication or other item of information in written form or at least the pertinent portions thereof; and

(4) An English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language patent, publication, or other item of information in written form relied upon.

(c) A member of the public filing a protest in an application under paragraph (a) of this section will not receive any communications from the Office relating to the protest, other than the return of a self-addressed postcard which the member of the public may include with the protest in order to receive an acknowledgment by the Office that the protest has been received. In the absence of a request by the Office, an applicant has no duty to, and need not, reply to a protest. The limited involvement of the member of the public filing a protest pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section ends with the filing of the protest, and no further submission on behalf of the protestor will be considered, except for additional prior art, or unless such submission raises new issues which could not have been earlier presented.

§ 1.292 Public use proceedings.

(a) When a petition for the institution of public use proceedings, supported by affidavits or declarations is found, on reference to the examiner, to make a prima facie showing that the invention claimed in an application believed to be on file had been in public use or on sale more than one year before the filing of the application, a hearing may be had before the Commissioner to determine whether a public use proceeding should be instituted. If instituted, the Commissioner may designate an appropriate official to conduct the public use proceeding, including the setting of times for taking testimony, which shall be taken as provided by §§ 1.671 through 1.685. The petitioner will be heard in the proceedings but after decision therein will not be heard further in the prosecution of the application for patent.

(b) The petition and accompanying papers, or a notice that such a petition has been filed, shall be entered in the application file if:

(1) The petition is accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(j);

(2) The petition is served on the applicant in accordance with §1.248, or filed with the Office in duplicate in the event service is not possible; and

(3) The petition is submitted prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under §1.311.

(c) A petition for institution of public use proceedings shall not be filed by a party to an interference as to an application involved in the interference. Public use and on sale issues in an interference shall be raised by a preliminary motion under §1.633(a).


§ 1.293 Statutory invention registration.

(a) An applicant for an original patent may request, at any time during the pendency of applicant's pending complete application, that the specification and drawings be published as a statutory invention registration. Any such request must be signed by (1) the applicant and any assignee of record or
(a) Any request for a statutory invention registration will be examined to determine if the requirements of §1.293 have been met. The application to which the request is directed will be examined to determine (1) if the subject matter of the application is appropriate for publication, (2) if the requirements for publication are met, and (3) if the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 and §1.293 of this part are met.

(b) Applicant will be notified of the results of the examination set forth in paragraph (a) of this section. If the requirements of §1.293 and this section are not met by the request filed, the notification to applicant will set a period of time within which to comply with the requirements in order to avoid abandonment of the application. If the application does not meet the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112, the notification to applicant will include a rejection under the appropriate provisions of 35 U.S.C. 112. The periods for reply established pursuant to this section are subject to the extension of time provisions of §1.136. After reply by the applicant, the application will again be considered for publication of a statutory invention registration. If the requirements of §1.293 and this section are not timely met, the refusal to publish will be made final. If the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 are not met, the rejection pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 will be made final.

(c) If the examination pursuant to this section results in approval of the request for a statutory invention registration the applicant will be notified of the intent to publish a statutory invention registration.

§1.295 Review of decision finally refusing to publish a statutory invention registration.

(a) Any requester who is dissatisfied with the final refusal to publish a statutory invention registration for reasons other than compliance with 35
§ 1.301 Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.

Any applicant or any owner of a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, and any party to an interference dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, may appeal to the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. The appellant must take the following steps in such an appeal:

(a) In the Patent and Trademark Office file a written notice of appeal directed to the Commissioner (see §§ 1.302 and 1.304); and

(b) In the Court, file a copy of the notice of appeal and pay the fee for appeal, as provided by the rules of the Court.

[54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989]

§ 1.302 Notice of appeal.

(a) When an appeal is taken to the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the notice of appeal must be filed with the Court within the time period set forth in § 1.301(b). The notice of appeal must include a statement that the appeal is taken from a final decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, and must specify the action or decision appealed from. The notice of appeal must also include a copy of the decision appealed from and a brief statement of the grounds on which the appeal is based.

[54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989]

(a) Any applicant or any owner of a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, and any party dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, may, instead of appealing to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (§ 1.301), have remedy by civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145 or 146, as appropriate. Such civil action must be commenced within the time specified in § 1.304.

(b) If an applicant in an ex parte case or an owner of a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, he or she thereby waives his or her right to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 145.

(c) If any adverse party to an appeal taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit by a defeated party in an interference proceeding files notice with the Commissioner within twenty days after the filing of the defeated party’s notice of appeal to the court (§ 1.302), that he or she elects to have all further proceedings conducted as provided in 35 U.S.C. 146, the notice of election must be served as provided in § 1.646.

§ 1.304 Time for appeal or civil action.

(a)(1) The time for filing the notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (§ 1.302) or for commencing a civil action (§ 1.303) is two months from the date of the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. If a request for rehearing or reconsideration of the decision is filed within the time period provided under § 1.197(b) or § 1.658(b), the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action shall expire two months after action on the request. In interferences, the time for filing a cross-appeal or cross-action expires:

(i) 14 days after service of the notice of appeal or the summons and complaint; or

(ii) Two months after the date of decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, whichever is later.

(2) The time periods set forth in this section are not subject to the provisions of §§ 1.136, 1.550(c) or 1.645(a) or (b).

(3) The Commissioner may extend the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action:

(i) For good cause shown if requested in writing before the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action; or

(ii) Upon written request after the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action upon a showing that the failure to act was the result of excusable neglect.

(b) The times specified in this section in days are calendar days. The times specified herein in months are calendar months except that one day shall be added to any two-month period which includes February 28. If the last day of the time specified for appeal or commencing a civil action falls on a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday in the District of Columbia, the time is extended to the next day which is neither a Saturday, Sunday nor a Federal holiday.

(c) If a defeated party to an interference has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit and an adverse party has filed notice under 35 U.S.C. 141 electing to have all further proceedings conducted under 35 U.S.C. 146 (§ 1.303(c)), the time for filing a civil action thereafter is specified in 35 U.S.C. 141. The time for filing a cross-action expires 14 days after service of the notice of appeal or the summons and complaint.

§ 1.305 Time for filing a cross-action.

(a) A notice of appeal, if mailed to the Office, shall be addressed as follows: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

[b FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 16414, May 9, 1988]
after service of the summons and complaint.

§ 1.311 Notice of allowance.

(a) If, on examination, it shall appear that the applicant is entitled to a patent under the law, a notice of allowance will be sent to applicant at the correspondence address indicated in § 1.33, calling for the payment of a specified sum constituting the issue fee ($1.18), which shall be paid within 3 months from the date of the mailing of the notice of allowance.

(b) An authorization to charge the issue fee ($1.18) to a deposit account may be filed in an individual application, either before or after mailing of the notice of allowance. Where an authorization to charge the issue fee to a deposit account has been filed before the mailing of the notice of allowance, the issue fee will be automatically charged to the deposit account at the time of mailing the notice of allowance.

§ 1.312 Amendments after allowance.

No amendment may be made as a matter of right in an application after the mailing of the notice of allowance. Any amendment filed pursuant to this section must be filed before or with the payment of the issue fee, and may be entered on the recommendation of the primary examiner, approved by the Commissioner, without withdrawing the application from issue.

§ 1.313 Withdrawal from issue.

(a) Applications may be withdrawn from issue, for further action at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. To request that the Office withdraw an application from issue, applicant must file a petition under this section including the fee set forth in §1.17(i) and a showing of good and sufficient reasons why withdrawal of the application is necessary. If the Office withdraws the application from issue, the Office will issue a new notice of allowance if the Office again allows the application.

(b) Once the issue fee has been paid, the Office will not withdraw the application from issue at its own initiative for any reason except:

(1) A mistake on the part of the Office;

(2) A violation of §1.56 or illegality in the application;

(3) Unpatentability of one or more claims; or

(4) For interference.

(c) Once the issue fee has been paid, the application will not be withdrawn from issue upon petition by the applicant for any reason except:

(1) Unpatentability of one or more claims, which petition must be accompanied by an unequivocal statement that one or more claims are unpatentable, an amendment to such claim or claims, and an explanation as to how the amendment causes such claim or claims to be patentable;

(2) Consideration of a submission pursuant to §1.114; or

(3) Express abandonment of the application. Such express abandonment may be in favor of a continuing application.

(d) A petition under this section will not be effective to withdraw the application from issuance unless it is actually received and granted by the appropriate officials before the date of issue. Withdrawal of an application from issue after payment of the issue fee may not be effective to avoid publication of application information.

§ 1.314 Issuance of patent.

If payment of the issue fee is timely made, the patent will issue in regular course unless the application is withdrawn from issue (§1.313), or issuance of the patent is deferred. Any petition by the applicant requesting a deferral of the issuance of a patent must be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(i) and must include a showing of good and sufficient reasons why it is necessary to defer issuance of the patent.
§ 1.315 Delivery of patent.

The patent will be delivered or mailed upon issuance to the correspondence address of record. See § 1.33(a).

[61 FR 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.316 Application abandoned for failure to pay issue fee.

If the issue fee is not paid within three months from the date of the notice of allowance, the application will be regarded as abandoned. Such an abandoned application will not be considered as pending before the Patent and Trademark Office.


§ 1.317 Lapsed patents; delayed payment of balance of issue fee.

If the issue fee paid is the amount specified in the notice of allowance, but a higher amount is required at the time the issue fee is paid, any remaining balance of the issue fee is to be paid within three months from the date of notice thereof and, if not paid, the patent will lapse at the termination of the three-month period.


§ 1.318 [Reserved]

DISCLAIMER

§ 1.321 Statutory disclaimers, including terminal disclaimers.

(a) A patentee owning the whole or any sectional interest in a patent may disclaim any complete claim or claims in a patent. In like manner any patentee may disclaim or dedicate to the public the entire term, or any terminal part of the term, of the patent granted. Such disclaimer is binding upon the grantee and its successors or assigns. A notice of the disclaimer is published in the Official Gazette and attached to the printed copies of the specification. The disclaimer, to be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, must:

(1) Be signed by the patentee, or an attorney or agent of record;

(2) Identify the patent and complete claim or claims, or term being disclaimed. A disclaimer which is not a disclaimer of a complete claim or claims, or term will be refused recordation;

(3) State the present extent of patentee's ownership interest in the patent; and

(4) Be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.20(d).

(b) An applicant or assignee may disclaim or dedicate to the public the entire term, or any terminal part of the term, of a patent to be granted. Such terminal disclaimer is binding upon the grantee and its successors or assigns. The terminal disclaimer, to be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, must:

(1) Be signed:

(i) By the applicant, or

(ii) If there is an assignee of record of an undivided part interest, by the applicant and such assignee, or

(iii) If there is an assignee of record of the entire interest, by such assignee, or

(iv) By an attorney or agent of record;

(2) Specify the portion of the term of the patent being disclaimed;

(3) State the present extent of applicant's or assignee's ownership interest in the patent to be granted; and

(4) Be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.20(d).

(c) A terminal disclaimer, when filed to obviate a judicially created double patenting rejection in a patent application or in a reexamination proceeding, must:

(1) Comply with the provisions of paragraphs (b)(2) through (b)(4) of this section;

(2) Be signed in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section if filed in a patent application or in accordance with paragraph (a)(1) of this section if filed in a reexamination proceeding; and

(3) Include a provision that any patent granted on that application or any patent subject to the reexamination proceeding shall be enforceable only for and during such period that said patent is commonly owned with the application or patent which formed the basis for the rejection.

§ 1.322 Certificate of correction of Office mistake.

(a) A certificate of correction under 35 U.S.C. 254 may be issued at the request of the patentee or the patentee’s assignee. Such certificate will not be issued at the request or suggestion of anyone not owning an interest in the patent, nor on motion of the Office, without first notifying the patentee (including any assignee of record) and affording the patentee an opportunity to be heard. When the request relates to a patent involved in an interference, the request shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under § 1.635.

(b) If the nature of the mistake on the part of the Office is such that a certificate of correction is deemed inappropriate in form, the Commissioner may issue a corrected patent in lieu thereof as a more appropriate form for certificate of correction, without expense to the patentee.

§ 1.323 Certificate of correction of applicant’s mistake.

Whenever a mistake of a clerical or typographical nature or of minor character which was not the fault of the Office, appears in a patent and a showing is made that such mistake occurred in good faith, the Commissioner may, upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.20(a), issue a certificate, if the correction does not involve such changes in the patent as would constitute new matter or would require reexamination. A request for a certificate of correction of a patent involved in an interference shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under § 1.635.

§ 1.324 Correction of inventorship in patent.

(a) Whenever through error a person is named in an issued patent as the inventor, or through error an inventor is not named in an issued patent and such error arose without any deceptive intention on his or her part, the Commissioner may, on petition, or on order of a court before which such matter is called in question, issue a certificate naming only the actual inventor or inventors. A petition to correct inventorship of a patent involved in an interference must comply with the requirements of this section and must be accompanied by a motion under § 1.634.

(b) Any petition pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section must be accompanied by:

1. A statement from each person who is being added as an inventor and from each person who is being deleted as an inventor that the inventorship error occurred without any deceptive intention on his or her part;
2. A statement from the current named inventors who have not submitted a statement under paragraph (b)(1) of this section either agreeing to the change of inventorship or stating that they have no disagreement in regard to the requested change;
3. A statement from all assignees of the parties submitting a statement under paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section agreeing to the change of inventorship in the patent, which statement must comply with the requirements of § 3.73(b) of this chapter; and
4. The fee set forth in § 1.20(b).

§ 1.325 Other mistakes not corrected.

Mistakes other than those provided for in §§ 1.322, 1.323, 1.324, and not affording legal grounds for reissue or for reexamination, will not be corrected after the date of the patent.

§ 1.335 Filing of notice of arbitration awards.

(a) Written notice of any award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office by the patentee, or the patentee’s assignee or licensee. If the award involves more than one patent a
§ 1.351 Amendments to rules will be published.

All amendments to the regulations in this part will be published in the Official Gazette and in the Federal Register.

§ 1.352 [Reserved]

§ 1.362 Time for payment of maintenance fees.

(a) Maintenance fees as set forth in §§1.20 (e) through (g) are required to be paid in all patents based on applications filed on or after December 12, 1980, except as noted in paragraph (b) of this section, to maintain a patent in force beyond 4, 8 and 12 years after the date of grant.

(b) Maintenance fees are not required for any plant patents or for any design patents. Maintenance fees are not required for a reissue patent if the patent being reissued did not require maintenance fees.

(c) The application filing dates for purposes of payment of maintenance fees are as follows:

(1) For an application not claiming benefit of an earlier application, the actual United States filing date of the application.

(2) For an application claiming benefit of an earlier foreign application under 35 U.S.C. 119, the United States filing date of the application.

(3) For a continuing (continuation, division, continuation-in-part) application claiming the benefit of a prior patent application under 35 U.S.C. 120, the actual United States filing date of the continuing application.

(4) For a reissue application, including a continuing reissue application claiming the benefit of a reissue application under 35 U.S.C. 120, United States filing date of the original non-reissue application on which the patent reissued is based.

(5) For an international application which has entered the United States as a Designated Office under 35 U.S.C. 371, the international filing date granted under Article 11(1) of the Patent Cooperation Treaty which is considered to be the United States filing date under 35 U.S.C. 363.

(d) Maintenance fees may be paid in patents without surcharge during the periods extending respectively from:

(1) 3 years through 3 years and 6 months after grant for the first maintenance fee,

(2) 7 years through 7 years and 6 months after grant for the second maintenance fee, and

(3) 11 years through 11 years and 6 months after grant for the third maintenance fee.

(e) Maintenance fees may be paid with the surcharge set forth in §1.20(h) during the respective grace periods after:

(1) 3 years and 6 months and through the day of the 4th anniversary of the grant for the first maintenance fee,

(2) 7 years and 6 months and through the day of the 8th anniversary of the
§ 1.366 Submission of maintenance fees.

(a) The patentee may pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges, or any person or organization may pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges on behalf of a patentee. Authorization by the patentee need not be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office to pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges on behalf of the patentee.

(b) A maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge submitted for a patent must be submitted in the amount due on the date the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge are paid. A maintenance fee or surcharge may be paid in the manner set forth in §1.23 or by an authorization to charge a deposit account established pursuant to §1.25. Payment of a maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge or the authorization to charge a deposit account must be submitted within the periods set forth in §1.362 (d), (e), or (f). Any payment or authorization of maintenance fees and surcharges filed at any other time will not be accepted and will not serve as a payment of the maintenance fee except insofar as a delayed payment of the maintenance fee is accepted by the Commissioner in an expired patent pursuant to §1.378. Any authorization to charge a deposit account must authorize the immediate charging of the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge to the deposit account. Payment of less than the required amount, payment in a manner other than that set forth §1.23, or in the filing of an authorization to charge a deposit account having insufficient funds will not constitute payment of a maintenance fee or surcharge on a patent. The procedures set forth in §1.8 or §1.10 may be
utilized in paying maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges.

(c) In submitting maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges, identification of the patents for which maintenance fees are being paid must include the following:

(1) The patent number; and
(2) The application number of the United States application for the patent on which the maintenance fee is being paid.

(d) Payment of maintenance fees and any surcharges should identify the fee being paid for each patent as to whether it is the 3½-, 7½-, or 11½-year fee, whether small entity status is being changed or claimed, the amount of the maintenance fee and any surcharge being paid, and any assigned customer number. If the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge is being paid on a reissue patent, the payment must identify the reissue patent by reissue patent number and reissue application number as required by paragraph (c) of this section and should also include the original patent number.

(e) Maintenance fee payments and surcharge payments relating thereto must be submitted separate from any other payments for fees or charges, whether submitted in the manner set forth in §1.23 or by an authorization to charge a deposit account. If maintenance fee and surcharge payments for more than one patent are submitted together, they should be submitted on as few sheets as possible with the patent numbers listed in increasing patent number order. If the payment submitted is insufficient to cover the maintenance fees and surcharges for all the listed patents, the payment will be applied in the order the patents are listed, beginning at the top of the listing.

(f) Notification of any change in status resulting in loss of entitlement to small entity status must be filed in a patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity is no longer appropriate. See §1.28(b).

(g) Maintenance fees and surcharges relating thereto will not be refunded except in accordance with §§1.26 and 1.28(a).


§ 1.377 Review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of patent.

(a) Any patentee who is dissatisfied with the refusal of the Patent and Trademark Office to accept and record a maintenance fee which was filed prior to the expiration of the patent may petition the Commissioner to accept and record the maintenance fee.

(b) Any petition under this section must be filed within 2 months of the action complained of, or within such other time as may be set in the action complained of, and must be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(h). The petition may include a request that the petition fee be refunded if the refusal to accept and record the maintenance fee is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) Any petition filed under this section must comply with the requirements of §1.181(b) and must be signed by an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, or by the patentee, the assignee, or other party in interest.


§ 1.378 Acceptance of delayed payment of maintenance fee in expired patent to reinstate patent.

(a) The Commissioner may accept the payment of any maintenance fee due on a patent after expiration of the patent if, upon petition, the delay in payment of the maintenance fee is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to have been unavoidable (paragraph (b) of this section) or unintentional (paragraph (c) of this section) and if the surcharge required by §1.20(i) is paid as a condition of accepting payment of the maintenance fee. If the Commissioner accepts payment of the maintenance fee upon petition, the patent shall be considered as not having expired, but will be subject to the conditions set forth in 35 U.S.C. 41(c)(2).
(b) Any petition to accept an unavoidably delayed payment of a maintenance fee filed under paragraph (a) of this section must include:

(1) The required maintenance fee set forth in §1.20(e) through (g);
(2) The surcharge set forth in §1.20(i)(2); and
(3) A showing that the delay was unavoidable since reasonable care was taken to ensure that the maintenance fee would be paid timely and that the petition was filed promptly after the patentee was notified of, or otherwise became aware of, the expiration of the patent. The showing must enumerate the steps taken to ensure timely payment of the maintenance fee, the date and the manner in which patentee became aware of the expiration of the patent, and the steps taken to file the petition promptly.

(c) Any petition to accept an unintentionally delayed payment of a maintenance fee filed under paragraph (a) of this section must be filed within twenty-four months after the six-month grace period provided in §1.362(e) and must include:

(1) The required maintenance fee set forth in §1.20(e) through (g);
(2) The surcharge set forth in §1.20(i)(2); and
(3) A statement that the delay in payment of the maintenance fee was unintentional.

(d) Any petition under this section must be signed by an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, or by the patentee, the assignee, or other party in interest.

(e) Reconsideration of a decision refusing to accept a maintenance fee upon petition filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section may be obtained by filing a petition for reconsideration within two months of, or such other time as set in, the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment of the maintenance fee. Any such petition for reconsideration must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in §1.17(h). After decision on the petition for reconsideration, no further reconsideration or review of the matter will be undertaken by the Commissioner. If the delayed payment of the maintenance fee is not accepted, the maintenance fee and the surcharge set forth in §1.20(i) will be refunded following the decision on the petition for reconsideration, or after the expiration of the time for filing such a petition for reconsideration, if none is filed. Any petition fee under this section will not be refunded unless the refusal to accept and record the maintenance fee is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.


Subpart C—International Processing Provisions


Source: 43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

General Information

§1.401 Definitions of terms under the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

(a) The abbreviation PCT and the term Treaty mean the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

(b) International Bureau means the World Intellectual Property Organization located in Geneva, Switzerland.

(c) Administrative Instructions means that body of instructions for operating under the Patent Cooperation Treaty referred to in PCT Rule 89.

(d) Request, when capitalized, means that element of the international application described in PCT Rules 3 and 4.

(e) Annexes means amendments made to the claims, description or the drawings before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(f) Priority date for the purpose of computing time limits under the Patent Cooperation Treaty is defined in PCT Art. 2(xi). Note also §1.465.

(g) Demand, when capitalized, means that document filed with the International Preliminary Examining Authority which requests an international preliminary examination.

(h) International application, as used in this subchapter is defined in §1.9(b).

(i) Demand, when capitalized, means that document filed with the International Preliminary Examining Authority which requests an international preliminary examination.

(j) Annexes means amendments made to the claims, description or the drawings before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.
§ 1.412 The United States Receiving Office.

(a) The United States Patent and Trademark Office is a Receiving Office only for applicants who are residents or nationals of the United States of America.

(b) The Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as a Receiving Office, will be identified by the full title “United States Receiving Office” or by the abbreviation “RO/US.”

(c) The major functions of the Receiving Office include:

1. According of international filing dates to international applications meeting the requirements of PCT Art. 11(1), and PCT Rule 20;
2. Assuring that international applications meet the standards for format and content of PCT Art. 14(1), PCT Rule 9, 26, 29.1, 37, 38, 91, and portions of PCT Rules 3 through 11;
3. Collecting and, when required, transmitting fees due for processing international applications (PCT Rule 14, 15, 15);
4. Transmitting the record and search copies to the International Bureau and International Searching Authority, respectively (PCT Rules 22 and 23); and
5. Determining compliance with applicable requirements of part 5 of this chapter.

6. Reviewing and, unless prescriptions concerning national security prevent the application from being so transmitted (PCT Rule 19.4), transmitting the international application to the International Bureau for processing in its capacity as a Receiving Office:
   (i) Where the United States Receiving Office is not the competent Receiving Office under PCT Rule 19.1 or 19.2 and § 1.421(a); or
   (ii) Where the international application is not in English but is in a language accepted under PCT Rule 12.1(a) by the International Bureau as a Receiving Office; or
   (iii) Where there is agreement and authorization in accordance with PCT Rule 19.4(a)(iii).


§ 1.413 The United States International Searching Authority.

(a) Pursuant to appointment by the Assembly, the United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as an International Searching Authority for international applications filed in the United States Receiving Office and in other Receiving Offices as may be agreed upon by the Commissioner, in accordance with agreement between the Patent and Trademark Office and the International Bureau (PCT Art. 16(3)(b)).

(b) The Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as an International Searching Authority, will be identified by the full title “United States International Searching Authority” or by the abbreviation “ISA/US.”

(c) The major functions of the International Searching Authority include:

1. Approving or establishing the title and abstract;
2. Considering the matter of unity of invention;
3. Conducting international and international-type searches and preparing international and international-type search reports (PCT Art. 15, 17 and 18, and PCT Rules 25, 33 to 45 and 47); and
4. Transmitting the international search report to the applicant and the International Bureau.

§ 1.414 The United States Patent and Trademark Office as a Designated Office or Elected Office.

(a) The United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as a Designated Office or Elected Office for international applications in which the United States of America has been designated or elected as a State in which patent protection is desired.

(b) The United States Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as a Designated Office or Elected Office during international processing will be identified by the full title “United States Receiving Office.”

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 60 FR 21439, May 2, 1995; 63 FR 29617, June 1, 1998]
§ 1.415 The International Bureau.
(a) The International Bureau is the World Intellectual Property Organization located at Geneva, Switzerland. It is the international intergovernmental organization which acts as the coordinating body under the Treaty and the Regulations (PCT Art. 2 (xix) and 35 U.S.C. 351 (h)).

(b) The major functions of the International Bureau include:
(1) Publishing of international applications and the International Gazette;
(2) Transmitting copies of international applications to Designated Offices;
(3) Storing and maintaining record copies; and
(4) Transmitting information to authorities pertinent to the processing of specific international applications.

§ 1.416 The United States International Preliminary Examining Authority.
(a) Pursuant to appointment by the Assembly, the United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as an International Preliminary Examining Authority for international applications filed in the United States Receiving Office and in other Receiving Offices as may be agreed upon by the Commissioner, in accordance with agreement between the Patent and Trademark Office and the International Bureau.

(b) The United States Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority, will be identified by the full title “United States International Preliminary Examining Authority” or by the abbreviation “IPEAUS.”

(c) The major functions of the International Preliminary Examining Authority include:
(1) Receiving and checking for defects in the Demand;
(2) Forwarding Demands in accordance with PCT Rule 59.3;
(3) Collecting the handling fee for the International Bureau and the preliminary examination fee for the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority;
(4) Informing applicant of receipt of the Demand;
(5) Considering the matter of unity of invention;
(6) Providing an international preliminary examination report which is a non-binding opinion on the questions of whether the claimed invention appears: to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be nonobvious), and to be industrially applicable; and
(7) Transmitting the international preliminary examination report to applicant and the International Bureau.

[52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987, as amended at 63 FR 29617, June 1, 1998]

§ 1.419 Display of currently valid control number under the Paperwork Reduction Act.
(a) Pursuant to the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 (44 U.S.C. 3501 et seq.), the collection of information in this subpart has been reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0021.

(b) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no person is required to respond to nor shall a person be subject to a penalty for failure to comply with a collection of information subject to the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act unless that collection of information displays a currently valid Office of Management and Budget control number. This section constitutes the display required by 44 U.S.C. 3512(a) and 5 CFR 1320.5(b)(1)(i) for the collection of information under Office of Management and Budget control number 0651-0021. (see 5 CFR 1320.5(b)(1)(i)(D)).

[63 FR 29617, June 1, 1998]
§ 1.421 Applicant for international application.  
(a) Only residents or nationals of the United States of America may file international applications in the United States Receiving Office. If an international application does not include an applicant who is indicated as being a resident or national of the United States of America, and at least one applicant:
(1) Has indicated a residence or nationality in a PCT Contracting State, or
(2) Has no residence or nationality indicated; applicant will be so notified and, if the international application includes a fee amount equivalent to that required by §1.445(a)(5), the international application will be forwarded for processing to the International Bureau acting as a Receiving Office. (See also §1.412(c)(6).)
(b) Although the United States Receiving Office will accept international applications filed by any resident or national of the United States of America for international processing, an international application designating the United States of America will be accepted by the Patent and Trademark Office for the national stage only if filed by the inventor or as provided in §1.422, 1.423 or §1.425.
(c) International applications which do not designate the United States of America may be filed by the assignee or owner.
(d) The attorney or agent of the applicant may sign the international application Request and file the international application for the applicant if the international application when filed is accompanied by a separate power of attorney to that attorney or agent from the applicant. The separate power of attorney from the applicant may be submitted after filing if sufficient cause is shown for not submitting it at the time of filing. Note that paragraph (b) of this section requires that the applicant be the inventor if the United States of America is designated.
(e) Any indication of different applicants for the purpose of different Designated Offices must be shown on the Request portion of the international application.
(f) Changes in the person, name, or address of the applicant of an international application shall be made in accordance with PCT Rule 92bis.
(g) The wording of PCT Rule 92bis is as follows:

PCT Rule 92bis—Recording of Changes in Certain Indications in the Request or the Demand

92bis Recording of Changes by the International Bureau

(a) The International Bureau shall, on the request of the applicant or the receiving Office, record changes in the following indications appearing in the request or demand:
(i) Person name, residence, nationality or address of the applicant,
(ii) Person, name or address of the agent, the common representative or the inventor.
(b) The International Bureau shall not record the requested change if the request for recording is received by it after the expiration:
(i) Of the time limit referred to in Article 22(1), where Article 39(1) is not applicable with respect to any Contracting State;
(ii) Of the time limit referred to in Article 39(1)(a), where Article 39(1) is applicable with respect to at least one Contracting State.


§ 1.422 When the inventor is dead.  
In case of the death of the inventor, the legal representative (executor, administrator, etc.) of the deceased inventor may file an international application which designates the United States of America.

§ 1.423 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.

In case an inventor is insane or otherwise legally incapacitated, the legal representative (guardian, conservator, etc.) of such inventor may file an international application which designates the United States of America.

§ 1.424 Joint inventors.

Joint inventors must jointly file an international application which designates the United States of America; the signature of either of them alone, or less than the entire number will be insufficient for an invention invented
§ 1.431 International application requirements.

(a) An international application shall contain, as specified in the Treaty and the Regulations, a Request, a description, one or more claims, an abstract, and one or more drawings (where required). (PCT Art. 3(2) and section 207 of the Administrative Instructions.)

(b) An international filing date will be accorded by the United States Receiving Office, at the time to receipt of the international application, provided that:

(1) At least one applicant (§ 1.421) is a United States resident or national and the papers filed at the time of receipt of the international application so indicate (35 U.S.C. 361(a), PCT Art. 1111(i)).

(2) The international application is in the English language (35 U.S.C. 361(c), PCT Art. 1111(ii)).

(3) The international application contains at least the following elements (PCT Art. 1111(iii)):

(i) An indication that it is intended as an international application (PCT Rule 4.2);

(ii) The designation of at least one Contracting State of the International Patent Cooperation Union (§ 1.432);

(iii) The name of the applicant, as prescribed (note §§ 1.421–1.424);

(iv) A part which on the face of it appears to be a description; and

(v) A part which on the face of it appears to be a claim.

(c) Payment of the basic portion of the international fee (PCT Rule 15.2) and the transmittal and search fees (§ 1.445) may be made in full at the time the international application papers required by paragraph (b) of this section are deposited or within one month thereafter. The basic, transmittal, and search fee payable is the basic, transmittal, and search fee in effect on the receipt date of the international application.

(1) If the basic, transmittal and search fees are not paid within one month from the date of receipt of the international application and prior to the sending of a notice of deficiency, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient fees plus a late payment fee equal to the greater of:

(i) Fifty percent of the amount of the deficient fees up to a maximum amount equal to the basic fee; or

(ii) An amount equal to the transmittal fee (PCT Rule 16bis).

(2) The one-month time limit set pursuant to this paragraph to pay deficient fees may not be extended.

(d) If the payment needed to cover the transmittal fee, the basic fee, the search fee, one designation fee and the late payment fee pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section is not timely made in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(e), the Receiving Office will declare the international application withdrawn under PCT Article 14(3)(a).

§ 1.432 Designation of States and payment of designation and confirmation fees.

(a) The designation of States including an indication that applicant wishes to obtain a regional patent, where applicable, shall appear in the Request upon filing and must be indicated as set forth in PCT Rule 4.9 and section 115 of the Administrative Instructions. Applicant must specify at least one national or regional designation on filing of the international application for a filing date to be granted.

(b) If the fees necessary to cover all the national and regional designations...
specified in the Request are not paid by the applicant within one year from the priority date or within one month from the date of receipt of the international application if that month expires after the expiration of one year from the priority date, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient designation fees plus a late payment fee. The late payment fee shall be equal to the greater of fifty percent of the amount of the deficient fees up to a maximum amount equal to the basic fee, or an amount equal to the transmittal fee (PCT Rule 16bis). The one-month time limit set in the notification of deficient designation fees may not be extended. Failure to timely pay at least one designation fee will result in the withdrawal of the international application.

(1) The one designation fee must be paid:
   (i) Within one year from the priority date;
   (ii) Within one month from the date of receipt of the international application if that month expires after the expiration of one year from the priority date; or
   (iii) With the late payment fee defined in this paragraph within the time set in the notification of the deficient designation fees or in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(e).

(2) If after a notification of deficient designation fees the applicant makes timely payment, but the amount paid is not sufficient to cover the late payment fee and all designation fees, the Receiving Office will, after allocating payment for the basic, search, transmittal and late payment fees, allocate the amount paid in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(c) and withdraw the unpaid designations. The notification of deficient designation fees pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to §1.431(c).

(c) The amount payable for the designation fee set forth in paragraph (b) is:

(1) The designation fee in effect on the filing date of the international application, if such fee is paid in full within one month from the date of receipt of the international application;

(2) The designation fee in effect on the date such fee is paid in full, if such fee is paid in full later than one month from the date of receipt of the international application but within one year from the priority date;

(3) The designation fee in effect on the priority date, if the fee was due one month from the priority date, and such fee is paid in full later than one month from the date of receipt of the international application and later than one year from the priority date; or

(4) The designation fee in effect on the international filing date, if the fee was due one month from the international filing date and after one year from the priority date, and such fee is paid in full later than one month from the date of receipt of the international application and later than one year from the priority date.

(d) On filing the international application, in addition to specifying at least one national or regional designation under PCT Rule 4.9(a), applicant may also indicate under PCT Rule 4.9(b) that all other designations permitted under the Treaty are made.

(1) Indication of other designations permitted by the Treaty under PCT Rule 4.9(b) must be made in a statement on the Request that any designation made under this paragraph is subject to confirmation (PCT Rule 4.9(c)) not later than the expiration of 15 months from the priority date by:

   (i) Filing a written notice with the United States Receiving Office specifying the national and/or regional designations being confirmed;
   (ii) Paying the designation fee for each designation being confirmed; and
   (iii) Paying the confirmation fee specified in §1.445(a)(4).

(2) Unconfirmed designations will be considered withdrawn. If the amount submitted is not sufficient to cover the designation fee and the confirmation fee for each designation being confirmed, the Receiving Office will allocate the amount paid in accordance with any priority of designations specified by applicant. If applicant does not specify any priority of designations, the allocation of the amount paid will
§ 1.433 Physical requirements of international application.

(a) The international application and each of the documents that may be referred to in the check list of the Request (PCT Rule 3.3(a)(ii)) shall be filed in one copy only.

(b) All sheets of the international application must be on A4 size paper (21.0 x 29.7 cm.).

(c) Other physical requirements for international applications are set forth in PCT Rule 11 and sections 201-207 of the Administrative Instructions.

§ 1.434 The request.

(a) The request shall be made on a standardized form (PCT Rules 3 and 4). Copies of printed Request forms are available from the Patent and Trademark Office. Letters requesting printed forms should be marked "Box PCT:"

(b) The Check List portion of the Request form should indicate each document accompanying the international application on filing.

(c) All information, for example, addresses, names of States and dates, shall be indicated in the Request as required by PCT Rule 4 and Administrative Instructions 110 and 201.

(d) International applications which designate the United States of America shall include:

(1) The name, address and signature of the inventor, except as provided by §§1.421(d), 1.422, 1.423 and 1.425.

(2) A reference to any copending national application or international application designating the United States of America, if the benefit of the filing date for the prior copending application is to be claimed.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 63 FR 29618, June 1, 1998]

§ 1.436 The claims.

The requirements as to the content and format of claims are set forth in PCT Art. 6 and PCT Rules 6, 9, 10 and 11 and shall be adhered to. The number of the claims shall be reasonable, considering the nature of the invention claimed.

§ 1.437 The drawings.

(a) Subject to paragraph (b) of this section, when drawings are necessary for the understanding of the invention, or are mentioned in the description, they must be part of an international application as originally filed in the United States Receiving Office in order to maintain the international filing date during the national stage (PCT Art. 7).

(b) Drawings missing from the application upon filing will be accepted if such drawings are received within 30 days of the date of first receipt of the incomplete papers. If the missing drawings are received within the 30-day period, the international filing date shall be the date on which such drawings are received. If such drawings are not timely received, all references to drawings in the international application shall be considered non-existent (PCT Art. 14(2), Administrative Instruction 310).

(c) The physical requirements for drawings are set forth in PCT Rule 11 and shall be adhered to.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 63 FR 29618, June 1, 1998]

§ 1.438 The abstract.

(a) Requirements as to the content and form of the abstract are set forth in PCT Rule 8, and shall be adhered to.

(b) Lack of an abstract upon filing of an international application will not result in the international application being declared withdrawn.
§ 1.445 Fees

§ 1.445 International application filing, processing and search fees.

(a) The following fees and charges for international applications are established by the Commissioner under the authority of 35 U.S.C. 376:

(1) A transmittal fee (see 35 U.S.C. 361(d) and PCT Rule 14)—$240.00

(2) A search fee (see 35 U.S.C. 361(d) and PCT Rule 16):

(i) Where a corresponding prior United States National application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) with the filing fee under § 1.16(a) has been filed—450.00

(ii) For all situations not provided for in paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section—700.00

(3) A supplemental search fee when required, per additional invention—210.00

(4) A confirmation fee (PCT Rule 96) equal to fifty percent of the sum of designation fees for the national and regional designations being confirmed ($1.432(d)).

(5) A fee equivalent to the transmittal fee in paragraph (a)(1) of this section for transmittal of an international application to the International Bureau for processing in its capacity as a Receiving Office (PCT Rule 19.4).

(b) The basic fee and designation fee portions of the international fee shall be prescribed in PCT Rule 15.


§ 1.446 Refund of international application filing and processing fees.

(a) Money paid for international application fees, where paid by actual mistake or in excess, such as a payment not required by law or Treaty and its Regulations, will be refunded.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) Refund of the supplemental search fees will be made if such refund is determined to be warranted by the Commissioner or the Commissioner’s designee acting under PCT Rule 40.2(c).

(d) The international and search fees will be refunded if no international filing date is accorded or if the application is withdrawn before transmittal of the record copy to the International Bureau (PCT Rules 15.6 and 16.2). The search fee will be refunded if the application is withdrawn before transmittal of the search copy to the International Searching Authority. The transmittal fee will not be refunded.

(e) The handling fee ($1.482(b)) will be refunded (PCT Rule 57.6) only if:

(1) The Demand is withdrawn before the Demand has been sent by the International Preliminary Examining Authority to the International Bureau, or

(2) The Demand is considered not to have been submitted (PCT Rule 54.4(a)).


§ 1.451 The priority claim and priority document in an international application.

(a) The claim for priority must, subject to paragraph (d) of this section, be made on the Request (PCT Rule 4.10) in a manner complying with sections 110 and 115 of the Administrative Instructions.

(b) Whenever the priority of an earlier United States national application is claimed in an international application, the applicant may request in a letter of transmittal accompanying the international application upon filing with the United States Receiving Office or in a separate letter filed in the Receiving Office not later than 16 months after the priority date, that the Patent and Trademark Office prepare a certified copy of the national application for transmittal to the International Bureau (PCT Article 8 and PCT Rule 17). The fee for preparing a certified copy is stated in §1.19(b)(1).

(c) If a certified copy of the priority document is not submitted together with the international application on filing, or, if the priority application was filed in the United States and a request and appropriate payment for preparation of such a certified copy do not accompany the international application on filing or are not filed within
99

Patent and Trademark Office, Commerce § 1.465

16 months of the priority date, the certified copy of the priority document must be furnished by the applicant to the International Bureau or to the United States Receiving Office within the time limit specified in PCT Rule 17.1(a).

(c) Powers of attorney and revocations thereof should be submitted to the United States Receiving Office until the issuance of the international search report.

(d) The addressee for correspondence will be as indicated in section 108 of the Administrative Instructions.

TRANSMITTAL OF RECORD COPY

§ 1.461 Procedures for transmittal of record copy to the International Bureau.

(a) Transmittal of the record copy of the international application to the International Bureau shall be made by the United States Receiving Office or as provided by PCT Rule 19.4.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) No copy of an international application may be transmitted to the International Bureau, a foreign Designated Office, or other foreign authority by the United States Receiving Office or the applicant, unless the applicable requirements of part 5 of this chapter have been satisfied.

TRANSMITTAL OF RECORD COPY

§ 1.461 Procedures for transmittal of record copy to the International Bureau.

(a) Transmittal of the record copy of the international application to the International Bureau shall be made by the United States Receiving Office or as provided by PCT Rule 19.4.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) No copy of an international application may be transmitted to the International Bureau, a foreign Designated Office, or other foreign authority by the United States Receiving Office or the applicant, unless the applicable requirements of part 5 of this chapter have been satisfied.

TIMING

§ 1.465 Timing of application processing based on the priority date.

(a) For the purpose of computing time limits under the Treaty, the priority date shall be defined as in PCT Art. 2(xi).

(b) When a claimed priority date is corrected or added under PCT Rule 26bis.1(a), or withdrawn under PCT Rule 90bis.3, or considered not to have been made under PCT Rule 26bis.2, the priority date for the purposes of computing any non-expired time limits will be the date of the earliest valid remaining priority claim of the international application, or if none, the international filing date.

(c) When corrections under PCT Art. 11(2), Art. 14(2) or PCT Rule 20.2(a) (i) or (iii) are timely submitted, and the date of receipt of such corrections falls
§ 1.468 Delays in meeting time limits.

Delays in meeting time limits during international processing of international applications may only be excused as provided in PCT Rule 82. For delays in meeting time limits in a national application, see § 1.137.

AMENDMENTS

§ 1.471 Corrections and amendments during international processing.

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, all corrections submitted to the United States Receiving Office or United States International Searching Authority must be in English, in the form of replacement sheets in compliance with PCT Rules 10 and 11, and accompanied by a letter that draws attention to the differences between the replaced sheets and the replacement sheets. Replacement sheets are not required for the deletion of lines of text, the correction of simple typographical errors, and one addition or change of not more than five words per sheet. These changes may be stated in a letter and, if appropriate, the United States Receiving Office will make the deletion or transfer the correction to the international application, provided that such corrections do not adversely affect the clarity and direct reproducibility of the application (PCT Rule 26.4). Amendments that do not comply with PCT Rules 10 and 11.1 to 11.13 may not be entered.

(b) Amendments of claims submitted to the International Bureau shall be as prescribed by PCT Rule 46. [43 FR 20466, May 28, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

§ 1.472 Changes in person, name, or address of applicants and inventors.

All requests for a change in person, name or address of applicants and inventor be sent to the United States Receiving Office until the time of issuance of the international search report. Thereafter requests for such changes should be submitted to the International Bureau. [43 FR 20466, May 28, 1978, Redesignated at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]
unity of invention might not be present.

(d) If multiple products, processes of manufacture or uses are claimed, the first invention of the category first mentioned in the claims of the application and the first recited invention of each of the other categories related thereto will be considered as the main invention in the claims, see PCT Article 17(3)(a) and § 1.476(c).

(e) The determination whether a group of inventions is so linked as to form a single general inventive concept shall be made without regard to whether the inventions are claimed in separate claims or as alternatives within a single claim.

[58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993]

§ 1.476 Determination of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

(a) Before establishing the international search report, the International Searching Authority will determine whether the international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in § 1.475.

(b) If the International Searching Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention, it shall inform the applicant accordingly and invite the payment of additional fees (note §1.445 and PCT Art. 17(3)(a) and PCT Rule 40). The applicant will be given a time period in accordance with PCT Rule 40.3 to pay the additional fees due.

(c) In the case of non-compliance with unity of invention and where no additional fees are paid, the international search will be performed on the invention first mentioned ("main invention") in the claims.

(d) Lack of unity of invention may be directly evident before considering the claims in relation to any prior art, or after taking the prior art into consideration, as where a document discovered during the search shows the invention claimed in a generic or linking claim lacks novelty or is clearly obvious, leaving two or more claims joined thereby without a common inventive concept. In such a case the International Searching Authority may raise the objection of lack of unity of invention.


§ 1.477 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

(a) If the applicant disagrees with the holding of lack of unity of invention by the International Searching Authority, additional fees may be paid under protest, accompanied by a request for refund and a statement setting forth reasons for disagreement or why the required additional fees are considered excessive, or both (PCT Rule 40.2(c)).

(b) Protest under paragraph (a) of this section will be examined by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee. In the event that the applicant's protest is determined to be justified, the additional fees or a portion thereof will be refunded.

(c) An applicant who desires that a copy of the protest and the decision thereon accompany the international search report when forwarded to the Designated Offices, may notify the International Searching Authority to that effect any time prior to the issuance of the international search report. Thereafter, such notification should be directed to the International Bureau (PCT Rule 40.2(c)).


INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION

§ 1.480 Demand for international preliminary examination.

(a) On the filing of a proper Demand in an application for which the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority is competent and for which the fees have been paid, the international application shall be the subject of an international preliminary examination. The preliminary examination fee (§ 1.482(a)(1)) and the handling fee (§ 1.482(b)) shall be due at the time of filing the Demand.

(b) The Demand shall be made on a standardized form. Copies of printed Demand forms are available from the Patent and Trademark Office. Letters
§ 1.481 Payment of international preliminary examination fees.

(a) The handling and preliminary examination fees shall be paid within the time period set in PCT Rule 57.3. The handling fee or preliminary examination fee payable is the handling fee or preliminary examination fee in effect on the date of receipt of the Demand except under PCT Rule 59.3(a) where the fee payable is the fee in effect on the date of arrival of the Demand at the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(1) If the handling and preliminary fees are not paid within the time period set in PCT Rule 57.3, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient fees plus a late payment fee equal to the greater of:

(i) Fifty percent of the amount of the deficient fees, but not exceeding an amount equal to double the handling fee; or

(ii) An amount equal to the handling fee (PCT Rule 58bis.2).

(2) The one-month time limit set in this paragraph to pay deficient fees may not be extended.

(b) If the payment needed to cover the handling and preliminary examination fees, pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, is not timely made in accordance with PCT Rule 58bis.1(d), the United States International Preliminary Examination Authority will declare the Demand to be considered as if it had not been submitted.

[63 FR 29619, June 1, 1998]

§ 1.482 International preliminary examination fees.

(a) The following fees and charges for international preliminary examination are established by the Commissioner under the authority of 35 U.S.C. 376:

(1) A preliminary examination fee is due on filing the Demand:

(i) Where an international search fee as set forth in §1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office as an International Searching Authority, a preliminary examination fee of—$490.00

(ii) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was an authority other than the United States Patent and Trademark Office, a preliminary examination fee of—$750.00

(2) An additional preliminary examination fee when required, per additional invention:

(i) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was the United States Patent and Trademark Office—$140.00

(ii) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was an authority other than the United States Patent and Trademark Office—$270.00

(b) The handling fee is due on filing the Demand.

(35 U.S.C. 6, 376)


§ 1.484 Conduct of international preliminary examination.

(a) An international preliminary examination will be conducted to formulate a non-binding opinion as to whether the claimed invention has novelty, involves an inventive step (is non-obvious) and is industrially applicable.

(b) International preliminary examination will begin promptly upon receipt of a proper Demand in an application for which the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority is competent, for which the fees for international preliminary examination (§1.482) have been paid, and which requests examination based on
the application as filed or as amended by an amendment which has been received by the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority. Where a Demand requests examination based on a PCT Article 19 amendment which has not been received, examination may begin at 20 months without receipt of the PCT Article 19 amendment. Where a Demand requests examination based on a PCT Article 34 amendment which has not been received, applicant will be notified and given a time period within which to submit the amendment.

(1) Examination will begin after the earliest of:
   (i) Receipt of the amendment;
   (ii) Receipt of applicant's statement that no amendment will be made; or
   (iii) Expiration of the time period set in the notification.

(2) No international preliminary examination report will be established prior to issuance of an international search report.

(c) No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority.

(d) The International Preliminary Examining Authority will establish a written opinion if any defect exists or if the claimed invention lacks novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability and will set a non-extendable time limit in the written opinion for the applicant to reply.

(e) If no written opinion under paragraph (d) of this section is necessary, or after any written opinion and the reply thereto or the expiration of the time limit for reply to such written opinion, an international preliminary examination report will be established by the International Preliminary Examining Authority. One copy will be submitted to the International Bureau and one copy will be submitted to the applicant.

(f) An applicant will be permitted a personal or telephone interview with the examiner, which must be conducted during the non-extendable time limit for reply by the applicant to a written opinion. Additional interviews may be conducted where the examiner determines that such additional interviews may be helpful to advancing the international preliminary examination procedure. A summary of any such personal or telephone interview must be filed by the applicant as a part of the reply to the written opinion or, if applicant files no reply, be made of record in the file by the examiner.


§ 1.485 Amendments by applicant during international preliminary examination.

(a) The applicant may make amendments at the time of filing the Demand. The applicant may also make amendments within the time limit set by the International Preliminary Examining Authority for reply to any notification under §1.484(b) or to any written opinion. Any such amendments must:

(1) Be made by submitting a replacement sheet in compliance with PCT Rules 10 and 11.1 to 11.13 for every sheet of the application which differs from the sheet it replaces unless an entire sheet is cancelled; and

(2) Include a description of how the replacement sheet differs from the replaced sheet. Amendments that do not comply with PCT Rules 10 and 11.1 to 11.13 may not be entered.

(b) If an amendment cancels an entire sheet of the international application, that amendment shall be communicated in a letter.

[58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993, as amended at 63 FR 29620, June 1, 1998]

§ 1.488 Determination of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) Before establishing any written opinion or the international preliminary examination report, the International Preliminary Examining Authority will determine whether the international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in §1.475.

(1) Issue a written opinion and/or an international preliminary examination report which contains the determination of unity of invention and makes any necessary amendments to the application.

(b) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention, it may:

(1) Issue a written opinion and/or an international preliminary examination report which contains the determination of unity of invention and makes any necessary amendments to the application.
§ 1.489 Report, in respect of the entire international application and indicate that unity of invention is lacking and specify the reasons therefor without extending an invitation to restrict or pay additional fees. No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority.

(2) Invite the applicant to restrict the claims or pay additional fees, pointing out the categories of invention found, within a set time limit which will not be extended. No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority, or

(3) If applicant fails to restrict the claims or pay additional fees within the time limit set for reply, the International Preliminary Examining Authority will issue a written opinion and/or establish an international preliminary examination report on the main invention and shall indicate the relevant facts in the said report. In case of any doubt as to which invention is the main invention, the invention first mentioned in the claims and previously searched by an International Searching Authority shall be considered the main invention.

(c) Lack of unity of invention may be directly evident before considering the claims in relation to any prior art, or after taking the prior art into consideration, as where a document discovered during the search shows the invention claimed in a generic or linking claim lacks novelty or is clearly obvious, leaving two or more claims joined thereby without a common inventive concept. In such a case the International Preliminary Examining Authority may raise the objection of lack of unity of invention.


§ 1.489 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) If the applicant disagrees with the holding of lack of unity of invention by the International Preliminary Examining Authority, additional fees may be paid under protest, accompanied by a request for refund and a statement setting forth reasons for disagreement or why the required additional fees are considered excessive, or both.

(b) Protest under paragraph (a) of this section will be examined by the Commissioner or the Commissioner’s designee. In the event that the applicant’s protest is determined to be justified, the additional fees or a portion thereof will be refunded.

(c) An applicant who desires that a copy of the protest and the decision thereon accompany the international preliminary examination report when forwarded to the Elected Offices, may notify the International Preliminary Examining Authority to that effect any time prior to the issuance of the international preliminary examination report. Thereafter, such notification should be directed to the International Bureau.

[52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987]

NATIONAL STAGE

§ 1.491 Entry into the national stage.

An international application enters the national stage when the applicant has filed the documents and fees required by 35 U.S.C. 371(c) within the periods set forth in § 1.494 or § 1.495.

[52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987]

§ 1.492 National stage fees.

The following fees and charges are established for international applications entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371:

(a) The basic national fee:

(1) Where an international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$335.00
By other than a small entity—$670.00

(2) Where no international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, but an international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office as an International Searching Authority:
§ 1.494 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as a Designated Office.

(a) Where the United States of America has not been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date (see §1.495), the applicant must fulfill the requirements of PCT Article 22 and 35 U.S.C. 371 within the time periods set forth in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section in order to prevent the abandonment of the international application as to the United States of America. International applications for which those requirements are timely fulfilled will enter the national stage and obtain an examination as to the patentability of the invention in the United States of America.

(b) To avoid abandonment of the application, the applicant shall furnish to the United States Patent and Trademark Office not later than the expiration of 20 months from the priority date:

(1) A copy of the international application, unless it has been previously communicated by the International Bureau or unless it was originally filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and

(2) A copy of the international application, unless it has been previously communicated by the International Bureau or unless it was originally filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and
§ 1.495  Entering the national stage in the United States of America as an Elected Office.

(a) Where the United States of America has been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date, the applicant must fulfill the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371 within the time periods set forth in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section in order to prevent the abandonment of the international application as to the United States of America. International applications for which those requirements are timely fulfilled will enter the national stage and obtain an examination as to the patentability of the invention in the United States of America.

(b) To avoid abandonment of the application the applicant shall furnish to the United States Patent and Trademark Office not later than the expiration of 30 months from the priority date:

(1) A copy of the international application, unless it has been previously communicated by the International Bureau or unless it was originally filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and

(2) The basic national fee (see §1.492(a)). The 30-month time limit may not be extended.
(c) If applicant complies with paragraph (b) of this section before expiration of 30 months from the priority date but omits:
   (1) A translation of the international application, as filed, into the English language, if it was originally filed in another language (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)) and/or
   (2) The oath or declaration of the inventor (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4); see §1.497), applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the translation and/or oath or declaration in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The payment of the processing fee set forth in §1.492(f) is required for acceptance of an English translation later than the expiration of 30 months after the priority date. The payment of the surcharge set forth in §1.492(e) is required for acceptance of the oath or declaration of the inventor later than the expiration of 30 months after the priority date. A "Sequence Listing" need not be translated if the "Sequence Listing" complies with PCT Rule 12.1(d) and the description complies with PCT Rule 5.2(b).
   (d) A copy of any amendments to the claims made under PCT Article 19, and a translation of those amendments into English, if they were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of 30 months from the priority date. Amendments under PCT Article 19 which are not received by the expiration of 30 months from the priority date will be considered to be cancelled. The 30-month time limit may not be extended.
   (e) A translation into English of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report, if the annexes were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of 30 months from the priority date. Translations of the annexes which are not received by the expiration of 30 months from the priority date may be submitted within any period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section accompanied by the processing fee set forth in §1.492(f). Annexes for which translations are not timely received will be considered cancelled. The 30-month time limit may not be extended.
   (f) Verification of the translation of the international application or any other document pertaining to an international application may be required where it is considered necessary, if the international application or other document was filed in a language other than English.
   (g) The documents submitted under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section must be clearly identified as a submission to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371, otherwise the submission will be considered as being made under 35 U.S.C. 111.
   (h) An international application becomes abandoned as to the United States 30 months from the priority date if the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section have not been complied with within 30 months from the priority date and the United States has been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date. If the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section are complied with within 30 months from the priority date but any required translation of the international application as filed and/or the oath or declaration are not timely filed, an international application will become abandoned as to the United States upon expiration of the time period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

§ 1.496 Examination of international applications in the national stage.

(a) International applications which have complied with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371(c) will be taken up for action based on the date on which such requirements were met. However, unless an express request for early processing has been filed under 35 U.S.C. 371(f), no action may be taken prior to one month after entry into the national stage.

(b) A national stage application filed under 35 U.S.C. 371 may have paid therein the basic national fee as set forth in §1.492(a)(4) if it contains, or is amended to contain, at the time of entry into the national stage, only claims which have been indicated in an international preliminary examination
§ 1.497 Oath or declaration under 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).

(a) When an applicant of an international application desires to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 pursuant to §§ 1.494 or 1.495, he or she must file an oath or declaration that:

(1) Is executed in accordance with either §§ 1.66 or 1.68;

(2) Identifies the specification to which it is directed;

(3) Identifies each inventor and the country of citizenship of each inventor; and

(4) States that the person making the oath or declaration believes the named inventor or inventors to be the original and first inventor or inventors of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought.

(b)(1) The oath or declaration must be made by all of the actual inventors except as provided for in §§ 1.42, 1.43 or 1.47.

(2) If the person making the oath or declaration is not the inventor, the oath or declaration shall state the relationship of the person to the inventor, the facts required by §§ 1.42, 1.43 or 1.47, and, upon information and belief, the facts which the inventor would have been required to state.

(c) If the oath or declaration meets the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the oath or declaration will be accepted as complying with 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4) and §§ 1.494(c) or 1.495(c). However, if the oath or declaration does not also meet the requirements of § 1.63, a supplemental oath or declaration in compliance with § 1.63 will be required in accordance with § 1.67.

[61 FR 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.499 Unity of invention during the national stage.

If the examiner finds that a national stage application lacks unity of invention under § 1.475, the examiner may in an Office action require the applicant in the response to that action to elect the invention to which the claims shall be restricted. Such requirement may be made before any action on the merits but may be made at any time before the final action at the discretion of the examiner. Review of any such requirement is provided under §§ 1.143 and 1.144.

[58 FR 4347, Jan. 14, 1993]
(b) If the person making the citation wishes his or her identity to be excluded from the patent file and kept confidential, the citation papers must be submitted without any identification of the person making the submission.

(c) Citation of patents or printed publications by the public in patent files should either:

(1) Reflect that a copy of the same has been mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in §1.33(c); or in the event service is not possible

(2) Be filed with the Office in duplicate.

REQUEST FOR REEXAMINATION

§ 1.510 Request for reexamination.

(a) Any person may, at any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, file a request for reexamination by the Patent and Trademark Office of any claim of the patent on the basis of prior art patents or printed publications cited under §1.501. The request must be accompanied by the fee for requesting reexamination set in §1.20(c).

(b) Any request for reexamination must include the following parts:

(1) A statement pointing out each substantial new question of patentability based on prior patents and printed publications.

(2) An identification of every claim for which reexamination is requested, and a detailed explanation of the pertinency and manner of applying the cited prior art to every claim for which reexamination is requested. If appropriate the party requesting reexamination may also point out how claims distinguish over cited prior art.

(3) A copy of every patent or printed publication relied upon or referred to in paragraph (b) (1) and (2) of this section accompanied by an English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language patent or printed publication.

(4) The entire specification (including claims) and drawings of the patent for which reexamination is requested must be furnished in the form of cut-up copies of the original patent with only a single column of the printed patent securely mounted or reproduced in permanent form on one side of a separate paper. A copy of any disclaimer, certificate of correction, or reexamination certificate issued in the patent must also be included.

(5) A certification that a copy of the request filed by a person other than the patent owner has been served in its entirety on the patent owner at the address as provided for in §1.33(c). The name and address of the party served must be indicated. If service was not possible, a duplicate copy must be supplied to the Office.

(c) If the request does not include the fee for requesting reexamination or all of the parts required by paragraph (b) of this section, the person identified as requesting reexamination will be so notified and given an opportunity to complete the request within a specified time. If the fee for requesting reexamination has been paid but the defect in the request is not corrected within the specified time, the determination whether or not to institute reexamination will be made on the request as it then exists. If the fee for requesting reexamination has not been paid, no determination will be made and the request will be placed in the patent file as a citation if it complies with the requirements of §1.501(a).

(d) The filing date of the request is:

(1) The date on which the request including the entire fee for requesting reexamination is received in the Patent and Trademark Office; or

(2) The date on which the last portion of the fee for requesting reexamination is received.

(e) A request filed by the patent owner may include a proposed amendment in accordance with §1.530(d).

(f) If a request is filed by an attorney or agent identifying another party on whose behalf the request is being filed, the attorney or agent must have a power of attorney from that party or be acting in a representative capacity pursuant to §1.34(a).


§ 1.515 Determination of the request for reexamination.

(a) Within three months following the filing date of a request for reexamination, an examiner will consider the request and determine whether or not a substantial new question of patentability affecting any claim of the patent is raised by the request and the prior art cited therein, with or without consideration of other patents or printed publications. The examiner’s determination will be based on the claims in effect at the time of the determination and will become a part of the official file of the patent and will be given or mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in §1.33(c) and to the person requesting reexamination.

(b) Where no substantial new question of patentability has been found, a refund of a portion of the fee for requesting reexamination will be made to the requester in accordance with §1.26(c).

(c) The requester may seek review by a petition to the Commissioner under §1.181 within one month of the mailing date of the examiner’s determination refusing reexamination. Any such petition must comply with §1.181(b). If no petition is timely filed or if the decision on petition affirms that no substantial new question of patentability has been raised, the determination shall be final and nonappealable.

§ 1.520 Reexamination at the initiative of the Commissioner.

The Commissioner, at any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, may determine whether or not a substantial new question of patentability is raised by patents or printed publications which have been discovered by the Commissioner or which have been brought to the Commissioner’s attention even though no request for reexamination has been filed in accordance with §1.510. The Commissioner may initiate reexamination without a request for reexamination pursuant to §1.510. Normally requests from outside the Patent and Trademark Office that the Commissioner undertake reexamination on his own initiative will not be considered. Any determination to initiate reexamination under this section will become a part of the official file of the patent and will be given or mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in §1.33(c).

§ 1.525 Order to reexamine.

(a) If a substantial new question of patentability is found pursuant to §1.515 or §1.520, the determination will include an order for reexamination of the patent for resolution of the question. If the order for reexamination resulted from a petition pursuant to §1.515(c), the reexamination will ordinarily be conducted by an examiner other than the examiner responsible for the initial determination under §1.515(a).

(b) If the order for reexamination of the patent mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in §1.33(c) is returned to the Office undelivered, the notice published in the Official Gazette under §1.11(c) will be considered to be constructive notice and reexamination will proceed.

§ 1.530 Statement; amendment by patent owner.

(a) Except as provided in §1.510(e), no statement or other response by the patent owner shall be filed prior to the determinations made in accordance with §1.515 or 1.520. If a premature statement or other response is filed by the patent owner it will not be acknowledged or considered in making the determination.

(b) The order for reexamination will set a period of not less than two months from the date of the order within which the patent owner may file a statement on the new question of patentability including any proposed amendments the patent owner wishes to make.

(c) Any statement filed by the patent owner shall clearly point out why the subject matter as claimed is not anticipated or rendered obvious by the prior art patents or printed publications, either alone or in any reasonable combinations. Any statement filed must be served upon the reexamination requester in accordance with §1.248.
(d) Amendments in reexamination proceedings. Amendments in reexamination proceedings are made by filing a paper, in compliance with paragraph (d)(5) of this section, directing that specified amendments be made.

(1) Specification other than the claims. Amendments to the specification, other than to the claims, may only be made as follows:
   (i) Amendments must be made by submission of the entire text of a newly added or rewritten paragraph(s) with markings pursuant to paragraph (d)(1)(iii) of this section, except that an entire paragraph may be deleted by a statement deleting the paragraph without presentation of the text of the paragraph.
   (ii) The precise point in the specification must be indicated where the paragraph to be amended is located.
   (iii) Underlining below the subject matter added to the patent and brackets around the subject matter deleted from the patent are to be used to mark the amendments being made.

(2) Claims. Amendments to the claims may only be made as follows:
   (i) (A) The amendment must be made relative to the patent claims in accordance with paragraph (d)(8) of this section and must include the entire text of each claim which is being proposed to be amended by the current amendment and each proposed new claim being added by the current amendment with markings pursuant to paragraph (d)(2)(i)(C) of this section, except that a patent claim or previously proposed new claim should be cancelled by a statement cancelling the patent claim or proposed new claim without presentation of the text of the patent claim or proposed new claim.
   (B) Patent claims must not be renumbered and the numbering of any new claims proposed to be added to the patent must follow the number of the highest numbered patent claim.
   (C) Underlining below the subject matter added to the patent and brackets around the subject matter deleted from the patent are to be used to mark the amendments being made. If a claim is amended pursuant to paragraph (d)(2)(i)(A) of this section, a parenthetical expression “amended,” “twice amended,” etc., should follow the original claim number.
   (ii) Each amendment submission must set forth the status (i.e., pending or cancelled) as of the date of the amendment, of all patent claims and of all new claims currently or previously proposed.
   (iii) Each amendment, when submitted for the first time, must be accompanied by an explanation of the support in the disclosure of the patent for the amendment along with any additional comments on page(s) separate from the page(s) containing the amendment.

(3) No amendment may enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent or introduce new matter. No amendment may be proposed for entry in an expired patent. Moreover, no amendment will be incorporated into the patent by certificate issued after the expiration of the patent.

(4) Although the Office actions will treat proposed amendments as though they have been entered, the proposed amendments will not be effective until the reexamination certificate is issued.

(5) The form of amendments other than to the patent drawings must be in accordance with the following requirements. All amendments must be in the English language and must be legibly written either by a typewriter or mechanical printer in at least 11 point type in permanent dark ink or its equivalent in portrait orientation on flexible, strong, smooth, non-shiny, durable, white paper. All amendments must be presented in a form having sufficient clarity and contrast between the paper and the writing thereon to permit the direct reproduction of readily legible copies in any number by use of photographic, electrostatic, photo-offset, and microfilming processes and electronic reproduction by use of digital imaging or optical character recognition. If the amendments are not of the required quality, substitute typewritten or mechanically printed papers of suitable quality will be required. The papers, including the drawings, must have each page plainly written on only one side of a sheet of paper. The sheets of paper must be the same size and either 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4) or 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8½ by 11
§ 1.535 Reply by requester.

A reply to the patent owner's statement under §1.530 may be filed by the reexamination requester within two months from the date of service of the patent owner's statement. Any reply by the requester must be served upon the patent owner in accordance with §1.248. If the patent owner does not file a statement under §1.530, no reply or other submission from the reexamination requester will be considered.

§ 1.540 Consideration of responses.

The failure to timely file or serve the documents set forth in §1.530 or in §1.535 may result in their being refused consideration. No submissions other than the statement pursuant to §1.530 and the reply by the requester pursuant to §1.535 will be considered prior to examination.

§ 1.550 Conduct of reexamination proceedings.

(a) All reexamination proceedings, including any appeals to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, will be conducted with special dispatch within the Office. After issuance of the reexamination order and expiration of the time for submitting any responses thereto, the examination will be conducted in accordance with §§1.104, 1.110 through 1.113 and 1.116, and will result in the issuance of a reexamination certificate under §1.570.

(b) The patent owner will be given at least thirty days to respond to any Office action. Such response may include further statements in response to any rejections or proposed amendments or new claims to place the patent in a condition where all claims, if amended as proposed, would be patentable.

(c) The time for taking any action by a patent owner in a reexamination proceeding will be extended only for sufficient cause, and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the patent owner is due, but in no case will the mere filing of the request effect any extension. See §1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action.

(d) If the patent owner fails to file a timely and appropriate response to any Office action, the reexamination proceeding will be terminated and the Commissioner will proceed to issue a certificate under §1.570 in accordance with the last action of the Office.

(e) The reexamination requester will be sent copies of Office actions issued during the reexamination proceeding. After filing of a request for reexamination by a third party requester, any document filed by either the patent owner or the third party requester
must be served on the other party in the reexamination proceeding in the manner provided by § 1.243. The document must reflect service or the document may be refused consideration by the Office.

(1) The active participation of the reexamination requester ends with the reply pursuant to § 1.535, and no further submissions on behalf of the reexamination requester will be acknowledged or considered. Further, no submissions on behalf of any third parties will be acknowledged or considered unless such submissions are:

(i) In accordance with § 1.510; or

(ii) Entered in the patent file prior to the date of the order to reexamine pursuant to § 1.525.

(2) Submissions by third parties, filed after the date of the order to reexamine pursuant to § 1.525, must meet the requirements of and will be treated in accordance with § 1.501(a).

(3) Submissions by third parties, filed after the date of the order to reexamine pursuant to § 1.525, must meet the requirements of and will be treated in accordance with § 1.501(a).

§ 1.552 Scope of reexamination in reexamination proceedings.

(a) Patent claims will be reexamined on the basis of patents or printed publications.

(b) Amended or new claims presented during a reexamination proceeding must not enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent and will be examined on the basis of patents or printed publications and also for compliance with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 and the new matter prohibition of 35 U.S.C. 132.

(c) Questions other than those indicated in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section will not be resolved in a reexamination proceeding. If such questions are discovered during a reexamination proceeding, the existence of such questions will be noted by the examiner in an Office action, in which case the patent owner may desire to consider the advisability of filing a reissue application to have such questions considered and resolved.

§ 1.555 Information material to patentability in reexamination proceedings.

(a) A patent by its very nature is affected with a public interest. The public interest is best served, and the most effective reexamination occurs when, at the time a reexamination proceeding is being conducted, the Office is aware of and evaluates the teachings of all information material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding. Each individual associated with the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding has a duty of candor and good faith in dealing with the Office, which includes a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to that individual to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding. The individual who has a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to them to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding are the patent owner, each attorney or agent who represents the patent owner, and every other individual who is substantively involved on behalf of the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding. The duty to disclose the information exists with respect to each claim pending in the reexamination proceeding until the claim is cancelled. Information material to the patentability of a cancelled claim need not be submitted if the information is not material to patentability of any claim remaining under consideration in the reexamination proceeding. The duty to disclose all information known to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding is deemed to be satisfied if all information known to be material to patentability of any claim in the patent after issuance of the reexamination certificate was cited by the Office or submitted to the Office in an information disclosure statement. However, the duties of candor, good faith, and disclosure have not been complied with if any fraud on the Office was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or intentional misconduct by, or on behalf of, the patent owner in the reexamination proceeding. Any information disclosure statement must be filed with the items listed in § 1.98(a) as applied to individuals associated with...
§ 1.560 Interviews in reexamination proceedings.

(a) Interviews in reexamination proceedings pending before the Office between examiners and the owners of such patents or their attorneys or agents of record must be had in the Office at such times, within Office hours, as the respective examiners may designate. Interviews will not be permitted at any other time or place without the authority of the Commissioner. Interviews for the discussion of the patentability of claims in patents involved in reexamination proceedings will not be had prior to the first official action thereon. Interviews should be arranged for in advance. Requests that reexamination requesters participate in interviews with examiners will not be granted.

(b) In every instance of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the patent owner. An interview does not remove the necessity for response to Office actions as specified in § 1.111.

§ 1.565 Concurrent office proceedings.

(a) In any reexamination proceeding before the Office, the patent owner shall call the attention of the Office to any prior or concurrent proceedings in which the patent is or was involved such as interferences, reissue, reexaminations, or litigation and the results of such proceedings.

(b) If a patent in the process of reexamination is or becomes involved in litigation or a reissue application for the patent is filed or pending, the Commissioner shall determine whether or not to stay the reexamination or reissue proceeding.

(c) If reexamination is ordered while a prior reexamination proceeding is pending, the reexamination proceedings will be consolidated and result in the issuance of a single certificate under § 1.570.

(d) If a reissue application and a reexamination proceeding on which an order pursuant to § 1.525 has been mailed are pending concurrently on a patent, a decision will normally be made to merge the two proceedings or to stay one of the two proceedings. Where merger of a reissue application and a reexamination proceeding is ordered, the merged examination will be conducted in accordance with §§ 1.171 through 1.179 and the patent owner will be required to place and maintain the same claims in the reissue application and the reexamination proceeding during the pendency of the merged proceeding. The examiner’s actions and
any responses by the patent owner in a merged proceeding will apply to both the reissue application and the reexamination proceeding and be physically entered into both files. Any reexamination proceeding merged with a reissue application shall be terminated by the grant of the reissued patent.

(e) If a patent in the process of reexamination is or becomes involved in an interference, the Commissioner may stay reexamination or the interference. The Commissioner will not consider a request to stay an interference unless a motion (§1.635) to stay the interference has been presented to, and denied by, an examiner-in-chief and the request is filed within ten (10) days of a decision by an examiner-in-chief denying the motion for a stay or such other time as the examiner-in-chief may set.

(f) A notice of the issuance of each certificate under this section will be published in the Official Gazette on its date of issuance.

§1.601 Scope of rules, definitions.

This subpart governs the procedure in patent interferences in the Patent and Trademark Office. This subpart shall be construed to secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive determination of every interference. For the meaning of terms in the Federal Rules of Evidence as applied to interferences, see §1.671(c). Unless otherwise clear from the context, the following definitions apply to this subpart:

(a) Additional discovery is discovery to which a party may be entitled under §1.687 in addition to discovery to which the party is entitled as a matter of right under §1.673 (a) and (b).

(b) Affidavit means affidavit, declaration under §1.68, or statutory declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746. A transcript of an ex parte deposition may be used as an affidavit.

(c) Board means the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(d) Case-in-chief means that portion of a party's case where the party has the burden of going forward with evidence.

(e) Case-in-rebuttal means that portion of a party's case where the party presents evidence in rebuttal to the case-in-chief of another party.

(f) A count defines the interfering subject matter between two or more applications or between one or more applications and one or more patents. At the time the interference is initially declared, a count should be broad enough to encompass all of the claims that are patentable over the prior art and designated to correspond to the count. When there is more than one
§ 1.601

count, each count shall define a separate patentable invention. Any claim of an application or patent that is designated to correspond to a count is a claim involved in the interference within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 135(a). A claim of a patent or application that is designated to correspond to a count and is identical to the count is said to correspond exactly to the count. A claim of a patent or application that is designated to correspond to a count but is not identical to the count is said to correspond substantially to the count. When a count is broader in scope than all claims which correspond to the count, the count is a phantom count.

(g) The effective filing date of an application is the filing date of an earlier application, benefit of which is accorded to the application under 35 U.S.C. 119, 120, 121, or 365 or, if no benefit is accorded, the filing date of the application. The effective filing date of a patent is the filing date of an earlier application, benefit of which is accorded to the patent under 35 U.S.C. 119, 120, 121, or 365 or, if no benefit is accorded, the filing date of the application which issued as the patent.

(h) In the case of an application, filing date means the filing date assigned to the application. In the case of a patent, “filing date” means the filing date assigned to the application which issued as the patent.

(i) An interference is a proceeding instituted in the Patent and Trademark Office before the Board to determine any question of patentability and priority of invention between two or more parties claiming the same patentable invention. An interference may be declared between two or more pending applications naming different inventors when, in the opinion of an examiner, the applications contain claims for the same patentable invention. An interference may be declared between two or more pending applications naming different inventors when, in the opinion of an examiner, the applications contain claims for the same patentable invention. An interference may be declared between two or more pending applications naming different inventors when, in the opinion of an examiner, the applications contain claims for the same patentable invention.

(j) An interference-in-fact exists when at least one claim of a party that is designated to correspond to a count and at least one claim of an opponent that is designated to correspond to the count define the same patentable invention.

(k) A lead attorney or agent is a registered attorney or agent of record who is primarily responsible for prosecuting an interference on behalf of a party and is the attorney or agent whom an administrative patent judge may contact to set times and take other action in the interference.

(l) A party is an applicant or patentee involved in the interference or a legal representative or an assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office of an applicant or patentee involved in an interference. Where acts of party are normally performed by an attorney or agent, “party” may be construed to mean the attorney or agent. An inventor is the individual named as inventor in an application involved in an interference or the individual named as inventor in a patent involved in an interference.

(m) A senior party is the party with the earliest effective filing date as to all counts or, if there is no party with the earliest effective filing date as to all counts, the party with the earliest filing date. A junior party is any other party.

(n) Invention “A” is the same patentable invention as invention “B” when invention “A” is the same as (35 U.S.C. 102) or is obvious (35 U.S.C. 103) in view of invention “B” assuming invention “B” is prior art with respect to invention “A”. Invention “A” is a separate patentable invention with respect to invention “B” when invention “A” is new (35 U.S.C. 102) and non-obvious (35 U.S.C. 103) in view of invention “B” assuming invention “B” is prior art with respect to invention “A”.

(o) Sworn means sworn or affirmed.

(p) United States means the United States of America, its territories and possessions.

(q) A final decision is a decision awarding judgment as to all counts. An interlocutory order is any other action taken by an administrative patent judge or the Board in an interference, including the notice declaring an interference.
§ 1.602 Interest in applications and patents involved in an interference.

(a) Unless good cause is shown, an interference shall not be declared or continued between (1) applications owned by a single party or (2) applications and an unexpired patent owned by a single party.

(b) The parties, within 20 days after an interference is declared, shall notify the Board of any and all right, title, and interest in any application or patent involved or relied upon in the interference unless the right, title, and interest is set forth in the notice declaring the interference.

(c) If a change of any right, title, and interest in any application or patent involved or relied upon in the interference occurs after notice is given declaring the interference and before the time expires for seeking judicial review of a final decision of the Board, the parties shall notify the Board of the change within 20 days after the change.

§ 1.603 Interference between applications; subject matter of the interference.

Before an interference is declared between two or more applications, the examiner must be of the opinion that there is interfering subject matter claimed in the applications which is patentable to each applicant subject to a judgment in the interference. The interfering subject matter shall be defined by one or more counts. Each application must contain, or be amended to contain, at least one claim that is patentable over the prior art and corresponds to each count. All claims in the applications which define the same patentable invention as a count shall be designated to correspond to the count.

§ 1.604 Request for interference between applications by an applicant.

(a) An applicant may seek to have an interference declared with an application of another by,

(1) Suggesting a proposed count and presenting at least one claim corresponding to the proposed count or identifying at least one claim in its application that corresponds to the proposed count,

(2) Identifying the other application and, if known, a claim in the other application which corresponds to the proposed count, and

(3) Explaining why an interference should be declared.

(b) When an applicant presents a claim known to the applicant to define the same patentable invention claimed in a pending application of another, the applicant shall identify that pending application, unless the claim is presented in response to a suggestion by the examiner. The examiner shall notify the Commissioner of any instance where it appears an applicant may have failed to comply with the provisions of this paragraph.

§ 1.605 Suggestion of claim to applicant by examiner.

(a) If no claim in an application is drawn to the same patentable invention claimed in another application or patent, the examiner may suggest that an applicant present a claim drawn to an invention claimed in another application or patent for the purpose of an interference with another application or a patent. The applicant to whom the claim is suggested shall amend the application by presenting the suggested claim within a time specified by the examiner, not less than one month. Failure or refusal of an applicant to timely present the suggested claim shall be taken without further action as a disclaimer by the applicant of the invention defined by the suggested claim. At the time the suggested claim
§ 1.606 Interference between an application and a patent; subject matter of the interference.

Before an interference is declared between an application and an unexpired patent, an examiner must determine that there is interfering subject matter claimed in the application and the patent which is patentable to the applicant subject to a judgment in the interference. The interfering subject matter will be defined by one or more counts. The applications must contain, or be amended to contain, at least one claim that is patentable over the prior art and corresponds to each count. The claim in the application need not be, and most often will not be, identical to a claim in the patent. All claims in the application and patent which define the same patentable invention as a count shall be designated to correspond to the count. At the time an interference is initially declared (§1.611), a count shall not be narrower in scope than any application claim that is patentable over the prior art and designated to correspond to the count or any patent claim designated to correspond to the count. Any single patent claim designated to correspond to the count will be presumed, subject to a motion under §1.633(c), not to contain separate patentable inventions.

§ 1.607 Request by applicant for interference with patent.

(a) An applicant may seek to have an interference declared between an application and an unexpired patent by,

(1) Identifying the patent,

(2) Presenting a proposed count,

(3) Identifying at least one claim in the patent corresponding to the proposed count,

(4) Presenting at least one claim corresponding to the proposed count or identifying at least one claim already pending in its application that corresponds to the proposed count, and, if any claim of the patent or application identified as corresponding to the proposed count does not correspond exactly to the proposed count, explaining why each such claim corresponds to the proposed count, and

(5) Applying the terms of any application claim,

(i) Identified as corresponding to the count, and

(ii) Not previously in the application to the disclosure of the application.

(b) When an applicant seeks an interference with a patent, examination of the application, including any appeal to the Board, shall be conducted with special dispatch within the Patent and Trademark Office. The examiner shall determine whether there is interfering subject matter claimed in the application and the patent which is patentable to the applicant subject to a judgment in an interference. If the examiner determines that there is any interfering subject matter, an interference will be declared. If the examiner determines that there is no interfering subject matter, an interference will not be declared and otherwise act on the application.

(c) When an applicant presents a claim which corresponds exactly or substantially to a claim of a patent, the applicant shall identify the patent and the number of the patent claim,
unless the claim is presented in response to a suggestion by the examiner. The examiner shall notify the Commissioner of any instance where an applicant fails to identify the patent.

(d) A notice that an applicant is seeking to provoke an interference with a patent will be placed in the file of the patent and a copy of the notice will be sent to the patentee. The identity of the applicant will not be disclosed unless an interference is declared. If a final decision is made not to declare an interference, a notice to that effect will be placed in the patent file and will be sent to the patentee.


§ 1.608 Interference between an application and a patent; prima facie showing by applicant.

(a) When the effective filing date of an application is three months or less after the effective filing date of a patent, before an interference will be declared, either the applicant or the applicant's attorney or agent of record shall file a statement alleging that there is a basis upon which the applicant is entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee.

(b) When the effective filing date of an application is more than three months after the effective filing date of a patent, the applicant, before an interference will be declared, shall file evidence which may consist of patents or printed publications, other documents, and one or more affidavits which demonstrate that applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee and an explanation stating with particularity the basis upon which the applicant is prima facie entitled to the judgment. Where the basis upon which an applicant is entitled to judgment relative to a patentee is priority of invention, the evidence shall include affidavits by the applicant, if possible, and one or more corroborating witnesses, supported by documentary evidence, if available, each setting out a factual description of acts and circumstances performed or observed by the affiant, which collectively would prima facie entitle the applicant to judgment on priority with respect to the effective filing date of the patent. To facilitate preparation of a record (§1.653(g)) for final hearing, an applicant should file affidavits on paper which is 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8½ x 11 inches). The significance of any printed publication or other document which is self-authenticating within the meaning of Rule 902 of the Federal Rules of Evidence or §1.671(d) and any patent shall be discussed in an affidavit or the explanation. Any printed publication or other document which is not self-authenticating shall be authenticated and discussed with particularity in an affidavit. Upon a showing of good cause, an affidavit may be based on information and belief. If an examiner finds an application to be in condition for declaration of an interference, the examiner will consider the evidence and explanation only to the extent of determining whether a basis upon which the application would be entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee is alleged and, if a basis is alleged, an interference may be declared.

[60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.609 Preparation of interference papers by examiner.

When the examiner determines that an interference should be declared, the examiner shall forward to the Board:

(a) All relevant application and patent files and

(b) A statement identifying:

(1) The proposed count or counts and, if there is more than one count proposed, explaining why the counts define different patentable inventions;

(2) The claims of any application or patent which correspond to each count, explaining why each claim designated as corresponding to a count is directed to the same patentable invention as the count;

(3) The claims in any application or patent which do not correspond to each count and explaining why each claim designated as not corresponding to any count is not directed to the same patentable invention as any count; and

(4) Whether an applicant or patentee is entitled to the benefit of the filing date of an earlier application and, if so,
§ 1.610 Assignment of interference to administrative patent judge, time period for completing interference.

(a) Each interference will be declared by an administrative patent judge who may enter all interlocutory orders in the interference, except that only the Board shall hear oral argument at final hearing, enter a decision under §1.617, 1.640(e), 1.652, 1.656(i) or 1.658, or enter any other order which terminates the interference.

(b) As necessary, another administrative patent judge may act in place of the one who declared the interference. At the discretion of the administrative patent judge assigned to the interference, a panel consisting of two or more members of the Board may enter interlocutory orders.

(c) Unless otherwise provided in this subpart, times for taking action by a party in the interference will be set on a case-by-case basis by the administrative patent judge assigned to the interference. Times for taking action shall be set and the administrative patent judge shall exercise control over the interference such that the pendency of the interference before the Board does not normally exceed two years.

(d) An administrative patent judge may hold a conference with the parties to consider simplification of any issues, the necessity or desirability of amendments to counts, the possibility of obtaining admissions of fact and genuineness of documents which will avoid unnecessary proof, any limitations on the number of expert witnesses, the time and place for conducting a deposition (§1.673(g)), and any other matter as may aid in the disposition of the interference. After a conference, the administrative patent judge may enter any order which may be appropriate.

(e) The administrative patent judge may determine a proper course of conduct in an interference for any situation not specifically covered by this part.

[60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]
§ 1.612 Access to applications.
(a) After an interference is declared, each party shall have access to and may obtain copies of the files of any application set out in the notice declaring the interference, except for affidavits filed under § 1.131 and any evidence and explanation under § 1.608 filed separate from an amendment. A party seeking access to any abandoned or pending application referred to in the opponent’s involved application or access to any pending application referred to in the opponent’s patent must file a motion under § 1.635. See § 1.11(e) concerning public access to interference files.
(b) After preliminary motions under § 1.633 are decided (§ 1.640(b)), each party shall have access to and may obtain copies of any affidavit filed under § 1.131 and any evidence and explanation filed under § 1.608 in any application set out in the notice declaring the interference.
(c) Any evidence and explanation filed under § 1.608 in the file of any application identified in the notice declaring the interference shall be served when required by § 1.617(b).
(d) The parties at any time may agree to exchange copies of papers in the files of any application identified in the notice declaring the interference.
§ 1.613 Lead attorney, same attorney representing different parties in an interference, withdrawal of attorney or agent.
(a) Each party may be required to designate one attorney or agent of record as the lead attorney or agent.
(b) The same attorney or agent or members of the same firm of attorneys or agents may not represent two or more parties in an interference except as may be permitted under this chapter.
(c) An administrative patent judge may make necessary inquiry to determine whether an attorney or agent should be disqualified from representing a party in an interference. If an administrative patent judge is of the opinion that an attorney or agent should be disqualified, the administrative patent judge shall refer the matter to the Commissioner. The Commissioner will make a final decision as to whether any attorney or agent should be disqualified.
(d) No attorney or agent of record in an interference may withdraw as attorney or agent of record except with the approval of an administrative patent judge and after reasonable notice to the party on whose behalf the attorney or agent has appeared. A request to withdraw as attorney or agent of record in an interference shall be made by motion (§ 1.635).
[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]
§ 1.614 Jurisdiction over interference.
(a) The Board acquires jurisdiction over an interference when the interference is declared under § 1.611.
(b) When the interference is declared the interference is a contested case within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 24.
(c) The examiner shall have jurisdiction over any pending application until the interference is declared. An administrative patent judge may for a limited purpose restore jurisdiction to the examiner over any application involved in the interference.
[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]
§ 1.615 Suspension of ex parte prosecution.
(a) When an interference is declared, ex parte prosecution of an application involved in the interference is suspended. Amendments and other papers related to the application received during pendency of the interference will not be entered or considered in the interference without the consent of an administrative patent judge.
(b) Ex parte prosecution as to specified matters may be continued concurrently with the interference with the
§ 1.616 Sanctions for failure to comply with rules or order or for taking and maintaining a frivolous position.

(a) An administrative patent judge or the Board may impose an appropriate sanction against a party who fails to comply with the regulations of this part or any order entered by an administrative patent judge or the Board. An appropriate sanction may include among others entry of an order:

(1) Holding certain facts to have been established in the interference;
(2) Precluding a party from filing a paper;
(3) Precluding a party from presenting or contesting a particular issue;
(4) Precluding a party from requesting, obtaining, or opposing discovery;
(5) Awarding compensatory expenses and/or compensatory attorney fees; or
(6) Granting judgment in the interference.

(b) An administrative patent judge or the Board may impose a sanction, including a sanction in the form of compensatory expenses and/or compensatory attorney fees, against a party for taking and maintaining a frivolous position in papers filed in the interference.

(c) To the extent that an administrative patent judge or the Board has authorized a party to compel the taking of testimony or the production of documents or things from an individual or entity located in a NAFTA country or a WTO member country concerning knowledge, use, or other activity relevant to proving or disproving a date of invention (§ 1.671(h)), but the testimony, documents or things have not been produced for use in the interference to the same extent as such information could be made available in the United States, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall draw such adverse inferences as may be appropriate under the circumstances, or take such other action permitted by statute, rule, or regulation, in favor of the party that requested the information in the interference, including imposition of appropriate sanctions under paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) A party may file a motion (§ 1.635) for entry of an order imposing sanctions, the drawing of adverse inferences or other action under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of this section. Where an administrative patent judge or the Board on its own initiative determines that a sanction, adverse inference or other action against a party may be appropriate under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of this section, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall enter an order for the party to show cause why the sanction, adverse inference or other action is not appropriate. The Board shall take action in accordance with the order unless, within 20 days after the date of the order, the party files a paper which shows good cause why the sanction, adverse inference or other action would not be appropriate.

[60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.617 Summary judgment against applicant.

(a) An administrative patent judge shall review any evidence filed by an applicant under § 1.608(b) to determine if the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee. If the administrative patent judge determines that the evidence shows the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the interference shall proceed in the normal manner under the regulations of this part. If in the opinion of the administrative patent judge the evidence fails to show that the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the interference shall proceed in the normal manner under the regulations of this part. If in the opinion of the administrative patent judge the evidence shows that the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the administrative patent judge shall, concurrently with the notice declaring the interference, enter an order stating the reasons for the opinion and directing the applicant, within a time set in the order, to show cause why summary judgment should not be entered against the applicant.

(b) The applicant may file a response to the order, which may include an appropriate preliminary motion under § 1.633 (c), (f) or (g), and state any reasons why summary judgment should not be entered. Any request by the applicant for a hearing before the Board
shall be made in the response. Additional evidence shall not be presented by the applicant or considered by the Board unless the applicant shows good cause why any additional evidence was not initially presented with the evidence filed under §1.608(b). At the time an applicant files a response, the applicant shall serve a copy of any evidence filed under §1.608(b) and this paragraph.

(c) If a response is not timely filed by the applicant, the Board shall enter a final decision granting summary judgment against the applicant.

(d) If a response is timely filed by the applicant, all opponents may file a statement and may oppose any preliminary motion filed under §1.633 (c), (f) or (g) by the applicant within a time set by the administrative patent judge. The statement may set forth views as to why summary judgment should be granted against the applicant, but the statement shall be limited to discussing why all the evidence presented by the applicant does not overcome the reasons given by the administrative patent judge for issuing the order to show cause. Except as required to oppose a motion under §1.633 (c), (f) or (g) by the applicant, evidence shall not be filed by any opponent. An opponent may not request a hearing.

(e) Within a time authorized by the administrative patent judge, an applicant may file a reply to any statement or opposition filed by any opponent.

(f) When more than two parties are involved in an interference, all parties may participate in summary judgment proceedings under this section.

(g) If a response by the applicant is timely filed, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall decide whether the evidence submitted under §1.608(b) and any additional evidence properly submitted under paragraphs (b) and (e) of this section shows that the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee. If the applicant is not prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the Board shall enter a final decision granting summary judgment against the applicant. Otherwise, an interlocutory order shall be entered authorizing the interference to proceed in the normal manner under the regulations of this subpart.

(h) Only an applicant who filed evidence under §1.608(b) may request a hearing. If that applicant requests a hearing, the Board may hold a hearing prior to entry of a decision under paragraph (g) of this section. The administrative patent judge shall set a date and time for the hearing. Unless otherwise ordered by the administrative patent judge or the Board, the applicant and any opponent will each be entitled to no more than 30 minutes of oral argument at the hearing.

§1.618 Return of unauthorized papers.

(a) An administrative patent judge or the Board shall return to a party any paper presented by the party when the filing of the paper is not authorized by, or is not in compliance with the requirements of, this subpart. Any paper returned will not thereafter be considered in the interference. A party may be permitted to file a corrected paper under such conditions as may be deemed appropriate by an administrative patent judge or the Board.

(b) When presenting a paper in an interference, a party shall not submit with the paper a copy of a paper previously filed in the interference.

§1.621 Preliminary statement, time for filing, notice of filing.

(a) Within the time set for filing preliminary motions under §1.633, each party may file a preliminary statement. The preliminary statement may be signed by any individual having knowledge of the facts recited therein or by an attorney or agent of record.

(b) When a party files a preliminary statement, the party shall also simultaneously file and serve on all opponents in the interference a notice stating that a preliminary statement has been filed. A copy of the preliminary

123
§ 1.622 Preliminary statement, who made invention, where invention made.

(a) A party's preliminary statement must identify the inventor who made the invention defined by each count and must state on behalf of the inventor the facts required by paragraph (a) of §§ 1.623, 1.624, and 1.625 as may be appropriate. When an inventor identified in the preliminary statement is not an inventor named in the party's application or patent, the party shall file a motion under § 1.634 to correct inventorship.

(b) The preliminary statement shall state whether the invention was made in the United States, a NAFTA country (and, if so, which NAFTA country), a WTO member country (and, if so, which WTO member country), or in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country. If made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary statement shall state whether the party is entitled to the benefit of 35 U.S.C. 104(a)(2). If the invention was not actually reduced to practice by or on behalf of the inventor prior to the party's filing date, the preliminary statement shall so state.

(c) If a party intends to prove derivation, the preliminary statement must also comply with § 1.625.

(d) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(1) of this section that a drawing was made, a copy of the first drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a written description of the invention was made, a copy of the first written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See § 1.628(b) when a copy of the first drawing or written description cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

§ 1.623 Preliminary statement; invention made in United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(a) When the invention was made in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, or a party is entitled to the benefit of 35 U.S.C. 104(a)(2), the preliminary statement must state the following facts as to the invention defined by each count:

(1) The date on which the first drawing of the invention was made.

(2) The date on which the first written description of the invention was made.

(3) The date on which the invention was first disclosed by the inventor to another person.

(4) The date on which the invention was first conceived by the inventor.

(5) The date on which the invention was first actually reduced to practice.

If the invention was not actually reduced to practice by or on behalf of the inventor prior to the party's filing date, the preliminary statement shall so state.

(6) The date after the inventor's conception of the invention when active exercise of reasonable diligence toward reducing the invention to practice began.

(b) If a party intends to prove derivation, the preliminary statement must also comply with § 1.625.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(1) of this section that a drawing was made, a copy of the first drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a written description of the invention was made, a copy of the first written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See § 1.628(b) when a copy of the first drawing or written description cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

§ 1.624 Preliminary statement; invention made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(a) When the invention was made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country and a party intends to rely on introduction of the invention into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary statement must state the following facts as to the invention defined by each count:

(1) The date on which a drawing of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(2) The date on which a written description of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(3) The date on which the invention was first disclosed to another person in
§ 1.627 Preliminary statement; sealing before filing, opening of statement.

(a) The preliminary statement and copies of any drawing or written description shall be filed in a sealed envelope bearing only the name of the party filing the statement and the style (e.g., Jones v. Smith) and number of the case, and shall be accompanied by a statement setting forth the name of the party filing the statement. The statement shall be marked for sealing and, if so marked, shall be sealed in the presence of the examiner or in the office of the examiner. When the statement is opened, it shall be accompanied by a statement setting forth the name of the party filing the statement, the name of the party seeking to open the statement, and the number of the case.

(b) If the statement is sealed, the party seeking to open it shall file a motion requesting the sealing to be broken. The motion shall be accompanied by an affidavit establishing the facts upon which the sealing is to be broken. The sealing shall be broken in the presence of the examiner or in the office of the examiner, and, if so broken, the statement shall be opened in the presence of the examiner or in the office of the examiner.
§ 1.628 Preliminary statement; correction of error.

(a) A material error arising through inadvertence or mistake in connection with a preliminary statement or drawings or a written description submitted therewith or omitted therefrom may be corrected by a motion ($1.635) for leave to file a corrected statement. The motion shall be supported by an affidavit stating the date the error was first discovered, shall be accompanied by the corrected statement and shall be filed as soon as practical after discovery of the error. If filed on or after the date set by the administrative patent judge for service of preliminary statements, the motion shall also show that correction of the error is essential to the interest of justice.

(b) When a party cannot attach a copy of a drawing or written description to the party's preliminary statement as required by $1.623(c), $1.624(c) or $1.625(c), the party shall show good cause and explain in the preliminary statement why a copy of the drawing or written description cannot be attached to the preliminary statement and shall attach to the preliminary statement the earliest drawing or written description made in or introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country which is available. The party shall file a motion ($1.635) to amend its preliminary statement promptly after the first drawing, first written description, or drawing or written description first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country becomes available. A copy of the drawing or written description may be obtained, where appropriate, by a motion ($1.635) for additional discovery under §1.687 or during a testimony period.

§ 1.629 Effect of preliminary statement.

(a) A party shall be strictly held to any date alleged in the preliminary statement. Doubts as to definiteness or sufficiency of any allegation in a preliminary statement or compliance with formal requirements will be resolved against the party filing the statement by restricting the party to its effective filing date or to the latest date of a period alleged in the preliminary statement, as may be appropriate. A party may not correct a preliminary statement except as provided by §1.628.

(b) Evidence which shows that an act alleged in the preliminary statement occurred prior to the date alleged in the statement shall establish only that the act occurred as early as the date alleged in the statement.

(c) If a party does not file a preliminary statement, the party:

(1) Shall be restricted to the party's effective filing date and

(2) Will not be permitted to prove that:

(i) The party made the invention prior to the party's filing date or

(ii) Any opponent derived the invention from the party.

(d) If a party files a preliminary statement which contains an allegation of a date of first drawing or first written description and the party does not file a copy of the first drawing or written description with the preliminary statement as required by §1.623(c), §1.624(c), or §1.625(c), the party will be restricted to the party's effective filing date as to that allegation unless the party complies with §1.628(b). The content of any drawing or written description submitted with a preliminary statement will not normally be evaluated or considered by the Board.

(e) A preliminary statement shall not be used as evidence on behalf of the party filing the statement.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]
§ 1.630 Reliance on earlier application.

A party shall not be entitled to rely on the filing date of an earlier filed application unless the earlier application is identified (§ 1.611(c)(5)) in the notice declaring the interference or the party files a preliminary motion under § 1.633 seeking the benefit of the filing date of the earlier application.

[60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.631 Access to preliminary statement, service of preliminary statement.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, concurrently with entry of a decision on preliminary motions filed under § 1.633 any preliminary statement filed under § 1.621(a) shall be opened to inspection by the senior party and any junior party who filed a preliminary statement. Within a time set by the administrative patent judge, a party shall serve a copy of its preliminary statement on each opponent who served a notice under § 1.621(b).

(b) A junior party who does not file a preliminary statement shall not have access to the preliminary statement of any other party.

(c) If an interference is terminated before the preliminary statements have been opened, the preliminary statements will remain sealed and will be returned to the respective parties who submitted the statements.


§ 1.632 Notice of intent to argue abandonment, suppression or concealment by opponent.

A notice shall be filed by a party who intends to argue that an opponent has abandoned, suppressed, or concealed an actual reduction to practice (35 U.S.C. 102(g)). A party will not be permitted to argue abandonment, suppression, or concealment by an opponent unless the notice is timely filed. Unless authorized otherwise by an administrative patent judge, a notice is timely when filed within ten (10) days after the close of the testimony-in-chief of the opponent.

[60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.633 Preliminary motions.

A party may file the following preliminary motions:

(a) A motion for judgment against an opponent’s claim designated to correspond to a count on the ground that the claim is not patentable to the opponent. The motion shall separately address each claim alleged to be unpatentable. In deciding an issue raised in a motion filed under this paragraph (a), a claim will be construed in light of the specification of the application or patent in which it appears. A motion under this paragraph shall not be based on:

(1) Priority of invention by the moving party as against any opponent or

(2) Derivation of the invention by an opponent from the moving party. See § 1.637(a).

(b) A motion for judgment on the ground that there is no interference-in-fact. A motion under this paragraph is proper only if the interference involves a design application or patent or a plant application or patent or no claim of a party which corresponds to a count is identical to any claim of an opponent which corresponds to that count. See § 1.637(a). When claims of different parties are presented in “means plus function” format, it may be possible for the claims of the different parties not to define the same patentable invention even though the claims contain the same literal wording.

(c) A motion to redefine the interfering subject matter by (1) adding or substituting a claim, (2) amending an application claim corresponding to a count or adding a claim in the moving party’s application to be designated to correspond to a count, (3) designating an application or patent claim to correspond to a count, (4) designating an application or patent claim as not corresponding to a count, or (5) requiring an opponent who is an applicant to add a claim and to designate the claim to correspond to a count. See § 1.637 (a) and (c).

(d) A motion to substitute a different application owned by a party for an application involved in the interference. See § 1.637 (a) and (d).

(e) A motion to declare an additional interference (1) between an additional
§ 1.634 Motion to correct inventorship.

A party may file a motion to (a) amend its application involved in an interference to correct inventorship as provided by §1.48 or (b) correct inventorship of its patent involved in an interference as provided in §1.324. See §1.637(a).

§ 1.635 Miscellaneous motions.

A party seeking entry of an order relating to any matter other than a matter which may be raised under §1.633 or §1.634 may file a motion requesting entry of the order. See §1.637(a) and (b).

§ 1.636 Motions, time for filing.

(a) A preliminary motion under §1.633 (a) through (h) shall be filed within a time period set by an administrative patent judge.

(b) A preliminary motion under §1.633 (i) or (j) shall be filed within 20 days of the service of the preliminary motion under §1.633 (a), (b), (c)(1), or (g) unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(c) A motion under §1.634 shall be diligently filed after an error is discovered in the inventorship of an application or patent involved in an interference unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(d) A motion under §1.635 shall be filed as specified in this subpart or when appropriate unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

§ 1.637 Content of motions.

(a) A party filing a motion has the burden of proof to show that it is entitled to the relief sought in the motion. Each motion shall include a statement of the precise relief requested, a statement of the material facts in support of the motion, in numbered paragraphs, and a full statement of the reasons why the relief requested should be granted.

(b) A party files a motion for judgment under §1.633(a) against an opponent based on the ground of unpatentability over prior art, and the dates of the cited prior art are such that the prior art appears to be applicable to the party, it will be presumed, without regard to the dates alleged in the preliminary statement of the party, that the cited prior art is applicable to the party unless there is included with the motion an explanation, and evidence if appropriate, as to why the prior art does not apply to the party.
provisions of this paragraph do not apply to a motion to suppress evidence (§1.656(h)).

(c) A preliminary motion under §1.633(c) shall explain why the interfering subject matter should be redefined.

(1) A preliminary motion seeking to add or substitute a count shall:
   (i) Propose each count to be added or substituted.
   (ii) When the moving party is an applicant, show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the party's application which correspond to each proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the party's application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application.
   (iii) Identify all claims in an opponent's application which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if an opponent's application does not contain such a claim, the moving party shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application. The moving party shall show the patentability of any proposed claims to the opponent and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the opponent's application.
   (iv) Designate the claims of any patent involved in the interference which define the same patentable invention as each proposed count.
   (v) Show that each proposed count defines a separate patentable invention from every other count proposed to remain in the interference.
   (vi) Be accompanied by a motion under §1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of any earlier filed application, if benefit of the earlier filed application is desired with respect to a proposed count.
   (vii) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

(2) A preliminary motion seeking to amend an application claim corresponding to a count or adding a claim to be designated to correspond to a count shall:
   (i) Propose an amended or added claim.
   (ii) Show that the claim proposed to be amended or added defines the same patentable invention as the count.
   (iii) Show the patentability to the applicant of each claim proposed to be amended or added and apply the terms of the claims proposed to be amended or added to the disclosure of the application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion a proposed amendment to the application amending the claim corresponding to the count or adding the proposed additional claim to the application.

(3) A preliminary motion seeking to designate an application or patent claim to correspond to a count shall:
   (i) Identify the claim and the count.
   (ii) Show that the claim defines the same patentable invention as another claim whose designation as corresponding to the count the moving party does not dispute.

(4) A preliminary motion seeking to designate an application or patent claim as not corresponding to a count shall:
   (i) Identify the claim and the count.
   (ii) Show that the claim does not define the same patentable invention as any other claim whose designation in the notice declaring the interference as corresponding to the count the party does not dispute.

(5) A preliminary motion seeking to require an opponent who is an applicant to add a claim and designate the claim as corresponding to a count shall:
   (i) Propose a claim to be added by the opponent.
   (ii) Show the patentability to the opponent of the claim and apply the terms of the claim to the disclosure of the opponent's application.
   (iii) Identify the count to which the claim shall be designated to correspond.
   (iv) Show the claim defines the same patentable invention as the count to which it will be designated to correspond.
§ 1.637

(d) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(d) to substitute a different application of the moving party shall:

(1) Identify the different application.

(2) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the different application, except for documents filed under § 1.131 or § 1.608, has been served on all opponents.

(3) Show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the different application which correspond to each count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the different application; when necessary the applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding a claim to the different application.

(e) A preliminary motion to declare an additional interference under § 1.633(e) shall explain why an additional interference is necessary.

(1) When the preliminary motion seeks an additional interference under § 1.633(e)(1), the motion shall:

(i) Identify the additional application.

(ii) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the additional application, except for documents filed under § 1.131 or § 1.608, has been served on all opponents.

(iii) Propose a count for the additional interference.

(iv) Show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the additional application which correspond to each proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the additional application; when necessary the applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any claim to the additional application.

(v) When the opponent is an applicant, show the patentability to the opponent of any claims in, or proposed to be added to, the opponent’s application which correspond to the proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the opponent’s application.

(vi) Identify all claims in the opponent’s application or patent which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if the opponent’s application does not contain any such claim, the motion shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent’s application.

(vii) Show that each proposed count for the additional interference defines a separate patentable invention from all counts of the interference in which the motion is filed.

(viii) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application, if benefit is desired with respect to a proposed count.

(ix) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

(2) When the preliminary motion seeks an additional interference under § 1.633(e)(2), the motion shall:

(i) Identify any application or patent to be involved in the additional interference.

(ii) Propose a count for the additional interference.

(iii) When the moving party is an applicant, show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the party’s application which correspond to each proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the party’s application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application.

(iv) Identify all claims in any opponent’s application which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if an opponent’s application does not contain any such claim, the moving party shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent’s application.

The moving party shall show the patentability of any proposed claim to the opponent and apply the terms of the claim to the disclosure of the opponent’s application.

(v) Designate the claims of any patent involved in the interference which define the same patentable invention as each proposed count.
(vi) Show that each proposed count for the additional interference defines a separate patentable invention from all counts in the interference in which the motion is filed.

(vii) Be accompanied by a motion under §1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application, if benefit is desired with respect to a proposed count.

(viii) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

(f) A preliminary motion for benefit under §1.633(f) shall:

(1) Identify the earlier application.

(2) When an earlier application is an application filed in the United States, certify that a complete copy of the file of the earlier application, except for documents filed under §1.131 or §1.608, has been served on all opponents. When the earlier application is an application filed in a foreign country, certify that a copy of the application has been served on all opponents. If the earlier filed application is not in English, the requirements of §1.647 must also be met.

(3) Show that the earlier application constitutes a constructive reduction to practice of each count.

(g) A preliminary motion to attack benefit under §1.633(g) shall explain, as to each count, why an opponent should not be accorded the benefit of the filing date of the earlier application.

(h) A preliminary motion to add an application for reissue under §1.633(h) shall:

(1) Identify the application for reissue.

(2) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the application for reissue has been served on all opponents.

(3) Show the patentability of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the application for reissue which correspond to each count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the application for reissue; when necessary a moving applicant for reissue shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application for reissue.

(4) Be accompanied by a motion under §1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of any earlier filed application, if benefit is desired.

§1.638 Opposition and reply; time for filing opposition and reply.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any opposition to any motion shall be filed within 20 days after service of the motion. An opposition shall identify any material fact set forth in the motion which is in dispute and include an argument why the relief requested in the motion should be denied.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any reply shall be filed within 15 days after service of the opposition. A reply shall be directed only to new points raised in the opposition.

§1.639 Evidence in support of motion, opposition, or reply.

(a) Except as provided in paragraphs (c) through (g) of this section, proof of any material fact alleged in a motion, opposition, or reply must be filed and served with the motion, opposition, or reply unless the proof relied upon is part of the interference file or the file of any patent or application involved in the interference or any earlier application filed in the United States of which a party has been accorded or seeks to be accorded benefit.

(b) Proof may be in the form of patents, printed publications, and affidavits. The pages of any affidavits filed under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers, which shall also serve as the record page numbers for the affidavits in the event they are included in the party's record (§1.653). Any patents and printed publications submitted under this paragraph and any exhibits identified in affidavits submitted under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible,
be given sequential exhibit numbers, which shall also serve as the exhibit numbers in the event the patents, printed publications and exhibits are filed with the party's record (§1.653).

(c) If a party believes that additional evidence in the form of testimony that is unavailable to the party is necessary to support or oppose a preliminary motion under §1.633 or a motion to correct inventorship under §1.634, the party shall describe the nature of any proposed testimony as specified in paragraphs (d) through (g) of this section. If the administrative patent judge finds that testimony is needed to decide the motion, the administrative patent judge may grant appropriate interlocutory relief and enter an order authorizing the taking of testimony and deferring a decision on the motion to final hearing.

(d) When additional evidence in the form of expert-witness testimony is needed in support of or opposition to a preliminary motion, the moving party or opponent should:

(1) Identify the person whom it expects to use as an expert;

(2) State the field in which the person is alleged to be an expert; and

(3) State:

(i) The subject matter on which the person is expected to testify;

(ii) The facts and opinions to which the person is expected to testify; and

(iii) A summary of the grounds and basis for each opinion.

(e) When additional evidence in the form of fact-witness testimony is necessary, state the facts to which the witness is expected to testify.

(f) If the opponent is to be called, or if evidence in the possession of the opponent is necessary, explain the evidence sought, what it will show, and why it is needed.

(g) When inter partes tests are to be performed, describe the tests stating what they will be expected to show.

§1.640 Motions, hearing and decision, reelection of interference, order to show cause.

(a) A hearing on a motion may be held in the discretion of the administrative patent judge. The administrative patent judge shall set the date and time for any hearing. The length of oral argument at a hearing on a motion is a matter within the discretion of the administrative patent judge. An administrative patent judge may direct that a hearing take place by telephone.

(b) Unless an administrative patent judge or the Board is of the opinion that an earlier decision on a preliminary motion would materially advance the resolution of the interference, decision on a preliminary motion shall be deferred to final hearing. Motions not deferred to final hearing will be decided by an administrative patent judge. An administrative patent judge may consult with an examiner in deciding motions. An administrative patent judge may take up motions for decisions in any order, may grant, deny, or dismiss any motion, and may take such other action which will secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive determination of the interference. A matter raised by a party in support of or in opposition to a motion that is deferred to final hearing will not be entitled to consideration at final hearing unless the matter is raised in the party's brief at final hearing. If the administrative patent judge determines that the interference shall proceed to final hearing on the issue of priority or derivation, a time shall be set for each party to file a paper identifying any decisions on motions or on matters raised sua sponte by the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed at final hearing as well as identifying any deferred motions that the party wishes to have considered at final hearing. Any evidence that a party wishes to have considered at final hearing shall be filed or, if appropriate, noticed under §1.671(e) during the testimony-in-chief period of the party.

(1) When appropriate after the time expires for filing replies to oppositions to preliminary motions, the administrative patent judge will set a time for filing any amendment to an application involved in the interference and for filing a supplemental preliminary statement as to any new counts which
may become involved in the interference if a preliminary motion to amend or substitute a count has been filed. Failure or refusal of a party to timely present an amendment required by an administrative patent judge shall be taken without further action as a disclaimer by that party of the invention involved. A supplemental preliminary statement shall meet the requirements specified in §1.623, 1.624, 1.625, or 1.626, but need not be filed if a party states that it intends to rely on a preliminary statement previously filed under §1.621(a). At an appropriate time in the interference, and when necessary, an order will be entered re-declaring the interference.

(2) After the time expires for filing preliminary motions, a further preliminary motion under §1.633 will not be considered except as provided by §1.645(b).

(c) When a decision on any motion under §1.633, 1.634, or 1.635 or on any matter raised sua sponte by an administrative patent judge is entered which does not result in the issuance of an order to show cause under paragraph (d) of this section, a party may file a request for reconsideration within 14 days after the date of the decision. The request for reconsideration shall be filed and served by hand or Express Mail. The filing of a request for reconsideration will not stay any time period set by the decision. The request for reconsideration shall specify with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision. No opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed unless requested by an administrative patent judge or the Board. A decision ordinarily will not be modified unless an opposition has been requested by an administrative patent judge or the Board. The request for reconsideration normally will be acted on by the administrative patent judge or the panel of the Board which issued the decision.

(d) An administrative patent judge may issue an order to show cause why judgment should not be entered against a party when:

(1) A decision on a motion or on a matter raised sua sponte by an administrative patent judge is entered which is dispositive of the interference against the party as to any count;
(2) The party is a junior party who fails to file a preliminary statement; or
(3) The party is a junior party whose preliminary statement fails to overcome the effective filing date of another party.

(e) When an order to show cause is issued under paragraph (d) of this section, the Board shall enter judgment in accordance with the order unless, within 20 days after the date of the order, the party against whom the order issued files a paper which shows good cause why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order.

(1) If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section, the paper may:

(i) Request that final hearing be set to review any decision which is the basis for the order as well as any other decision of the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed by the Board at final hearing or
(ii) Fully explain why judgment should not be entered.

(2) Any opponent may file a response to the paper within 20 days of the date of service of the paper. If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section and the party’s paper includes a request for final hearing, the opponent’s response must identify every decision of the administrative patent judge that the opponent wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing. If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section and the paper does not include a request for final hearing, the opponent’s response may include a request for final hearing, which must identify every decision of the administrative patent judge that the opponent wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing. Where only the opponent’s response includes a request for final hearing, the party filing the paper shall, within 14 days from the date of service of the opponent’s response, file a reply identifying any other decision of the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing.

(3) The paper or the response should be accompanied by a motion (§1.635) requesting a testimony period if either
§ 1.641 Unpatentability discovered by administrative patent judge.

(a) During the pendency of an interference, if the administrative patent judge becomes aware of a reason why a claim designated to correspond to a count may not be patentable, the administrative patent judge may enter an order notifying the parties of the reason and set a time within which each party may present its views, including any argument and any supporting evidence, and, in the case of the party whose claim may be unpatentable, any appropriate preliminary motions under §§1.633(c), (d) and (h).

(b) If a party timely files a preliminary motion in response to the order of the administrative patent judge, any opponent may file an opposition (§1.638(a)). If an opponent files an opposition, the party may reply (§1.638(b)).

(c) After considering any timely filed preliminary motions under §1.633, oppositions and replies, the administrative patent judge shall decide how the interference shall proceed.

[60 FR 14526, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.642 Addition of application or patent to interference.

During the pendency of an interference, if the administrative patent judge becomes aware of an application or a patent not involved in the interference which claims the same patentable invention as a count in the interference, the administrative patent judge may add the application or patent to the interference on such terms as may be fair to all parties.

[60 FR 14526, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.643 Prosecution of interference by assignee.

(a) An assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office of the entire interest in an application or patent involved in an interference is entitled to conduct prosecution of the interference to the exclusion of the inventor.

(b) An assignee of a part interest in an application or patent involved in an interference may file a motion (§1.635) for entry of an order authorizing it to prosecute the interference. The motion shall show the inability or refusal of the inventor to prosecute the interference or other cause why it is in the interest of justice to permit the assignee of a part interest to prosecute the interference. The administrative patent judge may allow the assignee of a part interest to prosecute the interference upon such terms as may be appropriate.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14527, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.644 Petitions in interferences.

(a) There is no appeal to the Commissioner in an interference from a decision of an administrative patent judge or the Board. The Commissioner will not consider a petition in an interference unless:

(1) The petition is from a decision of an administrative patent judge or the Board and the administrative patent judge or the Board shall be of the opinion that the decision involves a controlling question of procedure or an interpretation of a rule as to which there is a substantial ground for a difference of opinion and that an immediate decision on petition by the Commissioner
may materially advance the ultimate termination of the interference;

(2) The petition seeks to invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner and does not relate to the merits of priority of invention or patentability or the admissibility of evidence under the Federal Rules of Evidence; or

(3) The petition seeks relief under §1.183.

(b) A petition under paragraph (a)(1) of this section filed more than 15 days after the date of the decision of the administrative patent judge or the Board may be dismissed as untimely. A petition under paragraph (a)(2) of this section shall not be filed prior to the party’s brief for final hearing (see §1.656). Any petition under paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be timely if it is filed simultaneously with a proper motion under §1.633, 1.634, or 1.635 when granting the motion would require waiver of a rule. Any opposition to a petition under paragraph (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section shall be filed within 20 days of the date of service of the petition. Any opposition to a petition under paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be filed within 20 days of the date of service of the petition or the date an opposition to the motion is due, whichever is earlier.

(c) The filing of a petition shall not stay the proceeding unless a stay is granted in the discretion of the administrative patent judge, the Board, or the Commissioner.

(d) Any petition must contain a statement of the facts involved, in numbered paragraphs, and the point or points to be reviewed and the action requested. The petition will be decided on the basis of the record made before the administrative patent judge or the Board, and no new evidence will be considered by the Commissioner in deciding the petition. Copies of documents already of record in the interference shall not be submitted with the petition or opposition.

(e) Any petition under paragraph (a) of this section shall be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in §1.17(h).

(f) Any request for reconsideration of a decision by the Commissioner shall be filed within 14 days of the decision of the Commissioner and must be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(h). No opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed unless requested by the Commissioner. The decision will not ordinarily be modified unless such an opposition has been requested by the Commissioner.

(g) Where reasonably possible, service of any petition, opposition, or request for reconsideration shall be such that delivery is accomplished within one working day. Service by hand or Express Mail complies with this paragraph.

(h) An oral hearing on the petition will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(i) The Commissioner may delegate to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office employees the determination of petitions under this section.

§ 1.646 Service of papers, proof of service.

(a) A copy of every paper filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in an interference or an application or patent involved in the interference shall be served upon all other parties except:

(1) Preliminary statements when filed under §1.621; preliminary statements shall be served when service is ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(2) Certified transcripts and exhibits which accompany the transcripts filed under §1.676; copies of transcripts shall be served as part of a party's record under §1.653(c).

(b) Service shall be on an attorney or agent for a party. If there is no attorney or agent for the party, service shall be on the party. An administrative patent judge may order additional service or waive service where appropriate.

(c) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, or except as otherwise provided by this subpart, service of a paper shall be made as follows:

(1) By handing a copy of the paper or causing a copy of the paper to be handed to the person served.

(2) By leaving a copy of the paper with someone employed by the person at the person's usual place of business.

(3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy of the paper at the person's residence with someone of suitable age and discretion then residing therein.

(4) By mailing a copy of the paper by first class mail; when service is by first class mail the date of mailing is regarded as the date of service.

(5) By mailing a copy of the paper by Express Mail; when service is by Express Mail the date of deposit with the U.S. Postal Service is regarded as the date of service.

(6) When it is shown to the satisfaction of an administrative patent judge that none of the above methods of obtaining or serving the copy of the paper was successful, the administrative patent judge may order service by publication of an appropriate notice in the Official Gazette.

(d) An administrative patent judge may order that a paper be served by hand or Express Mail.

(e) The due date for serving a paper is the same as the due date for filing the paper in the Patent and Trademark Office. Proof of service must be made before a paper will be considered in an interference. Proof of service may appear on or be affixed to the paper. Proof of service shall include the date and manner of service. In the case of personal service under paragraphs (c)(1) through (c)(3) of this section, proof of service shall include the names of any person served and the person who made the service. Proof of service may be made by an acknowledgment of service by or on behalf of the person served or a statement signed by the party or the party's attorney or agent containing the information required by this section. A statement of an attorney or agent attached to, or appearing in, the paper stating the date and manner of service will be accepted as prima facie proof of service.


§ 1.647 Translation of document in foreign language.

When a party relies on a document or is required to produce a document in a language other than English, a translation of the document into English
§ 1.651 Setting times for discovery and taking testimony, parties entitled to take testimony.

(a) At an appropriate stage in an interference, an administrative patent judge shall set a time for filing motions (§ 1.635) for additional discovery under § 1.687(c) and testimony periods for taking any necessary testimony.

(b) Where appropriate, testimony periods will be set to permit a party to:

(1) Present its case-in-chief and/or case-in-rebuttal and/or

(2) Cross-examine an opponent’s case-in-chief and/or a case-in-rebuttal.

(c) A party is not entitled to take testimony to present a case-in-chief unless:

(1) The administrative patent judge orders the taking of testimony under § 1.639(c);

(2) The party alleges in its preliminary statement a date of invention prior to the effective filing date of the senior party;

(3) A testimony period has been set to permit an opponent to prove a date of invention prior to the effective filing date of the party and the party has filed a preliminary statement alleging a date of invention prior to that date; or

(4) A motion (§ 1.635) is filed showing good cause why a testimony period should be set.

(d) Testimony, including any testimony to be taken in a place outside the United States, shall be taken and completed during the testimony periods set under paragraph (a) of this section. A party seeking to extend the period for taking testimony must comply with §§ 1.635 and 1.645(a).


§ 1.652 Judgment for failure to take testimony or file record.

If a junior party fails to timely take testimony authorized under § 1.651, or file a record under § 1.653(c), an administrative patent judge, with or without a motion (§ 1.635) by another party, may issue an order to show cause why judgment should not be entered against the junior party. When an order is issued under this section, the Board shall enter judgment in accordance with the order unless, within 15 days after the date of the order, the junior party files a paper which shows good cause why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order. Any other party may file a response to the paper within 15 days of the date of service of the paper. If the party against whom the order was issued fails to show good cause, the Board shall enter judgment against the party.

[60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.653 Record and exhibits.

(a) Testimony shall consist of affidavits under §§ 1.672 (b), (c) and (g), 1.682(c), 1.683(b) and 1.688(b), transcripts of depositions under §§ 1.671(g) and 1.672(a) when a deposition is authorized by an administrative patent judge, transcripts of depositions under §§ 1.672(d), 1.682(d), 1.683(c) and 1.688(c), agreed statements under § 1.672(h), transcripts of interrogatories, cross-interrogatories, and recorded answers and copies of written interrogatories and answers and written requests for admissions and answers under § 1.688(a).

(b) An affidavit shall be filed as set forth in § 1.672(h). A certified transcript of a deposition, including a deposition cross-examining an affiant, shall be filed as set forth in §§ 1.676, 1.677 and 1.678. An original agreed statement shall be filed as set forth in § 1.672(h).

(c) In addition to the items specified in paragraph (b) of this section and within a time set by an administrative patent judge, each party shall file three copies and serve one copy of a record consisting of:

(1) An index of the names of the witnesses for the party, giving the pages of the record where the direct testimony and cross-examination of each witness begins.

(2) An index of exhibits briefly describing the nature of each exhibit and giving the page of the record where each exhibit is first identified and offered into evidence.

(3) The count or counts.

(4) Each affidavit by witness for the party, transcript, including transcripts
§ 1.654

Final hearing.

(a) At an appropriate stage of the interference, the parties will be given an opportunity to appear before the Board to present oral argument at a final hearing. An administrative patent judge may set a date and time for final hearing. Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge or the Board, each party will be entitled to no more than 30 minutes of oral argument at final hearing. A party who does not file a brief for final hearing (§ 1.656(a)) shall not be entitled to appear at final hearing.

(b) The opening argument of a junior party shall include a fair statement of the junior party's case and the junior party's position with respect to the case presented on behalf of any other party. A junior party may reserve a portion of its time for rebuttal.

(c) A party shall not be entitled to argue that an opponent abandoned, suppressed, or concealed an actual reduction to practice unless a notice under § 1.632 was timely filed.

(d) After final hearing, the interference shall be taken under advisement by the Board. No further paper shall be filed except under § 1.658(b) or as authorized by an administrative patent judge or the Board. No additional oral argument shall be had unless ordered by the Board.

§ 1.654

Final hearing.

(a) At an appropriate stage of the interference, the parties will be given an opportunity to appear before the Board to present oral argument at a final hearing. An administrative patent judge may set a date and time for final hearing. Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge or the Board, each party will be entitled to no more than 30 minutes of oral argument at final hearing. A party who does not file a brief for final hearing (§ 1.656(a)) shall not be entitled to appear at final hearing.

(b) The opening argument of a junior party shall include a fair statement of the junior party's case and the junior party's position with respect to the case presented on behalf of any other party. A junior party may reserve a portion of its time for rebuttal.

(c) A party shall not be entitled to argue that an opponent abandoned, suppressed, or concealed an actual reduction to practice unless a notice under § 1.632 was timely filed.

(d) After final hearing, the interference shall be taken under advisement by the Board. No further paper shall be filed except under § 1.658(b) or as authorized by an administrative patent judge or the Board. No additional oral argument shall be had unless ordered by the Board.

§ 1.655 Matters considered in rendering a final decision.

(a) In rendering a final decision, the Board may consider any properly raised issue, including priority of invention, derivation by an opponent from a party who filed a preliminary statement under § 1.625, patentability of the invention, admissibility of evidence, any interlocutory matter deferred to final hearing, and any other matter necessary to resolve the interference. The Board may also consider whether an interlocutory order should be modified. The burden of showing that an interlocutory order should be modified shall be on the party attacking the order. The abuse of discretion standard shall apply only to procedural matters.

(b) A party shall not be entitled to raise for consideration at final hearing any matter which properly could have been raised by a motion under § 1.633 or 1.634 unless the matter was properly raised in a motion that was timely filed by the party under § 1.633 or 1.634 and the motion was denied or deferred to final hearing, the matter was properly raised by the party in a timely filed opposition to a motion under § 1.633 or 1.634 and the motion was granted over the opposition or deferred to final hearing, or the party shows good cause why the issue was not properly raised by a timely filed motion or opposition. A party that fails to contest, by way of a timely filed preliminary motion under § 1.633(c), the designation of a claim as corresponding to a count, or fails to timely argue the separate patentability of a particular claim when the ground for unpatentability is first raised, may not subsequently argue to an administrative patent judge or the Board the separate patentability of claims designated to correspond to the count with respect to that ground.

(c) In the interest of justice, the Board may exercise its discretion to consider an issue even though it would not otherwise be entitled to consideration under this section.

[60 FR 14529, Mar. 17, 1995, as amended at 64 FR 12901, Mar. 16, 1999]

§ 1.656 Briefs for final hearing.

(a) Each party shall be entitled to file briefs for final hearing. The administrative patent judge shall determine the briefs needed and shall set the time and order for filing briefs.

(b) The opening brief of a junior party shall contain under appropriate headings and in the order indicated:

(1) A statement of interest indicating the full name of every party represented by the attorney in the interference and the name of the real party in interest if the party named in the caption is not the real party in interest.

(2) A statement of related cases indicating whether the interference was previously before the Board for final hearing and the name and number of any related appeal or interference which is pending before, or which has been decided by, the Board, or which is pending before, or which has been decided by, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or a district court in a proceeding under 35 U.S.C. 146. A related appeal or interference is one which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending interference.

(3) A table of contents, with page references, and a table of cases (alphabetically arranged), statutes, and other authorities cited, with references to the pages of the brief where they are cited.

(4) A statement of the issues presented for decision in the interference.

(5) A statement of the facts, in numbered paragraphs, relevant to the issues presented for decision with appropriate references to the record.

(6) An argument, which may be preceded by a summary, which shall contain the contentions of the party with respect to the issues it is raising for consideration at final hearing, and the reasons therefor, with citations to the cases, statutes, other authorities, and parts of the record relied on.

(7) A short conclusion stating the precise relief requested.

(8) An appendix containing a copy of the counts.

(c) The opening brief of the senior party shall conform to the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section except:
§ 1.657

(1) A statement of the issues and of the facts need not be made unless the party is dissatisfied with the statement in the opening brief of the junior party and

(2) An appendix containing a copy of the counts need not be included if the copy of the counts in the opening brief of the junior party is correct.

(d) Unless ordered otherwise by an administrative patent judge, briefs shall be double-spaced (except for footnotes, which may be single-spaced) and shall comply with the requirements of §1.653(g) for records except the requirement for binding.

(e) An original and four copies of each brief must be filed.

(f) Any brief which does not comply with the requirements of this section may be returned under §1.618(a).

(g) Any party, separate from its opening brief, but filed concurrently therewith, may file an original and four copies of concise proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law. Any proposed findings of fact shall be in numbered paragraphs and shall be supported by specific references to the record. Any proposed conclusions of law shall be in numbered paragraphs and shall be supported by citation of cases, statutes, or other authority. Any opponent, separate from its opening or reply brief, but filed concurrently therewith, may file a paper accepting or objecting to any proposed findings of fact or conclusions of law; when objecting, a reason must be given. The Board may adopt the proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law in whole or in part.

(h) If a party wants the Board in rendering its final decision to rule on the admissibility of any evidence, the party shall file with its opening brief an original and four copies of a motion (§1.635) to suppress the evidence. The provisions of §1.637(b) do not apply to a motion to suppress under this paragraph. Any objection previously made to the admissibility of the evidence of an opponent is waived unless the motion required by this paragraph is filed. A party that failed to challenge the admissibility of the evidence of an opponent on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under §1.672(c), 1.682(c), 1.683(b) or 1.688(b) may not move under this paragraph to suppress the evidence on that ground at final hearing. An original and four copies of an opposition to the motion may be filed with an opponent's opening brief or reply brief as may be appropriate.

(i) When a junior party fails to timely file an opening brief, an order may issue requiring the junior party to show cause why the Board should not treat failure to file the brief as a concession of priority. If the junior party fails to show good cause within a time period set in the order, judgment may be entered against the junior party.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14529, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.657 Burden of proof as to date of invention.

(a) A rebuttable presumption shall exist that, as to each count, the inventors made their invention in the chronological order of their effective filing dates. The burden of proof shall be upon a party who contends otherwise.

(b) In an interference involving co-pending applications or involving a patent and an application having an effective filing date on or before the date the patent issued, a junior party shall have the burden of establishing priority by a preponderance of the evidence.

(c) In an interference involving an application and a patent where the effective filing date of the application is after the date the patent issued, a junior party shall have the burden of establishing priority by clear and convincing evidence.

[60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.658 Final decision.

(a) After final hearing, the Board shall enter a decision resolving the issues raised at final hearing. The decision may enter judgment, in whole or in part, remand the interference to an administrative patent judge for further proceedings, or take further action not inconsistent with law. A judgment as to a count shall state whether or not each party is entitled to a patent containing the claims in the party's patent or application which correspond to
§ 1.659 Recommendation.

(a) Should the Board have knowledge of any ground for rejecting any application claim not involved in the judgment of the interference, it may include in its decision a recommended rejection of the claim. Upon resumption of ex parte prosecution of the application, the examiner shall be bound by the recommendation and shall enter and maintain the recommended rejection unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record is filed which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the recommended rejection.

(b) Should the Board have knowledge of any ground for reexamination of a patent involved in the interference as to a patent claim not involved in the judgment of the interference, it may include in its decision a recommendation to the Commissioner that the patent be reexamined. The Commissioner will determine whether reexamination will be ordered.

(c) The Board may make any other recommendation to the examiner or the Commissioner as may be appropriate.

§ 1.660 Notice of reexamination, reissue, protest, or litigation.

(a) When a request for reexamination of a patent involved in an interference is filed, the patent owner shall notify the Board within 10 days of receiving notice that the request was filed.

(b) When an application for reissue is filed by a patentee involved in an interference, the patentee shall notify the Board within 10 days of the day the application for reissue is filed.

(c) When a protest under §1.291 is filed against an application involved in an interference, the applicant shall notify the Board within 10 days of receiving notice that the protest was filed.

(d) When a protest under §1.291 is filed against an application involved in an interference, the applicant shall notify the Board promptly of any litigation related to any patent or application involved in an interference, including any civil action commenced under 35 U.S.C. 146.

(e) The notice required by this section is designed to assist the administrative patent judge and the Board in efficiently handling interference cases. Failure of a party to comply with the provisions of this section may result in
§ 1.661 Termination of interference after judgment.

After a final decision is entered by the Board, an interference is considered terminated when no appeal (35 U.S.C. 141) or other review (35 U.S.C. 146) has been or can be taken or had.

§ 1.662 Request for entry of adverse judgment; reissue filed by patentee.

(a) A party may, at any time during an interference, request and agree to entry of an adverse judgment. The filing by a party of a written disclaimer of the invention defined by a count, concession of priority or unpatentability of the subject matter of a count, abandonment of the invention defined by a count, or abandonment of the contest as to a count will be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the applicant or patentee as to all claims which correspond to the count. Abandonment of an application, other than an application for reissue having a claim of the patent sought to be reissued involved in the interference, will be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the applicant as to all claims corresponding to all counts. Upon the filing by a party of a request for entry of an adverse judgment, the Board may enter judgment against the party.

(b) If a patentee involved in an interference files an application for reissue during the interference and the reissue application does not include a claim that corresponds to a count, judgment may be entered against the patentee. A patentee who files an application for reissue which includes a claim that corresponds to a count shall, in addition to complying with the provisions of §1.660(b), timely file a preliminary motion under §1.633(h) or show good cause why the motion could not have been timely filed or would not be appropriate.

(c) The filing of a statutory disclaimer under 35 U.S.C. 253 by a patentee will delete any statutorily disclaimed claims from being involved in the interference. A statutory disclaimer will not be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the patentee unless it results in the deletion of all patent claims corresponding to a count.


§ 1.663 Status of claim of defeated applicant after interference.

Whenever an adverse judgment is entered as to a count against an applicant from which no appeal (35 U.S.C. 141) or other review (35 U.S.C. 146) has been or can be taken or had, the claims of the application corresponding to the count stand finally disposed of without further action by the examiner. Such claims are not open to further ex parte prosecution.

§ 1.664 Action after interference.

(a) After termination of an interference, the examiner will promptly take such action in any application previously involved in the interference as may be necessary. Unless entered by order of an administrative patent judge, amendments presented during the interference shall not be entered, but may be subsequently presented by the applicant subject to the provisions of this subpart provided prosecution of the application is not otherwise closed.

(b) After judgment, the application of any party may be held subject to further examination, including an interference with another application.

[60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.665 Second interference.

A second interference between the same parties will not be declared upon an application not involved in an earlier interference for an invention defined by a count of the earlier interference. See §1.658(c).
§ 1.666 Filing of interference settlement agreements.

(a) Any agreement or understanding between parties to an interference, including any collateral agreements referred to therein, made in connection with or in contemplation of the termination of the interference, must be in writing and a true copy thereof must be filed before the termination of the interference (§ 1.661) as between the parties to the agreement or understanding.

(b) If any party filing the agreement or understanding under paragraph (a) of this section so requests, the copy will be kept separate from the file of the interference, and made available only to Government agencies on written request, or to any person upon petition accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) and on a showing of good cause.

(c) Failure to file the copy of the agreement or understanding under paragraph (a) of this section will render permanently unenforceable such agreement or understanding and any patent of the parties involved in the interference or any patent subsequently issued on any application of the parties so involved. The Commissioner may, however, upon petition accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) and on a showing of good cause, permit the filing of the agreement or understanding during the six month period subsequent to the termination of the interference as between the parties to the agreement or understanding.


§ 1.671 Evidence must comply with rules.

(a) Evidence consists of testimony and referenced exhibits, official records and publications filed under § 1.682, testimony and referenced exhibits from another interference, proceeding, or action filed under § 1.683, discovery relied upon under § 1.688, and the specification (including claims) and drawings of any application or patent:

(1) Involved in the interference.

(2) To which a party has been accorded benefit in the notice declaring the interference or by a preliminary motion granted under § 1.633.

(3) For which a party has sought, but has been denied, benefit by a preliminary motion under § 1.633.

(4) For which benefit was rescinded by a preliminary motion granted under § 1.633.

(b) Except as otherwise provided in this subpart, the Federal Rules of Evidence shall apply to interference proceedings. Those portions of the Federal Rules of Evidence relating to criminal actions, juries, and other matters not relevant to interferences shall not apply.

(c) Unless the context is otherwise clear, the following terms of the Federal Rules of Evidence shall be construed as follows:

(1) Courts of the United States, U.S. Magistrate, court, trial court, or trier of fact means administrative patent judge or Board as may be appropriate.

(2) Judge means administrative patent judge.

(3) Judicial notice means official notice.

(4) Civil action, civil proceeding, action, or trial, mean interference.

(5) Appellate court means United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or a United States district court when judicial review is under 35 U.S.C. 146.

(6) Before the hearing in Rule 703 of the Federal Rules of Evidence means before giving testimony by affidavit or oral deposition.

(7) The trial or hearing in Rules 803(24) and 804(5) of the Federal Rules of Evidence means the taking of testimony by affidavit or oral deposition.

(d) Certification is not necessary as a condition to admissibility when the record is a record of the Patent and Trademark Office to which all parties have access.

(e) A party may not rely on an affidavit (including any exhibits), patent or printed publication previously submitted by the party under § 1.639(b) unless a copy of the affidavit, patent or printed publication has been served and a written notice is filed prior to the close of the party’s relevant testimony period stating that the party intends to rely on the affidavit, patent or
§ 1.672 Manner of taking testimony.

(a) Unless testimony must be compelled under 35 U.S.C. 24, compelled from a party, or compelled in a foreign country, testimony of a witness shall be taken by affidavit in accordance with this subpart. Testimony which must be compelled under 35 U.S.C. 24, compelled from a party, or compelled in a foreign country, including a description of the procedures that will be used to compel production of the document or thing in the foreign country and an estimate of the time it is expected to take to obtain production of the document or thing; and

(b) The significance of documentary and other exhibits identified by a witness in an affidavit or during oral deposition shall be discussed with particularity by a witness.

(c) A party must file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking permission from an administrative patent judge prior to compelling testimony or production of documents or things under 35 U.S.C. 24 or from an opposing party. The motion shall describe the general nature and the relevance of the testimony, document, or thing. If permission is granted, the party shall notice a deposition under § 1.673 and may proceed to take testimony.

(d) A party must file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking permission from an administrative patent judge prior to compelling testimony or production of documents or things in a foreign country.

(1) In the case of testimony, the motion shall:

(i) Describe the general nature and relevance of the testimony;

(ii) Identify the witness by name or title;

(iii) Identify the foreign country and explain why the party believes the witness can be compelled to testify in the foreign country, including a description of the procedures that will be used to compel the testimony in the foreign country and an estimate of the time it is expected to take to obtain the testimony; and

(iv) Demonstrate that the party has made reasonable efforts to secure the agreement of the witness to testify in the United States but has been unsuccessful in obtaining the agreement, even though the party has offered to pay the expenses of producing the document or thing in the United States.

(2) In the case of production of a document or thing, the motion shall:

(i) Describe the general nature and relevance of the document or thing;

(ii) Identify the foreign country and explain why the party believes production of the document or thing can be compelled in the foreign country, including a description of the procedures that will be used to compel production of the document or thing in the foreign country and an estimate of the time it is expected to take to obtain production of the document or thing; and

(iii) Demonstrate that the party has made reasonable efforts to obtain the agreement of the individual or entity having possession, custody, or control of the document to produce the document or thing in the United States but has been unsuccessful in obtaining that agreement, even though the party has offered to pay the expenses of producing the document or thing in the United States.

(i) Evidence which is not taken or sought and filed in accordance with this subpart shall not be admissible.

(j) The weight to be given deposition testimony taken in a foreign country will be determined in view of all the circumstances, including the laws of the foreign country governing the testimony. Little, if any, weight may be given to deposition testimony taken in a foreign country unless the party taking the testimony proves by clear and convincing evidence, as a matter of fact, that knowingly giving false testimony in that country in connection with an interference proceeding in the United States Patent and Trademark Office is punishable under the laws of that country and that the punishment in that country for such false testimony is comparable to or greater than the punishment for perjury committed in the United States. The administrative patent judge and the Board, in determining foreign law, may consider any relevant material or source, including testimony, whether or not submitted by a party or admissible under the Federal Rules of Evidence.

in a foreign country shall be taken by oral deposition.

(b) A party presenting testimony of a witness by affidavit shall, within the time set by the administrative patent judge for serving affidavits, file a copy of the affidavit or, if appropriate, notice under §1.671(e). If the affidavit relates to a party's case-in-chief, it shall be filed or noticed no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits for its case-in-chief. If the affidavit relates to a party's case-in-rebuttal, it shall be filed or noticed no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits for its case-in-rebuttal. A party shall not be entitled to rely on any document referred to in the affidavit unless a copy of the document is filed with the affidavit. A party shall not be entitled to rely on any thing mentioned in the affidavit unless the opponent is given reasonable access to the thing. A thing is something other than a document.

The pages of affidavits filed under this paragraph and of any other testimony filed therewith under §§1.663(a) and 1.688(a) shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers which shall also serve as the record page numbers for the affidavits and other testimony in the party's record to be filed under §1.653. Exhibits identified in the affidavits or in any other testimony filed under §1.663(a) and 1.688(a) and any official records and printed publications filed under §1.662(a) shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential exhibit numbers, which shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when the exhibits are filed with the party's record. The affidavits, testimony filed under §§1.663(a) and 1.688(a) and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where the testimony of each witness begins, and by an index of the exhibits briefly describing the nature of each exhibit and giving the number of the page where each exhibit is first identified and offered into evidence.

(c) If an opponent objects to the admissibility of any evidence contained in or submitted with an affidavit filed under paragraph (b) of this section, the opponent must, no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for filing objections under this paragraph, file objections stating with particularity the nature of each objection. An opponent that fails to object to the admissibility of the evidence contained in or submitted with an affidavit on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under §1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files objections, the party may, within 20 days of the due date for filing objections, file one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications to overcome the objections. No objection to the admissibility of the supplemental evidence shall be made, except as provided by §1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits filed under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be sequentially numbered beginning with the number following the last page number of the party's testimony submitted under paragraph (b) of this section. The page numbers assigned to the supplemental affidavits shall also serve as the record page numbers for the supplemental affidavits in the party's record filed under §1.653. Additional exhibits identified in supplemental affidavits and any supplemental official records and printed publications shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers beginning with the number following the last number of the exhibits submitted under paragraph (b) of this section. The exhibit numbers shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when the exhibits are filed with the party's record. The supplemental affidavits shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(d) After the time expires for filing objections and supplemental affidavits, or earlier when appropriate, the administrative patent judge shall set a time within which any opponent may file a request for cross-examine an affiant on oral deposition. If any opponents requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall notice a deposition at a reasonable location within the United States under §1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take
place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by §1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of the transcripts served under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be sequentially numbered beginning with the number following the last page number of the party's supplemental affidavits submitted under paragraph (c) of this section. The numbers assigned to the transcript pages shall also serve as the record page numbers for the transcripts in the party's record filed under §1.653. Additional exhibits identified in the transcripts, shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers beginning with the number following the last number of the exhibits submitted under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. The exhibit numbers assigned to the additional exhibits shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when those exhibits are filed with the party's record. The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses giving the number of the page where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(g) If the parties agree in writing, the affidavit testimony of any witness may be submitted without opportunity for cross-examination.

(h) If the parties agree in writing, testimony may be submitted in the form of an agreed statement setting forth how a particular witness would testify, if called, or the facts in the case of one or more of the parties. The agreed statement shall be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. See §1.653(a).

(i) In an unusual circumstance and upon a showing that testimony cannot be taken in accordance with the provisions of this subpart, an administrative patent judge upon motion (§1.635) may authorize testimony to be taken in another manner.

§1.673 Notice of examination of witness.

(a) A party authorized to take testimony of a witness by deposition shall, after complying with paragraphs (b) and (g) of this section, file and serve a single notice of deposition stating the time and place of each deposition to be taken. Depositions to be taken in the United States may be noticed for a reasonable time and place in the United States. A deposition may not be noticed for any other place without approval of an administrative patent judge. The notice shall specify the name and address of each witness and the general nature of the testimony to be given by the witness. If the name of a witness is not known, a general description sufficient to identify the witness or a particular class or group to which the witness belongs may be given instead.

(b) Unless the parties agree or an administrative patent judge or the Board determine otherwise, a party shall serve, but not file, at least three working days prior to the conference required by paragraph (g) of this section, if service is made by hand or Express Mail, or at least 14 days prior to the conference if service is made by any other means, the following:

(1) A list and copy of each document in the party's possession, custody, or control and upon which the party intends to rely at any deposition and
§ 1.675 Examination of witness, reading and signing transcript of deposition.

(a) Each witness before giving an oral deposition shall be duly sworn according to law by the officer before whom the deposition is to be taken.

(b) The testimony shall be taken in answer to interrogatories with any questions and answers recorded in their regular order by the officer or by some other person, who shall be subject to the provisions of §1.674(b), in the presence of the officer unless the presence of the officer is waived on the record by agreement of all parties.

(c) All objections made at the time of the deposition to the qualifications of the officer taking the deposition, the manner of taking it, the evidence presented, the conduct of any party, or any other objection to the proceeding shall be noted on the record by the officer. Evidence objected to shall be taken subject to any objection.

(d) Unless the parties agree in writing or waive reading and signature by the witness on the record at the deposition, when the testimony has been transcribed a transcript of the deposition shall, unless the witness refuses to read and/or sign the transcript of the deposition, be read by the witness and then signed by the witness in the form of:

(2) A list of and a proffer of reasonable access to things in the party’s possession, custody, or control and upon which the party intends to rely at any deposition.

(c) A party shall not be permitted to rely on any witness not listed in the notice, or any document not served or any thing not listed as required by paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) Unless all opponents agree in writing or on the record to permit the party to rely on the witness, document or thing, or

(2) Except upon a motion (§1.635) promptly filed which is accompanied by any proposed notice, additional documents, or lists and which shows good cause why the notice, documents, or lists were not served in accordance with this section.

(d) Each opponent shall have a full opportunity to attend a deposition and cross-examine.

(e) A party who has presented testimony by affidavit and is required to notice depositions for the purpose of cross-examination under §1.672(b), shall, after complying with paragraph (g) of this section, file and serve a single notice of deposition stating the time and place of each cross-examination deposition to be taken.

(f) The parties shall not take depositions in more than one place at the same time or so nearly at the same time that reasonable opportunity to travel from one place of deposition to another cannot be had.

(g) Before serving a notice of deposition and after complying with paragraph (b) of this section, a party shall have an oral conference with all opponents to attempt to agree on a mutually acceptable time and place for conducting the deposition. A certificate shall appear in the notice stating that the oral conference took place or explaining why the conference could not be had. If the parties cannot agree to a mutually acceptable place and time for conducting the deposition at the conference, the parties shall contact an administrative patent judge who shall then designate the time and place for conducting the deposition.

(h) A copy of the notice of deposition shall be attached to the certified transcript of the deposition filed under §1.676(a).

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14532, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.674 Persons before whom depositions may be taken.

(a) A deposition shall be taken before an officer authorized to administer oaths by the laws of the United States or of the place where the examination is held.

(b) Unless the parties agree in writing, the following persons shall not be competent to serve as an officer:

(1) A relative or employee of a party,

(2) A relative or employee of an attorney or agent of a party, or

(3) A person interested, directly or indirectly, in the interference either as counsel, attorney, agent, or otherwise.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]
§ 1.676 Certification and filing by officer, marking exhibits.

(a) The officer shall prepare a certified transcript of the deposition by attaching to a transcript of the deposition a copy of the notice of deposition, any exhibits to be annexed to the certified transcript, and a certificate signed and sealed by the officer and showing:

(1) The witness was duly sworn by the officer before commencement of testimony by the witness.
(2) The transcript is a true record of the testimony given by the witness.
(3) The name of the person by whom the testimony was recorded and, if not recorded by the officer, whether the testimony was recorded in the presence of the officer.
(4) The presence or absence of any opponent.
(5) The place where the deposition was taken and the day and hour when the deposition began and ended.
(6) The officer is not disqualified under § 1.674.

(b) If the parties waived any of the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, the certificate shall so state.

(c) The officer shall note on the certificate the circumstances under which a witness refuses to sign a transcript.

(d) Unless the parties agree otherwise in writing or on the record at the deposition, the officer shall securely seal the certified transcript in an envelope endorsed with the style of the interference (e.g., Smith v. Jones), the interference number, the name of the witness, and the date of sealing and shall promptly forward the envelope to BOX INTERFERENCE, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231. Documents and things produced for inspection during the examination of a witness, shall, upon request of a party, be marked for identification and annexed to the certified transcript, and may be inspected and copied by any party, except that if the person producing the documents and things desires to retain them, the person may:

(1) Offer copies to be marked for identification and annexed to the certified transcript and to serve thereafter as originals if the person affords to all parties fair opportunity to verify the copies by comparison with the originals or
(2) Offer the originals to be marked for identification, after giving to each party an opportunity to inspect and copy them, in which event the documents and things may be used in the same manner as if annexed to the certified transcript.

The exhibits shall then be filed as specified in § 1.653(i). If the weight or bulk of a document or thing shall reasonably prevent the document or thing from being annexed to the certified transcript, it shall, unless waived on the record at the deposition by all parties, be authenticated by the officer and forwarded to the Commissioner in a separate package marked and addressed as provided in this paragraph.

§ 1.677 Form of an affidavit or a transcript of deposition.

(a) An affidavit or a transcript of a deposition must be on opaque, unglazed, durable paper approximately 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8½ by 11 inches) in size (letter size). The printed matter shall be double-spaced on one side of the paper in not smaller than 11 point type with a margin of 3.8 cm. (1½ inches) on the left-hand side of the page. The pages of each transcript must be consecutively numbered and the name of the witness shall appear at the top of each page (§ 1.653(e)). In transcripts of depositions, the questions propounded to each witness must be consecutively numbered unless paper with numbered lines is used and each question must be followed by its answer.

(b) Exhibits must be numbered consecutively to the extent possible and each must be marked as required by § 1.653(i).
§ 1.678 Time for filing transcript of deposition.

Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, a certified transcript of a deposition must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within one month after the date of deposition. If a party refuses to file a certified transcript, the administrative patent judge or the Board may take appropriate action under § 1.616. If a party refuses to file a certified transcript, any opponent may move for leave to file the certified transcript and include a copy of the transcript as part of the opponent’s record.

[60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.679 Inspection of transcript.

A certified transcript of a deposition filed in the Patent and Trademark Office may be inspected by any party. The certified transcript may not be removed from the Patent and Trademark Office unless authorized by an administrative patent judge upon such terms as may be appropriate.

[60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.682 Official records and printed publications.

(a) A party may introduce into evidence, if otherwise admissible, an official record or printed publication not identified in an affidavit or on the record during an oral deposition of a witness, by filing a copy of the official record or printed publication or, if appropriate, a notice under § 1.671(e). If the official record or printed publication relates to the party’s case-in-chief, it shall be filed or noticed together with any affidavits filed by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief. If the official record or printed publication relates to rebuttal, it shall be filed or noticed together with any affidavits filed by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal. Official records and printed publications filed under this paragraph shall be assigned sequential exhibit numbers by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(b). The official record and printed publications shall be accompanied by a paper which shall:

(1) Identify the official record or printed publication;

(2) Identify the portion thereof to be introduced in evidence; and

(3) Indicate generally the relevance of the portion sought to be introduced in evidence.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any written objection by an opponent to the paper or to the admissibility of the official record or printed publication shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file objections under § 1.672(c) to affidavits submitted by the party under § 1.672(b). An opponent who fails to object to the admissibility of the official record or printed publication on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files an objection, the party may respond by filing one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications, which must be filed together with any supplemental evidence filed by the party under § 1.672(c) or, if the party does not file any supplemental evidence under § 1.672(c), no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file supplemental affidavits under § 1.672(c). No objection to the admissibility of the supplemental evidence shall be made, except as provided by § 1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits and the exhibits filed under this section shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(c). The supplemental affidavits and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type required by § 1.672(b).

(d) Any request by an opponent to cross-examine on oral deposition the party to file affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal.
§ 1.683 Testimony in another interference, proceeding, or action.

(a) A party may introduce into evidence, if otherwise admissible, testimony by affidavit or oral deposition and referenced exhibits from another interference, proceeding, or action involving the same parties by filing a copy of the affidavit or a copy of the transcript of the oral deposition and the referenced exhibits. If the testimony and referenced exhibits relate to the party's case-in-chief, they shall be filed together with any affidavits served by the party under §1.672(b) for its case-in-chief or, if the party does not file any affidavits under §1.672(b) for its case-in-chief, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under §1.672(b) for its case-in-chief. If the testimony and referenced exhibits relate to rebuttal, they shall be filed together with any affidavits served by the party under §1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal or, if the party does not file any affidavits under §1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under §1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal. Pages of affidavits and deposition transcripts served under this paragraph and any new exhibits served therewith shall be assigned sequential numbers by the party in the manner set forth in §1.672(b). The testimony shall be accompanied by a paper which specifies with particularity the exact testimony to be used and demonstrates its relevance.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any written objection by an opponent to the paper or the admissibility of the testimony and referenced exhibits filed under this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file any objections under §1.672(c) to affidavits submitted by the party under §1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal. An opponent who fails to challenge the admissibility of the testimony or referenced exhibits on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under §1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files an objection, the party may respond with one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications, which must be filed together with any supplemental evidence filed by the party under §1.672(c) or, if the party does not file any supplemental evidence under §1.672(c), no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to
§ 1.685 Errors and irregularities in depositions.

(a) An error in a notice for taking a deposition is waived unless a motion (§ 1.635) to quash the notice is filed as soon as the error is, or could have been, discovered.

(b) An objection to a qualification of an officer taking a deposition is waived unless:

(1) The objection is made on the record of the deposition before a witness begins to testify.

(2) If discovered after the deposition, a motion (§ 1.635) to suppress the deposition is filed as soon as the objection is, or could have been, discovered.

(c) An error or irregularity in the manner in which testimony is transcribed, a certified transcript is signed by a witness, or a certified transcript is prepared, signed, certified, sealed, endorsed, forwarded, filed, or otherwise handled by the officer is waived unless a motion (§ 1.635) to suppress the deposition is filed as soon as the error or irregularity is, or could have been, discovered.

(d) An objection to the deposition on any grounds, such as the competency of a witness, admissibility of evidence, manner of taking the deposition, the form of questions and answers, any oath or affirmation, or conduct of any party at the deposition, is waived unless an objection is made on the record at the deposition stating the specific ground of objection. Any objection which a party wishes considered by the Board at final hearing shall be included in a motion to suppress under § 1.656(h).

(e) Nothing in this section precludes taking notice of plain errors affecting substantial rights although they were not brought to the attention of an administrative patent judge or the Board.

§ 1.687 Additional discovery.

(a) A party is not entitled to discovery except as authorized in this subpart.

(b) Where appropriate, a party may obtain production of documents and things during cross-examination of an opponent's witness or during the testimony period of the party's case-in-rebuttal.

(c) Upon a motion (§ 1.635) brought by a party within the time set by an administrative patent judge under § 1.651 or thereafter as authorized by § 1.645 and upon a showing that the interest of justice so requires, an administrative patent judge may order additional discovery, as to matters under the control of a party within the scope of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, specifying the terms and conditions of such additional discovery. See § 1.647 concerning translations of documents in a foreign language.

(d) The parties may agree to discovery among themselves at any time. In the absence of an agreement, a motion for additional discovery shall not be filed except as authorized by this subpart.

[40 FR 49455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14535, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.688 Use of discovery.

(a) If otherwise admissible, a party may introduce into evidence an answer to a written request for an admission or an answer to a written interrogatory obtained by discovery under § 1.687 by filing a copy of the request for admission or the written interrogatory and the answer. If the answer relates to a party’s case-in-chief, the answer shall be served together with any affidavits served by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief or, if the party does not serve any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to serve affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any written objection to the admissibility of an answer shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file any objections under § 1.672(c) to affidavits submitted by the party under § 1.672(b). An opponent who fails to challenge the admissibility of an answer on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground.

(c) Any request by an opponent to cross-examine on oral deposition the affiant of a supplemental affidavit submitted under paragraph (b) of this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file a request to cross-examine an affiant with respect to an affidavit filed by the party under § 1.672(c) or, if the party does not file any supplemental evidence under § 1.672(c), no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file supplemental affidavits under § 1.672(c).

(d) The pages of supplemental affidavits and exhibits filed under this section shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(c). The supplemental affidavits and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type required by § 1.672(b).

(c) Any request by an opponent to cross-examine on oral deposition the affiant of a supplemental affidavit submitted under paragraph (b) of this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file a request to cross-examine an affiant with respect to an affidavit filed by the party under § 1.672(b) or (c). If any opponent requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall file a notice of deposition for a reasonable location within the United States under § 1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party...
shall not be entitled to rely on any
document or thing not mentioned in
one or more of the affidavits filed
under this paragraph, except to the ex-
tent necessary to conduct proper redi-
rect. The party who gives notice of a
deposition shall be responsible for pro-
viding a translator if the witness does
not testify in English, for obtaining a
court reporter, and for filing a certified
transcript of the deposition as required
by §1.676. Within 45 days of the close of
the period for taking cross-examina-
tion, the party shall serve (but not file)
a copy of each deposition transcript on
each opponent together with copies of
any additional documentary exhibits
identified by the witness during the
deposition. The pages of deposition
transcripts and exhibits served under
this paragraph shall be sequentially
numbered by the party in the manner
set forth in §1.672(d). The deposition
transcripts shall be accompanied by an
index of the names of the witnesses,
giving the number of the page where
cross-examination, redirect and recross
of each witness begins, and an index of
exhibits of the type specified in
§1.672(b).
(d) A party may not rely upon any
other matter obtained by discovery un-
less it is introduced into evidence under
this subpart.
[60 FR 14535, Mar. 17, 1995]
§ 1.690 Arbitration of interferences.
(a) Parties to a patent interference
may determine the interference or any
aspect thereof by arbitration. Such ar-
bitration shall be governed by the pro-
visions of Title 9, United States Code.
The parties must notify the Board in
writing of their intention to arbitrate.
An agreement to arbitrate must be in
writing, specify the issues to be arbi-
trated, the name of the arbitrator or a
date not more than thirty (30) days
after the execution of the agreement
for the selection of the arbitrator, and
provide that the arbitrator's award
shall be binding on the parties and that
judgment thereon can be entered by
the Board. A copy of the agreement
must be filed within twenty (20) days
after its execution. The parties shall be
solely responsible for the selection of
the arbitrator and the rules for con-
ducting proceedings before the arbi-
trator. Issues not disposed of by the ar-
bitration will be resolved in accordance
with the procedures established in this
subpart, as determined by the adminis-
trative patent judge.
(b) An arbitration proceeding under
this section shall be conducted within
such time as may be authorized on a
case-by-case basis by an administrative
patent judge.
(c) An arbitration award will be given
no consideration unless it is binding on
the parties, is in writing and states in
a clear and definite manner the issue
or issues arbitrated and the disposi-
tion of each issue. The award may include
a statement of the grounds and rea-
soning in support thereof. Unless oth-
erwise ordered by an administrative
patent judge, the parties shall give no-
tice to the Board of an arbitration
award by filing within twenty (20) days
from the date of the award a copy of
the award signed by the arbitrator or
arbitrators. When an award is timely
filed, the award shall, as to the parties
to the arbitration, be dispositive of the
issue or issues to which it relates.
(d) An arbitration award shall not
preclude the Office from determining
patentability of any invention involved
in the interference.
[52 FR 13838, Apr. 27, 1987, as amended at 60
FR 14535, Mar. 17, 1995]

Subpart F—Extension of Patent
Term

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 6 and 156.
SOURCE: 52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, unless
otherwise noted.

§ 1.701 Extension of patent term due to
prosecution delay.
(a) A patent, other than for designs,
issued on an application filed on or
after June 8, 1995, is entitled to exten-
sion of the patent term if the issuance
of the patent was delayed due to:
(1) Interference proceedings under 35
U.S.C. 135(a); and/or
(2) The application being placed
under a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C.
181; and/or
(3) Appellate review by the Board of
Patent Appeals and Interferences or by
a Federal court under 35 U.S.C. 141
or
145, if the patent was issued pursuant
153
to a decision reversing an adverse determination of patentability and if the patent is not subject to a terminal disclaimer due to the issuance of another patent claiming subject matter that is not patentably distinct from that under appellate review.

(b) The term of a patent entitled to extension under paragraph (a) of this section shall be extended for the sum of the periods of delay calculated under paragraphs (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(3) and (d) of this section, to the extent that these periods are not overlapping, up to a maximum of five years. The extension will run from the expiration date of the patent.

(c)(1) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(1) of this section for an application is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:

(i) With respect to each interference in which the application was involved, the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date the interference was declared or redeclared to involve the application in the interference and ending on the date that the interference was terminated with respect to the application; and

(ii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date prosecution in the application was suspended by the Patent and Trademark Office due to interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a) not involving the application and ending on the date of the termination of the suspension.

(2) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(2) of this section for an application is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:

(i) The number of days, if any, the application was maintained in a sealed condition under 35 U.S.C. 181;

(ii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of mailing of an examiner's answer under §1.193 in the application under secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order and any renewal thereof was removed;

(iii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date applicant was notified that an interference would be declared but for the secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order and any renewal thereof was removed; and

(iv) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of notification under §5.3(c) and ending on the date of mailing of the notice of allowance under §1.311.

(3) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(3) of this section is the sum of the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date on which an appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences was filed under 35 U.S.C. 134 and ending on the date of a final decision in favor of the applicant by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 141 or a civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145.

(d) The period of delay set forth in paragraph (c)(3) shall be reduced by:

(1) Any time during the period of appellate review that occurred before three years from the filing date of the first national application for patent presented for examination; and

(2) Any time during the period of appellate review, as determined by the Commissioner, during which the applicant for patent did not act with due diligence. In determining the due diligence of an applicant, the Commissioner may examine the facts and circumstances of the applicant's actions during the period of appellate review to determine whether the applicant exhibited that degree of timeliness as may reasonably be expected from, and which is ordinarily exercised by, a person during a period of appellate review.

[60 FR 20228, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.710 Patents subject to extension of the patent term.

(a) A patent is eligible for extension of the patent term if the patent claims a product as defined in paragraph (b) of this section, either alone or in combination with other ingredients that read on a composition that received permission for commercial marketing or use, or a method of using such a product, or a method of manufacturing such a product, and meets all other conditions and requirements of this subpart.

(b) The term product referred to in paragraph (a) of this section means—
(1) The active ingredient of a new human drug, antibiotic drug, or human biological product (as those terms are used in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and the Public Health Service Act) including any salt or ester of the active ingredient, as a single entity or in combination with another active ingredient; or  

(2) The active ingredient of a new animal drug or veterinary biological product (as those terms are used in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act) that is not primarily manufactured using recombinant DNA, recombinant RNA, hybridoma technology, or other processes including site specific genetic manipulation techniques, including any salt or ester of the active ingredient, as a single entity or in combination with another active ingredient; or  

(3) Any medical device, food additive, or color additive subject to regulation under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.  

[54 FR 30379, July 20, 1989]

§ 1.720 Conditions for extension of patent term.

The term of a patent may be extended if:  

(a) The patent claims a product or a method of using or manufacturing a product as defined in § 1.710;  

(b) The term of the patent has never been previously extended except for any interim extension issued pursuant to § 1.760;  

(c) An application for extension is submitted in compliance with § 1.740;  

(d) The product has been subject to a regulatory review period as defined in 35 U.S.C. 156(g) before its commercial marketing or use;  

(e) The product has received permission for commercial marketing or use and—  

(1) The permission for the commercial marketing or use of the product is the first received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provision of law under which the applicable regulatory review occurred; or in the case of a patent claiming a method of manufacturing the product which primarily uses recombinant DNA technology in the manufacture of the product, the application for extension is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date of the first permitted commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent; or in the case of a patent that claims a new animal drug or a veterinary biological product that is not covered by the claims in any other patent that has been extended, and has received permission for the commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent, or  

(3) The application is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date the product first received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provision of law under which the applicable regulatory review period occurred; or in the case of a patent claiming a method of manufacturing the product which primarily uses recombinant DNA technology in the manufacture of the product, the application for extension is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date of the first permitted commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent; or in the case of a patent that claims a new animal drug or a veterinary biological product that is not covered by the claims in any other patent that has been extended, and has received permission for the commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent, or  

(f) The application is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date the product first received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provisions of law under which the applicable regulatory review period occurred; or in the case of a patent claiming a method of manufacturing the product which primarily uses recombinant DNA technology in the manufacture of the product, the application for extension is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date of the first permitted commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent; or in the case of a patent that claims a new animal drug or a veterinary biological product that is not covered by the claims in any other patent that has been extended, and said drug or product has received permission for the commercial marketing or use in non-food-producing animals is the first permitted commercial marketing or use of the drug or product for administration to a food-producing animal;  

(g) The term of the patent has not expired before the submission of an application in compliance with § 1.741; and
§ 1.730 Applicant for extension of patent term.

Any application for extension of a patent term must be submitted by the owner of record of the patent or its agent and must comply with the requirements of §1.740.

§ 1.740 Application for extension of patent term.

(a) An application for extension of patent term must be made in writing to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. A formal application for the extension of patent term shall include:

(1) A complete identification of the approved product as by appropriate chemical and generic name, physical structure or characteristics;

(2) A complete identification of the Federal statute including the applicable provision of law under which the regulatory review occurred;

(3) An identification of the date on which the product received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provision of law under which the applicable regulatory review period occurred;

(4) In the case of a drug product, an identification of each active ingredient in the product and as to each active ingredient, a statement that it has not been previously approved for commercial marketing or use under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, the Public Health Service Act, or the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act, or a statement of when the active ingredient was approved for commercial marketing or use (either alone or in combination with other active ingredients), the use for which it was approved, and the provision of law under which it was approved.

(5) A statement that the application is being submitted within the sixty day period permitted for submission pursuant to §1.720(f) and an identification of the date of the last day on which the application could be submitted;

(6) A complete identification of the patent for which an extension is being sought by the name of the inventor, the patent number, the date of issue, and the date of expiration;

(7) A copy of the patent for which an extension is being sought, including the entire specification (including claims) and drawings;

(8) A copy of any disclaimer, certificate of correction, receipt of maintenance fee payment, or reexamination certificate issued in the patent;

(9) A statement that the patent claims the approved product or a method of using or manufacturing the approved product, and a showing which lists each applicable patent claim and demonstrates the manner in which each applicable patent claim reads on the approved product or method of using or manufacturing the approved product;

(10) A statement, beginning on a new page, of the relevant dates and information pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 156(g) in order to enable the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture, as appropriate, to determine the applicable regulatory review period as follows:

(i) For a patent claiming a human drug, antibiotic, or human biological product, the effective date of the investigational new drug (IND) application and the IND number; the date on which a new drug application (NDA) or a Product License Application (PLA) was initially submitted and the NDA or PLA number and the date on which the NDA was approved or the Product License issued;

(ii) For a patent claiming a new animal drug, the date a major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated and any available substantiation of the date or the date of an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for such animal drug; the date on which a new animal drug application (NDA) was initially submitted and the NDA number; and the date on which the NADA was approved;

(iii) For a patent claiming a veterinary biological product, the date the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-
Serum-Toxin Act became effective; the
date an application for a license was
submitted under the Virus-Serum-
Toxin Act; and the date the license
issued;
(iv) For a patent claiming a food or
color additive, the date a major health
or environmental effects test on the
additive was initiated and any avail-
able substantiation of that date; the
date on which a petition for product
approval under the Federal Food, Drug,
and Cosmetic Act was initially sub-
mitsed and the petition number; and
the date on which the FDA published
the FEDERAL REGISTER notice listing
the additive for use;
(v) For a patent claiming a medical
device, the effective date of the inves-
tigational device exemption (IDE) and
the IDE number, if applicable, or the
date on which the applicant began the
first clinical investigation involving
the device if no IDE was submitted and
any available substantiation of that
date; the date on which the application
for product approval or notice of com-
pletion of a product development pro-
tocol under section 515 of the Federal
Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act was ini-
tially submitted and the number of the
application or protocol; and the date
on which the application was approved
or the protocol declared to be com-
pleted.
(11) A brief description beginning on
a new page of the significant activities
undertaken by the marketing applicant
during the applicable regulatory re-
view period with respect to the ap-
proved product and the significant
dates applicable to such activities;
(12) A statement beginning on a new
page that in the opinion of the appli-
cant the patent is eligible for the ex-
tension and a statement as to the
length of extension claimed, including
how the length of extension was deter-
mined;
(13) A statement that applicant ac-
knowledges a duty to disclose to the
Commissioner of Patents and Trade-
marks and the Secretary of Health and
Human Services or the Secretary of
Agriculture any information which is
material to the determination of enti-
tlement to the extension sought (see
§1.765);
(14) The prescribed fee for receiving
and acting upon the application for ex-
tension (see §1.20(j));
(15) The name, address, and telephone
number of the person to whom inquir-
ies and correspondence relating to the
application for patent term extension
are to be directed;
(16) A duplicate of the application pa-
pers, certified as such; and
(17) An oath or declaration as set
forth in paragraph (b) of this section.
(b) Any oath or declaration sub-
mitsed in compliance with paragraph
(a) of this section must be signed by
the owner of record of the patent or its
agent, specifically identify the papers
and the patent for which an extension
is sought and aver that the person sign-
ing the oath or declaration:
(1) Is the owner, an official of a cor-
porate owner authorized to obligate
the corporation, or a patent attorney
or agent authorized to practice before
the Patent and Trademark Office and
who has general authority from the
owner to act on behalf of the owner in
patent matters.
(2) Has reviewed and understands the
contents of the application being sub-
mitsed pursuant to this section;
(3) Believes the patent is subject to
extension pursuant to §1.710;
(4) Believes an extension of the
length claimed is justified under 35
U.S.C. 156 and the applicable regula-
tions; and
(5) Believes the patent for which the
extension is being sought meets the
conditions for extension of the term of
a patent as set forth in §1.720.
(c) If any application for extension of
patent term submitted pursuant to this
section is held to be informal, appli-
cant may seek to have that holding re-
viewed by filing a petition with the re-
quired fee, as necessary, pursuant to
§1.181, §1.182 or §1.183, as appropriate,
within such time as may be set in the
notice that the application has been
held to be informal, or if no time is set,
within one month of the date on which
the application was held informal. The
time periods set forth herein are sub-
ject to the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136.
§ 1.741 Filing date of application.

(a) The filing date of an application for extension of a patent term is the date on which a complete application is received in the Patent and Trademark Office or filed pursuant to the “Certificate of Mailing or Transmission” procedures of 37 CFR 1.8 or “Express Mail” provisions of 37 CFR 1.10. A complete application shall include:

(1) An identification of the approved product;

(2) An identification of each Federal statute under which regulatory review occurred;

(3) An identification of the patent for which an extension is being sought;

(4) An identification of each claim of the patent which claims the approved product or a method of using or manufacturing the approved product;

(5) Sufficient information to enable the Commissioner to determine under 35 U.S.C. 156 subsections (a) and (b) the eligibility of a patent for extension and the rights that will be derived from the extension and information to enable the Commissioner and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture to determine the length of the regulatory review period; and

(6) A brief description of the activities undertaken by the marketing applicant during the applicable regulatory review period with respect to the approved product and the significant dates applicable to such activities.

(b) If any application submitted pursuant to this section is held to be incomplete, applicant may seek to have this holding reviewed under §1.181.


§ 1.750 Determination of eligibility for extension of patent term.

A determination as to whether a patent is eligible for extension may be made by the Commissioner solely on the basis of the representations contained in the application for extension filed in compliance with §1.740 or §1.790. This determination may be delegated to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office officials and may be made at any time before the certificate of extension is issued. The Commissioner or other appropriate officials may require from applicant further information or make such independent inquiries as desired before a final determination is made on whether a patent is eligible for extension. In an application for extension filed in compliance with §1.740, a notice will be mailed to applicant containing the determination as to the eligibility of the patent for extension and the period of time of the extension, if any. This notice shall constitute the final determination as to the eligibility and any period of extension of the patent. A single request for reconsideration of a final determination may be made if filed by the applicant within such time as may be set in the notice of final determination or, if no time is set, within one month from the date of the final determination. The time periods set forth herein are subject to the provisions of §1.136.

[60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995]

§ 1.760 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(e)(2).

An applicant who has filed a formal application for extension in compliance with §1.740 may request one or more interim extensions for periods of up to one year each pending a final determination on the application pursuant to §1.750. Any such request should be filed at least three months prior to the expiration date of the patent. The Commissioner may issue interim extensions, without a request by the applicant, for periods of up to one year each until a final determination is made. The patent owner or agent will be notified when an interim extension is granted and notice of the extension will be published in the Official Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office. The notice will be recorded in the official file of the patent and will be considered as part of the original patent. In no event will the interim extensions granted under this section be longer than the maximum period of extension to which the applicant would be eligible.

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995]
§ 1.765 Duty of disclosure in patent term extension proceedings.

(a) A duty of candor and good faith toward the Patent and Trademark Office and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture rests on the patent owner or its agent, on each attorney or agent who represents the patent owner and on every other individual who is substantively involved on behalf of the patent owner in a patent term extension proceeding. All such individuals who are aware, or become aware, of material information adverse to a determination of entitlement to the extension sought, which has not been previously made of record in the patent term extension proceeding must bring such information to the attention of the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, as soon as it is practical to do so after the individual becomes aware of the information. Information is material where there is a substantial likelihood that the Office or the Secretary would consider it important in determinations to be made in the patent term extension proceeding.

(b) Disclosures pursuant to this section must be accompanied by a copy of each written document which is being disclosed. The disclosure must be made to the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, unless the disclosure is material to determinations to be made by both the Office and the Secretary, in which case duplicate copies, certified as such, must be filed in the Office and with the Secretary. Disclosures pursuant to this section may be made to the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, through an attorney or agent having responsibility on behalf of the patent owner or its agent for the patent term extension proceeding or through a patent owner acting on his or her own behalf. Disclosure to such an attorney, agent or patent owner has no duty to transmit information which is not material to the determination of entitlement to the extension sought.

(c) No patent will be determined eligible for extension and no extension will be issued if it is determined that fraud on the Office or the Secretary was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or gross negligence in connection with the patent term extension proceeding. If it is established by clear and convincing evidence that any fraud was practiced or attempted on the Office or the Secretary in connection with the patent term extension proceeding or that there was any violation of the duty of disclosure through bad faith or gross negligence in connection with the patent term extension proceeding, a final determination will be made pursuant to § 1.750 that the patent is not eligible for extension.

(d) The duty of disclosure pursuant to this section rests on the individuals identified in paragraph (a) of this section and no submission on behalf of third parties, in the form of protests or otherwise, will be considered by the Office. Any such submissions by third parties to the Office will be returned to the party making the submission, or otherwise disposed of, without consideration by the Office.

§ 1.770 Express withdrawal of application for extension of patent term.

An application for extension of patent term may be expressly withdrawn before a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 by filing in the Office, in duplicate, a written declaration of withdrawal signed by the owner of record of the patent or its agent. An application may not be expressly withdrawn after the date permitted for reply to the final determination on the application. An express withdrawal pursuant to this section is effective when acknowledged in writing by the Office. The filing of an express withdrawal pursuant to this section and its acceptance by the Office does not entitle applicant to a refund of the filing fee (§ 1.20(j)) or any portion thereof.
§ 1.775 Calculation of patent term extension for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 that a patent for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(1)(B), it is the sum of—

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for the approved product and ending on the date the application was initially submitted for such product under those sections or under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted for the approved product under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act, subsection (b) of section 505 or section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and ending on the date such application was approved under such section.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be determined by—

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act, or subsection (b) of section 505 or section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,

(i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984,

(i) If no request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984, by—

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or
§ 1.776 Calculation of patent term extension for a food additive or color additive.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 that a patent for a food additive or color additive is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a food additive or color additive will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a food additive or color additive will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(2)(B), it is the sum of—

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a major health or environmental effects test on the additive was initiated and ending on the date a petition was initially submitted with respect to the approved product under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act requesting the issuance of a regulation for use of the product; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a petition was initially submitted with respect to the approved product under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act requesting the issuance of a regulation for use of the product, and ending on the date such regulation became effective or, if objections were filed to such regulation, ending on the date such objections were resolved and commercial marketing was permitted or, if commercial marketing was permitted and later revoked pending further proceedings as a result of such objections, ending on the date such proceedings were finally resolved and commercial marketing was permitted.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a food additive or color additive will be determined by—

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on or before the date on which the patent issued; and

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) The number of days equal to one-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date a regulation for use of the product became effective or, if objections were filed to such regulation, to the date such objections were resolved and commercial marketing was permitted or, if commercial marketing was permitted and later revoked pending further proceedings as a result of such objections, to the date such proceedings were finally resolved and commercial marketing was permitted;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant
to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,
   (i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
   (ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984,
   (i) If no major health or environmental effects test was initiated and no petition for a regulation or application for registration was submitted before September 24, 1984, by—
      (A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and
      (B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or
   (ii) If a major health or environmental effects test was initiated or a petition for a regulation or application for registration was submitted by September 24, 1984, and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by—
      (A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and
      (B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

§ 1.777 Calculation of patent term extension for a medical device.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 that a patent for a medical device is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date as set by terminal disclaimer (§1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a medical device will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a medical device will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(3)(B), it is the sum of

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun and ending on the date an application was initially submitted with respect to the device under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted with respect to the device under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, and ending on the date such application was approved under such Act or the period beginning on the date a notice of completion of a product development protocol was initially submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Act and ending on the date the protocol was declared completed under section 515(f)(6) of the Act.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a medical device will be determined by—

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section:
       (i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;
       (ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(ii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent.
as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;
(3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act or the date a product development protocol was declared completed under section 515(f)(6) of the Act;
(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
(5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,
(i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
(ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
(6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and
(i) If no clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun or no product development protocol was submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984, by—
(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer and
(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or
(ii) If a clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun or a product development protocol was submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984 and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by—
(A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and
(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

§ 1.778 Calculation of patent term extension for an animal drug product.
(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for an animal drug is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).
(b) The term of the patent for an animal drug will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the drug as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.
(c) The length of the regulatory review period for an animal drug will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(4)(B), it is the sum of—
(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the earlier of the date a major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated or the date an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for the approved animal drug and ending on the date an application was initially submitted for such animal drug under section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; and
(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted for the approved animal drug under subsection (b) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and ending on the date such application was approved under such section.
(d) The term of the patent as extended for an animal drug will be determined by—
(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:
(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section that were on and before the date on which the patent issued;
(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;
§ 1.779 Calculation of patent term extension for a veterinary biological product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 that a patent for a veterinary biological product is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a veterinary biological product will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Agriculture, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a veterinary biological product will be determined by the Secretary of Agriculture. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(5)(B), it is the sum of—

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act became effective and ending on the date an application for a license was submitted under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date an application for a license was initially submitted for approval under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act and ending on the date such license was issued.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a veterinary biological product will be determined by—

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Agriculture to be in the regulatory review period:

(A) Adding 3 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

[54 FR 30381, July 20, 1989]
(c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Agriculture that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Agriculture that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of the issuance of a license under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after November 16, 1988, by—

(i) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(b) If the original patent was issued before November 16, 1988, and

(i) If no request for the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, by—

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(ii) If a request for the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before November 16, 1988, by—

(A) Adding 3 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

§ 1.785 Certificate of extension of patent term.

If a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 that a patent is eligible for extension and that the term of the patent is to be extended, a certificate of extension, under seal, or certificate of interim extension under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5) will be issued to the applicant for the extension of the patent term. Such certificate will be recorded in the official file of the patent and will be considered as part of the original patent. Notification of the issuance of the certificate of extension will be published in the Official Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office. Notification of the issuance of the certificate of interim extension under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5), including the identity of the product currently under regulatory review, will be published in the Official Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office and in the FEDERAL REGISTER. No certificate of extension will be issued if the term of the patent cannot be extended, even though the patent is otherwise determined to be eligible for extension. In such situations the final determination made pursuant to §1.750 will indicate that no certificate will issue.

§ 1.785 Multiple applications for extension of term of the same patent or of different patents for the same regulatory review period for a product.

(a) Only one patent may be extended for a regulatory review period for any product (§1.720(h)). If more than one application for extension of the same patent is filed, the certificate of extension of patent term, if appropriate, will be issued based upon the first filed application for extension.

(b) If more than one application for extension is filed by a single applicant
which seeks the extension of the term of two or more patents based upon the same regulatory review period, and the patents are otherwise eligible for extension pursuant to the requirements of this subpart, in the absence of an election by the applicant, the certificate of extension of patent term, if appropriate, will be issued upon the application for extension of the patent term having the earliest date of issuance of those patents for which extension is sought.

(c) If an application for extension is filed which seeks the extension of the term of a patent based upon the same regulatory review period as that relied upon in one or more applications for extension pursuant to the requirements of this subpart, the certificate of extension of patent term will be issued on the application only if the patent owner or its agent is the holder of the regulatory approval granted with respect to the regulatory review period.

(d) An application for extension shall be considered complete and formal regardless of whether it contains the identification of the holder of the regulatory approval granted with respect to the regulatory review period. When an application contains such information, or is amended to contain such information, it will be considered in determining whether an application is eligible for an extension under this section. A request may be made of any applicant to supply such information within a non-extendable period of not less than one month whenever multiple applications for extension of more than one patent are received and rely upon the same regulatory review period. Failure to provide such information within the period for reply shall be regarded as conclusively establishing that the applicant is not the holder of the regulatory approval.

(e) Determinations made under this section shall be included in the notice of final determination of eligibility for extension of the patent term pursuant to §1.750 and shall be regarded as part of that determination.

§ 1.790 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5).

(a) An owner of record of a patent or its agent who reasonably expects that the applicable regulatory review period described in paragraph (1)(B)(ii), (2)(B)(ii), (3)(B)(ii), (4)(B)(ii), or (5)(B)(ii) of subsection (g) that began for a product that is the subject of such patent may extend beyond the expiration of the patent term in effect may submit one or more applications for interim extensions for periods of up to one year each. The initial application for interim extension must be filed during the period beginning 6 months and ending 15 days before the patent term is due to expire. Each subsequent application for interim extension must be filed during the period beginning 60 days before and ending 30 days before the expiration of the preceding interim extension. In no event will the interim extensions granted under this section be longer than the maximum period of extension to which the applicant would be entitled under 35 U.S.C. 156(c).

(b) A complete application for interim extension under this section shall include all of the information required for a formal application under §1.740 and a complete application under §1.741. Sections (a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(4), and (a)(6)–(a)(17) of §1.740 and §1.741 shall be read in the context of a product currently undergoing regulatory review. Sections (a)(3) and (a)(5) of §1.740 are not applicable to an application for interim extension under this section.

(c) The content of each subsequent interim extension application may be limited to a request for a subsequent interim extension along with a statement that the regulatory review period has not been completed along with any materials or information required under §§1.740 and 1.741 that are not present in the preceding interim extension application.

[60 FR 25619, May 12, 1995]

§ 1.791 Termination of interim extension granted prior to regulatory approval of a product for commercial marketing or use.

Any interim extension granted under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5) terminates at the end of the 60-day period beginning on the
date on which the product involved receives permission for commercial marketing or use. If within that 60-day period the patent owner or its agent files an application for extension under §§1.740 and 1.741 including any additional information required under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(1) not contained in the application for interim extension, the patent shall be further extended in accordance with the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 156.

[60 FR 25619, May 12, 1995]

Subpart G—Biotechnology
Invention Disclosures

DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL

SOURCE: 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989, unless otherwise noted.

§ 1.801 Biological material.

For the purposes of these regulations pertaining to the deposit of biological material for purposes of patents for inventions under 35 U.S.C. 101, the term biological material shall include material that is capable of self-replication either directly or indirectly. Representative examples include bacteria, fungi including yeast, algae, protozoa, eukaryotic cells, cell lines, hybridomas, plasmids, viruses, plant tissue cells, lichens and seeds. Viruses, vectors, cell organelles and other non-living material existing in and reproducible from a living cell may be deposited by deposit of the host cell capable of reproducing the non-living material.

§ 1.802 Need or opportunity to make a deposit.

(a) Where an invention is, or relies on, a biological material, the disclosure may include reference to a deposit of such biological material.

(b) Biological material need not be deposited unless access to such material is necessary for the satisfaction of the statutory requirements for patentability under 35 U.S.C. 112. If a deposit is necessary, it shall be acceptable if made in accordance with these regulations. Biological material need not be deposited, inter alia, if it is known and readily available to the public or can be made or isolated without undue experimentation. Once deposited in a depository complying with these regulations, a biological material will be considered to be readily available even though some requirement of law or regulation of the United States or of the country in which the depository institution is located permits access to the material only under conditions imposed for safety, public health or similar reasons.

(c) The reference to a biological material in a specification disclosure or the actual deposit of such material by an applicant or patent owner does not create any presumption that such material is necessary to satisfy 35 U.S.C. 112 or that deposit in accordance with these regulations is or was required.

§ 1.803 Acceptable depository.

(a) A deposit shall be recognized for the purposes of these regulations if made in

(1) Any International Depositary Authority (IDA) as established under the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purposes of Patent Procedure, or

(2) Any other depository recognized to be suitable by the Office. Suitability will be determined by the Commissioner on the basis of the administrative and technical competence, and agreement of the depository to comply with the terms and conditions applicable to deposits for patent purposes. The Commissioner may seek the advice of impartial consultants on the suitability of a depository. The depository must:

(i) Have a continuous existence;

(ii) Exist independent of the control of the depositor;

(iii) Possess the staff and facilities sufficient to examine the viability of a deposit and store the deposit in a manner which ensures that it is kept viable and uncontaminated;

(iv) Provide for sufficient safety measures to minimize the risk of losing biological material deposited with it;

(v) Be impartial and objective;

(vi) Furnish samples of the deposited material in an expeditious and proper manner; and

[VerDate 11<MAY>2000 09:16 Sep 27, 2000 Jkt 190132 PO 00000 Frm 00167 Fmt 8010 Sfmt 8010 Y:\SGML\190132T.XXX pfrm02 PsN: 190132T]
§ 1.804  Time of making an original deposit.

(a) Whenever a biological material is specifically identified in an application for patent as filed, an original deposit thereof may be made at any time before filing the application for patent or, subject to § 1.809, during pendency of the application for patent.

(b) When the original deposit is made after the effective filing date of an application for patent, the applicant must promptly submit a statement from a person in a position to corroborate the fact, stating that the biological material which is deposited is a biological material specifically identified in the application as filed.


§ 1.805  Replacement or supplement of deposit.

(a) A depositor, after receiving notice during the pendency of an application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding, that the depository possessing a deposit either cannot furnish samples thereof or can furnish samples thereof but the deposit has become contaminated or has lost its capability to function as described in the specification, shall notify the Office in writing, in each application for patent or patent affected. In such a case, or where the Office otherwise learns, during the pendency of an application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding, that the depository possessing a deposit either cannot furnish samples thereof or can furnish samples thereof but the deposit has become contaminated or has lost its capability to function as described in the specification, the need for making a replacement or supplemental deposit will be governed by the same considerations governing the need for making an original deposit under the provisions set forth in § 1.802(b). A replacement or supplemental deposit made during the pendency of an application for patent shall not be accepted unless it meets the requirements for making an original deposit under these regulations, including the requirement set forth under § 1.804(b). A replacement or supplemental deposit made in connection with a patent, whether or not made during the pendency of an application for reissue patent or a reexamination proceeding or both, shall not be accepted unless a certificate of correction under § 1.323 is requested by the patent owner which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) A request for certificate of correction under this section shall not be granted unless the certificate identifies:
(1) The accession number for the replacement or supplemental deposit;
(2) The date of the deposit; and
(3) The name and address of the depository.
(c) A request for a certificate of correction under this section shall not be granted unless the request is made promptly after the replacement or supplemental deposit has been made and the request:
(1) Includes a statement of the reason for making the replacement or supplemental deposit;
(2) Includes a statement from a person in a position to corroborate the fact, and stating that the replacement or supplemental deposit is of a biological material which is identical to that originally deposited;
(3) Includes a showing that the patent owner acted diligently—
   (i) In the case of a replacement deposit, in making the deposit after receiving notice that samples could no longer be furnished from an earlier deposit; or
   (ii) In the case of a supplemental deposit, in making the deposit after receiving notice that the earlier deposit had become contaminated or had lost its capability to function as described in the specification;
(4) Includes a statement that the term of the replacement or supplemental deposit expires no earlier than the term of the deposit being replaced or supplemented; and
(5) Otherwise establishes compliance with these regulations.
(d) A depositor’s failure to replace a deposit, or in the case of a patent, to diligently replace a deposit and promptly thereafter request a certificate of correction which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, after being notified that the depository possessing the deposit cannot furnish samples thereof, shall cause the application or patent involved to be treated in any Office proceeding as if no deposit were made.
(e) In the event a deposit is replaced according to these regulations, the Office will apply a rebuttable presumption of identity between the original and the replacement deposit where a patent making reference to the deposit is relied upon during any Office proceeding.
(f) A replacement or supplement deposit made during the pendency of an application for patent may be made for any reason.
(g) In no case is a replacement or supplemental deposit of a biological material necessary where the biological material, in accordance with §1.802(b), need not be deposited.
(h) No replacement deposit of a biological material is necessary where a depository can furnish samples thereof but the depository for national security, health or environmental safety reasons is unable to provide samples to requesters outside of the jurisdiction where the depository is located.
(i) The Office will not recognize in any Office proceeding a replacement deposit of a biological material made by a patent owner where the depository could furnish samples of the deposit being replaced.

§ 1.806 Term of deposit.
A deposit made before or during pendency of an application for patent shall be made for a term of at least thirty (30) years and at least five (5) years after the most recent request for the furnishing of a sample of the deposit was received by the depository. In any case, samples must be stored under agreements that would make them available beyond the enforceable life of the patent for which the deposit was made.

§ 1.807 Viability of deposit.
(a) A deposit of biological material that is capable of self-replication either directly or indirectly must be viable at the time of deposit and during the term of deposit. Viability may be tested by the depository. The test must conclude only that the deposited material is capable of reproduction. No evidence is necessarily required regarding the ability of the deposited material to perform any function described in the patent application.

§ 1.808 Furnishing of samples.

(a) A deposit must be made under conditions that assure that:

1. Access to the deposit will be available during pendency of the patent application making reference to the deposit to one determined by the Commissioner to be entitled thereto under §1.14 and 35 U.S.C. 122, and

2. Subject to paragraph (b) of this section, all restrictions imposed by the depositor on the availability to the public of the deposited material will be irrevocably removed upon the granting of the patent.

(b) The depositor may contract with the depository to require that samples of a deposited biological material shall be furnished only if a request for a sample, during the term of the patent:

1. Is in writing or other tangible form and dated;

2. Contains the name and address of the requesting party and the accession number of the deposit; and

3. Is communicated in writing by the depository to the depositor along with the date on which the sample was furnished and the name and address of the party to whom the sample was furnished.

(c) Upon request made to the Office, the Office will certify whether a deposit has been stated to have been made under conditions which make it available to the public as of the issue date of the patent grant provided the request contains:

1. The name and address of the depository;

2. The accession number given to the deposit;

3. The patent number and issue date of the patent referring to the deposit; and

4. The name and address of the requesting party.

§ 1.809 Examination procedures.

(a) The examiner shall determine pursuant to §1.104 in each application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding if a deposit is needed, and if needed, if a deposit actually made is acceptable for patent purposes. If a deposit is needed and has not been made or replaced or supplemented in accordance with these regulations, the examiner, where appropriate, shall reject the affected claims under the appropriate provision of 35 U.S.C. 112, explaining why a deposit is needed and/or why a deposit actually made cannot be accepted.

(b) The applicant for patent or patent owner shall respond to a rejection under paragraph (a) of this section by—

1. In the case of an applicant for patent, making an acceptable original or replacement or supplemental deposit or assuring the Office in writing that an acceptable deposit will be made on or before the date of payment of the issue fee, or, in the case of a patent owner, requesting a certificate of correction of the patent which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of §1.805, or

2. Arguing why a deposit is not needed under the circumstances of the application or patent considered and/or why a deposit actually made should be accepted. Other replies to the examiner’s action shall be considered non-
Patent and Trademark Office, Commerce § 1.821

responsive. The rejection will be repeated until either paragraph (b)(1) of this section is satisfied or the examiner is convinced that a deposit is not needed.

(c) If an application for patent is otherwise in condition for allowance except for a needed deposit and the Office has received a written assurance that an acceptable deposit will be made on or before payment of the issue fee, the Office will mail to the applicant a Notice of Allowance and Issue Fee Due together with a requirement that the needed deposit be made within three months. The period for satisfying this requirement is extendable under §1.136. Failure to make the needed deposit in accordance with this requirement will result in abandonment of the application for failure to prosecute.

(d) For each deposit made pursuant to these regulations, the specification shall contain:
   (1) The accession number for the deposit;
   (2) The date of the deposit;
   (3) A description of the deposited biological material sufficient to specifically identify it and to permit examination; and
   (4) The name and address of the depository.

APPLICATION DISCLOSURES CONTAINING NUCLEOTIDE AND/OR AMINO ACID SEQUENCES

SOURCE: Sections 1.821 through 1.825 appear at 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

§ 1.821 Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosures in patent applications.

(a) Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as used in §§ 1.821 through 1.825 are interpreted to mean an unbranched sequence of four or more amino acids or an unbranched sequence of ten or more nucleotides. Branched sequences are specifically excluded from this definition. Sequences with fewer than four specifically defined nucleotides or amino acids are specifically excluded from this section. “Specifically defined” means those amino acids other than “Xaa” and those nucleotide bases other than “n” defined in accordance with the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO) Handbook on Industrial Property Information and Documentation, Standard ST.25: Standard for the Presentation of Nucleotide and Amino Acid Sequence Listings in Patent Applications (1998), including Tables 1 through 6 in Appendix 2, herein incorporated by reference. (Hereinafter “WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998)” ). This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998) may be obtained from the World Intellectual Property Organization; 34 chemin des Colombettes; 1211 Geneva 20 Switzerland. Copies of ST.25 may be inspected at the Patent Search Room; Crystal Plaza 3, Lobby Level; 2021 South Clark Place; Arlington, VA 22202. Copies may also be inspected at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capitol Street, NW, Suite 700, Washington, DC. Nucleotides and amino acids are further defined as follows:

   (1) Nucleotides: Nucleotides are intended to embrace only those nucleotides that can be represented using the symbols set forth in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 1. Modifications, e.g., methylated bases, may be described as set forth in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 2, but shall not be shown explicitly in the nucleotide sequence.

   (2) Amino acids: Amino acids are those L-amino acids commonly found in naturally occurring proteins and are listed in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 3. Those amino acid sequences containing D-amino acids are not intended to be embraced by this definition. Any amino acid sequence that contains post-translationally modified amino acids may be described as the amino acid sequence that is initially translated using the symbols shown in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 3 with the modified positions; e.g., hydroxylations or glycosylations, being described as set forth in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 4, but these modifications shall not be shown explicitly in the amino acid sequence. Any peptide or protein that can be expressed as a sequence using the symbols in WIPO Standard
§ 1.821 37 CFR Ch. I (7–1–00 Edition)

ST. 25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 3 in conjunction with a description in the Feature section to describe, for example, modified linkages, cross links and end caps, non-peptidyl bonds, etc., is embraced by this definition.

(b) Patent applications which contain disclosures of nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences, in accordance with the definition in paragraph (a) of this section, shall, with regard to the manner in which the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences are presented and described, conform exclusively to the requirements of §§ 1.821 through 1.825.

(c) Patent applications which contain disclosures of nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences must contain, as a separate part of the disclosure, a paper copy disclosing the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences and associated information using the symbols and format in accordance with the requirements of §§ 1.822 and 1.823. This paper copy is hereinafter referred to as the “Sequence Listing.” Each sequence disclosed must appear separately in the “Sequence Listing.” Each sequence set forth in the “Sequence Listing” shall be assigned a separate sequence identifier. The sequence identifiers shall begin with 1 and increase sequentially by integers. If no sequence is present for a sequence identifier, the code “000” shall be used in place of the sequence. The response for the numeric identifier <160> shall include the total number of SEQ ID NOs, whether followed by a sequence or by the code “000.”

(d) Where the description or claims of a patent application discuss a sequence that is set forth in the “Sequence Listing” in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, reference must be made to the sequence by use of the sequence identifier, preceded by “SEQ ID NO:” in the text of the description or claims, even if the sequence is also embedded in the text of the description or claims of the patent application.

(e) A copy of the “Sequence Listing” referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must also be submitted in computer readable form in accordance with the requirements of §1.824. The computer readable form is a copy of the “Sequence Listing” and will not necessarily be retained as a part of the patent application file. If the computer readable form of a new application is identical with the computer readable form of another application of the applicant on file in the Patent and Trademark Office, reference may be made to the other application and computer readable form in lieu of filing a duplicate computer readable form in the new application if the computer readable form in the other application was compliant with all of the requirements of these rules. The new application shall be accompanied by a letter making such reference to the other application and computer readable form, both of which shall be completely identified. In the new application, applicant must also request the use of the compliant computer readable “Sequence Listing” that is already on file for the other application and must state that the paper copy of the “Sequence Listing” in the new application is identical to the computer readable copy filed for the other application.

(f) In addition to the paper copy required by paragraph (c) of this section and the computer readable form required by paragraph (e) of this section, a statement that the content of the paper and computer readable copies are the same must be submitted with the computer readable form, e.g., a statement that “the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing.”

(g) If any of the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (f) of this section are not satisfied at the time of filing under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) or at the time of entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371, applicant will be notified and given a period of time within which to comply with such requirements in order to prevent abandonment of the application. Any submission in reply to a requirement under this paragraph must be accompanied by a statement that the submission includes no new matter.

(h) If any of the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (f) of this section are not satisfied at the time of filing an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT), which application is to be searched by the United States International Searching Authority or examined by
§ 1.822 Symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data.

(a) The symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data shall conform to the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (e) of this section.

(b) The code for representing the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence characters shall conform to the code set forth in the tables in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Tables 1 and 3. This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of ST.25 may be obtained from the World Intellectual Property Organization; 34 chemin des Colombettes; 1211 Geneva 20 Switzerland. Copies of ST.25 may be inspected at the Patent Search Room; Crystal Plaza 3, Lobby Level; 2021 South Clark Place; Arlington, VA 22202. Copies may also be inspected at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capitol Street, NW, Suite 700, Washington, DC. No code other than that specified in these sections shall be used in nucleotide and amino acid sequences. A modified base or modified or unusual amino acid may be presented in a given sequence as the corresponding unmodified base or amino acid if the modified base or modified or unusual amino acid is one of those listed in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Tables 2 and 4, and the modification is also set forth in the Feature section. Otherwise, each occurrence of a base or amino acid not appearing in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Tables 1 and 3, shall be listed in a given sequence as “n” or “Xaa,” respectively, with further information, as appropriate, given in the Feature section, preferably by including one or more feature keys listed in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Tables 5 and 6.

(c) Format representation of nucleotides. (1) A nucleotide sequence shall be listed using the lower-case letter for representing the one-letter code for the nucleotide bases set forth in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 1.

(2) The bases in a nucleotide sequence (including introns) shall be listed in groups of 10 bases except in the coding parts of the sequence. Leftover bases, fewer than 10 in number, at the end of noncoding parts of a sequence shall be grouped together and separated from adjacent groups of 10 or 3 bases by a space.

(3) The bases in the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be listed as triplets (codons). The amino acids corresponding to the codons in the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be typed immediately below the corresponding codons. Where a codon spans an intron, the amino acid symbol shall be typed below the portion of the codon containing two nucleotides.

(4) A nucleotide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 16 codons or 60 bases per line, with a space provided between each codon or group of 10 bases.

(5) A nucleotide sequence shall be presented, only by a single strand, in the 5 to 3 direction, from left to right.

(6) The enumeration of nucleotide bases shall start at the first base of the sequence with number 1. The enumeration shall be continuous through the whole sequence in the direction 5 to 3. The enumeration shall be marked in the right margin, next to the line containing the one-letter codes for the
§ 1.823 Requirements for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as part of the application papers.

(a) The “Sequence Listing” required by §1.821(c), setting forth the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences and associated information in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, must begin on a new page and must be titled “Sequence Listing”. The “Sequence Listing” preferably should be numbered independently of the numbering of the remainder of the application. Each page of the “Sequence Listing” should contain no more than 66 lines and each line should contain no more than 72 characters. A fixed-width font should be used exclusively throughout the “Sequence Listing.”

(b) The “Sequence Listing” shall, except as otherwise indicated, include the actual nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence, the numeric identifiers and their accompanying information as shown in the following table. The numeric identifier shall be used only in the “Sequence Listing.” The order and presentation of the items of information in the “Sequence Listing” shall conform to the arrangement given below. Each item of information shall begin on a new line and shall begin with the numeric identifier enclosed in angle brackets as shown. The submission of those items of information designated with an “M” is mandatory. The submission of those items of information designated with an “O” is optional. Numeric identifiers <110> through <170> shall only be set forth at the beginning of the “Sequence Listing.” The following table illustrates the numeric identifiers.

bases, and giving the number of the last base of that line.

(7) For those nucleotide sequences that are circular in configuration, the enumeration method set forth in paragraph (c)(6) of this section remains applicable with the exception that the designation of the first base of the nucleotide sequence may be made at the option of the applicant.

(d) Representation of amino acids. (1) The amino acids in a protein or peptide sequence shall be listed using the three-letter abbreviation with the first letter as an upper case character, as in WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Table 3.

(2) A protein or peptide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 16 amino acids per line, with a space provided between each amino acid.

(3) An amino acid sequence shall be presented in the amino to carboxy direction, from left to right, and the amino and carboxy groups shall not be presented in the sequence.

(4) The enumeration of amino acids may start at the first amino acid of the first mature protein, with the number 1. When presented, the amino acids preceding the mature protein, e.g., pre-sequences, pro-sequences, pre-pro-sequences and signal sequences, shall have negative numbers, counting backwards starting with the amino acid next to number 1. Otherwise, the enumeration of amino acids shall start at the first amino acid at the amino terminal as number 1. It shall be marked below the sequence every 5 amino acids. The enumeration method for amino acid sequences that is set forth in this section remains applicable for amino acid sequences that are circular in configuration, with the exception that the designation of the first amino acid of the sequence may be made at the option of the applicant.

(5) An amino acid sequence that contains internal terminator symbols (e.g., “Ter”, “*” or “.”, etc.) may not be represented as a single amino acid sequence, but shall be presented as separate amino acid sequences.

(e) A sequence with a gap or gaps shall be presented as a plurality of separate sequences, with separate sequence identifiers, with the number of separate sequences being equal in number to the number of continuous strings of sequence data. A sequence that is made up of one or more non-contiguous segments of a larger sequence or segments from different sequences shall be presented as a separate sequence.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeric identifier</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Comments and format</th>
<th>Mandatory (M) or optional (O)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;110&gt;</td>
<td>Applicant</td>
<td>Preferably max. of 10 names; one name per line; preferable format: Surname, Other Names and/or Initials.</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;120&gt;</td>
<td>Title of Invention</td>
<td></td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;130&gt;</td>
<td>File Reference</td>
<td>Personal file reference</td>
<td>M when filed prior to assignment of appl. number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;140&gt;</td>
<td>Current Application Number</td>
<td>Specify as: US 07/999,999 or PCT: US96/999999.</td>
<td>M, if available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;141&gt;</td>
<td>Current Filing Date</td>
<td>Specify as: yyyy-mm-dd</td>
<td>M, if applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;150&gt;</td>
<td>Prior Application Number</td>
<td>Specify as: US 07/999,999 or PCT: US96/999999.</td>
<td>M, if applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;151&gt;</td>
<td>Prior Application Filing Date</td>
<td>Specify as: yyyy-mm-dd</td>
<td>M, if applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;160&gt;</td>
<td>Number of SEQ ID NOs.</td>
<td>Count includes total number of SEQ ID NOs.</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;170&gt;</td>
<td>Software</td>
<td>Name of software used to create the Sequence Listing.</td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;210&gt;</td>
<td>SEQ ID NO:</td>
<td>Response shall be an integer representing the SEQ ID NO shown.</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;211&gt;</td>
<td>Length</td>
<td>Respond with an integer expressing the number of bases or amino acid residues.</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;212&gt;</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Whether presented sequence molecule is DNA, RNA, or PRT (protein). If a nucleotide sequence contains both DNA and RNA fragments, the type shall be “DNA.” In addition, the combined DNA/RNA molecule shall be further described in the &lt;220&gt; to &lt;223&gt; feature section.</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;213&gt;</td>
<td>Organism</td>
<td>Scientific name, i.e. Genus/species, Unknown or Artificial Sequence. In addition, the “Unknown” or “Artificial Sequence” organisms shall be further described in the &lt;220&gt; to &lt;223&gt; feature section.</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;220&gt;</td>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Leave blank after &lt;220&gt;, &lt;221–223&gt; provide for a description of points of biological significance in the sequence.</td>
<td>M, under the following conditions: if “n,” “Xaa,” or a modified or unusual L-amino acid or modified base was used in a sequence; if ORGANISM is “Artificial Sequence” or “Unknown”; if molecule is combined DNA/RNA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;221&gt;</td>
<td>Name/Key</td>
<td>Provide appropriate identifier for feature, preferably from WIPO Standard ST.25 (1998), Appendix 2, Tables 5 and 6.</td>
<td>M, under the following conditions: if “n,” “Xaa,” or a modified or unusual L-amino acid or modified base was used in a sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;222&gt;</td>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Specify location within sequence; where appropriate state number of first and last bases/amino acids in feature.</td>
<td>M, under the following conditions: if “n,” “Xaa,” or a modified or unusual L-amino acid or modified base was used in a sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;223&gt;</td>
<td>Other Information</td>
<td>Other relevant information; four lines maximum.</td>
<td>M, under the following conditions: if “n,” “Xaa,” or a modified or unusual L-amino acid or modified base was used in a sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;300&gt;</td>
<td>Publication Information</td>
<td>Leave blank after &lt;300&gt;</td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;301&gt;</td>
<td>Authors</td>
<td>Preferably max of ten named authors of publication; specify one name per line; preferable format: Surname, Other Names and/or Initials.</td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;302&gt;</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td></td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;303&gt;</td>
<td>Journal</td>
<td></td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;304&gt;</td>
<td>Volume</td>
<td></td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;305&gt;</td>
<td>Issue</td>
<td></td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;306&gt;</td>
<td>Pages</td>
<td></td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;307&gt;</td>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Journal date on which data published; specify as yyyy-mm-dd, MMM-yyyy or Season-yyyy.</td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;308&gt;</td>
<td>Database Accession Number</td>
<td>Accession number assigned by database including database name.</td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;309&gt;</td>
<td>Database Entry Date</td>
<td>Date of entry in database; specify as yyyy-mm-dd or MMM-yyyy.</td>
<td>O.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 1.824 Form and format for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence submissions in computer readable form.

(a) The computer readable form required by § 1.821(e) shall meet the following specifications:

1. The computer readable form shall contain a single “Sequence Listing” as either a diskette, series of diskettes, or other permissible media outlined in paragraph (c) of this section.

2. The “Sequence Listing” in paragraph (a) (1) of this section shall be submitted in American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) text. No other formats shall be allowed.

3. The computer readable form may be created by any means, such as word processors, nucleotide/amino acid sequence editors, or other custom computer programs; however, it shall conform to all specifications detailed in this section.

4. File compression is acceptable when using diskette media, so long as the compressed file is in a self-extracting format that will decompress on one of the systems described in paragraph (b) of this section.

5. Page numbering shall not appear within the computer readable form version of the “Sequence Listing” file.

6. All computer readable forms shall have a label permanently affixed there to on which has been hand-printed or typed: the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the date on which the data were recorded on the computer readable form, the operating system used, a reference number, and an application serial number and filing date, if known.

(b) Computer readable form submissions must meet these format requirements:

1. Computer: IBM PC/XT/AT, or compatibles, or Apple Macintosh.

2. Operating System: MS-DOS, Unix or Macintosh.


(c) Computer readable form files submitted may be in any of the following media:

1. Diskette: 3.50 inch, 1.44 Mb storage; 3.50 inch, 720 Kb storage; 5.25 inch, 1.2 Mb storage; 5.25 inch, 360 Kb storage.

2. Magnetic tape: 0.5 inch, up to 24000 feet; Density: 1600 or 6250 bits per inch, 9 track; Format: Unix tar command; specify blocking factor (not “block size”); Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus ASCII Line Feed.

3. 8mm Data Cartridge: Format: Unix tar command; specify blocking factor (not “block size”); Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus ASCII Line Feed.


(d) Computer readable forms that are submitted to the Office will not be returned to the applicant.

§ 1.825 Amendments to or replacement of sequence listing and computer readable copy thereof.

(a) Any amendment to the paper copy of the “Sequence Listing” (§ 1.821(c)) must be made by the submission of substitute sheets. Amendments must
be accompanied by a statement that indicates support for the amendment in the application, as filed, and a statement that the substitute sheets include no new matter.

(b) Any amendment to the paper copy of the "Sequence Listing," in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, must be accompanied by a substitute copy of the computer readable form (§1.821(e)) including all previously submitted data with the amendment incorporated therein, accompanied by a statement that the copy in computer readable form is the same as the substitute copy of the "Sequence Listing."

(c) Any appropriate amendments to the "Sequence Listing" in a patent; e.g., by reason of reissue or certificate of correction, must comply with the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.

(d) If, upon receipt, the computer readable form is found to be damaged or unreadable, applicant must provide, within such time as set by the Commissioner, a substitute copy of the data in computer readable form accompanied by a statement that the substitute data is identical to that originally filed.

[63 FR 29638, June 1, 1998]
APPENDIX A TO SUBPART G TO PART 1—SAMPLE SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Smith, John

Smith, Jane

<120> Example of a Sequence Listing

<130> 01-00001

<140> US 08/999,999

<141> 1998-02-28

<150> EP 91000000

<151> 1997-12-31
<160> 2

<170> PatentIn ver. 2.0

<210> 1

<211> 403

<212> DNA

<213> Paramecium aurelia

<220>

<221> CDS

<222> 341..394

<300>

<301> Doe, Richard

<302> Isolation and Characterization of a Gene Encoding a

Protease from Paramecium sp.

<303> Journal of Fictional Genes
ctctctctact ctactctcat ctactatctt ctttgatct ctgagtcgtgc ctgagtggta 60

ctcttgagtc ctggagatct ctctctcac atgtatcgt ctgagactgc acctagatcg 120
c tgactgact ctgagatagt cgagcccgta cgagaacccgt cgaggggtgac agagatggg 180
cggctcgcgg cagagccgcgg cggcgcggcgc cgcggctgc ccgcggcgcgc cgcccggcgc 240
c tttcgcgcgc aggcccgcgc ttttcgcgcgc cggcgcgcgc cgcgcgcgcgc cgcgcgcgcgc 300
c tttcctcttc ctcctcttcga ctagagaggt cttatatata acgtggt tcaagttatg ttc 355

Met Val Ser Met Phe
PART 2—RULES OF PRACTICE IN TRADEMARK CASES

EDITORIAL NOTE: Part 2 is placed in a separate grouping of parts pertaining to trademarks. It appears on page 221 of this volume.
PART 3—ASSIGNMENT, RECORDING AND RIGHTS OF ASSIGNEE

Sec.
3.1 Definitions.

DOCUMENTS ELIGIBLE FOR RECORDING

3.11 Documents which will be recorded.
3.16 Assignability of trademarks prior to filing of an allegation of use.

REQUIREMENTS FOR RECORDING

3.21 Identification of patents and patent applications.
3.24 Requirements for documents and cover sheets relating to patents and patent applications.
3.25 Recording requirements for trademark applications and registrations.
3.26 English language requirement.
3.27 Mailing address for submitting documents to be recorded.
3.28 Requests for recording.

COVER SHEET REQUIREMENTS

3.31 Cover sheet content.
3.34 Correction of cover sheet errors.

FEES

3.41 Recording fees.

DATE AND EFFECT OF RECORDING

3.51 Recording date.
3.54 Effect of recording.
3.56 Conditional assignments.
3.58 Governmental registers.

DOMESTIC REPRESENTATIVE

3.61 Domestic representative.

ACTION TAKEN BY ASSIGNEE

3.71 Prosecution by assignee.
3.73 Establishing right of assignee to take action.

ISSUANCE TO ASSIGNEE

3.81 Issue of patent to assignee.
3.85 Issue of registration to assignee.

SOURCE: 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

§ 3.1 Definitions.

For purposes of this part, the following definitions shall apply:

Application means a national application for patent, an international application that designates the United States of America, or an application to register a trademark unless otherwise indicated.

Assignment means a transfer by a party of all or part of its right, title and interest in a patent or patent application, or a transfer of its entire right, title and interest in a registered mark or a mark for which an application to register has been filed.

Document means a document which a party requests to be recorded in the Office pursuant to §3.11 and which affects some interest in an application, patent, or registration.

Office means the Patent and Trademark Office.

Recorded document means a document which has been recorded in the Office pursuant to §3.11.

Registration means a trademark registration issued by the Office.

DOCUMENTS ELIGIBLE FOR RECORDING

§ 3.11 Documents which will be recorded.

(a) Assignments of applications, patents, and registrations, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in §§3.28 and 3.31, will be recorded in the Office. Other documents, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in §§3.28 and 3.31, affecting title to applications, patents, or registrations, will be recorded as provided in this part or at the discretion of the Commissioner.

(b) Executive Order 9424 of February 18, 1944 (9 FR 1959, 3 CFR 1943-1948 Comp., p. 303) requires the several departments and other executive agencies of the Government, including Government-owned or Government-controlled corporations, to forward promptly to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks for recording all licenses, assignments, or other interests of the Government in or under patents or patent applications. Assignments and other documents affecting title to patents or patent applications and documents not affecting title to patents or patent applications required by Executive Order 9424 to be filed will be recorded as provided in this part.

§ 3.16 Assignability of trademarks prior to filing of an allegation of use.

Before an allegation of use under either 15 U.S.C. 1051(c) or 15 U.S.C. 1051(d) is filed, an applicant may only assign an application to register a mark under 15 U.S.C. 1051(b) to a successor to the applicant's business, or portion of the business to which the mark pertains, if that business is ongoing and existing.

[64 FR 48926, Sept. 8, 1999]

REQUIREMENTS FOR RECORDING

§ 3.21 Identification of patents and patent applications.

An assignment relating to a patent must identify the patent by the patent number. An assignment relating to a national patent application must identify the national patent application by the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number, e.g., 07/123,456). An assignment relating to an international patent application which designates the United States of America must identify the international application by the international application number (e.g., PCT/US90/01234). If an assignment of a patent application filed under §1.53(b) is executed concurrently with, or subsequent to, the execution of the patent application, but before the patent application is filed, it must identify the patent application by its date of execution, name of each inventor, and title of the invention so that there can be no mistake as to the patent application intended. If an assignment of a provisional application under §1.53(c) is executed before the provisional application is filed, it must identify the provisional application by name of each inventor and title of the invention so that there can be no mistake as to the provisional application intended.


§ 3.24 Requirements for documents and cover sheets relating to patents and patent applications.

The document and cover sheet must be legible. Either the original document or a true copy of the original document, may be submitted for recording. Only one side of each page shall be used. The paper used should be flexible, strong, white, non-shiny, durable, and preferably no larger than 21.6 x 33.1 cm. (8½ x 14 inches) with a 2.5 cm. (one-inch) margin on all sides.

§ 3.25 Recording requirements for trademark applications and registrations.

(a) Documents affecting title. To record documents affecting title to a trademark application or registration, a legible cover sheet (see §3.31) and one of the following must be submitted:

(1) The original document;
(2) A copy of the document;
(3) A copy of an extract from the document evidencing the effect on title; or
(4) A statement signed by both the party conveying the interest and the party receiving the interest explaining how the conveyance affects title.

(b) Name changes. Only a legible cover sheet is required (See §3.31).

(c) All documents. All documents submitted to the Office should be on white and non-shiny paper that is no larger than 8½ x 14 inches (21.6 x 33.1 cm.) with a one-inch (2.5 cm) margin on all sides. Only one side of each page should be used.

[64 FR 48927, Sept. 8, 1999]

§ 3.26 English language requirement.

The Office will accept and record non-English language documents only if accompanied by an English translation signed by the individual making the translation.


§ 3.27 Mailing address for submitting documents to be recorded.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, documents and cover sheets to be recorded should be addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box Assignment, Washington, DC 20231, unless they are filed together with new applications or with a petition under §3.81(b).

(b) A document required by Executive Order 9424 to be filed which does not affect title and is so identified in the cover sheet (see §3.31(c)(2)) must be addressed and mailed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box
§ 3.28 Requests for recording.

Each document submitted to the Office for recording must include at least one cover sheet as specified in §3.31 referring either to those patent applications and patents, or to those trademark applications and registrations, against which the document is to be recorded. If a document to be recorded includes interests in, or transactions involving, both patents and trademarks, separate patent and trademark cover sheets should be submitted. Only one set of documents and cover sheets to be recorded should be filed. If a document to be recorded is not accompanied by a completed cover sheet, the document and the incomplete cover sheet will be returned pursuant to §3.51 for proper completion. The document and a completed cover sheet should be resubmitted.


COVER SHEET REQUIREMENTS

§ 3.31 Cover sheet content.

(a) Each patent or trademark cover sheet required by §3.28 must contain:

(1) The name of the party conveying the interest;
(2) The name and address of the party receiving the interest;
(3) A description of the interest conveyed or transaction to be recorded;
(4) Identification of the interests involved:
   (i) For trademark assignments and trademark name changes: Each trademark registration number and each trademark application number, if known, against which the Office is to record the document. If the trademark application number is not known, a copy of the application or a reproduction of the trademark must be submitted, along with an estimate of the date that the Office received the application; or
   (ii) For any other document affecting title to a trademark or patent application, registration or patent: Each trademark or patent application number or each trademark registration number or patent against which the document is to be recorded, or an indication that the document is filed together with a patent application;
(5) The name and address of the party to whom correspondence concerning the request to record the document should be mailed;
(6) The date the document was executed;
(7) An indication that the assignee of a trademark application or registration who is not domiciled in the United States has designated a domestic representative (see §3.61); and
(8) The signature of the party submitting the document.

(b) A cover sheet should not refer to both patents and trademarks, since any information, including information about pending patent applications, submitted with a request for recording of a document against a trademark application or trademark registration will become public record upon recordation.

(c) Each patent cover sheet required by §3.28 seeking to record a governmental interest as provided by §3.11(b) must:

(1) Indicate that the document is to be recorded on the Governmental Register, and, if applicable, that the document is to be recorded on the Secret Register (see §3.58); and
(2) Indicate, if applicable, that the document to be recorded is not a document affecting title (see §3.41(b)).

(d) Each trademark cover sheet required by §3.28 seeking to record a document against a trademark application or registration should include, in addition to the serial number or registration number of the trademark, identification of the trademark or a description of the trademark, against which the Office is to record the document.

(e) Each patent or trademark cover sheet required by §3.28 should contain the number of applications, patents or registrations identified in the cover sheet and the total fee.

§ 3.34 Correction of cover sheet errors.

(a) An error in a cover sheet recorded pursuant to § 3.11 will be corrected only if:

(1) The error is apparent when the cover sheet is compared with the recorded document to which it pertains, and

(2) A corrected cover sheet is filed for recordation.

(b) The corrected cover sheet must be accompanied by the originally recorded document or a copy of the originally recorded document and by the recording fee as set forth in § 3.41.

§ 3.41 Recording fees.

(a) All requests to record documents must be accompanied by the appropriate fee. Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, a fee is required for each application, patent and registration against which the document is recorded as identified in the cover sheet. The recording fee is set in § 1.21(h) of this chapter for patents and in § 2.6(b)(6) of this chapter for trademarks.

(b) No fee is required for each patent application and patent against which a document required by Executive Order 9424 is to be filed if:

(1) The document does not affect title and is so identified in the cover sheet (see § 3.31(c)(2)); and

(2) The document and cover sheet are mailed to the Office in compliance with § 3.27(b).


§ 3.54 Effect of recording.

The recording of a document pursuant to § 3.11 is not a determination by the Office of the validity of the document or the effect that document has on the title to an application, a patent, or a registration. When necessary, the Office will determine what effect a document has, including whether a party has the authority to take an action in a matter pending before the Office.

§ 3.56 Conditional assignments.

Assignments which are made conditional on the performance of certain acts or events, such as the payment of money or other condition subsequent, if recorded in the Office, are regarded as absolute assignments for Office purposes until cancelled with the written consent of all parties or by the decree of a court of competent jurisdiction. The Office does not determine whether such conditions have been fulfilled.

§ 3.58 Governmental registers.

(a) The Office will maintain a Departmental Register to record governmental interests required to be recorded by Executive Order 9424. This Departmental Register will not be open to public inspection but will be available for examination and inspection by duly authorized representatives of the Government. Governmental interests
§ 3.61 Domestic representative.

If the assignee of a trademark application or registration is not domiciled in the United States, the assignee must designate, in writing to the Office, a domestic representative. An assignee of a patent application or patent may designate a domestic representative if the assignee is not residing in the United States. The designation shall state the name and address of a person residing within the United States on whom may be served process or notice of proceedings affecting the application, patent or registration or rights thereunder.

§ 3.71 Prosecution by assignee.

The assignee of record of the entire right, title and interest in an application for patent is entitled to conduct the prosecution of the patent application to the exclusion of the named inventor or previous assignee. The assignee of a registered trademark or a trademark for which an application to register has been filed is entitled to conduct the prosecution of the trademark application or registration to the exclusion of the original applicant or previous assignee.

§ 3.73 Establishing right of assignee to take action.

(a) The inventor is presumed to be the owner of a patent application, and any patent that may issue therefrom, unless there is an assignment. The original applicant is presumed to be the owner of a trademark application unless there is an assignment.

(b) When an assignee seeks to take action in a matter before the Office with respect to a patent application, trademark application, patent, registration, or reexamination proceeding, the assignee must establish its ownership of the property to the satisfaction of the Commissioner. Ownership is established by submitting to the Office, in the Office file related to the matter in which action is sought to be taken, documentary evidence of a chain of title from the original owner to the assignee (e.g., copy of an executed assignment submitted for recording) or by specifying (e.g., reel and frame number) where such evidence is recorded in the Office. The submission establishing ownership must be signed by a party authorized to act on behalf of the assignee. Documents submitted to establish ownership may be required to be recorded as a condition to permitting the assignee to take action in a matter pending before the Office.


§ 3.81 Issue of patent to assignee.

(a) For a patent application, if an assignment of the entire right, title, and interest is recorded before the issue fee is paid, the patent may issue in the name of the assignee. If the assignee holds an undivided part interest, the patent may issue jointly to the inventor and the assignee. At the time the issue fee is paid, the name of the assignee must be provided if the patent is issued to assignee.
§ 4.3 Submitting complaints.

(a) A person may submit a complaint concerning an invention promoter with investigation of the invention promoter. Although the Act provides additional civil remedies for persons injured by invention promoters, those remedies must be pursued by the injured party without the involvement of the Office.

§ 4.2 Definitions.

(a) Invention Promoter means any person, firm, partnership, corporation, or other entity who offers to perform or performs invention promotion services for, or on behalf of, a customer, and who holds itself out through advertising in any mass media as providing such services, but does not include—

(1) Any department or agency of the Federal Government or of a State or local government;

(2) Any nonprofit, charitable, scientific, or educational organization qualified under applicable State law or described under section 170(b)(1)(A) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986;

(3) Any person or entity involved in the evaluation to determine commercial potential of, or offering to license or sell, a utility patent or a previously filed nonprovisional utility patent application;

(4) Any party participating in a transaction involving the sale of the stock or assets of a business; or

(5) Any party who directly engages in the business of retail sales of products or the distribution of products.

(b) Customer means any individual who enters into a contract with an invention promoter for invention promotion services.

(c) Contract for Invention Promotion Services means a contract by which an invention promoter undertakes invention promotion services for a customer.

(d) Invention Promotion Services means the procurement or attempted procurement for a customer of a firm, corporation, or other entity to develop and market products or services that include the invention of the customer.

PART 4—COMPLAINTS REGARDING INVENTION PROMOTERS

§ 4.1 Complaints regarding invention promoters.

These regulations govern the Patent and Trademark Office’s (Office) responsibilities under the Inventors’ Rights Act of 1999, which can be found in the U.S. Code at 35 U.S.C. 297. The Act requires the Office to provide a forum for the publication of complaints concerning invention promoters. The Office will not conduct any independent investigation of the invention promoter. Although the Act provides additional civil remedies for persons injured by invention promoters, those remedies must be pursued by the injured party without the involvement of the Office.
§ 4.4 Invention promoter reply.

(a) If a submission appears to meet the requirements of a complaint, the invention promoter named in the complaint will be notified of the complaint and given 30 days to respond. The invention promoter’s response will be made available to the public along with the complaint. If the invention promoter fails to reply within the 30-day time period set by the Office, the complaint will be made available to the public. Replies sent after the complaint is made available to the public will also be published.

(b) A complaint must be clearly marked, or otherwise identified, as a complaint under these rules. The complaint must include:

(1) The name and address of the complainant;
(2) The name and address of the invention promoter;
(3) The name of the customer;
(4) The invention promotion services offered or performed by the invention promoter;
(5) The name of the mass media in which the invention promoter advertised providing such services;
(6) An explanation of the relationship between the customer and the invention promoter; and
(7) A signature of the complainant.

(c) The complaint should fairly summarize the action of the invention promoter about which the person complains. Additionally, the complaint should include names and addresses of persons believed to be associated with the invention promoter. Complaints, and any replies, must be addressed to Office of Independent Inventor Programs, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, D.C. 20231.

(d) Complaints that do not provide the information requested in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section will be returned. If complainant’s address is not provided, the complaint will be destroyed.

(e) No originals of documents should be included with the complaint.

(f) A complaint can be withdrawn by the complainant or the named customer at any time prior to its publication.

§ 4.5 Notice by publication.

If the copy of the complaint that is mailed to the invention promoter is returned undelivered, then the Office will publish a Notice of Complaint Received in the Official Gazette, the FEDERAL REGISTER, or on the Office’s Internet home page. The invention promoter will be given 30 days from such notice to submit a reply to the complaint. If the Office does not receive a reply from the invention promoter within 30 days, the complaint alone will become publicly available.

§ 4.6 Attorneys and agents.

Complaints against registered patent attorneys and agents will not be treated under this section, unless a complaint fairly demonstrates that invention promotion services are involved. Persons having complaints about registered patent attorneys or agents should contact the Office of Enrollment and Discipline at the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Box OED, Washington, D.C. 20231, and the attorney discipline section of the attorney’s state licensing bar if an attorney is involved.
§ 5.2 Secrecy order.

§ 5.3 Prosecution of application under secrecy orders; withholding patent.

§ 5.4 Petition for rescission of secrecy order.

§ 5.5 Permit to disclose or modification of secrecy order.

§ 5.6-§ 5.8 [Reserved]

LICENSES FOR FOREIGN EXPORTING AND FILING

§ 5.11 License for filing in a foreign country an application on an invention made in the United States or for transmitting international application.

§ 5.12 Petition for license.

§ 5.13 Petition for license; no corresponding application.

§ 5.14 Petition for license; corresponding U.S. application.

§ 5.15 Scope of license.

§ 5.16-§ 5.17 [Reserved]

§ 5.18 Arms, ammunition, and implements of war.

§ 5.19 Export of technical data.

§ 5.20 Export of technical data relating to sensitive nuclear technology.

§ 5.25 Petition for retroactive license.

GENERAL

§ 5.31-§ 5.33 [Reserved]


SOURCE: 24 FR 10381, Dec. 22, 1959, unless otherwise noted.

SECRECY ORDERS

§ 5.1 Correspondence.

All correspondence in connection with this part, including petitions, must be addressed to “Assistant Commissioner for Patents (Attention Licensing and Review), Washington, DC 20231.”


§ 5.2 Secrecy order.

(a) When notified by the chief officer of a defense agency that publication or disclosure of the invention by the granting of a patent would be detrimental to the national security, an order that the invention be kept secret will be issued by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) Any request for compensation as provided in 35 U.S.C. 183 must not be made to the Patent and Trademark Office, but directly to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued.


§ 5.3 Prosecution of application under secrecy orders; withholding patent.

Unless specifically ordered otherwise, action on the application by the Office and prosecution by the applicant will proceed during the time an application is under secrecy order to the point indicated in this section:

(a) National applications under secrecy order which come to a final rejection must be appealed or otherwise prosecuted to avoid abandonment. Appeals in such cases must be completed by the applicant but unless otherwise specifically ordered by the Commissioner will not be set for hearing until the secrecy order is removed.

(b) An interference will not be declared involving national applications under secrecy order. However, if an applicant whose application is under secrecy order seeks to provoke an interference with an issued patent, a notice of that fact will be placed in the file wrapper of the patent. (See §1.607(d))

(c) When the national application is found to be in condition for allowance except for the secrecy order the applicant and the agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued will be notified. This notice (which is not a notice of allowance under §1.311 of this chapter) does not require reply by the applicant and places the national application in a condition of suspension until the secrecy order is removed. When the secrecy order is removed the Patent and Trademark Office will issue a notice of allowance under §1.311 of this chapter, or take such other action as may then be warranted.

(d) International applications under secrecy order will not be mailed, delivered or otherwise transmitted to the international authorities or the applicant. International applications under secrecy order will be processed up to the point where, if it were not for the
§ 5.4 Petition for rescission of secrecy order.

(a) A petition for rescission or removal of a secrecy order may be filed by, or on behalf of, any principal affected thereby. Such petition may be in letter form, and it must be in duplicate.

(b) The petition must recite any and all facts that purport to render the order ineffectual or futile if this is the basis of the petition. When prior publications or patents are alleged the petition must give complete data as to such publications or patents and should be accompanied by copies thereof.

(c) The petition must identify any contract between the Government and any of the principals, under which the subject matter of the application or any significant part thereof was developed, or to which the subject matter is otherwise related. If there is no such contract, the petition must so state.

(d) Appeal to the Secretary of Commerce, as provided by 35 U.S.C. 181, from a secrecy order cannot be taken until after a petition for rescission of the secrecy order has been made and denied. Appeal must be taken within sixty days from the date of the denial, and the party appealing, as well as the department or agency which caused the order to be issued, will be notified of the time and place of hearing.

§ 5.5 Permit to disclose or modification of secrecy order.

(a) Consent to disclosure, or to the filing of an application abroad, as provided in 35 U.S.C. 182, shall be made by a “permit” or “modification” of the secrecy order.

(b) Petitions for a permit or modification must fully recite the reason or purpose for the proposed disclosure. Where any proposed disclosee is known to be cleared by a defense agency to receive classified information, adequate explanation of such clearance should be made in the petition including the name of the agency or department granting the clearance and the date and degree thereof. The petition must be filed in duplicate.

(c) In a petition for modification of a secrecy order to permit filing abroad, all countries in which it is proposed to file must be made known, as well as all attorneys, agents and others to whom the material will be consigned prior to being lodged in the foreign patent office. The petition should include a statement vouching for the loyalty and integrity of the proposed disclosees and where their clearance status in this or the foreign country is known all details should be given.

(d) Consent to the disclosure of subject matter from one application under secrecy order may be deemed to be consent to the disclosure of common subject matter in other applications under secrecy order so long as not taken out of context in a manner disclosing material beyond the modification granted in the first application.

(e) Organizations requiring consent for disclosure of applications under secrecy order to persons or organizations in connection with repeated routine operation may petition for such consent in the form of a general permit. To be successful such petitions must ordinarily recite the security clearance status of the disclosees as sufficient for the highest classification of material that may be involved.

§§ 5.6–5.8 [Reserved]

LICENSES FOR FOREIGN EXPORTING AND FILING

§ 5.11 License for filing in a foreign country an application on an invention made in the United States or for transmitting an international application.

(a) A license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks under 35 U.S.C. 184 is required before filing any application for patent including any modifications, amendments, or supplements thereto or divisions thereof or
for the registration of a utility model, industrial design, or model, in a foreign patent office or any foreign patent agency or any international agency other than the United States Receiving Office, if the invention was made in the United States and:

(1) An application on the invention has been on file in the United States less than six months prior to the date on which the application is to be filed, or

(2) No application on the invention has been filed in the United States.

(b) The license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks referred to in paragraph (a) would also authorize the export of technical data abroad for purposes relating to the preparation, filing or possible filing and prosecution of a foreign patent application without separately complying with the regulations contained in 22 CFR parts 121 through 130 (International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR part 779 (Regulations of the Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR part 810 (Foreign Atomic Energy Programs of the Department of Energy).

(c) Where technical data in the form of a patent application, or in any form, is being exported for purposes related to the preparation, filing or possible filing and prosecution of a foreign patent application, without the license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, or on an invention not made in the United States, the export regulations contained in 22 CFR parts 120 through 130 (International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR parts 768-799 (Export Administration Regulations of the Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR part 810 (Assistance to Foreign Atomic Energy Activities Regulations of the Department of Energy) must be complied with unless a license is not required because a United States application was on file at the time of export for at least six months without a secrecy order under §5.2 and activities covered by 10 CFR part 810.

(d) If a secrecy order has been issued under §5.2, an application cannot be exported to, or filed in, a foreign country (including an international agency in a foreign country), except in accordance with §5.5.

(e) No license pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section is required:

(1) If the invention was not made in the United States, or

(2) If the corresponding United States application is not subject to a secrecy order under §5.2, and was filed at least six months prior to the date on which the application is filed in a foreign country, or

(3) For subsequent modifications, amendments and supplements containing additional subject matter to, or divisions of, a foreign patent application if:

(i) A license is not, or was not, required under paragraph (e)(2) of this section for the foreign patent application;

(ii) The corresponding United States application was not required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181; and

(iii) Such modifications, amendments, and supplements do not, or did not, change the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require any corresponding United States application to be or have been available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181.

(f) A license pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section can be revoked at any time upon written notification by the Patent and Trademark Office. An authorization to file a foreign patent application resulting from the passage of six months from the date of filing of a United States patent application may be revoked by the imposition of a secrecy order.


§5.12 Petition for license.

(a) Filing of an application for patent for inventions made in the United States will be considered to include a petition for license under 35 U.S.C. 184 for the subject matter of the application. The filing receipt will indicate if
a license is granted. If the initial automatic petition is not granted, a subsequent petition may be filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) Petitions for license should be presented in letter form, and must include the petitioner’s address and full instructions for delivery of the requested license when it is to be delivered to other than the petitioner. If expedited handling of the petition under this paragraph is sought, the petition must also include the fee set forth in §1.17(h).


§ 5.13 Petition for license; no corresponding application.

If no corresponding national or international application has been filed in the United States, the petition for license under §5.12(b) must also be accompanied by a legible copy of the material upon which a license is desired. This copy will be retained as a measure of the license granted.

(62 FR 53204, Oct. 10, 1997)

§ 5.14 Petition for license; corresponding U.S. application.

(a) When there is a corresponding United States application on file, a petition for license under §5.12(b) must also identify this application by application number, filing date, inventor, and title, but a copy of the material upon which the license is desired is not required. The subject matter licensed will be measured by the disclosure of the United States application.

(b) Two or more United States applications should not be referred to in the same petition for license unless they are to be combined in the foreign or international application, in which event the petition should so state and the identification of each United States application should be in separate paragraphs.

(c) When the application to be filed or exported abroad contains matter not disclosed in the United States application or applications, including the case where the combining of two or more United States applications introduces subject matter not disclosed in any of them, a copy of the application as it is to be filed in the foreign country or international application which is to be transmitted to a foreign international or national agency for filing in the Receiving Office, must be furnished with the petition. If however, all new matter in the foreign or international application to be filed is readily identifiable, the new matter may be submitted in detail and the remainder by reference to the pertinent United States application or applications.

(Pub. L. 94-131, 89 Stat. 685)


§ 5.15 Scope of license.

(a) Applications or other materials reviewed pursuant to §§5.12 through 5.14, which were not required to be made available for inspection by defense agencies under 35 U.S.C. 181, will be eligible for a license of the scope provided in this paragraph. This license permits subsequent modifications, amendments, and supplements containing additional subject matter to, or divisions of, a foreign patent application, if such changes to the application do not alter the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require the United States application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181. Grant of this license authorizing the export and filing of an application in a foreign country or the transmitting of an international application to any foreign patent agency or international patent agency when the subject matter of the foreign or international application corresponds to that of the domestic application. This license includes authority:

(1) To export and file all duplicate and formal application papers in foreign countries or with international agencies;

(2) To make amendments, modifications, and supplements, including divisions, changes or supporting matter consisting of the illustration, exemplification, comparison, or explanation of subject matter disclosed in the application; and
(3) To take any action in the prosecution of the foreign or international application provided that the adding of subject matter or taking of any action under paragraphs (a)(1) or (2) of this section does not change the general nature of the invention disclosed in the application in a manner which would require such application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 by including technical data pertaining to:

(i) Defense services or articles designated in the United States Munitions List applicable at the time of foreign filing, the unlicensed exportation of which is prohibited pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act, as amended, and 22 CFR parts 121 through 130; or

(ii) Restricted Data, sensitive nuclear technology or technology useful in the production or utilization of special nuclear material or atomic energy, dissemination of which is subject to restrictions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, and the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978, as implemented by the regulations for Unclassified Activities in Foreign Atomic Energy Programs, 10 CFR part 810, in effect at the time of foreign filing.

(b) Applications or other materials which were required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 will be eligible for a license of the scope provided in this paragraph. Grant of this license authorizes the export and filing of an application in a foreign country or the transmitting of an international application to any foreign patent agency or international patent agency. Further, this license includes authority to export and file all duplicate and formal papers in foreign countries with foreign and international patent agencies and to make amendments, modifications, and supplements to, file divisions of, and take any action in the prosecution of the foreign or international application, provided subject matter additional to that covered by the license is not involved.

(c) A license granted under §5.12(b) pursuant to §5.13 or §5.14 shall have the scope indicated in paragraph (a) of this section, if it is so specified in the license. A petition, accompanied by the required fee (§1.17(h)), may also be filed to change a license having the scope indicated in paragraph (b) of this section to a license having the scope indicated in paragraph (a) of this section. No such petition will be granted if the copy of the material filed pursuant to §5.13 or any corresponding United States application was required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181. The change in the scope of a license will be effective as of the date of the grant of the petition.

(d) In those cases in which no license is required to file the foreign application or transmit the international application, no license is required to file papers in connection with the prosecution of the foreign or international application not involving the disclosure of additional subject matter.

(e) Any paper filed abroad or transmitted to an international patent agency following the filing of a foreign or international application which changes the general nature of the subject matter disclosed at the time of filing in a manner which would require such application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 or which involves the disclosure of subject matter listed in paragraphs (a)(3)(i) or (ii) of this section must be separately licensed in the same manner as a foreign or international application.

(f) Licenses separately granted in connection with two or more United States applications may be exercised by combining or dividing the disclosures, as desired, provided:

(1) Subject matter which changes the general nature of the subject matter disclosed at the time of filing or which involves subject matter listed in paragraph (a)(3)(i) or (ii) of this section is not introduced, and

(2) In the case where at least one of the licenses was obtained under §5.12(b), additional subject matter is not introduced.
§§ 5.16–5.17

(g) A license does not apply to acts done before the license was granted. See §5.25 for petitions for retroactive licenses.


§§ 5.16–5.17 [Reserved]

§ 5.18 Arms, ammunition, and implements of war.

(a) The exportation of technical data relating to arms, ammunition, and implements of war generally is subject to the International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State (22 CFR parts 120 through 130); the articles designated as arms, ammunition, and implements of war are enumerated in the U.S. Munitions List (22 CFR part 121). However, if a patent applicant complies with regulations issued by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks under 35 U.S.C. 184, no separate approval from the Department of State is required unless the applicant seeks to export technical data exceeding that used to support a patent application in a foreign country. This exemption from Department of State regulations is applicable regardless of whether a license from the Commissioner is required by the provisions of §§5.11 and 5.12 (22 CFR part 125).

(b) When a patent application containing subject matter on the Munitions List (22 CFR part 121) is subject to a secrecy order under §5.2 and a petition is made under §5.5 for a modification of the secrecy order to permit filing abroad, a separate request to the Department of State for authority to export classified information is not required (22 CFR part 125).


§ 5.19 Export of technical data.

(a) Under regulations (15 CFR 770.10(j)) established by the Department of Commerce, a license is not required in any case to file a patent application or part thereof in a foreign country if the foreign filing is in accordance with the regulations (§§5.11 through 5.25) of the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) An export license is not required for data contained in a patent application prepared wholly from foreign-origin technical data where such application is being sent to the foreign inventor to be executed and returned to the United States for subsequent filing in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (15 CFR 779A.3(e)).


§ 5.20 Export of technical data relating to sensitive nuclear technology.

Under regulations (10 CFR 810.7) established by the United States Department of Energy, an application filed in accordance with the regulations (§§5.11 through 5.25) of the Patent and Trademark Office and eligible for foreign filing under 35 U.S.C. 184, is considered to be information available to the public in published form and a generally authorized activity for the purposes of the Department of Energy regulations.


§ 5.25 Petition for retroactive license.

(a) A petition for a retroactive license under 35 U.S.C. 184 shall be presented in accordance with §5.13 or §5.14(a), and shall include:

(1) A listing of each of the foreign countries in which the unlicensed patent application material was filed.

(2) The dates on which the material was filed in each country.

(3) A verified statement (oath or declaration) containing:

(i) An averment that the subject matter in question was not under a secrecy order at the time it was filed abroad, and that it is not currently under a secrecy order.

(ii) A showing that the license has been diligently sought after discovery of the proscribed foreign filing, and

(iii) An explanation of why the material was filed abroad through error and without deceptive intent without the required license under §5.11 first having been obtained, and

(4) The required fee (§1.17(h)).

The above explanation must include a showing of facts rather than a mere allegation of action through error and without deceptive intent. The showing of facts as to the nature of the error should include statements by those persons having personal knowledge of the acts regarding filing in a foreign
country and should be accompanied by copies of any necessary supporting documents such as letters of transmittal or instructions for filing. The acts which are alleged to constitute error without deceptive intent should cover the period leading up to and including each of the proscribed foreign filings.

(b) If a petition for a retroactive license is denied, a time period of not less than thirty days shall be set, during which the petition may be renewed. Failure to renew the petition within the set time period will result in a final denial of the petition. A final denial of a petition stands unless a petition is filed under §1.181 within two months of the date of the denial. If the petition for a retroactive license is denied with respect to the invention of a pending application and no petition under §1.181 has been filed, a final rejection of the application under 35 U.S.C. 185 will be made.


GENERAL

§§ 5.31–5.33 [Reserved]

PART 6—CLASSIFICATION OF GOODS AND SERVICES UNDER THE TRADEMARK ACT

EDITORIAL NOTE: Part 6 is placed in a separate grouping of parts pertaining to trademarks. It appears on page 280 of this volume.

PART 7 [RESERVED]
INDEX I—RULES RELATING TO PATENTS

EDITORIAL NOTE: This listing is provided for information purposes only. It is compiled and kept up-to-date by the Department of Commerce.

Section

A

Abandoned applications:
- Abandonment by failure to prosecute............................................................. 1.135
- Abandonment during interference.................................................................. 1.662(a)
- Abandonment for failure to pay issue fee..................................................... 1.137
- Destruction after 20 yrs. unless marked for preservation ......................... 1.14(b)
- Express abandonment .................................................................................. 1.138
- Processing and retention fee ...................................................................... 1.21(l)
- Referred to in issued patents ...................................................................... 1.14
- Revival of...................................................................................................... 1.137
- When to public inspection .......................................................................... 1.14

Abandonment of application. (See Abandoned applications.)

Abstract of the disclosure.(content, physical requirements) ............................ 1.72
- Separate sheet required for commencement of .......................................... 1.72(b)
- Arrangement in overall application ............................................................. 1.14, 1.163

Access to pending applications (limited) ....................................................... 1.14

Action by applicant ...................................................................................... 1.111-1.138

Address, Correspondence, only one recognized by Office ............................ 1.33(c)
- Address for notice to Commissioner of appeal to Fed. Cir ......................... 1.302(c)
- Address of Solicitor’s Office ...................................................................... 1.1(a)(3)
- Address of the Patent and Trademark Office ............................................ 1.14
- Box CPA .................................................................................................... 1.53(d)(9)
- Box Interference .......................................................................................... 1.11(e)
- Box M. Fee .................................................................................................. 1.11(d)
- Box Patent Ext .............................................................................................. 1.11(f)
- Box PCT ....................................................................................................... 1.11(b)
- Box Provisional Patent Application ............................................................. 1.11(l)
- Box Reexam ................................................................................................. 1.11(c)

Administrator or executor, may make application and receive patent ......... 1.42

Proof of authority .......................................................................................... 1.44

Admission to practice. (See Attorneys and agents.)

Affidavit (see also Oath in patent application):
- After appeal .................................................................................................. 1.195
- In support of application for reissue.............................................................. 1.175
- To disqualify commonly owned patent as prior art .................................... 1.130
- To overcome cited patent or publication ................................................... 1.131
- Traversing grounds of rejection ................................................................. 1.132

Agents. (See Attorneys and agents.)

Allowance and issue of patent:
- Amendment after allowance ...................................................................... 1.312
- Deferral of issuance ..................................................................................... 1.314
- Delayed payment of issue fee ..................................................................... 1.137
- Delivery of patent ....................................................................................... 1.315
- Issuance of patent ....................................................................................... 1.155, 1.314
- Notice of allowance .................................................................................... 1.155, 1.311
Patent to issue upon payment of issue fee .................................................. 1.314
Patent to lapse if issue fee is not paid in full ........................................... 1.317
Patent withheld for nonpayment of issue fee ........................................ 1.155, 1.316
Withdrawal from issue ........................................................................... 1.313

Appeals and Interferences ........................................................................ 1.196
Amendment:
Adding or substituting claims ................................................................. 1.111, 1.121
After decision on appeal, based on new rejection of Board of Patent Ap-
peals and Interferences ........................................................................... 1.196
After final action........................................................................................ 1.116
After final action (transitional procedures) .............................................. 1.129
After notice of allowance ....................................................................... 1.312
By patent owner ....................................................................................... 1.530
Copying claim of another application for interference ......................... 1.603
Copying claim of issued patent ................................................................. 1.606, 1.607

Drawings .................................................................................................. 1.121
Erasures and insertions ............................................................................. 1.121
Involving a departure from original invention .......................................... 1.121
May be required ....................................................................................... 1.121
Not covered by original oath .................................................................. 1.67
Numbering of claims ............................................................................... 1.126

Of amendments ........................................................................................ 1.121
Of claims .................................................................................................. 1.111, 1.121
Of disclosure ............................................................................................. 1.121
Of drawing ................................................................................................ 1.121
Of specification ......................................................................................... 1.121

Paper and writing ..................................................................................... 1.52
Petition from refusal to admit ................................................................. 1.127
Proposed during interference .................................................................. 1.615
Reissue ...................................................................................................... 1.121(b), 1.173, 1.174
Requisites of ........................................................................................... 1.133, 1.111, 1.116, 1.121, 1.125
Right to amend ........................................................................................ 1.111, 1.116, 1.121, 1.127

Of amendments ........................................................................................ 1.121
Of claims .................................................................................................. 1.111, 1.121
Of disclosure ............................................................................................. 1.121
Of drawing ................................................................................................ 1.121
Of specification ......................................................................................... 1.121

Signature to ................................................................................................ 1.33
Substitute specification ............................................................................ 1.125
Time for .................................................................................................... 1.124

To accompany motion to amend interference ......................................... 1.633
To applications in interference ................................................................. 1.633
To correct inaccuracies or prolixity ......................................................... 1.121
To correspond to original drawing or specification ................................. 1.121
To preliminary statement in interference ............................................... 1.628
To reissues ............................................................................................... 1.173, 1.174
To save from abandonment ................................................................... 1.135

Amino Acid Sequences. (See Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequences.)

Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences:
Action following decision ........................................................................ 1.197
Affidavits after appeal ............................................................................. 1.195
Brief ........................................................................................................ 1.192
Decision by Board .................................................................................... 1.196
Examiner's answer .................................................................................. 1.193
Fees ........................................................................................................ 1.17
Hearing of ............................................................................................... 1.194
New grounds for refusing a patent .......................................................... 1.196
Notice of appeal ...................................................................................... 1.191
Index I

Rehearing ............................................................................................................ 1.197
Reopening after decision .................................................................................. 1.196
Reply brief ........................................................................................................... 1.199
Statement of grounds for rejecting, by Board of Patent Appeals and
Interferences ........................................................................................................ 1.196
Appeal to Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit:
Fee provided by rules of court .......................................................................... 1.301
From Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences .......................................... 1.301
Notice and reasons of appeal ........................................................................... 1.302
Time for .............................................................................................................. 1.302, 1.304
Applicant for patent .......................................................................................... 1.41-1.48
Change ............................................................................................................... 1.48
Deceased or insane inventor .............................................................................. 1.42, 1.43
Executor or administrator ................................................................................ 1.42
Informed of application number ......................................................................... 1.54
Joint changed to sole .......................................................................................... 1.48
Letters for, sent to attorney or agent ............................................................... 1.33
May be represented by an attorney or agent ................................................... 1.31
Personal attendance unnecessary ..................................................................... 1.2
Required to conduct business with decorum and courtesy ................................ 1.3
Required to report assistance received .............................................................. 1.33
Sole changed to joint .......................................................................................... 1.48
Sole changed to another sole .............................................................................. 1.48
Application for patent (see also Abandoned applications, Claims, Drawing,
Examination of application Reissues, Provisional applications, Specification):
Accepted and filed for examination only when complete .................................. 1.53
Access to ............................................................................................................. 1.14
Acknowledgement of filing ................................................................................ 1.54
Alteration after execution .................................................................................. 1.67
Alteration before execution .............................................................................. 1.52
Arrangement ....................................................................................................... 1.77, 1.154, 1.163
Continuation or division, reexecution not required ........................................... 1.53(b)
Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) ...................................................... 1.53(d)
Copies of, furnished to applicants .................................................................... 1.59
Cross-references of related applications ......................................................... 1.59
Deceased or insane inventor .............................................................................. 1.42, 1.43
Declaration ......................................................................................................... 1.42, 1.43
Duty of disclosure ............................................................................................... 1.56
Elements of, order and arrangement of ........................................................... 1.77, 1.154, 1.163
Execution in blank ............................................................................................. 1.67
Filed by other than inventor .............................................................................. 1.42, 1.43, 1.47
Filed apparently without all pages of specification, petition asserting all pages were filed ........................................................................................................ 1.53(e)
Filed apparently without any drawing, petition asserting drawing was filed, or was not necessary, or adding drawing along with new oath or declaration and seeking new filing date ......................................................... 1.53(e)
Filed apparently without all figures of drawing:
Petition asserting all figures of drawing were filed .......................................... 1.53(e)
Petition and filing of missing figures with new oath or declaration
seeking new filing date ....................................................................................... 1.182
Filing date ............................................................................................................ 1.53
Foreign language oath or declaration .............................................................. 1.69
Formulas and tables .......................................................................................... 1.58
General requisites .............................................................................................. 1.51
Identification required in letters concerning .................................................. 1.5
Incomplete papers not accepted and filed for examination ............................. 1.53
Interlineations, etc., to be indicated ................................................................... 1.52
Language, paper, writing, margin ...................................................................... 1.52
Assignments and recording:
Assignee:
Correspondence held with assignee of entire interest .................................................. 3.71, 3.73
If of entire interest, patent may issue to him ................................................................. 1.46, 3.81
If of undivided part interest, correspondence will be held with inventor ................... 1.33
If of undivided part interest, must assent to application for reissue of patent ............ 1.171, 1.172
If of undivided part interest, patent may issue jointly ................................................. 1.46, 3.81
May conduct prosecution of application ...................................................................... 3.71, 3.73
May take action in interference .................................................................................... 1.643
Taking of action in a patent matter before the Office by the Assignee, Assignee must establish its ownership of the patent application or patent involved to the satisfaction of the Commissioner .............................................. 3.73(b)
Assignments:
Abstracts of title, fee for ............................................................................................ 1.19(b)
Conditional assignments ............................................................................................. 3.56
Date of receipt is date of record .................................................................................. 3.51
Fees .............................................................................................................................. 1.2(h), 3.41
Cover Sheet required .................................................................................................. 3.28, 3.31
Correction of Cover Sheet errors ................................................................................ 3.34
Effect of recording ....................................................................................................... 3.54
Requirements for recording ....................................................................................... 3.21-3.41
If recorded before payment of issue fee, patent may issue to assignee ...................... 3.81
Must be recorded in Patent and Trademark Office to issue patent to assignee ................. 3.81
Orders for copies of ..................................................................................................... 1.12
Patent may issue to assignee ....................................................................................... 3.81
Recording of assignments .......................................................................................... 3.11
Records open to public inspection ............................................................................ 1.12
Must identify patent or application ............................................................................ 3.21
What will be accepted for recording ........................................................................... 3.11
Later filing of oath and filing fee .................................................................................. 1.53(f)
Must be made by actual inventor, with exceptions ...................................................... 1.41, 1.46
Names of all inventors required .................................................................................... 1.41, 1.53
Non-English language .................................................................................................. 1.52
Nonprovisional filed without at least one claim, filing of petition to convert to a provisional application ............................................................................................................. 3.53(c)(2)
Owned by Government .............................................................................................. 1.103
Papers having filing date not to be returned .............................................................. 1.59
Parts filed separately .................................................................................................. 1.54
Parts of application desirably filed together ............................................................... 1.54
Parts of complete application .................................................................................... 1.51
Processing fees ........................................................................................................... 1.17
Provisional application ............................................................................................... 1.9, 1.51(c), 1.53(c)
Relating to atomic energy .......................................................................................... 1.14(c)
Reservation for future application not permitted ...................................................... 1.79
Retention fee ............................................................................................................. 1.53(f)
Secrecy order ............................................................................................................. 5.1-5.6
Secret while pending .................................................................................................. 1.14
Serial number and filing date ..................................................................................... 1.54
Tables and formulas ................................................................................................... 1.58
To contain but one invention unless connected ......................................................... 1.141
To whom made ............................................................................................................ 1.51
Two or more by same party with conflicting claims ................................................. 1.78(b)
Application number .................................................................................................. 1.5(a), 1.53(a)
Arbitration award filing ............................................................................................. 3.35
Arbitration in interference .......................................................................................... 1.690
What will be accepted for recording ........................................................................... 3.11
Records open to public inspection ............................................................................ 1.12
A requirement for recording ....................................................................................... 3.11
Patent may issue to assignee ....................................................................................... 3.81
Orders for copies of ..................................................................................................... 1.12
Patent may issue to assignee ....................................................................................... 3.81
Recording of assignments .......................................................................................... 3.11
Records open to public inspection ............................................................................ 1.12
Must identify patent or application ............................................................................ 3.21
What will be accepted for recording ........................................................................... 3.11
Taking of action in a patent matter before the Office by the Assignee, Assignee must establish its ownership of the patent application or patent involved to the satisfaction of the Commissioner .............................................. 3.73(b)
Index I

Atomic energy applications reported to Department of Energy ................................................................. 1.14

Attorneys and agents:
  Acting in a representative capacity ........................................................................................................... 1.33, 1.34
  Assignment will not operate as a revocation of power ................................................................................ 1.36
  Associate ......................................................................................................................................................... 1.34
  Certificate of good standing ........................................................................................................................ 1.21(a)
  Fee on admission ...................................................................................................................................... 1.21(a)
  General powers not recognized .................................................................................................................... 1.34
  Office cannot aid in selection of .................................................................................................................... 1.31
  Personal interviews with examiners .......................................................................................................... 1.133
  Power of attorney or authorization of agent ............................................................................................... 1.34
  Representative capacity .............................................................................................................................. 1.33, 1.34
  Representing conflicting parties .................................................................................................................... 1.613
  Required to conduct business with decorum and courtesy ....................................................................... 1.3
  Revocation of power .................................................................................................................................. 1.36
  Withdrawal of .............................................................................................................................................. 1.36

Authorization of agents. (See Attorneys and agents.)

Award in arbitration ......................................................................................................................................... 1.335

B

Balance in deposit account ............................................................................................................................ 1.25

Basic filing fee .............................................................................................................................................. 1.16

Benefit of earlier application .......................................................................................................................... 1.78

Bill in equity. (See Civil action.)

Biological material. (See Deposit of Biological material)

Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. (See Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, Interferences.)

Box CPA ....................................................................................................................................................... 1.53(d)(9)
Box PCT ....................................................................................................................................................... 1.1(b)
Box Reexam ................................................................................................................................................. 1.1(c)

Briefs:
  At final hearing in interference .................................................................................................................. 1.656
  In petitions to Commissioner .................................................................................................................... 1.181
  On appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences ........................................................................ 1.192
  Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy ............................................................................. 1.3
  Business to be transacted in writing ........................................................................................................ 1.2

C

Certificate of correction .................................................................................................................................. 1.322, 1.323

Fees ................................................................................................................................................................. 1.20

Mistakes not corrected .................................................................................................................................. 1.325

Certificate of mailing (as first class mail) or transmission ........................................................................ 1.8

Certificate of mailing by Express Mail no longer required, effective December 2, 1996 ................................... 1.10

Certificate, Reexamination ............................................................................................................................ 1.570

Certified copies of records, papers, etc ......................................................................................................... 1.13

Fee for certification ........................................................................................................................................ 1.19(b)

Chemical and mathematical formulas and tables ....................................................................................... 1.58

Citation of prior art in patent ....................................................................................................................... 1.501

Citation of references .................................................................................................................................. 1.104(d)

Civil action .................................................................................................................................................... 1.303, 1.304

Claims (see also Examination of applications):
  Amendment of .............................................................................................................................................. 1.121
  Conflicting, same applicant or owner ......................................................................................................... 1.78
  Date of invention of .................................................................................................................................... 1.110
  Dependent .................................................................................................................................................. 1.75
  Design patent .............................................................................................................................................. 1.153
Correspondence:

Correction of inventorship ..................................................................................1.48
Correction, certificate of ..........................................................................1.322, 1.323
Copyright notice in drawings ..........................................................................1.84(s)
Copyright notice in specification....................................................................1.71(d)
Copies of records, fees..............................................................................1.19(b), 1.59
Copies of patents, records, etc..............................................................1.11, 1.12, 1.13
Continued Prosecution Application (CPA)......................................................1.53(d)
Continuing application for invention disclosed and claimed in prior applica-
tion....................................................................................................1.53(b)
Color drawing..............................................................................................1.84(a)(2)
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks (see also Petition to Commissioner):
Address of ...........................................................................................................1.1
All communications to Patent and Trademark Office to be addressed to ........................................................................................................1.1
Cases decided by Board reopened only by ....................................................1.198
Initiates reexamination ..............................................................................1.520
Reissue in divisions referred to .....................................................................1.177
Return of papers in violation of rule on decorum and courtesy ...1.3
Common Ownership, statement by assignee may be required .................1.78(c)
Complaints against examiners, how presented ..............................................1.3
Composition of matter, specimens of ingredients may be required ...........1.93
Computer program listings ........................................................................1.96
Concurrent office proceedings .......................................................................1.565
Conduct of reexamination proceedings .......................................................1.950
Conflicting claims, same applicant or owner in two or more applica-
tions .............................................................................................................1.78
Continuing application for invention disclosed and claimed in prior applica-
tion....................................................................................................1.53(b)
Copies of patents, records, etc.....................................................................1.11, 1.12, 1.13
Copyright notice in specification ..................................................................1.71(d)
Copyright notice in drawings ......................................................................1.84(s)
Correction, certificate of ...........................................................................1.322, 1.323
Correction of inventorship ...........................................................................1.48
Correspondence:
Address, only one recognized .......................................................................1.33(c)
All letters and communications to the Office to be addressed to (a) As-
sistant Commissioner for Patents; or (b) Assistant Commissioner for Trademarks; or (c) Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks ........................................................................................................1.1
Business with the Office to be transacted by .................................................1.2
Discounted communications returned ..............................................................1.3
Double, with different parties in interest not allowed ..................................1.33
Facsimile transmissions ..............................................................................1.6(d)
Held with attorney or agent ..........................................................................1.33
Identification of application or patent in letter relating to .........................1.15
May be held exclusively with assignee of entire interest .........................1.81
Nature of ...........................................................................................................1.4
Patent owners in reexamination ...................................................................1.33(c)
Receipt of letters and papers .......................................................................1.16
Resumed with principal, if power or authorization is revoked ...................1.36
Rules for conducting in general ...................................................................1.1-1.8
Secrecy, License to Export or File in Foreign Countries .........................1.57-1.59
Separate letter for each subject of inquiry ..................................................1.4

May be in dependent form ................................................................................1.75
More than one permitted ..............................................................................1.75
Multiple dependent .......................................................................................1.75
Must conform to invention and specification ..............................................1.75
Notice of rejection of ....................................................................................1.104
Numbering of .................................................................................................1.126
Part of complete application ........................................................................1.51
Plant patent ..................................................................................................1.164
Rejection of ..................................................................................................1.104(a)
Required ......................................................................................................1.75
Separate Sheet required for commencement of claim(s) ..............................1.52(b)
Twice or finally rejected before appeal ........................................................1.191

37 CFR Ch. I (7-1-00 Edition)
Index I

Signature requirements ................................................................. 1.4(d)
When no attorney or agent .......................................................... 1.33
With attorney or agent after power or authorization is filed ........ 1.33
Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, appeal to. (See Appeal to Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.)
CPA (Continued Prosecution Application) ...................................... 1.53(d)

D

Date of invention of subject matter of individual claims .................. 1.110
Day for taking any action or paying any fee falling on Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday ......................................................... 1.7
Death or insanity of inventor ............................................................ 1.42, 1.43
Decision on appeal by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences ..................................................................................... 1.196
Action following decision .............................................................. 1.197
Declaration (See also Oath in patent application).
Foreign language ........................................................................... 1.69
In lieu of oath ................................................................................... 1.68
In patent application ........................................................................ 1.68
Definitions:
Independent inventor ..................................................................... 1.9
National and international applications ........................................... 1.9
Nonprofit organization ................................................................... 1.9
Provisional application ................................................................... 1.9
Service of process ........................................................................... 15 C.F.R. Part 15
Small business concern ................................................................... 1.9
Small entity ....................................................................................... 1.9
Terms under Patent Cooperation Treaty ......................................... 1.401
Testimony by employees ................................................................ 15 C.F.R. Part 15a
Delivery of patent ........................................................................... 1.315
Deposit accounts ............................................................................. 1.25
Fees .................................................................................................. 1.21(b)
Deposit of computer program listings ............................................. 1.96
Deposit of Biological Material:
Acceptable depository .................................................................... 1.909
Biological material .......................................................................... 1.901
Examination procedures .................................................................. 1.909
Furnishing of samples ..................................................................... 1.908
Need or Opportunity to make a deposit .......................................... 1.902
Replacement or supplemental deposit ............................................ 1.905
Term of deposit .............................................................................. 1.906
Time of making original deposit ..................................................... 1.904
Viability of deposit ......................................................................... 1.907
Deposits (See also Testimony in interferences):
Certificate of officer to accompany ............................................ 1.676
Formalities to be observed in preparing ......................................... 1.677
Person before whom taken ............................................................. 1.674
To be sealed up, addressed, and forwarded to the Commissioner .... 1.676
When transcript must be filed ........................................................ 1.678
Description of invention. (See Specification.)
Design Patent Applications:
Arrangement of specification .......................................................... 1.154
Claim .............................................................................................. 1.153
Drawing .......................................................................................... 1.152
Filing fee ....................................................................................... 1.16(f)
Issue and term ................................................................. 1.155
Issue fee .............................................................................. 1.18(b)
Oath ....................................................................................... 1.153
Title, description and claim .................................................. 1.153
Determination of request for reexamination ............................ 1.515
Disclaimer, statutory:
  During interference ............................................................. 1.662(a)
  Fee ....................................................................................... 1.23(d)
  Terminal ............................................................................... 1.321
Disclosure, amendments to not permitted .............................. 1.121
Disclosure document fee ....................................................... 1.211(c)
Discovery in interferences ..................................................... 1.672-1.688
Division. (See Restriction of application.) ............................... 1.177
Document supply fees ............................................................ 1.19
Drawing:
  Amendment of ................................................................. 1.121
  Arrangement of views ......................................................... 1.84(h)
  Arrows ................................................................................. 1.84(r)
  Character of lines ............................................................... 1.84(f)
  Color ..................................................................................... 1.84(a)(2)
  Content of drawing ............................................................. 1.83
  Copyright notice ................................................................. 1.84(s)
  Correction ............................................................................ 1.84(w), 1.85(c), 1.121
  Cost of copies of ................................................................. 1.19
  Design application ............................................................... 1.152
  Extraneous matter .............................................................. 1.83(a)
  Figure for Official Gazette ................................................. 1.84(j)
  Filed with application .......................................................... 1.81
  Hatching and shading ........................................................ 1.84(m)
  Holes .................................................................................... 1.84(x)
  Identification ....................................................................... 1.84(c)
  If of an improvement, must show connection with old structure 1.83(b)
  Inferior or defective drawings will be rejected ....................... 1.85
  Informal drawings .............................................................. 1.85
  Ink ....................................................................................... 1.84(a)(1)
  Lead lines ............................................................................ 1.84(q)
  Legends ............................................................................... 1.84(o)
  Letters ................................................................................... 1.84(p)
  Location of names .............................................................. 1.84(c)
  Margin .................................................................................. 1.84(g)
  Mask work notice ............................................................... 1.84(s)
  Must be described in and referred to specification ................. 1.74
  Must show every feature of the invention ............................ 1.83
  No return or release ........................................................... 1.85(b)
  Numbering of sheets ......................................................... 1.84(t)
  Numbering of views .......................................................... 1.84(u)
  Numbers .............................................................................. 1.84(p)
  Original may be used with application for reissue ................. 1.174
  Original should be retained by applicant ............................. 1.81(a)
  Paper ..................................................................................... 1.84(e)
  Part of application papers ................................................... 1.52(b)
  Photographs ........................................................................ 1.84(b)
  Plant patent application ....................................................... 1.61, 1.665
  Printed and published by the Office when patented ............... 1.84
  Reference characters .......................................................... 1.74, 1.84(p)
Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reissue</td>
<td>1.174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release not permitted</td>
<td>1.85(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required by law when necessary for understanding</td>
<td>1.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale</td>
<td>1.84(k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security markings</td>
<td>1.84(v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shading</td>
<td>1.84(m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size of sheet</td>
<td>1.84(f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific rules relating to preparation of drawings will be enforced</td>
<td>1.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standards for drawings</td>
<td>1.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Views</td>
<td>1.84(h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When necessary, part of complete application</td>
<td>1.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duty of disclosure</td>
<td>1.56, 1.555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patent term extension</td>
<td>1.765</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Election of species</td>
<td>1.146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employee testimony (see Testimony by Office employees)</td>
<td>1.27, 1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establishing small entity status</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evidence. (See Testimony in interferences.)</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination of applications:</td>
<td>1.102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advancement of examination</td>
<td>1.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As to form</td>
<td>1.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation of references</td>
<td>1.104(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completeness of examiner's action</td>
<td>1.104(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examiner's action</td>
<td>1.104(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International-type search</td>
<td>1.104(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nature of examination</td>
<td>1.104(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reasons for allowance</td>
<td>1.104(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reexamination after rejection if requested</td>
<td>1.111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reexamination of original claims upon reissue</td>
<td>1.176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reissue</td>
<td>1.176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rejection of claims</td>
<td>1.104(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspension of</td>
<td>1.103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination of papers by attorney or agent not permitted without au-</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thorization</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examiners:</td>
<td>1.199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answers on appeal</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complaints against</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interviews with</td>
<td>1.133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executors</td>
<td>1.42, 1.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhibits. (See Models and exhibits.)</td>
<td>1.42, 1.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export of technical data</td>
<td>5.19, 5.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Express abandonment</td>
<td>1.138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Express Mail, Addressee Only, USPS</td>
<td>1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate of mailing by, not required eff. 12/296</td>
<td>1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of Receipt</td>
<td>1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petition in regard to</td>
<td>1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension of patent term</td>
<td>1.730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due to regulatory review period (35 U.S.C. 156):</td>
<td>1.740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applicant for</td>
<td>1.730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application for</td>
<td>1.740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calculation of term</td>
<td>1.778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal Drug Product</td>
<td>1.778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food or color additive</td>
<td>1.776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human drug product</td>
<td>1.775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical device</td>
<td>1.777</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Veterinary biological product................................................................. 1.779
Certificate .............................................................................................. 1.780
Conditions for ...................................................................................... 1.701, 1.720
Duty of disclosure .................................................................................. 1.765
Filing date of application ........................................................................ 1.741
Complete application, what constitutes ............................................. 1.741(a)
Review of determination via 1.181 ...................................................... 1.741(b)
Interim extension .................................................................................. 1.786
Multiple applications ............................................................................ 1.786
Patents subject to .................................................................................. 1.701, 1.710
Withdrawal of application ..................................................................... 1.770

Due to prosecution delay (35 U.S.C. 154):
Conditions for ...................................................................................... 1.701(a)
Appellate review .................................................................................. 1.701(a)(3)
Interference proceeding ....................................................................... 1.701(a)(1)
Secrecy order ....................................................................................... 1.701(a)(2)
Calculation of term:
Appellate Review ................................................................................ 1.701(c)(3)
Interference proceeding ...................................................................... 1.701(c)(1)
Maximum extension ............................................................................ 1.701(b)
Reduction of extension ........................................................................ 1.701(d)
Secrecy order ....................................................................................... 1.701(c)(2)

Extension of time .................................................................................. 1.136
Fees ....................................................................................................... 1.17(a)-(d)
Interference proceedings .................................................................... 1.645
Reexamination proceedings ............................................................... 1.550(c)

Facsimile transmissions......................................................................... 1.6(d), 1.8
Federal Holiday, defined for 35 USC 21 purposes ........................... 1.9(h)
FEDERAL REGISTER, publication of rules in ..................................... 1.351
Fees and payment of money:
Coupons ............................................................................................... 1.24
Deposit account .................................................................................... 1.25
Extension of time ................................................................................ 1.17(a)
Fee on appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit provided
by rules of court ................................................................................ 1.301
Fees in case of petitions ....................................................................... 1.181(d)
Fees payable in advance ...................................................................... 1.22
Foreign filing license petition ............................................................... 1.17(h)
Method of payment ............................................................................ 1.23
Money by mail at risk of sender .......................................................... 1.23
Money paid by mistake ....................................................................... 1.26
Petitions ................................................................................................. 1.17
Reexamination request ....................................................................... 1.201(c)
Refunds ................................................................................................ 1.26
Relating to international applications ............................................... 1.445
Schedule of fees and charges ............................................................. 1.16-1.21
Files and papers of abandoned applications, disposition ................. 1.14
Files open to the public ....................................................................... 1.11
Filing date of application ................................................................... 1.53
Filing fee part of complete application ............................................... 1.51
Filing fees ............................................................................................. 1.16
Filing in Post Office ............................................................................ 1.8(a)(2), 1.10
Filing of interference settlement agreements .................................... 1.666
Final rejection:
Index I

Appeal from ............................................................... 1.191
Response to ......................................................... 1.113, 1.116, 1.129
When and how given .......................................................... 1.113
First Class Mail (Priority Mail and Express Mail) ................. 1.8, 1.10
Foreign application .......................................................... 1.55
License to file ................................................................. 5.11-5.25
Foreign country:
  Taking oath in .......................................................... 1.66
  Taking testimony in .................................................... 1.671
Foreign mask work protection ........................................... Part 150
  Evaluation of request .............................................. 150.4
  Definition ............................................................. 150.1
  Duration of proclamation .......................................... 150.5
  Initiation of evaluation ............................................. 150.2
  Mailing address ....................................................... 150.6
  Submission of requests ............................................ 150.3
Foreign patent rights acquired by government .................. 101.1-101.11
  Licensing ............................................................. 102.1-102.6
Formulas and tables in patent applications ....................... 1.58
Fraud practiced or attempted on Office .......................... 1.28(d), 1.56

G

  Gazette. (See Official Gazette.)
  General authorization to charge deposit account .............. 1.25
  General information and correspondence ..................... 1.1-1.8, 1.10
  Government acquisition of foreign patent rights ............ Part 501
  Government employee invention ................................ Part 501
  Guardian of insane person may apply for patent ........... 1.43

H

  Hearings:
    Before the Board of Patents Appeals and Interferences .... 1.194
    Fee for appeal hearing ........................................ 1.17
    In disciplinary proceedings .................................. 1.144
    Of motions in interferences ................................... 1.640
  Holiday, time for action expiring on .......................... 1.6, 1.7

I

  Identification of application, patent or registration .......... 1.5
  Independent inventor:
    Definition .......................................................... 1.9
    Status statement .................................................. 1.27
  Information disclosure statement:
    At time of filing application .................................... 1.51
    Content of .......................................................... 1.98
    Not permitted in provisional applications ................ 1.51
    Reexamination ..................................................... 1.555
    To comply with duty of disclosure .......................... 1.97
  Information, Public .................................................... 1.15
  Insane inventor, application by guardian of .................. 1.43
  Interferences (See also Depositions, Notice, Preliminary Statement in interferences, Testimony in interferences):
    Abandonment of the contest .................................... 1.662
    Access to applications ........................................ 1.612
    Access to preliminary statement .............................. 1.631
    Action by examiner after interference ....................... 1.664
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Section Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action if statutory bar appears</td>
<td>1.641, 1.659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addition of new party by judge</td>
<td>1.642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amendment during</td>
<td>1.615, 1.634, 1.637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit</td>
<td>1.301, 1.302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applicant requests</td>
<td>1.604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbitration</td>
<td>1.690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Briefs at final hearing</td>
<td>1.656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burden of proof</td>
<td>1.657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil action</td>
<td>1.303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claims copied from patent</td>
<td>1.606, 1.607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claims of defeated parties stand finally disposed of</td>
<td>1.663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concession of priority</td>
<td>1.662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conflicting parties having same attorney</td>
<td>1.613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copying claims from patent</td>
<td>1.606, 1.607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correspondence</td>
<td>1.5(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declaration of interference</td>
<td>1.611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>1.601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disclaimer to avoid interference</td>
<td>1.662(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discovery</td>
<td>1.671, 1.688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissolution of</td>
<td>1.633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissolution on motion of judge</td>
<td>1.641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extensions of time</td>
<td>1.645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure of junior party to take testimony</td>
<td>1.652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure to prepare for</td>
<td>1.603-1.606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final decision</td>
<td>1.658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final hearing</td>
<td>1.654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final hearing briefs</td>
<td>1.656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifying claim from patent</td>
<td>1.607(a)(3), 1.637(e)(1)(vi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In what cases declared</td>
<td>1.602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspection of cases of opposing parties</td>
<td>1.612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interference with a patent</td>
<td>1.606-1.608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Junior party fails to overcome filing date of senior party</td>
<td>1.640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jurisdiction of interference</td>
<td>1.614</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manner of service of papers</td>
<td>1.646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matters considered in at final hearing</td>
<td>1.655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motions</td>
<td>1.633-1.638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAFTA country</td>
<td>1.601(r)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonpatentability argued at final hearing</td>
<td>1.655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice and access to applications of opposing parties</td>
<td>1.612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of intent to argue abandonment</td>
<td>1.632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of reexamination, reissue, protest or litigation</td>
<td>1.660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice to file civil action</td>
<td>1.303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notices and statements</td>
<td>1.611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order to show cause, judgment on the record</td>
<td>1.640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ownership of applications or patents involved</td>
<td>1.602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petitions</td>
<td>1.644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preliminary statement</td>
<td>1.621-1.631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation for</td>
<td>1.603-1.609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presumption as to order of invention</td>
<td>1.657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prosecution by assignee</td>
<td>1.643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommendation by Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences</td>
<td>1.659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record and exhibits</td>
<td>1.653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Records of, when open to public</td>
<td>1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reissue filed by patentee during</td>
<td>1.662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request by applicant</td>
<td>1.604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requests for findings of fact and conclusions of law</td>
<td>1.656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return of unauthorized papers</td>
<td>1.618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review of decision by civil action</td>
<td>1.303</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index I

Same party ..................................................................................................... 1.602
Sanctions for failure to comply with rules or order ..................................... 1.616
Sanctions for taking and maintaining a frivolous position ......................... 1.616
Second interference between same parties .................................................. 1.665
Secrecy order cases ....................................................................................... 5.3(b)
Service of papers ........................................................................................... 1.646
Statement of, from examiner to Board ......................................................... 1.609
Status of claims of defeated applicant after interference ............................ 1.663
Statutory disclaimer by patentee during ....................................................... 1.662
Suggestion of claims for interference ............................................................ 1.605
Summary judgement ...................................................................................... 1.617
Suspension of ex parte prosecution ............................................................... 1.615
Termination of interference .......................................................................... 1.661
Testimony copies ............................................................................................ 1.653
Time period for completion .......................................................................... 1.610
Times for discovery and taking testimony .................................................... 1.651
Translation of document in foreign language ............................................... 1.647
WTO member country ................................................................................. 1.601(s)

International application. (See Patent Cooperation Treaty.) ....................... 1.416
International Preliminary Examining Authority ............................................. 1.416
Interview summary ........................................................................................ 1.133
Interviews with examiner .............................................................................. 1.133, 1.560
Inventor (see also Applicant for patent, Oath in patent application):
Death or insanity of .................................................................................. 1.42, 1.43
Refuses to sign application ........................................................................... 1.47
To make application ....................................................................................... 1.47
Unavailable ...................................................................................................... 1.47
Inventor's certificate priority benefit ............................................................. 1.55
Inventorship and date of invention of the subject matter of individual claims .................................................................................................................. 1.110
Issue fee ........................................................................................................ 1.18
Issue of patent. (See Allowance and issue of patent.) ............................... 1.18

J

Joinder of inventions in one application ............................................................ 1.141
Joint inventors ............................................................................................... 1.45, 1.47, 1.324
Joint patent to inventor and assignee ............................................................. 1.46, 1.51
Jurisdiction:
After decision by Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences ............... 1.197, 1.198
After notice of allowance ............................................................................... 1.312
Of contested case .......................................................................................... 1.198

L

Lapsed patents ............................................................................................... 1.137, 1.317
Legal representative of deceased or incapacitated inventor ......................... 1.42, 1.43
Legibility of papers which are to become part of the permanent Office records .......................................................... 1.52(a)
Letters to the Office. (See Correspondence.) .................................................. 1.19(c)
License service fee ......................................................................................... 1.19(c)
License for foreign filing ................................................................................ 5.11-5.15
Licensing of government owned foreign patents ......................................... 102.1-102.6
List of U.S. Patents classified in a subclass, cost of .................................. 1.19(d)
Local delivery box rental .............................................................................. 1.21(d)

M

Maintenance fees ........................................................................................... 1.20(e)-(i)
Acceptance of delayed payment of ................................................................. 1.378
Fee address for .................................................................................................. 1.363
Review of decision refusing to accept ............................................................ 1.377
Submission of .................................................................................................... 1.366
Time for payment of .......................................................................................... 1.362
Mask work notice in specification .................................................................... 1.71(d)
Mask work notice on drawing ........................................................................... 1.84(s)
Mask work protection, foreign .......................................................................... Part 150
Microfiche deposit ............................................................................................... 1.96
Microorganisms. (see) Deposit of Biological Material.) ....................................
Minimum balance in deposit accounts ................................................................ 1.25
Misjoinder of inventor .......................................................................................... 1.48, 1.324
Missing pages when application filed                                          ........................................ 1.53(e)
Petition alleging there were no missing pages ................................................... 1.53(e)
Petition with new oath or declaration and later submission of missing pages seeking new filing date ........................................ 1.182
Mistake in patent, certificate thereof issued ....................................................... 1.322, 1.323
Models and exhibits:
Copies of ............................................................................................................. 1.95
If not claimed within reasonable time, may be disposed of by Commissioner .................................................................................................................. 1.94
If on examination model be found necessary request therefor will be made .......................................................................................................................... 1.91
In contested cases .............................................................................................. 1.676
May be required .................................................................................................. 1.91(b)
Model not generally required as part of application or patent .......................... 1.91
Not to be taken from the Office except in custody of sworn employee ............. 1.95
Return of .............................................................................................................. 1.94
Working model may be required ........................................................................ 1.91(b)
Motions in interference ....................................................................................... 1.633-1.637
To take testimony in foreign country .................................................................. 1.671

Name of applicant .............................................................................................. 1.41
New matter inadmissible in application .............................................................. 1.121
New matter inadmissible in reexamination ......................................................... 1.530(d), 1.552(b)
New matter inadmissible in reissue ................................................................... 1.173
Non-English language specification fee ............................................................. 1.17(k)
Nonprofit organization:
Definition ............................................................................................................ 1.9
Status statement .................................................................................................. 1.27
Notice:
Of allowance of application ............................................................................... 1.311
Of appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit ................................. 1.301, 1.302
Of arbitration award ........................................................................................... 1.335
Of defective reexamination request .................................................................... 1.510(c)
Of interference ..................................................................................................... 1.611
Of oral hearings on appeals before Board of Patent Appeals and Interference .................................................................................................................. 1.194
Of rejection of an application ............................................................................... 1.104(a)
Of use of official records as evidence ................................................................. 1.682
To conflicting parties with same attorney or agent ............................................. 1.613
Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequences:
Amendments to ................................................................................................... 1.825
Disclosure in patent application ........................................................................... 1.821
Index I

Format for sequence data ...................................................................................................... 1.822
Form and format for computer readable form ..................................................................... 1.824
Replacement of ..................................................................................................................... 1.825
Requirements ....................................................................................................................... 1.823

O

Oath or declaration in patent application:
Apostilles ................................................................................................................................. 1.66
Before whom taken in foreign countries .............................................................................. 1.66
Before whom taken in the United States ............................................................................. 1.66
By administrator or executor ............................................................................................... 1.63
By guardian of insane........................................................................................................... 1.63
Certificate of Officer administering continuation-in-part .................................................. 1.63(e)
Declaration ............................................................................................................................... 1.68
Foreign language .................................................................................................................... 1.69
Identification of specification to which it is directed .......................................................... 1.63
Inventor’s Certificate ............................................................................................................. 1.63
Made by inventor .................................................................................................................... 1.41, 1.63
Officers authorized to administer oaths ............................................................................. 1.66
Part of complete application ................................................................................................ 1.51
Person making ....................................................................................................................... 1.64
Requirements of .................................................................................................................... 1.63
Ribboned to other papers ..................................................................................................... 1.66
Sealed ..................................................................................................................................... 1.66
Signature to ............................................................................................................................... 1.63
Supplemental oath for matter disclosed but not originally claimed, or for other
noncompliance with 1.63 ......................................................................................................... 1.67
To acknowledge duty of disclosure ...................................................................................... 1.63
When taken abroad to seal all papers ................................................................................... 1.66
Oath or declaration in reissue application ............................................................................ 1.175
Object of the invention ......................................................................................................... 1.73
Office action time for response ............................................................................................. 1.134
Office fees. (See Fees and payment of money.) .....................................................................
Official action, based exclusively upon the written record .................................................. 1.12
Official business, should be transacted in writing ................................................................ 1.12
Official Gazette:
Amendments to rules published in .................................................................................... 1.351
One view of drawing published in ...................................................................................... 1.84(j)
Reexamination order published in is returned undelivered ............................................. 1.525(b)
Service of notices in ........................................................................................................... 1.646
Oral statements .................................................................................................................... 1.12
Order to reexamine .............................................................................................................. 1.525

P

Papers (requirements to become part of Office permanent records, e.g.
Legibility, capable of reproduction, etc.) ............................................................................. 1.52
Handwritten, no longer permitted ....................................................................................... 1.52(a)
Papers not received on Saturday, Sunday or holidays .......................................................... 1.6
Patent application (See Application for patent and Provisional patent applications.)
Patent attorneys and agents. (See Attorneys and agents.)
Patent Cooperation Treaty:
  Amendments and corrections during international processing ...................................... 1.471
  Amendments during international preliminary examination .............................................. 1.485
Applicant for international application .................................................. 1.421
Changes in person, name and address, where filed .................................. 1.421(f), 1.472
Conduct of international preliminary examination .................................. 1.484
Definition of terms .................................................................................. 1.401
Delays in meeting time limits .................................................................. 1.469
Demand for international preliminary examination ................................ 1.480
Designation of States ............................................................................. 1.432
Entry into national stage ........................................................................ 1.491
As a designated office ............................................................................ 1.494
As an elected office ................................................................................ 1.495
Examination at national stage ................................................................. 1.496
Fees:
  Designation fees .................................................................................. 1.432
  Due on filing of international application .............................................. 1.433(c)
  Failure to pay results in withdrawal of application .............................. 1.433(d), 1.432
  Filing and processing fees .................................................................... 1.445
  International preliminary examining .................................................. 1.482
  National stage ...................................................................................... 1.492
  Refunds ................................................................................................ 1.446
  Filing by other than inventor ................................................................ 1.425
  International application requirements ............................................... 1.431
  Claims .................................................................................................. 1.436
  Description ........................................................................................... 1.435
  Drawings ............................................................................................... 1.437
  Physical requirements ......................................................................... 1.439
  Request ................................................................................................ 1.434
  International Bureau ............................................................................. 1.415
  International Preliminary Examining Authority .................................. 1.416
  Inventor deceased ................................................................................ 1.422
  Inventor insane or legally incapacitated .............................................. 1.423
  Inventors, joint .................................................................................... 1.424
  National stage examination ................................................................. 1.496
  Oath or declaration at national stage .................................................... 1.497
  Priority, claim for ................................................................................ 1.451
  Record copy to International Bureau, Transmittal procedures ............. 1.461
  Representation by attorney or agent .................................................... 1.455
  Rule 13 ................................................................................................. 1.475
  Time limits for processing applications .............................................. 1.465, 1.468
United States as:
  Designated Office ............................................................................... 1.414, 1.497
  International Searching Authority ....................................................... 1.413
  Receiving Office .................................................................................. 1.412
Unity of invention:
  Before International Searching Authority .......................................... 1.475, 1.476
  Before International Preliminary Examining Authority ...................... 1.488
  National stage ..................................................................................... 1.499
  Protest to lack of ................................................................................ 1.477, 1.489
Patent policy, government ...................................................................... 100.1-100.11
Patentee notified of interference ............................................................. 1.492
Patents (see also Allowance and issue of Patent):
  Available for license or sale, publication of notice ................................ 1.21(i)
  Certified copies of ............................................................................ 1.13
  Copying claims of ............................................................................ 1.606, 1.607
  Correction of errors in ........................................................................ 1.171, 1.322, 1.323, 1.324
  Date, duration and form .................................................................... 1.157
  Delivery of ......................................................................................... 1.315
  Disclaimer ........................................................................................... 1.321
Index I

Identification required in letters concerning ................................................................. 1.5
Lapsed, for nonpayment of issue fee ............................................................................ 1.137
Obtainable by civil action ............................................................................................ 1.103
Price of copies ............................................................................................................ 1.19
Records of, open to public .......................................................................................... 1.11
Reissuing of, when defective ........................................................................................ 1.171-1.179
Payment of fees .......................................................................................................... 1.23
Personal attendance unnecessary ................................................................................ 1.2
Petition for reissue ...................................................................................................... 1.171, 1.172
Petition to Commissioner:
  Fees .......................................................................................................................... 1.17
  For delayed payment of issue fee ............................................................................ 1.137
  For license for foreign filing .................................................................................... 5.12
  For the revival of an abandoned application .......................................................... 1.137
  From formal objections or requirements .................................................................. 1.113, 1.181
  From requirement for restriction ............................................................................. 1.129, 1.144
  General requirements .............................................................................................. 1.181
  In interferences ........................................................................................................ 1.644
  In reexamination ...................................................................................................... 1.515(c)
  On refusal of examiner to admit amendment ......................................................... 1.127
  Questions not specifically provided for ...................................................................... 1.182
  Suspension of rules .................................................................................................. 1.183
  To exercise supervisory authority ............................................................................. 1.181
  To make special ....................................................................................................... 1.102
  Upon objection that appeal is informal .................................................................... 1.193
Plant patent applications:
  Applicant .................................................................................................................... 1.162
  Claim ......................................................................................................................... 1.164
  Declaration ............................................................................................................... 1.162
  Description .............................................................................................................. 1.162
  Drawings .................................................................................................................. 1.165
  Examination ............................................................................................................ 1.167
  Fee for copies .......................................................................................................... 1.19
  Filing fee .................................................................................................................. 1.18(g)
  Issue fee .................................................................................................................. 1.18(c)
  Oath .......................................................................................................................... 1.162
  Rules applicable ...................................................................................................... 1.161
  Specification ............................................................................................................ 1.163
  Specimens ................................................................................................................ 1.166
  Post issuance fees .................................................................................................... 1.120
  Post Office receipt as filing date .............................................................................. 1.10
  Postal emergency or interruption ............................................................................. 1.6(e)
Power of attorney. (See Attorneys and agents.)
  Preliminary statement in interferences:
    Access to ................................................................................................................ 1.631
    Contents of, invention made in other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country ............................................................. 1.624
    Correction of statement on motion ......................................................................... 1.628
    Effect of statement ............................................................................................... 1.629
    Failure to file ......................................................................................................... 1.639, 1.640
    In case of motion to amend interference ................................................................ 1.633
    May be amended if defective ................................................................................ 1.628
    Not evidence ......................................................................................................... 1.630
    Reliance on prior application ................................................................................ 1.626
    Requirement for .................................................................................................... 1.621
    Sealed before filing .............................................................................................. 1.627
    Service on opposing parties .................................................................................. 1.621
Reexamination:
Records used as evidence in interference...........................................................1.682
Records of the Patent and Trademark Office ...............................................1.11-1.15

Recording of assignments. (See Assignments and recording.)

Reasons for allowance ...................................................................................1.104(e)
Reconsideration of Office action .................................................................1.112

Reexamination:
Amendments, manner of making.................................................................1.121(c)
Appeal to Board ..........................................................................................1.111(c)
Appeal to Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit ..................................1.301
Certificate ....................................................................................................1.655
Civil action .................................................................................................1.303

Concurrent office proceedings .................................................................1.565
Conduct of proceedings ................................................................................1.550

Provisional patent applications:
Claiming the benefit of ................................................................................1.78(a)(3)
Filing date ....................................................................................................1.53
Filing fee .....................................................................................................1.16(k)
General requisites ......................................................................................1.51(b)(2)
Later filing of filing fee and cover sheet.....................................................1.53(g)
Names of all inventors required .................................................................1.41, 1.53(c)
No examination ..........................................................................................1.53(c)(2)
No right of priority ..................................................................................1.53(c)(2)
Parts of complete provisional application ................................................1.51(c)
Processing fees .........................................................................................1.17
Revival of ....................................................................................................1.137
When abandoned ......................................................................................1.53(e)(2)
Public information ......................................................................................1.15
Public use proceedings ...............................................................................1.292
Fee ................................................................................................................1.17(j)
Publication: Of reexamination certificate ..................................................1.570(f)

Prior invention, affidavit or declaration of, to overcome cited patent or
publication.................................................................................................1.131

Priority, right of, under treaty or law ..........................................................1.35

Proclamation as to protection of foreign mask works ..................................Part 150
Production of documents in legal proceedings .........................................15 C.F.R. Part 15a
Protests to grant of patent ...........................................................................1.291

Public use proceedings................................................................................1.292
Public information.......................................................................................1.15
Publication: Of reexamination certificate ..................................................1.570(f)

Processing and retention fee .....................................................................1.17(j)
When abandoned ......................................................................................1.53(e)(2)
Revival of ....................................................................................................1.137
When abandoned ......................................................................................1.53(e)(2)

Reconsideration of assignments and recording.) Records of the Patent
and Trademark Office ................................................................................1.11-1.15

Revival of ....................................................................................................1.137

Subsequent testimony alleging prior dates excluded ..................................1.629
When opened to inspection .........................................................................1.631

Preserved in confidence, applications..........................................................1.12 and 1.14

Printing testimony .......................................................................................1.653
Prior art citation in patent ..........................................................................1.150
Prior Art, disqualification of commonly owned patent as .........................1.130
Prior art may be made of record in patent file...........................................1.501
Prior art statement:

Content of ..................................................................................................1.98
In reexamination .........................................................................................1.555
To comply with duty of disclosure..............................................................1.97
Index I

Correspondence address ................................................................. 1.33(c)
Decision of request ................................................................. 1.515
Duty of disclosure ................................................................. 1.355
Examiner's action ................................................................. 1.104
Fee ................................................................. 1.20(c)
Fee charged to deposit account .................................................. 1.25
Fee refund ................................................................. 1.26
Identification in letter ............................................................... 1.5(d)
Initiated by Commissioner ............................................................ 1.520
Interference ................................................................. 1.565
Interviews ................................................................. 1.560
Open to public ........................................................................ 1.11(d)
Order ................................................................. 1.525
Reconsideration ........................................................................ 1.112
Refund of fee ................................................................. 1.26
Reply by requester ..................................................................... 1.535
Reply to action ........................................................................ 1.111
Request ................................................................. 1.510
Response consideration .............................................................. 1.540
Scope ......................................................................................... 1.552
Service ................................................................. 1.248
Statement of patent owner .............................................................. 1.531
Reference characters in drawings .................................................. 1.74, 1.84(p)
References cited on examination ....................................................... 1.104(d)
Refund of money paid by mistake .................................................... 1.26
Register of Government interest in patents ........................................ 7.1-7.7
Rehearing:
Of appeal decisions by Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences ............... 1.197(b)
Request for, time for appeal after action on .................................................. 1.304
Reissues:
Applicants, assignees ................................................................. 1.172
Application for reissue ............................................................... 1.171
Application made and sworn to by inventor, if living ........................................ 1.172
Amendment to specification ................................................................. 1.173
Declaration ................................................................. 1.175
Drawings ...................................................................................... 1.174
Examination of reissue ............................................................... 1.176
Filed during interference ................................................................ 1.652(b)
Filing during reexamination ............................................................... 1.965
Filing fee ....................................................................................... 1.16
Filing of announced in Official Gazette .................................................. 1.11(b)
Grounds for and requirements ........................................................ 1.171-1.179
Issue fee ................................................................................ 1.18(a)
Loss of original patent ................................................................. 1.178
Notice of reissue application .............................................................. 1.179
Oath ......................................................................................... 1.175
Open to public ........................................................................... 1.11
Original claims subject to reexamination .................................................. 1.176
Original patent surrendered ............................................................. 1.178
Reissue in divisions ..................................................................... 1.177
Specification ............................................................................. 1.173
Take precedence in order of examination .................................................. 1.176
To contain no new matter ................................................................ 1.173
What must accompany application ......................................................... 1.171, 1.172
When in interference .................................................................. 1.660
Rejection:
After two rejections appeal may be taken from examiner to Board of Appeals .................................................. 1.191
Applicant will be notified of rejection with reasons and references ........................................ 1.104
Examiner may rely on admissions by applicant or patent owner, or facts within examiner’s knowledge .............................................................. 1.104(c)
Final ........................................................................................................ 1.113
Formal objections ....................................................................................... 1.104
On account of invention shown by others but not claimed, how overcome .............................................................. 1.131
References will be cited ........................................................................... 1.104(c)
Requisites of notice of ........................................................................... 1.104
Reply brief ............................................................................................... 1.153
Reply by applicant or patent owner .............................................................. 1.111
Reply by requester ..................................................................................... 1.535
Representative capacity ........................................................................ 1.34(a)
Request for reconsideration ........................................................................ 1.112
Request for reexamination ........................................................................ 1.510
Reservation clauses not permitted ................................................................ 1.79
Response time to Office action ................................................................... 1.134
Restriction of application ............................................................................ 1.141-1.146
Claims to nonelected invention withdrawn .................................................... 1.142
Constructive election .................................................................................. 1.145
Petition from requirements for ................................................................ 1.129, 1.144
Provisional election ..................................................................................... 1.143
Reconsideration of requirement .................................................................. 1.143
Requirement for .......................................................................................... 1.142
Subsequent presentation of claims for different invention ............................ 1.145
Transitional procedures .............................................................................. 1.129
Retention fees ............................................................................................ 1.21(l), 1.53(f)
Revival of abandoned application ................................................................ 1.137
Unavoidable abandonment fee ...................................................................... 1.17(l)
Unintentional abandonment fee .................................................................. 1.17(m)
Revocation of power of attorney or authorization of agent ............................. 1.36
Rules of Practice:
Amendments to rules will be published .................................................... 1.351

Saturday, when last day falls on ................................................................. 1.7
Scope of reexamination proceedings .......................................................... 1.552
Secrecy order ......................................................................................... 5.1-5.6
Serial number of application (Obsolete terminology) (see Application Number) .............................................................. 1.5, 1.53, 1.54(b), 1.62(e)
Service of notices:
For taking testimony .................................................................................. 1.673
In interference cases ................................................................................... 1.611
Of appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit .......................... 1.301
Service of papers ....................................................................................... 1.248
Service of process ..................................................................................... 15 C.F.R. Part 15
Acceptance of service of process ............................................................... 15.3
Definition ................................................................................................. 15.2
Scope and purpose ..................................................................................... 15.1
Shortened period for response .................................................................... 1.134
Signature:
Original required for certain correspondence ........................................... 1.4(d)
Copy Acceptable for some correspondence ................................................ 1.4(d)
To amendments, etc ................................................................................... 1.33
To express abandonment ........................................................................... 1.133
Index I

To oath ................................................................. 1.63
To reissue oath or declaration ........................................ 1.172
Small business concern:
Definition ...................................................................... 1.9
Status statement .......................................................... 1.27
Small entity:
Definition ...................................................................... 1.9
License to Federal Agency .................................................. 1.27
Statement ....................................................................... 1.27
Status in parent application ................................................. 1.28
Status establishment ......................................................... 1.27, 1.28
Status update .................................................................... 1.28
Solicitor's address .......................................................... 1.1(a)(3)
Species of invention claimed ............................................. 1.141, 1.146
Specification (see also Application for patent, Claims):
Abstract ........................................................................ 1.72
Amendments to ............................................................ 1.121, 1.125
Arrangement of ............................................................. 1.77, 1.154, 1.163
Best mode ....................................................................... 1.71
Claim ............................................................................ 1.75
Contents of ...................................................................... 1.71-1.75
Copyright notice .............................................................. 1.71(d)
Cross-references to other applications ................................. 1.78
Description of the invention ............................................. 1.71
Erasures and insertions must not be made by applicant .......... 1.121
If defective, reissue to correct .............................................. 1.171-1.179
Mask work notice ............................................................ 1.71(d)
Must conclude with specific and distinct claim ....................... 1.75
Must point out new improvements specifically ...................... 1.71
Must refer by figures to drawings ........................................ 1.74
Must set forth the precise invention .................................... 1.71
Not returned after completion ............................................ 1.59
Object of the invention ...................................................... 1.73
Order of arrangement in framing ......................................... 1.77
Paper, writing, margins .................................................... 1.52
Part of complete application .............................................. 1.51
Reference to drawings ...................................................... 1.74
Requirements of .......................................................... 1.71-1.75
Reservation clauses not permitted ....................................... 1.79
Substitute ....................................................................... 1.125
Summary of the invention ................................................. 1.73
Title of the invention ....................................................... 1.72
To be rewritten, if necessary ........................................... 1.125
Specimens. (See Models and exhibits.)
Specimens of composition of matter to be furnished when required .................................................. 1.93
Specimens of plants ................................................................ 1.166
Statement of status as small entity .................................... 1.27
Statutory disclaimer fee ..................................................... 1.20(d)
Statutory invention registrations .......................................... 1.293
Examination of ............................................................. 1.294
Publication of ............................................................... 1.297
Review of decision finally refusing to publish ......................... 1.295
Withdrawal of request for publication of ................................ 1.296
Sufficient funds in deposit account ...................................... 1.25
Suit in equity. (See Civil action.)
Summary of invention ...................................................... 1.73
Sunday, when last day falls on ........................................... 1.7
Supervisory authority, petition to Commissioner to exercise .............................. 1.181

217
Supplemental oath for amendment presenting claims for matter disclosed but not originally claimed .......................................................... 1.67
Surcharge for oath or basic filing fee filed after filing date .............. 1.16(e), 1.53(f)
Suspension of action ........................................................................................................... 1.103
Suspension of ex parte prosecution during interference .................... 1.615
Suspension of rules ........................................................................................................... 1.183
Symbols for drawings ................................................................................................. 1.84(n)
Symbols for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data .................... 1.822

T

Tables in patent applications ....................................................................................... 1.58
Terminal disclaimer ....................................................................................................... 1.321
Testimony by Office employees ............................................................................... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.8
Definition ..................................................................................................................... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.2
Policy re demand for testimony or document production ...................... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.3
Procedures re demand for testimony or document production .......... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.4
Private litigation .......................................................................................................... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.6
Proceedings involving the United States ................................................................. 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.7
Requests for confidential documents ................................................................. 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.7
Scope ............................................................................................................................ 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.1
Subpoena of Office employee ............................................................................. 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.5
Testimony of employees in proceedings involving U.S ...................... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.8
Testimony in interferences:
Additional time for taking .................................................................................. 1.645
Assignment of times for taking ........................................................................ 1.651
Certification and filing by officer ........................................................................ 1.676
Copies of ...................................................................................................................... 1.653
Depositions must be filed ................................................................................... 1.678
Discovery .................................................................................................................... 1.687
Effect of errors and irregularities in deposition ........................................... 1.685
Evidence must comply with rules ........................................................................ 1.671
Examination of witnesses ..................................................................................... 1.675
Failure to take ............................................................................................................... 1.652
Form of deposition .................................................................................................... 1.677
Formal objections to ............................................................................................... 1.685
Formalities in preparing depositions ................................................................. 1.674-1.677
In foreign countries ................................................................................................. 1.671
Inspection of testimony .......................................................................................... 1.679
Manner of taking testimony of witnesses ....................................................... 1.672
Motion to extend time for taking ........................................................................ 1.645
Not considered if not taken and filed in compliance with rules .............. 1.671
Notice of examination of witnesses ................................................................... 1.673
Notice of intent to rely on affidavit ................................................................. 1.671(1).
Objections noted in depositions .......................................................................... 1.675
Weight of deposition testimony taken in foreign country ...................... 1.671(j)
Objections to formal matters ................................................................................. 1.685
Official records and printed publications ....................................................... 1.682
Officer’s certificate .................................................................................................... 1.676
Persons before whom depositions may be taken ......................................... 1.674
Printing of ................................................................................................................... 1.653
Service of notice ......................................................................................................... 1.673
Stipulations or agreements concerning ......................................................... 1.672
Taken by depositions ............................................................................................... 1.672
Testimony taken in another interference or action, use of ..................... 1.683
Time for taking ........................................................................................................... 1.651
To be inspected by parties to the case only .................................................... 1.679

218
Index I

Time expiring on Saturday, Sunday, or holiday ................................................... 1.7
Time for payment of issue fee ............................................................................ 1.311
Time for response by applicant ......................................................................... 1.134, 1.136
Time for response by patent owner ..................................................................... 1.530
Time for response by requester .......................................................................... 1.535
Time for response to Office action ...................................................................... 1.134, 1.136
Time, periods of .................................................................................................... 1.7
Timely filing of correspondence ........................................................................ 1.8, 1.10
Title of invention ................................................................................................ 1.72
Title reports, fee for .................................................................................... 1.19(b)(4)
Transitional procedures ........................................................................................ 1.129

U

Unavoidable abandonment .................................................................................... 1.137
Unintentional abandonment .................................................................................. 1.137
United States as:
  Designated Office ................................................................................... 1.414, 1.497
  Elected Office ............................................................................................... 1.414
  International Preliminary Examining Authority .......................................... 1.416
  International Searching Authority ................................................................ 1.413
  Receiving Office ............................................................................................. 1.412
Unsigned continuation or divisional application .................................................. 1.53
Use of file of parent application .......................................................................... 1.53(d)

V

Verified statement of small entity status .............................................................. 1.27

W

Waiver of secrecy .................................................................................................. 1.53(d)(6)
Withdrawal from issue ......................................................................................... 1.313
Withdrawal of attorney or agent .......................................................................... 1.36
Withdrawal of request for statutory invention registration ............................. 1.295
Written Description allegedly missing
  Petition contesting this allegation ................................................................ 1.53(e)
  Petition with new oath or declaration and later submission of missing
    specification seeking new filing date ........................................................... 1.53(e)
PART 1—RULES OF PRACTICE IN PATENT CASES

EDITORIAL NOTE: Part 1 is placed in a separate grouping of parts pertaining to patents. It appears on page 5 of this volume.

TRADEMARKS

PART 2—RULES OF PRACTICE IN TRADEMARK CASES

Sec.
2.1 Sections of part 1 applicable.
2.2 Definitions.
2.6 Trademark fees.
2.7 Fastener recordal fees.

REPRESENTATION BY ATTORNEYS OR OTHER AUTHORIZED PERSONS

2.11 Applicants may be represented by an attorney.
2.12-2.16 Reserved
2.17 Recognition for representation.
2.18 Correspondence, with whom held.
2.19 Revocation of power of attorney or of other authorization to represent; withdrawal.

DECLARATIONS

2.20 Declarations in lieu of oaths.

APPLICATION FOR REGISTRATION

2.21 Requirements for receiving a filing date.
2.23 Serial number.
2.24 Designation of representative by foreign applicant.
2.25 Papers not returnable.
2.26 Use of old drawing in new application.
2.27 Pending trademark application index; access to applications.

THE WRITTEN APPLICATION

2.31 Reserved
2.32 Requirements for a complete application.
2.33 Verified statement.
2.34 Bases for filing.
2.35 Adding, deleting, or substituting bases.
2.36 Identification of prior registrations.
2.37 Description of mark.
2.38 Use by predecessor or by related companies.
2.39 Reserved
2.41 Proof of distinctiveness under section 2(f).
2.42 Concurrent use.
2.43 Service mark.
2.44 Collective mark.
2.45 Certification mark.
2.46 Principal Register.
2.47 Supplemental Register.

Drawing

2.51 Drawing required.
2.52 Types of drawings and format for drawings.

Specimens

2.56 Specimens.
2.57-2.58 Reserved
2.59 Filing substitute specimen(s).

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATION AND ACTION BY APPLICANTS

2.61 Action by examiner.
2.62 Period for response.
2.63 Reexamination.
2.64 Final action.
2.65 Abandonment.
2.66 Revival of abandoned applications.
2.67 Suspension of action by the Patent and Trademark Office.
2.68 Express abandonment (withdrawal) of application.
2.69 Compliance with other laws.

AMENDMENT OF APPLICATION

2.71 Amendments to correct informalities.
2.72 Amendments to description or drawing of the mark.
2.73 Amendment to recite concurrent use.
2.74 Form of amendment.
2.75 Amendment to change application to different register.
2.76 Amendment to allege use.
2.77 Amendments between notice of allowance and statement of use.

PUBLICATION AND POST PUBLICATION

2.80 Publication for opposition.
2.81 Post publication.
2.82 Marks on Supplemental Register published only upon registration.
2.83 Conflicting marks.
2.84 Jurisdiction over published applications.

CLASSIFICATION

2.85 Classification schedules.
2.86 Application may include multiple classes.
2.87 Dividing an application.

POST NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE

2.88 Filing statement of use after notice of allowance.
2.89 Extensions of time for filing a statement of use.

INTERFERENCES AND CONCURRENT USE PROCEEDINGS

2.91 Declaration of interference.
2.92 Preliminary to interference.
2.93 Institution of interference.
2.94-2.95 Reserved
2.96 Issue; burden of proof.
2.97 Reserved
Pt. 2

2.98 Adding party to interference.
2.99 Application to register as concurrent user.

OPPOSITION
2.101 Filing an opposition.
2.102 Extension of time for filing an opposition.
2.104 Contents of opposition.
2.105 Notification of opposition proceeding(s).
2.106 Answer.
2.107 Amendment of pleadings in an opposition proceeding.

CANCELLATION
2.111 Filing petition for cancellation.
2.112 Contents of petition for cancellation.
2.113 Notification of cancellation proceeding.
2.114 Answer.
2.115 Amendment of pleadings in a cancellation proceeding.

PROCEDURE IN INTER PARTES PROCEEDINGS
2.117 Suspension of proceedings.
2.118 Undelivered Office notices.
2.119 Service and signing of papers.
2.120 Discovery.
2.121 Assignment of times for taking testimony.
2.122 Matters in evidence.
2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.
2.124 Depositions upon written questions.
2.125 Filing and service of testimony.
2.126 [Reserved]
2.127 Motions.
2.128 Briefs at final hearing.
2.129 Oral argument; reconsideration.
2.130 New matter suggested by Examiner of Trademarks.
2.131 Remand after decision in inter partes proceeding.
2.132 Involuntary dismissal for failure to take testimony.
2.133 Amendment of application or registration during proceedings.
2.134 Surrender or voluntary cancellation of registration.
2.135 Abandonment of application or mark.
2.136 Status of application on termination of proceeding.

APPEALS
2.141 Ex parte appeals from the Examiner of Trademarks.
2.142 Time and manner of ex parte appeals.
2.144 Reconsideration of decision on ex parte appeal.
2.145 Appeal to court and civil action.

PETITIONS AND ACTION BY THE COMMISSIONER
2.146 Petitions to the Commissioner.
2.147 [Reserved]

37 CFR Ch. I (7–1–00 Edition)

2.148 Commissioner may suspend certain rules.

CERTIFICATE
2.151 Certificate.

PUBLICATION OF MARKS REGISTERED UNDER 1905 ACT
2.153 Publication requirements.
2.154 Publication in Official Gazette.
2.155 Notice of publication.
2.156 Not subject to opposition; subject to cancellation.

REREGISTRATION OF MARKS REGISTERED UNDER PRIOR ACTS

CANCELLATION FOR FAILURE TO FILE AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION DURING SIXTH YEAR
2.160 Affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse required to avoid cancellation of registration.
2.161 Requirements for a complete affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse.
2.162 Notice to registrant.
2.163 Acknowledgment of receipt of affidavit or declaration.
2.164 Correcting deficiencies in affidavit or declaration.
2.165 Petition to Commissioner to review refusal.
2.166 Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse combined with renewal application.

AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION UNDER SECTION 15
2.167 Affidavit or declaration under section 15.
2.168 Affidavit or declaration under section 15 combined with affidavit or declaration under section 8, or with renewal application.

CORRECTION, DISCLAIMER, SURRENDER, ETC.
2.171 New certificate on change of ownership.
2.172 Surrender for cancellation.
2.173 Amendment of registration.
2.174 Correction of Office mistake.
2.175 Correction of mistake by registrant.
2.176 Consideration of above matters.

TERM AND RENEWAL
2.181 Term of original registrations and renewals.
2.182 Time for filing renewal application.
2.183 Requirements for a complete renewal application.
2.184 Refusal of renewal.
2.185 Correcting deficiencies in renewal application.
2.186 Petition to Commissioner to review refusal of renewal.
2.187 [Reserved]


Source: 30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, unless otherwise noted.

§ 2.2 Definitions.
(b) Entity as used in this part includes both natural and juristic persons.

[54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.26 Trademark Fees.

The Patent and Trademark Office requires the following fees and charges:

(a) Trademark process fees.

(1) For filing an application, per class .................................................$325.00
(2) For filing an amendment to allege use under section 1(c) of the Act, per class .................................................$100.00
(3) For filing a statement of use under section 1(d)(1) of the Act, per class .................................................$100.00
(4) For filing a request under section 1(d)(2) of the Act for a six-month extension of time for filing a statement of use under section 1(d)(1) of the Act, per class .................................................$150.00
(5) For filing an application for renewal of a registration, per class .................................................$150.00
(6) Additional fee for filing a renewal application during the grace period, per class .................................................$400.00
(7) For filing to publish a mark under section 12(c), per class .................................................$100.00
(8) For issuing a new certificate of registration upon request of assignee .................................................$100.00
(9) For a certificate of correction of registrant's error .................................................$100.00
(10) For filing a disclaimer to a registration .................................................$100.00
(11) For filing an amendment to a registration .................................................$100.00
(12) For filing an affidavit under section 8 of the Act, per class .................................................$100.00
(13) For filing an affidavit under §15 of the Act, per class .................................................$200.00
(14) Additional fee for filing a section 8 affidavit during the grace period, per class .................................................$100.00
(15) For petitions to the Commissioner .................................................$100.00
(16) For filing a petition to cancel, per class .................................................$300.00
(17) For filing a notice of opposition, per class .................................................$300.00
(18) For ex parte appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, per class .................................................$100.00
(19) Dividing an application, per new application (file wrapper) created .................................................$100.00
(20) For correcting a deficiency in a section 8 affidavit .................................................$100.00
(21) For correcting a deficiency in a renewal application .................................................$100.00
(b) Trademark service fees.

(i) Regular service, which includes preparation of copies by the PTO within 2-3 business days of receipt and delivery by United States Postal Service, fax, or to a PTO Box .................................................$3.00.
(ii) Delivery on next business day to PTO Box or fax delivery within one business day to U.S. /Canada/ Mexico .................................................$6.00.
(iii) Expedited delivery by commercial delivery service .................................................$25.00.
(2) Certified or uncertified copy of trademark application as filed:

(i) Regular service .................................................$15.00
(ii) Expedited local service .................................................$30.00
(3) Certified or uncertified copy of a trademark-related file wrapper and contents .................................................$50.00
(4) Certified copy of a registered mark, showing title and/or status:

(i) Regular service .................................................$15.00
(ii) Expedited local service .................................................$30.00
(5) Certified or uncertified copy of trademark records, per document except as otherwise provided in this section .................................................$25.00
(6) For recording each trademark assignment, agreement or other paper relating to the property in a registration or application

(i) First property in a document .................................................$40.00
(ii) For each additional property in the same document .................................................$25.00
(7) For assignment records, abstract of title and certification, per registration ........................................... $25.00

(8) Marginal cost, paid in advance, for each hour of terminal session time, including print time, using T-Search capabilities, prorated for the actual time used. The Commissioner may waive the payment by an individual for access to T-Search upon a showing of need or hardship, and if such waiver is in the public interest ........................................... $40.00

(9) Self-service copy charge, per page ........................................................... $0.25

(10) Labor charges for services, per hour or fraction thereof ................... $40.00

(11) For items and services that the Commissioner finds may be supplied, for which fees are not specified by statute or by this part, such charges as may be determined by the Commissioner with respect to each such item or service .......................................... Actual Cost

§ 2.7 Fastener recordal fees.

(a) Application fee for recordal of insignia ............................................... $20.00

(b) Renewal of insignia recordal ......................................................... $20.00

(c) Surcharge for late renewal of insignia recordal ................................. $20.00

§§ 2.12–2.16 [Reserved]

§ 2.17 Recognition for representation.

(a) When an attorney as defined in §10.1(c) of this subchapter acting in a representative capacity appears in person or signs a paper in practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in a trademark case, his or her personal appearance or signature shall constitute a representation to the Patent and Trademark Office that, under the provisions of §10.14 and the law he or she is authorized to represent the particular party in whose behalf he or she acts. Further proof of authority to act in a representative capacity may be required.

(b) Before any non-lawyer will be allowed to take action of any kind in any application or proceeding, a written authorization from the applicant, party to the proceeding, or other person entitled to prosecute such application or proceeding must be filed therein.

(c) To be recognized as a representative, an attorney as defined in §10.1(c) of this chapter may file a power of attorney, appear in person, or sign a paper on behalf of an applicant or registrant that is filed with the Office in a trademark case.

(d) A party may file a power of attorney that relates to more than one trademark application or registration, or to all existing and future applications and registrations of that party. A party relying on such a power of attorney must:

(1) Include a copy of the previously filed power of attorney; or

(2) Refer to the power of attorney, specifying the filing date of the previously filed power of attorney; the application serial number (if known), registration number, or inter partes proceeding number for which the original power of attorney was filed; and the name of the party who signed the power of attorney; or, if the application serial number is not known, submit a copy of the application or a copy of the mark, and specify the filing date.

§ 2.11 Applicants may be represented by an attorney.

The owner of a trademark may file and prosecute his or her own application for registration of such trademark, or he or she may be represented by an attorney or other individual authorized to practice in trademark cases under §10.14 of this subchapter. The Patent and Trademark Office cannot aid in the selection of an attorney or other representative.

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985; 64 FR 48918, Sept. 8, 1999]
§ 2.18 Correspondence, with whom held.
Correspondence will be sent to the applicant or a party to a proceeding at its address unless papers are transmitted by an attorney at law, or a written power of attorney is filed, or written authorization of other person entitled to be recognized is filed, or the applicant or party designates in writing another address to which correspondence is to be sent, in which event correspondence will be sent to the attorney at law transmitting the papers, or the attorney at law designated in the power of attorney, or to the other person designated in the written authorization, or to the address designated by the applicant or party for correspondence. Correspondence will continue to be sent to such address until the applicant or party, or the attorney at law or other authorized representative of the applicant or party, indicates in writing that correspondence is to be sent to another address. Correspondence will be sent to the domestic representative of a foreign applicant unless the application is being prosecuted by an attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized in which event correspondence will be sent to the attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized. Double correspondence will not be undertaken by the Patent and Trademark Office, and if more than one attorney at law or other authorized representative appears or signs a paper, the Office reply will be sent to the address already established in the file until another correspondence address is specified by the applicant or party or by the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant or party.

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

DECLARATIONS
§ 2.19 Revocation of power of attorney or of other authorization to represent; withdrawal.
(a) Authority to represent an applicant or a party to a proceeding may be revoked at any stage in the proceedings of a case upon notification to the Commissioner; and when it is so revoked, the Office will communicate directly with the applicant or party to the proceeding or with such other qualified person as may be authorized.

The Patent and Trademark Office will notify the person affected of the revocation of his or her authorization.

(b) An individual authorized to represent an applicant or party in a trademark case may withdraw upon application to and approval by the Commissioner.

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 2.20 Declarations in lieu of oaths.
Instead of an oath, affidavit, verification, or sworn statement, the language of 28 U.S.C. 1746, or the following language, may be used:

The undersigned being warned that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001, and that such willful false statements and the like may jeopardize the validity of the application or document or any registration resulting therefrom, declares that all statements made of his/her own knowledge are true; and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

[64 FR 48918, Sept. 8, 1999]

APPLICATION FOR REGISTRATION
AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.21 to 2.47 also issued under sec. 1, 60 Stat. 427, 15 U.S.C. 1051.

§ 2.21 Requirements for receiving a filing date.
(a) The Office will grant a filing date to an application that contains all of the following:

(1) The name of the applicant;
(2) A name and address for correspondence;
(3) A clear drawing of the mark;
(4) A listing of the goods or services; and
(5) The filing fee for at least one class of goods or services, required by § 2.6.

(b) If the applicant does not submit all the elements required in paragraph (a) of this section, the Office may return the papers with an explanation of why the filing date was denied.

(c) The applicant may correct and re-submit the application papers. If the resubmitted papers and fee meet all the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, the Office will grant a filing date.

[54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]
§ 2.23 Serial number.

Applications will be given a serial number as received, and the applicant will be informed of the serial number and the filing date of the application.

[37 FR 931, Jan. 21, 1972]

§ 2.24 Designation of representative by foreign applicant.

If an applicant is not domiciled in the United States, the applicant must designate by a written document filed in the Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of some person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. If this document does not accompany or form part of the application, it will be required and registration refused unless it is supplied. Official communications of the Patent and Trademark Office will be addressed to the domestic representative unless the application is being prosecuted by an attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized, in which event Official communications will be sent to the attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized. The mere designation of a domestic representative does not authorize the person designated to prosecute the application unless qualified under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of § 10.14 of this subchapter and authorized under § 2.17(b).

[54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.25 Papers not returnable.

After an application is filed the papers will not be returned for any purpose whatever; but the Office will furnish copies to the applicant upon request and payment of the fee.

§ 2.26 Use of old drawing in new application.

In an application filed in place of an abandoned or rejected application, or in an application for reregistration (§ 2.158), a new complete application is required, but the old drawing, if suitable, may be used. The application must be accompanied by a request for the transfer of the drawing, and by a permanent photographic copy, or an order for such copy, of the drawing to be placed in the original file. A drawing so transferred, or to be transferred, cannot be amended.

§ 2.27 Pending trademark application index; access to applications.

(a) An index of pending applications including the name and address of the applicant, a reproduction or description of the mark, the goods or services with which the mark is used, the class number, the dates of use, and the serial number and filing date of the application will be available for public inspection as soon as practicable after filing.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, access to the file of a particular pending application will be permitted prior to publication under § 2.80 upon written request.

(c) Decisions of the Commissioner and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board in applications and proceedings relating thereto are published or available for inspection or publication.

(d) Except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, after a mark has been registered, or published for opposition, the file of the application and all proceedings relating thereto are available for public inspection and copies of the papers may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor.

(e) Anything ordered to be filed under seal pursuant to a protective order issued or made by any court or by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board in any proceeding involving an application or a registration shall be kept confidential and shall not be made available for public inspection or copying unless otherwise ordered by the court or the Board, or unless the party protected by the order voluntarily discloses the matter subject thereto. When possible, only confidential portions of filings with the Board shall be filed under seal.

§ 2.31 [Reserved]

§ 2.32 Requirements for a complete application.
(a) The application must be in English and include the following:
   (1) A request for registration;
   (2) The name of the applicant(s);
   (3)(i) The citizenship of the applicant(s); or
       (ii) If the applicant is a corporation, association, partnership or other juristic person, the jurisdiction (usually state or nation) under the laws of which the applicant is organized; and
       (iii) If the applicant is a partnership, the names and citizenship of the general partners;
   (4) The address of the applicant;
   (5) One or more bases, as required by § 2.34(a);
   (6) A list of the particular goods or services on or in connection with which the applicant uses or intends to use the mark. In a United States application filed under section 44 of the Act, the scope of the goods or services covered by the section 44 basis may not exceed the scope of the goods or services in the foreign application or registration; and
   (7) The international class of goods or services, if known. See § 6.1 of this chapter for a list of the international classes of goods and services.
(b) The application must include a verified statement that meets the requirements of § 2.33.
(c) The application must include a drawing that meets the requirements of §§ 2.51 and 2.52.
(d) The application must include fee required by § 2.6 for each class of goods or services.
(e) For the requirements for a multiple class application, see § 2.86.

[64 FR 48908, Sept. 8, 1999]

§ 2.33 Verified statement.
(a) The application must include a statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant. A person who is properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant is:
(1) A person with legal authority to bind the applicant; or
(2) A person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the applicant; or
(3) An attorney as defined in § 10.1(c) of this chapter who has an actual or implied written or verbal power of attorney from the applicant.
(b)(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the verified statement must allege:
That the applicant has adopted and is using the mark shown in the accompanying drawing; that the applicant believes it is the owner of the mark; that the mark is in use in commerce; that to the best of the declarant’s knowledge and belief, no other person has the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when applied to the goods or services of the other person, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; that the specimen shows the mark as used on or in connection with the goods or services; and that the facts set forth in the application are true.
(2) In an application under section 1(b) or section 44 of the Act, the verified statement must allege:
That the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark shown in the accompanying drawing in commerce on or in connection with the specified goods or services; that the applicant believes it is entitled to use the mark; that to the best of the declarant’s knowledge and belief, no other person has the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when applied to the goods or services of the other person, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; and that the facts set forth in the application are true.
(c) If the verified statement is not filed within a reasonable time after it is signed, the Office may require the applicant to submit a substitute verification or declaration under § 2.20 of the applicant’s continued use or bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce.
(d) Where an electronically transmitted filing is permitted, the person who signs the verified statement must either:
(1) Place a symbol comprised of numbers and/or letters between two forward slash marks in the signature block on the electronic submission; and print, sign and date in permanent ink, and
§ 2.34   Bases for filing.

(a) The application must include one or more of the following four filing bases:

(1) Use in commerce under section 1(a) of the Act. The requirements for an application based on section 1(a) of the Act are:

(i) The trademark owner’s verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application. If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must allege that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services as of the application filing date;

(ii) The date of the applicant’s first use of the mark anywhere on or in connection with the goods or services;

(iii) The date of the applicant’s first use of the mark in commerce as a trademark or service mark; and

(iv) One specimen showing how the applicant actually uses the mark in commerce.

(v) An application may list more than one item of goods, or more than one service, provided the applicant has used the mark on or in connection with all the specified goods or services. The dates of use required by paragraphs (a)(1) (ii) and (iii) of this section may be for only one of the items specified.

(2) Intent-to-use under section 1(b) of the Act. (i) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the trademark owner must verify that it has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application. If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the filing date of the application.

(ii) The application may list more than one item of goods, or more than one service, provided the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the specified goods or services.

(3) Registration of a mark in a foreign applicant’s country of origin under section 44(e) of the Act. The requirements for an application under section 44(e) of the Act are:

(i) The trademark owner’s verified statement that it has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application. If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the filing date of the application.

(ii) A certification or certified copy of a registration in the applicant’s country of origin showing that the mark has been registered in that country, and that the registration is in full force and effect. The certification or certified copy must show the name of the owner, the mark, and the goods or services for which the mark is registered. If the certification or certified copy is not in the English language, the applicant must submit a translation.

(iii) If the record indicates that the foreign registration will expire before the United States registration will issue, the applicant must submit a certification or certified copy from the country of origin to establish that the registration has been renewed and will be in force at the time the United States registration will issue. If the certification or certified copy is not in the English language, the applicant must submit a translation.

(iv) The application may list more than one item of goods, or more than one service, provided the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the specified goods or services.

(4) Claim of priority, based upon an earlier-filed foreign application, under section 44(d) of the Act. The requirements for an application under section 44(d) of the Act are:

(i) A claim of priority, filed within six months of the filing date of the foreign application. Before publication or
registration on the Supplemental Register, the applicant must either:

(A) Specify the filing date and country of the first regularly filed foreign application; or

(B) State that the application is based upon a subsequent regularly filed application in the same foreign country, and that any prior-filed application has been withdrawn, abandoned or otherwise disposed of, without having been laid open to public inspection and without having any rights outstanding, and has not served as a basis for claiming a right of priority.

(ii) Include the trademark owner's verified statement that it has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application. If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the filing date of the application.

(iii) Before the application can be approved for publication, or for registration on the Supplemental Register, the applicant must establish a basis under section 1(a), section 1(b) or section 44(e) of the Act.

(iv) The application may list more than one item of goods, or more than one service, provided the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the specified goods or services.

(b) (1) The applicant may claim more than one basis, provided that the applicant satisfies all requirements for the bases claimed. However, the applicant may not claim both sections 1(a) and 1(b) for the identical goods or services in the same application.

(2) If the applicant claims more than one basis, the applicant must list each basis, followed by the goods or services to which that basis applies. If some or all of the goods or services are covered by more than one basis, this must be stated.

(c) The word "commerce" means commerce that Congress may lawfully regulate, as specified in section 45 of the Act.

§ 2.35 Adding, deleting, or substituting bases.

(a) Before publication, the applicant may add or substitute a basis, if the applicant meets all requirements for the new basis, as stated in §2.34. The applicant may delete a basis at any time.

(b) An applicant may amend an application that is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board to add or substitute a basis after the mark has been published for opposition, but only with the express permission of the Commissioner, after consideration on petition. Republication will be required. The amendment of an application that is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Board is governed by §2.133(a).

(c) When the applicant substitutes one basis for another, the Office will presume that there was a continuing valid basis, unless there is contradictory evidence in the record, and the application will retain the original filing date, including a priority filing date under section 44(d), if appropriate.

(d) If an applicant properly claims a section 44(d) basis in addition to another basis, the applicant will retain the priority filing date under section 44(d) no matter which basis the applicant perfects.

(e) The applicant may add or substitute a section 44(d) basis only within the six-month priority period following the filing date of the foreign application.

(f) When the applicant adds or substitutes a basis, the applicant must list each basis, followed by the goods or services to which that basis applies.

(g) When the applicant deletes a basis, the applicant must also delete any goods or services covered solely by the deleted basis.

(h) Once an applicant claims a section 1(b) basis as to any or all of the goods or services, the applicant may not amend the application to seek registration under section 1(a) of the Act for those goods or services unless the applicant files an allegation of use under section 1(c) or section 1(d) of the Act.

[64 FR 48919, Sept. 8, 1999]

[64 FR 48920, Sept. 8, 1999]
§ 2.36 Identification of prior registrations.
Prior registrations of the same or similar marks owned by the applicant should be identified in the application.

§ 2.37 Description of mark.
A description of the mark, which must be acceptable to the Examiner of Trademarks, may be included in the application, and must be included if required by the examiner. If the mark is displayed in color or a color combination, the colors should be described in the application.


§ 2.38 Use by predecessor or by related companies.
(a) If the first use of the mark was by a predecessor in title or by a related company (sections 5 and 45 of the Act), and the use inures to the benefit of the applicant, the dates of first use (§§ 2.34(a)(1)(ii) and (iii)) may be asserted with a statement that first use was by the predecessor in title or by the related company, as appropriate.
(b) If the mark is not in fact being used by the applicant but is being used by one or more related companies whose use inures to the benefit of the applicant under section 5 of the Act, such facts must be indicated in the application.
(c) The Office may require such details concerning the nature of the relationship and such proofs as may be necessary and appropriate for the purpose of showing that the use by related companies inures to the benefit of the applicant and does not affect the validity of the mark.

(Sec. 5, 60 Stat. 429, 15 U.S.C. 1055)


§ 2.39 [Reserved]

§ 2.41 Proof of distinctiveness under section 2(f).
(a) When registration is sought of a mark which would be unregistrable by reason of section 2(e) of the Act but which is said by applicant to have become distinctive in commerce of the goods or services set forth in the application, applicant may, in support of registrability, submit with the application, or in response to a request for evidence or to a refusal to register, affidavits, or declarations in accordance with §2.20, depositions, or other appropriate evidence showing duration, extent and nature of use in commerce and advertising expenditures in connection therewith (identifying types of media and attaching typical advertisements), and affidavits, or declarations in accordance with §2.20, letters or statements from the trade or public, or both, or other appropriate evidence tending to show that the mark distinguishes such goods.

(b) In appropriate cases, ownership of one or more prior registrations on the Principal Register or under the Act of 1905 of the same mark may be accepted as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness. Also, if the mark is said to have become distinctive of applicant’s goods by reason of substantially exclusive and continuous use in commerce thereof by applicant for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, a showing by way of statements which are verified or which include declarations in accordance with §2.20, in the application may, in appropriate cases, be accepted as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness. In each of these situations, however, further evidence may be required.

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.42 Concurrent use.
An application for registration as a lawful concurrent user shall specify and contain all the elements required by the preceding sections. The applicant in addition shall state in the application the area, the goods, and the mode of use for which applicant seeks registration; and also shall state, to the extent of the applicant’s knowledge, the concurrent lawful use of the mark by others, setting forth their names and addresses; registrations issued to or applications filed by such others, if any; the areas of such use; the goods on or in connection with which such use is made; the mode of such use; and the periods of such use.

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]
§ 2.43 Service mark. In an application to register a service mark, the application shall specify and contain all the elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks, but shall be modified to relate to services instead of to goods wherever necessary.

(Sec. 3, 60 Stat. 429; 15 U.S.C. 1052)

§ 2.44 Collective mark. (a) In an application to register a collective mark under section 1(a) of the Act, the application shall specify and contain all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks, but shall, in addition, specify the class of persons entitled to use the mark, indicating their relationship to the applicant, and the nature of the applicant's control over the use of the mark.

(b) In an application to register a collective mark under section 1(b) or 44 of the Act, the application shall include all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks. In addition, the application must: Specify the conditions under which the certification mark is used; allege that the applicant exercises legitimate control over the use of the mark; and allege that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied. When the applicant files an amendment to allege use under section 1(c) of the Act, or a statement of use under section 1(d) of the Act, the applicant must submit a copy of the standards that determine whether others may use the certification mark on their goods and/or in connection with their services.

[64 FR 48920, Sept. 8, 1999]

§ 2.46 Principal Register. All applications will be treated as seeking registration on the Principal Register unless otherwise stated in the application. Service marks, collective marks, and certification marks, registrable in accordance with the applicable provisions of section 2 of the Act, are registered on the Principal Register.

§ 2.47 Supplemental Register. (a) In an application to register on the Supplemental Register under section 23 of the Act, the application shall so indicate and shall specify that the mark has been in lawful use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, by the applicant.

(b) In an application to register on the Supplemental Register under section 44 of the Act, the application shall so indicate. The statement of lawful use in commerce may be omitted.

(c) A mark in an application to register on the Principal Register under section 1(b) of the Act is eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register only after an acceptable amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or statement of use under § 2.88 has been timely filed.

(d) An application for registration on the Supplemental Register must conform to the requirements for registration on the Principal Register under
§ 2.51 Drawing required.

(a)(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods; or

(2) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as intended to be used on or in connection with the goods specified in the application, and once an amendment to allege use under §2.76 or a statement of use under §2.88 has been filed, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods; or

(3) In an application under section 44 of the Act, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the drawing in the registration certificate of a mark duly registered in the country of origin of the applicant.

(b)(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the drawing of a service mark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the drawing in the registration certificate of a mark duly registered in the country of origin of applicant.

§ 2.52 Types of drawings and format for drawings.

(a) A drawing depicts the mark sought to be registered. The drawing must show only one mark. The applicant must include a clear drawing of the mark when the application is filed. There are two types of drawings:

(1) Typed drawing. The drawing may be typed if the mark consists only of words, letters, numbers, common forms of punctuation, or any combination of these elements. In a typed drawing, every word or letter must be typed in uppercase type. If the applicant submits a typed drawing, the application is not limited to the mark depicted in any special form or lettering.

(2) Special form drawing. A special form drawing is required if the mark has a two or three-dimensional design; or color; or words, letters, or numbers in a particular style of lettering; or unusual forms of punctuation.

(i) Special form drawings must be made with a pen or by a process that will provide high definition when copied. A photolithographic, printer's proof copy, or other high quality reproduction of the mark may be used. Every line and letter, including lines used for shading, must be black. All lines must be clean, sharp, and solid, and must not be fine or crowded. Gray tones or tints may not be used for surface shading or any other purpose.

(ii) If necessary to adequately depict the commercial impression of the mark, the applicant may be required to submit a drawing that shows the placement of the mark by surrounding the mark with a proportionately accurate broken-line representation of the particular goods, packaging, or advertising on which the mark appears. The applicant must also use broken lines to show any other matter not claimed as part of the mark. For any drawing using broken lines to indicate placement of the mark, or matter not claimed as part of the mark, the applicant must include in the body of the application a written description of the
mark and explain the purpose of the broken lines.

(iii) If the mark has three-dimensional features, the applicant must submit a drawing that depicts a single rendition of the mark, and the applicant must include a description of the mark indicating that the mark is three-dimensional.

(iv) If the mark has motion, the applicant may submit a drawing that depicts a single point in the movement, or the applicant may submit a square drawing that contains up to five freeze frames showing various points in the movement, whichever best depicts the commercial impression of the mark. The applicant must also submit a written description of the mark.

(v) If the mark has color, the applicant may claim that all or part of the mark consists of one or more colors. To claim color, the applicant must submit a statement explaining where the color or colors appear in the mark and the nature of the color(s).

(vi) If a drawing cannot adequately depict all significant features of the mark, the applicant must also submit a written description of the mark.

(3) Sound, scent, and non-visual marks. The applicant is not required to submit a drawing if the applicant's mark consists only of a sound, a scent, or other completely non-visual matter. For these types of marks, the applicant must submit a detailed written description of the mark.

(b) Recommended format for special form drawings—

(1) Type of paper and ink. The drawing should be on a piece of non-shiny, white paper that is separate from the application. Black ink should be used to depict the mark.

(2) Size of paper and size of mark. The drawing should be on paper that is 8 to 8\(\frac{1}{2}\) inches (20.3 to 21.6 cm.) wide and 11 to 11.69 inches (27.9 to 29.7 cm.) long. One of the shorter sides of the sheet should be regarded as its top edge. The drawing should be between 2.5 inches (6.1 cm.) and 4 inches (10.3 cm.) high and/or wide. There should be at least a 1 inch (2.5 cm.) margin between the drawing and the edges of the paper, and at least a 1 inch (2.5 cm.) margin between the drawing and the heading.

(3) Heading. Across the top of the drawing, beginning one inch (2.5 cm.) from the top edge, the applicant should type the following: Applicant’s name; applicant’s address; the goods or services recited in the application, or a typical item of the goods or services if numerous items are recited in the application; the date of first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce in an application under section 1(a) of the Act; the priority filing date of the relevant foreign application in an application claiming the benefit of a prior foreign application under section 44(d) of the Act. If the information in the heading is lengthy, the heading may continue onto a second page, but the mark should be depicted on the first page.

(c) Drawings in electronically transmitted applications. For an electronically transmitted application, if the drawing is in special form, the applicant must attach a digitized image of the mark to the electronic submission.

[64 FR 48920, Sept. 8, 1999]

§ 2.56 Specimens.

(a) An application under section 1(a) of the Act, an amendment to allege use under §2.76, and a statement of use under §2.88 must each include one specimen showing the mark as used on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services in commerce.

(1) A trademark specimen is a label, tag, or container for the goods, or a display associated with the goods. The Office may accept another document related to the goods or the sale of the goods when it is not possible to place the mark on the goods or packaging for the goods.

(2) A service mark specimen must show the mark as actually used in the sale or advertising of the services.

(3) A collective trademark or collective service mark specimen must show how a member uses the mark on the member's goods or in the sale or advertising of the member's services.

(4) A collective membership mark specimen must show use by members to indicate membership in the collective organization.

(5) A certification mark specimen must show how a person other than the owner uses the mark to certify regional or other origin, material, mode
§§ 2.57–2.58

of manufacture, quality, accuracy, or other characteristics of that person’s goods or services; or that members of a union or other organization performed the work or labor on the goods or services.

(c) A photocopy or other reproduction of a specimen of the mark as actually used on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services, is acceptable. However, a photocopy of the drawing required by § 2.51 is not a proper specimen.

(d)(1) The specimen should be flat, and not larger than 8½ inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long. If a specimen of this size is not available, the applicant may substitute a suitable photograph or other facsimile.

(2) If the applicant files a specimen exceeding these size requirements (a “bulky specimen”), the Office will create a facsimile of the specimen that meets the requirements of the rule (i.e., is flat and no larger than 8½ inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long) and put it in the file wrapper.

(3) In the absence of non-bulky alternatives, the Office may accept an audio or video cassette tape recording, CD-ROM, or other appropriate medium.

(4) For an electronically transmitted application, or other electronic submission, the specimen must be submitted as a digitized image.

[64 FR 48921, Sept. 8, 1999]
§ 2.63 Reexamination.

(a) After response by the applicant, the application will be reexamined or reconsidered. If registration is again refused or any formal requirement[s] is repeated, but the examiner’s action is not stated to be final, the applicant may respond again.

(b) After reexamination the applicant may respond by filing a timely petition to the Commissioner for relief from a formal requirement if: (1) The requirement is repeated, but the examiner’s action is not made final, and the subject matter of the requirement is appropriate for petition to the Commissioner (see §2.146(b)); or (2) the examiner’s action is made final and such action is limited to subject matter appropriate for petition to the Commissioner. If the petition is denied, the applicant shall have until six months from the date of the Office action which repeated the requirement or made it final or thirty days from the date of the decision on the petition, whichever date is later, to comply with the requirement. A formal requirement which is the subject of a petition decided by the Commissioner may not subsequently be the subject of an appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.


§ 2.64 Final action.

(a) On the first or any subsequent reexamination or reconsideration the refusal of the registration or the insistence upon a requirement may be stated to be final, whereupon applicant’s response is limited to an appeal, or to a compliance with any requirement, or to a petition to the Commissioner if permitted by §2.63(b).

(b) During the period between a final action and expiration of the time for filing an appeal, the applicant may request the examiner to reconsider the final action. The filing of a request for reconsideration will not extend the time for filing an appeal or petitioning the Commissioner, but normally the examiner will reply to a request for reconsideration before the end of the six-month period if the request is filed within three months after the date of the final action. Amendments accompanying requests for reconsideration after final action will be entered if they comply with the rules of practice in trademark cases and the Act of 1946.

(c)(1) If an applicant in an application under section 1(b) of the Act files an amendment to allege use under §2.76 during the six-month response period after issuance of a final action, the examiner shall examine the amendment. The filing of such an amendment will not extend the time for filing an appeal or petitioning the Commissioner.

(2) If the amendment to allege use under §2.76 is acceptable in all respects, the applicant will be notified of its acceptance.

(3) If, as a result of the examination of the amendment to allege use under §2.76, the applicant is found not entitled to registration for any reason not previously stated, applicant will be notified and advised of the reasons and of any formal requirements or refusals. The Trademark Examining Attorney shall withdraw the final action previously issued and shall incorporate all unresolved refusals or requirements previously stated in the new non-final action.


§ 2.65 Abandonment.

(a) If an applicant fails to respond, or to respond completely, within six months after the date an action is mailed, the application shall be deemed to have been abandoned. A timely petition to the Commissioner pursuant to §§2.63(b) and 2.146 is a response which avoids abandonment of an application.

(b) When action by the applicant filed within the six-month response period is a bona fide attempt to advance the examination of the application and is substantially a complete response to the examiner’s action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, opportunity to explain and supply the omission may be given before the question of abandonment is considered.

(c) If an applicant in an application under section 1(b) of the Act fails to timely file a statement of use under
§ 2.66 Revival of abandoned applications.

(a) The applicant may file a petition to revive an application abandoned because the applicant did not timely respond to an Office action or notice of allowance, if the delay was unintentional. The applicant must file the petition:

(1) Within two months of the mailing date of the notice of abandonment; or

(2) Within two months of actual knowledge of the abandonment, if the applicant did not receive the notice of abandonment, and the applicant was diligent in checking the status of the application. To be diligent, the applicant must check the status of the application within one year of the last filing or receipt of a notice from the Office for which further action by the Office is expected.

(b) The requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned because the applicant did not timely respond to an Office action are:

(1) The petition fee required by § 2.6;

(2) A statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the delay in filing the response on or before the due date was unintentional; and

(3) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the Office action, the proposed response.

(c) The requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned because the applicant did not timely respond to a notice of allowance are:

(1) The petition fee required by § 2.6;

(2) A statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the delay in filing the statement of use (or request for extension of time to file a statement of use) on or before the due date was unintentional;

(3) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the notice of allowance and requests cancellation of the notice of allowance, the required fees for the number of requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use that the applicant should have filed under § 2.89 if the application had never been abandoned;

(4) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the notice of allowance and requests cancellation of the notice of allowance, either a statement of use under § 2.88 or a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use under § 2.89; and

(5) Unless a statement of use is filed with or before the petition, or the applicant alleges that it did not receive the notice of allowance and requests cancellation of the notice of allowance, the applicant must file any further requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use under § 2.89 that become due while the petition is pending, or file a statement of use under § 2.89.

(d) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the Commissioner will not grant the petition if this would permit the filing of a statement of use more than 36 months after the mailing date of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act.

(e) The Commissioner will grant the petition to revive if the applicant complies with the requirements listed above and establishes that the delay in responding was unintentional.

(f) If the Commissioner denies a petition, the applicant may request reconsideration, if the applicant:

(1) Files the request within two months of the mailing date of the decision denying the petition; and

(2) Pays a second petition fee under § 2.6.

§ 2.67 Suspension of action by the Patent and Trademark Office.

Action by the Patent and Trademark Office may be suspended for a reasonable time for good and sufficient cause. The fact that a proceeding is pending before the Patent and Trademark Office or a court which is relevant to the issue of registrability of the applicant’s mark, or the fact that the basis for registration is, under the provisions of section 44(e) of the Act, registration of the mark in a foreign country and the foreign application is still pending, will be considered prima facie good and sufficient cause. An applicant’s request for a suspension of action under this
§ 2.72 Amendments to description or drawing of the mark.

(a) In an application based on use in commerce under section 1(a) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

(1) The specimens originally filed, or substitute specimens filed under §2.59(a), support the proposed amendment; and

(2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the original mark as described in the application.

§ 2.71 Amendments to correct informalities.

The applicant may amend the application during the course of examination, when required by the Office or for other reasons.

(a) The applicant may amend the application to clarify or limit, but not to broaden, the identification of goods and/or services.

(b)(1) If the declaration or verification of an application under §2.33 is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant may submit a substitute verification or declaration under §2.20.

§ 2.68 Express abandonment (withdrawal) of application.

An application may be expressly abandoned by filing in the Patent and Trademark Office a written statement of abandonment or withdrawal of the application signed by the applicant, or the attorney or other person representing the applicant. Except as provided in §2.135, the fact that an application has been expressly abandoned shall not, in any proceeding in the Patent and Trademark Office, affect any rights that the applicant may have in the mark which is the subject of the abandoned application.

§ 2.69 Compliance with other laws.

When the sale or transportation of any product for which registration of a trademark is sought is regulated under an Act of Congress, the Patent and Trademark Office may make appropriate inquiry as to compliance with such Act for the sole purpose of determining lawfulness of the commerce recited in the application.

AMENDMENT OF APPLICATION

§ 2.72 Amendments to description or drawing of the mark.

(a) In an application based on use in commerce under section 1(a) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

(1) The specimens originally filed, or substitute specimens filed under §2.59(a), support the proposed amendment; and

(2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the original mark as described in the application.

§ 2.71 Amendments to correct informalities.

The applicant may amend the application during the course of examination, when required by the Office or for other reasons.

(a) The applicant may amend the application to clarify or limit, but not to broaden, the identification of goods and/or services.

(b)(1) If the declaration or verification of an application under §2.33 is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant may submit a substitute verification or declaration under §2.20.
with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application.

(b) In an application based on a bona fide intention to use a mark in commerce under section 1(b) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

(1) The specimens filed with an amendment to allege use or statement of use, or substitute specimens filed under §2.59(b), support the proposed amendment; and

(2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application.

(c) In an application based on a claim of priority under section 44(d) of the Act, or on a mark duly registered in the country of origin of the foreign applicant under section 44(e) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

(1) The description or drawing of the mark in the foreign registration certificate supports the amendment; and

(2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application.

§2.74 Form of amendment.

(a) In every amendment the exact word or words to be stricken out or inserted in the application must be specified and the precise point indicated where the deletion or insertion is to be made. Erasures, additions, insertions, or mutilations of the papers and records must not be made by the applicant or his attorney or agent.

(b) When an amendatory clause is amended, it must be wholly rewritten so that no interlineation or erasure will appear in the clause, as finally amended, when the application is passed to registration. If the number or nature of the amendments shall render it otherwise difficult to consider the case or to arrange the papers for printing or copying, or when otherwise desired to clarify the record, the examiner may require the entire statement to be rewritten.

§2.75 Amendment to change application to different register.

(a) An application for registration on the Principal Register under section 1(a) or 44 of the Act may be changed to an application for registration on the Supplemental Register and vice versa by amending the application to comply with the rules relating to the appropriate register, as the case may be.

(b) An application under section 1(b) of the Act may be amended to change the application to a different register only after submission of an acceptable amendment to allege use under §2.76 or statement of use under §2.88. When such an application is changed from the Principal Register to the Supplemental Register, the effective filing date of the application is the date of the filing of the allegation of use under section 1(c) or 1(d) of the Act.

§2.76 Amendment to allege use.

(a) An application under section 1(b) of the Act may be amended to allege
use of the mark in commerce under section 1(c) of the Act at any time between the filing of the application and the date the examiner approves the mark for publication. Thereafter, an allegation of use may be submitted only as a statement of use under §2.88 after the issuance of a notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act. If an amendment to allege use is filed outside the time period specified in this paragraph, it will be returned to the applicant.

(b) A complete amendment to allege use must include:

(1) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under §2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see §2.33(a)) that:

(i) The applicant believes it is the owner of the mark; and

(ii) The mark is in use in commerce, specifying the date of the applicant’s first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce, and those goods or services specified in the application on or in connection with which the applicant uses the mark in commerce.

(2) One specimen of the mark as actually used in commerce. See §2.56 for the requirements for specimens; and

(3) The fee per class required by §2.6.

(c) An amendment to allege use may be filed only when the applicant has made use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with all of the goods or services, as specified in the application, for which applicant will seek registration in that application unless the amendment to allege use is accompanied by a request in accordance with §2.87 to divide out from the application the goods or services to which the amendment pertains. If more than one item of goods or services is specified in the amendment to allege use, the dates of use required in paragraph (b)(1) of this section need be for only one of the items specified in each class, provided the particular item to which the dates apply is designated.

(d) The title “Amendment to allege use under §2.76” should appear at the top of the first page of the paper.

(e) The Office will review a timely filed amendment to allege use to determine whether it meets the following minimum requirements:

(1) The fee prescribed in §2.6;

(2) One specimen or facsimile of the mark as used in commerce; and

(3) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under §2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant that the mark is in use in commerce.

(f) A timely filed amendment to allege use which meets the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section will be examined in accordance with §§2.61 through 2.69. If, as a result of the examination of the amendment to allege use, applicant is found not entitled to registration for any reason not previously stated, applicant will be so notified and advised of the reasons and of any formal requirements or refusals. The notification shall restate or incorporate by reference all unresolved refusals or requirements previously stated. The amendment to allege use may be amended in accordance with §§2.59 and 2.71 through 2.75. If the amendment to allege use is acceptable in all respects, the applicant will be notified of its acceptance. The filing of such an amendment shall not constitute a response to any outstanding action by the Trademark Examining Attorney.

(g) If the amendment to allege use is filed within the permitted time period but does not meet the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section, applicant will be notified of the deficiency. The deficiency may be corrected provided the mark has not been approved for publication. If an acceptable amendment to correct the deficiency is not filed prior to approval of the mark for publication, the amendment will not be examined.

(h) An amendment to allege use may be withdrawn for any reason prior to approval of a mark for publication.

(i) If the applicant does not file the amendment to allege use within a reasonable time after it is signed, the Office may require a substitute verification or declaration under §2.20 stating that the mark is still in use in commerce.
§ 2.77 Amendments between notice of allowance and statement of use.

An application under section 1(b) of the Act may not be amended during the period between the issuance of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act and the filing of a statement of use under §2.88, except to delete specified goods or services. Other amendments filed during this period will be placed in the application file and considered when the statement of use is examined.

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.80 Publication for opposition.

If, on examination or reexamination of an application for registration on the Principal Register, it appears that the applicant is entitled to have his mark registered, the mark will be published in the Official Gazette for opposition. The mark will also be published in the case of an application to be placed in interference or concurrent use proceedings, if otherwise registrable.

[41 FR 758, Jan. 5, 1976]

§ 2.81 Post publication.

(a) Except in an application under section 1(b) of the Act for which no amendment to allege use under §2.76 has been submitted and accepted, if no opposition is filed within the time permitted or all oppositions filed are dismissed, and if no interference is declared and no concurrent use proceeding is instituted, the application will be prepared for issuance of the certificate of registration as provided in §2.151.

(b) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act for which no amendment to allege use under §2.76 has been submitted and accepted, if no opposition is filed within the time permitted or all oppositions filed are dismissed, and if no interference is declared, a notice of allowance will issue. The notice of allowance will state the serial number of the application, the name of the applicant, the correspondence address, the mark, the identification of goods or services, and the issue date of the notice of allowance. The mailing date that appears on the notice of allowance will be the issue date of the notice of allowance. Thereafter, the applicant shall submit a statement of use as provided in §2.88.

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.82 Marks on Supplemental Register published only upon registration.

In the case of an application for registration on the Supplemental Register the mark will not be published for opposition but if it appears, after examination or reexamination, that the applicant is entitled to have the mark registered, a certificate of registration will issue as provided in §2.151. The mark will be published in the “Official Gazette” when registered.

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.83 Conflicting marks.

(a) Whenever an application is made for registration of a mark which so resembles another mark or marks pending registration as to be likely to cause confusion or mistake or to deceive, the mark with the earliest effective filing date will be published in the “Official Gazette” for opposition if eligible for the Principal Register, or issued a certificate of registration if eligible for the Supplemental Register.

(b) In situations in which conflicting applications have the same effective filing date, the application with the earliest date of execution will be published in the “Official Gazette” for opposition or issued on the Supplemental Register.

(c) Action on the conflicting application which is not published in the Official Gazette for opposition or not issued on the Supplemental Register will be suspended by the Examiner of Trademarks until the published or issued application is registered or abandoned.

[37 FR 2880, Feb. 9, 1972, as amended at 54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]
§ 2.84 Jurisdiction over published applications.

(a) The examiner may exercise jurisdiction over an application up to the date the mark is published in the “Official Gazette.” After publication of an application under section 1(a) or 44 of the Act the examiner may, with the permission of the Commissioner, exercise jurisdiction over the application. After publication of an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the examiner may exercise jurisdiction over the application after the issuance of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act. After publication, and prior to issuance of a notice of allowance in an application under section 1(b), the examiner may, with the permission of the Commissioner, exercise jurisdiction over the application.

(b) After publication, but before the printing of the certificate of registration in an application under section 1(a) or 44 of the Act, or before the printing of the notice of allowance in an application under section 1(b) of the Act, an application which is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may be amended if the amendment does not necessitate republication of the mark or issuance of an Office action. Otherwise, an amendment to such an application may be submitted only upon petition to the Commissioner to restore jurisdiction of the application to the examiner for consideration of the amendment and further examination. The amendment of an application which is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board is governed by §2.133.

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

CLASSIFICATION

§ 2.85 Classification schedules.

(a) Section 6.1 of part 6 of this chapter specifies the system of classification for goods and services which applies for all statutory purposes to trademark applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office on or after September 1, 1973, and to registrations issued on the basis of such applications, nor to registrations issued on the basis of such applications.

(b) With respect to applications filed on or before August 31, 1973, and registrations issued thereon, including older registrations issued prior to that date, the classification system under which the application was filed will govern for all statutory purposes, including, inter alia, the filing of petitions to revive, appeals, oppositions, petitions for cancellation, affidavits under section 8 and renewals, even though such petitions to revive, appeals, etc., are filed on or after September 1, 1973.

(c) Section 6.2 of part 6 of this chapter specifies the system of classification for goods and services which applies for all statutory purposes to all trademark applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office on or before August 31, 1973, and to registrations issued on the basis of such applications, except when the registration may have been issued under a classification system prior to that set forth in §6.2. Moreover, this classification will also be utilized for facilitating trademark searches until all pending and registered marks in the search file are organized on the basis of the international system of classification.

(d) Renewals filed on registrations issued under a prior classification system will be processed on the basis of that system.

(e) Where the amount of the fee received on filing an appeal in connection with an application or on an application for renewal is sufficient for at least one class of goods or services but is less than the required amount because multiple classes in an application or registration are involved, the appeal or renewal application will not be refused on the ground that the amount of the fee was insufficient if the required additional amount of the fee is received in the Patent and Trademark Office within the time limit set forth in the notification of this defect by the Office, or if action is sought only for the number of classes equal to the number of fees submitted.

(f) Sections 6.3 and 6.4 specify the system of classification which applies to certification marks and collective membership marks.

241
§ 2.86 Application may include multiple classes.

(a) In a single application, an applicant may apply to register the same mark for goods and/or services in multiple classes. The applicant must:

(1) Specifically identify the goods or services in each class;

(2) Submit an application filing fee for each class; and

(3) Include either dates of use (see §§2.34(a)(1)(ii) and (iii)) and one specimen for each class, or a statement of a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the goods or services specified in each class. The applicant may not claim both use in commerce and a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the goods or services specified in each class. The applicant may not claim both use in commerce and a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce for the identical goods or services in one application.

(b) An amendment to allege use under §2.76 or a statement of use under §2.88 must include, for each class, the required fee, dates of use, and one specimen. The applicant may not file the amendment to allege use or statement of use until the applicant has used the mark on all the goods or services, unless the applicant files a request to divide. See §§2.87 for information regarding requests to divide.

(c) The Office will issue a single certificate of registration for the mark, unless the applicant files a request to divide. See §2.87 for information regarding requests to divide.

§ 2.87 Dividing an application.

(a) An application may be physically divided into two or more separate applications upon the payment of a fee for each new application created and submission by the applicant of a request in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

(b) In the case of a request to divide out one or more entire classes from an application, only the fee under paragraph (a) of this section will be required. However, in the case of a request to divide out some, but not all, of the goods or services in a class, an application filing fee for each new separate application to be created by the division must be submitted, together with the fee under paragraph (a) of this section. Any outstanding time period for action by the applicant in the original application at the time of the division will be applicable to each new separate application created by the division.

(c) A request to divide an application may be filed at any time between the filing of the application and the date the Trademark Examining Attorney approves the mark for publication; or during an opposition, concurrent use, or interference proceeding, upon motion granted by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. Additionally, a request to divide an application under section 1(b) of the Act may be filed with a statement of use under §2.88 or at any time between the filing of a statement of use and the date the Trademark Examining Attorney approves the mark for registration.

(d) A request to divide an application should be made in a separate paper from any other amendment or response in the application. The title “Request to divide application” should appear at the top of the first page of the paper.

§ 2.88 Filing statement of use after notice of allowance.

(a) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, a statement of use, required under section 1(d) of the Act, must be filed within six months after issuance of a notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act, or within an extension of time granted under §2.89. A statement of use that is filed prior to issuance of a notice of allowance is premature, will not be considered, and will be returned to the applicant.

(b) A complete statement of use must include:

(1) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under §2.20 by a person
properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see §2.33(a)) that:

(i) The applicant believes it is the owner of the mark; and

(ii) The mark is in use in commerce, specifying the date of the applicant’s first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce, and those goods or services specified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the applicant uses the mark in commerce;

(2) One specimen of the mark as actually used in commerce. See §2.56 for the requirements for specimens; and

(3) The fee per class required by §2.6.

(c) The statement of use may be filed only when the applicant has made use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with all of the goods or services, as specified in the notice of allowance, for which applicant will seek registration in that application, unless the statement of use is accompanied by a request in accordance with §2.87 to divide out from the application the goods or services to which the statement of use pertains. If more than one item of goods or services is specified in the statement of use, the dates of use required in paragraph (b)(1) of this section need be for only one of the items specified in each class, provided the particular item to which the dates apply is designated.

(d) The title “Statement of use under §2.88.” should appear at the top of the first page of the paper.

(e) The Office will review a timely filed statement of use to determine whether it meets the following minimum requirements:

(1) The fee for at least a single class, required by §2.6;

(2) One specimen of the mark as used in commerce;

(3) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under §2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant that the mark is in use in commerce. If the verification or declaration is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant must submit a substitute verification on or before the statutory deadline for filing the statement of use;

(f) A timely filed statement of use which meets the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section will be examined in accordance with §§2.61 through 2.69. If, as a result of the examination of the statement of use, applicant is found not entitled to registration, applicant will be notified and advised of the reasons and of any formal requirements or refusals. The statement of use may be amended in accordance with §§2.59 and 2.71 through 2.75. If the statement of use is acceptable in all respects, the applicant will be notified of its acceptance.

(g) If the statement of use does not meet the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section, applicant will be notified of the deficiency. If the time permitted for applicant to file a statement of use has not expired, applicant may correct the deficiency. After the filing of a statement of use during a permitted time period for such filing, the applicant may not withdraw the statement to return to the previous status of awaiting submission of a statement of use, regardless of whether it is in compliance with paragraph (e) of this section.

(h) The failure to timely file a statement of use which meets the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section shall result in the abandonment of the application.

(i)(1) The goods or services specified in a statement of use must conform to those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance. An applicant may specify the goods or services by stating “those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance” or, if appropriate, “those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance except ** **” followed by an identification of the goods or services to be deleted.

(2) If any goods or services specified in the notice of allowance are omitted from the identification of goods or services in the statement of use, the Trademark Examining Attorney shall inquire about the discrepancy and permit the applicant to amend the statement of use to include any omitted goods or services, provided that the amendment is supported by a verification that the mark was in use in commerce, on or in connection with each of the goods or services sought to be included, prior to the expiration of
§ 2.89 Extensions of time for filing a statement of use.

(a) The applicant may request a six-month extension of time to file the statement of use required by §2.88. The extension request must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act and must include the following:

(1) A written request for an extension of time to file the statement of use;

(2) The fee per class required by §2.6; and

(3) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under §2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see §2.33(a)) that the applicant still has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, specifying the relevant goods or services. If the verification is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant must submit a substitute verification before the expiration of the previously granted extension; and

(4) A showing of good cause, as specified in paragraph (d) of this section.

(b) Before the expiration of the previously granted extension of time, the applicant may request further six-month extensions of time to file the statement of use by submitting the following:

(1) A written request for an extension of time to file the statement of use;

(2) The fee per class required by §2.6; and

(3) A statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under §2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see §2.33(a)) that the applicant still has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, specifying the relevant goods or services. If the verification is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, the applicant must submit a substitute verification before the expiration of the previously granted extension; and

(4) A showing of good cause, as specified in paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) Extensions of time under paragraph (b) of this section will be granted only in six-month increments and may not aggregate more than 24 months.

(d) The showing of good cause must include a statement of the applicant’s ongoing efforts to make use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with each of the relevant goods or services. Those efforts may include product or service research or development, market research, manufacturing activities, promotional activities, steps to acquire distributors, steps to obtain governmental approval, or other similar activities. In the alternative, the applicant must submit a satisfactory explanation for the failure to make efforts to use the mark in commerce.

(e)(1) At the time of the filing of a statement of use, or during any time remaining in the existing six-month period in which a statement of use is filed, applicant may file one request, in accordance with paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, for a six-month extension of time for filing a statement of use, provided that the time requested would not extend beyond 36 months from the issuance of the notice of allowance. Thereafter, applicant may not request any further extensions of time.

(2) A request for an extension of time that is filed at the time of the filing of a statement of use, or during any time remaining in the existing six-month period in which a statement of use is filed, must comply with all the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, if it is applicant’s first extension request, or paragraph (b) of this section, if it is a second or subsequent extension request. However, in a request
under paragraph (b) of this section, applicant may satisfy the requirement for a showing of good cause by asserting that applicant believes that it has made valid use of the mark in commerce, as evidenced by the submitted statement of use, but that if the statement of use is found by the Patent and Trademark Office to be fatally defective, applicant will need additional time in which to file a new statement of use.

(f) The goods or services specified in a request for an extension of time for filing a statement of use must conform to those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance. Any goods or services specified in the notice of allowance which are omitted from the identification of goods or services in the request for extension of time will be presumed to be deleted and the applicant may not thereafter request that the deleted goods or services be reinserted in the application. If appropriate, an applicant may specify the goods or services by stating “those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance” or “those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance except * * *” followed by an identification of the goods or services to be deleted.

(g) The applicant will be notified of the grant or denial of a request for an extension of time, and of the reasons for a denial. Failure to notify the applicant of the grant or denial of the request prior to the expiration of the existing period or requested extension does not relieve the applicant of the responsibility of timely filing a statement of use under §2.88. If, after denial of an extension request, there is time remaining in the existing six-month period for filing a statement of use, applicant may submit a substitute request for extension of time. Otherwise, the only recourse available after denial of a request for an extension of time is a petition to the Commissioner in accordance with §§2.66 or 2.146. A petition from the denial of a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use shall be filed within two months of the mailing date of the denial of the request. If the petition is granted, the term of the requested six month extension that was the subject of the petition will run from the date of the expiration of the previously existing six month period for filing a statement of use.

(h) If the extension request is not filed within a reasonable time after it is signed, the Office may require a substitute verification or declaration under §2.20 stating that the applicant still has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce.


§2.91 Declaration of interference.

(a) An interference will not be declared between two applications or between an application and a registration except upon petition to the Commissioner. Interferences will be declared by the Commissioner only upon a showing of extraordinary circumstances which would result in a party being unduly prejudiced without an interference. In ordinary circumstances, the availability of an opposition or cancellation proceeding to the party will be deemed to remove any undue prejudice.

(b) Registrations and applications to register on the Supplemental Register, registrations under the Act of 1920, and registrations of marks the right to use of which has become incontestable are not subject to interference.


§2.92 Preliminary to interference.

An interference which has been declared by the Commissioner will not be instituted by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board until the Examiner of Trademarks has determined that the marks which are to form the subject matter of the controversy are registrable, and all of the marks have been published in the Official Gazette for opposition.

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]
§ 2.93 Institution of interference.

An interference is instituted by the mailing of a notice of interference to the parties. The notice shall be sent to each applicant, in care of the applicant's attorney or other representative of record, if any, and if one of the parties is a registrant, the notice shall be sent to the registrant or the registrant's assignee of record. The notice shall give the name and address of every adverse party and of the adverse party's attorney or other authorized representative, if any, together with the serial number and date of filing and publication of each of the applications, or the registration number and date of issuance of each of the registrations, involved.

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§§ 2.94–2.95 [Reserved]

§ 2.96 Issue; burden of proof.

The issue in an interference between applications is normally priority of use, but the rights of the parties to registration may also be determined. The party whose application involved in the interference has the latest filing date is the junior party and has the burden of proof. When there are more than two parties to an interference, a party shall be a junior party to and shall have the burden of proof as against every other party whose application involved in the interference has an earlier filing date. If the involved applications of any parties have the same filing date, the application with the latest date of execution will be deemed to have the latest filing date and that applicant will be the junior party. The issue in an interference between an application and a registration shall be the same, but in the event the final decision is adverse to the registrant, a registration to the applicant will not be authorized so long as the interfering registration remains on the register.

[48 FR 23135, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27225, June 14, 1983]

§ 2.97 [Reserved]

§ 2.98 Adding party to interference.

A party may be added to an interference only upon petition to the Commissioner by that party. If an application which is or might be the subject of a petition for addition to an interference is not added, the examiner may suspend action on the application pending termination of the interference proceeding.

[48 FR 23135, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.99 Application to register as concurrent user.

(a) An application for registration as a lawful concurrent user will be examined in the same manner as other applications for registration.

(b) When it is determined that the mark is ready for publication, the applicant may be required to furnish as many copies of his application, specimens and drawing as may be necessary for the preparation of notices for each applicant, registrant or user specified as a concurrent user in the application for registration.

(c) Upon receipt of the copies required by paragraph (b) of this section, the examiner shall forward the application for concurrent use registration for publication in the Official Gazette as provided by §2.80. If no opposition is filed, or if all oppositions that are filed are dismissed or withdrawn, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall prepare a notice for the applicant for concurrent use registration and for each applicant, registrant or user specified as a concurrent user in the application. The notices for the specified parties shall state the name and address of the applicant and of the applicant's attorney or other authorized representative, if any, together with the serial number and filing date of the application.

(d)(1) The notices shall be sent to each applicant, in care of his attorney or other authorized representative, if any, to each user, and to each registrant. A copy of the application shall be forwarded with the notice to each party specified in the application.
(2) An answer to the notice is not required in the case of an applicant or registrant whose application or registration is specified as a concurrent user in the application, but a statement, if desired, may be filed within forty days after the mailing of the notice; in the case of any other party specified as a concurrent user in the application, an answer must be filed within forty days after the mailing of the notice.

(3) If an answer, when required, is not filed, judgment will be entered precluding the specified user from claiming any right more extensive than that acknowledged in the application(s) for concurrent use registration, but the applicant(s) will remain with the burden of proving entitlement to registration(s).

e) The applicant for a concurrent use registration has the burden of proving entitlement thereto. If there are two or more applications for concurrent use registration involved in a proceeding, the party whose application has the latest filing date is the junior party. A party whose application has a filing date between the filing dates of the earliest involved application and the latest involved application is a junior party to every party whose involved application has an earlier filing date. If any applications have the same filing date, the application with the latest date of execution will be deemed to have the latest filing date and that applicant will be the junior party. A person specified as an excepted user in a concurrent use application but who has not filed an application shall be considered a party senior to every party that has an application involved in the proceeding.

(f) When a concurrent use registration is sought on the basis that a court of competent jurisdiction has finally determined that the parties are entitled to use the same or similar marks in commerce, a concurrent use registration proceeding will not be instituted if all of the following conditions are fulfilled:

(1) The court decree specifies the rights of the parties; and
(2) The court decree specifies the rights of the parties; and
(3) A true copy of the court decree is submitted to the examiner; and
(4) The concurrent use application complies fully and exactly with the court decree; and
(5) The excepted use specified in the concurrent use application does not involve a registration, or any involved registration has been restricted by the Commissioner in accordance with the court decree.

If any of the conditions specified in this paragraph is not satisfied, a concurrent use registration proceeding shall be prepared and instituted as provided in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section.

g) Registrations and applications to register on the Supplemental Register and registrations under the Act of 1920 are not subject to concurrent use registration proceedings. Applications to register under section 1(b) of the Act of 1946 are subject to concurrent use registration proceedings only after an acceptable amendment to allege use under §2.76 or statement of use under §2.88 has been filed.

(h) The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will consider and determine concurrent use rights only in the context of a concurrent use registration proceeding.


OPPOSITION


§ 2.101 Filing an opposition.

(a) An opposition proceeding is commenced by the filing of an opposition in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) Any entity which believes that it would be damaged by the registration of a mark on the Principal Register may oppose the same by filing an opposition, which should be addressed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. The opposition need not be verified, and may be signed by the opposer or the opposer’s attorney or other authorized representative.
(c) The opposition must be filed with- in thirty days after publication (§2.80) of the application being opposed or within an extension of time (§2.102) for filing an opposition.

(d)(1) The opposition must be accom- panied by the required fee for each party joined as opposer for each class in the application for which registra- tion is opposed (see §2.6). If no fee, or a fee insufficient to pay for one person to oppose the registration of a mark in at least one class, is submitted within thirty days after publication of the mark to be opposed or within an exten- sion of time for filing an opposition, the opposition will not be refused if the required fee(s) is submitted to the Pat- ent and Trademark Office within the time limit set in the notification of this defect by the Office.

(2) If the fees submitted are sufficient to pay for one person to oppose registra- tion in at least one class but are insufficient for an opposition against all of the classes in the application, and the particular class or classes against which the opposition is filed are not specified, the Office will issue a written notice allowing opposer until a set time in which to submit the re- quired fee(s) or to specify the class or classes opposed. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the no- tice, the opposition will be presumed to be against the class or classes in ascen- ding order, beginning with the lowest numbered class and including the number of classes in the application for which the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each class.

(3) If persons are joined as party op- posers, and the fees submitted are suf- ficient to pay for one person to oppose registration in at least one class but are insufficient for each named party opposer, the Office will issue a written notice allowing the named party opposers until a set time in which to submit the required fee(s) or to specify the op- poser(s) to which the submitted fees apply. If the required fee(s) is not sub- mitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the first named party will be presumed to be the party opposer and additional parties will be deemed to be party oppo- sers to the extent that the fees sub- mitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each party opposer. If persons are joined as party opposers against the registration of a mark in more than one class, the fees submitted are insuf- ficient, and no specification of opposers and classes is made within the time set in the written notice issued by the Office, the fees submitted will be applied first on behalf of the first-named op- poser against as many of the classes in the application as the submitted fees are sufficient to pay, and any excess will be applied on behalf of the second-named party to the opposition against the classes in the application in ascen- ding order.

than thirty days will be granted upon request. Further extensions of time may be granted by the Board for good cause. In addition, extensions of time to file an opposition aggregating more than 120 days from the date of publication of the application will not be granted except upon (1) a written consent or stipulation signed by the applicant or its authorized representative, or (2) a written request by the potential opposer or its authorized representative stating that the applicant or its authorized representative has consented to the request, or (3) a showing of extraordinary circumstances, it being considered that a potential opposer has an adequate alternative remedy by a petition for cancellation.

(d) Every request to extend the time for filing a notice of opposition should be submitted in triplicate.

§ 2.104 Contents of opposition.

(a) The opposition must set forth a short and plain statement showing why the opposer believes it would be damaged by the registration of the opposed mark and state the grounds for opposition. A duplicate copy of the opposition, including exhibits, shall be filed with the opposition.

(b) Opposers to different applications owned by the same party may be joined in a consolidated opposition when appropriate, but the required fee must be included for each party joined as opposer for each class in which registration is opposed in each application against which the opposition is filed.

§ 2.105 Notification of opposition proceeding(s).

When an opposition in proper form has been filed and the correct fee(s) have been submitted, a notification shall be prepared by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, which shall identify the title and number of the proceeding and the application involved and shall designate a time, not less than thirty days from the mailing date of the notification, within which an answer must be filed. A copy of the notification shall be forwarded to the attorney or other authorized representative of the opposer, if any, or to the opposer. The duplicate copy of the opposition and exhibits shall be forwarded with a copy of the notification to the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant, if any, or to the applicant.

§ 2.106 Answer.

(a) If no answer is filed within the time set, the opposition may be decided as in case of default.

(b)(1) An answer shall state in short and plain terms the applicant’s defenses to each claim asserted and shall admit or deny the averments upon which the opposer relies. If the applicant is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to the truth of an averment, applicant shall so state and this will have the effect of a denial. Denials may take any of the forms specified in Rule 8(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. An answer may contain any defense, including the affirmative defenses of unclean hands, laches, estoppel, acquiescence, fraud, mistake, prior judgment, or any other matter constituting an avoidance or affirmative defense. When pleading special matters, the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall be followed. A reply to an affirmative defense need not be filed. When a defense attacks the validity of a registration pleaded in the opposition, paragraph (b)(2) of this section shall govern. A pleaded registration is a registration identified by number and date of issuance in an original notice of opposition or in any amendment thereto made under Rule 15, Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(b)(2)(i) A defense attacking the validity of any one or more of the registrations pleaded in the opposition shall be a compulsory counterclaim if grounds for such counterclaim exist at the time when the answer is filed. If grounds for a counterclaim are known to the applicant when the answer to the opposition is filed, the counterclaim shall be pleaded with or as part of the answer. If grounds for a counterclaim are learned during the course of the opposition proceeding, the counterclaim shall be pleaded promptly after the grounds therefor are learned. A counterclaim
§ 2.107 Amendment of pleadings in an opposition proceeding.

Pleadings in an opposition proceeding may be amended in the same manner and to the same extent as in a civil action in a United States district court.

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

CANCELLATION

AUGUST 22, 1983

§ 2.111 Filing petition for cancellation.

(a) A cancellation proceeding is commenced by the timely filing of a petition for cancellation, together with the required fee, in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) Any entity which believes that it is or will be damaged by a registration may file a petition, which should be addressed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, to cancel the registration in whole or in part. The petition need not be verified, and may be signed by the petitioner or the petitioner’s attorney or other authorized representative. The petition may be filed at any time in the case of registrations on the Supplemental Register or under the Act of 1920, or registrations under the Act of 1881 or the Act of 1905 which have not been published under section 12(c) of the Act, or on any ground specified in section 14(3) or (5) of the Act. In all other cases the petition and the required fee must be filed within five years from the date of registration of the mark under the Act or from the date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act.

(c)(1) The petition must be accompanied by the required fee for each class in the registration for which cancellation is sought (see § 2.6). If the fee submitted is insufficient for a cancellation against all of the classes in the registration, and the particular class or classes against which the cancellation is filed are not specified, the Office will issue a written notice allowing petitioner a set time in which to submit the required fees(s) (provided that the five-year period, if applicable, has not expired) or to specify the class or classes sought to be cancelled. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the cancellation will be presumed to be against the class or classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class, and including the number of classes in the registration for which the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each class.

(2) If persons are joined as party petitioners, each must submit a fee for each class for which cancellation is sought. If the fees submitted are insufficient for each named party petitioner, the Office will issue a written notice allowing the named party petitioner a set time in which to submit the required fee(s) (provided that the five-year period, if applicable, has not expired) or to specify the class or classes sought to be cancelled. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the first named party will be presumed to
be the party petitioner and additional parties will be deemed to be party petitioners to the extent that the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each party petitioner. If persons are joined as party petitioners against a registration sought to be cancelled in more than one class, the fees submitted are insufficient, and no specification of parties and classes is made within the time set in the written notice issued by the Office, the fees submitted will be applied first on behalf of the first-named petitioner against as many of the classes in the registration as the submitted fees are sufficient to pay, and any excess will be applied on behalf of the second-named party to the petition against the classes in the registration in ascending order.

(3) The filing date of the petition is the date of receipt in the Patent and Trademark Office of the petition together with the required fee. If the amount of the fee filed with the petition is sufficient to pay for at least one person to petition to cancel one class of goods or services but is less than the required amount because multiple party petitioners and/or multiple classes in the registration for which cancellation is sought are involved, and the required additional amount of the fee is filed within the time limit set in the notification of the defect by the Office, the filing date of the petition with respect to the additional party petitioners and/or classes is the date of receipt in the Patent and Trademark Office of the additional fees.

§2.113 Notification of cancellation proceeding.

When a petition for cancellation has been filed in proper form (see §§2.111 and 2.112), a notification shall be prepared by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, which shall identify the title and number of the proceeding and the registration or registrations involved and shall designate a time, not less than thirty days from the mailing date of the notification, within which an answer must be filed. A copy of the notification shall be forwarded to the attorney or other authorized representative of the petitioner, if any, or to the petitioner. The duplicate copy of the petition for cancellation and exhibits shall be forwarded with a copy of the notification to the respondent (see §2.118), who shall be the party shown by the records of the Patent and Trademark Office to be the current owner of the registration or registrations sought to be cancelled, except that the Board, in its discretion, may join or substitute as respondent a party who makes a showing of a current ownership interest in such registration or registrations. When the party identified by the petitioner, pursuant to §2.112(a), as the current owner of the registration or registrations is not the record owner thereof, a courtesy copy of the petition for cancellation shall be forwarded with a copy of the notification to the alleged current owner, which may file a motion to be joined or substituted as respondent. If the petition is found to be defective as to form, the party filing the petition shall be so advised and allowed a reasonable time for correcting the informality.

§2.112 Contents of petition for cancellation.

(a) The petition to cancel must set forth a short and plain statement showing why the petitioner believes it is or will be damaged by the registration, state the grounds for cancellation, and indicate, to the best of petitioner's knowledge, the name and address of the current owner of the registration. A duplicate copy of the petition, including exhibits, shall be filed with the petition.

(b) Petitions to cancel different registrations owned by the same party may be joined in a consolidated petition when appropriate, but the required fee must be included for each party joined as petitioner for each class sought to be cancelled in each registration against which the petition to cancel is filed.
§ 2.114 Answer.

(a) If no answer is filed within the time set, the petition may be decided as in case of default.

(b)(1) An answer shall state in short and plain terms the respondent's defenses to each claim asserted and shall admit or deny the averments upon which the petitioner relies. If the respondent is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to the truth of an averment, respondent shall so state and this will have the effect of a denial. Denials may take any of the forms specified in Rule 8(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. An answer may contain any defense, including the affirmative defenses of unclean hands, laches, estoppel, acquiescence, fraud, mistake, prior judgment, or any other matter constituting an avoidance or affirmative defense. When pleading special matters, the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall be followed. A reply to an affirmative defense need not be filed. When a defense attacks the validity of a registration pleaded in the petition, paragraph (b)(2) of this section shall govern. A pleaded registration is a registration identified by number and date of issuance in an original petition for cancellation or in any amendment thereto made under Rule 15, Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(b)(2)(i) A defense attacking the validity of any one or more of the registrations pleaded in the petition shall be a compulsory counterclaim if grounds for such counterclaim exist at the time when the answer is filed. If grounds for a counterclaim are known to respondent when the answer to the petition is filed, the counterclaim shall be pleaded with or as part of the answer. If grounds for a counterclaim are learned during the course of the cancellation proceeding, the counterclaim shall be pleaded promptly after the grounds therefor are learned. A counterclaim need not be filed if it is the subject of another proceeding between the same parties or anyone in privity therewith.

(ii) An attack on the validity of a registration pleaded by a petitioner for cancellation will not be heard unless a counterclaim or separate petition is filed to seek the cancellation of such registration.

(iii) The provisions of §§2.111 through 2.115, inclusive, shall be applicable to counterclaims. A time, not less than thirty days, will be designated within which an answer to the counterclaim must be filed.

(iv) The times for pleading, discovery, testimony, briefs, or oral argument will be reset or extended when necessary, upon motion by a party, to enable a party fully to present or meet a counterclaim or separate petition for cancellation of a registration.

(c) The petition for cancellation may be withdrawn without prejudice before the answer is filed. After the answer is filed, the petition may not be withdrawn without prejudice except with the written consent of the registrant or the registrant’s attorney or other authorized representative.


§ 2.115 Amendment of pleadings in a cancellation proceeding.

Pleadings in a cancellation proceeding may be amended in the same manner and to the same extent as in a civil action in a United States district court.

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]
senior, and the party that is a senior party in an interference proceeding or in a concurrent use proceeding shall be a defendant against every party that is junior.

(c) The opposition or the petition for cancellation and the answer correspond to the complaint and answer in a court proceeding.

(d) The assignment of testimony periods corresponds to setting a case for trial in court proceedings.

(e) The taking of depositions during the assigned testimony periods corresponds to the trial in court proceedings.

(f) Oral hearing corresponds to oral summation in court proceedings.

§ 2.117 Suspension of proceedings.

(a) Whenever it shall come to the attention of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that a party or parties to a pending case are engaged in a civil action or another Board proceeding which may have a bearing on the case, proceedings before the Board may be suspended until termination of the civil action or the other Board proceeding.

(b) Whenever there is pending before the Board both a motion to suspend and a motion which is potentially dispositive of the case, the potentially dispositive motion may be decided before the question of suspension is considered regardless of the order in which the motions were filed.

(c) Proceedings may also be suspended, for good cause, upon motion or a stipulation of the parties approved by the Board.

§ 2.118 Undelivered Office notices.

When the notices sent by the Patent and Trademark Office to any registrant are returned to the Office undelivered, or when one of the parties resides abroad and his representative in the United States is unknown, additional notice may be given by publication in the Official Gazette for such period of time as the Commissioner may direct.

§ 2.119 Service and signing of papers.

(a) Every paper filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in inter partes cases, including notice of appeal, must be served upon the other parties except the notice of interference (§ 2.93), the notification of opposition (§ 2.105), the petition for cancellation (§ 2.113), and the notice of a concurrent use proceeding (§ 2.99), which are mailed by the Patent and Trademark Office. Proof of such service must be made before the paper will be considered by the Office. A statement signed by the attorney or other authorized representative, attached to or appearing on the original paper when filed, clearly stating the date and manner in which service was made will be accepted as prima facie proof of service.

(b) Service of papers must be on the attorney or other authorized representative of the party if there is such or on the party if there is no attorney or other authorized representative, and may be made in any of the following ways:

(1) By delivering a copy of the paper to the person served;
(2) By leaving a copy at the usual place of business of the person served, with someone in the person's employment;
(3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy at the person's residence, with a member of the person's family over 14 years of age and of discretion;
(4) Transmission by the “Express Mail Post Office to Addressee” service of the United States Postal Service or by first-class mail, which may also be certified or registered;
(5) Transmission by overnight courier.

Whenever it shall be satisfactorily shown to the Commissioner that none of the above modes of obtaining service or serving the paper is practicable, service may be by notice published in the Official Gazette.

(c) When service is made by first-class mail, “Express Mail,” or overnight courier, the date of mailing or of delivery to the overnight courier will be considered the date of service. Whenever a party is required to take some action within a prescribed period after the service of a paper upon the
§ 2.120 Discovery.

(a) In general. Wherever appropriate, the provisions of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure relating to discovery shall apply in opposition, cancellation, interference and concurrent use registration proceedings except as otherwise provided in this section. The provisions of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure relating to automatic disclosure, scheduling conferences, conferences to discuss settlement and to develop a discovery plan, are not applicable to Board proceedings. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will specify the opening and closing dates for the taking of discovery. The trial order setting these dates will be mailed with the notice of institution of the proceeding. The discovery period will be set for a period of 180 days. The parties may stipulate to a shortening of the discovery period. The discovery period may be extended upon stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board. If a motion for an extension is denied, the discovery period may remain as originally set or as reset. Discovery depositions must be taken, and interrogatories, requests for production of documents and things, and requests for admission must be served, on or before the closing date of the discovery period as originally set or as reset. Responses to interrogatories, requests for production of documents and things, and requests for admission must be served within 30 days from the date of service of such discovery requests. The time to respond may be extended upon stipulation of the parties, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board. The resetting of a party’s time to respond to an outstanding request for discovery will not result in the automatic rescheduling of the discovery and/or testimony periods; such dates will be rescheduled only upon stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board.

(b) Discovery deposition within the United States. The deposition of a natural person shall be taken in the Federal judicial district where the person resides or is regularly employed or at any place on which the parties agree by stipulation. The responsibility rests wholly with the party taking discovery to secure the attendance of a proposed deponent other than a party or anyone who, at the time set for the taking of the deposition, is an officer, director, or managing agent of a party, or a person designated under Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. See 35 U.S.C. 24.

(c) Discovery deposition in foreign countries. (1) The discovery deposition of a natural person residing in a foreign country who is a party or who, at
the time set for the taking of the deposition, is an officer, director, or managing agent of a party, or a person designated under Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, shall, if taken in a foreign country, be taken in the manner prescribed by § 2.124 unless the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, upon motion for good cause, orders or the parties stipulate, that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(2) Whenever a foreign party is or will be, during a time set for discovery, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, such party may be deposed by oral examination upon notice by the party seeking discovery. Whenever a foreign party has or will have, during a time set for discovery, an officer, director, managing agent, or other person who consents to testify on its behalf, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, such officer, director, managing agent, or other person who consents to testify in its behalf may be deposed by oral examination upon notice by the party seeking discovery. The party seeking discovery may have one or more officers, directors, managing agents, or other persons who consent to testify on behalf of the adverse party, designated under Rule 30(b)(6) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. The deposition of a person under this paragraph shall be taken in the Federal judicial district where the witness resides or is regularly employed, or, if the witness neither resides nor is regularly employed in a Federal judicial district, where the witness is at the time of the deposition. This paragraph does not preclude the taking of a discovery deposition of a foreign party by any other procedure provided by paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(2) The production of documents and things under the provisions of Rule 34 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure will be made at the place where the documents and things are usually kept, or where the parties agree, or where and in the manner which the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, upon motion, orders.

(e) Motion for an order to compel discovery. (1) If a party fails to designate a person pursuant to Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, or if a party, or such designated person, or an officer, director or managing agent of a party fails to attend a deposition or fails to answer any question propounded in a discovery deposition, or any interrogatory, or fails to produce and permit the inspection and copying of any document or thing, the party seeking discovery may file a motion before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board for an order to compel a designation, or attendance at a deposition, or an answer, or production and an opportunity to inspect and copy. The motion must be filed prior to additional interrogatories upon motion therefor showing good cause, or upon stipulation of the parties. A motion for leave to serve additional interrogatories must be filed and granted prior to the service of the proposed additional interrogatories; and must be accompanied by a copy of the interrogatories, if any, which have already been served by the moving party, and by a copy of the interrogatories proposed to be served. If a party upon which interrogatories have been served believes that the number of interrogatories served exceeds the limitation specified in this paragraph, and is not willing to waive this basis for objection, the party shall, within the time for (and instead of) serving answers and specific objections to the interrogatories, serve a general objection on the ground of their excessive number. If the inquiring party, in turn, files a motion to compel discovery, the motion must be accompanied by a copy of the set(s) of interrogatories which together are said to exceed the limitation, and must otherwise comply with the requirements of paragraph (e) of this section.
§ 2.120  The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (TTAB) may make any order which justice requires to protect a party from annoyance, embarrassment, oppression, or undue burden or expense, including one or more of the types of orders provided by clauses (1) through (8), inclusive, of Rule 26(c) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. If the motion for a protective order is denied in whole or in part, the Board may, on such conditions (other than an award of expenses to the party prevailing on the motion) as are just, order that any party provide or permit discovery.

(g) Sanctions. (1) If a party fails to comply with an order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board relating to discovery, including a protective order, the Board may make any appropriate order, including any of the orders provided in Rule 37(b)(2) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, except that the Board will not hold any person in contempt or award any expenses to any party. The Board may impose against a party any of the sanctions provided by this subsection in the event that said party or any attorney, agent, or designated witness of that party fails to comply with a protective order made pursuant to Rule 26(c) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(2) If a party, or an officer, director, or managing agent of a party, or a person designated under Rule 30(b)(6) or 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure to testify on behalf of a party, fails to attend the party’s or person’s discovery deposition, after being served with proper notice, or fails to provide any response to a set of interrogatories or to a set of requests for production of documents and things, and such party or the party’s attorney or other authorized representative informs the party seeking discovery that no response will be made thereto, the Board may make any appropriate order, as specified in paragraph (g)(1) of this section.

(h)(1) Any motion by a party to determine the sufficiency of an answer or objection to a request made by that party for an admission must be filed prior to the commencement of the first testimony period, as originally set or as reset. The motion shall include a copy of the request for admission and any exhibits thereto and of the answer or objection. The motion must be supported by a written statement from the moving party that such party or the attorney therefor has made a good faith effort, by conference or correspondence, to resolve with the other party or the attorney therefor the issues presented in the motion and has been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised in the motion are subsequently resolved by agreement of the
parties, the moving party should inform the Board in writing of the issues in the motion which no longer require adjudication.

(2) When a party files a motion to determine the sufficiency of an answer or objection to a request made by that party for an admission, the case will be suspended by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board with respect to all matters not germane to the motion, and no party should file any paper which is not germane to the motion, except as otherwise specified in the Board’s suspension order. The filing of a motion to determine the sufficiency of an answer or objection to a request for admission shall not toll the time for a party to respond to any outstanding discovery requests or to appear for any noticed discovery deposition.

(i) Telephone and pre-trial conferences. (1) Whenever it appears to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that a motion filed in an inter partes proceeding is of such nature that its resolution by correspondence is not practical, the Board may, upon its own initiative or upon request made by one or both of the parties, resolve the motion by telephone conference.

(2) Whenever it appears to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that questions or issues arising during the interlocutory phase of an inter partes proceeding have become so complex that their resolution by correspondence or telephone conference is not practical and that resolution would be likely to be facilitated by a conference in person of the parties or their attorneys with a Member or Attorney-Examiner of the Board, the Board may, upon its own initiative or upon motion made by one or both of the parties, request that the parties or their attorneys, under circumstances which will not result in undue hardship for any party, meet with the Board at its offices for a pre-trial conference.

(j) Use of discovery deposition, answer to interrogatory, or admission. (1) The discovery deposition of a party or of anyone who at the time of taking the deposition was an officer, director or managing agent of a party, or a person designated by a party pursuant to Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, may be offered in evidence by an adverse party.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (j)(1) of this section, the discovery deposition of a witness, whether or not a party, shall not be offered in evidence unless the person whose deposition was taken is, during the testimony period of the party offering the deposition, dead; or out of the United States (unless it appears that the absence of the witness was procured by the party offering the deposition); or unable to testify because of age, illness, infirmity, or imprisonment; or cannot be served with a subpoena to compel attendance at a testimonial deposition; or there is a stipulation by the parties; or upon a showing that such exceptional circumstances exist as to make it desirable, in the interest of justice, to allow the deposition to be used. The use of a discovery deposition by any party under this paragraph will be allowed only by stipulation of the parties approved by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or by order of the Board on motion, which shall be filed at the time of the purported offer of the deposition in evidence, unless the motion is based upon a claim that such exceptional circumstances exist as to make it desirable, in the interest of justice, to allow the deposition to be used, in which case the motion shall be filed promptly after the circumstances claimed to justify use of the deposition became known.

(3)(i) A discovery deposition, an answer to an interrogatory, or an admission to a request for admission, which may be offered in evidence under the provisions of paragraph (j) of this section may be made of record in the case by filing the deposition or any part thereof with any exhibit to the part that is filed, or a copy of the interrogatory and answer thereto with any exhibit made part of the answer, or a copy of the request for admission and any exhibit thereto and the admission (or a statement that the party from which an admission was requested failed to respond thereto), together with a notice of reliance. The notice of reliance and the material submitted thereunder should be filed during the testimony period of the party which
§ 2.121 Assignment of times for taking testimony.

(a)(1) The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will issue a trial order assigning to each party the time for taking testimony. No testimony shall be taken except during the times assigned, unless by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or, upon motion, by order of the Board. Testimony periods may be rescheduled by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or by order of the Board. If a motion to reschedule testimony periods is denied, the testimony periods may remain as set. The resetting of the closing date for discovery will result in the rescheduling of the testimony periods without action by any party.

(2) The initial trial order will be mailed by the Board after issue is joined.

(b)(1) The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will schedule a testimony period for the plaintiff to present its case in chief, a testimony period for the defendant to present its case and to meet the case of the plaintiff, and a
testimony period for the plaintiff to present evidence in rebuttal.

(2) When there is a counterclaim, or when proceedings have been consolidated and one party is in the position of plaintiff in one of the involved proceedings and in the position of defendant in another of the involved proceedings, or when there is an interference or a concurrent use registration proceeding involving more than two parties, the Board will schedule testimony periods so that each party in the position of plaintiff will have a period for presenting its case in chief against each party in the position of defendant, each party in the position of defendant will have a period for presenting its case and meeting the case of each plaintiff, and each party in the position of plaintiff will have a period for presenting evidence in rebuttal.

(c) A testimony period which is solely for rebuttal will be set for fifteen days. All other testimony periods will be set for thirty days. The periods may be extended by stipulation of the parties approved by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board. If a motion for an extension is denied, the testimony periods may remain as set.

(d) When parties stipulate to the rescheduling of testimony periods or to the rescheduling of the closing date for discovery and the rescheduling of testimony periods, a stipulation presented in the form used in a trial order, signed by the parties, or a motion in said form signed by one party and including a statement that every other party has agreed thereto, and submitted in a number of copies equal to the number of parties to the proceeding plus one copy for the Board, will, if approved, be so stamped, signed, and dated, and a copy will be promptly returned to each of the parties.


§ 2.122 Matters in evidence.

(a) Rules of evidence. The rules of evidence for proceedings before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board are the Federal Rules of Evidence, the relevant provisions of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the relevant provisions of Title 28 of the United States Code, and the provisions of this part of title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

(b) Application files. (1) The file of each application or registration specified in a notice of interference, of each application or registration specified in the notice of a concurrent use registration proceeding, of the application against which a notice of opposition is filed, or of each registration against which a petition or counterclaim for cancellation is filed forms part of the record of the proceeding without any action by the parties and reference may be made to the file for any relevant and competent purpose.

(2) The allegation in an application for registration, or in a registration, of a date of use is not evidence on behalf of the applicant or registrant; a date of use of a mark must be established by competent evidence. Specimens in the file of an application for registration, or in the file of a registration, are not evidence on behalf of the applicant or registrant unless identified and introduced in evidence as exhibits during the period for the taking of testimony.

(c) Exhibits to pleadings. Except as provided in paragraph (d)(1) of this section, an exhibit attached to a pleading is not evidence on behalf of the party to whose pleading the exhibit is attached unless identified and introduced in evidence as exhibits during the period for the taking of testimony.

(d) Registrations. (1) A registration of the opposer or petitioner pleaded in an opposition or petition to cancel will be received in evidence and made part of the record if the opposition or petition is accompanied by two copies (originals or photocopies) of the registration prepared and issued by the Patent and Trademark Office showing both the current status of and current title to the registration. For the cost of a copy of a registration showing status and title, see §2.6(b)(4).

(2) A registration owned by any party to a proceeding may be made of record in the proceeding by that party by appropriate identification and introduction during the taking of testimony or by filing a notice of reliance, which shall be accompanied by a copy (original or photocopy) of the registration
§ 2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.

(a)(1) The testimony of witnesses in inter partes cases may be taken by depositions upon oral examination as provided by this section or by depositions upon written questions as provided by §2.124. If a party serves notice of the taking of a testimonial deposition upon written questions of a witness who is, or will be at the time of the deposition, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, any adverse party may, within fifteen days from the date of service of the notice, file a motion with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, for good cause, for an order that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(f) Testimony from other proceedings. By order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, on motion, testimony taken in another proceeding, or testimony taken in a suit or action in a court, between the same parties or those in privity may be used in a proceeding, so far as relevant and material, subject, however, to the right of any adverse party to recall or demand the recall for examination or cross-examination of any witness whose prior testimony has been offered and to rebut the testimony.

§ 2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.

(a)(1) The testimony of witnesses in inter partes cases may be taken by depositions upon oral examination as provided by this section or by depositions upon written questions as provided by §2.124. If a party serves notice of the taking of a testimonial deposition upon written questions of a witness who is, or will be at the time of the deposition, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, any adverse party may, within fifteen days from the date of service of the notice, file a motion with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, for good cause, for an order that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(f) Testimony from other proceedings. By order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, on motion, testimony taken in another proceeding, or testimony taken in a suit or action in a court, between the same parties or those in privity may be used in a proceeding, so far as relevant and material, subject, however, to the right of any adverse party to recall or demand the recall for examination or cross-examination of any witness whose prior testimony has been offered and to rebut the testimony.

§ 2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.

(a)(1) The testimony of witnesses in inter partes cases may be taken by depositions upon oral examination as provided by this section or by depositions upon written questions as provided by §2.124. If a party serves notice of the taking of a testimonial deposition upon written questions of a witness who is, or will be at the time of the deposition, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, any adverse party may, within fifteen days from the date of service of the notice, file a motion with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, for good cause, for an order that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(f) Testimony from other proceedings. By order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, on motion, testimony taken in another proceeding, or testimony taken in a suit or action in a court, between the same parties or those in privity may be used in a proceeding, so far as relevant and material, subject, however, to the right of any adverse party to recall or demand the recall for examination or cross-examination of any witness whose prior testimony has been offered and to rebut the testimony.

§ 2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.

(a)(1) The testimony of witnesses in inter partes cases may be taken by depositions upon oral examination as provided by this section or by depositions upon written questions as provided by §2.124. If a party serves notice of the taking of a testimonial deposition upon written questions of a witness who is, or will be at the time of the deposition, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, any adverse party may, within fifteen days from the date of service of the notice, file a motion with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, for good cause, for an order that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(f) Testimony from other proceedings. By order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, on motion, testimony taken in another proceeding, or testimony taken in a suit or action in a court, between the same parties or those in privity may be used in a proceeding, so far as relevant and material, subject, however, to the right of any adverse party to recall or demand the recall for examination or cross-examination of any witness whose prior testimony has been offered and to rebut the testimony.

§ 2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.

(a)(1) The testimony of witnesses in inter partes cases may be taken by depositions upon oral examination as provided by this section or by depositions upon written questions as provided by §2.124. If a party serves notice of the taking of a testimonial deposition upon written questions of a witness who is, or will be at the time of the deposition, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, any adverse party may, within fifteen days from the date of service of the notice, file a motion with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, for good cause, for an order that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(f) Testimony from other proceedings. By order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, on motion, testimony taken in another proceeding, or testimony taken in a suit or action in a court, between the same parties or those in privity may be used in a proceeding, so far as relevant and material, subject, however, to the right of any adverse party to recall or demand the recall for examination or cross-examination of any witness whose prior testimony has been offered and to rebut the testimony.

§ 2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.

(a)(1) The testimony of witnesses in inter partes cases may be taken by depositions upon oral examination as provided by this section or by depositions upon written questions as provided by §2.124. If a party serves notice of the taking of a testimonial deposition upon written questions of a witness who is, or will be at the time of the deposition, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, any adverse party may, within fifteen days from the date of service of the notice, file a motion with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, for good cause, for an order that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(f) Testimony from other proceedings. By order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, on motion, testimony taken in another proceeding, or testimony taken in a suit or action in a court, between the same parties or those in privity may be used in a proceeding, so far as relevant and material, subject, however, to the right of any adverse party to recall or demand the recall for examination or cross-examination of any witness whose prior testimony has been offered and to rebut the testimony.

§ 2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.

(a)(1) The testimony of witnesses in inter partes cases may be taken by depositions upon oral examination as provided by this section or by depositions upon written questions as provided by §2.124. If a party serves notice of the taking of a testimonial deposition upon written questions of a witness who is, or will be at the time of the deposition, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, any adverse party may, within fifteen days from the date of service of the notice, file a motion with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, for good cause, for an order that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(f) Testimony from other proceedings. By order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, on motion, testimony taken in another proceeding, or testimony taken in a suit or action in a court, between the same parties or those in privity may be used in a proceeding, so far as relevant and material, subject, however, to the right of any adverse party to recall or demand the recall for examination or cross-examination of any witness whose prior testimony has been offered and to rebut the testimony.
a foreign country except as provided in paragraph (a)(2) of this section. No party shall take depositions in more than one place at the same time, nor so nearly at the same time that reasonable opportunity for travel from one place of examination to the other is not available.

(d) Persons before whom depositions may be taken. Depositions may be taken before persons designated by Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(e) Examination of witnesses. (1) Each witness before testifying shall be duly sworn according to law by the officer before whom his deposition is to be taken.

(2) The deposition shall be taken in answer to questions, with the questions and answers recorded in their regular order by the officer, or by some other person (who shall be subject to the provisions of Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure) in the presence of the officer except when the officer's presence is waived when the officer's presence is waived on the record by agreement of the parties. The testimony shall be taken stenographically and transcribed, unless the parties present agree otherwise. In the absence of all opposing parties and their attorneys or other authorized representatives, depositions may be taken in longhand, typewriting, or stenographically. Exhibits which are marked and identified at the deposition will be deemed to have been offered into evidence, without any formal offer there of, unless the intention of the party marking the exhibits is clearly expressed to the contrary.

(3) Every adverse party shall have full opportunity to cross-examine each witness. If the notice of examination of witnesses which is served pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section is improper or inadequate with respect to any witness, an adverse party may cross-examine that witness under protest while reserving the right to object to the receipt of the testimony in evidence. Promptly after the testimony is completed, the adverse party, if he wishes to preserve the objection, shall move to strike the testimony from the record, which motion will be decided on the basis of all of the relevant circumstances. A motion to strike the testimony of a witness for lack of proper or adequate notice of examination must request the exclusion of the entire testimony of that witness and not only a part of that testimony.

(f) Certification and filing of deposition. (1) The officer shall annex to the deposition his certificate showing:

(i) Due administration of the oath by the officer to the witness before the commencement of his deposition;
(ii) The name of the person by whom the deposition was taken down, and whether, if not taken down by the officer, it was taken down in his presence;
(iii) The presence or absence of the adverse party;
(iv) The place, day, and hour of commencing and taking the deposition;
(v) The fact that the officer was not disqualified as specified in Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(2) If any of the foregoing requirements in paragraph (f)(1) of this section are waived, the certificate shall so state. The officer shall sign the certificate and affix thereto his seal of office, if he has such a seal. Unless waived on the record by an agreement, he shall then securely seal in an envelope all the evidence, notices, and paper exhibits, inscribe upon the envelope a certificate giving the number and title of the case, the name of each witness, and the date of sealing. The officer or the party taking the deposition, or its attorney or other authorized representative, shall then address the package, and forward the same to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. If the weight or bulk of an exhibit shall
§ 2.124 Depositions upon written questions.

(a) A deposition upon written questions may be taken before any person before whom depositions may be taken as provided by Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(b)(1) A party desiring to take a testimonial deposition upon written questions shall serve notice thereof upon each adverse party from the opening date of the testimony period of the party who serves the notice. The notice shall state the name and address of the witness. A copy of the notice, but not copies of the questions, shall be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

(2) A party desiring to take a discovery deposition upon written questions shall serve notice thereof upon each adverse party and shall file a copy of the notice, but not copies of the questions, with the Board. The notice shall state the name and address of the witness, if known, of the person whose deposition...
is to be taken. If the name of the person is not known, a general description sufficient to identify him or the particular class or group to which he belongs shall be stated in the notice, and the party from whom the discovery deposition is to be taken shall designate one or more persons to be deposed in the same manner as is provided by Rule 30(b)(6) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(c) Every notice given under the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section shall be accompanied by the name or descriptive title of the officer before whom the deposition is to be taken.

(d)(1) Every notice served on any adverse party under the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section shall be accompanied by the written questions to be propounded on behalf of the party who proposes to take the deposition. Within twenty days from the date of service of the notice, any adverse party may serve cross questions upon the party who proposes to take the deposition; any party who serves cross questions shall also serve every other adverse party. Within ten days from the date of service of the cross questions, the party who proposes to take the deposition may serve redirect questions upon the party who serves cross questions; any party who serves redirect questions shall also serve every other adverse party. Written objections to questions may be served on a party propounding questions; any party who objects shall serve a copy of the objections on every other adverse party. Written objections to questions may be considered at final hearing.

[48 FR 23139, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.125 Filing and service of testimony.

(a) One copy of the transcript of testimony taken in accordance with §2.123, together with copies of documentary exhibits and duplicates or photographs of physical exhibits, shall be served on each adverse party within thirty days after completion of the taking of that testimony. If the transcript with exhibits is not served on each adverse party within thirty days or within an extension of time for the purpose, any adverse party which was not served may have remedy by way of
a motion to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board to reset such adverse party’s testimony and/or briefing periods, as may be appropriate. If the deposing party fails to serve a copy of the transcript with exhibits on an adverse party after having been ordered to do so by the Board, the Board, in its discretion, may strike the deposition, or enter judgment as by default against the deposing party, or take any such other action as may be deemed appropriate.

(b) The party who takes testimony is responsible for having all typographical errors in the transcript and all errors of arrangement, indexing and form of the transcript corrected, on notice to each adverse party, prior to the filing of one certified transcript with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. The party who takes testimony is responsible for serving on each adverse party one copy of the corrected transcript or, if reasonably feasible, corrected pages to be inserted into the transcript previously served.

(c) One certified transcript and exhibits shall be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. Notice of such filing shall be served on each adverse party and a copy of each notice shall be filed with the Board.

(d) Each transcript shall comply with §2.123(g) with respect to arrangement, indexing and form.

(e) Upon motion by any party, for good cause, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may order that any part of a deposition transcript or any exhibits that directly disclose any trade secret or other confidential research, development, or commercial information may be filed under seal and kept confidential under the provisions of §2.27(e). If any party or any attorney or agent of a party fails to comply with an order made under this paragraph, the Board may impose any of the sanctions authorized by §2.120(g).


§ 2.126 [Reserved]

§ 2.127 Motions.

(a) Every motion shall be made in writing, shall contain a full statement of the grounds, and shall embody or be accompanied by a brief. Except as provided in paragraph (e)(1) of this section, a brief in response to a motion shall be filed within fifteen days from the date of service of the motion unless another time is specified by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or the time is extended by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or upon order of the Board. If a motion for an extension is denied, the time for responding to the motion may remain as specified under this section. The Board may, in its discretion, consider a reply brief. Except as provided in paragraph (e)(1) of this section, a reply brief, if filed, shall be filed within 15 days from the date of service of the brief in response to the motion. The time for filing a reply brief will not be extended. No further papers in support of or in opposition to a motion will be considered by the Board. Briefs shall be submitted in typewritten or printed form, double spaced, in at least pica or eleven-point type, on letter-size paper. The brief in support of the motion and the brief in response to the motion shall not exceed 25 pages in length; and a reply brief shall not exceed 10 pages in length. Exhibits submitted in support of or in opposition to the motion shall not be deemed to be part of the brief for purposes of determining the length of the brief. When a party fails to file a brief in response to a motion, the Board may treat the motion as conceded. An oral hearing will not be held on a motion except on order by the Board.

(b) Any request for reconsideration or modification of an order or decision issued on a motion must be filed within one month from the date thereof. A brief in response must be filed within 15 days from the date of service of the request.

(c) Interlocutory motions, requests, and other matters not actually or potentially dispositive of a proceeding may be acted upon by a single Member of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or by an Attorney-Examiner of the Board to whom authority so to act has been delegated.

(d) When any party files a motion to dismiss, or a motion for judgment on
the pleadings, or a motion for summary judgment, or any other motion which is potentially dispositive of a proceeding, the case will be suspended by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board with respect to all matters not germane to the motion and no party should file any paper which is not germane to the motion except as otherwise specified in the Board's suspension order. If the case is not disposed of as a result of the motion, proceedings will be resumed pursuant to an order of the Board when the motion is decided.

(e)(1) A motion for summary judgment may not be filed until notification of the proceeding has been sent to the parties by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. A motion for summary judgment, if filed, should be filed prior to the commencement of the first testimony period, as originally set or as reset, and the Board, in its discretion, may deny as untimely any motion for summary judgment filed thereafter. A motion under Rule 56(f) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, if filed in response to a motion for summary judgment, shall be filed within 30 days from the date of service of the summary judgment motion. The time for filing a motion under Rule 56(f) will not be extended. If no motion under Rule 56(f) is filed, a brief in response to the motion for summary judgment shall be filed within 30 days from the date of service of the motion unless the time is extended by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board. If a motion for an extension is denied, the time for responding to the motion for summary judgment may remain as specified under this section. The Board may, in its discretion, consider a reply brief. A reply brief, if filed, shall be filed within 15 days from the date of service of the brief in response to the motion. The time for filing a reply brief will not be extended. No further papers in support of or in opposition to a motion for summary judgment will be considered by the Board.

(f) The Board will not hold any person in contempt, or award attorneys' fees or other expenses to any party.

§ 2.128 Briefs at final hearing.

(a)(1) The brief of the party in the position of plaintiff shall be due not later than sixty days after the date set for the close of rebuttal testimony. The brief of the party in the position of defendant, if filed, shall be due not later than thirty days after the due date of the first brief. A reply brief by the party in the position of plaintiff, if filed, shall be due not later than fifteen days after the due date of the defendant's brief.

(2) When there is a counterclaim, or when proceedings have been consolidated and one party is in the position of plaintiff in one of the involved proceedings and in the position of defendant in another of the involved proceedings, or when there is an interference or a concurrent use registration proceeding involving more than two parties, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will set the due dates for the filing of the main brief, and the answering brief, and the rebuttal brief by the parties.

(3) When a party in the position of plaintiff fails to file a main brief, an order may be issued allowing plaintiff until a set time, not less than fifteen days, in which to show cause why the Board should not treat such failure as a concession of the case. If plaintiff fails to file a response to the order, or an admission to a request for admission, will be considered by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board if any party files, with the party's brief on the summary judgment motion, the deposition or any part thereof with any exhibit to the part that is filed, or a copy of the interrogatory and answer thereto with any exhibit made part of the answer, or a copy of the request for production and the documents or things produced in response thereto, or a statement that the party from which an admission was requested failed to respond thereto.

§ 2.129 Oral argument; reconsideration.

(a) If a party desires to have an oral argument at final hearing, the party shall request such argument by a separate notice filed not later than ten days after the due date for the filing of the last reply brief in the proceeding. Oral arguments will be heard by at least three Members of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board at the time specified in the notice of hearing. If any party appears at the specified time, that party will be heard. If the Board is prevented from hearing the case at the specified time, a new hearing date will be set. Unless otherwise permitted, oral arguments in an inter partes case will be limited to thirty minutes for each party. A party in the position of plaintiff may reserve part of the time allowed for oral argument to present a rebuttal argument.

(b) The date or time of a hearing may be reset, so far as is convenient and proper, to meet the wishes of the parties and their attorneys or other authorized representatives.

(c) Any request for rehearing or reconsideration or modification of a decision issued after final hearing must be filed within one month from the date of the decision. A brief in response must be filed within fifteen days from the date of service of the request. The times specified may be extended by order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board on motion for good cause.

(d) When a party to an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board cannot prevail without establishing constructive use pursuant to section 7(c) of the Act in an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will enter a judgment in favor of that party, subject to the party’s establishment of constructive use. The time for filing an appeal or for commencing a civil action under section 21 of the Act shall run from the date of the entry of the judgment.


§ 2.130 New matter suggested by Examiner of Trademarks.

If, during the pendency of an inter partes case, facts appear which, in the opinion of the Examiner of Trademarks, render the mark of any applicant involved unregistrable, the attention of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall be called thereto. The Board may suspend the proceeding and refer the application to the Examiner of Trademarks for his determination of the question of registrability, following the final determination of which the application shall be returned to the Board for such further inter partes action as may be appropriate. The consideration of such facts by the Examiner of Trademarks shall be ex parte, but a copy of the action of the examiner will be furnished to the parties to the inter partes proceeding.

§ 2.131 Remand after decision in inter partes proceeding.

If, during an inter partes proceeding, facts are disclosed which appear to render the mark of an applicant unregistrable, but such matter has not been tried under the pleadings as filed by the parties or as they might be deemed to be amended under Rule 15(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure to conform to the evidence, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, in lieu of determining the matter in the decision
§ 2.132 Involuntary dismissal for failure to take testimony.

(a) If the time for taking testimony by any party in the position of plaintiff has expired and that party has not taken testimony or offered any other evidence, any party in the position of defendant may, without waiving the right to offer evidence in the event the motion is denied, move for dismissal on the ground of the failure of the plaintiff to prosecute. The party in the position of plaintiff shall have fifteen days from the date of service of the motion to show cause why judgment should not be rendered against him. In the absence of a showing of good and sufficient cause, judgment may be rendered against the party in the position of plaintiff. If the motion is denied, testimony periods will be reset for the party in the position of defendant and for rebuttal.

(b) If no evidence other than a copy or copies of Patent and Trademark Office records is offered by any party in the position of plaintiff, any party in the position of defendant may, without waiving the right to offer evidence in the event the motion is denied, move for dismissal on the ground that upon the law and the facts the party in the position of plaintiff has shown no right to relief. The party in the position of plaintiff shall have fifteen days from the date of service of the motion to file a brief in response to the motion. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may render judgment against the party in the position of plaintiff, or the Board may decline to render judgment until all of the evidence is in the record. If judgment is not rendered, testimony periods will be reset for the party in the position of defendant and for rebuttal.

(c) A motion filed under paragraph (a) or (b) of this section must be filed before the opening of the testimony period of the moving party, except that the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may in its discretion grant a motion under paragraph (a) even if the motion was filed after the opening of the testimony period of the moving party.


§ 2.133 Amendment of application or registration during proceedings.

(a) An application involved in a proceeding may not be amended in substance nor may a registration be amended or disclaimed in part, except with the consent of the other party or parties and the approval of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or except upon motion.

(b) If, in an inter partes proceeding, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board finds that a party whose application or registration is the subject of the proceeding is not entitled to registration in the absence of a specified restriction to the involved application or registration, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will allow the party time in which to file a request that the application or registration be amended to conform to the findings of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, failing which judgment will be entered against the party.

(c) Geographic limitations will be considered and determined by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board only in the context of a concurrent use registration proceeding.

(d) A plaintiff's pleaded registration will not be restricted in the absence of a counterclaim to cancel the registration in whole or in part, except that a counterclaim need not be filed if the registration is the subject of another proceeding between the same parties or anyone in privity therewith.

[54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989]
§ 2.134 Surrender or voluntary cancellation of registration.

(a) After the commencement of a cancellation proceeding, if the respondent applies for cancellation of the involved registration under section 7(e) of the Act of 1946 without the written consent of every adverse party to the proceeding, judgment shall be entered against the respondent. The written consent of an adverse party may be signed by the adverse party or by the adverse party’s attorney or other authorized representative.

(b) After the commencement of a cancellation proceeding, if it comes to the attention of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that the respondent has permitted his involved registration to be cancelled under section 8 of the Act of 1946 or has failed to renew his involved registration under section 9 of the Act of 1946, an order may be issued allowing respondent until a set time, not less than fifteen days, in which to show cause why such cancellation or failure to renew should not be deemed to be the equivalent of a cancellation by request of respondent without the consent of the adverse party and should not result in entry of judgment against respondent as provided by paragraph (a) of this section. In the absence of a showing of good and sufficient cause, judgment may be entered against respondent as provided by paragraph (a) of this section.

§ 2.135 Abandonment of application or mark.

After the commencement of an opposition, concurrent use, or interference proceeding, if the applicant files a written abandonment of the application or of the mark without the written consent of every adverse party to the proceeding, judgment shall be entered against the applicant. The written consent of an adverse party may be signed by the adverse party or by the adverse party’s attorney or other authorized representative.

§ 2.136 Status of application on termination of proceeding.

On termination of a proceeding involving an application, the application, if the judgment is not adverse, returns to the status it had before the institution of the proceedings. If the judgment is adverse to the applicant, the application stands refused without further action and all proceedings thereon are considered terminated.

 Appeals

§ 2.141 Ex parte appeals from the Examiner of Trademarks.

Every applicant for the registration of a mark may, upon final refusal by the Examiner of Trademarks, appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board upon payment of the prescribed fee for each class in the application for which an appeal is taken. An appeal which includes insufficient fees to cover all classes in the application should specify the particular class or classes in which an appeal is taken. A second refusal on the same grounds may be considered as final by the applicant for purpose of appeal.

§ 2.142 Time and manner of ex parte appeals.

(a) Any appeal filed under the provisions of § 2.141 must be filed within six months from the date of final refusal or the date of the action from which the appeal is taken. An appeal is taken by filing a notice of appeal and paying the appeal fee.

(b)(1) The brief of appellant shall be filed within sixty days from the date of appeal. If the brief is not filed within the time allowed, the appeal may be dismissed. The examiner shall, within sixty days after the brief of appellant is sent to the examiner, file with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board a written brief answering the brief of appellant and shall mail a copy of the brief to the appellant. The appellant may file a reply brief within twenty days from the date of mailing of the brief of the examiner.

(2) Briefs shall be submitted in typewritten or printed form, double spaced, in at least pica or eleven-point type, on letter-size paper. Without prior leave
of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, a brief shall not exceed twenty-five pages in length in its entirety.

(c) All requirements made by the examiner and not the subject of appeal shall be complied with prior to the filing of an appeal.

(d) The record in the application should be complete prior to the filing of an appeal. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will ordinarily not consider additional evidence filed with the Board by the appellant or by the examiner after the appeal is filed. After an appeal is filed, if the appellant or the examiner desires to introduce additional evidence, the appellant or the examiner may request the Board to suspend the appeal and to remand the application for further examination.

(e)(1) If the appellant desires an oral hearing, a request therefor should be made by a separate notice filed not later than ten days after the due date for a reply brief. Oral argument will be heard by at least three Members of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board at the time specified in the notice of hearing, which may be reset if the Board is prevented from hearing the argument at the specified time or, so far as is convenient and proper, to meet the wish of the appellant or his attorney or other authorized representative.

(2) If the appellant requests an oral argument, the examiner who issued the refusal of registration or the requirement from which the appeal is taken, or in lieu thereof another examiner from the same examining division as designated by the supervisory attorney thereof, shall present an oral argument. If no request for an oral hearing is made by the appellant, the appeal will be decided on the record and briefs.

(3) Oral argument will be limited to twenty minutes by the appellant and ten minutes by the examiner. The appellant may reserve part of the time allowed for oral argument to present a rebuttal argument.

(f)(1) If, during an appeal from a refusal of registration, it appears to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that an issue not previously raised may render the mark of the appellant unregistrable, the Board may suspend the appeal and remand the application to the examiner for further examination to be completed within thirty days.

(2) If the further examination does not result in an additional ground for refusal of registration, the examiner shall promptly return the application to the Board, for resumption of the appeal, with a written statement that further examination did not result in an additional ground for refusal of registration.

(3) If the further examination does result in an additional ground for refusal of registration, the examiner and appellant shall proceed as provided by §§ 2.61, 2.62, 2.63 and 2.64. If the ground for refusal is made final, the examiner shall return the application to the Board, which shall thereupon issue an order allowing the appellant sixty days from the date of the order to file a supplemental brief limited to the additional ground for the refusal of registration. If the supplemental brief is not filed by the appellant within the time allowed, the appeal may be dismissed.

(4) If the supplemental brief of the appellant is filed, the examiner shall, within sixty days after the supplemental brief of the appellant is sent to the examiner, file a written brief answering the supplemental brief of appellant and shall mail a copy of the brief to the appellant. The appellant may file a reply brief within twenty days from the date of mailing of the brief of the examiner.

(5) If an oral hearing on the appeal had been requested prior to the remand of the application but not yet held, an oral hearing will be set and heard as provided in paragraph (e) of this section. If an oral hearing had been held prior to the remand or had not been previously requested by the appellant, an oral hearing may be requested by the appellant by a separate notice filed not later than ten days after the due date for a reply brief on the additional ground for refusal of registration. If the appellant files a request for an oral hearing, one will be set and heard as provided in paragraph (e) of this section.

(6) If, during an appeal from a refusal of registration, it appears to the examiner that an issue not involved in the
§ 2.144

Appeal may render the mark of the appellant unregistrable, the examiner may, by written request, ask the Board to suspend the appeal and to remand the application to the examiner for further examination. If the request is granted, the examiner and appellant shall proceed as provided by §§ 2.61, 2.62, 2.63 and 2.64. After the additional ground for refusal of registration has been withdrawn or made final, the examiner shall return the application to the Board, which shall resume proceedings in the appeal and take further appropriate action with respect thereto.

(g) An application which has been considered and decided on appeal will not be reopened except for the entry of a disclaimer under section 6 of the Act of 1946 or upon order of the Commissioner, but a petition to the Commissioner to reopen an application will be considered only upon a showing of sufficient cause for consideration of any matter not already adjudicated.

§ 2.144 Reconsideration of decision on ex parte appeal.

Any request for rehearing or reconsideration, or modification of the decision, must be filed within one month from the date of the decision. Such time may be extended by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board upon a showing of sufficient cause.

§ 2.145 Appeal to court and civil action.

(a) Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. An applicant for registration, or any party to an interference, opposition, or cancellation proceeding or any party to an application to register as a concurrent user, hereinafter referred to as inter partes proceedings, who is dissatisfied with the decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board and any registrant who has filed an affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act or who has filed an application for renewal and is dissatisfied with the decision of the Commissioner (§§ 2.165, 2.184), may appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. The appellant must take the following steps in such an appeal:

(1) In the Patent and Trademark Office give written notice of appeal to the Commissioner (see paragraphs (b) and (d) of this section);

(2) In the court, file a copy of the notice of appeal and pay the fee for appeal, as provided by the rules of the Court.

(b) Notice of appeal. (1) When an appeal is taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the appellant shall give notice thereof in writing to the Commissioner, which notice shall be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office, within the time specified in paragraph (d) of this section. The notice shall specify the party or parties taking the appeal and shall designate the decision or part thereof appealed from.

(2) In inter partes proceedings, the notice must be served as provided in § 2.119.

(3) The notice, if mailed to the Office, shall be addressed as follows: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

(c) Civil action. (1) Any person who may appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (paragraph (a) of this section), may have remedy by civil action under section 21(b) of the Act. Such civil action must be commenced within the time specified in paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Any applicant or registrant in an ex parte case who takes an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit waives any right to proceed under section 21(b) of the Act.

(3) Any adverse party to an appeal taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit by a defeated party in an inter partes proceeding may file a notice with the Commissioner within twenty days after the filing of the defeated party's notice of appeal to the court (paragraph (b) of this section), electing to have all further proceedings conducted as provided in section 21(b) of the Act. The notice of election must be served as provided in § 2.119.

(4) Any applicant or registrant in a proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board which commences a civil action pursuant to section 21(b) of the Act, seeking
review of a decision of the Board should file written notice thereof in the Patent and Trademark Office, addressed to the Board, within one month after the expiration of the time for appeal or civil action, in order to avoid premature termination of the Board proceeding.

(d) Time for appeal or civil action. (1) The time for filing the notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (paragraph (b) of this section), or for commencing a civil action (paragraph (c) of this section), is two months from the date of the decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or the Commissioner, as the case may be. If a request for rehearing or reconsideration or modification of the decision is filed within the time specified in § 2.127(b), 2.129(c) or 2.144, or within any extension of time granted thereunder, the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action shall expire two months after action on the request. In inter partes cases, the time for filing a cross-action or a notice of a cross-appeal expires

(i) 14 days after service of the notice of appeal or the summons and complaint; or

(ii) Two months from the date of the decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or the Commissioner, whichever is later.

(2) The times specified in this section in days are calendar days. The times specified herein in months are calendar months except that one day shall be added to any two-month period which includes February 28. If the last day of time specified for an appeal, or commencing a civil action falls on a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday in the District of Columbia, the time is extended to the next day which is neither a Saturday, Sunday nor a Federal holiday.

(3) If a party to an inter partes proceeding has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit and an adverse party has filed notice under section 21(a)(1) of the Act electing to have all further proceedings conducted under section 21(b) of the Act, the time for filing a civil action thereafter is specified in section 21(a)(1) of the Act. The time for filing a cross-action expires 14 days after service of the summons and complaint.

(e) Extensions of time to commence judicial review. The Commissioner may extend the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action (1) for good cause shown if requested in writing before the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action, or (2) upon written request after the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action upon a showing that the failure to act was the result of excusable neglect.


PETITIONS AND ACTIONS BY THE COMMISSIONER

§ 2.146 Petitions to the Commissioner.

(a) Petition may be taken to the Commissioner:

(1) From any repeated or final formal requirement of the examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application if permitted by §2.63(b);

(2) In any case for which the Act of 1946, or title 35 of the United States Code, or this part of title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations specifies that the matter is to be determined directly or reviewed by the Commissioner;

(3) To invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner in appropriate circumstances;

(4) In any case not specifically defined and provided for by this part of title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations;

(5) In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires and no other party is injured thereby, to request a suspension or waiver of any requirement of the rules not being a requirement of the Act of 1946.

(b) Questions of substance arising during the ex parte prosecution of applications, including, but not limited to, questions arising under sections 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 23 of the Act of 1946, are not considered to be appropriate subject matter for petitions to the Commissioner.

(c) Every petition to the Commissioner shall include a statement of the
facts relevant to the petition, the points to be reviewed, the action or relief that is requested, and the requisite fee (see §2.6). Any brief in support of the petition shall be embodied in or accompany the petition. When facts are to be proved in ex parte cases (as in a petition to revive an abandoned application), the proof in the form of affidavits or declarations in accordance with §2.20, and any exhibits, shall accompany the petition.

(d) A petition must be filed within two months of the mailing date of the action from which relief is requested, unless a different deadline is specified elsewhere in this chapter.

(e)(1) A petition from the grant or denial of a request for an extension of time to file a notice of opposition shall be filed within fifteen days from the date of mailing of the grant or denial of the request. A petition from the grant of a request shall be served on the attorney or other authorized representative of the potential opposer, if any, or on the potential opposer. A petition from the denial of a request shall be served on the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant, if any, or on the applicant. Proof of service of the petition shall be made as provided by §2.119(a). The potential opposer or the applicant, as the case may be, may file a response within fifteen days from the date of service of the petition and shall serve a copy of the response on the petitioner, with proof of service as provided by §2.119(a). No further paper relating to the petition shall be filed.

(2) A petition from an interlocutory order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall be filed within thirty days after the date of mailing of the order from which relief is requested. Any brief in response to the petition shall be filed, with any supporting exhibits, within fifteen days from the date of service of the petition. Petitions and responses to petitions, and any papers accompanying a petition or response, under this subsection shall be served on every adverse party pursuant to §2.119(a).

(f) An oral hearing will not be held on a petition except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(g) The mere filing of a petition to the Commissioner will not act as a stay in any appeal or inter partes proceeding that is pending before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board nor stay the period for replying to an Office action in an application except when a stay is specifically requested and is granted or when §§2.63(b) and 2.65 are applicable to an ex parte application.

(h) Authority to act on petitions, or on any petition, may be delegated by the Commissioner.

(i) Where a petitioner seeks to reactivate an application or registration that was abandoned or cancelled because papers were lost or mishandled, the Commissioner may deny the petition if the petitioner was not diligent in checking the status of the application or registration. To be considered diligent, the applicant must check the status of the application or registration within one year of the last filing or receipt of a notice from the Office for which further action by the Office is expected.

(j) If the Commissioner denies a petition, the petitioner may request reconsideration, if the petitioner:

(1) Files the request within two months of the mailing date of the decision denying the petition; and

(2) Pays a second petition fee under §2.6.


§2.147 [Reserved]

§2.148 Commissioner may suspend certain rules.

In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires and no other party is injured thereby, any requirement of the rules in this part not being a requirement of the statute may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner.

CERTIFICATE

§2.151 Certificate.

When the Office determines that a mark is registrable, a certificate will be issued stating that the applicant is entitled to registration on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental


§ 2.160

Affidavit or declaration required to avoid cancellation of registration.

(a) During the following time periods, the owner of the registration must file an affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse, or the registration will be cancelled:

(i) For registrations issued under the Trademark Act of 1946 on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary after the date of registration; or

(ii) For registrations issued under prior Acts on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary after the date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act; and

(2) For all registrations, within the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of registration.

(b) The affidavit or declaration may be filed within a grace period of six months after the end of the deadline set forth in paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section, with payment of the grace period surcharge required by section 8(c)(1) of the Act and §226.

§ 2.161

Affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse required to avoid cancellation of registration.

A registrant of a mark registered under the provisions of the Acts of 1881 or 1905 may at any time prior to the expiration of the period for which the registration was issued or renewed, upon the payment of the prescribed fee, file an affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 setting forth those goods stated in the registration on which said mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, and stating that the registrant claims the benefits of the Trademark Act of 1946.

§ 2.162

CANCELLATION FOR FAILURE TO FILE AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION DURING SIXTH YEAR

The affidavit or declaration required to avoid cancellation of registration must be filed in accordance with §2.20 setting forth those goods stated in the registration on which said mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, and stating that the registrant claims the benefits of the Trademark Act of 1946.

§ 2.163

Affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse required to avoid cancellation of registration.

(a) During the following time periods, the owner of the registration must file an affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse, or the registration will be cancelled:

(i) For registrations issued under the Trademark Act of 1946 on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary after the date of registration; or

(ii) For registrations issued under prior Acts on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary after the date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act; and

(2) For all registrations, within the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of registration.

(b) The affidavit or declaration may be filed within a grace period of six months after the end of the deadline set forth in paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section, with payment of the grace period surcharge required by section 8(c)(1) of the Act and §226.

§ 2.164

Affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse required to avoid cancellation of registration.

A registrant of a mark registered under the provisions of the Acts of 1881 or 1905 may at any time prior to the expiration of the period for which the registration was issued or renewed, upon the payment of the prescribed fee, file an affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 setting forth those goods stated in the registration on which said mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, and stating that the registrant claims the benefits of the Trademark Act of 1946.

§ 2.165

CANCELLATION FOR FAILURE TO FILE AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION DURING SIXTH YEAR

The affidavit or declaration required to avoid cancellation of registration must be filed in accordance with §2.20 setting forth those goods stated in the registration on which said mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, and stating that the registrant claims the benefits of the Trademark Act of 1946.

§ 2.166

Affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse required to avoid cancellation of registration.

A registrant of a mark registered under the provisions of the Acts of 1881 or 1905 may at any time prior to the expiration of the period for which the registration was issued or renewed, upon the payment of the prescribed fee, file an affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 setting forth those goods stated in the registration on which said mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, and stating that the registrant claims the benefits of the Trademark Act of 1946.

§ 2.167

CANCELLATION FOR FAILURE TO FILE AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION DURING SIXTH YEAR

The affidavit or declaration required to avoid cancellation of registration must be filed in accordance with §2.20 setting forth those goods stated in the registration on which said mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, and stating that the registrant claims the benefits of the Trademark Act of 1946.

§ 2.168

Affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse required to avoid cancellation of registration.

A registrant of a mark registered under the provisions of the Acts of 1881 or 1905 may at any time prior to the expiration of the period for which the registration was issued or renewed, upon the payment of the prescribed fee, file an affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 setting forth those goods stated in the registration on which said mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, and stating that the registrant claims the benefits of the Trademark Act of 1946.
§ 2.161 Requirements for a complete affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse.

A complete affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act must:

(a) Be filed by the owner within the period set forth in §2.160(a);

(b) Include a statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under §2.20 by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner, attesting to the continued use or excusable nonuse of the mark within the period set forth in section 8 of the Act. The verified statement must be executed on or after the beginning of the filing period specified in §2.160(a). A person who is properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner is:

(1) A person with legal authority to bind the owner; or

(2) A person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the owner; or

(3) An attorney as defined in §10.1(c) of this chapter who has an actual or implied written or verbal power of attorney from the owner.

(c) Include the registration number;

(d) Include the fee required by §2.6 for each class of goods or services that the affidavit or declaration covers;

(e) Include the fee required by §2.6 for each class of goods or services that the affidavit or declaration covers;

(f)(1) State that the registered mark is in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services in the registration;

(g) Include a specimen showing current use of the mark for each class of goods or services, unless excusable nonuse is claimed under §2.161(f)(2). The specimen must:

(1) Show the mark as actually used on or in connection with the goods or in the sale or advertising of the services. A photocopy or other reproduction of the specimen showing the mark as actually used is acceptable. However, a photocopy that merely reproduces the registration certificate is not a proper specimen;

(2) Be flat and no larger than 8½ inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long. If a specimen exceeds these size requirements (a "bulky specimen"), the Office will create a facsimile of the specimen that meets the requirements of the rule (i.e., is flat and no larger than 8½ inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long) and put it in the file wrapper;

(h) If the registrant is not domiciled in the United States, the registrant must list the name and address of a United States resident upon whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the registration may be served.

[64 FR 48924, Sept. 8, 1999]
§ 2.162 Notice to registrant.

When a certificate of registration is originally issued, the Office includes a notice of the requirement for filing the affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse under section 8 of the Act. However, the affidavit or declaration must be filed within the time period required by section 8 of the Act even if this notice is not received. [64 FR 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

§ 2.163 Acknowledgment of receipt of affidavit or declaration.

The Office will issue a notice as to whether an affidavit or declaration is acceptable, or the reasons for refusal. (a) If the owner of the registration filed the affidavit or declaration within the time periods set forth in section 8 of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected if the requirements of § 2.164 are met. (b) A response to the refusal must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the Office action, or before the end of the filing period set forth in section 8(a) or section 8(b) of the Act, whichever is later. If no response is filed within this time period, the registration will be cancelled. [64 FR 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

§ 2.164 Correcting deficiencies in affidavit or declaration.

(a) If the owner of the registration files an affidavit or declaration within the time periods set forth in section 8 of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected, as follows: (1) Correcting deficiencies in affidavits or declarations timely filed within the periods set forth in sections 8(a) and 8(b) of the Act. If the owner timely files the affidavit or declaration within the relevant filing period set forth in section 8(a) or section 8(b) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected before the end of this filing period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the end of this filing period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 8(c)(2) of the Act and § 2.6. (2) Correcting deficiencies in affidavits or declarations filed during the grace period. If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the six-month grace period provided by section 8(c)(1) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration of the grace period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 8(c)(2) of the Act and § 2.6. (b) If the affidavit or declaration is not filed within the time periods set forth in section 8 of the Act, or if it is filed within that period by someone other than the owner, the registration will be cancelled. These deficiencies cannot be cured. [64 FR 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

§ 2.165 Petition to Commissioner to review refusal.

(a) A response to the examiner’s initial refusal to accept an affidavit or declaration is required before filing a petition to the Commissioner, unless the examiner directs otherwise. See § 2.163(b) for the deadline for responding to an examiner’s Office action. (b) If the examiner maintains the refusal of the affidavit or declaration, a petition to the Commissioner to review the action may be filed. The petition must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the action maintaining the refusal, or the Office will cancel the registration and issue a notice of the cancellation. (c) A decision by the Commissioner is necessary before filing an appeal or commencing a civil action in any court. [64 FR 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

§ 2.166 Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse combined with renewal application.

An affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act and a renewal application under section 9 of the Act may be combined into a single document, provided that the document meets the requirements of both sections 8 and 9 of the Act. [64 FR 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]
§ 2.167

AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION UNDER SECTION 15

§ 2.167 Affidavit or declaration under section 15.

The affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 provided by section 15 of the Act for acquiring incontestability for a mark registered on the Principal Register or a mark registered under the Act of 1881 or 1905 and published under section 12(c) of the Act (§2.153) must:

(a) Be signed by the registrant;

(b) Identify the certificate of registration by the certificate number and date of registration;

(c) Recite the goods or services stated in the registration on or in connection with which the mark has been in continuous use in commerce for a period of five years after the date of registration or date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act, and is still in use in commerce;

(d) Specify that there has been no final decision adverse to registrant's claim of ownership of such mark for such goods or services, or to registrant's right to register the same or to keep the same on the register;

(e) Specify that there is no proceeding involving said rights pending in the Patent and Trademark Office or in a court and not finally disposed of;

(f) Be filed within one year after the expiration of any five-year period of continuous use in commerce following registration or publication under section 12(c).

The registrant will be notified of the receipt of the affidavit or declaration.

(g) Include the required fee for each class to which the affidavit or declaration pertains should be specified.


§ 2.168 Affidavit or declaration under section 15 combined with affidavit or declaration under section 8, or with renewal application.

(a) The affidavit or declaration filed under section 15 of the Act may also be used as the affidavit or declaration required by section 8, if the affidavit or declaration meets the requirements of both sections 8 and 15.

(b) The affidavit or declaration filed under section 15 of the Act may be combined with an application for renewal of a registration under section 9 of the Act, if the requirements of both sections 9 and 15 are met.

[64 FR 48925, Sept. 8, 1999]

CORRECTION, DISCLAIMER, SURRENDER, ETC.

§ 2.171 New certificate on change of ownership.

In case of change of ownership of a registered mark, upon request of the assignee, a new certificate of registration may be issued in the name of the assignee for the unexpired part of the original period. The assignment must be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, and the request for the new certificate must be signed by the assignee and accompanied by the required fee. The original certificate of registration, if available, must also be submitted.

(Sec. 7, 60 Stat. 430 as amended; 15 U.S.C. 1057)
[31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966]

§ 2.172 Surrender for cancellation.

Upon application by the registrant, the Commissioner may permit any registration to be surrendered for cancellation. Application for such action must be signed by the registrant and must be accompanied by the original
§ 2.175 Correction of mistake by registrant.

(a) Whenever a mistake has been made in a registration and a showing has been made that such mistake occurred in good faith through the fault of the applicant, the Commissioner may issue a certificate of correction, or in his discretion, a new certificate upon the payment of the required fee, provided that the correction does not involve such changes in the registration as to require republication of the mark.

(b) Application for such action must specify the mistake for which correction is sought and the manner in which it arose, show that it occurred in good faith, be signed by the applicant and verified or include a declaration in accordance with §2.20, and be accompanied by the required fee. The certificate of registration or, if said certificate is lost or destroyed, a certified copy thereof, must also be submitted in order that the Commissioner may make appropriate entry thereon.
§ 2.176  Consideration of above matters.

The matters in §§ 2.171 to 2.175 will be considered in the first instance by the Examiner of Trademarks. If the action of the Examiner of Trademarks is adverse, registrant may request the Commissioner to review the action under § 2.146. If response to an adverse action of the Examiner is not made by the registrant within six months, the matter will be considered abandoned.

§ 2.181  Term of original registrations and renewals.

(a)(1) Subject to the provisions of section 8 of the Act requiring an affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse, registrations issued or renewed prior to November 16, 1989, whether on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental Register, remain in force for twenty years from their date of issue or the date of renewal, and may be further renewed for periods of ten years, unless previously cancelled or surrendered.

(2) Subject to the provisions of section 8 of the Act requiring an affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse, registrations issued or renewed on or after November 16, 1989, whether on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental Register, remain in force for ten years from their date of issue or the date of renewal, and may be further renewed for periods of ten years, unless previously cancelled or surrendered.

(b) Registrations issued under the Acts of 1905 and 1881 remain in force for their unexpired terms and may be renewed in the same manner as registrations under the Act of 1946.

(c) Registrations issued under the Act of 1920 cannot be renewed unless renewal is required to support foreign registrations and in such case may be renewed on the Supplemental Register in the same manner as registrations under the Act of 1946.

§ 2.182  Time for filing renewal application.

An application for renewal must be filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration, or within the six-month grace period after the expiration date of the registration. If no renewal application is filed within this period, the registration will expire.

§ 2.183  Requirements for a complete renewal application.

A complete renewal application must include:

(a) A request for renewal of the registration, signed by the registrant or the registrant’s representative;

(b) The fee required by § 2.6 for each class;

(c) The additional fee required by § 2.6 for each class if the renewal application is filed during the six-month grace period set forth in section 9(a) of the Act;

(d) If the registrant is not domiciled in the United States, the name and address of a United States resident on whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the registration may be served; and

(e) If the renewal application covers less than all the goods or services in the registration, a list of the particular goods or services to be renewed.

(f) If at least one fee is submitted for a multi-class registration, but the class(es) to which the fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will issue a notice requiring either the submission of additional fee(s) or an indication of the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied. Additional fee(s) may be submitted if the requirements of § 2.185 are met. If the required fee(s) are not submitted and the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will presume that the
fee(s) cover the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class.

§ 2.184 Refusal of renewal.

(a) If the renewal application is not acceptable, the Office will issue a notice stating the reason(s) for refusal.

(b) A response to the refusal of renewal must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the Office action, or before the expiration date of the registration, whichever is later, or the registration will expire.

(c) If the renewal application is not filed within the time periods set forth in section 9(a) of the Act, the registration will expire.

§ 2.185 Correcting deficiencies in renewal application.

(a) If the renewal application is filed within the time periods set forth in section 9(a) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected, as follows:

(1) Correcting deficiencies in renewal applications filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration. If the renewal application is filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration date of the registration without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration date of the registration with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 9(a) of the Act and § 2.6.

(2) Correcting deficiencies in renewal applications filed during the grace period. If the renewal application is filed during the six-month grace period, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration of the grace period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 9(a) of the Act and § 2.6.

(b) If the renewal application is not filed within the time periods set forth in section 9(a) of the Act, the registration will expire. This deficiency cannot be cured.

§ 2.186 Petition to Commissioner to review refusal of renewal.

(a) A response to the examiner's initial refusal of the renewal application is required before filing a petition to the Commissioner, unless the examiner directs otherwise. See § 2.184(b) for the deadline for responding to an examiner's Office action.

(b) If the examiner maintains the refusal of the renewal application, a petition to the Commissioner to review the refusal may be filed. The petition must be filed within six months of the mailing date of the Office action maintaining the refusal, or the renewal application will be abandoned and the registration will expire.

(c) A decision by the Commissioner is necessary before filing an appeal or commencing a civil action in any court.

§ 2.187 [Reserved]
§ 6.1

6.2 Prior U.S. schedule of classes of goods and services.
6.3 Schedule for certification marks.
6.4 Schedule for collective membership marks.


§ 6.1 International schedule of classes of goods and services.

GOODS

1. Chemicals used in industry, science and photography, as well as in agriculture, horticulture and forestry; unprocessed artificial resins; unprocessed plastics; manures; fire extinguishing compositions; tempering and soldering preparations; chemical substances for preserving foodstuffs; tanning substances; adhesives used in industry.

2. Paints, varnishes, lacquers; preservatives against rust and against deterioration of wood; colorants; mordants; raw natural resins; metals in foil and powder form for painters, decorators, printers and artists.

3. Bleaching preparations and other substances for laundry use; cleaning, polishing, scouring and abrasive preparations; soaps; perfumery, essential oils, cosmetics, hair lotions; dentifrices.

4. Industrial oils and greases; lubricants; dust absorbing, wetting and binding compositions; fuels (including motor spirit) and illuminants; candles, wicks.

5. Pharmaceutical, veterinary, and sanitary preparations; dietetic substances adapted to medical use, food for babies; plasters, materials for dressings; material for stopping teeth, dental wax; disinfectants; preparations for destroying vermin; fungicides, herbicides.

6. Common metals and their alloys; metal building materials; transportable buildings of metal; materials of metal for railway tracks; nonelectric cables and wires of common metal; ironmongery, small items of metal hardware; pipes and tubes of metal; safes; goods of common metal not included in other classes; ores.

7. Machines and machine tools; motors and engines (except for land vehicles); machine coupling and transmission components (except for land vehicles); agricultural implements other than hand-operated; incubators for eggs.

8. Hand tools and implements (hand-operated); cutlery; side arms; razors.

9. Scientific, naval, surveying, electric, photographic, cinematographic, optical, weighing, measuring, signalling, checking (supervision), life-saving and teaching apparatus and instruments; apparatus for recording, transmission or reproduction of sound or images; magnetic data carriers, recording discs; automatic vending machines and mechanisms for coin operated apparatus; cash registers, calculating machines, data processing equipment and computers; fire extinguishing apparatus.

10. Surgical, medical, dental, and veterinary apparatus and instruments, artificial limbs, eyes, and teeth; orthopedic articles; suture materials.

11. Apparatus for lighting, heating, steam generating, cooking, refrigerating, drying, ventilating, water supply, and sanitary purposes.

12. Vehicles; apparatus for locomotion by land, air, or water.

13. Firearms; ammunition and projectiles; explosives; fireworks.

14. Precious metals and their alloys and goods in precious metals or coated therewith, not included in other classes; jewelry, precious stones; horological and chronometric instruments.

15. Musical instruments.

16. Paper, cardboard and goods made from these materials, not included in other classes; printed matter; book-binding material; photographs; stationery; adhesives for stationery or household purposes; artists’ materials; paint brushes; typewriters and office requisites (except furniture); instructional and teaching material (except apparatus); plastic materials for packaging (not included in other classes); playing cards; printers’ type; printing blocks.

17. Rubber, gutta-percha, gum, asbestos, mica and goods made from these materials and not included in other classes; plastics in extruded form for use in manufacture; packing, stopping and insulating materials; flexible pipes, not of metal.

18. Leather and imitations of leather, and goods made of these materials and not included in other classes; animal skins, hides; trunks and travelling bags; umbrellas, parasols and walking sticks; whips, harness and saddlery.

19. Building materials (non-metallic); non-metallic rigid pipes for building; asphalt, pitch and bitumen; nonmetallic transportable buildings; monuments, not of metal.

20. Furniture, mirrors, picture frames; goods (not included in other classes) of wood, cork, reed, cane, wicker, horn, bone, ivory, whalebone, shell, amber, mother-of-pearl, meerschaum and substitutes for all these materials, or of plastics.

21. Household or kitchen utensils and containers (not of precious metal or coated therewith); combs and sponges; brushes (except paint brushes); brush making materials; articles for cleaning purposes; steel wool; unworked or semi worked glass (except glass used in building); glassware, porcelain and earthenware not included in other classes.

22. Ropes, string, nets, tents, awnings, tarpsaulins, sails, sacks and bags (not included in other classes); padding and stuffing materials (except of rubber or plastics); raw fibrous textile materials.
23. Yarns and threads, for textile use.
24. Textiles and textile goods, not included in other classes; beds and table covers.
25. Clothing, footwear, headgear.
26. Lace and embroidery, ribbons and braid; buttons, hooks and eyes, pins and needles; artificial flowers.
27. Carpets, rugs, mats and matting, linoleum and other materials for covering existing floors; wall hangings (non textile).
28. Meat, fish, poultry and game; meat extracts; preserved, dried and cooked fruits and vegetables; jellies, jams, fruit sauces; eggs, milk and milk products; edible oils and fats.
29. Coffee, tea, cocoa, sugar, rice, tapioca, sago, artificial coffee; flour and preparations made from cereals, bread, pastry and confectionery, ices; honey, treacle; yeast, baking powder; salt, mustard; vinegar, sauces (condiments); spices; ice.
30. Agricultural, horticultural and forestry products and grains not included in other classes; live animals; fresh fruits and vegetables; seeds, natural plants and flowers; foodstuffs for animals; malt.
31. Beers; mineral and aerated waters and other nonalcoholic drinks; fruit drinks and fruit juices; syrups and other preparations for making beverages.
32. Tobacco; smokers’ articles; matches.

SERVICES
33. Advertising; business management; business administration; office functions.
34. Insurance; financial affairs; monetary affairs; real estate affairs.
35. Building construction; repair; installation services.
36. Telecommunications.
37. Transport; packaging and storage of goods; travel arrangement.
38. Treatment of materials.
39. Education; providing of training; entertainment; sporting and cultural activities.
40. Providing of food and drink; temporary accommodation; medical, hygienic and beauty care; veterinary and agricultural services; legal services; scientific and industrial research; computer programming; services that cannot be classified in other classes.

§ 6.2 Prior U.S. schedule of classes of goods and services.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Raw or partly prepared materials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Receptacles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Baggage, animal equipments, portfolios, and pocket books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Abrasives and polishing materials.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 6.3 Schedule for certification marks.

In the case of certification marks, all goods and services are classified in two classes as follows:

A. Goods.
§ 6.4

B. Services.


§ 6.4 Schedule for collective membership marks.

All collective membership marks are classified as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Collective Membership</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


PART 7 [RESERVED]
INDEX II—RULES RELATING TO TRADEMARKS

EDITORIAL NOTE: This listing is provided for information purposes only. It is compiled and kept up-to-date by the Department of Commerce.

Section

A

Abandonment of application or mark:
  Drawing of abandoned application used in new application ............................ 2.26
  During inter partes proceeding ........................................................................ 2.135
  Express abandonment ....................................................................................... 2.68
  For failure to respond or to respond completely to official action .................. 2.65(a)
  For failure to timely file a statement of use ................................................. 2.65(c)
  Opportunity to explain incomplete response .................................................. 2.65(b)
  Petition to Commissioner may avoid abandonment ................................. 2.63(b), 2.65(a)
  Revival of abandoned application ................................................................... 2.66
  Acceptance of affidavit under sec. 8 ................................................................. 2.163

Access:
  To applications, and all proceedings relating thereto, after publication or registration .................................................. 2.27(d)
  To applications prior to publication ................................................................ 2.27(b)
  To assignment records ..................................................................................... 1.12
  To decisions of Commissioner and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board .......................................................... 2.27(c)
  To materials filed under seal pursuant to a protective order ......................... 2.27(e)
  To pending trademark application index ......................................................... 2.27(a)

Acknowledgment of receipt of affidavit or declaration:
  Filed under sec. 8 .......................................................................................... 2.163

Act, The, defined ................................................................................................. 2.2(a)

Action by assignee of record or owner ................................................................. 3.71, 3.73

Action by Examiner on application .................................................................... 2.61

Adding party to an interference ........................................................................... 2.98

Address for correspondence with Patent and Trademark Office ......................... 1.1

Admissions, request for (discovery):
  Motion to determine sufficiency of response ................................................... 2.120(h)
  Timing of ....................................................................................................... 2.120(a)
  Use of admission ............................................................................................. 2.120(j)
  When to file copy of request with Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ............... 2.120(j)(8)

Advertising by attorneys and others, restricted ................................................. 10.32

Affidavit or declaration:
  Claiming benefits of Act of 1946 under sec. 12(c) ......................................... 2.153
  Combined secs. 8 and 15 ................................................................................ 2.168(a)
  For incontestability under sec. 15 ................................................................... 2.167
  Of use in commerce or excusable nonuse under sec. 8 ................................. 2.160-166
  Reconsideration of, under sec. 8 ................................................................. 2.163(b), 2.165
  To avoid cancellation of registration under sec. 8 ........................................ 2.160-2.161

Agent. See Attorneys and other representatives.

Allegations in application or registration not evidence on behalf of applicant or registrant in inter partes proceeding .......................................................... 2.122(b)(2)

Allowance, notice of .......................................................................................... 2.81(b), 2.88

Amendment of application:
After final action ............................................................... 2.64(b)
After publication ................................................................. 2.35(b), 2.84(b)
Between notice of allowance and statement of use ...................... 2.77
Description or drawing of mark ................................................ 2.72
Form of amendment .................................................................. 2.74
Involved in inter partes proceedings ........................................... 2.133
To allege use ........................................................................... 2.76
To change to different register .................................................. 2.75
To correct informalities ............................................................ 2.71
To seek concurrent use registration ............................................ 2.73
Amendment of pleadings in inter partes proceedings:
Cancellation.................................................................................. 2.115
Opposition.................................................................................... 2.107
Amendment of registration:
During inter partes proceedings ................................................ 2.133
Requirements for, in general ..................................................... 2.173
Amendment to allege use .......................................................... 2.76
Amendments to description or drawing of mark after filing ......... 2.72(b)(1)
Correction of deficiency in .......................................................... 2.76(g)
Fee for filing .............................................................................. 2.6
Filed during final action response period .................................... 2.64(c)
Minimum requirements for filing ............................................... 2.76(e)
Requirements for ................................................................. 2.76(b)
Time for filing ........................................................................... 2.76(a)
Withdrawal of ............................................................................ 2.76(h)
Answer to pleadings in opposition and cancellation proceedings .... 2.106, 2.114
Contents of answer ................................................................. 2.106(b)(1), 2.114(b)(1)
Corresponds to answer in court proceeding .................................. 2.116(c)
Counterclaim ............................................................................. 2.106(b)(2), 2.114(b)(2)
Failure to timely answer ............................................................ 2.106(a), 2.114(a)
Answer to notice instituting concurrent use proceeding .............. 2.99(d)
Failure to answer ....................................................................... 2.99(d)(3)
Who needs to answer and when .................................................. 2.99(d)(2)
Appeal to Court and civil action ................................................ 2.145
Appeal to Court from decision of Commissioner ......................... 2.145
Appeal to Court from decision of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ................................................................. 2.145
Civil action ................................................................................. 2.145(a)
Extensions of time to appeal ....................................................... 2.145(e)
Notice of appeal to Court ............................................................ 2.145(c)(4)
Notice of appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit ... 2.145(b)
Notice of election by appellee to proceed by civil action after appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal circuit ................. 2.145(c)(3)
Time for appeal or civil action ..................................................... 2.145(d)
Appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board:
Appropriate response to final refusal or second refusal on the same grounds ................................................................. 2.64(a) 2.141
Briefs on appeal ........................................................................... 2.142(b)
Compliance with requirements not on appeal ............................. 2.142(c)
Failure of appellant to file brief ................................................... 2.142(b)(1)
In multiple class applications ...................................................... 2.141
Introduction of new evidence after filing of appeal ....................... 2.142(d)
Oral hearing on appeal ............................................................... 2.142(e)
Reconsideration of decision on appeal .......................................... 2.144
Remand to Examiner re new issue prior to decision .................... 2.142(f)
Reopening of examination of application after decision on appeal .... 2.142(g)
Index II

Time and manner of filing appeal............................................................... 2.142(a)
Applicant:
Foreign ........................................................................................................ 2.24, 2.34(a)(3) and (4)
Name of ........................................................................................................ 2.11
Signature and oath or declaration ............................................................ 2.33
Application for registration ........................................................................ 2.21-2.47
Access to pending applications ............................................................... 2.27
Amendment of. See Amendment of application.
Attorney conflict of interest ..................................................................... 2.61(c), 10.61-10.68
Assignee:
Certificate of registration may be issued to ............................................. 3.85
New certificate of registration may be issued to ...................................... 3.171
Not domiciled in U.S. .............................................................................. 3.61
Right to take action when assignment is recorded or proof of assign- 3.71, 3.73
ment has been submitted ................................................................. 3.71, 3.73
Assignment of registered marks or marks subject to pending applica- 3.1-3.85
tions ............................................................................................................. 3.85
Effect of recording ...................................................................................... 3.54
Records open to public inspection .......................................................... 1.12
Assignment of trial dates in inter partes proceedings .............................. 3.25-3.31, 3.41
Consolidated proceedings ....................................................................... 2.121(a)(1), (c), (d)
Counterclaim ............................................................................................ 2.121(b)(2)
Discovery period ....................................................................................... 2.120(a)
Extending, Rescheduling ........................................................................ 2.120(a), 2.121(a)(1), (c), (d)
Testimony periods ................................................................................... 2.121
Trial order mailed with notice of institution ........................................... 2.120(a)
Attorney conflict of interest .................................................................... 2.61(c), 10.61-10.68
Attorneys and other representatives ..................................................... 2.11, 2.17-2.19, 2.119(d), 10.1-10.170
Authentication of copies of registrations and records .......................... 1.13(b)

B

Basis for filing an application .................................................................... 2.34, 2.35
Bona fide intention to use ........ 2.34(a)(2)(i), 2.34(a)(3)(i), 2.34(a)(4)(i), 2.89(a)(3), (b)(3), (d)(1)

Briefs:
At final hearing in inter partes case .......................... 2.128
Failure of appellant to file brief on appeal .......................... 2.142(b)(1)
Failure of inter partes plaintiff to file brief at final hearing .......................... 2.128(a)(3)
Failure to file brief on inter partes motion .......................... 2.127(a)
On appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board .......................... 2.142(b)
On motions in inter partes cases .......................... 2.127(a), (e)(1)
On petitions to Commissioner .......................... 2.146(c), (e)
Burden of proof in an interference .......................... 2.96

Business with Patent and Trademark Office to be conducted with decorum and courtesy .......................... 1.3
Business with Patent and Trademark Office transacted in writing .......................... 1.2

Cancellation of registrations:
By cancellation proceeding—pleadings and procedure .......................... 2.111 et seq.
(See also Petition for Cancellation)
By registrant .......................... 2.134, 2.172
For failure to file affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 .......................... 2.160-2.166
During cancellation proceeding .......................... 2.134(b)
Cases not specifically defined in rules, petition to the Commissioner .......................... 2.146(a)(4)
Certificate of correction of registration .......................... 2.174, 2.175
Certificate of mailing by first class mail .......................... 1.8
Certificate of registration:
As evidence in inter partes proceeding .......................... 2.122 (b), (d), (e)
Contents .......................... 2.151
Issuance of new certificate to assignee .......................... 2.171
When and how issued .......................... 2.81, 2.82, 2.151
Certificate of transmission .......................... 1.8
Certification mark .......................... 2.45, 2.56(a)(5)
Certified copies of registrations and records .......................... 1.13
Citizenship of applicant .......................... 2.32(a)(3)

Civil action:
From decision of Commissioner .......................... 2.145(c)
From decision of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board .......................... 2.145(c)
Notice of election by appellee to proceed by civil action after appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit .......................... 2.145(c)(3)
Notice to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board of election to commence civil action for review of Board decision .......................... 2.145(c)(4)
Suspension of action in application pending outcome .......................... 2.67
Suspension of inter partes proceedings pending outcome .......................... 2.117
Time for commencing civil action from decision of Commissioner or Trademark Trial and Appeal Board .......................... 2.145(d)
Waiver of right to proceed by civil action in ex parte case .......................... 2.145(c)(2)

Civil Procedure, Federal Rules of, applied to inter partes proceedings .......................... 2.116(a), 2.120(a)
Claim of benefits of Act of 1946 for marks registered under prior Acts .......................... 2.153-2.156
Classification of goods and services .......................... 2.85
Application limited to single class .......................... 2.86(a)
Combined applications .......................... 2.86(b)
Schedules of classes .......................... 6.1-6.4
Code of Professional Responsibility .......................... 10.20-10.112
Collective mark .......................... 2.44, 2.56(a)(3)
## Index II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Combined applications</td>
<td>2.86, 2.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined inter partes proceedings:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancellation</td>
<td>2.112(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opposition</td>
<td>2.104(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commencement of cancellation</td>
<td>2.111(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commencement of opposition</td>
<td>2.101(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May suspend certain rules</td>
<td>2.146(a)(5), 2.148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petition to</td>
<td>2.146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication with attorney or other representative</td>
<td>2.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complaints against Patent and Trademark Office employees</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance of applicant with other laws</td>
<td>2.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance with discovery order of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board</td>
<td>2.120(g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compulsory counterclaim</td>
<td>2.106(b)(2)(i), 2.114(b)(2)(i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amendment to seek</td>
<td>2.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answer to notice of concurrent use proceeding, by whom and when</td>
<td>2.99(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application requirements</td>
<td>2.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Based upon court determination</td>
<td>2.99(f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burden of proving entitlement to</td>
<td>2.99(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consideration and determination by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board</td>
<td>2.99(h), 2.133(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination by Examiner</td>
<td>2.99(a), (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intent-to-use applications, when subject to</td>
<td>2.73(b), 2.99(g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark must first be published for opposition purposes</td>
<td>2.99(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of concurrent use proceeding</td>
<td>2.99(c), (d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registrations and applications to register on Supplemental Register</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and registrations under Act of 1920 not subject to</td>
<td>2.99(g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request to divide application during concurrent use proceeding</td>
<td>2.87(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conduct of practitioners</td>
<td>10.20-10.170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference, pre-trial, in inter partes cases</td>
<td>2.120(i)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference, telephone, in inter partes cases</td>
<td>2.120(i)(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confidential matters</td>
<td>2.27(e), 2.125(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conflict of interest, attorney</td>
<td>2.61(c), 10.61-10.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conflicting marks, coPending applications for</td>
<td>2.83, 2.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consent of applicant or authorized representative to withdrawal of oppo-</td>
<td>2.106(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sition after answer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consent of opposer to abandonment of application or mark</td>
<td>2.135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consent of petitioner to surrender or voluntary cancellation of registra-</td>
<td>2.134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consent of registrant or authorized representative to withdrawal of can-</td>
<td>2.114(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cellation after answer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consolidated inter partes proceedings:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filing consolidated petition to cancel</td>
<td>2.112(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filing consolidated opposition</td>
<td>2.104(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Times for filing briefs</td>
<td>2.128(a)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Times for taking testimony</td>
<td>2.121(b)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructive use, entry of judgment subject to establishment of in inter</td>
<td>2.129(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partes proceedings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contested or inter partes cases</td>
<td>2.116 et seq,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copies of registrations and records</td>
<td>1.13, 2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correction of informalities by amendment</td>
<td>2.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correction of mistake in certificate of registration:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mistake by Patent and Trademark Office</td>
<td>2.174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mistake by registrant</td>
<td>2.173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correspondence, with whom held</td>
<td>2.18, 2.24, 2.119(d)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Counterclaim in opposition and cancellation ........................................... 2.106(b)(2), 2.114(b)(2)

Coupons, for certain payments................................................................. 1.24

Court determination as basis for concurrent use registration .................. 2.99(f)

Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, U.S., appeal to.......................... 2.145

D

Date of first use and first use in commerce:

Amendment of ...................................................................................... 2.71(c)

Required in amendment to allege use .................................................... 2.76(b)(3), (c)

Required in statement of use ................................................................. 2.88(b)(1), (c)

Required in use applications under sec. 1(a) ........................................ 2.34(a)(1)(i) and (ii)

Date of use allegation in application or registration not evidence on behalf of applicant or registrant in inter partes case ................................................................................ 2.122(b)(2)

Declaration in lieu of oath or verification .............................................. 2.20

Declaration of interference .................................................................... 2.91

Default judgment for failure to offer evidence in inter partes proceeding ................................................................. 2.132(a)

Delay in responding to official action .................................................... 2.66

Deposit accounts for paying fees ......................................................... 1.25

Depositions, discovery, in inter partes cases:

Domestic party ...................................................................................... 2.120(b)

Foreign party or representative............................................................... 2.120(c)

Nonparty ............................................................................................... 2.120(b)

Time for taking ..................................................................................... 2.120(a)

Use of .................................................................................................... 2.120(j)

When to file with Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ................................ 2.120(j)(8)

Depositions, trial testimony, upon written questions .................................. 2.124

Depositions, trial testimony ...................................................................... 2.123

Before whom taken ............................................................................... 2.123(d)

Certification and filing .......................................................................... 2.123(f)

Corresponds to the trial in court proceedings ........................................ 2.116(e)

Effect of errors and irregularities .......................................................... 2.123(j)

Examination of witnesses ...................................................................... 2.123(e)

Filing and service of testimony transcript .............................................. 2.125

Form of depositions ............................................................................... 2.123(g)

Inspection of depositions ...................................................................... 2.27(d), 2.123(i)

Manner of taking .................................................................................... 2.123(a)

Must be filed .......................................................................................... 2.123(h)

Notice of taking ..................................................................................... 2.123(c)

Protective order relating to transcript or exhibits ................................... 2.125(e)

Raising of objections ............................................................................ 2.123(e), (j), (k)

Stipulations concerning ........................................................................ 2.123(b)

Taken in foreign country ......................................................................... 2.123(a)(2)

Timing .................................................................................................... 2.121

Description of mark in application .......................................................... 2.37

Amendment to ....................................................................................... 2.72

Designation of representative by foreign applicant, registrant, or party:

Application ............................................................................................. 2.24

Assignment ............................................................................................... 3.61

In inter partes proceeding ....................................................................... 2.119(d)

Renewal ................................................................................................. 2.183(d)

Disciplinary Proceedings ........................................................................ 10.130-10.170

Disclaimer:

During inter partes cases ....................................................................... 2.133

In part, of registered mark ...................................................................... 2.173

Discovery depositions. See Depositions, discovery, in inter partes cases.
Index II

Discovery procedure ................................................................. 2.120
Automatic disclosure provisions and scheduling conferences of Federal
Rules of Civil Procedure not applicable ........................................ 2.120(a)
Discovery deposition of domestic party ...................................... 2.120(b)
Discovery deposition of foreign party .......................................... 2.120(c)
Discovery provisions of Federal Rules of Civil Procedure apply except
as otherwise provided .............................................................. 2.120(a)
Failure to comply with discovery order of Trademark Trial and Appeal
Board ...................................................................................... 2.120(g)
Interrogatories .............................................................................. 2.120(d)(1)
Motion for order to compel discovery ............................................ 2.120(d)(1), 2.120(e)
Motion for a protective order ....................................................... 2.120(f)
Place of production of documents and things ............................ 2.120(d)(2)
Pre-trial conference ..................................................................... 2.120(i)(2)
Proceeding suspended pending decision on motion to compel .... 2.120(e)(2)
Request for admissions ............................................................ 2.120(i)(2)
Sanctions for failure to comply with discovery order of Trademark
TriAL and Appeal Board ............................................................ 2.120(g)
Telephone conference ............................................................... 2.120(i)(1)
Time for discovery ....................................................................... 2.120(a)
Use of discovery deposition, answer to interrogatory, or admission .... 2.120(j)
When to file discovery materials with Trademark Trial and Appeal
Board ...................................................................................... 2.120(j)(8)
Dismissal:
For failure to file brief on appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal
Board ...................................................................................... 2.142(b)(1)
For failure to take testimony or offer other evidence in inter partes
case ......................................................................................... 2.132
Distinctiveness under sec. 2(f), proof of .................................... 2.41
Dividing an application ............................................................. 2.87
Domestic representative of foreign applicant, registrant, or party:
Application .............................................................................. 2.24, 2.37
Assignment .................................................................................. 3.61
In inter partes proceeding ........................................................... 2.119(d)
Renewal ..................................................................................... 2.189(d)
Domicile of applicant ............................................................... 2.32(a)(3)
Drawing ..................................................................................... 2.51-2.52
Amendment to mark in ............................................................. 2.72
Drawings required ...................................................................... 2.51
Color in ..................................................................................... 2.52a(v)
Requirements for drawing ......................................................... 2.52
Transfer from abandoned to new application ............................... 2.26
Typed drawing .......................................................................... 2.52a(1)
Duration of registration:
Cancellation for failure to file affidavit or declaration of use under sec.
8 .............................................................................................. 2.160
Renewal ..................................................................................... 2.181-2.186
Term of original registrations and renewals ................................ 2.181

E

Emergencies or interruptions in United States Postal Service ........ 1.6(e)
“Entity”, defined ........................................................................ 2.2(b)
Entry of judgment, in inter partes proceeding, subject to establishment
of constructive use ................................................................... 2.129(d)
Evidence in ex parte appeal after notice of appeal .................... 2.142(d)
Evidence in inter partes proceeding .......................................... 2.122-2.125
Affidavits, stipulated testimony, and stipulated facts ..................... 2.123(b)
Allegations of use and specimens in applications and registrations.......................... 2.122(b)(2)
Discovery responses .................................................................................................. 2.120(j)
Exhibits attached to pleadings .............................................................................. 2.122(c)
Files of applications or registrations which are subject matter of proceeding........... 2.122(b)(1)
Official records ....................................................................................................... 2.122(e)
Printed publications ............................................................................................... 2.122(e)
Registration owned by any party to proceeding .................................................... 2.122(d)(2)
Registration pleaded by opposer or petitioner ...................................................... 2.122(d)(1)
Rules of evidence .................................................................................................... 2.122(a)
Testimony from other proceedings between parties ................................................. 2.122(f)
Testimony upon oral examination ....................................................................... 2.123
Testimony upon written questions ...................................................................... 2.124
Evidence of distinctiveness .................................................................................. 2.41
Examination of applications .................................................................................. 2.61
Examination of witnesses in inter partes proceeding ............................................. 2.123(e)
Examiner's appearance at ex parte appeal oral hearing ......................................... 2.142(e)(2)
Examiner's brief on appeal ................................................................................... 2.142(b)
Examiner's jurisdiction over an application ............................................................ 2.84
Exhibits attached to pleadings:
As evidence ............................................................................................................ 2.122(c)
Duplicate copies shall be filed ............................................................................ 2.104(a), 2.112(a)
Forwarded to defendant by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ....................... 2.105, 2.113
Exhibits, testimony, filing and service of ............................................................ 2.125
Ex parte appeal. See Appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.
Ex parte matter disclosed but not tried in inter partes case .................................. 2.131
Express abandonment of application or mark:
During examination procedure ............................................................................ 2.68
During inter partes proceeding ............................................................................ 2.135
“Express Mail” procedure for filing of papers and fees ...................................... 1.10
Express surrender or cancellation of registration:
During inter partes proceeding ............................................................................ 2.134
Requirements for ................................................................................................. 2.172
Extension of time for discovery and testimony ................................................... 2.120(a), 2.121(a)(1), (c), (d)
Extension of time for filing opposition ................................................................ 2.102
Extension of time for filing statement of use ....................................................... 2.89
Fee for filing request for ...................................................................................... 2.6
Good cause showing, when necessary ................................................................. 2.89(b)(4), (d)
Mark “Box ITU” on request for ........................................................................ 1.1(h)
Request filed with statement of use ..................................................................... 2.89(e)

F
Facsimile transmission, certificate of ................................................................. 1.8
Facsimile transmission of certain correspondence to Patent and Trademark Office .................................................................................................................. 1.6(a)(3), (d)
Facsimiles as specimens ....................................................................................... 2.56(c)
Failure by appellant to file brief on ex parte appeal ............................................ 2.142(b)(1)
Failure by Plaintiff to file brief at final hearing in inter partes proceeding ............ 2.129(a)(3)
Failure to answer opposition ................................................................................ 2.106(a)
Failure to answer petition for cancellation .......................................................... 2.114(a)
Failure to comply with discovery order ................................................................ 2.120(g)
Failure to comply with order relating to confidential testimony or exhibits ......... 2.125(e)
Failure to file affidavit of use under sec. 8 or renewal application for registration in inter partes proceeding .......................................................... 2.134(b)
Failure to file brief on motion ............................................................................ 2.127(a)
Index II

Failure to offer evidence other than Patent and Trademark Office records......................................................... 2.132(b)
Failure to respond to official action .................................................................................................................. 2.66
Failure to take testimony or offer other evidence ......................................................................................... 2.132(a)
Failure to timely file a statement of use .......................................................................................................... 2.88(h)
Fax transmission, certificate of .................................................................................................................. 2.183(b) and (f)
Fax transmission of certain correspondence to Patent and Trademark Office ................................................... 2.34(a)(3), (d)
Federal Rules of Civil Procedure ................................................................................................................. 2.47(b)
Federal Rules of Evidence .......................................................................................................................... 2.122(a)
Fees and charges.............................................................................................................................................. 1.10
Fees, insufficient amount submitted:
For application .................................................................................................................................................. 2.21(a)(5)
For petition for cancellation .......................................................................................................................... 2.85(e), 2.111(c)
For ex parte appeal ......................................................................................................................................... 2.85(e)
For opposition .................................................................................................................................................. 2.101(d)
For renewal application .................................................................................................................................. 2.183(b) and (f)
Fees, payment of.............................................................................................................................................. 1.22, 1.23
Filing an amendment to allege use .................................................................................................................. 2.76
Filing an opposition ............................................................................................................................................ 2.101
Filing and service of trial testimony .......................................................................................................... 2.125
Filing date, effective, after amendment of sec. 1(b) application to Supplemental Register............................... 2.75(b)
Filing date of application.................................................................................................................................. 2.21
Filing of confidential papers............................................................................................................................ 2.125(e)
Filing of papers and fees by "Express Mail" .................................................................................................. 1.10
Filing petition for cancellation ....................................................................................................................... 2.111
Filing requests for extensions of time for filing statement of use .................................................................. 2.89
Mark "Box ITU" ............................................................................................................................................. 1.1(h)
Filing statement of use after notice of allowance............................................................................................ 2.88
Mark "Box ITU" ............................................................................................................................................. 1.1(h)
Filing substitute specimens ............................................................................................................................. 2.59
Final refusal of application............................................................................................................................... 2.64(a)
Filing amendment to allege use during final action response period ............................................................ 2.64(c)
Reconsideration of ........................................................................................................................................... 2.64(a)
Final hearing, briefs at (inter partes proceeding)............................................................................................ 2.128
Foreign applicant, registrant, or party, designation of domestic representative ................................................. 2.24, 2.37, 2.119(d), 2.161(h), 2.183(d), 3.61
Foreign application, priority claim based on
Foreign registration:
Application based on, under sec. 44 ............................................................................................................. 2.34(a)(3), 2.47(b)
Certified copy of ............................................................................................................................................. 2.34(a)(2)
Necessary before publication ........................................................................................................................... 2.34(a)(3)(ii)
Form of amendment to application.................................................................................................................. 2.74

General information and correspondence ........................................................................................................ 1.1-1.10
Goods and/or services identification of:
Additions not permitted ..................................................................................................................................... 2.71(a)
Amendment of .................................................................................................................................................. 2.71(a)
Amendment of, filed with statement of use .................................................................................................. 2.88(h)(3)
In affidavit or declaration filed under sec. 8 .................................................................................................. 2.161(e)
In written application ....................................................................................................................................... 2.32(a)(6)
Multiple goods or services comprised in single class or multiple classes................................................................ 2.32(a)(6), 2.34(a)(1)(v), 2.86
Required in amendment to allege use ........................................................................................................... 2.76(b)(1), (c)
37 CFR Ch. I (7-1-00 Edition)

Required in request for extension of time to file statement of use ........................................ 2.89(f)
Required in statement of use ................................................................................................. 2.88(b)(1), (c), (i)
Good cause, showing necessary for extension of time to file statement of use .................... 2.89(b)(4), (d)

H

Hearing, oral:
At final hearing in inter partes proceeding ........................................................................ 2.129
On appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ................................................................. 2.142(e)
On motion in inter partes proceedings .................................................................................. 2.127(a)
On petition to Commissioner ............................................................................................... 2.146(f)

I

Identification of goods and/or services: See Goods and/or services identification of.
Identification of pending application or registered mark in correspondence ...................... 1.5
Incontestability of right to use mark:
Affidavit under sec. 15 ........................................................................................................ 2.167
Freedom from interference proceeding .............................................................................. 2.91(b)
Informalities, amendment to correct .................................................................................. 2.71
Inquiries directed to Patent and Trademark Office .............................................................. 1.4
Intent-to-use applications under sec. 1(b):
Abandonment for failure to timely file a statement of use .................................................. 2.65(c)
Amendment to allege use .................................................................................................... 2.76
Amendments between notice of allowance and statement of use ........................................ 2.77
Basis for filing application .................................................................................................. 2.34, 2.37
Bona fide intention to use mark in commerce necessary ...................................................... 2.34(a)(2)(i)
Certification mark ................................................................................................................ 2.45
Collective mark ................................................................................................................... 2.44
Dividing ................................................................................................................................ 2.87
Drawing required .................................................................................................................. 2.32(c), 2.51
Extensions of time for filing statement of use ...................................................................... 2.89
Filing-date requirements ....................................................................................................... 2.21
Notice of allowance ............................................................................................................. 2.81(b)
Revival of application abandoned for failure to timely file a statement of use ...................... 2.66
Specimens filed with amendment to allege use or statement of use ...................................... 2.56, 2.76, 2.88
Statement of use .................................................................................................................. 2.88
When eligible for concurrent use .......................................................................................... 2.73(b), 2.99(g)
When eligible for amendment to Supplemental Register .................................................... 2.47(c)
Interlocutory motions, inter partes proceeding .................................................................... 2.127
Interference ........................................................................................................................ 2.91-2.93, 2.96, 2.98
Adding Party to interference ............................................................................................... 2.98
Burden of proof .................................................................................................................... 2.96
Conflicting marks, co-pending applications for ................................................................... 2.83
Declaration of interference .................................................................................................. 2.91
Declared only on petition to Commissioner ........................................................................ 2.91(a)
Institution of interference ................................................................................................... 2.93
Issue ..................................................................................................................................... 2.96
Marks must otherwise be deemed registrable ..................................................................... 2.92
Notice of interference .......................................................................................................... 2.93
Preliminary to interference .................................................................................................. 2.92
Index II

Registrations and applications on the Supplemental Register, registrations under the Act of 1920, and registrations of incontestable marks not subject to interference .......................................................... 2.91(b)
Request to divide application during interference .......................................................... 2.87(c)
Inter partes procedure ................................................................................ 2.116-2.136
Inter partes proceedings ................................................................................ 2.91-2.136
Cancellation ........................................................................................... 2.111-2.115
Concurrent use ................................................................................................. 2.99
Failure of plaintiff to file brief at final hearing .................................... 2.128(a)(3)
Failure of plaintiff to take testimony ................................................................. 2.132
Interference ................................................................................ 2.91-2.93, 2.96, 2.98
Opposition .......................................................................................... 2.101-2.107
Procedure in ........................................................................................... 2.116-2.136
Interrogatories (discovery) ........................................................................ 2.120
Motion for an order to compel answer ....................................... 2.120(d)(1), 2.120(e)
Numerical limit on ................................................................................. 2.120(d)(1)
Timing of.................................................................................................... 2.120(a)
Use of answers............................................................................................. 2.120(j)
When to file copy of interrogatories and answers thereto with Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ................................. 2.120(j)(8)
Interferences or emergencies in United States Postal Service ............ 1.6(e)
Issue date of the notice of allowance .............................................................. 2.81(b)

J

Judgment by default:
Failure by plaintiff to file brief at final hearing .................................... 2.128(a)(3)
Failure to answer cancellation .................................................................. 2.114(a)
Failure to answer notice of concurrent use proceeding ............................ 2.99(d)(3)
Failure to answer opposition ....................................................................... 2.106(a)
Failure to take testimony or offer other evidence ......................................... 2.132
Judgment, entry of in inter partes proceeding subject to establishment of constructive use .......................................................... 2.129(d)
Jurisdiction over published applications ......................................................... 2.84
Amendment after publication of mark ........................................................... 2.84(b)
Amendment during inter partes proceeding .................................................... 2.133
Remand to Examiner by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ............... 2.130, 2.131

L

Lawyers. See Attorneys.
Letter, separate for each distinct subject of inquiry ........................................ 1.4(c)
Letters, address for mailing to Patent and Trademark Office.................. 1.1

M

Mailing, certificate of......................................................................................... 1.8
Mailing address for correspondence with Patent and Trademark Office .... 1.1
Marks on Supplemental Register published only upon registration ........ 2.82
Marks registered under 1905 Act. claiming benefits of 1946 Act ............... 2.153-2.156
Marks under sec. 12(c) not subject to opposition; subject to cancellation .......................................................... 2.156
Matters in evidence in inter partes cases .......................................................... 2.122
Mistake in registration incurred through fault of applicant ......................... 2.175
Mistake in registration incurred through fault of Patent and Trademark Office .............................................................. 2.174
Money, payment of ......................................................................................... 1.22-1.26
Motions in inter partes proceedings:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Official Gazette contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oaths, before whom and when made in testimonial deposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oath, declaration in lieu of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification of opposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification of grant or denial of request for an extension of time to file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification of filing of petition for cancellation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification of acceptance of or deficiency in statement of use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification of acceptance of or deficiency in amendment to allege use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board of civil action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of reliance on printed publications and official records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of publication under sec. 12(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of opposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of concurrent use proceeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of claim of benefits of 1946 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of appeal to court and civil action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oaths, before whom and when made in testimonial deposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official Gazette contents:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New certificate on change of ownership</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice by publication, undelivered Office notices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filing statement of use after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issue date of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of claim of benefits of 1946 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of election by appellee to proceed by civil action after appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of interference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of publication under sec. 12(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of reliance on discovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board of civil action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice, where address of registrant in cancellation proceeding is unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification of acceptance of or deficiency in amendment to allege use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification of filing of petition for cancellation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification of opposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oath, declaration in lieu of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oaths, before whom and when made in testimonial deposition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index II

Claim of benefits under sec. 12(c) for marks registered under 1905 Act ................................................................. 2.154
First filed of applications for conflicting marks ................................................................. 2.83
Marks on Principal Register published for opposition ...................................................... 2.80
Marks on Supplemental Register published when registered ......................................... 2.82
Official records, reliance on in inter partes proceeding .................................................. 2.122(e)
Omission of matter from response to Examiner's action ................................................. 2.65(b)
Opposition to registration of mark on Principal Register: ................................................. 2.101-2.107
Amendment of opposition ................................................................................................. 2.107
Answer ............................................................................................................................... 2.106
Commencement of opposition ......................................................................................... 2.101(a)
Consolidated oppositions ................................................................................................. 2.104(b)
Contents of opposition ..................................................................................................... 2.104
Corresponds to complaint in a court proceeding .............................................................. 2.116(c)
Discovery .......................................................................................................................... 2.120
Extension of time for filing an opposition ........................................................................ 2.102
Failure to timely answer .................................................................................................... 2.106(a)
Filing an opposition .......................................................................................................... 2.101
Insufficient fees .................................................................................................................. 2.101(d)
Notification of opposition ............................................................................................... 2.105
Procedure, inter partes ...................................................................................................... 2.116-2.136
Request to divide application during opposition ............................................................... 2.87(c)
Suspension of proceedings ............................................................................................... 2.117
Time for filing opposition ............................................................................................... 2.101(c)
Who may file opposition ................................................................................................. 2.101(b)
Withdrawal of opposition ............................................................................................... 2.106(c)
Oral argument at final hearing in inter partes proceeding ................................................. 2.129
Oral hearing:
Ex parte appeal ................................................................................................................. 2.142(e)
Inter partes proceedings ................................................................................................. 2.116(f), 2.127(a), 2.129
On petition to Commissioner ......................................................................................... 2.146(f)
Oral promise, stipulation, or understanding ..................................................................... 1.2
Ownership, prior registrations, identification in application ........................................ 2.36

Papers of application not returnable .................................................................................. 2.25
Patent Rules, applicable .................................................................................................... 2.1
Payment of money ............................................................................................................. 2.22-2.26
Pending application index ............................................................................................... 2.27
Period for response to Office actions ............................................................................. 2.62
Personal appearance unnecessary ................................................................................... 1.2
Persons who may practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in trademark cases ........................................................................................................... 10.14
Petition for cancellation .................................................................................................... 2.111-2.115
Amendment of petition ................................................................................................. 2.115
Answer ............................................................................................................................. 2.114
Commencement of cancellation proceeding ................................................................... 2.111(a)
Contents of petition ......................................................................................................... 2.112
Corresponds to complaint in a court proceeding ............................................................... 2.116(c)
Discovery .......................................................................................................................... 2.120
Failure to timely answer .................................................................................................... 2.114(a)
Filing petition for cancellation ........................................................................................ 2.111
Insufficient fees .................................................................................................................. 2.111(c)
Notification of cancellation proceeding ......................................................................... 2.113
Procedure, inter partes ...................................................................................................... 2.116-2.136
Suspension of proceedings ............................................................................................... 2.117
Time for filing petition .................................................................................................... 2.111(b)
Who may file petition ................................................................. 2.111(b)
Withdrawal of petition ............................................................. 2.114(c)
Petition for rehearing, reconsideration or modification of
decision:
  Decision in inter partes proceeding ........................................ 2.129(c)
  Decision on ex parte appeal .................................................... 2.144
  Decision on interlocutory motion in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.127(b)
  Petition to revive abandoned application ............................... 2.66
  Petition to the Commissioner ............................................... 2.146
  Contents of petition ................................................................ 2.146(c)
  Delegation of authority to act on petitions ......................... 2.146(h)
  Extraordinary situation requiring suspension or waiver of requirement of rules .................................................. 2.146(a)(5)
  Fee ......................................................................................... 2.6
  From denial of request for extension of time to file statement of use ................................................................. 2.89(g)
  From grant or denial of request for extension of time to oppose .... 2.146(e)(1)
  From interlocutory order of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board .... 2.146(e)(2)
  Invoke supervisory authority .................................................. 2.146(a)(3)
  Oral hearing on petition ......................................................... 2.146(f)
  Reconsideration of refusal to accept sec. 8 affidavit or declaration ...... 2.169(b)
  Refusal of renewal of registration ......................................... 2.186
  Relief from repeated formal requirement of Examiner ........... 2.63(b)
  Repeated action or requirement of Examiner regarding subject matter appropriate for petition .................................. 2.146(a)(1)
  Review of adverse action on correction, disclaimer, surrender, etc. of registration .................................................. 2.176
  Time to file petition ............................................................. 2.146(a), (b)
  To accord filing date as of date of deposit as Express Mail ....... 1.10(c)(e)
  Pleading, amendment of ....................................................... 2.107, 2.115
  Position of parties in inter partes proceedings ..................... 2.96, 2.99(e), 2.116(b)
  Postal Service, United States, interruptions or emergencies in .... 1.6(e)
  Post notice of allowance ....................................................... 2.88, 2.89
  Post publication ..................................................................... 2.61
  Power of attorney or authorization of other representative .......... 2.17, 2.19
  Practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, individuals entitled to .................................................................. 10.14
  Predecessor in title or related company, use by ..................... 2.38
  Pre-trial conference, inter partes proceeding .......................... 2.120(i)(2)
  Principal Register ................................................................. 2.46
  Amendment to or from Supplemental Register ....................... 2.75
  Printed publications, as evidence in inter partes proceedings ....... 2.122(e)
  Prior acts, status of prior registrations .................................... 2.158
  Priority claim based on foreign application .......................... 2.34(a)(4)
  Prior registrations, ownership, identification in application ...... 2.36
  Procedure in inter partes cases .............................................. 2.116-2.136
  Production of documents and things, request for (discovery) ....... 2.120
  Place of production ............................................................... 2.120(d)(2)
  Motion for an order to compel production ........................... 2.120(e)
  Timing of ............................................................................... 2.120(a)
  Professional conduct of attorneys ........................................... 10.20-10.129
  Proof of distinctiveness under sec. 2(f) ................................. 2.41
  Proof of service ..................................................................... 2.119(a)
  Protective order:
Index II

Access to materials filed under .............................................................................. 2.27(e)
Rebuttal testimony ..................................................................................................... 2.121(b), (c)
Receipt of papers and fees ....................................................................................... 1.6, 1.8, 1.10
Recognition of attorneys or other authorized person ............................................ 2.17, 10.14
Reconsideration:
Of affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 ................................................... 2.163(b), 2.165(a)
Of decision after final hearing in inter partes proceeding ...................................... 2.129(c)
Of decision on ex parte appeal ............................................................................... 2.144
Of order or decision on interlocutory motion ....................................................... 2.127(b)
Records of documents in Assignment Division of Patent and Trademark Office
Office ........................................................................................................................ 3.11-3.56
Records and files of the Patent and Trademark Office ........................................... 1.12, 1.15, 2.27
Reexamination of application ............................................................................... 2.63(a)
Reexamination of application after remand by the Trademark Trial and
Appeal Board ........................................................................................................... 2.130, 2.131, 2.142
Refund of money paid to Patent and Trademark Office ........................................ 1.26
Refusal of affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 .......................................... 2.163
Refusal of registration ............................................................................................. 2.61
Refusal of renewal .................................................................................................. 2.184
Refusal of request for extension of time to file a statement of use ........................ 2.89(g)
Registrability of marks in plurality of classes (combined applications) ...................... 2.86
Registrant claiming benefits of 1946 Act................................................................. 2.153-2.156
Registration as evidence in inter partes proceeding:
File of registration which is the subject of the proceeding ...................................... 2.122(b)(1)
Registration owned by any party to proceeding .................................................... 2.122(d)(2)
Registration pleaded by opposer or petitioner ....................................................... 2.122(d)(1)
Registration files open to public inspection ........................................................... 2.27(d)
Registrations, printed copies available .................................................................. 1.13
Related company or predecessor, use by ............................................................... 2.38
Remand to Examiner
After decision in inter partes case ......................................................................... 2.131
During appeal from refusal of registration ............................................................. 2.142(f)
During inter partes case ......................................................................................... 2.130
Renewal of registration .......................................................................................... 2.181-2.186
Application for renewal, requirements .................................................................. 2.183
Failure to renew registration involved in inter partes proceeding .......................... 2.134(b)
Period in which to file .............................................................................................. 2.182
Refusal of renewal .................................................................................................. 2.184(a)
Review of Examiner’s refusal by commissioner ..................................................... 2.186
Term of original registrations and renewals ........................................ 2.181
Reply briefs in inter partes proceedings ............................................. 2.127(a)
Representation by attorney ................................................................. 2.11
Representation of others before the Patent and Trademark Office .... 2.11, 10.14
Representative, domestic or U.S. See Domestic representative....... 2.17, 10.14
Representation, recognition for ......................................................... 2.11
Republication of marks registered under prior acts ......................... 2.153-2.156
Request for admissions (discovery). See Admissions, request for. 2.176
Request for extension of time for discovery and testimony. See Extension of time for discovery and testimony.
Request for extension of time to file opposition. See Extension of time to file opposition.
Request for extension of time to file statement of use. See Extension of time to file statement of use.
Request for information and exhibits by Examiner ......................... 2.61(b)
Request for production (discovery). See Production of documents and things, request for.
Request for reconsideration. See Reconsideration.
Request for records ............................................................................ 1.15
Request for registration ....................................................................... 2.32(a)(1)
Request to divide an application ......................................................... 2.67
Requirements for receiving a filing date ............................................. 2.21
Requirements for written application .............................................. 2.32, 2.34
Registration of marks registered under prior acts ............................ 2.158
Response to official action ................................................................. 2.62
Review by Commissioner:
For relief from repeated formal requirement by Examiner ............ 2.63(b)
Of adverse action on correction, disclaimer, surrender, etc. of registra-
tion ............................................................................................................. 2.176
Of refusal of affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 ................. 2.165
Of refusal of renewal application ....................................................... 2.186
Petitions to the Commissioner .............................................................. 2.146
Revival of abandoned applications .................................................... 2.66
Revocation of power of attorney ............................................................ 2.19
Rules of evidence in inter partes cases: Amended ............................ 2.189
Rules of practice in trademark cases: Amendment ...................... 2.146(a)(5), 2.148
Suspension, petition to Commissioner ................................................ 2.146(a)(5), 2.148
Waiver, petition to Commissioner ...................................................... 2.146(a)(5), 2.148
Sanction for failure to comply with discovery order ....................... 2.120(g)
Sanction for failure to comply with protective order relating to testi-
mony ............................................................................................................. 2.125(e)
Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday, time for taking action expiring
on .................................................................................................................. 1.6(a)(1), (2), 1.6(b), 1.7
Schedule of classes of goods and services ...................................... 2.85, 6.1-6.4
Schedule of time for discovery and trial periods ......................... 2.120(a), 2.121
Sec. 2(f), proof of distinctiveness ...................................................... 2.41
Sec. 8 affidavit or declaration of use .................................................. 2.160-2.166
Sec. 44, application based on: Amendment ...................................... 2.75(a)
Amendment to description or drawing in mark ................................ 2.72(c)
Basis for filing ....................................................................................... 2.34, 2.37
Certification mark ............................................................................... 2.45(b)
Collective mark ................................................................................... 2.44(b)
Drawing required ............................................................................... 2.32(c)
Index II

Filing-date requirements ................................................................. 2.21
Goods or services identified may not exceed scope of those in foreign application or registration .................................................. 2.32(a)(6)
Priority claim ............................................................................. 2.34(a)(4)
Requirements for drawings .......................................................... 2.52
Requirements for written application .......................................... 2.33
Supplemental Register .................................................................. 2.47(b)
Serial number ............................................................................. 2.23
Service charge for filing renewal application during grace period .... 2.6, 2.185
Services marks ............................................................................. 2.43
Specimens or facsimiles .............................................................. 2.56(c)
Service of copies of testimony ...................................................... 2.125
Service and signing of papers ...................................................... 2.119
Signature and certificate of attorney ............................................. 10.18
Signature of applicant .................................................................. 2.33
Single certificate for one mark registered in a plurality of classes ........ 2.87
Specimens .................................................................................. 2.56-2.59
Facsimiles in lieu of specimens .................................................... 2.56(c)
Not evidence in behalf of applicant or registrant in inter partes proceeding................................................................. 2.122(b)(2)
Of service mark .......................................................................... 2.56(a)(2)
Requirement of filing with affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 ................................................................................ 2.161(g)
Requirement of filing with amendment to allege use ....................... 2.76(b)(2), (e)(2)
Requirement of filing with statement of use .................................... 2.88(b)(2), (e)(2)
Support of amendment to application ........................................... 2.71, 2.72
Support of amendment to registration .......................................... 2.173
Statement of use ......................................................................... 2.88
Amendments to description or drawing of mark after filing ............ 2.72(b)(1)
Amendments to dates of use after filing ....................................... 2.71(c)(2)
Extensions of time to file .............................................................. 2.89
Fee for filing ................................................................................ 2.6
Mark “Box ITU” .......................................................................... 1.1(h)
May not be withdrawn .................................................................. 2.88(g)
Minimum requirements for filing ................................................ 2.88(e)
Requirements for ....................................................................... 2.88(b)
Time for filing ............................................................................ 2.88(a)
Status of application after ex parte appeal ..................................... 2.142(g)
Status of application on termination of inter partes proceedings .... 2.136
Stipulated evidence, inter partes cases ......................................... 2.129(b)
Stipulation to extend discovery and/or trial periods ...................... 2.120(a), 2.121
Substitute specimens, filing of .................................................... 2.59
Summary judgments in inter partes proceedings ......................... 2.127(e)(1)
Sunday, Saturday, or Federal holiday, time for taking action expiring on................................................................. 1.6(a)(1), (2), 1.6(b), 1.7
Supplemental Register:
Amendment from Principal Register .......................................... 2.47(c), 2.75
Application requirements ............................................................ 2.47
Approval .................................................................................... 2.82
Cancellation ............................................................................... 2.111
Certificate of registration ............................................................. 2.82
Intent-to-use applications, when eligible ..................................... 2.47(c)
Marks published when registered ............................................... 2.82
Surrender of certificate of registration ......................................... 2.172
During inter partes proceeding ..................................................... 2.134
Suspension of action in application by Patent and Trademark Office ... 2.67
Suspension from practice before Patent and Trademark Office ........ 10.130-10.170
Suspension of later filed conflicting application ......................... 2.83
Suspension of inter partes proceedings by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board:
- For good cause upon motion or stipulation: 2.117(c)
- Pending disposition of motion or stipulation: 2.121(d)
- Pending disposition of motion to compel: 2.120(e)(2)
- Pending disposition of motion to test sufficiency of response to request for admission: 2.120(h)(2)
- Pending termination of civil action or other Board proceeding: 2.117(a), (b)
- Suspension of rules, Commissioner: 2.146(a)(5), 2.148

Term of original registrations and renewals: 2.181

Testimony in inter partes cases:
- Assignment and resetting of times: 2.121
- By oral examination: 2.123
- By written questions: 2.124
- Failure to take: 2.132
- Arrangement, indexing, and form of transcript: 2.123(g), 2.125(b), (d)
- Corrections to: 2.124(f), 2.125(b)
- Deposition must be filed: 2.123(h)
- Filing in Patent and Trademark Office: 2.123(f), 2.124(f), 2.125(c)
- Inspection of deposition: 2.123(i)
- Service on adverse party: 2.124(f), 2.125(a)
- From another proceeding: 2.123(f)
- In foreign countries: 2.123(a)(2)
- Objections to: 2.123(e), (j), (k); 2.124(d), (g)
- Stipulated testimony: 2.123(b)

Time:
- For amendment: 2.62
- For ex parte appeal: 2.142(a)
- For filing affidavit or declaration to avoid cancellation: 2.160
- For filing amendment to allege use: 2.76(a)
- For filing appeal to court or civil action: 2.145(d)
- For filing briefs in inter partes proceedings: 2.127
- For filing extension of time to oppose: 2.102
- For filing opposition: 2.101(c)
- For filing petition for cancellation: 2.111(b), (c)(3)
- For filing request for extension of time to file statement of use: 2.89
- For filing request to divide application: 2.67(c)
- For filing statement of use: 2.88(a)
- For response to Patent and Trademark Office action: 2.62
- For taking discovery: 2.120(a)
- For taking testimony: 2.121
- Translation of assignment: 3.26
- Transmission, certificate of: 1.8

Transmission, certificate of:
- Undelivered Office notices, to registrant: 2.118
- Unprofessional conduct, attorneys: 10.20-10.129
- Unprovided for and extraordinary circumstances, petition to Commissioner: 2.146(a)(4), (5)
- U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, appeal to: 2.145

Use:
- Allegation of use in commerce: 2.21, 2.34, 2.76, 2.88
- Amendment to allege use in commerce: 2.76
- Bona fide intention to use in commerce: 2.34, 2.89
**Index II**

By predecessor or by related companies .................................................. 2.38
Dates of first use and first use in commerce ........................................ 2.34(a)(1)(ii) and (iii)
Statement of use ....................................................................................... 2.88
Use of discovery ......................................................................................... 2.120(j)

**V**

Verification:
Declaration in lieu of oath or verification ............................................... 2.20
Of application ............................................................................................. 2.33
Required with amendment to allege use ................................................ 2.76(b)(1), (e)(3)
Required with statement of use ................................................................. 2.88(b)(1), (e)(3)
Required with substitute specimens ......................................................... 2.59
In support of amendments to descriptions or drawings of the mark ....... 2.72
In support of amendments to dates of use ............................................... 2.71(c)
In support of request for extension of time to file statement of use ....... 2.89

**W**

Waiver of rule, petition to Commissioner ................................................ 2.146(a)(5), 2.148
Willful false statements, declaration ....................................................... 2.20
Withdrawal from employment, practitioners ........................................ 2.19, 10.40, 10.63
Withdrawal of amendment to allege use ................................................. 2.76(h)
Withdrawal of application ....................................................................... 2.68
Involved in inter partes proceeding ......................................................... 2.135
Withdrawal of opposition with or without consent .............................. 2.106(c)
Withdrawal of cancellation with or without consent ............................ 2.114(c)
Withdrawal of registration by voluntary surrender by registrant:
Involved in cancellation proceeding ....................................................... 2.134
Requirements for .................................................................................... 2.172
 Withdrawal of statement of use prohibited ............................................ 2.88(g)
Witnesses:
Discovery deposition ............................................................................... 2.120(b), (c)
Examination by oral deposition (Testimony) ........................................ 2.123
Examination by written questions ......................................................... 2.124
Foreign ..................................................................................................... 2.120(c), 2.123(a)(2)
Written application ................................................................................ 2.32-2.47
PART 10—REPRESENTATION OF OTHERS BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Sec.
10.1 Definitions.
10.2 Director of Enrollment and Discipline.
10.3 Committee on Enrollment.
10.4 Committee on Discipline.

INDIVIDUALS ENTITLED TO PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

10.5 Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases.
10.6 Registration of attorneys and agents.
10.7 Requirements for registration.
10.8 Oath and registration fee.
10.9 Limited recognition in patent cases.
10.10 Restrictions on practice in patent cases.
10.11 Removing names from the register.
10.12±10.13 [Reserved]
10.14 Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.
10.15 Refusal to recognize a practitioner.
10.16±10.17 [Reserved]
10.18 Signature and certificate for correspondence filed in the Patent and Trademark Office.
10.19 [Reserved]

PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CODE OF PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY

10.20 Canons and Disciplinary Rules.
10.21 Canon 1.
10.22 Maintaining integrity and competence of the legal profession.
10.23 Misconduct.
10.24 Disclosure of information to authorities.
10.25-10.29 [Reserved]
10.30 Canon 2.
10.31 Communications concerning a practitioner’s services.
10.32 Advertising.
10.33 Direct contact with prospective clients.
10.34 Communication of fields of practice.
10.35 Firm names and letterheads.
10.36 Fees for legal services.
10.37 Division of fees among practitioners.
10.38 Agreements restricting the practice of a practitioner.
10.39 Acceptance of employment.
10.40 Forming a partnership with a non-practitioner.
10.50-10.55 [Reserved]
10.56 Canon 4.
10.57 Preservation of confidences and secrets of a client.
10.58-10.60 [Reserved]
10.59 Canon 5.
10.62 Refusing employment when the interest of the practitioner may impair the practitioner’s independent professional judgment.
10.63 Withdrawal when the practitioner becomes a witness.
10.64 Avoiding acquisition of interest in litigation or proceeding before the Office.
10.65 Limiting business relations with a client.
10.66 Refusing to accept or continue employment if the interests of another client may impair the independent professional judgment of the practitioner.
10.67 Settling similar claims of clients.
10.68 Avoiding influence by others than the client.
10.69-10.75 [Reserved]
10.76 Canon 6.
10.77 Failing to act competently.
10.78 Limiting liability to client.
10.79-10.82 [Reserved]
10.83 Canon 7.
10.84 Representing a client zealously.
10.85 Representing a client within the bounds of the law.
10.86 [Reserved]
10.87 Communicating with one of adverse interest.
10.88 Threatening criminal prosecution.
10.89 Conduct in proceedings.
10.90-10.91 [Reserved]
10.92 Contact with witnesses.
10.93 Contact with officials.
10.94-10.95 [Reserved]
10.96 Canon 8.
10.97 Action as a public official.
10.98 Statements concerning officials.
10.99 Practitioner candidate for judicial office.
10.100 [Reserved]
10.101 [Reserved]
10.102 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.
10.103-10.109 [Reserved]
10.110 [Reserved]
10.111 Avoiding even the appearance of impropriety.
10.112 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.
10.113-10.129 [Reserved]

INVESTIGATIONS AND DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

10.130 Reprimand, suspension or exclusion.
10.131 Investigations.
10.132 Initiating a disciplinary proceeding; reference to an administrative law judge.
10.133 Conference between Director and practitioner; resignation.
10.134 Complaint.
10.135 Service of complaint.
10.136 Answer to complaint.
§ 10.1

10.137 Supplemental complaint.
10.138 Contested case.
10.139 Administrative law judge; appointment; responsibilities; review of interlocutory orders; stays.
10.140 Representative for Director or respondent.
10.141 Filing of papers.
10.142 Service of papers.
10.143 Motions.
10.144 Hearings.
10.145 Proof; variance; amendment of pleadings.
10.146-10.148 [Reserved]
10.149 Burden of proof.
10.150 Evidence.
10.151 Depositions.
10.152 Discovery.
10.153 Proposed findings and conclusions; post-hearing memorandum.
10.154 Initial decision of administrative law judge.
10.155 Appeal to the Commissioner.
10.156 Decision of the Commissioner.
10.157 Review of Commissioner’s final decision.
10.158 Suspended or excluded practitioner.
10.159 Notice of suspension or exclusion.
10.160 Petition for reinstatement.
10.161 Savings clause.
10.162-10.169 [Reserved]
10.170 Suspension of rules.


Source: 50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

§ 10.1 Definitions.

This part governs solely the practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Patent and Trademark Office. Nothing in this part shall be construed to preempt the authority of each State to regulate the practice of law, except to the extent necessary for the Patent and Trademark Office to accomplish its Federal objectives. Unless otherwise clear from the context, the following definitions apply to this part:

(a) Affidavit means affidavit, declaration under 35 U.S.C. 25 (see §§1.68 and 2.20 of this subchapter), or statutory declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746.

(b) Application includes an application for a design, plant, or utility patent, an application to reissue any patent, and an application to register a trademark.

(c) Attorney or lawyer means an individual who is a member in good standing of the bar of any United States court or the highest court of any State. A “non-lawyer” is a person who is not an attorney or lawyer.

(d) Canon is defined in §10.20(a).

(e) Confidence is defined in §10.57(a).

(f) Differing interests include every interest that may adversely affect either the judgment or the loyalty of a practitioner to a client, whether it be a conflicting, inconsistent, diverse, or other interest.

(g) Director means the Director of Enrollment and Discipline.

(h) Disciplinary Rule is defined in §10.20(b).

(i) Employee of a tribunal includes all employees of courts, the Office, and other adjudicatory bodies.

(j) Giving information within the meaning of §10.23(c)(2) includes making (1) a written statement or representation or (2) an oral statement or representation.

(k) Law firm includes a professional legal corporation or a partnership.

(l) Legal counsel means practitioner.

(m) Legal profession includes the individuals who are lawfully engaged in practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Office.

(n) Legal service means any legal service which may lawfully be performed by a practitioner before the Office.

(o) Legal System includes the Office and courts and adjudicatory bodies which review matters on which the Office has acted.

(p) Office means Patent and Trademark Office.

(q) Person includes a corporation, an association, a trust, a partnership, and any other organization or legal entity.

(r) Practitioner means (1) an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Office in patent cases or (2) an individual authorized under 5 U.S.C. 500(b) or otherwise as provided by this subchapter, to practice before the Office in trademark cases or other non-patent cases. A “suspended or excluded practitioner” is a practitioner who is suspended or excluded under §10.156. A “non-practitioner” is an individual who is not a practitioner.

(s) A proceeding before the Office includes an application, a reexamination, a protest, a public use proceeding, an interference, an inter partes trademark proceeding, or any other
§ 10.4 Committee on Discipline.

(a) The Commissioner shall appoint a Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall consist of at least three employees of the Office, none of whom reports directly or indirectly to the Director or the Solicitor. Each member of the Committee on Discipline shall be a member in good standing of the bar of a State.

(b) The Committee on Discipline shall meet at the request of the Director and after reviewing evidence presented by the Director shall, by majority vote, determine whether there is probable cause to bring charges against a practitioner. When charges are brought against a practitioner, no member of the Committee on Discipline, employee under the direction of the Director, or associate solicitor or assistant solicitor in the Office of the Solicitor shall participate in rendering a decision on the charges.

(c) No discovery shall be authorized, and no member of the Committee on
Discipline shall be required to testify about deliberations of the Committee on Discipline.

§ 10.5 Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases.

A register of attorneys and agents is kept in the Office on which are entered the names of all individuals recognized as entitled to represent applicants before the Office in the preparation and prosecution of applications for patent. Registration in the Office under the provisions of this part shall only entitle the individuals registered to practice before the Office in patent cases.

§ 10.6 Registration of attorneys and agents.

(a) Attorneys. Any citizen of the United States who is an attorney and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office. When appropriate, any alien who is an attorney, who lawfully resides in the United States, and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office, provided: Registration is not inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien was admitted to, and resides in, the United States, and further provided: The alien may remain registered only (1) if the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States and registration does not become inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States or (2) if the alien ceases to reside in the United States, the alien is qualified to be registered under paragraph (c) of this section. See also §10.9(b).

NOTE: All individuals registered prior to November 15, 1938, were registered as attorneys, whether they were attorneys or not, and such registrations have not been changed.

(c) Foreigners. Any foreigner not a resident of the United States who shall file proof to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered and in good standing before the patent office of the country in which he or she resides and practices and who is possessed of the qualifications stated in §10.7, may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office for the limited purpose of presenting and prosecuting patent applications of applicants located in such country, provided: The patent office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those admitted to practice before the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Registration as a patent agent under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0012)

§ 10.7 Requirements for registration.

(a) No individual will be registered to practice before the Office unless he or she shall:

(1) Apply to the Commissioner in writing on a form supplied by the Director and furnish all requested information and material and

(2) Establish to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is:

(i) Of good moral character and repute:
§ 10.10 Restrictions on practice in patent cases.

(a) Only practitioners who are registered under §10.6 or individuals given limited recognition under §10.9 will be permitted to prosecute patent applications of others before the Office.

(b) No individual who has served in the patent examining corps of the Office may practice before the Office after termination of his or her service, unless he or she signs a written undertaking,

(1) Not to prosecute or aid in any manner in the prosecution of any patent application pending in any patent examining group during his or her period of service therein and

(2) Not to prepare or prosecute or to assist in any manner in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application of another (i) assigned to such group for examination and (ii) filed within two years after the date he or
§ 10.11 Removing names from the register.

(a) Registered attorneys and agents shall notify the Director of any change of address. Any notification to the Director of any change of address shall be separate from any notice of change of address filed in individual applications.

(b) A letter may be addressed to any individual on the register, at the address of which separate notice was last received by the Director, for the purpose of ascertaining whether such individual desires to remain on the register. The name of any individual failing to reply and give any information requested by the Director within a time limit specified will be removed from the register and the names of individuals so removed will be published in the Official Gazette. The name of any individual so removed may be reinserted on the register as may be appropriate and upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(3) of this subchapter.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0012)

§§ 10.12–10.13 [Reserved]

§ 10.14 Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(a) Attorneys. Any individual who is an attorney may represent others before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases. An attorney is not required to apply for registration or recognition to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(b) Non-lawyers. Individuals who are not attorneys are not recognized to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases, except that individuals not attorneys who were recognized to practice before the Office in trademark cases under this chapter prior to January 1, 1957, will be recognized as agents to continue to practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(c) Foreigners. Any foreign attorney or agent not a resident of the United States who shall prove to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered or in good standing before the patent or trademark office of the country in which he or she resides and practices, may be recognized for the limited purpose of representing parties located in such country before the Office in the presentation and prosecution of trademark cases, provided: The patent or trademark office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those permitted to practice in trademark cases before the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Recognition under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

(d) Recognition of any individual under this section shall not be construed as sanctioning or authorizing the performance of any act regarded in the jurisdiction where performed as the unauthorized practice of law.

(e) No individual other than those specified in paragraphs (a), (b), and (c) of this section shall be permitted to practice before the Office in trademark
cases. Any individual may appear in a trademark or other non-patent case in his or her own behalf. Any individual may appear in a trademark case for (1) a firm of which he or she is a member or (2) a corporation or association of which he or she is an officer and which he or she is authorized to represent, if such firm, corporation, or association is a party to a trademark proceeding pending before the Office.

§ 10.15 Refusal to recognize a practitioner.
Any practitioner authorized to appear before the Office may be suspended or excluded in accordance with the provisions of this part. Any practitioner who is suspended or excluded under this subpart or removed under §10.11(b) shall not be entitled to practice before the Office.

§§ 10.16-10.17 [Reserved]

§ 10.18 Signature and certificate for correspondence filed in the Patent and Trademark Office.
(a) For all documents filed in the Office in patent, trademark, and other non-patent matters, except for correspondence that is required to be signed by the applicant or party, each piece of correspondence filed by a practitioner in the Patent and Trademark Office must bear a signature, personally signed by such practitioner, in compliance with §1.4(d)(1) of this chapter.
(b) By presenting to the Office (whether by signing, filing, submitting, or later advocating) any paper, the party presenting such paper, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, is certifying that—
(1) All statements made therein of the party's own knowledge are true, all statements made therein on information and belief are believed to be true, and all statements made therein are made with the knowledge that whoever, in any matter within the jurisdiction of the Patent and Trademark Office, knowingly and willfully falsifies, conceals, or covers up by any trick, scheme, or device a material fact, or makes any false, fictitious or fraudulent statements or representations, or makes or uses any false writing or document knowing the same to contain any false, fictitious or fraudulent statement or entry, shall be subject to the penalties set forth under 18 U.S.C. 1001, and that violations of this paragraph may jeopardize the validity of the application or document, or the validity or enforceability of any patent, trademark registration, or certificate resulting therefrom; and
(2) To the best of the party's knowledge, information and belief, formed after an inquiry reasonable under the circumstances, that—
(i) The paper is not being presented for any improper purpose, such as to harass someone or to cause unnecessary delay or needless increase in the cost of prosecution before the Office;
(ii) The claims and other legal contentions therein are warranted by existing law or by a nonfrivolous argument for the extension, modification, or reversal of existing law or the establishment of new law;
(iii) The allegations and other factual contentions have evidentiary support or, if specifically so identified, are reasonably based on a lack of information or belief.
(c) Violations of paragraph (b)(1) of this section by a practitioner or non-practitioner may jeopardize the validity of the application or document, or the validity or enforceability of any patent, trademark registration, or certificate resulting therefrom. Violations of any of paragraphs (b)(2) (i) through (iv) of this section are, after notice and reasonable opportunity to respond, subject to such sanctions as deemed appropriate by the Commissioner, or the Commissioner's designee, which may include, but are not limited to, any combination of—
(1) Holding certain facts to have been established;
(2) Returning papers;
(3) Precluding a party from filing a paper, or presenting or contesting an issue;
(4) Imposing a monetary sanction;
(5) Requiring a terminal disclaimer for the period of the delay; or
§ 10.19  

(6) Terminating the proceedings in the Patent and Trademark Office.
(d) Any practitioner violating the provisions of this section may also be subject to disciplinary action. See § 10.23(c)(15).


§ 10.19  [Reserved]

PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CODE OF PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY

§ 10.20  Canons and Disciplinary Rules.

(a) Canons are set out in §§ 10.21, 10.30, 10.46, 10.56, 10.61, 10.76, 10.83, 10.100, and 10.110. Canons are statements of axiomatic norms, expressing in general terms the standards of professional conduct expected of practitioners in their relationships with the public, with the legal system, and with the legal profession.

(b) Disciplinary Rules are set out in §§ 10.22–10.24, 10.31–10.40, 10.47–10.57, 10.62–10.68, 10.77, 10.78, 10.84, 10.85, 10.87–10.89, 10.92, 10.93, 10.101–10.103, 10.111, and 10.112. Disciplinary Rules are mandatory in character and state the minimum level of conduct below which no practitioner can fall without being subjected to disciplinary action.

§ 10.21  Canon 1.

A practitioner should assist in maintaining the integrity and competence of the legal profession.

§ 10.22  Maintaining integrity and competence of the legal profession.

(a) A practitioner is subject to discipline if the practitioner has made a materially false statement in, or if the practitioner has deliberately failed to disclose a material fact requested in connection with, the practitioner’s application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court or any State court or his or her authority to otherwise practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(b) A practitioner shall not further the application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court, State court, or administrative agency of another person known by the practitioner to be unqualified in respect to character, education, or other relevant attribute.

§ 10.23  Misconduct.

(a) A practitioner shall not engage in disreputable or gross misconduct.
(b) A practitioner shall not:
(1) Violate a Disciplinary Rule.
(2) Circumvent a Disciplinary Rule through actions of another.
(3) Engage in illegal conduct involving moral turpitude.
(4) Engage in conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, deceit, or misrepresentation.
(5) Engage in conduct that is prejudicial to the administration of justice.
(6) Engage in any other conduct that adversely reflects on the practitioner’s fitness to practice before the Office.
(c) Conduct which constitutes a violation of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section includes, but is not limited to:
(1) Conviction of a criminal offense involving moral turpitude, dishonesty, or breach of trust.
(2) Knowingly giving false or misleading information or knowingly participating in a material way in giving false or misleading information, to:
(i) A client in connection with any immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.
(ii) The Office or any employee of the Office.
(3) Misappropriation of, or failure to properly or timely remit, funds received by a practitioner or the practitioner’s firm from a client to pay a fee which the client is required by law to pay to the Office.
(4) Directly or indirectly improperly influencing, attempting to improperly influence, offering or agreeing to improperly influence, or attempting to offer or agree to improperly influence an official action of any employee of the Office by:
(i) Use of threats, false accusations, duress, or coercion,
(ii) An offer of any special inducement or promise of advantage, or
(iii) Improperly bestowing of any gift, favor, or thing of value.
(5) Suspension or disbarment from practice as an attorney or agent on ethical grounds by any duly constituted authority of a State or the...
(1) Knowingly failing to advise the Director in writing of any change which would preclude continued registration under §10.6.

(2) Signing a paper filed in the Office in violation of the provisions of §10.18 or making a scandalous or indecent statement in a paper filed in the Office.

(3) Willfully refusing to reveal or report knowledge or evidence to the Director contrary to §10.24 or paragraph (b) of §10.131.

(4) Representing before the Office in a patent case either a joint venture comprising an inventor and an invention developer or an inventor referred to the registered practitioner by an invention developer when (i) the registered practitioner knows, or has been advised by the Office, that a formal complaint filed by a Federal or State agency, based on any violation of any law relating to securities, unfair methods of competition, unfair or deceptive acts or practices, mail fraud, or other civil or criminal conduct, is pending before a Federal or State court or Federal or State agency, or has been resolved unfavorably by such court or agency, against the invention developer in connection with invention development services and (ii) the registered practitioner fails to fully advise the inventor of the existence of the pending complaint or unfavorable resolution thereof prior to undertaking or continuing representation of the joint venture or inventor. “Invention developer” means any person, and any agent, employee, officer, partner, or independent contractor thereof, who is not a registered practitioner and who advertises invention development services in media of general circulation or who enters into contracts for invention development services with customers as a result of such advertisement. “Invention development services” means acts of invention development required or promised to be performed, or actually performed, or both, by an invention developer for a customer. “Invention development” means the evaluation, perfection, marketing, brokering, or promotion of an invention on behalf of a customer by an invention developer, including a patent search, preparation of a patent application, or any
§ 10.24 Disclosure of information to authorities.

(a) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge of a violation of a Disciplinary Rule shall report such knowledge to the Director.

(b) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge or evidence concerning another practitioner, employee of the Office, or a judge shall reveal fully such knowledge or evidence upon proper request of a tribunal or other authority empowered to investigate or act upon the conduct of practitioners, employees of the Office, or judges.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0017)

§§ 10.25–10.29 [Reserved]

§ 10.30 Canon 2.

A practitioner should assist the legal profession in fulfilling its duty to make legal counsel available.

§ 10.31 Communications concerning a practitioner’s services.

(a) No practitioner shall with respect to any prospective business before the Office, by word, circular, letter, or advertising, with intent to defraud in any manner, deceive, mislead, or threaten any prospective applicant or other person having immediate or prospective business before the Office.

(b) A practitioner may not use the name of a Member of either House of Congress or of an individual in the service of the United States in advertising the practitioner’s practice before the Office.

(c) Unless authorized under § 10.14(b), a non-lawyer practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(d) Unless a practitioner is an attorney, the practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice before the Office in non-patent and trademark cases.

§ 10.32 Advertising.

(a) Subject to §10.31, a practitioner may advertise services through public media, including a telephone directory,
Patent and Trademark Office, Commerce

§ 10.36 Fees for legal services.

(a) A practitioner shall not enter into an agreement for, charge, or collect an illegal or clearly excessive fee.

(b) A fee is clearly excessive when, after a review of the facts, a practitioner of ordinary prudence would be left with a definite and firm conviction that the fee is in excess of a reasonable fee. Factors to be considered as guides in determining the reasonableness of a fee include the following:

1. The time and labor required, the novelty and difficulty of the questions involved, and the skill requisite to perform the legal service properly.

2. The likelihood, if apparent to the client, that the acceptance of the particular employment will preclude other employment by the practitioner.

3. The fee customarily charged for similar legal services.

4. The amount involved and the results obtained.

5. The time limitations imposed by the client or by the circumstances.

6. The nature and length of the professional relationship with the client.

7. The experience, reputation, and ability of the practitioner or practitioners performing the services.

8. Whether the fee is fixed or contingent.

§ 10.35 Firm names and letterheads.

(a) A practitioner shall not use a firm name, letterhead, or other professional designation that violates §10.31. A trade name may be used by a practitioner in private practice if it does not imply a current connection with a government agency or with a public or charitable legal services organization and is not otherwise in violation of §10.31.

(b) Practitioners may state or imply that they practice in a partnership or other organization only when that is the fact.

§ 10.34 Communication of fields of practice.

A registered practitioner may state or imply that the practitioner is a specialist as follows:


(b) A registered practitioner who is not an attorney may use the designation "Patents," "Patent Agent," "Registered Patent Agent," or a substantially similar designation, except that any practitioner who was registered prior to November 15, 1938, may refer to himself or herself as a "patent attorney."

§ 10.33 Direct contact with prospective clients.

A practitioner may not solicit professional employment from a prospective client with whom the practitioner has no family or prior professional relationship, by mail, in-person or otherwise, when a significant motive for the practitioner's doing so is the practitioner's pecuniary gain under circumstances evidencing undue influence, intimidation, or overreaching. The term "solicit" includes contact in person, by telephone or telegraph, by letter or other writing, or by other communication directed to a specific recipient, but does not include letters addressed or advertising circulars distributed generally to persons not specifically known to need legal services of the kind provided by the practitioner in a particular matter, but who are so situated that they might in general find such services useful.

§ 10.32 Legal directory, newspaper, or other periodical, radio, or television, or through written communications not involving solicitation as defined by §10.33.

(b) A practitioner shall not give anything of value to a person for recommending the practitioner's services, except that a practitioner may pay the reasonable cost of advertising or written communication permitted by this section and may pay the usual charges of a not-for-profit lawyer referral service or other legal service organization.

(c) Any communication made pursuant to this section shall include the name of at least one practitioner responsible for its content.

§ 10.31 Solicitation.

A practitioner shall not solicit professional employment from a prospective client with whom the practitioner has no family or prior professional relationship, by mail, in-person or otherwise, when a significant motive for the practitioner's doing so is the practitioner's pecuniary gain under circumstances evidencing undue influence, intimidation, or overreaching.

The term "solicit" includes contact in person, by telephone or telegraph, by letter or other writing, or by other communication directed to a specific recipient, but does not include letters addressed or advertising circulars distributed generally to persons not specifically known to need legal services of the kind provided by the practitioner in a particular matter, but who are so situated that they might in general find such services useful.
§ 10.37 Division of fees among practitioners.

(a) A practitioner shall not divide a fee for legal services with another practitioner who is not a partner in or associate of the practitioner's law firm or law office, unless:

(1) The client consents to employment of the other practitioner after a full disclosure that a division of fees will be made.

(2) The division is made in proportion to the services performed and responsibility assumed by each.

(3) The total fee of the practitioners does not clearly exceed reasonable compensation for all legal services rendered to the client.

(b) This section does not prohibit payment to a former partner or associate pursuant to a separation or retirement agreement.

§ 10.38 Agreements restricting the practice of a practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall not be a party to or participate in a partnership or employment agreement with another practitioner that restricts the right of a practitioner to practice before the Office after the termination of a relationship created by the agreement, except as a condition to payment of retirement benefits.

(b) In connection with the settlement of a controversy or suit, a practitioner shall not enter into an agreement that restricts the practitioner's right to practice before the Office.

§ 10.39 Acceptance of employment.

A practitioner shall not accept employment on behalf of a person if the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such person wishes to:

(a) Bring a legal action, commence a proceeding before the Office, conduct a defense, assert a position in any proceeding pending before the Office, or otherwise have steps taken for the person, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any other person.

(b) Present a claim or defense in litigation or any proceeding before the Office that is not warranted under existing law, unless it can be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law.

§ 10.40 Withdrawal from employment.

(a) A practitioner shall not withdraw from employment in a proceeding before the Office without permission from the Office (see §§1.36 and 2.19 of this subchapter). In any event, a practitioner shall not withdraw from employment until the practitioner has taken reasonable steps to avoid foreseeable prejudice to the rights of the client, including giving due notice to his or her client, allowing time for employment of another practitioner, delivering to the client all papers and property to which the client is entitled, and complying with applicable laws and rules. A practitioner who withdraws from employment shall refund promptly any part of a fee paid in advance that has not been earned.

(b) Mandatory withdrawal. A practitioner representing a client before the Office shall withdraw from employment if:

(1) The practitioner knows or it is obvious that the client is bringing a legal action, commencing a proceeding before the Office, conducting a defense, or asserting a position in litigation or any proceeding pending before the Office, or is otherwise having steps taken for the client, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any person;

(2) The practitioner knows or it is obvious that the practitioner's continued employment will result in violation of a Disciplinary Rule;

(3) The practitioner's mental or physical condition renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively; or

(4) The practitioner is discharged by the client.

(c) Permissive withdrawal. If paragraph (b) of this section is not applicable, a practitioner may not request permission to withdraw in matters pending before the Office unless such request or such withdrawal is because:

(1) The petitioner's client:

(i) Insists upon presenting a claim or defense that is not warranted under existing law and cannot be supported by good faith argument for an extension,
Patent and Trademark Office, Commerce § 10.57

modification, or reversal of existing law;
(ii) Personally seeks to pursue an illegal course of conduct;
(iii) Insists that the practitioner pursue a course of conduct that is illegal or that is prohibited under a Disciplinary Rule;
(iv) By other conduct renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;
(v) Insists, in a matter not pending before a tribunal, that the practitioner engage in conduct that is contrary to the judgment and advice of the practitioner but not prohibited under the Disciplinary Rule or
(vi) Has failed to pay one or more bills rendered by the practitioner for an unreasonable period of time or has failed to honor an agreement to pay a retainer in advance of the performance of legal services.
(2) The practitioner’s continued employment is likely to result in a violation of a Disciplinary Rule;
(3) The practitioner’s inability to work with co-counsel indicates that the best interests of the client likely will be served by withdrawal;
(4) The practitioner’s mental or physical condition renders it difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;
(5) The practitioner’s client knowingly and freely assents to termination of the employment; or
(6) The practitioner believes in good faith, in a proceeding pending before the Office, that the Office will find the existence of other good cause for withdrawal.

§§ 10.41–10.45 [Reserved]

§ 10.46  Canon 3.
A practitioner should assist in preventing the unauthorized practice of law.

§ 10.47 Aiding unauthorized practice of law.
(a) A practitioner shall not aid a non-practitioner in the unauthorized practice of law before the Office.
(b) A practitioner shall not aid a suspended or excluded practitioner in the practice of law before the Office.
(c) A practitioner shall not aid a non-lawyer in the unauthorized practice of law.

§ 10.48 Sharing legal fees.
A practitioner or a firm of practitioners shall not share legal fees with a non-practitioner except that:
(a) An agreement by a practitioner with the practitioner’s firm, partner, or associate may provide for the payment of money, over a reasonable period of time after the practitioner’s death, to the practitioner’s estate or to one or more specified persons.
(b) A practitioner who undertakes to complete unfinished legal business of a deceased practitioner may pay to the estate of the deceased practitioner that proportion of the total compensation which fairly represents the services rendered by the deceased practitioner.
(c) A practitioner or firm of practitioners may include non-practitioner employees in a compensation or retirement plan, even though the plan is based in whole or in part on a profit-sharing arrangement, providing such plan does not circumvent another Disciplinary Rule.

§ 10.49 Forming a partnership with a non-practitioner.
A practitioner shall not form a partnership with a non-practitioner if any of the activities of the partnership consist of the practice of patent, trademark, or other law before the Office.

§§ 10.50–10.55 [Reserved]

§ 10.56  Canon 4.
A practitioner should preserve the confidences and secrets of a client.

§ 10.57 Preservation of confidences and secrets of a client.
(a) “Confidence” refers to information protected by the attorney-client or agent-client privilege under applicable law. “Secret” refers to other information gained in the professional relationship that the client has requested be held inviolate or the disclosure of which would be embarrassing or would be likely to be detrimental to the client.
(b) Except when permitted under paragraph (c) of this section, a practitioner shall not knowingly:

1. Reveal a confidence or secret of a client.
2. Use a confidence or secret of a client to the disadvantage of the client.
3. Use a confidence or secret of a client for the advantage of the practitioner or of a third person, unless the client consents after full disclosure.

(c) A practitioner may reveal:

1. Confidences or secrets with the consent of the client affected but only after a full disclosure to the client.
2. Confidences or secrets when permitted under Disciplinary Rules or required by law or court order.
3. The intention of a client to commit a crime and the information necessary to prevent the crime.
4. Confidences or secrets necessary to establish or collect the practitioner's fee or to defend the practitioner or the practitioner's employees or associates against an accusation of wrongful conduct.

(d) A practitioner shall exercise reasonable care to prevent the practitioner's employees, associates, and others whose services are utilized by the practitioner from disclosing or using confidences or secrets of a client, except that a practitioner may reveal the information allowed by paragraph (c) of this section through an employee.

§§ 10.58-10.60 [Reserved]

§ 10.61 Canon 5.

A practitioner should exercise independent professional judgment on behalf of a client.

§ 10.62 Refusing employment when the interest of the practitioner may impair the practitioner's independent professional judgment.

(a) Except with the consent of a client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not accept employment if the exercise of the practitioner's professional judgment on behalf of the client will be or reasonably may be affected by the practitioner's own financial, business, property, or personal interests.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept employment in a proceeding before the Office if the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness, except that the practitioner may undertake the employment and the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may testify:

1. If the testimony will relate solely to an uncontested matter.
2. If the testimony will relate solely to a matter of formality and there is no reason to believe that substantial evidence will be offered in opposition to the testimony.
3. If the testimony will relate solely to the nature and value of legal services rendered in the case by the practitioner or the practitioner's firm to the client.
4. As to any matter, if refusal would work a substantial hardship on the client because of the distinctive value of the practitioner or the practitioner's firm as counsel in the particular case.

§ 10.63 Withdrawal when the practitioner becomes a witness.

(a) If, after undertaking employment in a proceeding in the Office, a practitioner learns or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness on behalf of a practitioner's client, the practitioner shall withdraw from the conduct of the proceeding and the practitioner's firm, if any, shall not continue representation in the proceeding, except that the practitioner may continue the representation until it is apparent that the practitioner's affidavit or testimony is or may be prejudicial to the practitioner's client.
§ 10.64 Avoiding acquisition of interest in litigation or proceeding before the Office.

(a) A practitioner shall not acquire a proprietary interest in the subject matter of a proceeding before the Office which the practitioner is conducting for a client, except that the practitioner may:
   (1) Acquire a lien granted by law to secure the practitioner's fee or expenses; or
   (2) Contract with a client for a reasonable contingent fee; or
   (3) In a patent case, take an interest in the patent as part or all of his or her fee.

(b) While representing a client in connection with a contemplated or pending proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not advance or guarantee financial assistance to a client, except that a practitioner may advance or guarantee the expenses of going forward in a proceeding before the Office including fees required by law to be paid to the Office, expenses of investigation, expenses of medical examination, and costs of obtaining and presenting evidence, provided the client remains ultimately liable for such expenses. A practitioner may, however, advance any fee required to prevent or remedy an abandonment of a client's application by reason of an act or omission attributable to the practitioner and not to the client, whether or not the client is ultimately liable for such fee.

§ 10.65 Limiting business relations with a client.

A practitioner shall not enter into a business transaction with a client if they have differing interests therein and if the client expects the practitioner to exercise professional judgment therein for the protection of the client, unless the client has consented after full disclosure.

§ 10.66 Refusing to accept or continue employment if the interests of another client may impair the independent professional judgment of the practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall decline proffered employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the acceptance of the proffered employment, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) A practitioner shall not continue multiple employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the practitioner's representation of another client, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) In the situations covered by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section a practitioner may represent multiple clients if it is obvious that the practitioner can adequately represent the interest of each and if each consents to the representation after full disclosure of the possible effect of such representation on the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment on behalf of each.

(d) If a practitioner is required to decline employment or to withdraw from employment under a Disciplinary Rule, no partner, or associate, or any other practitioner affiliated with the practitioner or the practitioner's firm, may accept or continue such employment unless otherwise ordered by the Director or Commissioner.

§ 10.67 Settling similar claims of clients.

A practitioner who represents two or more clients shall not make or participate in the making of an aggregate settlement of the claims of or against the practitioner's clients, unless each client has consented to the settlement after being advised of the existence and nature of all the claims involved in the proposed settlement, of the total amount of the settlement, and of the participation of each person in the settlement.
§ 10.68 Avoiding influence by others than the client.
(a) Except with the consent of the practitioner's client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not:
(1) Accept compensation from one other than the practitioner's client for the practitioner's legal services to or for the client.
(2) Accept from one other than the practitioner's client any thing of value related to the practitioner's representation of or the practitioner's employment by the client.
(b) A practitioner shall not permit a person who recommends, employs, or pays the practitioner to render legal services for another, to direct or regulate the practitioner's professional judgment in rendering such legal services.
(c) A practitioner shall not practice with or in the form of a professional corporation or association authorized to practice law for a profit, if a non-practitioner has the right to direct or control the professional judgment of a practitioner.

§§ 10.69-10.75 [Reserved]

§ 10.76 Canon 6.
A practitioner should represent a client competently.

§ 10.77 Failing to act competently.
A practitioner shall not:
(a) Handle a legal matter which the practitioner knows or should know that the practitioner is not competent to handle, without associating with the practitioner another practitioner who is competent to handle it.
(b) Handle a legal matter without preparation adequate in the circumstances.
(c) Neglect a legal matter entrusted to the practitioner.

§ 10.78 Limiting liability to client.
A practitioner shall not attempt to exonerate himself or herself from, or limit his or her liability to, a client for his or her personal malpractice.

§§ 10.79–10.82 [Reserved]

§ 10.83 Canon 7.
A practitioner should represent a client zealously within the bounds of the law.

§ 10.84 Representing a client zealously.
(a) A practitioner shall not intentionally:
(1) Fail to seek the lawful objectives of a client through reasonably available means permitted by law and the Disciplinary Rules, except as provided by paragraph (b) of this section. A practitioner does not violate the provisions of this section, however, by acceding to reasonable requests of opposing counsel which do not prejudice the rights of the client, by being punctual in fulfilling all professional commitments, by avoiding offensive tactics, or by treating with courtesy and consideration all persons involved in the legal process.
(2) Fail to carry out a contract of employment entered into with a client for professional services, but a practitioner may withdraw as permitted under §§10.40, 10.63, and 10.66.
(3) Prejudice or damage a client during the course of a professional relationship, except as required under this part.
(b) In representation of a client, a practitioner may:
(1) Where permissible, exercise professional judgment to waive or fail to assert a right or position of the client.
(2) Refuse to aid or participate in conduct that the practitioner believes to be unlawful, even though there is some support for an argument that the conduct is legal.

§ 10.85 Representing a client within the bounds of the law.
(a) In representation of a client, a practitioner shall not:
(1) Initiate or defend any proceeding before the Office, assert a position, conduct a defense, delay a trial or proceeding before the Office, or take other action on behalf of the practitioner's client when the practitioner knows or when it is obvious that such action
would serve merely to harass or malici-
ously injure another.

(2) Knowingly advance a claim or de-
fense that is unwarranted under exist-
ing law, except that a practitioner may
advance such claim or defense if it can
be supported by good faith argument
for an extension, modification, or re-
versal of existing law.

(3) Conceal or knowingly fail to dis-
close that which the practitioner is re-
quired by law to reveal.

(4) Knowingly use perjured testimony
or false evidence.

(5) Knowingly make a false state-
ment of law or fact.

(6) Participate in the creation or
preservation of evidence when the
practitioner knows or it is obvious that
the evidence is false.

(7) Counsel or assist a client in con-
duct that the practitioner knows to be
illegal or fraudulent.

(8) Knowingly engage in other illegal
conduct or conduct contrary to a Dis-
ciplinary Rule.

(b) A practitioner who receives infor-
mation clearly establishing that:

(1) A client has, in the course of the
representation, perpetrated a fraud
upon a person or tribunal shall promptly
call upon the client to rectify the
same, and if the client refuses or is un-
able to do so the practitioner shall re-
veal the fraud to the affected person or
tribunal.

(2) A person other than a client has
perpetrated a fraud upon a tribunal
shall promptly reveal the fraud to the
tribunal.

§ 10.90 [Reserved]

§ 10.87 Communicating with one of ad-
verse interest.

During the course of representation
of a client, a practitioner shall not:

(a) Communicate or cause another to
communicate on the subject of the rep-
resentation with a party the practi-
tioner knows to be represented by an-
other practitioner in that matter un-
less the practitioner has the prior con-
sent of the other practitioner rep-
resenting such other party or is au-
thorized by law to do so. It is not im-
proper, however, for a practitioner to
encourage a client to meet with an op-
posing party for settlement discus-
sions.

(b) Give advice to a person who is not
represented by a practitioner other
than the advice to secure counsel, if
the interests of such person are or have
a reasonable possibility of being in
conflict with the interests of the prac-
titioner’s client.

§ 10.88 Threatening criminal prosecu-
tion.

A practitioner shall not present, par-
ticipate in presenting, or threaten to
present criminal charges solely to ob-
tain an advantage in any prospective
or pending proceeding before the Of-

cine.

§ 10.89 Conduct in proceedings.

(a) A practitioner shall not disregard
or advise a client to disregard any pro-
vision of this Subchapter or a decision
of the Office made in the course of a
proceeding before the Office, but the
practitioner may take appropriate
steps in good faith to test the validity
of such provision or decision.

(b) In presenting a matter to the Of-
cine, a practitioner shall disclose:

(1) Controlling legal authority known
to the practitioner to be directly ad-
verse to the position of the client and
which is not disclosed by opposing
counsel or an employee of the Office.

(2) Unless privileged or irrelevant,
the identities of the client the practi-
tioner represents and of the persons
who employed the practitioner.

(c) In appearing in a professional ca-
pacity before a tribunal, a practitioner
shall not:

(1) State or allude to any matter that
the practitioner has no reasonable
basis to believe is relevant to the case
or that will not be supported by admis-
sible evidence.

(2) Ask any question that the practi-
tioner has no reasonable basis to be-
lieve is relevant to the case and that is
intended to degrade a witness or other
person.

(3) Assert the practitioner’s personal
knowledge of the facts in issue, except
when testifying as a witness.

(4) Assert the practitioner’s personal
opinion as to the justness of a cause, as
to the credibility of a witness, as to the
culpability of a civil litigant, or as to
the guilt or innocence of an accused;
but the practitioner may argue, on the
practitioner's analysis of the evidence, for any position or conclusion with respect to the matters stated herein.

(5) Engage in undignified or discourteous conduct before the Office (see §1.3 of the subchapter).

(6) Intentionally or habitually violate any provision of this subchapter or established rule of evidence.

§§ 10.90–10.91 [Reserved]

§ 10.92 Contact with witnesses.

(a) A practitioner shall not suppress any evidence that the practitioner or the practitioner's client has a legal obligation to reveal or produce.

(b) A practitioner shall not advise or cause a person to be secreted or to leave the jurisdiction of a tribunal for the purpose of making the person unavailable as a witness therein.

(c) A practitioner shall not pay, offer to pay, or acquiesce in the payment of compensation to a witness contingent upon the content of the witness' affidavit, testimony or the outcome of the case. But a practitioner may advance, guarantee, or acquiesce in the payment of:

(1) Expenses reasonably incurred by a witness in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.

(2) Reasonable compensation to a witness for the witness' loss of time in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.

(3) A reasonable fee for the professional services of an expert witness.

§ 10.93 Contact with officials.

(a) A practitioner shall not give or lend anything of value to a judge, official, or employee of a tribunal under circumstances which might give the appearance that the gift or loan is made to influence official action.

(b) In an adversary proceeding, including any inter partes proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not communicate, or cause another to communicate, as to the merits of the cause with a judge, official, or Office employee before whom the proceeding is pending, except:

(1) In the course of official proceedings in the cause.

(2) In writing if the practitioner promptly delivers a copy of the writing to opposing counsel or to the adverse party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.

(3) Orally upon adequate notice to opposing counsel or to the adverse party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.

(4) As otherwise authorized by law.

§§ 10.94–10.99 [Reserved]

§ 10.100 Canon 8.

A practitioner should assist in improving the legal system.

§ 10.101 Action as a public official.

(a) A practitioner who holds public office shall not:

(1) Use the practitioner's public position to obtain, or attempt to obtain, a special advantage in legislative matters for the practitioner or for a client under circumstances where the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such action is not in the public interest.

(2) Use the practitioner's public position to influence, or attempt to influence, a tribunal to act in favor of the practitioner or of a client.

(3) Accept any thing of value from any person when the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the offer is for the purpose of influencing the practitioner's action as a public official.

(b) A practitioner who is an officer or employee of the United States shall not practice before the Office in patent cases except as provided in §10.10(c) and (d).


§ 10.102 Statements concerning officials.

(a) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false statements of fact concerning the qualifications of a candidate for election or appointment to a judicial office or to a position in the Office.

(b) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false accusations against a judge, other adjudicatory officer, or employee of the Office.
§ 10.103 Practitioner candidate for judicial office.

A practitioner who is a candidate for judicial office shall comply with applicable provisions of law.

§§ 10.104–10.109 [Reserved]

§ 10.110 Canon 9.

A practitioner should avoid even the appearance of professional impropriety.

§ 10.111 Avoiding even the appearance of impropriety.

(a) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter upon the merits of which he or she has acted in a judicial capacity.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter in which he or she had personal responsibility while a public employee.

(c) A practitioner shall not state or imply that the practitioner is able to influence improperly or upon irrelevant grounds any tribunal, legislative body, or public official.

§ 10.112 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.

(a) All funds of clients paid to a practitioner or a practitioner’s firm, other than advances for costs and expenses, shall be deposited in one or more identifiable bank accounts maintained in the United States or, in the case of a practitioner having an office in a foreign country or registered under §10.6(c), in the United States or the foreign country.

(b) No funds belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner’s firm shall be deposited in the bank accounts required by paragraph (a) of this section except as follows:

(1) Funds reasonably sufficient to pay bank charges may be deposited therein.

(2) Funds belonging in part to a client and in part presently or potentially to the practitioner or the practitioner’s firm must be deposited therein, but the portion belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner’s firm must be withdrawn when due unless the right of the practitioner or the practitioner’s firm to receive it is disputed by the client, in which event the disputed portion shall not be withdrawn until the dispute is finally resolved.

(c) A practitioner shall:

(1) Promptly notify a client of the receipt of the client’s funds, securities, or other properties.

(2) Identify and label securities and properties of a client promptly upon receipt and place them in a safe deposit box or other place of safekeeping as soon as practicable.

(3) Maintain complete records of all funds, securities, and other properties of a client coming into the possession of the practitioner and render appropriate accounts to the client regarding the funds, securities, or other properties.

(4) Promptly pay or deliver to the client as requested by a client the funds, securities, or other properties in the possession of the practitioner which the client is entitled to receive.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651-0017)

§§ 10.113–10.129 [Reserved]

INVESTIGATIONS AND DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

§ 10.130 Reprimand, suspension or exclusion.

(a) The Commissioner may, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, (1) reprimand or (2) suspend or exclude, either generally or in any particular case, any individual, attorney, or agent shown to be incompetent or disreputable, who is guilty of gross misconduct, or who violates a Disciplinary Rule.

(b) Petitions to disqualify a practitioner in ex parte or inter partes cases in the Office are not governed by §§10.130 through 10.170 and will be handled on a case-by-case basis under such conditions as the Commissioner deems appropriate.

§ 10.131 Investigations.

(a) The Director is authorized to investigate possible violations of Disciplinary Rules by practitioners. See §10.2(b)(2).

(b) Practitioners shall report and reveal to the Director any knowledge or
§ 10.132

Initiating a disciplinary proceeding; reference to an administrative law judge.

(a) If after conducting an investigation under § 10.131(a) the Director is of the opinion that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall, after complying where necessary with the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 558(c), call a meeting of the Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall then determine as specified in § 10.4(b) whether a disciplinary proceeding shall be instituted under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) If the Committee on Discipline determines that probable cause exists to believe that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall institute a disciplinary proceeding by filing a complaint under § 10.134. The complaint shall be filed in the Office of the Director. A disciplinary proceeding may result in:

1. A reprimand;
2. Suspension or exclusion of a practitioner from practice before the Office;
3. Upon the filing of a complaint under § 10.134, the Commissioner will refer the disciplinary proceeding to an administrative law judge.

§ 10.133

Conference between Director and practitioner; resignation.

(a) General. The Director may confer with a practitioner concerning possible violations by the practitioner of a Disciplinary Rule whether or not a disciplinary proceeding has been instituted.

(b) Resignation. Any practitioner who is the subject of an investigation under § 10.131 or against whom a complaint has been filed under § 10.134 may resign from practice before the Office only by submitting with the Director an affidavit stating his or her desire to resign.

(c) If filed prior to the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall state that:

1. The resignation is freely and voluntarily proffered;
2. The practitioner is not acting under duress or coercion from the Office;
3. The practitioner is fully aware of the implications of filing the resignation;
4. The practitioner is aware (i) of a pending investigation or (ii) of charges arising from the complaint alleging that he or she is guilty of a violation of the Patent and Trademark Office Code of Professional Responsibility, the nature of which shall be set forth by the practitioner to the satisfaction of the Director;
5. The practitioner acknowledges that, if and when he or she applies for reinstatement under § 10.160, the Director will conclusively presume, for the limited purpose of determining the application for reinstatement, that:
   (i) The facts upon which the complaint is based are true and
   (ii) The practitioner could not have successfully defended himself or herself against (A) charges predicated on the violation under investigation or (B) charges set out in the complaint filed against the practitioner.

(d) If filed on or after the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall make the statements required by paragraphs (b) (1) through (4) of this section and shall state that:

1. The practitioner acknowledges the facts upon which the complaint is based are true; and
2. The resignation is being submitted because the practitioner could not successfully defend himself or herself against (i) charges predicated on the violation under investigation or (ii) charges set out in the complaint.

(e) When an affidavit under paragraph (b) or (c) of this section is received while an investigation is pending, the Commissioner shall enter an order excluding the practitioner “on
§ 10.136  Answer to complaint.

(a) Time for answer. An answer to a complaint shall be filed within a time set in the complaint which shall be not less than thirty days.

(b) With whom filed. The answer shall be filed in writing with the administrative law judge. The time for filing an

§ 10.135 Service of complaint.

(a) A complaint may be served on a respondent in any of the following methods:

(1) By handing a copy of the complaint personally to the respondent, in which case the individual handing the complaint to the respondent shall file an affidavit with the Director indicating the time and place the complaint was handed to the respondent.

(2) By mailing a copy of the complaint by “Express Mail” or first-class mail to:

(i) A registered practitioner at the address for which separate notice was last received by the Director or

(ii) A non-registered practitioner at the last address for the respondent known to the Director.

(3) By any method mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent.

(b) If a complaint served by mail under paragraph (a)(2) of this section is returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall mail a second copy of the complaint to the respondent. If the second copy of the complaint is also returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall serve the respondent by publishing an appropriate notice in the Official Gazette for four consecutive weeks, in which case the time for answer shall be at least thirty days from the fourth publication of the notice.

(c) If a respondent is a registered practitioner, the Director may serve simultaneously with the complaint a letter under §10.11(b). The Director may require the respondent to answer the §10.11(b) letter within a period of not less than 15 days. An answer to the §10.11(b) letter shall constitute proof of service. If the respondent fails to answer the §10.11(b) letter, his or her name will be removed from the register as provided by §10.11(b).

(d) If the respondent is represented by an attorney under §10.140(a), a copy of the complaint shall also be served on the attorney.

§ 10.134 Complaint.

(a) A complaint instituting a disciplinary proceeding shall:

(1) Name the practitioner, who may then be referred to as the “respondent.”

(2) Give a plain and concise description of the alleged violations of the Disciplinary Rules by the practitioner.

(3) State the place and time for filing an answer by the respondent.

(4) State that a decision by default may be entered against the respondent if an answer is not timely filed.

(5) Be signed by the Director.

(6) A complaint will be deemed sufficient if it fairly informs the respondent of any violation of the Disciplinary Rules which form the basis for the disciplinary proceeding so that the respondent is able to adequately prepare a defense.

§ 10.135 Service of complaint.

(a) A complaint may be served on a respondent in any of the following methods:

(1) By handing a copy of the complaint personally to the respondent, in which case the individual handing the complaint to the respondent shall file an affidavit with the Director indicating the time and place the complaint was handed to the respondent.

(2) By mailing a copy of the complaint by “Express Mail” or first-class mail to:

(i) A registered practitioner at the address for which separate notice was last received by the Director or

(ii) A non-registered practitioner at the last address for the respondent known to the Director.

(3) By any method mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent.

(b) If a complaint served by mail under paragraph (a)(2) of this section is returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall mail a second copy of the complaint to the respondent. If the second copy of the complaint is also returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall serve the respondent by publishing an appropriate notice in the Official Gazette for four consecutive weeks, in which case the time for answer shall be at least thirty days from the fourth publication of the notice.

(c) If a respondent is a registered practitioner, the Director may serve simultaneously with the complaint a letter under §10.11(b). The Director may require the respondent to answer the §10.11(b) letter within a period of not less than 15 days. An answer to the §10.11(b) letter shall constitute proof of service. If the respondent fails to answer the §10.11(b) letter, his or her name will be removed from the register as provided by §10.11(b).

(d) If the respondent is represented by an attorney under §10.140(a), a copy of the complaint shall also be served on the attorney.

§ 10.136 Answer to complaint.

(a) Time for answer. An answer to a complaint shall be filed within a time set in the complaint which shall be not less than thirty days.

(b) With whom filed. The answer shall be filed in writing with the administrative law judge. The time for filing an
§ 10.137 Supplemental complaint.

False statements in an answer may be made the basis of a supplemental complaint.

§ 10.138 Contested case.

Upon the filing of an answer by the respondent, a disciplinary proceeding shall be regarded as a contested case within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 24. Evidence obtained by a subpoena issued under 35 U.S.C. 24 shall not be admitted into the record or considered unless leave to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 24 was previously authorized by the administrative law judge.

§ 10.139 Administrative law judge; appointment; responsibilities; review of interlocutory orders; stays.

(a) Appointment. An administrative law judge, appointed under 5 U.S.C. 3105, shall conduct disciplinary proceedings as provided by this part.

(b) Responsibilities. The administrative law judge shall have authority to:

(1) Administer oaths and affirmations;

(2) Make rulings upon motions and other requests;

(3) Rule upon offers of proof, receive relevant evidence, and examine witnesses;

(4) Authorize the taking of a deposition of a witness in lieu of personal appearance of the witness before the administrative law judge;

(5) Determine the time and place of any hearing and regulate its course and conduct;

(6) Hold or provide for the holding of conferences to settle or simplify the issues;

(7) Receive and consider oral or written arguments on facts or law;

(8) Adopt procedures and modify procedures from time to time as occasion requires for the orderly disposition of proceedings;

(9) Make initial decisions under §10.154; and

(10) Perform acts and take measures as necessary to promote the efficient and timely conduct of any disciplinary proceeding.

(c) Time for making initial decision. The administrative law judge shall set times and exercise control over a disciplinary proceeding such that an initial decision under §10.154 is normally issued within six months of the date a complaint is filed. The administrative law judge may, however, issue an initial decision more than six months after a complaint is filed if in his or her opinion there exist unusual circumstances which preclude issuance of an initial decision within six months of the filing of the complaint.

(d) Review of interlocutory orders. An interlocutory order of an administrative law judge will not be reviewed by the Commissioner except:
§ 10.142 Service of papers.

(a) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent represented by an attorney by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the office of the attorney; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or “Express Mail” to the attorney at the address provided by the attorney under § 10.140(a)(1); or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the attorney and a representative for the Director.

(b) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent who is not represented by an attorney by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the respondent; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or “Express Mail” to the respondent at the address to which a complaint may be served or such other address as may be designated in writing by the respondent; or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and a representative of the Director.

(c) A respondent shall serve on the representative for the Director, one copy of each paper filed with the administrative law judge or the Director. A paper may be served on the representative for the Director by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the representative; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or “Express Mail” to an
§ 10.143 Address.

Address designated in writing by the representative; or
(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and the representative.

(d) Each paper filed in a disciplinary proceeding shall contain therein a certificate of service indicating:
(1) The date on which service was made and
(2) The method by which service was made.

(e) The administrative law judge or the Commissioner may require that a paper be served by hand or by “Express Mail.”

(f) Service by mail is completed when the paper mailed in the United States is placed into the custody of the U.S. Postal Service.

§ 10.143 Motions.

Motions may be filed with the administrative law judge. The administrative law judge will determine on a case-by-case basis the time period for response to a motion and whether replies to responses will be authorized. No motion shall be filed with the administrative law judge unless such motion is supported by a written statement by the moving party that the moving party or attorney for the moving party has conferred with the opposing party or attorney for the opposing party in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion and has been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised by a motion are resolved by the parties prior to a decision on the motion by the administrative law judge, the parties shall promptly notify the administrative law judge.

§ 10.144 Hearings.

(a) The administrative law judge shall preside at hearings in disciplinary proceedings. Hearings will be stenographically recorded and transcribed and the testimony of witnesses will be received under oath or affirmation. The administrative law judge shall conduct hearings in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 556. A copy of the transcript of the hearing shall become part of the record. A copy of the transcript shall be provided to the Director and the respondent at the expense of the Office.

(b) If the respondent to a disciplinary proceeding fails to appear at the hearing after a notice of hearing has been given by the administrative law judge, the administrative law judge may deem the respondent to have waived the right to a hearing and may proceed with the hearing in the absence of the respondent.

(c) A hearing under this section will not be open to the public except that the Director may grant a request by a respondent to open his or her hearing to the public and make the record of the disciplinary proceeding available for public inspection, provided, Agreement is reached in advance to exclude from public disclosure information which is privileged or confidential under applicable laws or regulations. If a disciplinary proceeding results in disciplinary action against a practitioner, and subject to §10.159(c), the record of the entire disciplinary proceeding, including any settlement agreement, will be available for public inspection.

§ 10.145 Proof; variance; amendment of pleadings.

In case of a variance between the evidence and the allegations in a complaint, answer, or reply, if any, the administrative law judge may order or authorize amendment of the complaint, answer, or reply to conform to the evidence. Any party who would otherwise be prejudiced by the amendment will be given reasonable opportunity to meet the allegations in the complaint, answer, or reply, as amended, and the administrative law judge shall make findings on any issue presented by the complaint, answer, or reply as amended.

§§ 10.146–10.148 [Reserved]

§ 10.149 Burden of proof.

In a disciplinary proceeding, the Director shall have the burden of proving his or her case by clear and convincing evidence and a respondent shall have the burden of proving any affirmative defense by clear and convincing evidence.

§ 10.150 Evidence.

(a) Rules of evidence. The rules of evidence prevailing in courts of law and
Patent and Trademark Office, Commerce § 10.152

equity are not controlling in hearings in disciplinary proceedings. However, the administrative law judge shall exclude evidence which is irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitious.

(b) Depositions. Depositions of witnesses taken pursuant to § 10.151 may be admitted as evidence.

(c) Government documents. Official documents, records, and papers of the Office are admissible without extrinsic evidence of authenticity. These documents, records and papers may be evidenced by a copy certified as correct by an employee of the Office.

(d) Exhibits. If any document, record, or other paper is introduced in evidence as an exhibit, the administrative law judge may authorize the withdrawal of the exhibit subject to any conditions the administrative law judge deems appropriate.

(e) Objections. Objections to evidence will be in short form, stating the grounds of objection. Objections and rulings on objections will be a part of the record. No exception to the ruling is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties.

§ 10.151 Depositions.

(a) Depositions for use at the hearing in lieu of personal appearance of a witness before the administrative law judge may be taken by respondent or the Director upon a showing of good cause and with the approval of, and under such conditions as may be deemed appropriate by, the administrative law judge. Depositions may be taken upon oral or written questions, upon not less than ten days written notice to the other party, before any officer authorized to administer an oath or affirmation in the place where the deposition is to be taken. The requirement of ten days notice may be waived by the parties and depositions may then be taken of a witness and at a time and place mutually agreed to by the parties. When a deposition is taken upon written questions, copies of the written questions will be served upon the other party with the notice and copies of any written cross-questions will be served by hand or “Express Mail” not less than five days before the date of the taking of the deposition unless the parties mutually agree otherwise. A party on whose behalf a deposition is taken shall file a copy of a transcript of the deposition signed by a court reporter with the administrative law judge and shall serve one copy upon the opposing party. Expenses for a court reporter and preparing, serving, and filing depositions shall be borne by the party at whose instance the deposition is taken.

(b) When the Director and the respondent agree in writing, a deposition of any witness who will appear voluntarily may be taken under such terms and condition as may be mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent. The deposition shall not be filed with the administrative law judge and may not be admitted in evidence before the administrative law judge unless he or she orders the deposition admitted in evidence. The admissibility of the deposition shall lie within the discretion of the administrative law judge who may reject the deposition on any reasonable basis including the fact that demeanor is involved and that the witness should have been called to appear personally before the administrative law judge.

§ 10.152 Discovery.

Discovery shall not be authorized except as follows:

(a) After an answer is filed under § 10.136 and when a party establishes in a clear and convincing manner that discovery is necessary and relevant, the administrative law judge, under such conditions as he or she deems appropriate, may order an opposing party to:

(1) Answer a reasonable number of written requests for admission or interrogatories;

(2) Produce for inspection and copying a reasonable number of documents; and

(3) Produce for inspection a reasonable number of things other than documents.

(b) Discovery shall not be authorized under paragraph (a) of this section of any matter which:

(1) Will be used by another party solely for impeachment or cross-examination;

(2) Is not available to the party under 35 U.S.C. 122;
§ 10.153  Proposed findings and conclusions; post-hearing memorandum.

Except in cases when the respondent has failed to answer the complaint, the administrative law judge, prior to making an initial decision, shall afford the parties a reasonable opportunity to submit proposed findings and conclusions and a post-hearing memorandum in support of the proposed findings and conclusions.

§ 10.154  Initial decision of administrative law judge.

(a) The administrative law judge shall make an initial decision in the case. The decision will include (1) a statement of findings and conclusions, as well as the reasons or basis therefore with appropriate references to the record, upon all the material issues of fact, law, or discretion presented on the record, and (2) an order of suspension or exclusion from practice, an order of reprimand, or an order dismissing the complaint. The administrative law judge shall file the decision with the Director and shall transmit a copy to the representative of the Director and to the respondent. In the absence of an appeal to the Commissioner, the decision of the administrative law judge will, without further proceedings, become the decision of the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks thirty (30) days from the date of the decision of the administrative law judge.

(b) The initial decision of the administrative law judge shall explain the reason for any penalty or reprimand, suspension or exclusion. In determining any penalty, the following should normally be considered:

(1) The public interest;
(2) The seriousness of the violation of the Disciplinary Rule;
(3) The deterrent effects deemed necessary;
(4) The integrity of the legal profession; and
§ 10.155 Appeal to the Commissioner.

(a) Within thirty (30) days from the date of the initial decision of the administrative law judge under §10.154, either party may appeal to the Commissioner. If an appeal is taken, the time for filing a cross-appeal expires 14 days after the date of service of the appeal pursuant to §10.142 or 30 days after the date of initial decision of the administrative law judge, whichever is later. An appeal or cross-appeal by the respondent will be filed and served with the Director in duplicate and will include exceptions to the decisions of the administrative law judge and supporting reasons for those exceptions. If the Director files the appeal or cross-appeal, the Director shall serve on the other party a copy of the appeal or cross-appeal. The other party to an appeal or cross-appeal may file a reply brief. A respondent's reply brief shall be filed and served in duplicate with the Director. The time for filing any reply brief expires thirty (30) days after the date of service pursuant to §10.142 of an appeal, cross-appeal or copy thereof. If the Director files a reply brief, the Director shall serve on the other party a copy of the reply brief. Upon the filing of an appeal, cross-appeal, or reply briefs, if any, the Director shall transmit the entire record to the Commissioner.

(b) The appeal will be decided by the Commissioner on the record made before the administrative law judge.

(c) The Commissioner may order reopening of a disciplinary proceeding in accordance with the principles which govern the granting of new trials. Any request to reopen a disciplinary proceeding on the basis of newly discovered evidence must demonstrate that the newly discovered evidence could not have been discovered by due diligence.

(d) In the absence of an appeal by the Director, failure by the respondent to appeal under the provisions of this section shall be deemed to be both acceptance by the respondent of the initial decision and waiver by the respondent of the right to further administrative or judicial review.

§ 10.156 Decision of the Commissioner.

(a) An appeal from an initial decision of the administrative law judge shall be decided by the Commissioner. The Commissioner may affirm, reverse or modify the initial decision or remand the matter to the administrative law judge for such further proceedings as the Commissioner may deem appropriate. Subject to paragraph (c) of this section, a decision by the Commissioner does not become a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding until 20 days after it is entered. In making a final decision, the Commissioner shall review the record or those portions of the record as may be cited by the parties in order to limit the issues. The Commissioner shall transmit a copy of the final decision to the Director and to the respondent.

(b) A final decision of the Commissioner may dismiss a disciplinary proceeding, reprimand a practitioner, or may suspend or exclude the practitioner from practice before the Office.

(c) A single request for reconsideration or modification of the Commissioner's decision may be made by the respondent or the Director if filed within 20 days from the date of entry of the decision. Such a request shall have the effect of staying the effective date of the decision. The decision by the Commissioner on the request is a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding and is effective on its date of entry.

§ 10.157 Review of Commissioner's final decision.

(a) Review of the Commissioner's final decision in a disciplinary case may be had, subject to §10.155(d), by a petition filed in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia. See 35 U.S.C. 32 and Local Rule 213 of the United States District Court for the District of Columbia.
§ 10.158 Suspended or excluded practitioner.

(a) A practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under §10.156(b) shall not engage in unauthorized practice of patent, trademark and other non-patent law before the Office.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner, any practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under §10.156(b) shall:

(1) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, notify all bars of which he or she is a member and all clients of the practitioner for whom he or she is handling matters before the Office in separate written communications of the suspension or exclusion and shall file a copy of each written communication with the Director.

(2) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, surrender a client's active Office case files to (i) the client or (ii) another practitioner designated by the client.

(3) Not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice law before the Office.

(4) Promptly take any necessary and appropriate steps to remove from any telephone, legal, or other directory any advertisement, statement, or representation which would reasonably suggest that the practitioner is authorized to practice law before the Office.

(5) Not advertise the practitioner's availability or ability to perform or render legal services for any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.

(6) Not render legal services to any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office as to that business.

(b) The Commissioner may stay a final decision pending review of the Commissioner's final decision.

Patent and Trademark Office, Commerce § 10.160

intends to call as a witness in any proceeding before the Office. The term “witness” includes individuals who will testify orally in a proceeding before, or sign an affidavit or any other document to be filed in, the Office.

(d) When a suspended or excluded practitioner acts as a para-legal or performs services under paragraph (c) of this section, the suspended or excluded practitioner shall not thereafter be reinstated to practice before the Office unless:

1. The suspended or excluded practitioner shall have filed with the Director an affidavit which (i) explains in detail the precise nature of all para-legal or other services performed by the suspended or excluded practitioner and (ii) shows by clear and convincing evidence that the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of this section and all Disciplinary Rules, and
2. The other practitioner shall have filed with the Director a written statement which shows that the other practitioner has read the affidavit required by subparagraph (d)(1) of this section and that the other practitioner believes every statement in the affidavit to be true and (ii) states why the other practitioner believes the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with paragraph (c) of this section.

§ 10.159 Notice of suspension or exclusion.

(a) Upon issuance of a final decision reprimanding a practitioner or suspending or excluding a practitioner from practice before the Office, the Director shall give notice of the final decision to appropriate employees of the Office and to interested departments, agencies, and courts of the United States. The Director shall also give notice to appropriate authorities of any State in which a practitioner is known to be a member of the bar and any appropriate bar association.

(b) The Director shall cause to be published in the Official Gazette the name of any practitioner reprimanded by the Commissioner.

(c) The Director shall maintain records, which shall be available for public inspection, of every disciplinary proceeding where a practitioner is reprimanded, suspended, or excluded unless the Commissioner orders that the proceeding be kept confidential.

§ 10.160 Petition for reinstatement.

(a) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner suspended for a period of less than five years will not be considered until the period of suspension has passed.

(b) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner excluded from practice will not be considered until five years after the effective date of the exclusion.

(c) An individual who has resigned under §10.133 or who has been suspended or excluded may file a petition for reinstatement. The Director may grant a petition for reinstatement when the individual makes a clear and convincing showing that the individual will conduct himself or herself in accordance with the regulations of this part and that granting a petition for reinstatement is not contrary to the public interest. As a condition to reinstatement, the Director may require the individual to:

1. Meet the requirements of §10.7, including taking and passing an examination under §10.7(b) and
2. Pay all or a portion of the costs and expenses, not to exceed $1,500, of the disciplinary proceeding which led to suspension or exclusion.

(d) Any suspended or excluded practitioner who has violated the provisions of §10.158 during his or her period of suspension or exclusion shall not be entitled to reinstatement until such time as the Director is satisfied that a period of suspension equal in time to that ordered by the Commissioner or exclusion for five years has passed during which the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of §10.158.

(e) Proceedings on any petition for reinstatement shall be open to the public. Before reinstating any suspended or excluded practitioner, the Director shall publish in the Official Gazette the name of any practitioner reprimanded by the Commissioner.
§ 10.161 Savings clause.

(a) A disciplinary proceeding based on conduct engaged in prior to the effective date of these regulations may be instituted subsequent to such effective date, if such conduct would continue to justify suspension or exclusion under the provisions of this part.

(b) No practitioner shall be subject to a disciplinary proceeding under this part based on conduct engaged in before the effective date hereof if such conduct would not have been subject to disciplinary action before such effective date.

§ 10.170 Suspension of rules.

(a) In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of the regulations of this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner or the Commissioner’s designee, sua sponte, or on petition of any party, including the Director or the Director’s representative, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed.

(b) Any petition under this section will not stay a disciplinary proceeding unless ordered by the Commissioner or an administrative law judge.
INDEX III—RULES RELATING TO PRACTICE BEFORE
THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
EDITORIAL NOTE: This listing is provided for information purposes only. It is compiled and
kept up-to-date by the Department of Commerce.

Section

A
Address change .................................................................................................. 10.11
Advertising ............................................................................................... 10.31, 10.32
Agreements restricting practice ............................................................... 10.38
Aliens ........................................................................................................... 10.6, 10.9
Applicant for patent, representation of ..................................................... 1.31, 10.10
Applicant for trademark, representation of ........................................................ 2.11
Attorneys, recognition of to practice in trademark cases................................. 10.14
Attorneys, registration of to practice in patent cases........................................ 10.6, 10.7

B
Breach of trust ................................................................................................... 10.23
Business transactions or relations with client .............................................. 10.65

C
Candidate for judicial office ........................................................................ 10.103
Canons and Disciplinary Rules ................................................................ 10.20±10.112
Certificate of mailing ........................................................................ 1.8, 10.23, 10.141
Circumventing a disciplinary rule, amendment ............................................ 10.23
Code of Professional Responsibility ......................................................... 10.20±10.112
Coercion, use of ............................................................................................ 10.23
Committee on Discipline ............................................................................. 10.4
Committee on Enrollment ............................................................................. 10.3
Communicating with person having adverse interest .................................... 10.67
Communications concerning practitioner's service ...................................... 10.31
Compensation for legal services ................................................................ 10.68
Competence .............................................................................................. 10.76, 10.77
Concealment of material information ........................................................ 10.23
Conduct in proceeding before Office .......................................................... 10.89
Conduct prejudicial to the administration of justice ..................................... 10.23
Conflict of interest ....................................................................................... 10.66
Conviction of criminal offense .................................................................... 10.23

D
Deceit ................................................................................................................. 10.23
Decisions of the Commissioner .................................................................. 10.156, 10.157
Definitions:
Affidavit ......................................................................................................... 10.1
Agent .............................................................................................................. 10.6
Application .................................................................................................. 10.1
Canon ........................................................................................................... 10.20
Confidence .................................................................................................... 10.57
Differing interests.......................................................................................................................... 10.1
Director of Enrollment and Discipline........................................................................................................ 10.1
Disciplinary rule........................................................................................................................................ 10.2
Employee of a tribunal............................................................................................................................... 10.1
Excessive legal fees................................................................................................................................... 10.36
Excluded practitioner................................................................................................................................. 10.1
Giving information....................................................................................................................................... 10.1
Invention development services.................................................................................................................. 10.23
Law firm................................................................................................................................................... 10.1
Lawyer....................................................................................................................................................... 10.1
Legal counsel............................................................................................................................................ 10.1
Legal profession......................................................................................................................................... 10.1
Legal service............................................................................................................................................. 10.1
Legal system............................................................................................................................................... 10.1
Non-practitioner........................................................................................................................................ 10.1
Office........................................................................................................................................................ 10.1
Person....................................................................................................................................................... 10.1
Practitioner................................................................................................................................................ 10.1
Proceeding before the Office...................................................................................................................... 10.1
Professional legal corporation.................................................................................................................... 10.1
Registration............................................................................................................................................... 10.1
Respondent................................................................................................................................................ 10.134
Secret....................................................................................................................................................... 10.33, 10.57
Service of Process...................................................................................................................................... 15.2
State.......................................................................................................................................................... 10.1
Suspended practitioner.............................................................................................................................. 10.1
Testimony by employees............................................................................................................................. 15.2
Tribunal..................................................................................................................................................... 10.1
United States........................................................................................................................................... 10.1
Designation as registered attorney or agent............................................................................................... 10.34
Direct contact with prospective clients...................................................................................................... 10.33
Director of Enrollment and Discipline:
Appointment............................................................................................................................................. 10.2
Duties.......................................................................................................................................................... 10.2
Review of decisions of the Director........................................................................................................... 10.2
Disbarment from practice on ethical grounds............................................................................................ 10.130
Discharge of attorney or agent by client.................................................................................................... 10.40
Disciplinary Proceedings and Investigations:
Administrative Law Judge.......................................................................................................................... 10.139
Administrative Procedures Act.................................................................................................................. 10.132, 10.144
Review of interlocutory orders by Administrative Law Judge..................................................................... 10.139
Amendment of complaint............................................................................................................................. 10.145
Amendment of pleadings............................................................................................................................. 10.145
Answer to complaint.................................................................................................................................. 10.146
Appeal of initial decision of Administrative Law Judge............................................................................. 10.135
Burden of proof......................................................................................................................................... 10.149
Certificate of mailing.................................................................................................................................. 1.8, 10.141
Complaint................................................................................................................................................ 10.134
Contested case......................................................................................................................................... 10.138
Deliberations of Committee on Discipline.................................................................................................. 10.4
Discovery (see also Discovery in Disciplinary Proceedings)...................................................................... 10.152
Exception to ruling..................................................................................................................................... 10.150
Filing papers after complaint filed............................................................................................................. 10.141
Hearings before Administrative Law Judge .............................................................................................. 10.134
Initial decision of Administrative Law Judge............................................................................................ 10.139, 10.154
Initiating disciplinary proceeding............................................................................................................. 10.152
Investigations of violations of disciplinary rules...................................................................................... 10.131
Notice of suspension or exclusion of practitioner...................................................................................... 10.159
Index III

Objections to evidence ................................................................. 10.150
Post hearing memorandum ......................................................... 10.159
Pre-hearing statement ................................................................. 10.159
Reinstatement of suspended or excluded practitioner ................. 10.160
Reprimand of registered attorney or agent ...................................... 10.130, 10.132
Resignation of practitioner ............................................................ 10.133
Review of Commissioner's final decision ........................................ 10.157
Review of decision denying reinstatement of practitioner ........... 10.2
Savings clause ............................................................................. 10.161
Service of complaint .................................................................. 10.135
Settlement of complaint ............................................................... 10.133
Stay pending review of interlocutory order .................................... 10.139
Supplemental complaint .............................................................. 10.137
Disciplinary rule violation, disclosure of ........................................ 10.23, 10.24, 10.84, 10.85, 10.131
Discourteous conduct .................................................................. 10.89
Discovery in Disciplinary Proceedings:
Copying of documents ................................................................ 10.152
Cross-examination ..................................................................... 10.152
Deliberations of Committee on Enrollment .................................. 10.4
Depositions .................................................................................. 10.151
Evidence ..................................................................................... 10.150, 10.152
Impeachment ............................................................................... 10.152
Inspection of documents ................................................................ 10.152
Interrogatories ........................................................................... 10.152
Motions filed with Administrative Law Judge ............................... 10.143, 10.152
Privileged information ................................................................ 10.152
Undue delay in proceedings ....................................................... 10.152
Division of legal fees ................................................................... 10.37
Dues, use of .................................................................................. 10.23
Duty to make counsel available .................................................... 10.30

E

Employee testimony (See Testimony by Office employee)
Employment:
Acceptance ................................................................................ 10.39
Failure to carry out contract ........................................................ 10.84
Refusing employment .................................................................. 10.62, 10.63
Withdrawal from employment ..................................................... 10.40, 10.63
Exception to ruling ....................................................................... 10.151
Excessive legal fees ..................................................................... 10.36
Exclusion of practitioner .............................................................. 10.130, 10.132, 10.150

F

Failure to disclose material fact with regard to registration .............. 10.22
Failure to notify client .................................................................. 10.23
False accusations .......................................................................... 10.23
False statements concerning officials ........................................... 10.102
Favors, improperly bestowing ...................................................... 10.23
Fees:
In general ..................................................................................... 1.21
Petition to review decision of Director of Enrollment and Discipli- nes ................................................................................. 10.2
Registration ................................................................................ 10.8
Registration examination ............................................................ 10.7
Reinstatement ............................................................................... 10.11
Request regard of examination .................................................... 10.6
Fees for legal services ................................................................. 10.36
37 CFR (7-1-00 Edition)

Firm name, use of ................................................................. 10.35
Fitness to practice before the Office .............................................. 10.23
Foreigners .................................................................................. 10.6, 10.9, 10.14
Former Patent and Trademark Office employees ...................... 10.6, 10.23
Fraud or inequitable conduct ...................................................... 10.23, 10.65
Frivolous complaint ................................................................... 10.23
Funds of client, preserving identity of .............................................. 10.12

G
Gift, improperly bestowing .............................................................. 10.23
Government employees, registration of to practice in patent cases 10.10

I
Illegal conduct involving moral turpitude ......................................... 10.23
Illegal fees for services ................................................................. 10.36
Improper alteration of patent application ........................................ 10.23
Improper execution of oath or declaration ........................................ 10.23
Improper influence ....................................................................... 10.23
Improper signature ....................................................................... 10.23
Improperly bestowing thing of value .............................................. 10.23
Incompetence ................................................................................ 10.77, 10.78
Indecent statement, making of .................................................... 10.23
Indemnification, making of ........................................................... 10.68
Individual unqualified in respect to character, education, etc ........ 10.7, 10.22
Influence by others than client ..................................................... 10.68
Information precluding registration, failure to disclose .................. 10.23
Initial decision of Administrative Law Judge ............................... 10.139, 10.154
Integrity and competence of the legal profession, maintaining of 10.22
Interest in litigation or proceeding before Office, acquiring of .......... 10.64
Investigations of violations of disciplinary rules ......................... 10.131

J
Joint venture .................................................................................. 10.23
Judicial office, candidate for ......................................................... 10.103

L
Legal Fees:
Division of .................................................................................. 10.37
Failure to pay ................................................................................ 10.40
Sharing of ...................................................................................... 10.48
Letterheads, use of ....................................................................... 10.35
Limited recognition to practice in patent cases ............................. 10.35

M
Malpractice, limiting client’s liability ............................................ 10.78
Materially false statements in application for registration ................ 10.22
Misappropriation of funds ............................................................... 10.23
Misconduct .................................................................................... 10.23
Misrepresentations ....................................................................... 10.22, 10.23
Multiple employment .................................................................... 10.66

N
Neglecting legal matters ................................................................. 10.77
Index III

Non-practitioner, formation of partnership with .............................................. 10.49
Notice of suspension or exclusion .................................................................... 10.159

O

Oath requirement ................................................................................................10.8
Officials, contact with .......................................................................................10.93

P

Petitions:
Fees in general ................................................................................................. 1.21
Regrade of examination ...............................................................................10.7(c)
Reinstatement ............................................................................................... 10.160
Review decision of Commissioner ................................................................. 10.157
Review decision of Director of Enrollment and Discipline .............................. 10.2
Suspension of rules ........................................................................................10.170
Preserve secrets and confidence of client .................................................10.56, 10.57
Pro-se applicant ...........................................................................................1.31, 2.11
Professional impropriety, avoiding appearance of ..................................1.110, 10.111
Promise of advantage, offer of ......................................................................10.23
Property of client ..........................................................................................10.112
Proprietary interest in subject matter ................................................................10.64
Publication in Official Gazette ...................................................................... 10.11, 10.159, 10.160

R

Recognition to Practice Before the Patent and Trademark Office:
Agents ........................................................................................................... 10.6, 10.7, 10.14
Aliens ........................................................................................................... 10.6, 10.9, 10.14
Attorneys ....................................................................................................... 10.6, 10.7, 10.14
Change of address, requirement to notify Director ........................................ 10.11
Person not suspended or excluded ..................................................................10.2
Suspended or excluded practitioner ..............................................................10.160
Examination of registration in patent cases.................................................... 10.7
Examination fee ............................................................................................... 10.7
Foreigners ....................................................................................................... 10.6, 10.9, 10.14
Former Patent and Trademark Office employees ...................................... 10.10, 10.23
Government employees ............................................................................. 10.10, 10.23
Limited recognition in patent cases .............................................................. 10.9
Non-lawyers, recognition in trademark cases ................................................ 10.10
Patent cases ..................................................................................................... 10.6-10.10
Recognition for representation ...................................................................... 1.34, 2.17, 10.14
Recognition to practice ...................................................................................10.6-10.18
Refusal to recognize practitioner ................................................................... 10.15
Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases .............................................. 10.5
Registration fee ............................................................................................... 10.8
Registration number ....................................................................................... 1.34
Removal of attorneys and agents from the register ....................................... 10.11
Representation by registered attorney or agent in patent cases ...................... 1.31
Request for regrade of examination ................................................................ 10.6
Requirements for registration ......................................................................... 10.7
Review of Director's decision refusing registration ........................................ 10.2
Trademark cases ............................................................................................ 10.14
Unauthorized representation by an agent ..................................................... 10.10, 10.31
Records, property and funds of client, maintaining of .................................... 10.112
Reinstatement after removal from the register .............................................. 10.2, 10.11
Reinstatement of suspended or excluded non-practitioner ................................ 10.160
Representing client within bounds of the law ................................................ 10.85
Reprimand of registered attorney or agent ........................................... 10.130, 10.132
Resignation ............................................................................................. 10.133
Revocation of power of attorney in trademark case ................................... 2.19

S
Scandalous statements, making of ................................................................. 10.23
Secrets and confidence, preservation of clients ........................................... 10.56, 10.57
Service of process
   Acceptance of service of process .............................................................. 15.3
Definition
   Scope and purpose ...................................................................................... 15.2
Settlement of claims of clients ........................................................................ 10.67
Sharing legal fees .......................................................................................... 10.48
Signature and certificate of practitioner ......................................................... 10.18
Solicitation .................................................................................................... 10.32, 10.33
Statement concerning officials, making false ................................................. 10.102
Suspension of practitioner ............................................................................ 10.23, 10.130, 10.132, 10.158
Suspension of rules ........................................................................................ 10.170

T
Testimony of Office employees
   Definition .................................................................................................. 15a.2
   General rule .............................................................................................. 15a.4
   Office policy .............................................................................................. 15a.3
   Private litigation ....................................................................................... 15a.6
   Proceedings involving the United States .................................................... 15a.5
   Production of documents .......................................................................... 15a.4
   Scope ........................................................................................................ 15a.1
   Subpoena of Office employees .................................................................. 15a.7
   Threats of criminal prosecution ............................................................... 10.88
   Threats, use of .......................................................................................... 10.23

U
Unauthorized practice .................................................................................... 10.14, 10.23, 10.31, 10.46, 10.47
Undignified conduct ...................................................................................... 10.89

V
Violating duty of candor and good faith ........................................................ 10.23
Violation of disciplinary rule, misconduct ................................................... 10.23

W
Withdrawal from employment ..................................................................... 10.40
Withdrawal material information .................................................................. 10.22, 10.23
Witnesses ..................................................................................................... 10.63, 10.92

Z
Zealously representing the client ................................................................. 10.83, 10.84

37 CFR (7-1-00 Edition)
SUBCHAPTER B—GOVERNMENT INVENTIONS JURISDICTION

PARTS 100–102 [RESERVED]
SUBCHAPTER C—PROTECTION OF FOREIGN MASK WORKS

PART 150—REQUESTS FOR PRESIDENTIAL PROCLAMATIONS PURSUANT TO 17 U.S.C. 902(a)(2)

Sec.
150.1 Definitions.
150.2 Initiation of evaluation.
150.3 Submission of requests.
150.4 Evaluation.
150.5 Duration of proclamation.
150.6 Mailing address.

SOURCE: 53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

§ 150.1 Definitions.
(a) Commissioner means Assistant Secretary and Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.
(b) Foreign government means the duly-constituted executive of a foreign nation, or an international or regional intergovernmental organization which has been empowered by its member states to request issuance of Presidential proclamations on their behalf under this part.
(c) Interim order means an order issued by the Secretary of Commerce under 17 U.S.C. 914.
(d) Mask work means a series of related images, however fixed or encoded—
   (1) Having or representing the predetermined, three-dimensional pattern of metallic, insulating, or semiconductor material present or removed from the layers of a semiconductor chip product; and
   (2) In which series the relation of the images to one another is that each image has the pattern of the surface of one form of the semiconductor chip product.
(e) Presidential proclamation means an action by the President extending to foreign nationals, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities the privilege of applying for registrations for mask works pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 902.
(f) Request means a request by a foreign government for the issuance of a Presidential proclamation.
(g) Proceeding means a proceeding to issue a interim order extending protection to foreign nationals, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities under 17 U.S.C. Chapter 9.
(h) Secretary means the Secretary of Commerce.

§ 150.2 Initiation of evaluation.
(a) The Commissioner independently or as directed by the Secretary, may initiate an evaluation of the propriety of recommending the issuance, revision, suspension or revocation of a section 902 proclamation.
(b) The Commissioner shall initiate an evaluation of the propriety of recommending the issuance of a section 902 proclamation upon receipt of a request from a foreign government.

§ 150.3 Submission of requests.
(a) Requests for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation shall be submitted by foreign governments for review by the Commissioner.
(b) Requests for issuance of a proclamation shall include:
   (1) A copy of the foreign law or legal rulings that provide protection for U.S. mask works which provide a basis for the request.
   (2) A copy of any regulations or administrative orders implementing the protection.
   (3) A copy of any laws, regulations or administrative orders establishing or regulating the registration (if any) of mask works.
   (4) Any other relevant laws, regulations or administrative orders.
   (5) All copies of laws, legal rulings, regulations or administrative orders submitted must be in unedited, full-text form, and if possible, must be reproduced from the original document.
   (6) All material submitted must be in the original language, and if not in English, must be accompanied by a certified English translation.

§ 150.4 Evaluation.
(a) Upon submission of a request by a foreign government for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation, if an interim order under section 914 has not been issued, the Commissioner may
Patent and Trademark Office, Commerce

§ 150.6 Mailing address.

Requests and all correspondence submitted pursuant to these guidelines shall be addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box 4, Washington, DC 20231.
CHAPTER II—COPYRIGHT OFFICE, LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

### SUBCHAPTER A—COPYRIGHT OFFICE AND PROCEDURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>General provisions</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Registration of claims to copyright</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203</td>
<td>Freedom of Information Act: Policies and procedures</td>
<td>459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>Privacy Act: Policies and procedures</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Mask work protection</td>
<td>468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212</td>
<td>Protection of vessel hull designs</td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBCHAPTER B—COPYRIGHT ARBITRATION ROYALTY PANEL RULES AND PROCEDURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>251</td>
<td>Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel rules of procedure</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252</td>
<td>Filing of claims to cable royalty fees</td>
<td>499</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253</td>
<td>Use of certain copyrighted works in connection with noncommercial educational broadcasting</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>254</td>
<td>Adjustment of royalty rate for coin-operated phonorecord players</td>
<td>509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255</td>
<td>Adjustment of royalty payable under compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords</td>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256</td>
<td>Adjustment of royalty fee for cable compulsory license</td>
<td>513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257</td>
<td>Filing of claims to satellite carrier royalty fees</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>258</td>
<td>Adjustment of royalty fee for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers</td>
<td>516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259</td>
<td>Filing of claims to digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments</td>
<td>517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260</td>
<td>Use of sound recordings in a digital performance</td>
<td>519</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Index to Chapter II—Copyright Office, Library of Congress .................................................. 523
SUBCHAPTER A—COPYRIGHT OFFICE AND PROCEDURES

PART 201—GENERAL PROVISIONS

Sec.
201.1 Communications with the Copyright Office.
201.2 Information given by the Copyright Office.
201.3 Fees for registration, recordation, and related services, special services, and services performed by the Licensing Division.
201.4 Recordation of transfers and certain other documents.
201.5 Corrections and amplifications of copyright registrations; applications for supplementary registration.
201.6 Payment and refund of Copyright Office fees.
201.7 Cancellation of completed registrations.
201.8 [Reserved]
201.9 Recordation of agreements between copyright owners and public broadcasting entities.
201.10 Notices of termination of transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term.
201.11 Satellite carrier statements of account covering statutory licenses for secondary transmissions for private home viewing.
201.12 Recordation of certain contracts by cable systems located outside of the forty-eight contiguous States.
201.13 Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of non-dramatic literary or musical works.
201.14 Warnings of copyright for use by certain libraries and archives.
201.15 Voluntary license to permit reproduction of nondramatic literary works solely for use of the blind and physically handicapped.
201.16 [Reserved]
201.17 Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by cable systems.
201.18 Notice of intention to obtain a compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of non-dramatic musical works.
201.19 Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.
201.20 Methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various types of works.
201.21 [Reserved]
201.22 Advance notices of potential infringement of works consisting of sounds, images, or both.
201.23 Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to the Library of Congress.
201.24 Warning of copyright for software lending by nonprofit libraries.
201.25 Visual Arts Registry.
201.26 Recordation of documents pertaining to computer shareware and donation of public domain computer software.
201.27 Initial notice of distribution of digital recording devices or media.
201.28 Statements of Account for digital audio recording devices or media.
201.29 Access to, and confidentiality of, Statements of Account, Verification Auditor’s Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media.
201.30 Verification of Statements of Account.
201.31 Procedures for copyright restoration in the United States for certain motion pictures and their contents in accordance with the North American Free Trade Agreement.
201.32 [Reserved]
201.33 Procedures for filing Notices of Intent to Enforce a restored copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.
201.34 Procedures for filing Correction Notices of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.
201.35 Initial Notice of Digital Transmission of Sound Recordings under Statutory License.
201.36 Reports of Use of Sound Recordings under Statutory License.
201.37 Designated collection and distribution organizations for records of use of sound recordings under statutory license.
201.38 Designation of agent to receive notification of claimed infringement.
201.39 Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price.


§ 201.1 Communications with the Copyright Office.

(a) In general. Mail and other communications shall be addressed to the Register of Copyrights, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20559-0000.

(b) Inquiries to Licensing Division. Inquiries about filings related to the four compulsory licenses (17 U.S.C. 111, 115, 118, and 119) should be addressed to the
§ 201.2 Information given by the Copyright Office.

(a) In general. (1) Information relative to the operations of the Copyright Office is supplied without charge. A search of the records, indexes, and deposits will be made for such information as they may contain relative to copyright claims upon application and payment of the statutory fee. The Copyright Office, however, does not undertake the making of comparisons of copyright deposits to determine similarity between works.

(2) The Copyright Office does not furnish the names of copyright attorneys, publishers, agents, or other similar information.

(3) In the administration of the Copyright Act in general, the Copyright Office interprets the Act. The Copyright Office, however, does not give specific legal advice on the rights of persons, whether in connection with particular uses of copyrighted works, cases of alleged foreign or domestic copyright infringement, contracts between authors and publishers, or other matters of a similar nature.

(b) Inspection and copying of records.

(1) Inspection and copying of completed records and indexes relating to a registration or a recorded document, and inspection of copies or identifying material deposited in connection with a completed copyright registration may be undertaken in the Certifications and Documents Section. Since some of these materials are not stored on the immediate premises of the Copyright Office, it is advisable to consult the Certifications and Documents Section to determine the length of time necessary to produce the requested materials.

(2) It is the general policy of the Copyright Office to deny direct public access to in-process files and to any work (or other) areas where they are kept. However, direct public use of computers intended to access the automated equivalent of limited portions of these files is permitted on a specified terminal in the Records Maintenance Unit, LM B-14, 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, upon payment of applicable fees.

(3) Information contained in Copyright Office in-process files may be obtained by anyone upon payment of applicable fees and request to the Information and Reference Division, in accordance with the following procedures:

(i) In general, all requests for information in the in-process and open unfinished business files should be made to the Certifications and Documents Section, which upon receipt of applicable fees will give a report that provides the following for each request:

(A) The date(s) of receipt of:

(1) The application(s) for registration that may have been submitted and is (are) in process;

(2) The document(s) that may have been submitted for recordation and is (are) in process;

(3) The copy or copies (or phonorecords) that may have been submitted;

(B) The title of the work(s); and

(C) The name of the remitter.

(ii) Such searches of the in-process files will be given priority to the extent permitted by the demands of normal work flow of the affected sections of the Copyright Office.

(4) Access will be afforded as follows to pending applications for registration, the deposit material accompanying them, and pending documents for recordation that were submitted
Copyright Office, Library of Congress

§ 201.2

within the twelve month period immediately preceding the request for access:

(i) In the case of applications for registration and deposits accompanying them, upon the request of the copyright claimant or his/her authorized representative, and

(ii) In the case of documents, upon the request of at least one of the persons who executed the document or by an authorized representative of that person.

These requests should be made to the Public Information Office, and the review of the materials will be permitted there. No charge will be made for reviewing these materials; the appropriate search fee identified in §201.3(c) or §201.3(d) will be assessed, and the appropriate copying fee identified in §201.3(c) or §201.3(d) will be assessed if the claimant wants and is entitled to a copy of the material.

(5) In exceptional circumstances, the Register of Copyrights may allow inspection of pending applications and open correspondence files by someone other than the copyright claimant, upon submission of a written request which is deemed by the Register to show good cause for such access and establishes that the person making the request is one properly and directly concerned. The written request should be addressed to Copyright GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024.

(6) In no case will direct public access be permitted to any financial or accounting records.

(7) The Copyright Office maintains administrative staff manuals referred to as its “Compendium of Office Practices I” and “Compendium of Office Practices II” for the general guidance of its staff in making registrations and recording documents. The manuals, as amended and supplemented from time to time, are available for purchase from the National Technical Information Service (Compendium I) and the Government Printing Office (Compendium II). They are also available for public inspection and copying in the Certifications and Documents Section.

(c) Correspondence. (1) Official correspondence, including preliminary applications, between copyright claimants or their agents and the Copyright Office, and directly relating to a completed registration, a recorded document, a rejected application for registration, or a document for which recordation was refused is available for public inspection. Included in the correspondence available for public inspection is that portion of the file directly relating to a completed registration, recorded document, a rejected application for registration, or a document for which recordation was refused which was once open to public inspection as a closed case, even if the case is subsequently reopened. Public inspection is available only for the correspondence contained in the file during the time it was closed because of one of the aforementioned actions. Correspondence relating to the reopening of the file and reconsideration of the case is considered part of an in-process file until final action is taken, and public inspection of that correspondence is governed by §201.2(b). Requests for reproductions of the correspondence shall be made pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Correspondence, application forms, and any accompanying material forming a part of a pending application are considered in-process files and access to them is governed by paragraph (b) of this section.

(3) Correspondence, memoranda, reports, opinions, and similar material relating to internal matters of personnel and procedures, office administration, security matters, and internal consideration of policy and decisional matters including the work product of an attorney, are not open to public inspection.

(4) The Copyright Office will return unanswered any abusive or scurrilous correspondence.

(d) Requests for copies. (1) Requests for copies of records should include the following:

(i) A clear identification of the type of records desired (for example, additional certificates of registration, copies of correspondence, copies of deposits).

(ii) A specification of whether the copies are to be certified or uncertified.

(iii) A clear identification of the specific records to be copied. Requests
§ 201.3

should include the following specific information, if possible:
(A) The type of work involved (for example, novel, lyrics, photograph);
(B) The registration number;
(C) The year date or approximate year date of registration;
(D) The complete title of the work;
(E) The author(s) including any pseudonym by which the author may be known; and
(F) The claimant(s); and
(G) If the requested copy is of an assignment, license, contract, or other recorded document, the volume and page number of the recorded document.

(iv) If the copy requested is an additional certificate of registration, include the fee. The Certifications and Documents Section will review requests for copies of other records and quote fees for each.
(v) The telephone number and address of the requestor.

(2) Requests for certified or uncertified reproductions of the copies, phonorecords, or identifying material deposited in connection with a copyright registration of published or unpublished works in the custody of the Copyright Office will be granted only when one of the following three conditions has been met:
(i) The Copyright Office receives written authorization from the copyright claimant of record or his or her designated agent, or from the owner of any of the exclusive rights in the copyright as long as this ownership can be demonstrated by written documentation of the transfer of ownership.
(ii) The Copyright Office receives a written request from an attorney on behalf of either the plaintiff or defendant in connection with litigation, actual or prospective, involving the copyrighted work. The following information must be included in such a request:
(A) The names of all the parties involved and the nature of the controversy;
(B) The name of the court in which the actual case is pending or, in the case of a prospective proceeding, a full statement of the facts of the controversy in which the copyrighted work is involved; and
(C) Satisfactory assurance that the requested reproduction will be used only in connection with the specified litigation.
(iii) The Copyright Office receives a court order for reproduction of the deposited copies, phonorecords, or identifying material of a registered work which is the subject of litigation. The order must be issued by a court having jurisdiction of the case in which the reproduction is to be submitted as evidence.

(3) When a request is made for a reproduction of a phonorecord, such as an audiotape or cassette, in which either a sound recording or the underlying musical, dramatic, or literary work is embodied, the Copyright Office will provide proximate reproduction. The Copyright Office reserves the right to substitute a monaural reproduction for a stereo, quadraphonic, or any other type of fixation of the work accepted for deposit.

§ 201.3 Fees for registration, recordation, and related services, special services, and services performed by the Licensing Division.

(a) General. This section prescribes the fees for registration, recordation, and related services, and services performed by the Licensing Division.

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:
(1) Registration, recordation, and related service fee. This is the fee for a registration or recordation service that the Office is required to perform under 17 U.S.C., or a directly related service. It includes those services described in section 708(a)(1)–(9) and authorized by Pub. L. 105–80.
(2) Special services fee. This is a fee for a special service not specified in title 17, which the Register of Copyrights may fix at any time on the basis of the cost of providing the service, as provided by 17 U.S.C. 708(a)(10).
(3) Licensing Division service fee. This is a fee for a service performed by the Licensing Division.
Copyright Office, Library of Congress § 201.3

(c) Registration, recordation and related service fees. The Copyright Office has established the following fees for these services:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Registration, recordation and related services</th>
<th>Fees</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Basic registrations: Form TX, Form VA, Form PA, Form SE, (including Short Forms), and Form SR</td>
<td>$30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Registration of a claim in a group of contribution to periodicals (GR/CP)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Registration of a renewal claim (Form RE): Claim without Addendum</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addendum</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Registration of a claim in a Mask Work</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Registration of a claim in a group of serials (Form SE/Group) $30 minimum</td>
<td>10^1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) Registration of a claim in a group of daily newspapers, and qualified newsletters (Form G/DN)</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) Registration of a restored copyright (Form GATT)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8) Registration of a claim in a group of restored works (Form GATT Group) $30 minimum</td>
<td>10^1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9) Registration of a correction or amplification to a claim (Form GA)</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) Providing an additional certificate of registration</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11) Any other certification, per hour</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12) Search—report prepared from official records, per hour</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13) Search—locating Copyright Office records, per hour</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14) Recordation of documents (single title)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional titles (per group of 10 titles)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(15) Recordation of a notice of intention to Make and Distribute Phonorecords</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16) Recordation of Notice of Intention to Make and Distribute Phonorecords (Form CA)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) Issuance of a receipt for a deposit</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^1 Per issues.  ^2 Per claim.

(d) Special service fees. The Copyright Office has established the following fees for special services:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Special services</th>
<th>Fees</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Service charge for deposit account overdraft</td>
<td>$70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Service charge for dishonored deposit account replenishment check</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Service charge for insufficient fee</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Appeals:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) First appeal</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional claim in related group</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Second appeal</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional claim in related group</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Secure test processing charge, per hour</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) Copying charge, 15 pages or fewer</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Each additional page over 15</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) Inspection charge</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8) Special handling fee for a claim</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Each additional claim using the same deposit</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9) Special handling fee for recordation of a document</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Each additional claim</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) Full-term storage of deposits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11) Surcharge for expedited Certifications and Documents Section services:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Additional certificates, per hour</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) In-process searches, per hour</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) Copy of assignment or other document, per hour</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) Certification, per hour</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v) Copy of registered deposit:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First hour</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Each additional hour</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vi) Copy of correspondence file:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First hour</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Each additional hour</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12) Surcharge for expedited Reference &amp; Bibliography Section searches:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First hour</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Each additional hour</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^1 Reserved.

(e) Licensing Division service fees. The Copyright Office has established the following fees for certain services performed by the Licensing Division:
(a) General. (1) This section prescribes conditions for the recordation of transfers of copyright ownership and other documents pertaining to a copyright under section 205 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. The filing or recordation of the following documents is not within the provisions of this section:

(i) Certain contracts entered into by cable systems located outside of the 48 contiguous States (17 U.S.C. 111(e); see 37 CFR 201.12);

(ii) Notices of identity and signal carriage complement, and statements of account, of cable systems (17 U.S.C. 111(d); see 37 CFR 201.11; 201.17);

(iii) Original, signed notices of intention to obtain compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works (17 U.S.C. 115(b); see 37 CFR 201.18);

(iv) License agreements, and terms and rates of royalty payments, voluntarily negotiated between one or more public broadcasting entities and certain owners of copyright (17 U.S.C. 118; see 37 CFR 201.9);

(v) Notices of termination (17 U.S.C. 203, 304(c); see 37 CFR 201.10); and

(vi) Statements regarding the identity of authors of anonymous and pseudonymous works, and statements relating to the death of authors (17 U.S.C. 302).

(2) A transfer of copyright ownership has the meaning set forth in section 101 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. A document shall be considered to `"pertain to a copyright" if it has a direct or indirect relationship to the existence, scope, duration, or identification of a copyright, or to the ownership, division, allocation, licensing, transfer, or exercise of rights under a copyright. That relationship may be past, present, future, or potential.

(3) For purposes of this section:

(i) A sworn certification is an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or if the original is located outside of the United States, under the official seal of any diplomatic or consular officer of the United States or of a person authorized to administer oaths whose authority is proved by the certificate of such an officer, or a statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code; and

(ii) An official certification is a certification, by the appropriate Government official, that the original of the document is on file in a public office and that the reproduction is a true copy or the original.

(b) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording documents.

(c) Recordable documents. Any transfer of copyright ownership (including any instrument of conveyance, or note or memorandum of the transfer), or any other document pertaining to a copyright, may be recorded in the Copyright Office if it is accompanied by the fee set forth in paragraph (d) of this section, and if the requirements of this paragraph with respect to signatures, completeness, and legibility are met.
(1) To be recordable, the document must bear the actual signature or signatures of the person or persons who executed it. Alternatively, the document may be recorded if it is a legible photocopy or other legible facsimile reproduction of the signed document, accompanied by a sworn certification or an official certification that the reproduction is a true copy of the signed document. Any sworn certification accompanying a reproduction shall be signed by at least one of the parties to the signed document, or by an authorized representative of that person.

(2) To be recordable, the document must be complete by its own terms.

(i) A document that contains a reference to any schedule, appendix, exhibit, addendum, or other material as being attached to the document or made a part of it shall be recordable only if the attachment is also submitted for recordation with the document or if the reference is deleted by the parties to the document. If a document has been submitted for recordation and has been returned by the Copyright Office at the request of the sender for deletion of the reference to an attachment, the document will be recorded only if the deletion is signed or initialed by the persons who executed the document or by their authorized representatives. In exceptional cases a document containing a reference to an attachment will be recorded without the attached material and without deletion of the reference if the person seeking recordation submits a written request specifically asserting that:

(A) The attachment is completely unavailable for recordation; and

(B) The attachment is not essential to the identification of the subject matter of the document; and

(C) It would be impossible or wholly impracticable to have the parties to the document sign or initial a deletion of the reference.

In such exceptional cases, the Copyright Office records of the document will be annotated to show that recordation was made in response to a specific request under this paragraph.

(ii) If a document otherwise recordable under this title indicates on its face that it is a self-contained part of a larger instrument (for example: if it is designated “Attachment A” or “Exhibit B”), the Copyright Office will raise the question of completeness, but will record the document if the person requesting recordation asserts that the document is sufficiently complete as it stands.

(iii) When the document submitted for recordation merely identifies or incorporates by reference another document, or certain terms of another document, the Copyright Office will raise no question of completeness, and will not require recordation of the other document.

(3) To be recordable, the document must be legible and capable of being reproduced in legible microform copies.

(d) Fees. The fees for recordation of a document are prescribed in §201.3(c).

(e) Recordation. The date of recordation is the date when a proper document under paragraph (c) of this section and a proper fee under paragraph (d) of this section are all received in the Copyright Office. After recordation the document is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.
§ 201.5

States Code as it existed before January 1, 1978; or

(D) A renewal registration made under Title 17 of the United States Code as it existed before January 1, 1978; and

(ii) A supplementary registration means a registration made upon application under section 408(d) of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, and the provisions of this section.

(2) No correction or amplification of the information in a basic registration will be made except pursuant to the provisions of this §201.5. As an exception, where it is discovered that the record of a basic registration contains an error that the Copyright Office itself should have recognized at the time registration was made, the Office will take appropriate measures to rectify its error.

(b) Persons entitled to file an application for supplementary registration; grounds of application.

(1) Supplementary registration can be made only if a basic copyright registration for the same work has already been completed. After a basic registration has been completed, any author or other copyright claimant of the work, or the owner of any exclusive right in the work, or the duly authorized agent of any such author, other claimant, or owner, who wishes to correct or amplify the information given in the basic registration for the work may file an application for supplementary registration.1

(2) Supplementary registration may be made either to correct or to amplify the information in a basic registration. For the purposes of this section:

(i) A correction is appropriate if information in the basic registration was incorrect at the time that basic registration was made, and the error is not one that the Copyright Office itself should have recognized;

(ii) An amplification is appropriate:

(A) To supplement or clarify the information that was required by the application for the basic registration and should have been provided, such as the identity of a co-author or co-claimant, but was omitted at the time the basic registration was made, or

(B) To reflect changes in facts, other than those relating to transfer, license, or ownership of rights in the work, that have occurred since the basic registration was made.

(iii) Supplementary registration is not appropriate:

(A) As an amplification, to reflect a change in ownership that occurred on or after the effective date of the basic registration or to reflect the division, allocation, licensing or transfer of rights in a work; or

(B) To correct errors in statements or notices on the copies of phonorecords of a work, or to reflect changes in the content of a work; and

(iv) Where a basic renewal registration has been made for a work during the last year of the relevant first-term copyright, supplementary registration to correct the renewal claimant or basis of claim or to add a renewal claimant is ordinarily possible only if the application for supplementary registration and fee are received in the Copyright Office within the last year of the relevant first-term copyright. If the error or omission in a basic renewal registration is extremely minor, and does not involve the identity of the renewal claimant or the legal basis of the claim, supplementary registration may be made at any time. In an exceptional case, however, supplementary registration may be made to correct the name of the renewal claimant and the legal basis of the claim at any time if clear, convincing, objective documentation is submitted to the Copyright Office which proves that an inadvertent error was made in failing to designate the correct living statutory renewal claimant in the basic renewal registration.

(c) Form and content of application for supplementary registration.

(1) An application for supplementary registration shall be made on a form prescribed by the Copyright Office, shall be accompanied by the appropriate fee identified
Copyright Office, Library of Congress

§ 201.6

in § 201.3(c) and shall contain the following information:

(i) The title of the work as it appears in the basic registration, including previous or alternative titles if they appear;
(ii) The registration number of the basic registration;
(iii) The year when the basic registration was completed;
(iv) The name or names of the author or authors of the work, and the copyright claimant or claimants in the work, as they appear in the basic registration;
(v) In the case of a correction:
(A) The line number and heading or description of the part of the basic registration where the error occurred;
(B) A transcription of the erroneous information as it appears in the basic registration;
(C) A statement of the correct information as it should have appeared; and
(D) If desired, an explanation of the correction;
(vi) In the case of an amplification:
(A) The line number and heading or description of the part of the basic registration where the information to be amplified appears;
(B) A clear and succinct statement of the information to be added; and
(C) If desired, an explanation of the amplification;
(vii) The name and address:
(A) To which correspondence concerning the application should be sent; and
(B) To which the certificate of supplementary registration should be mailed; and
(viii) A certification. The certification shall consist of:
(A) The handwritten signature of the author, other copyright claimant, or owner of exclusive right(s) in the work, or of the duly authorized agent of such author, other claimant or owner (who shall also be identified);
(B) The typed or printed name of the person whose signature appears, and the date of signature; and
(C) A statement that the person signing the application is the author, other copyright claimant, or owner of exclusive right(s) in the work, or the authorized agent of such author, other claimant, or owner, and that the statements made in the application are correct to the best of that person's knowledge.
(2) The form prescribed by the Copyright Office for the foregoing purposes is designated "Application for Supplementary Copyright Registration (Form CA)". Copies of the form are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20559-6000.

(3) Copies, phonorecords or supporting documents cannot be made part of the record of a supplementary registration and should not be submitted with the application.

(d) Effect of supplementary registration.
(1) When a supplementary registration is completed, the Copyright Office will assign it a new registration number in the appropriate class, and issue a certificate of supplementary registration under that number.
(2) As provided in section 408(d) of title 17, the information contained in a supplementary registration augments but does not supersede that contained in the basic registration. The basic registration will not be expunged or cancelled.

(Pub. L. 94-553; 17 U.S.C. 205, 408(d), 601(b), 702, 708)

§ 201.6 Payment and refund of Copyright Office fees.

(a) In general. All fees sent to the Copyright Office should be in the form of a money order, check or bank draft payable to the Register of Copyrights. Coin or currency sent to the Office in letters or packages will be at the remitter's risk. Remittances from foreign countries should be in the form of an International Money Order or Bank Draft payable and immediately negotiable in the United States for the full amount of the fee required. Uncertified checks are accepted subject to collection. Where the statutory fee is submitted in the form of a check, the registration of the copyright claim or

353
other record made by the Office is provisional until payment in money is received. In the event the fee is not paid, the registration or other record shall be expunged.

(b) Deposit accounts. Persons or firms having a considerable amount of business with the Copyright Office may, for their own convenience, prepay copyright expenses by establishing a Deposit Account.

(c) Refunds. Money remitted to the Copyright Office for original, basic, supplementary or renewal registration will not be refunded if the claim is rejected because the material deposited does not constitute copyrightable subject matter or because the claim is invalid for any other reason. Payments made by mistake or in excess of the statutory fee will be refunded, but amounts of $50 or less will not be refunded unless specifically requested, and refunds of less than $2 may be made in postage stamps. Before making any refund for fees remitted in relation to nonregistration copyright services, the Copyright Office shall deduct an administrative processing fee in an amount equivalent to one hour of the requested service, or the minimum fee set by statute for the service.

(d) Return of deposit copies. Copies of works deposited in the Copyright Office pursuant to law are either retained in the Copyright Office, transferred for the permanent collections or other uses of the Library of Congress, or disposed of according to law. When an application is rejected, the Copyright Office reserves the right to retain the deposited copies.

§ 201.7 Cancellation of completed registrations.

(a) Definition. Cancellation is an action taken by the Copyright Office whereby either the registration is eliminated on the ground that the registration is invalid under the applicable law and regulations, or the registration number is eliminated and a new registration is made under a different class and number.

(b) General policy. The Copyright Office will cancel a completed registration only in those cases where:

(1) It is clear that no registration should have been made because the work does not constitute copyrightable subject matter or fails to satisfy the other legal and formal requirements for obtaining copyright;

(2) Registration may be authorized but the application, deposit material, or fee does not meet the requirements of the law and Copyright Office regulations, and the Office is unable to get the defect corrected; or

(3) An existing registration in the wrong class is to be replaced by a new registration in the correct class.

(c) Circumstances under which a registration will be cancelled. (1) Where the Copyright Office becomes aware after registration that a work is not copyrightable, either because the authorship is de minimis or the work does not contain authorship subject to copyright, the registration will be cancelled. The copyright claimant will be notified by correspondence of the proposed cancellation and the reasons therefor, and be given 30 days, from the date the Copyright Office letter is mailed, to show cause in writing why the cancellation should not be made. If the claimant fails to respond within the 30 day period, or if the Office after considering the response, determines that the registration was made in error and not in accordance with title 17 U.S.C., Chapters 1 through 8, the registration will be cancelled.

(2) When a check received in payment of a registration fee is returned to the Copyright Office marked “insufficient funds” or is otherwise uncollectible the Copyright Office will immediately cancel any registration(s) for which the dishonored check was submitted and will notify the remitter the registration has been cancelled because the check was returned as uncollectible.

(3) Where registration is made in the wrong class, the Copyright Office will cancel the first registration, replace it with a new registration in the correct class, and issue a corrected certificate.

(4) Where registration has been made for a work which appears to be copyrightable but after registration the Copyright Office becomes aware that,
on the administrative record before the Office, the statutory requirements have apparently not been satisfied, or that information essential to registration has been omitted entirely from the application or is questionable, or correct deposit material has not been deposited, the Copyright Office will correspond with the copyright claimant in an attempt to secure the required information or deposit material or to clarify the information previously given on the application. If the Copyright Office receives no reply to its correspondence within 30 days of the date the letter is mailed, or the response does not resolve the substantive defect, the registration will be cancelled. The correspondence will include the reason for the cancellation. The following are instances where a completed registration will be cancelled unless the substantive defect in the registration can be cured:

(i) Eligibility for registration has not been established;

(ii) A work published before March 1, 1989, was registered more than 5 years after the date of first publication and the deposit copy or phonorecord does not contain a statutory copyright notice;

(iii) The deposit copies or phonorecords of a work published before January 1, 1978 do not contain a copyright notice or the notice is defective;

(iv) A renewal claim was registered after the statutory time limits for registration had apparently expired;

(v) The application and copy(s) or phonorecord(s) do not match each other and the Copyright Office cannot locate a copy or phonorecord as described in the application elsewhere in the Copyright Office or the Library of Congress;

(vi) The application for registration does not identify a copyright claimant or it appears from the transfer statement on the application or elsewhere that the “claimant” named in the application does not have the right to claim copyright;

(vii) A claim to copyright is based on material added to a preexisting work and a reading of the application in its totality indicates that there is no copyrightable new material on which to base a claim;

(viii) A work subject to the manufacturing provisions of the Act of 1909 was apparently published in violation of those provisions;

(ix) For a work published after January 1, 1978, the only claimant given on the application was deceased on the date the application was certified;

(x) A work is not anonymous or pseudonymous and statements on the application and/or copy vary so much that the author cannot be identified; and

(xi) Statements on the application conflict or are so unclear that the claimant cannot be adequately identified.

(d) Minor substantive errors. Where a registration includes minor substantive errors or omissions which would generally have been rectified before registration, the Copyright Office will attempt to rectify the error through correspondence with the remitter. Except in those cases enumerated in paragraph (c) of this section, if the Office is unable for any reason to obtain the correct information or deposit copy, the registration record will be annotated to state the nature of the informality and show that the Copyright Office attempted to correct the registration.


§ 201.8 [Reserved]

§ 201.9 Recordation of agreements between copyright owners and public broadcasting entities.

(a) License agreements voluntarily negotiated between one or more owners of copyright in published nondramatic musical works and published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works, and one or more public broadcasting entities, and terms and rates of royalty payments agreed to among owners of copyright in nondramatic literary works and public broadcasting entities will be filed in the Copyright Office, Licensing Division by recordation upon payment of the fee prescribed by § 201.3. The document submitted for recordation shall meet the following requirements:

(1) It shall be an original instrument of agreement; or it shall be a legible photocopy or other full-size facsimile reproduction of an original, accompanied by a certification signed by at
§ 201.10 Notices of termination of transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term.

(a) Form. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving notices of termination.

(b) Contents. (1) A notice of termination must include a clear identification of each of the following:

(i) The name of each grantee whose rights are being terminated, or the grantee’s successor in title, and each address at which service of the notice is being made;

(ii) The title and the name of at least one author of, and the date copyright was originally secured in, each work to which the notice of termination applies; and, if possible and practicable, the original copyright registration number;

(iii) A brief statement reasonably identifying the grant to which the notice of termination applies;

(iv) The effective date of termination; and

(v) In the case of a termination of a grant executed by a person or persons other than the author, a listing of the surviving person or persons who executed the grant. In the case of a termination of a grant executed by one or more of the authors of the work where the termination is exercised by the successors of a deceased author, a listing of the names and relationships to that deceased author of all of the following, together with specific indication of the person or persons executing the notice who constitute more than one-half of that author’s termination interest: That author’s surviving widow or widower; and all of that author’s surviving children; and, where any of that author’s children are dead, all of the surviving children of any such deceased child of that author; however, instead of the information required by this paragraph (v), the notice may contain both of the following:

(A) A statement of as much of such information as is currently available to the person or persons signing the notice, with a brief explanation of the reasons why full information is or may be lacking; together with

(B) A statement that, to the best knowledge and belief of the person or persons signing the notice, the notice has been signed by all persons whose signature is necessary to terminate the grant under section 304(c) of Title 17, U.S.C., or by their duly authorized agents.

(2) Clear identification of the information specified by paragraph (b)(1) of this section requires a complete and unambiguous statement of facts in the notice itself, without incorporation by reference of information in other documents or records.

(c) Signature. (1) In the case of a termination of a grant executed by a person or persons other than the author, the notice shall be signed by all persons whose signature is necessary to terminate the grant under section 304(c) of Title 17, U.S.C., or by their duly authorized agents.

(2) In the case of a termination of a grant executed by one or more of the
authors of the work, the notice as to any one author's share shall be signed by that author or by his or her duly authorized agent. If that author is dead, the notice shall be signed by the number and proportion of the owners of that author's termination interest required under clauses (1) and (2) of section 304(c) of title 17, U.S.C., or by their duly authorized agents, and shall contain a brief statement of their relationship or relationships to that author.

(3) Where a signature is by a duly authorized agent, it shall clearly identify the person or persons on whose behalf the agent is acting.

(4) The handwritten signature of each person effecting the termination shall either be accompanied by a statement of the full name and address of that person, typewritten or printed legibly by hand, or shall clearly correspond to such a statement elsewhere in the notice.

(d) Service. (1) The notice of termination shall be served upon each grantee whose rights are being terminated, or the grantee's successor in title, by personal service, or by first-class mail sent to an address which, after a reasonable investigation, is found to be the last known address of the grantee or successor in title.

(2) The service provision of section 304(c)(4) of Title 17, U.S.C., will be satisfied if, before the notice of termination is served, a reasonable investigation is made by the person or persons executing the notice as to the current ownership of the rights being terminated, and based on such investigation:

(i) If there is no reason to believe that such rights have been transferred by the grantee to a successor in title, the notice is served on the grantee; or

(ii) If there is reason to believe that such rights have been transferred by the grantee to a particular successor in title, the notice is served on such successor in title.

(3) For purposes of paragraph (d)(2) of this section, a reasonable investigation includes, but is not limited to, a search of the records in the Copyright Office; in the case of a musical composition with respect to which performing rights are licensed by a performing rights society, a "reasonable investigation" also includes a report from that performing rights society identifying the person or persons claiming current ownership of the rights being terminated.

(4) Compliance with the provisions of clauses (2) and (3) of this paragraph (d) will satisfy the service requirements of section 304(c)(4) of Title 17, U.S.C. However, as long as the statutory requirements, have been met, the failure to comply with the regulatory provisions of paragraph (d)(2) or (3) of this section will not affect the validity of the service.

(e) Harmless errors. (1) Harmless errors in a notice that do not materially affect the adequacy of the information required to serve the purposes of section 304(c) of Title 17, U.S.C., shall not render the notice invalid.

(2) Without prejudice to the general rule provided by paragraph (e)(1) of this section, errors made in giving the date or registration number referred to in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section, or in complying with the provisions of paragraph (b)(1)(v) of this section, or in describing the precise relationships under clause (2) of paragraph (c) of this section, shall not affect the validity of the notice if the errors were made in good faith and without any intention to deceive, mislead, or conceal relevant information.

(f) Recordation. (1) A copy of the notice of termination will be recorded in the Copyright Office upon payment of the fee prescribed by paragraph (2) of this paragraph (f) and upon compliance with the following provisions:

(i) The copy submitted for recordation shall be a complete and exact duplicate of the notice of termination as served and shall include the actual signature or signatures, or a reproduction of the actual signature or signatures, appearing on the notice; where separate copies of the same notice were served on more than one grantee or successor in title, only one copy need be submitted for recordation; and

(ii) The copy submitted for recordation shall be accompanied by a statement setting forth the date on which the notice was served and the manner of service, unless such information is contained in the notice.
(2) The fee for recordation of a document is prescribed in § 201.3(c).

(3) The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee and, if required, the statement referred to in paragraph (f)(1)(ii) of this section, have been received in the Copyright Office. After recordation the document, including any accompanying statement, is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

(4) Recordation of a notice of termination by the Copyright Office is without prejudice to any party claiming that the legal and formal requirements for issuing a valid notice have not been met.

(Pub. L. 94±553; 17 U.S.C. 304(c), 702, 708(11))


§ 201.11 Satellite carrier statements of account covering statutory licenses for secondary transmissions for private home viewing.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of Statements of Account and royalty fees in the Copyright Office as required by the satellite carrier license of section 119(b)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 103±369, in order that certain secondary transmissions by satellite carriers for private home viewing be subject to statutory licensing.

(b) Definitions. (1) The terms distributor, network station, private home viewing, satellite carrier, subscriber, superstation, and unserved household have the meanings set forth in section 119(d) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 103±369.

(2) The terms primary transmission and secondary transmission have the meanings set forth in section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(c) Accounting periods and deposit. (1) Statements of Account shall cover semiannual accounting periods of January 1 through June 30, and July 1 through December 31, and shall be deposited in the Copyright Office, together with the total statutory royalty fee or the confirmed arbitration royalty fee for such accounting periods as prescribed by section 119(b)(1)(B) and (c)(3) of title 17, by not later than July 30, if the Statement of Account covers the January 1 through June 30 accounting period, and by not later than the immediately following January 30, if the Statement of Account covers the July 1 through December 31 accounting period.

(2) Upon receiving a Statement of Account and royalty fee, the Copyright Office will make an official record of the actual date when such statement and fee were physically received in the Copyright Office. Thereafter, the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office will examine the statement and fee for obvious errors or omissions appearing on the face of the documents, and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before final processing of the documents is completed. If, as the result of communications between the Copyright Office and the satellite carrier, an additional fee is deposited or changes or additions are made in the Statement of Account, the date that additional deposit or information was actually received in the Office will be added to the official record of the case. However, completion by the Copyright Office of the final processing of a Statement of Account and royalty fee deposit shall establish only the fact of such completion and the date or dates of receipt shown in the official record. It shall in no case be considered a determination that the Statement of Account was, in fact, properly prepared and accurate, that the correct amount of the royalty fee had been deposited, that the statutory time limits for filing had been met, or that any other requirements to qualify for a statutory license have been satisfied.

(3) Statements of Account and royalty fees received before the end of the particular accounting period they purport to cover will not be processed by the Copyright Office. Statements of Account and royalty fees received after the filing deadlines of July 30 or January 30, respectively, will be accepted for whatever legal effect they may have, if any.

(4) In the Register’s discretion, four years after the close of any calendar year, the Register may close out the
royalty payments account for that calendar year, and may treat any funds remaining in such account and any subsequent deposits that would otherwise be attributable to that calendar year as attributable to the succeeding calendar year.

(d) Forms. (1) Each Statement of Account shall be furnished on an appropriate form prescribed by the Copyright Office, and shall contain the information required by that form and its accompanying instructions. Computation of the copyright royalty fee shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in the forms. Copies of Statement of Account forms are available free upon request to the Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20557–6400.

(2) The form prescribed by the Copyright Office is designated “Statement of Account for Secondary Transmissions by Satellite Carriers to Home Viewers.”

(e) Contents. Each Statement of Account shall contain the following information:

(1) A clear designation of the accounting period covered by the Statement.

(2) The designation “Owner” followed by:

(i) The full legal name of the satellite carrier. If the owner is a partnership, the name of the partnership is to be followed by the name of at least one individual partner;

(ii) Any other name or names under which the owner conducts the business of the satellite carrier; and

(iii) The full mailing address of the owner. Ownership, other names under which the owner conducts the business of the satellite carrier, and the owner’s mailing address shall reflect facts existing on the last day of the accounting period covered by the Statement of Account.

(3) The designation “Primary Transmitters,” followed by the call signs, broadcast channel numbers, station locations (city and state of license), and a notation whether that primary transmitter is a “superstation” or “network station” transmitted to any or all of the subscribers of the satellite carrier during any portion of the period covered by the Statement of Account.

(4) The designation “Superstations,” followed by:

(i) The call sign of each superstation signal carried for each month of the period covered by the Statement, and

(ii) The total number of subscribers to each superstation for each month of the period covered by the Statement. This number is the number of subscribers to each superstation receiving the retransmission on the last day of each month.

(5) The designation “Network Stations,” followed by:

(i) The call sign of each network station carried for each month of the period covered by the Statement, and

(ii) The total number of subscribers to each network station for each month of the period covered by the Statement. This number is the number of subscribers to each network station receiving the retransmission on the last day of each month.

(6) The total number of subscribers to each superstation for the six-month period covered by the Statement multiplied by the statutory royalty rate prescribed in §258.3 of this chapter.

(7) The total number of subscribers to each network station for the six-month period covered by the Statement multiplied by the statutory royalty rate prescribed in §258.3 of this chapter.

(8) The name, address, business title, and telephone number of the individual or individuals to be contacted for information or questions concerning the content of the Statement of Account.

(9) The handwritten signature of:

(i) The owner of the satellite carrier or a duly authorized agent of the owner, if the owner is not a partnership or a corporation; or

(ii) A partner, if the owner is a partnership; or

(iii) An officer of the corporation, if the owner is a corporation. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(A) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Statement of Account;

(B) The date of signature;

(C) If the owner of the satellite carrier is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the
§ 201.11

person signing the Statement of Account;

(D) A certification of the capacity of the person signing; and

(E) The following statement:

I, the undersigned Owner or Agent of the Satellite Carrier, or Officer or Partner, if the Satellite Carrier is a Corporation or Partnership, have examined this Statement of Account and hereby declare under penalty of law that all statements of fact contained herein are true, complete, and correct to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, and are made in good faith.

(18 U.S.C., section 1001 (1986))

(f) Royalty fee payment. All royalty fees may be paid by electronic transfer of funds, provided the payment is received in the designated United States Federal Reserve Bank by the filing deadline for the relevant accounting period. Except in the case of an electronic payment, the royalty fee payable for the period covered by the Statement of Account shall accompany that Statement of Account and shall be deposited at the Copyright Office with it. Payment must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, or a money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or a United States Treasury electronic payment.

(g) Corrections, supplemental payments, and refunds.

(1) Upon compliance with the procedures and within the time limits set forth in paragraph (g)(3) of this section, corrections to Statements of Account will be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will be received for deposit, or refunds will be issued, in the following cases:

(i) Where, with respect to the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account, any of the information given in the Statement filed in the Copyright Office is incorrect or incomplete; or

(ii) Where calculation of the royalty fee payable for a particular accounting period was incorrect, and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office for that period was either too high or too low.

(2) Corrections to Statements of Account will not be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will not be received for deposit, and refunds will not be issued, where the information in the Statements of Account, the royalty fee calculations, or the payments were correct as of the date on which the accounting period ended, but changes (for example, addition or deletion of a signal) took place later.

(3) Requests that corrections to a Statement of Account be placed on record, that fee payments be accepted, or requests for the issuance of refunds, shall be made only in the cases mentioned in paragraph (g)(1) of this section. Such requests shall be addressed to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall meet the following conditions:

(i) The request must be in writing, must clearly identify its purpose, and, in the case of a request for a refund, must be received in the Copyright Office before the expiration of 30 days from the last day of the applicable Statement of Account filing period, or before the expiration of 30 days from the date of receipt at the Copyright Office of the royalty payment that is the subject of the request, whichever time period is longer. A telegraphic or similar unsigned communication will be considered to meet this requirement if it clearly identifies the basis of the request, if it is received in the Copyright Office within the required 30-day period, and if a written request meeting all the conditions of this paragraph (g)(3) is also received in the Copyright Office within 14 days after the end of such 30-day period:

(ii) The Statement of Account to which the request pertains must be sufficiently identified in the request (by inclusion of the name of the owner of the satellite carrier and the accounting period in question) so that it can be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(iii) The request must contain a clear statement of the facts on which it is based and provide a clear basis on which a refund may be granted, in accordance with the following procedures:

(A) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section, where the information given in the Statement of Account is incorrect or incomplete, the request must clearly identify the erroneous or incomplete information and provide the correct or additional information:
(B) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (g)(1)(ii) of this section, where the royalty fee was miscalculated and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office was either too high or too low, the request must be accompanied by an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or a statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code, made and signed in accordance with paragraph (e)(9) of this section. The affidavit or statement shall describe the reasons why the royalty fee was improperly calculated and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculation.

(iv)(A) All requests filed under this paragraph (g) must be accompanied by a filing fee in the amount of $15 for each Statement of Account involved. Payment of this fee may be in the form of a personal or company check, or of a certified check, cashier's check or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights. No request will be processed until the appropriate filing fees are received.

(B) All requests that a supplemental royalty fee payment be received for deposit under this paragraph (g) must be accompanied by a remittance in the full amount of such fee. Payment of the supplemental royalty fee must be in the form of certified check, cashier's check, or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or electronic payment. No request will be processed until an acceptable remittance in the full amount of the supplemental royalty fee has been received.

(v) All requests submitted under this paragraph (g) must be signed by the satellite carrier owner named in the Statement of Account, or the duly authorized agent of the owner, in accordance with paragraph (e)(9) of this section.

(vi) A request for a refund is not necessary where the Licensing Division, during its examination of a Statement of Account or related document, discovers an error that has resulted in a royalty overpayment. In this case, the Licensing Division will forward the royalty refund to the satellite carrier owner named in the Statement of Account without regard to the time limitations provided for in paragraph (g)(3)(i) of this section.

(4) Following final processing, all requests submitted under this paragraph (g) will be filed with the original Statement of Account in the records of the Copyright Office. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be considered to relieve satellite carriers from their full obligations under title 17 of the United States Code, and the filing of a correction or supplemental payment shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(h) Interest. (1) Royalty fee payments submitted as a result of late or amended filings will include interest. Interest will begin to accrue beginning on the first day after the close of the period for filing statements of account for all underpayments or late payments of royalties for the satellite carrier statutory license for secondary transmissions for private home viewing occurring within that accounting period. The accrual period will end on the date appearing on the certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment submitted by a satellite carrier, provided that such payment is received by the Copyright Office within five business days of that date. If the payment is not received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date, the accrual period will end on the date of actual receipt by the Copyright Office.

(2)(i) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period beginning with the 1992/2 period shall be the Current Value of Funds Rate, as established by section 8025.40 of the Treasury Financial Manual and published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, in effect on the first business day after the close of the filing deadline for that accounting period. Satellite carriers wishing to obtain the interest rate for a specific accounting period may do so by consulting the FEDERAL REGISTER for the applicable Current Value of Funds Rate, or by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office.

(ii) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period earlier than the 1992/2 period shall be the rate fixed
§ 201.12 Recordation of certain contracts by cable systems located outside of the forty-eight contiguous States.

(a) Written, nonprofit contracts providing for the equitable sharing of costs of videotapes and their transfer, as identified in section 111(e)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94±553, will be filed in the Copyright Office Licensing Division by recordation upon payment of the prescribed fee. The document submitted for recordation shall meet the following requirements:

(1) It shall be an original instrument of contract; or it shall be a legible photocopy or other full-size facsimile reproduction of an original, accompanied by a certification signed by at least one of the parties to the contract, or an authorized representative of that party, that the reproduction is a true copy;

(2) It shall bear the signatures of all persons identified as parties to the contract, or of their authorized agents or representatives;

(3) It shall be complete on its face, and shall include any schedules, appendixes, or other attachments referred to in the instrument as being part of it; and

(4) It shall be clearly identified, in its body or a covering transmittal letter, as being submitted for recordation under 17 U.S.C. 111(e).

(b) The fee for recordation of a document is prescribed in § 201.3.

(c) The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee, have been received in the Copyright Office. A document is filed in the Copyright Office and a filing in the Copyright Office takes place on the date of recordation. After recordation the document is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

(Pub. L. 94±553; 17 U.S.C. 111, 702, 708(11))


§ 201.13 Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of nondramatic literary or musical works.

(a) Definitions.

(1) A Notice of Objection is a notice, as required by section 110(4) of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94±553, to be served as a condition of preventing the noncommercial performance of a nondramatic literary or musical work under certain circumstances.

(2) For purposes of this section, the copyright owner of a nondramatic literary or musical work is the author of the work (including, in the case of a work made for hire, the employer or other person for whom the work was prepared), or a person or organization that has obtained ownership of the exclusive right, initially owned by the author of performance of the type referred to in 17 U.S.C. 110(4). If the other requirements of this section are met, a Notice of Objection may cover the works of more than one copyright owner.

(b) Form. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Notices of Objection.

(c) Contents. (1) A Notice of Objection must clearly state that the copyright owner objects to the performance, and must include all of the following:

(i) Reference to the statutory authority on which the Notice of Objection is based, either by citation of 17 U.S.C. 110(4) or by a more general characterization or description of that statutory provision;

(ii) The date and place of the performance to which an objection is being made; however, if the exact date or place of a particular performance, or both, are not known to the copyright owner, it is sufficient if the Notice describes whatever information the copyright owner has about the date and place of a particular performance, and the source of that information unless
the source was considered private or confidential;

(iii) Clear identification, by title and at least one author, of the particular nondramatic literary or musical work or works, to the performance of which the copyright owner thereof is lodging objection; a Notice may cover any number of separately identified copyrighted works owned by the copyright owner or owners serving the objection. Alternatively, a blanket notice, with or without separate identification of certain copyrighted works, and purporting to cover one or more groups of copyrighted works not separately identified by title and author, shall have effect if the conditions specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section are met; and

(iv) A concise statement of the reasons for the objection.

(2) A blanket notice purporting to cover one or more groups of copyrighted works not separately identified by title and author shall be valid only if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) The Notice shall identify each group of works covered by the blanket notice by a description of any common characteristics distinguishing them from other copyrighted works, such as common author, common copyright owner, common publisher, or common licensing agent;

(ii) The Notice shall identify a particular individual whom the person responsible for the performance can contact for more detailed information about the works covered by the blanket notice and to determine whether a particular work planned for performance is in fact covered by the Notice. Such identification shall include the full name and business and residence addresses of the individual, telephone numbers at which the individual can be reached throughout the period between service of the notice and the performance, and name, address, and telephone number of another individual to contact during that period in case the first cannot be reached.

(iii) If the copyright owner or owners of all works covered by the blanket notice is not identified in the Notice, the Notice shall include an offer to identify, by name and last known address, the owner or owners of any and all such works, upon request made to the individual referred to in paragraph (c)(2)(ii) of this section.

(3) A Notice of Objection must also include clear and prominent statements explaining that:

(i) A failure to exclude the works identified in the Notice from the performance in question may subject the person responsible for the performance to liability for copyright infringement; and

(ii) The objection is without legal effect if there is no direct or indirect admission charge for the performance, and if the other conditions of 17 U.S.C. 110(4) are met.

(d) Signature and identification. (1) A Notice of Objection shall be in writing and signed by each copyright owner, or such owner’s duly authorized agent, as required by 17 U.S.C. 110(4)(B)(i).

(2) The signature of each owner or agent shall be an actual handwritten signature of an individual, accompanied by the date of signature and the full name, address, and telephone number of that person, typewritten or printed legibly by hand.

(3) If a Notice of Objection is initially served in the form of a telegram or similar communication, as provided by paragraph (e) of this section, the requirement for an individual’s handwritten signature shall be considered waived if the further conditions of said paragraph (e) are met.

(e) Service. (1) A Notice of Objection shall be served on the person responsible for the performance at least seven days before the date of the performance, as provided by 17 U.S.C. 110(4)(B)(ii).

(2) Service of the Notice may be effected by any of the following methods:

(i) Personal service;

(ii) First-class mail;

(iii) Telegram, cablegram, or similar form of communication, if:

(A) The Notice meets all of the other conditions provided by this section; and

(B) Before the performance takes place, the person responsible for the performance receives written confirmation of the Notice, bearing the actual handwritten signature of each copyright owner or duly authorized agent.
§ 201.14 Warnings of copyright for use by certain libraries and archives.

(a) Definitions.

(1) A Display Warning of Copyright is a notice under paragraphs (d)(2) and (e)(2) of section 108 of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. As required by those sections the “Display Warning of Copyright” is to be displayed at the place where orders for copies or phonorecords are accepted by certain libraries and archives.

(2) An Order Warning of Copyright is a notice under paragraphs (d)(2) and (e)(2) of section 108 of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. As required by those sections the “Order Warning of Copyright” is to be included on printed forms supplied by certain libraries and archives and used by their patrons for ordering copies or phonorecords.

(b) Contents.

A Display Warning of Copyright and an Order Warning of Copyright shall consist of a verbatim reproduction of the following notice, printed in such size and form and displayed in such manner as to comply with paragraph (c) of this section:

NOTICE WARNING CONCERNING COPYRIGHT RESTRICTIONS

The copyright law of the United States (title 17, United States Code) governs the making of photocopies or other reproductions of copyrighted material.

Under certain conditions specified in the law, libraries and archives are authorized to furnish a photocopy or other reproduction. One of these specific conditions is that the photocopy or reproduction is not to be “used for any purpose other than private study, scholarship, or research.” If a user makes a request for, or later uses, a photocopy or reproduction for purposes in excess of “fair use,” that user may be liable for copyright infringement.

This institution reserves the right to refuse to accept a copying order if, in its judgment, fulfillment of the order would involve violation of copyright law.

(c) Form and manner of use.

(1) A Display Warning of Copyright shall be printed on heavy paper or other durable material in type at least 18 points in size, and shall be displayed prominently, in such manner and location as to be clearly visible, legible, and comprehensible to a casual observer within the immediate vicinity of the place where orders are accepted.

(2) An Order Warning of Copyright shall be printed within a box located prominently on the order form itself, either on the front side of the form or immediately adjacent to the space calling for the name or signature of the person using the form. The notice shall be printed in type size no smaller than that used predominantly throughout the form, and in no case shall the type size be smaller than 8 points. The notice shall be printed in such manner as to be clearly legible, comprehensible, and readily apparent to a casual reader of the form.

[42 FR 59265, Nov. 16, 1977]

§ 201.15 Voluntary license to permit reproduction of nondramatic literary works solely for use of the blind and physically handicapped.

(a) General.

(1) The blind and physically handicapped are persons eligible for special loan services of the Library of Congress, as designated by section 135a of title 2 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 89-552 and regulations of the Library of Congress issued under that section.

(2) This section, and any license granted or exercised under this section, applies only to nondramatic literary works that have previously been published with the consent of the copyright owner.

(b) Form.

The Copyright Office provides the following form as part of the applications for registration of claims to copyright in nondramatic literary works (Form TX):

REPRODUCTION FOR USE OF BLIND OR PHYSICALLY HANDICAPPED PERSONS

Signature of this form at space 10, and a check in one of the boxes here in space 8, constitutes a nonexclusive grant of permission to the Library of Congress to reproduce...
and distribute solely for the blind and physically handicapped and under the conditions and limitations prescribed by the regulations of the Copyright Office: (1) copies of the work identified in space 1 of this application in Braille (or similar tactile symbols); or (2) phonorecords embodying a fixation of a reading of that work; or (3) both.

a □ Copies and phonorecords; b □ Copies only; c □ Phonorecords only.

(c) Terms and conditions. A copyright owner who consents to the use of a copyrighted work by the Library of Congress for the use of the blind and physically handicapped may accomplish this purpose by checking the appropriate box on the application form, by signing the application form as a whole, and by submitting the application for copyright registration to the Copyright Office. The copyright owner thereby grants a nonexclusive license to the Library of Congress with respect to the work identified in the application, under the terms and conditions set forth in this section.

(1) The work may be reproduced only by or on behalf of the Library of Congress.

(2) The work may not be reproduced in any other form than Braille (or similar tactile symbols), or by a fixation of a reading of the work in phonorecords specifically designed for use of the blind and physically handicapped, or both, as designated by the copyright owner on the application form.

(3) Such copies and phonorecords of the work may be distributed by the Library of Congress solely for the use of the blind and physically handicapped, under conditions and guidelines provided by the National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped of the Library of Congress.

(4) In the case of any conflict with any other right or license given by the copyright owner to the Library of Congress pertaining to the work, the terms and conditions most favorable to the Library of Congress for the benefit of the blind and physically handicapped shall govern.

(5) Copies and phonorecords reproduced and distributed under this license will contain identification of the author and publisher of the work, and copyright notice, as they appear on the copies or phonorecords deposited with the application.

(6) This license is nonexclusive, and the copyright owner is in no way precluded from granting other nonexclusive licenses with respect to reproduction for the use of the blind and physically handicapped, or exclusive licenses for the same purpose on condition they are subject to the nonexclusive license granted to the Library of Congress, or other exclusive or nonexclusive licenses or transfers with respect to reproduction or distribution for other purposes.

(7) All responsibility for the clearing and exercise of the rights granted is that of the Library of Congress.

(d) Duration of license. (1) The license is effective upon the effective date of registration for the work and, subject to the conditions and procedures stated in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, continues for the full term of copyright in the work provided in section 302 of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(2) Termination of the license may be accomplished by the copyright owner at any time by submitting a written statement of intent to terminate, signed by the copyright owner or by the duly authorized agent of the copyright owner, to the National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped of the Library of Congress. Termination will become effective 90 days after receipt of the written statement, or at a later time set forth in the statement. Upon the effective date of termination the Library of Congress will be prohibited from reproducing additional copies or phonorecords of the work, or both, without the consent of the copyright owner, but copies or phonorecords, or both, reproduced under authority of the license before the effective date of termination may continue to be utilized and distributed under the terms of the license after its termination.

(17 U.S.C. 408, 702, 710)

[45 FR 13073, Feb. 28, 1980, as amended at 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]
§ 201.16 [Reserved]

§ 201.17 Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by cable systems.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of Statements of Account and royalty fees in the Copyright Office as required by section 111(d)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code in order for secondary transmissions of cable systems to be subject to compulsory licensing.

(b) Definitions. (1) Gross receipts for the “basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmitters” include the full amount of monthly (or other periodic) service fees for any and all services or tiers of services which include one or more secondary transmissions of television or radio broadcast signals, for additional set fees, and for converter fees. In no case shall gross receipts be less than the cost of obtaining the signals of primary broadcast transmitters for subsequent retransmission. All such gross receipts shall be aggregated and the DSE calculations shall be made against the aggregated amount. Gross receipts for secondary transmission services do not include installation (including connection, relocation, disconnection, or reconnection) fees, separate charges for security, alarm or facsimile services, charges for late payments, or charges for pay cable or other program origination services. Provided That, the origination services are not offered in combination with secondary transmission service for a single fee.

(2) A cable system is a facility, located in any State, Territory, Trust Territory, or Possession, that in whole or in part receives signals transmitted or programs broadcast by one or more television broadcast stations licensed by the Federal Communications Commission and makes secondary transmissions of such signals or programs by wires, cables, microwave, or other communications channels to subscribing members of the public who pay for such service. A system that meets this definition is considered a “cable system” because of the number or nature of its subscribers or the nature of its secondary transmissions. The statements of account and royalty fees to be deposited under § 201.17 of this section, shall be recorded and deposited by each individual cable system desiring its secondary transmissions to be subject to compulsory licensing. The owner of each individual cable system on the last day of the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account is responsible for depositing the copyright royalty fees. For these purposes, and the purpose of § 201.17 of this section, an “individual” cable system is each cable system recognized as a distinct entity under the rules, regulations, and practices of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on the last day of the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account, in the case of the preparation and deposit of a Statement of Account and remitting the copyright royalty fees. For these purposes, two or more cable facilities are considered as one individual cable system if the facilities are either:

(i) In contiguous communities under common ownership or control or
(ii) Operating from one headend.

(3) FCC means the Federal Communications Commission.

(4) In the case of cable systems which make secondary transmissions of all available FM radio signals, which signals are not electronically processed by the system as separate and discrete signals, an FM radio signal is “generally receivable” if:

(i) It is usually carried by the system whenever it is received at the system’s headend, and
(ii) As a result of monitoring at reasonable times and intervals, it can be expected to be received at the system’s headend, with the system’s FM antenna, at least three consecutive hours each day at the same time each day, five or more days a week, for four or more weeks during any calendar quarter, with a strength of not less than fifty microvolts per meter measured at the foot of the tower or pole to which the antenna is attached.

(5) The terms primary transmission, secondary transmission, local service area of a primary transmitter, distant signal
equivalent, network station, independent station, and noncommercial educational station have the meanings set forth in section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553 and Pub. L. 103-369.

(6) A primary transmitter is a “distant” station, for purposes of this section, if the programming of such transmitter is carried by the cable system in whole or in part beyond the local service area of such primary transmitter.

(7) A translator station is, with respect to programs both originally transmitted and retransmitted by it, a primary transmitter for the purposes of this section. A translator station which retransmits the programs of a network station will be considered a network station; a translator station which retransmits the programs of an independent station shall be considered an independent station; and a translator station which retransmits the programs of a noncommercial educational station shall be considered a noncommercial educational station. The determination of whether a translator station should be identified as a “distant” station depends on the local service area of the translator station.

(8) For purposes of this section, the “rules and regulations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976,” which permitted a cable system, at its election, to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place, refers to that portion of former 47 CFR 76.61(b)(2), revised June 25, 1981, and §76.63 (referring to §76.61(b)(2)), deleted June 25, 1981, concerning the substitution of a program that is primarily of local interest to the distant community (e.g., a local news or public affairs program).

(9) For purposes of this section, the “rules and regulations of the FCC”, which require a cable system to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place, refers to 47 CFR 76.67.

(10) For purposes of this section, a cable system “lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry” only if:

(i) All of its activated television channels are used exclusively for the secondary transmission of television signals; and

(ii) The number of primary television transmitters secondarily transmitted by the cable system exceeds the number of its activated television channels.

(c) Accounting periods and deposit. (1) Statements of Account shall cover semiannual accounting periods of (i) January 1 through June 30 and (ii) July 1 through December 31, and shall be deposited in the Copyright Office, together with the total royalty fee for such accounting periods as prescribed by section 111(d)(1) (B), (C), or (D) of title 17, by not later than the immediately following August 29, if the Statement of Account covers the January 1 through June 30 accounting period, and by not later than the immediately following March 1, if the Statement of Account covers the July 1 through December 31 accounting period.

(2) Upon receiving a Statement of Account and royalty fee, the Copyright Office will make an official record of the actual date when such Statement and fee were physically received in the Copyright Office. Thereafter, the Office will examine the Statement and fee for obvious errors or omissions appearing on the face of the documents, and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before final processing of the documents is completed. If, as the result of communications between the Copyright Office and the cable system, an additional fee is deposited or changes or additions are made in the Statement of Account, the date that additional deposit or information was actually received in the Office will be added to the official record of the case. However, completion by the Copyright Office of the final processing of a Statement of Account and royalty fee deposit shall establish only the fact of such completion and the date or dates of receipt shown in the official record. It shall in no case be considered a determination that the Statement of Account was, in fact, properly prepared and accurate, that the correct amount of the royalty fee had been deposited, that the statutory time limits for filing had been met, or that any other requirements to qualify
§ 201.17

for a compulsory license have been satisfied.

(3) Statements of Account and royalty fees received before the end of the particular accounting period they purport to cover will not be processed by the Copyright Office. Statements of Account and royalty fees received after the filing deadlines of August 29 or March 1, respectively, will be accepted for whatever legal effect they may have, if any.

(4) In the Register’s discretion, four years after the close of any calendar year, the Register may, close out the royalty payments account for that calendar year, and may treat any funds remaining in such account and any subsequent deposits that would otherwise be attributable to that calendar year as attributable to the succeeding calendar year.

(d) Forms. (1) Each Statement of Account shall be furnished on an appropriate form prescribed by the Copyright Office, and shall contain the information required by that form and its accompanying instructions. Computation of distant signal equivalents and the copyright royalty fee shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in the forms. Copies of Statement of Account forms are available free upon request to the Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20557-6400.

(2) The forms prescribed by the Copyright Office are designated “Statement of Account for Secondary Transmissions By Cable Systems”: (i) Form SA1-2—“Short Form” for use by cable systems whose semiannual gross receipts for secondary transmission total less than $292,000 and (ii) Form SA3—“Long Form” for use by cable systems whose semiannual gross receipts for secondary transmission total $292,000 or more.

(e) Contents. Each Statement of Account shall contain the following information:

(1) A clear designation of the accounting period covered by the Statement.
(2) The designation “Owner,” followed by:

(i) The full legal name of the owner of the cable system. The owner of the cable system is the individual or entity that provides the retransmission service and collects payment from the end user either directly or indirectly through a third party. If the owner is a partnership, the name of the partnership is to be followed by the name of at least one individual partner;

(ii) Any other name or names under which the owner conducts the business of the cable system; and

(iii) The full mailing address of the owner.

Ownership, other names under which the owner conducts the business of the cable system, and the owner’s mailing address shall reflect facts existing on the last day of the accounting period covered by the Statement of Account.

(3) The designation “System,” followed by:

(i) Any business or trade names used to identify the business and operation of the system, unless these names have already been given under the designation “Owner”; and

(ii) The full mailing address of the system, unless such address is the same as the address given under the designation “Owner”.

Business or trade names used to identify the business and operation of the system, and the system’s mailing address, shall reflect the facts existing on the last day of the accounting period covered by the Statement of Account.

(4) The designation “Area Served”, followed by the name of the community or communities served by the system. For this purpose a “community” is the same as a “community unit” as defined in FCC rules and regulations.

(5) The designation “Channels,” followed by:

(i) The number of channels on which the cable system made secondary transmissions to its subscribers, and

(ii) The cable system’s total activated channel capacity, in each case during the period covered by the Statement.

(6) The designation “Secondary Transmission Service: Subscribers and Rates”, followed by:

(i) A brief description of each subscriber category for which a charge is made by the cable system for the basic
service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmitters;

(ii) The number of subscribers to the cable system in each such subscriber category; and

(iii) The charge or charges made per subscriber to each such subscriber category for the basic service of providing such secondary transmissions. Standard rate variations within a particular category should be summarized; discounts allowed for advance payment should not be included. For these purposes:

(A) The description, the number of subscribers, and the charge or charges made shall reflect the facts existing on the last day of the period covered by the Statement; and

(B) Each entity (for example, the owner of a private home, the resident of an apartment, the owner of a motel, or the owner of an apartment house) which is charged by the cable system for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions shall be considered one subscriber.

(7) The designation “Gross Receipts”, followed by the gross amount paid to the cable system by subscribers for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmissions during the period covered by the Statement of Account. If the cable system maintains its revenue accounts on an accrual basis, gross receipts for any accounting period includes all such amounts accrued for secondary transmission service furnished during that period, regardless of when accrued:

(i) Less the amount of any bad debts actually written-off during that accounting period, excluding bad debts for secondary transmission service furnished before January 1, 1978;

(ii) Plus the amount of any previously written-off bad debts for secondary transmission service which were actually recovered during that accounting period, excluding bad debt recoveries for secondary transmission service furnished before January 1, 1978.

If the cable system maintains its revenue accounts on a cash basis, gross receipts for any accounting period includes all such amounts actually received by the cable system during that accounting period, excluding amounts paid for secondary transmission service furnished before January 1, 1978; however, amounts received before January 1, 1978, for secondary transmission service furnished after that date, are to be considered as if they had been received during the accounting period in which the service covered by such payments was furnished.

(8) The designation “Services Other Than Secondary Transmissions: Rates,” followed by a description of each package of service which consists solely of services other than secondary transmission services, for which a separate charge was made or established, and which the cable system furnished or made available to subscribers during the period covered by the Statement of Account, together with the amount of such charge. However, no information need be given concerning services furnished at cost. Specific amounts charged for pay cable programming need not be given if the rates are on a variable, per-program basis. (The fact of such variable charge shall be indicated.)

(9) The designation “Primary Transmitters: Television”, followed by an identification of all primary television transmitters whose signals were carried by the cable system during the period covered by the Statement of Account, other than primary transmitters of programs carried by the cable system exclusively pursuant to rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, permitting the substitution of signals under certain circumstances, and required to be specially identified by paragraph (e)(11) of this section, together with the information listed below:

(i) The station call sign of the primary transmitter.

(ii) The name of the community to which that primary transmitter is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(iii) The number of the channel upon which that primary transmitter broadcasts in the community to which that primary transmitter is licensed by the
§ 201.17

FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(iv) A designation as to whether that primary transmitter is a “network station”, an “independent station”, or a “noncommercial educational station”.

(v) A designation as to whether that primary transmitter is a “network station”, an “independent station”, or a “noncommercial educational station”.

(vi) A designation as to whether that primary transmitter is a “distant” station.

(vii) If that primary transmitter is a “distant” station, a specification of whether the signals of that primary transmitter are carried:

(A) On a part-time basis where full-time carriage is not possible because the cable system lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry; or

(B) On any other basis.

If the signals of that primary transmitter are carried on a part-time basis because of lack of activated channel capacity, the Statement shall also include a log showing the dates on which such carriage occurred, and the hours during which such carriage occurred on those dates. Hours of carriage shall be accurate to the nearest quarter-hour, except that, in any case where such part-time carriage extends to the end of the broadcast day of the primary transmitter, an approximate ending hour may be given if it is indicated as an estimate.

(viii) The information indicated by paragraph (e)(9), subclauses (v) and (vi) of this section, is not required to be given by any cable system that appropriately completed Form SA1-2 for the period covered by the Statement.

(vii) Notwithstanding the requirements of this section, where a cable system carried a distant primary transmitter under FCC rules and regulations in effect on October 19, 1976 which permitted carriage of specific network programs on a part-time basis in certain circumstances (former 47 CFR 76.59 (d) (2) and (4), 76.61(e) (2) and (4), and 76.63, referring to §76.61(e) (2) and (4), all of which were deleted June 25, 1981), carriage of that primary transmitter on that basis need not be reported, and that carriage is to be excluded in computing the distant signal equivalent of that primary transmitter.

(x) The designation “Primary Transmitters: Radio”, followed by an identification of primary radio transmitters whose signals were carried by the cable system during the period covered by the Statement of Account, together with the information listed below:

(i) A designation as to whether each primary transmitter was electronically processed by the system as a separate and discrete signal.

(ii) The station call sign of each:

(A) AM primary transmitter;

(B) FM primary transmitter, the signals of which were electronically processed by the system as separate and discrete signals; and

(C) FM primary transmitter carried on an all-band retransmission basis, the signals of which were generally receivable by the system.

(iii) A designation as to whether the primary transmitter is AM or FM.

(iv) The name of the community to which that primary transmitter is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(11) A special statement and program log, which shall consist of the information indicated below for all nonnetwork television programming that, during the period covered by the Statement, was carried in whole or in part beyond the local service area of the primary transmitter of such programming under (i) rules or regulations of the FCC requiring a cable system to omit the further transmission of a particular program and permitting the substitution of another program in place of the omitted transmission; or (ii) rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, permitting a cable system, at its election, to omit the further transmission of a particular program and permitting the substitution of another program in place of the omitted transmission:

(A) The name or title of the substitute program.

(B) Whether the substitute program was transmitted live by its primary transmitter.
(C) The station call sign of the primary transmitter of the substitute program.

(D) The name of the community to which the primary transmitter of the substitute program is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(E) The date when the secondary transmission of the substitute program occurred, and the hours during which such secondary transmission occurred on that date accurate to the nearest 5 minutes.

(F) A designation as to whether deletion of the omitted program was permitted by the rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, or was required by the rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC.

(12) A statement of the total royalty fee payable for the period covered by the Statement of Account, together with a royalty fee analysis which gives a clear, complete, and detailed presentation of the determination of such fee. This analysis shall present in appropriate sequence all facts, figures, and mathematical processes used in determining such fee, and shall do so in such manner as required in the appropriate form so as to permit the Copyright Office to verify readily, from the face of the Statement of Account, the accuracy of such determination and fee. The royalty fee analysis is not required to be given by any cable system whose gross receipts from subscribers for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmissions, total $75,800 or less.

(13) The name, address, and telephone number of an individual who may be contacted by the Copyright Office for further information about the Statement of Account.

(14) The handwritten signature of:

(i) The owner of the cable system or a duly authorized agent of the owner, if the owner is not a partnership or a corporation; or

(ii) A partner, if the owner is a partnership; or

(iii) An officer of the corporation, if the owner is a corporation. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(A) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Statement of Account;

(B) The date of signature;

(C) If the owner of the cable system is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Statement of Account;

(D) A certification of the capacity of the person signing; and

(E) A declaration of the veracity of the statements of fact contained in the Statement of Account and the good faith of the person signing in making such statement of fact.

(f) Computation of distant signal equivalents. (1) A cable system that elects to delete a particular television program and substitute for that program another television program ("substitute program") under rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, which permit a cable system, at its election, to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place shall compute the distant signal equivalent ("DSE") of each primary transmitter that broadcasts one or more substitute programs by dividing:

(i) The number of the primary transmitter's live, nonnetwork, substitute programs that were carried by the cable system, during the period covered by the Statement of Account, for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmissions, total $75,800 or less.

(ii) The number of days in the year in which the substitution occurred.

(2)(i) Where a cable system carries a primary transmitter on a full-time basis during any portion of an accounting period, the system shall compute a DSE for that primary transmitter as if it was carried full-time during the entire accounting period.

(ii) Where a cable system carries a primary transmitter solely on a substitute or part-time basis, in accordance with paragraph (f)(3) of this section, the system shall compute a DSE for that primary transmitter based on its cumulative carriage on a substitute or part-time basis.
§201.17

37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)

transmitter is carried on a full-time basis as well as on a substitute or part-time basis, the full DSE for that primary transmitter shall be the full DSE type value for that primary transmitter, for the entire accounting period.

(3)(i) In computing the DSE of a primary transmitter in a particular case of carriage before July 1, 1981, the cable system may make no prorated adjustments other than those specified as permissible “exceptions and limitations” in the definition of “distant signal equivalent” in the fifth paragraph of section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. Four prorated adjustments, as prescribed in the fourth and fifth sentences of said definition, are permitted under certain conditions where:

(A) A station is carried pursuant to the late-night programming rules of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on the date of carriage;

(B) A station is carried pursuant to the specialty programming rules of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on the date of carriage;

(C) A station is carried on a part-time basis where full-time carriage is not possible because the cable system lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry; and

(D) A station is carried on a “substitute” basis under rules, regulations, or authorizations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on October 19, 1976.

(ii) In computing the DSE of a primary transmitter in a particular case of carriage on or after July 1, 1981, the cable system may make no prorated adjustments other than those specified as permissible “exceptions and limitations” in the definition of “distant signal equivalent” in the fifth paragraph of section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, and which remain in force under that provision. Two prorated adjustments, as prescribed in the fourth and fifth sentences of said definition, are permitted under certain conditions where:

(A) A station is carried on a part-time basis where full-time carriage is not possible because the cable system lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry; and

(B) A station is carried on a “substitute” basis under rules, regulations, or authorizations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on October 19, 1976, which permitted a cable system, at its election, to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place.

(4) In computing a DSE, a cable system may round off to the third decimal point. If a DSE is rounded off in any case in a Statement of Account, it must be rounded off throughout the Statement. Where a cable system has chosen to round off, and the fourth decimal point for a particular DSE value would, without rounding off, have been 1, 2, 3, or 4, the third decimal point remains unchanged; if, in such a case, the fourth decimal point would, without rounding off, be 5, 6, 7, 8, or 9, the third decimal point must be rounded off to the next higher number.

(5) For the purposes of computing DSE values, specialty primary television transmitters in the United States and all Canadian and Mexican primary television transmitters shall be assigned a value of one.

(g) Computation of the copyright royalty fee: Partially distant stations. A cable system located partly within and partly without the local service area of a primary television transmitter (“partially distant station”) computes the royalty fee specified in section 111(d)(1)(B), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of the Copyright Act (“DSE fee”) by excluding gross receipts from subscribers located within that station’s local service area from total gross receipts. A cable system which carries two or more partially distant stations with local service areas that do not exactly coincide shall compute a separate DSE fee for each group of subscribers who are located outside of the local service areas of exactly the same complement of distant stations. Computation of the DSE fee for each subscriber group is to be based on:
(1) The total distant signal equivalents of that group's complement of distant stations, and
(2) The total gross receipts from that group of subscribers. The copyright royalty fee for that cable system is:
   (i) The total of the subscriber group royalty fees thus computed, or
   (ii) 0.893 of 1 percent of the system's gross receipts from all subscribers, whichever is larger.

(h) Computation of the copyright royalty fee pursuant to the 1982 cable rate adjustment.

(i) The cable system shall first determine those DSE's to which the 3.75% rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(c) applies.

(iii) The cable system shall compute Form SA3 in the following manner:
   (i) The cable system shall first determine those DSE's to which the 3.75% rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(c) applies.
   (ii) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's, the current base rate shall apply.

(iv) Commencing with the semi-annual accounting period of January 1, 1998, through June 30, 1998, the 3.75% rate applies to certain DSE's in the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 1, 1972. With respect to statements of account covering the filing period beginning January 1, 1990, and subsequent filing periods, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply only to those DSE's that represent commercial VHF signals which place a predicted Grade B contour, in whole or in part, over a cable system. The surcharge will not apply if the signal is exempt from the syndicated exclusivity rules in effect on June 24, 1981.

(v) The 3.75% rate means the rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(a), in effect on March 15, 1983.

(vi) The terms DSE or DSE's mean "distant signal equivalent(s)" as defined in 17 U.S.C. 111(f) and any fraction thereof.
§ 201.17

Partially-distant stations, gross receipts shall be the total gross receipts from subscribers outside the local service area.

(3) A cable system whose semiannual gross receipts for secondary transmissions totalled $214,000 or more during the period January 1, 1983, through June 30, 1983, shall compute its royalty fee for carriage during that period in the following manner:

(i) Copyright royalty fees must be paid on the basis of carriage for the entire accounting period except where proration of the DSE is permitted as described in paragraph (f)(3) of this section.

(ii) Where a distant signal was carried at any time only between January 1, 1983, and March 14, 1983;

(A) In the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate, together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972.

(B) In case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate shall apply.

(iii) Where a distant signal was carried at any time after March 14, 1983;

(A) The cable system shall first determine those DSE’s to which the 3.75% rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(c) applies.

(B) If the 3.75% rate is applicable to a particular DSE, it shall be applied against the per centum .4033 (representing the number of days from January 1, 1983, through June 30, 1983, inclusive, in relation to the entire accounting period); and either

(1) In the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate, together with the surcharge, applied against the per centum .4033 (representing the number of days from January 1, 1983, through March 14, 1983, inclusive, in relation to the entire accounting period); however, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972; or

(2) In the case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate applied against the per centum .4033.

(C) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE’s, in the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972.

(D) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE’s, in the case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate shall apply.

(4)(i) Separate Supplemental DSE Schedules as prescribed by the Copyright Office shall be completed and filed by a cable system affected by the 1982 cable rate adjustment for the accounting periods January 1, 1983, through June 30, 1983 (83-1), and July 1, 1983, through December 31, 1983 (83-2). Each Supplemental DSE schedule shall contain the information required by that form and its accompanying instructions.

(ii) The Supplemental DSE Schedule will be mailed to all cable systems whose gross receipts for secondary transmissions total $214,000 or more either for accounting period 83-1 or for 83-2, and shall be completed and returned to the Copyright Office with the supplemental royalty fee due, if any, within sixty-five (65) days from the date of mailing by the Copyright Office.

(iii) Cable systems located wholly outside all major and smaller television markets as defined by the FCC are not affected by the 1982 cable rate adjustment. Such systems shall complete a certifying statement provided in the Supplemental DSE Schedule and return it within sixty-five (65) days from the date of mailing by the Copyright Office.

(5)(i) It shall be presumed that the 3.75% rate of 37 CFR 308.2(c) applies to DSE’s accruing from newly added distant signals, carried for the first time by a cable system after June 24, 1981.

(ii) The presumption of paragraph (h)(5)(i) of this section can be rebutted in whole or in part:

(A) By actual carriage of a particular distant signal prior to June 25, 1981, as
reported in Statements of Account duly filed with the Copyright Office ("actual carriage"), unless the prior carriage was not permitted by the FCC; or

(B) By carriage of no more than the number of distant signals which was or would have been allotted to the cable system under the FCC's quota for importation of network and nonspecialty independent stations (47 CFR 76.59(b), 76.61 (b) and (c) and 76.63, referring to 76.61 (b) and (c), in effect on June 24, 1981).

(6) To qualify as an FCC-permitted signal on the ground of individual waiver of the FCC rules (47 CFR 76.7 in effect on June 24, 1981), the waiver must have actually been granted by the FCC, and the signal must have been first carried by the cable system after April 15, 1976.

(7) Expanded geographic carriage after June 24, 1981, of a signal previously carried within only certain parts of a cable system is governed by the current base rate and the surcharge, if applicable.

(8) In cases of expanded temporal carriage of the same signal, previously carried pursuant to the FCC's former part-time or substitute carriage rules (47 CFR 76.61(b)(2), 76.61 (e)(1) and (e)(3), and 76.63, referring to 76.61 (e)(1) and (e)(3), in effect on June 24, 1981), the 3.75% rate shall be applied to any additional fraction of a DSE accruing from the expanded temporal carriage of that signal. To identify such additional DSE's, a comparison shall be made of DSE's reported for that signal in any single accounting period prior to the July 1, 1981, to December 31, 1981, period (81-2), as designated by the cable system, with the DSE's for that same signal reported in the current relevant accounting period.

(9) Substitution of like signals pursuant to 37 CFR 256.2(c) is possible at the relevant non-3.75% rate (the surcharge together with the current base rate, or the current base rate alone) only if the substitution does not exceed the number of distant signals which was or would have been allotted to the cable system under the FCC's television market quota for importation of network and nonspecialty independent stations (47 CFR 76.59(b), 76.61 (b) and (c), and 76.63, referring to 76.61 (b) and (c), in effect on June 24, 1981.

(i) Royalty fee payment. All royalty fees may be paid by electronic transfer of funds, provided the payment is received in the designated United States Federal Reserve Bank by the filing deadline for the relevant accounting period. Except in the case of an electronic payment, the royalty fee payable for the period covered by the Statement of Account shall accompany that Statement of Account and shall be deposited at the Copyright Office with it. Payment must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, or a money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or a United States Treasury electronic payment.

(2) Royalty fee payments submitted as a result of late or amended filings shall include interest. Interest shall begin to accrue on the first day after the close of the period for filing statements of account for all underpayments of royalties for the cable compulsory license occurring within that accounting period. The accrual period shall end on the date appearing on the certified check, cashier's check, money order or electronic payment submitted by a cable system, provided that such payment is received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date. If the payment is not received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date, then the accrual period shall end on the date of actual receipt by the Copyright Office.

(i) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period beginning with the 1992/2 period shall be the Current Value of Funds Rate, as established by section 8025.40 of the Treasury Financial Manual and published in the Federal Register, in effect on the first business day after the close of the filing deadline for that accounting period. Cable operators wishing to obtain the interest rate for a specific accounting period may do so by consulting the Federal Register for the applicable Current Value of Funds Rate, or by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office.

(ii) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period earlier than the 1992/2 period shall be the rate fixed
§ 201.17

37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)

by the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office pursuant to 37 CFR 201.17(i) in effect on June 30, 1992.

(iii) Interest is not required to be paid on any royalty underpayment or late payment from a particular accounting period if the interest charge is less than or equal to five dollars ($5.00).

(j) Corrections, supplemental payments, and refunds. (1) Upon compliance with the procedures and within the time limits set forth in paragraph (j)(3) of this section, corrections to Statements of Account will be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will be received for deposit, or refunds will be issued, in the following cases:

(i) Where, with respect to the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account, any of the information given in the Statement filed in the Copyright Office is incorrect or incomplete;

(ii) Where, for any reason except that mentioned in paragraph (j)(1)(iii) of this section, calculation of the royalty fee payable for a particular accounting period was incorrect, and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office for that period was either too high or too low; or

(iii) Where, for the semiannual accounting period of January 1, 1978, through June 30, 1978, the total royalty fee deposited was incorrect because the cable operator failed to compute royalties attributable to carriage of late-night, specialty, or part-time programming between January 1, 1978, and February 9, 1978.

(2) Corrections to Statements of Account will not be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will not be received for deposit, and refunds will not be issued, where the information in the Statements of Account, the royalty fee calculations, or the payments were correct as of the date on which the accounting period ended, but changes (for example, addition or deletion of a distant signal) took place later.

(3) Requests that corrections to a Statement of Account be placed on record, that fee payments be accepted, or requests for the issuance of refunds, shall be made only in the cases mentioned in paragraph (j)(1) of this section. Such requests shall be addressed to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall meet the following conditions:

(i) The request must be in writing, must clearly identify its purpose, and, in the case of a request for a refund, must be received in the Copyright Office before the expiration of 60 days from the last day of the applicable Statement of Account filing period, or before the expiration of 60 days from the date of receipt at the Copyright Office of the royalty payment that is the subject of the request, whichever time period is longer. A request made by telephone or by telegraphic or similar unsigned communication, will be considered to meet this requirement if it clearly identifies the basis of the request, if it is received in the Copyright Office within the required 60-day period, and if a written request meeting all the conditions of this paragraph (j)(3) is also received in the Copyright Office within 14 days after the end of such 60-day period;

(ii) The Statement of Account to which the request pertains must be sufficiently identified in the request (by inclusion of the name of the owner of the cable system, the community or communities served, and the accounting period in question) so that it can be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(iii) The request must contain a clear statement of the facts on which it is based and provide a clear basis on which a refund may be granted, in accordance with the following procedures:

(A) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section, where the information given in the Statement of Account is incorrect or incomplete, the request must clearly identify the erroneous or incomplete information and provide the correct or additional information;

(B) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (j)(1)(ii) of this section, where the royalty fee was miscalculated and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office was either too high or too low, the request must be accompanied by an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United
States, or a statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code, made and signed in accordance with paragraph (e)(14) of this section. The affidavit or statement shall describe the reasons why the royalty fee was improperly calculated and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculations:

(C) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (j)(1)(iii) of this section, the request shall be identified as “Transitional and Supplemental Royalty Fee Payment” and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculations;

(iv)(A) All requests filed under this paragraph (j) (except those filed under subparagraph (1)(iii) of this paragraph) must be accompanied by a filing fee in the amount of $15 for each Statement of Account involved. Payment of this fee may be in the form of a personal or company check, or of a certified check, cashier’s check or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights. No request will be processed until the appropriate filing fees are received.

(B) All requests that a supplemental royalty fee payment be received for deposit under this paragraph (j), must be accompanied by a remittance in the full amount of such fee. Payment of the supplemental royalty fee must be in the form of a certified check, cashier’s check, or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or an electronic payment. No such request will be processed until an acceptable remittance in the full amount of the supplemental royalty fee has been received.

(v) All requests submitted under this paragraph (j) must be signed by the cable system owner named in the Statement of Account, or the duly authorized agent of the owner, in accordance with paragraph (e)(14) of this section.

(vi) A request for a refund is not necessary where the Licensing Division, during its examination of a Statement of Account or related document, discovers an error that has resulted in a royalty overpayment. In this case, the Licensing Division will forward the royalty refund to the cable system owner without regard to the time limitations provided for in paragraph (j)(3)(i) of this section.

(4) Following final processing, all requests submitted under this paragraph (j) will be filed with the original Statement of Account in the records of the Copyright Office. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be considered to relieve cable systems from their full obligations under title 17 of the United States Code, and the filing of a correction or supplemental payment shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(k) Satellite carriers not eligible. Satellite carriers and satellite resale carriers are not eligible for the cable compulsory license based upon an interpretation of the whole of section 111 of title 17 of the United States Code.

(17 U.S.C. 111, 702, 708)

[43 FR 27832, June 27, 1978]

EDITORIAL NOTE: For Federal Register citations affecting §201.17, see the List of CFR Sections Affected in the Finding Aids section of this volume.

§ 201.18 Notice of intention to obtain a compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(a) General. (1) A “Notice of Intention” is a notice identified in section 115(b) of title 17 of the United States Code, and required by that section to be served on a copyright owner, or in certain cases to be filed in the Copyright Office, to obtain a compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(2) A separate Notice of Intention shall be served or filed for each nondramatic musical work embodied, or intended to be embodied, in phonorecords made under the compulsory license.

(3) For the purposes of this section, the term copyright owner, in the case of any work having more than one copyright owner, means any one of the co-owners. In such cases, the service of a Notice of Intention on any one of the co-owners under paragraph (e)(2) of this section shall be sufficient with respect to all co-owners.

(4) For the purposes of this section, a digital phonorecord delivery shall be
§201.18 * 37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)

(378) treated as a type of phonorecord configuration, and a digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as a phonorecord manufactured, made, and distributed on the date the phonorecord is digitally transmitted.

(b) Form. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving or filing Notices of Intention.

(c) Content. (1) A Notice of Intention shall be clearly and prominently designated, at the head of the notice, as a “Notice of Intention to Obtain a Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords,” and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) The full legal name of the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license, together with all fictitious or assumed names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords;

(ii) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(iii) A statement of the nature of each and every business organization that the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license will use for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords under the license (for example, a corporation, a partnership, or an individual proprietorship); additionally:

(A) If the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license is a corporation registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Notice shall so state.

(B) If the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license is a corporation that is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Notice shall include a list of the names of the corporation’s directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of that corporation;

(C) In all other cases, the Notice shall include the names of each entity or individual owning a beneficial interest of twenty-five percent (25%) or more in the entity intending to exercise the compulsory license. If a corporate entity is named in response to this paragraph (C), then: if that corporation is registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Notice shall so state; if that corporation is not so registered, the Notice shall include a list of the names of the corporation’s directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of that corporation;

(iv) The fiscal year of the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license. If that fiscal year is a calendar year, the Notice shall state that this is the case;

(v) The title of the nondramatic musical work embodied or intended to be embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license, and the names of the author or authors of such work if known;

(vi) The types of all phonorecord configurations already made (if any) and expected to be made under the compulsory license (for example: Single disk, long-playing disk, cassette, cartridge, reel-to-reel, a digital phonorecord delivery, or a combination of them);

(vii) The expected date of initial distribution of phonorecords already made (if any) or expected to be made under the compulsory license;

(viii) The name of the principal recording artist or group actually engaged or expected to be engaged in rendering the performances fixed on phonorecords already made (if any) or expected to be made under the compulsory license;

(ix) The catalog number or numbers, and label name or names, used or expected to be used on phonorecords already made (if any) or expected to be made under the compulsory license; and
(x) In the case of phonorecords already made (if any) under the compulsory license, the date or dates of such manufacture.

(2) A “clear statement” of the information listed in paragraph (c)(1) of this section requires a clearly intelligible, legible, and unambiguous statement in the Notice itself and (subject to paragraph (c)(1)(iii)(A) of this section) without incorporation by reference of facts or information contained in other documents or records.

(3) Where information is required to be given by paragraph (c)(1) of this section “if known” or as “expected”, such information shall be given in good faith and on the basis of the best knowledge, information, and belief of the person signing the Notice. If so given, later developments affecting the accuracy of such information shall not affect the validity of the Notice.

(d) Signature. The Notice shall be signed by the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license. If that person or entity is a corporation, the signature shall be that of a duly authorized officer of the corporation; if that person or entity is a partnership, the signature shall be that of a partner. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Notice, and by the date of signature.

(e) Filing and service. (1) If, with respect to the nondramatic musical work named in the Notice of Intention, the registration or other public records of the Copyright Office do not identify the copyright owner of such work and include an address for such owner, the Notice shall be filed in the Copyright Office. Notices of Intention submitted for filing shall accompany the fee specified in §201.3(e). Notices of Intention will be filed by being placed in the appropriate public records of the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall be accompanied by a brief statement that the Notice was sent to the last address for the copyright owner shown by the records of the Copyright Office but was returned, and by appropriate evidence that it was sent by certified or registered mail to that address. In these cases, the Copyright Office will specially mark its records to consider the date the original Notice was mailed, as shown by the evidence mentioned above, as the date of filing. A written acknowledgement of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender. No filing fee will be required in the case of Notices filed under this paragraph (e)(3).

(17 U.S.C. 115, 702, 708)

§201.19 Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(a) Definitions. (1) A Monthly Statement of Account is a statement accompanying monthly royalty payments identified in section 115(c)(5) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, and required by that
section to be made under the compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(2) An Annual Statement of Account is a statement identified in section 115(c)(5) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, and required by that section to be filed for every compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(3) For the purposes of this section, the term copyright owner, in the case of any work having more than one copyright owner means any one of the owners. In such cases, the service of a Statement of Account, on one co-owner under paragraph (e)(7) or (f)(7) of this section shall be sufficient with respect to all co-owners.

(4) For the purposes of this section, a compulsory licensee is a person or entity exercising the compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works as provided under section 115 of title 17 of the United States Code.

(5) For the purposes of this section, a digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as a type of phonorecord configuration, and a digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as a phonorecord, with the following clarifications:

(i) A digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as a phonorecord made and distributed on the date the phonorecord is digitally transmitted; and

(ii) A digital phonorecord delivery shall be treated as having been voluntarily distributed and relinquished from possession, and a compulsory licensee shall be treated as having permanently parted with possession of a digital phonorecord delivery, on the date that the phonorecord is digitally transmitted.

(6) Except as provided in paragraph (a)(5), a phonorecord is considered voluntarily distributed if the compulsory licensee has voluntarily and permanently parted with possession of the phonorecord. For this purpose, and subject to the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, a compulsory licensee shall be considered to have “permanently parted with possession” of a phonorecord made under the license:

(i) In the case of phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes other than sale, at the time at which the compulsory licensee actually first parts with possession;

(ii) In the case of phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes of sale without a privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange, at the time at which the compulsory licensee actually first parts with possession;

(iii) In the case of phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange:

(A) At the time when revenue from a sale of the phonorecord is “recognized” by the compulsory licensee; or

(B) Nine months from the month in which the compulsory licensee actually first parted with possession, whichever occurs first.

For these purposes, a compulsory licensee shall be considered to “recognize” revenue from the sale of a phonorecord when sales revenue would be recognized in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as expressed by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants or the Financial Accounting Standards Board, whichever would cause sales revenue to be recognized first.

(7) To the extent that the terms reserve, credit and return appear in this section, such provisions shall not apply to digital phonorecord deliveries.

(8) A phonorecord reserve comprises the number of phonorecords, if any, that have been relinquished from possession for purposes of sale in a given month accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, and that have not been considered voluntarily distributed during the month in which the compulsory licensee actually first parted with their possession. The initial number of phonorecords comprising a phonorecord reserve shall be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as expressed by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants or the Financial Accounting Standards Board.

(9) A negative reserve balance comprises the aggregate number of
phonorecords, if any, that have been relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, and that have been returned to the compulsory licensee, but because all available phonorecord reserves have been eliminated, have not been used to reduce a phonorecord reserve.

(10) An incomplete transmission is any digital transmission of a sound recording which, as determined by means within the sole control of the distributor, does not result in a specifically identifiable reproduction of the entire sound recording by or for any transmission recipient.

(11) A retransmission is a subsequent digital transmission of the same sound recording initially transmitted to an identified recipient for the purpose of completing the delivery of a complete and usable reproduction of that sound recording to that recipient.

(b) Accounting requirements where sales revenue is "recognized." Where under paragraph (a)(5)(iii)(A) of this section, revenue from the sale of phonorecords is "recognized" during any month after the month in which the compulsory licensee actually first parted with their possession, said compulsory licensee shall reduce particular phonorecord reserves by the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized," as follows:

(1) If the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized" is smaller than the number of phonorecords comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve, this phonorecord reserve shall be reduced by the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized." Subject to the time limitations of subparagraph (B) of this §201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(2) If the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized" is greater than the number of phonorecords comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve but less than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the compulsory licensee shall first eliminate those phonorecord reserves, beginning with the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve and continuing to the next succeeding phonorecord reserves, that are completely offset by phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized." Said licensee shall then reduce the next succeeding phonorecord reserve by the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized" that have not been used to eliminate a phonorecord reserve. Subject to the time limitations of subparagraph (B) of this §201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(3) If the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being "recognized" equals the number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the person or entity exercising the compulsory license shall eliminate all of the phonorecord reserves.

(c) Accounting requirements for offsetting phonorecord reserves with returned phonorecords. (1) In the case of a phonorecord that has been relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, where the phonorecord is returned to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange before said compulsory licensee is considered to have "permanently parted with possession" of the phonorecord under paragraph (a)(5) of this section, the compulsory licensee may use such phonorecords to reduce a "phonorecord reserve," as defined in paragraph (a)(6) of this section.

(2) In such cases, the compulsory licensee shall reduce particular phonorecord reserves by the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement of Account in the following manner:

(i) If the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement is smaller than the number comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve, the compulsory licensee shall reduce this phonorecord reserve by the total number of returned phonorecords. Subject to the time limitations of paragraph (B) of §201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in
§ 201.19

37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)

this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(ii) If the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement is greater than the number of phonorecords comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve but less than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the compulsory licensee shall first eliminate those phonorecord reserves, beginning with the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve, and continuing to the next succeeding phonorecord reserves, that are completely offset by returned phonorecords. Said licensee shall then reduce the next succeeding phonorecord reserve by the number of returned phonorecords that have not been used to eliminate a phonorecord reserve. Subject to the time limitations of paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(iii) If the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement is equal to or is greater than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the compulsory licensee shall eliminate all eligible phonorecord reserves. Where said number is greater than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, said compulsory licensee shall establish a "negative reserve balance," as defined in paragraph (a)(7) of this section.

(3) Except where a negative reserve balance exists, a separate and distinct phonorecord reserve shall be established for each month during which the compulsory licensee relinquishes phonorecords from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section. In accordance with paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), any phonorecord remaining in a particular phonorecord reserve nine months from the month in which the particular reserve was established shall be considered "voluntarily distributed"; at that point, the particular monthly phonorecord reserve shall lapse and royalties for the phonorecords remaining in it shall be paid as provided in paragraph (e)(4)(ii) of this section.

(4) Where a negative reserve balance exists, the aggregate total of phonorecords comprising it shall be accumulated into a single balance rather than being separated into distinct monthly balances. Following the establishment of a negative reserve balance, any phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale or otherwise, shall be credited against such negative balance, and the negative reserve balance shall be reduced accordingly. The nine-month limit provided by paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii) shall have no effect upon a negative reserve balance; where a negative reserve balance exists, relinquishment from possession of a phonorecord by the compulsory licensee at any time shall be used to reduce such balance, and shall not be considered a "voluntary distribution" within the meaning of paragraph (a)(5) of this section.

(5) In no case shall a phonorecord reserve be established while a negative reserve balance is in existence; conversely, in no case shall a negative reserve balance be established before all available phonorecord reserves have been eliminated.

(d) Situations in which a compulsory licensee is barred from maintaining reserves. Notwithstanding any other provisions of this section, in any case where, within three years before the phonorecord was relinquished from possession, the compulsory licensee has had final judgment entered against it for failure to pay royalties for the reproduction of copyrighted music on phonorecords, or within such period has been definitively found in any proceeding involving bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, assignment for the benefit of creditors, or similar action, to have failed to pay such royalties, that compulsory licensee shall be considered to have "Permanently parted with possession" of a phonorecord made under the license at the time at which that licensee actually first parts with possession. For these purposes the "compulsory licensee," as defined in § 201.19(a)(4), shall include:
Copyright Office, Library of Congress § 201.19

(1) In the case of any corporation, the corporation or any director, officer, or beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of the corporation;

(2) In all other cases, any entity or individual owning a beneficial interest of twenty-five percent (25%) or more in the entity exercising the compulsory license.

(e) Monthly statements of account—(1) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Monthly Statements of Account.

(2) General content. A Monthly Statement of Account shall be clearly and prominently identified as a “Monthly Statement of Account Under Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords,” and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) The period (month and year) covered by the Monthly Statement;

(ii) The full legal name of the compulsory licensee, together with all fictitious or assumed names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords;

(iii) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the compulsory licensee. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose, except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(iv) The title or titles of the nondramatic musical work or works embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license and owned by the copyright owner being served with the Monthly Statement and the name of the author or authors of such work or works, if known;

(v) For each nondramatic musical work that is owned by the same copyright owner being served with the Monthly Statement and that is embodied in phonorecords covered by the compulsory license, a detailed statement of all of the information called for in paragraph (e)(3) of this section;

(vi) The total royalty payable for the month covered by the Monthly Statement, computed in accordance with the requirements of this section and the formula specified in paragraph (e)(4) of this section, together with a statement of account showing in detail how the royalty was computed; and

(vii) In any case where the compulsory licensee falls within the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, a clear description of the action or proceeding involved, including the date of the final judgment or definitive finding described in that paragraph.

(3) Specific content of monthly statements: Identification and accounting of phonorecords. (i) The information called for by paragraph (e)(2)(v) of this section shall, with respect to each nondramatic musical work, include a separate listing of each of the following items of information:

(A) The number of phonorecords, including digital phonorecord deliveries, made during the month covered by the Monthly Statement;

(B) The number of phonorecords that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement and regardless of when made, were either:

- Relinquished from possession for purposes other than sale;
- Relinquished from possession for purposes of sale without any privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange;
- Relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange;
- Returned to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange;
- Placed in a phonorecord reserve (except that if a negative reserve balance exists give either the number of phonorecords added to the negative reserve balance, or the number of phonorecords relinquished from possession that have been used to reduce the negative reserve balance);

- Never delivered due to a failed transmission; or
- Digitally retransmitted in order to complete a digital phonorecord delivery.

(C) The number of phonorecords, regardless of when made, that were relinquished from possession during a month earlier than the month covered by the Monthly Statement but that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement either have had revenue from their sale “recognized” under paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, or were comprised in a phonorecord reserve that lapsed after nine
§ 201.19

37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)

months under paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii).

(ii) Each of the items of information called for by paragraph (e)(3)(i) of this section shall also include, and if necessary shall be broken down to identify separately, the following:

(A) The catalog number or numbers and label name or names, used on the phonorecords;

(B) The names of the principals recording artist or group engaged in rendering the performances fixed on the phonorecords;

(C) The playing time on the phonorecords of each nondramatic musical work covered by the statement; and

(D) Each phonorecord configuration involved (for example: single disk, long-playing disk, cartridge, cassette, reel-to-reel, digital phonorecord delivery, or a combination of them).

(E) The date of and a reason for each incomplete transmission.

(i) Royalty payment and accounting. (i) The total royalty called for by paragraph (e)(2)(vi) of this section shall, as specified in section 115(c)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code, be payable for every phonorecord "voluntarily distributed" during the month covered by the Monthly Statement.

(ii) The amount of the royalty payment shall be calculated in accordance with the following formula:

Step 1: Compute the number of phonorecords shipped for sale with a privilege of return. This is the total of phonorecords that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement, were relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee, accompanied by the privilege of returning unsold phonorecords to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange. This total does not include: (1) Any phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale without the privilege of return; and (2) any phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes other than sale.

Step 2: Subtract the number of phonorecords reserved. This involves deducting, from the subtotal arrived at in Step 1, the number of phonorecords that have been placed in the phonorecord reserve for the month covered by the Monthly Statement. The number of phonorecords reserved is determined by multiplying the subtotal from Step 1 by the percentage reserve level established under GAAP. This step should be skipped by a compulsory licensee barred from maintaining reserves under paragraph (d) of this section.

Step 3: Add the total of all phonorecords that were shipped during the month and were not counted in Step 1. This total is the sum of two figures: (1) The number of phonorecords that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement, were relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale, without the privilege of returning unsold phonorecords to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange; and (2) the number of phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement, for purposes other than sale.

Step 4: Make any necessary adjustments for sales revenue "recognized," lapsed reserves, or reduction of negative reserve balance during the month. If necessary, this step involves adding to or subtracting from the subtotal arrived at in Step 3 on the basis of three possible types of adjustments:

(a) Sales revenue "recognized." If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, any phonorecords remaining in the phonorecord reserve for the ninth previous month (that is, any phonorecord reserves from the ninth previous month that have not been offset under FOFI, the first-out-first-in accounting convention, by actual returns during the intervening months), the reserve lapses and the number of phonorecords in it is added to the Step 3 subtotal;

(b) Lapsed reserves. If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, there are any phonorecords remaining in the phonorecord reserve for the ninth previous month (that is, any phonorecord reserves from the ninth previous month that have not been offset under FOFI, the first-out-first-in accounting convention, by actual returns during the intervening months), the reserve lapses and the number of phonorecords in it is added to the Step 3 subtotal;

(c) Reduction of negative reserve balance. If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, the aggregate reserve balance for all previous months is a negative amount, the number of phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee during that month and used to reduce the negative reserve balance is subtracted from the Step 3 subtotal;

(d) Incomplete transmissions. If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, there are any digital transmissions of a sound recording which do not result in specifically identifiable reproductions of the entire sound recording by or for any transmission recipient, as determined by means within the sole control of the distributor, the number of such phonorecords is subtracted from the Step 3 subtotal.

(e) Retransmitted digital phonorecords. If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, there are retransmissions of a digital phonorecord to a recipient who did not receive a complete and usable phonorecord during an initial transmission, and such transmissions are made for the sole purpose
Copyright Office, Library of Congress § 201.19

of delivering a complete and usable reproduction of the initially requested sound recording to that recipient, the number of such retransmitted digital phonorecords is subtracted from the Step 3 subtotal.

Step 5: Multiply by the statutory royalty rate. The total monthly royalty payment is obtained by multiplying the subtotal from Step 3, as adjusted if necessary by Step 4, by the statutory royalty rate of 5.7 cents or 1.1 cents per minute or fraction of playing time, whichever is larger.

(iii) Each step in computing the monthly payment, including the arithmetical calculations involved in each step, shall be set out in detail in the Monthly Statement.

(5) Clear statements. The information required by paragraphs (e)(2) and (3) of this section involves intelligible, legible, and unambiguous statements in the Monthly Statements of Account itself and without incorporation of facts or information contained in other documents or records.

(6) Oath and signature. Each Monthly Statement of Account shall include the handwritten signature of the compulsory licensee. If that compulsory licensee is a corporation, the signature shall be that of a duly authorized officer of the corporation; if that compulsory licensee is a partnership, the signature shall be that of a partner. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(i) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Monthly Statement of Account;

(ii) The date of signature;

(iii) If the compulsory licensee is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Monthly Statement of Account;

(iv) A certification of the capacity of the person signing; and

(v) The following statement:

I certify that I have examined this Monthly Statement of Account and that all statements of fact contained herein are true, complete, and correct to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, and are made in good faith.

(7) Service. (i) Each Monthly Statement of Account shall be served on the copyright owner to whom or which it is directed, together with the total royalty for the month covered by the Monthly Statement, by certified mail, or by registered mail on or before the 20th day of the immediately succeeding month. It shall not be necessary to file a copy of the Monthly Statement in the Copyright Office.

(ii) (A) In any case where a Monthly Statement of Account is sent by certified mail or registered mail and is returned to the sender because the copyright owner is not located at that address or has refused to accept delivery, or in any case where an address for the copyright owner is not known, the Monthly Statement of Account, together with any evidence of mailing, may be filed in the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office. Any Monthly Statement of Account submitted for filing in the Copyright Office shall be accompanied by a brief statement of the reason why it was not served on the copyright owner. A written acknowledgement of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender.

(B) The Copyright Office will not accept any royalty fees submitted with Monthly Statements of Account under § 202.19(e)(7)(ii).

(C) Neither the filing of a Monthly Statement of Account in the Copyright Office, nor the failure to file such Monthly Statement, shall have effect other than that which may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(D) No filing fee will be required in the case of Monthly Statements of Account submitted to the Copyright Office under this § 201.19(e)(7)(ii). Upon request and payment of the fee specified in § 201.3(e), a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

(iii) A separate Monthly Statement of Account shall be served for each month during which there is any activity relevant to the payment of royalties under section 115 of Title 17, United States Code, and under this section. The Annual Statement of Account identified in paragraph (f) of this section does not replace any Monthly Statement of Account.

(f) Annual statements of account—(1) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Annual Statements of Account.
§201.19  37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)

(2) Annual period. Any Annual Statement of Account shall cover the full fiscal year of the compulsory licensee.

(3) General content. An Annual Statement of Account shall be clearly and prominently identified as an “Annual Statement of Account Under Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords,” and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) The fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(ii) The full legal name of the compulsory licensee, together with all fictitious or assumed names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords;

(iii) A statement of the nature of the business organization used by the compulsory licensee in connection with the making and distribution of phonorecords (for example, a corporation, a partnership, or an individual proprietorship); additionally:

(A) If the compulsory licensee is a corporation registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Annual Statement shall state that this is the case.

(B) If the compulsory licensee is a corporation that is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Annual Statement shall include a list of the names of the corporation’s directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of that corporation;

(iv) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, or the place of business of the compulsory licensee. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(v) The title or titles of the nondramatic musical work or works embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license and owned by the copyright owner being served with the Annual Statement and the name of the author or authors of such work or works, if known;

(vi) The playing time of each nondramatic musical work on such phonorecords;

(vii) For each nondramatic musical work that is owned by the same copyright owner being served with the Annual Statement and that is embodied in phonorecords covered by the compulsory license, a detailed statement of all of the information called for in paragraph (f)(4) of this section;

(viii) The total royalty payable for the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement computed in accordance with the requirements of this section, together with a statement of account showing in detail how the royalty was computed. For these purposes, the applicable royalty as specified in section 115(c)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code, shall be payable for every phonorecord “voluntarily distributed” during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(ix) The total sum paid under Monthly Statements of Account by the compulsory licensee to the copyright owner being served with the Annual Statement during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement; and

(x) In any case where the compulsory license falls within the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, a clear description of the action or proceeding involved, including the date of the final judgment or definitive finding described in that paragraph.

(4) Specific content of annual statements: Identification and accounting of phonorecords. (i) The information called
for by paragraph (f)(3)(vii) of this section shall, with respect to each nondramatic musical work, include a separate listing of each of the following items of information separately stated and identified for each phonorecord configuration (for example, single disk, long playing disk, cartridge, cassette, or reel-to-reel) made:

(A) The number of phonorecords made through the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement, including any made during earlier years;

(B) The number of phonorecords which have never been relinquished from possession of the compulsory licensee through the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(C) The number of phonorecords involuntarily relinquished from possession (as through fire or theft) of the compulsory licensee during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement and any earlier years, together with a description of the facts of such involuntary relinquishment;

(D) The number of phonorecords “voluntarily distributed” by the compulsory licensee during all years before the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(E) The number of phonorecords relinquished from possession of the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement accompanied by a privilege of returning unsold records for credit or exchange, but not “voluntarily distributed” by the end of that year;

(F) The number of phonorecords “voluntarily distributed” by the compulsory licensee during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement, together with:

(1) The catalog number or numbers, and label name or names, used on such phonorecords; and

(2) The names of the principal recording artists or groups engaged in rendering the performances fixed on such phonorecords.

(ii) If the information given under paragraphs (A) through (F) of this § 201.19(f)(4)(i) does not reconcile, the Annual Statement shall also include a clear and detailed explanation of the difference. For these purposes, the information given under such paragraphs shall be considered not to reconcile if, after the number of phonorecords given under paragraphs (B), (C), (D), and (E) are added together and that sum is deducted from the number of phonorecords given under paragraph (A), the result is different from the amount given under paragraph (F).

(5) Clear statement. The information required by paragraph (f)(3) of this section involves intelligible, legible, and unambiguous statements in the Annual Statement of Account itself and (subject to paragraph (f)(3)(iii)(A)) without incorporation by reference of facts or information contained in other documents or records.

(6) Signature and certification. (i) Each Annual Statement of Account shall include the handwritten signature of the compulsory licensee. If that compulsory licensee is a corporation, the signature shall be that of a duly authorized officer of the corporation; if that compulsory licensee is a partnership, the signature shall be that of a partner. The signature shall be accompanied by: (A) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Annual Statement of Account; (B) the date of signature; (C) if the compulsory licensee is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Annual Statement of Account; and (D) a certification of the capacity of the person signing.

(ii) (A) Each Annual Statement of Account shall also be certified by a licensed Certified Public Accountant. Such certification shall consist of the following statement:

We have examined the attached “Annual Statement of Account Under Compulsory License For Making and Distributing Phonorecords” for the fiscal year ended (date) of (name of the compulsory licensee) applicable to phonorecords embodying (title or titles of nondramatic musical works embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license) made under the provisions of section 115 of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, and applicable regulations of the United States Copyright Office. Our examination was made in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and accordingly, included tests of the accounting records and such other auditing procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances.
In our opinion the Annual Statement of Account referred to above presents fairly the number of phonorecords embodying each of the above-identified nondramatic musical works made under compulsory license and voluntarily distributed by (name of the compulsory licensee) during the fiscal year ending (date), and the amount of royalties applicable thereto under such compulsory license, on a consistent basis and in accordance with the above cited law and applicable regulations published thereunder.

(City and State of Execution)

(Signature of Certified Public Accountant or CPA Firm)

Certificate Number

Jurisdiction of Certificate

(Date of Opinion)

(B) The certificate shall be signed by an individual, or in the name of a partnership or a professional corporation with two or more shareholders. The certificate number and jurisdiction are not required if the certificate is signed in the name of a partnership or a professional corporation with two or more shareholders.

(7) Service. (i) Each Annual Statement of Account shall be served on the copyright owner to whom or which it is directed by certified mail or by registered mail on or before the twentieth day of the third month following the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement. It shall not be necessary to file a copy of the Annual Statement in the Copyright Office. An Annual Statement of Account shall be served for each fiscal year during which at least one Monthly Statement of Account was required to have been served under paragraph (e)(7) of this section.

(ii) In any case where the amount required to be stated in the Annual Statement of Account under paragraph (f)(3)(viii) of this section is greater than the amount stated in that Annual Statement under paragraph (f)(3)(ix) of this section, the difference between such amounts shall be delivered to the copyright owner together with the service of the Annual Statement. The delivery of such sum does not require the copyright owner to accept such sum, or to forego any right, relief, or remedy which may be available under law.

(iii)(A) In any case where an Annual Statement of Account is sent by certified mail or registered mail and is returned to the sender because the copyright owner is not located at that address or has refused to accept delivery, or in any case where an address for the copyright owner is not known, the Annual Statement of Account, together with any evidence of mailing, may be filed in the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office. Any Annual Statement of Account submitted for filing shall be accompanied by a brief statement of the reason why it was not served on the copyright owner. A written acknowledgment of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender.

(B) The Copyright Office will not accept any royalty fees submitted with Annual Statements of Account under §202.19(f)(7)(iii).

(C) Neither the filing of an Annual Statement of Account in the Copyright Office, nor the failure to file such Annual Statement, shall have any effect other than that which may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(D) No filing fee will be required in the case of Annual Statements of Account submitted to the Copyright Office under this §201.19(f)(7)(iii). Upon request and payment of the fee specified in §201.3(e), a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

(g) Documentation. All compulsory licensees shall, for a period of at least three years from the date of service of an Annual Statement of Account, keep and retain in their possession all records and documents necessary and appropriate to support fully the information set forth in such Annual Statement and in Monthly Statements.
§ 201.20 Methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various types of works.

(a) General. (1) This section specifies examples of methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various types of works that will satisfy the notice requirement of section 401(c) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94±553. A notice considered “acceptable” under this regulation shall be considered to satisfy the requirement of that section that it be “affixed to the copies in such manner and location as to give reasonable notice of the claim of copyright.” As provided by that section, the examples specified in this regulation shall not be considered exhaustive of methods of affixation and positions giving reasonable notice of the claim of copyright.

(2) The provisions of this section are applicable to copies publicly distributed on or after December 1, 1981. This section does not establish any rules concerning the form of the notice or the legal sufficiency of particular notices, except with respect to methods of affixation and positions of notice. The adequacy or legal sufficiency of a copyright notice is determined by the law in effect at the time of first publication of the work.

(b) Definitions. For the purposes of this section:

(1) The terms audiovisual works, collective works, copies, device, fixed, machine, motion picture, pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works, and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in section 101 of Title 17.

(2) Title 17 means title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94±553.

(3) In the case of a work consisting preponderantly of leaves on which the work is printed or otherwise reproduced on both sides, a “page” is one side of a leaf, where the preponderance of the leaves are printed on one side only, the terms “page” and “leaf” mean the same.

(4) A work is published in book form if the copies embodying it consist of multiple leaves bound, fastened, or assembled in a predetermined order, as, for example, a volume, booklet, pamphlet, or multipage folder. For the purpose of this section, a work need not consist of textual matter in order to be considered published in “book form.”

(5) A title page is a page, or two consecutive pages facing each other, appearing at or near the front of the copies of a work published in book form, on which the complete title of the work is prominently stated and on which the names of the author or authors, the name of the publisher, the place of publication, or some combination of them, are given.

(6) The meaning of the terms front, back, first, last, and following, when used in connection with works published in book form, will vary in relation to the physical form of the copies, depending upon the particular language in which the work is written.

(7) In the case of a work published in book form with a hard or soft cover, the front page and back page of the copies are the outsides of the front and back covers; where there is no cover, the “front page,” and “back page” are the pages visible at the front and back of the copies before they are opened.

(8) A masthead is a body of information appearing in approximately the same location in most issues of a newspaper, magazine, journal, review, or other periodical or serial, typically containing the title of the periodical or serial, information about the staff, periodicity of issues, operation, and subscription and editorial policies, of the publication.

(9) A single-leaf work is a work published in copies consisting of a single leaf, including copies on which the work is printed or otherwise reproduced on either side or on both sides of the leaf, and also folders which, without cutting or tearing the copies, can be opened out to form a single leaf. For the purpose of this section, a work need not consist of textual matter in order to be considered a “single-leaf work.”
(c) Manner of affixation and position generally. (1) In all cases dealt with in this section, the acceptability of a notice depends upon its being permanently legible to an ordinary user of the work under normal conditions of use, and affixed to the copies in such manner and position that, when affixed, it is not concealed from view upon reasonable examination.

(2) Where, in a particular case, a notice does not appear in one of the precise locations prescribed in this section but a person looking in one of those locations would be reasonably certain to find a notice in another somewhat different location, that notice will be acceptable under this section.

(d) Works published in book form. In the case of works published in book form, a notice reproduced on the copies in any of the following positions is acceptable:

(1) The title page, if any;
(2) The page immediately following the title page, if any;
(3) Either side of the front cover, if any; or, if there is no front cover, either side of the front leaf of the copies;
(4) Either side of the back cover, if any; or, if there is no back cover, either side of the back leaf of the copies;
(5) The first page of the main body of the work;
(6) The last page of the main body of the work;
(7) Any page between the front page and the first page of the main body of the work, if:
   (i) There are no more than ten pages between the front page and the first page of the main body of the work; and
   (ii) The notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from other matter on the page where it appears;
(8) Any page between the last page of the main body of the work and back page, if:
   (i) There are no more than ten pages between the last page of the main body of the work and the back page; and
   (ii) The notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from the other matter on the page where it appears.

(9) In the case of a work published as an issue of a periodical or serial, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraphs (d) (1) through (8) of this section, a notice is acceptable if it is located:
   (i) As a part of, or adjacent to, the masthead;
   (ii) On the page containing the masthead if the notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from the other matter appearing on the page; or
   (iii) Adjacent to a prominent heading, appearing at or near the front of the issue, containing the title of the periodical or serial and any combination of the volume and issue number and date of the issue.

(10) In the case of a musical work, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraphs (d) (1) through (9) of this section, a notice is acceptable if it is located on the first page of music.

(e) Single-leaf works. In the case of single-leaf works, a notice reproduced on the copies anywhere on the front or back of the leaf is acceptable.

(f) Contributions to collective works. For a separate contribution to a collective work to be considered to “bear its own notice of copyright,” as provided by 17 U.S.C. 404, a notice reproduced on the copies in any of the following positions is acceptable:

(1) Where the separate contribution is reproduced on a single page, a notice is acceptable if it appears:
   (i) Under the title of the contribution on that page;
   (ii) Adjacent to the contribution; or
   (iii) On the same page if, through format, wording, or both, the application of the notice to the particular contribution is made clear;

(2) Where the separate contribution is reproduced on more than one page of the collective work, a notice is acceptable if it appears:
   (i) Under a title appearing at or near the beginning of the contribution;
   (ii) On the first page of the main body of the contribution;
   (iii) Immediately following the end of the contribution; or
   (iv) On any of the pages where the contribution appears, if:
      (A) The contribution is reproduced on no more than twenty pages of the collective work;
      (B) The notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from other matter on the page where it appears; and
(C) Through format, wording, or both, the application of the notice to the particular contribution is made clear;

(3) Where the separate contribution is a musical work, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraphs (f)(1) and (2) of this section, a notice is acceptable if it is located on the first page of music of the contribution;

(4) As an alternative to placing the notice on one of the pages where a separate contribution itself appears, the contribution is considered to “bear its own notice” if the notice appears clearly in juxtaposition with a separate listing of the contribution by title, or if the contribution is untitled, by a description reasonably identifying the contribution:

(i) On the page bearing the copyright notice for the collective work as a whole, if any; or

(ii) In a clearly identified and readily-accessible table of contents or listing of acknowledgements appearing near the front or back of the collective work as a whole.

(g) Works reproduced in machine-readable copies. For works reproduced in machine-readable copies (such as magnetic tapes or disks, punched cards, or the like, from which the work cannot ordinarily be visually perceived except with the aid of a machine or device),1 each of the following constitute examples of acceptable methods of affixation and position of notice:

(1) A notice embodied in the copies in a machine-readable form in such a manner that on visually perceptible printouts it appears either with or near the title, or at the end of the work;

(2) A notice that is displayed at the user’s terminal at sign on;

(3) A notice that is continuously on terminal display; or

(4) A legible notice reproduced durably, so as to withstand normal use, on a gummed or other label securely affixed to the copies or to a box, reel, cartridge, cassette, or other container used as a permanent receptacle for the copies.

(h) Motion pictures and other audiovisual works. (1) The following constitute examples of acceptable methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on motion pictures and other audiovisual works: A notice that is embodied in the copies by a photomechanical or electronic process, in such a position that it ordinarily would appear whenever the work is performed in its entirety, and that is located:

(i) With or near the title;

(ii) With the cast, credits, and similar information;

(iii) At or immediately following the beginning of the work; or

(iv) At or immediately preceding the end of the work.

(2) In the case of an untitled motion picture or other audiovisual work whose duration is sixty seconds or less, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraph (h)(1) of this section, a notice that is embodied in the copies by a photomechanical or electronic process, in such a position that it ordinarily would appear to the projectionist or broadcaster when preparing the work for performance, is acceptable if it is located on the leader of the film or tape immediately preceding the beginning of the work.

(3) In the case of a motion picture or other audiovisual work that is distributed to the public for private use, the notice may be affixed, in addition to the locations specified in paragraph (h)(1) of this section, on the housing or container, if it is a permanent receptacle for the work.

(i) Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works. The following constitute examples of acceptable methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various forms of pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works:

(1) Where a work is reproduced in two-dimensional copies, a notice affixed directly or by means of a label cemented, sewn, or otherwise attached durably, so as to withstand normal use, of the front or back of the copies, or to any backing, mounting, matting, framing, or other material to which the copies are durably attached, so as to

---

1Works published in a form requiring the use of a machine or device for purposes of optical enlargement (such as film, filmstrips, slide films, and works published in any variety of microform) and works published in visually perceptible form but used in connection with optical scanning devices, are not within this category.
§ 201.21

withstand normal use, or in which they are permanently housed, is acceptable.

(2) Where a work is reproduced in three-dimensional copies, a notice affixed directly or by means of a label cemented, sewn, or otherwise attached durably, so as to withstand normal use, to any visible portion of the work, or to any base, mounting, framing, or other material on which the copies are durably attached, as to withstand normal use, or in which they are permanently housed, is acceptable.

(3) Where, because of the size or physical characteristics of the material in which the work is reproduced in copies, it is impossible or extremely impracticable to affix a notice to the copies directly or by means of a durable label, a notice is acceptable if it appears on a tag that is of durable material, so as to withstand normal use, and that is attached to the copy with sufficient durability that it will remain with the copy while it is passing through its normal channels of commerce.

(4) Where a work is reproduced in copies consisting of sheet-like or strip material bearing multiple or continuous reproductions of the work, the notice may be applied:
(i) To the reproduction itself;
(ii) To the margin, selvage, or reverse side of the material at frequent and regular intervals; or
(iii) If the material contains neither a selvage nor a reverse side, to tags or labels, attached to the copies and to any spools, reels, or containers housing them in such a way that a notice is visible while the copies are passing through their normal channels of commerce.

(5) If the work is permanently housed in a container, such as a game or puzzle box, a notice reproduced on the permanent container is acceptable.

(17 U.S.C. 401, 702)
[46 FR 58312, Dec. 1, 1981]

§ 201.22 [Reserved]

§ 201.22 Advance notices of potential infringement of works consisting of sounds, images, or both.

(a) Definitions. (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is a notice which, if served in accordance with section 411(b) of title 17 of the United States Code, and in accordance with the provisions of this section, enables a copyright owner to institute an action for copyright infringement either before or after the first fixation of a work consisting of sounds, images, or both that is first fixed simultaneously with its transmission, and to enjoy the full remedies of said title 17 for copyright infringement, provided registration for the work is made within three months after its first transmission.

(2) For purposes of this section, the copyright owner of a work consisting of sounds, images, or both, the first fixation of which is made simultaneously with its transmission, is the person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation (including, in the case of a work made for hire, the employer or other person or entity for whom the work was prepared), or a person or organization that has obtained ownership of an exclusive right, initially owned by the person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation.

(3) A transmission program is a body of material that, as an aggregate, has been produced for the sole purpose of transmission to the public in sequence and as a unit.

(b) Form. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Advance Notices of Potential Infringement.

(c) Contents. (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall be clearly and prominently captioned “ADVANCE NOTICE OF POTENTIAL INFRINGEMENT” and must clearly state that the copyright owner objects to the relevant activities of the person responsible for the potential infringement, and must include all of the following:
(i) Reference to Title 17 U.S.C. section 411(b) as the statutory authority on which the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is based;
(ii) The date, specific time, and expected duration of the intended first transmission of the work or works contained in the specific transmission program;
(iii) The source of the intended first transmission of the work or works;
(iv) Clear identification, by title, of the work or works. A single Advance
Notice of Potential Infringement may cover all of the works of the copyright owner embodied in a specific transmission program. If any work is untitled, the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall include a detailed description of that work;

(v) The name of at least one person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation;

(vi) The identity of the copyright owner, as defined in paragraph (a)(2) of this section. If the copyright owner is not the person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation, the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement also shall include a brief, general statement summarizing the means by which the copyright owner obtained ownership of the copyright and the particular rights that are owned; and

(vii) A description of the relevant activities of the person responsible for the potential infringement which would, if carried out, result in an infringement of the copyright.

(2) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement must also include clear and prominent statements:

(i) Explaining that the relevant activities may, if carried out, subject the person responsible to liability for copyright infringement; and

(ii) Declaring that the copyright owner intends to secure copyright in the work upon its fixation.

(d) Signature and identification. (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall be in writing and signed by the copyright owner, or such owner's duly authorized agent.

(2) The signature of the owner or agent shall be an actual handwritten signature of an individual, accompanied by the date of signature and the full name, address, and telephone number of that person, typewritten or printed legibly by hand.

(3) If an Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is initially served in the form of a telegram or similar communication, as provided by paragraph (e)(2)(iii) of this section, the requirement for an individual's handwritten signature shall be considered waived if the further conditions of said paragraph (e) are met.

(e) Service. (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall be served on the person responsible for the potential infringement not less than 48 hours before the first fixation and simultaneous transmission of the work as provided by 17 U.S.C. 411(b)(1).

(2) Service of the Advance Notice may be effected by any of the following methods:

(i) Personal service;

(ii) First-class mail; or

(iii) Telegram, cablegram, or similar form of communication, if:

(A) The Advance Notice meets all of the other conditions provided by this section; and

(B) Before the first fixation and simultaneous transmission take place, the person responsible for the potential infringement receives written confirmation of the Advance Notice, bearing the actual handwritten signature of the copyright owner or duly authorized agent.

(3) The date of service is the date the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is received by the person responsible for the potential infringement or by any agent or employee of that person.

(17 U.S.C. 411, 702)

§ 201.24 Warning of copyright for software lending by nonprofit libraries.

(a) Definition. A Warning of Copyright for Software Rental is a notice under paragraph (b)(2)(A) of section 109 of the Copyright Act, title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by the Computer Software Rental Amendments Act of 1990, Public Law 101-650. As required by that paragraph, the “Warning of Copyright for Software Rental” shall be affixed to the packaging that contains the computer program which is lent by a nonprofit library for nonprofit purposes.

(b) Contents. A Warning of Copyright for Software Rental shall consist of a verbatim reproduction of the following notice, printed in such size and form and affixed in such manner as to comply with paragraph (c) of this section.

Notice: Warning of Copyright Restrictions

The copyright law of the United States (Title 17, United States Code) governs the reproduction, distribution, adaptation, public performance, and public display of copyrighted material. Under certain conditions specified in law, nonprofit libraries are authorized to lend, lease, or rent copies of computer programs to patrons on a nonprofit basis and for nonprofit purposes. Any person who makes an unauthorized copy or adaptation of the computer program, or redistributes the loan copy, or publicly performs or displays the computer program, except as permitted by title 17 of the United States Code, may be liable for copyright infringement.

This institution reserves the right to refuse to fulfill a loan request if, in its judgment, fulfillment of the request would lead to violation of the copyright law.

(c) Form and manner of use. A Warning of Copyright for Software Rental shall be affixed to the packaging that contains the copy of the computer program, by means of a label cemented, gummed, or otherwise durably attached to the copies or to a box, reel, cartridge, cassette, or other container used as a permanent receptacle for the copy of the computer program. The notice shall be printed in such manner as to be clearly legible, comprehensible, and readily apparent to a casual user of the computer program.

§ 201.25 Visual Arts Registry.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures relating to the submission of Visual Arts Registry Statements by visual artists and owners of buildings, or their duly authorized representatives, for recordation in the Copyright Office under section 113(d)(3) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Public Law 101-650, effective June 1, 1991. Statements recorded in the Copyright Office under this regulation will establish a public record of
§ 201.25

Copyright Office, Library of Congress

information relevant to an artist’s integrity right to prevent destruction or injury to works of visual art incorporated in or made part of a building.

(b) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording statements regarding works of visual art that have been incorporated in or made part of a building.

(c) Recordable statements—(1) General. Any statement designated as a “Visual Arts Regulatory Statement” and which pertains to a work of visual art that has been incorporated in or made part of a building may be recorded in the Copyright Office provided the statement is accompanied by the fee for recordation of documents specified in section 708(a)(4) of title 17 of the United States Code. Upon their submission, the statements and an accompanying documentation or photographs become the property of the United States Government and will not be returned. Photocopies are acceptable if they are clear and legible. Information contained in the Visual Arts Registry Statement should be as complete as possible since the information may affect the enforceability of valuable rights under the copyright law. Visual Arts Registry Statements which are illegible or fall outside of the scope of section 113(d)(3) of title 17 may be refused recordation by the Copyright Office.

(2) Statements by artists. Statements by artists regarding a work of visual art incorporated or made part of a building should be filed in a document containing the head: “Registry of Visual Art Incorporated in a Building—Artist’s Statement.” The statement should contain the following information:

(i) Identification of the artist, including name, current address, age, and telephone number, if publicly listed.

(ii) Identification of the work or works, including the title, dimensions, and physical description of the work and the copyright registration number, if known. Additionally, it is recommended that one or more 8 x 10 photographs of the work on good quality photographic paper be included in the submission; the images should be clear and in focus.

(iii) Identification of the building, including its name and address. This identification may additionally include 8 x 10 photographs of the building and the location of the artist’s work in the building.

(iv) Identification of the owner of the building, if known.

(3) Statements by the owner of the building. Statements of owners of a building which incorporates a work of visual art should be filed in a document containing the heading: “Registry of Visual Art Incorporated in a Building—Building Owner’s Statement.” The statement should contain the following information:

(i) Identification of the ownership of the building, the name of a person who represents the owner, and a telephone number, if publicly listed.

(ii) Identification of the building, including the building’s name and address. This identification may additionally include 8 x 10 photographs of the building and of the works of visual art which are incorporated in the building.

(iii) Identification of the work or works of visual art incorporated in the building, including the works’ title(s), if known, and the dimensions and physical description of the work(s). This identification may include one or more 8 x 10 photographs of the work(s) on high quality photographic paper; the images should be clear and in focus.

(iv) Identification of the artist(s) who have works incorporated in the building, including the current address of each artist, if known.

(v) Photocopy of contracts, if any, between the artist and owners of the building regarding the rights of attribution and integrity.

(vi) Statement as to the measures taken by the owner to notify the artist(s) of the removal or pending removal of the work of visual art, and photocopies of any accompanying documents.

(4) Updating statements. Either the artist or owner of the building or both may record statements updating previously recorded information by submitting an updated statement and paying the recording fee specified in paragraph (d) of this section. Such statements should repeat the information
§ 201.26 Recordation of documents pertaining to computer shareware and donation of public domain computer software.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures for submission of legal documents pertaining to computer shareware and the deposit of public domain computer software under section 805 of Public Law 101-650, 104 Stat. 5089 (1990). Documents recorded in the Copyright Office under this regulation will be included in the Computer Shareware Registry. Recordation in this Registry will establish a public record of licenses or other legal documents governing the relationship between copyright owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware. Documents transferring the ownership of some or all rights under the copyright law of computer shareware and security interests in such software should be recorded under 17 U.S.C. 205, as implemented by §201.4.

(b) Definitions—(1) The term computer shareware is accorded its customary meaning within the software industry. In general, shareware is copyrighted software which is distributed for the purposes of testing and review, subject to the condition that payment to the copyright owner is required after a person who has secured a copy decides to use the software.

(2) A document designated as pertaining to computer shareware means licenses or other legal documents governing the relationship between copyright owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware.

(3) Public domain computer software means software which has been publicly distributed with an explicit disclaimer of copyright protection by the copyright owner.

(c) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording documents designated as pertaining to computer shareware or for

§ 201.26 Recordation of documents pertaining to computer shareware and donation of public domain computer software.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures for submission of legal documents pertaining to computer shareware and the deposit of public domain computer software under section 805 of Public Law 101-650, 104 Stat. 5089 (1990). Documents recorded in the Copyright Office under this regulation will be included in the Computer Shareware Registry. Recordation in this Registry will establish a public record of licenses or other legal documents governing the relationship between copyright owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware. Documents transferring the ownership of some or all rights under the copyright law of computer shareware and security interests in such software should be recorded under 17 U.S.C. 205, as implemented by §201.4.

(b) Definitions—(1) The term computer shareware is accorded its customary meaning within the software industry. In general, shareware is copyrighted software which is distributed for the purposes of testing and review, subject to the condition that payment to the copyright owner is required after a person who has secured a copy decides to use the software.

(2) A document designated as pertaining to computer shareware means licenses or other legal documents governing the relationship between copyright owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware.

(3) Public domain computer software means software which has been publicly distributed with an explicit disclaimer of copyright protection by the copyright owner.

(c) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording documents designated as pertaining to computer shareware or for
the deposit of public domain computer software.

(d) Recordable Documents—(1) Any document clearly designated as a “Document Pertaining to Computer Shareware” and which governs the legal relationship between owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware may be recorded in the Computer Shareware Registry.

(2) Submitted documents may be a duplicate original, a legible photocopy, or other legible facsimile reproduction of the document, and must be complete on its face.

(3) Submitted documents will not be returned, and the Copyright Office requests that if the document is considered valuable, that only copies of that document be submitted for recording.

(4) The Copyright Office encourages the submission of a machine-readable copy of the document in the form of an IBM-PC compatible disk, in addition to a copy of the document itself.

(e) Fee. The fee for recording a document pertaining to computer shareware is the recordation fee for a document, as prescribed in § 201.3(c).

(f) Date of recordation. The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee have been received in the Copyright Office. After recordation of the statement, the sender will receive a certificate of record from the Copyright Office. The submission will be retained and filed by the Copyright Office, and may be destroyed at a later date after preparing suitable copies, in accordance with usual procedures.

(g) Donation of public domain computer software. (1) Any person may donate a copy of public domain computer software for the benefit of the Machine-Readable Collections Reading Room of the Library of Congress. Decision as to whether any public domain computer software is suitable for accession to the collections rests solely with the Library of Congress. Materials not selected will be disposed of in accordance with usual procedures, including transfer to other libraries, sale, or destruction. Donation of public domain software may be made regardless of whether a document has been recorded pertaining to the software.

(2) In order to donate public domain software, the following conditions must be met:

(i) The copy of the public domain software must contain an explicit disclaimer of copyright protection from the copyright owner.

(ii) The submission should contain documentation regarding the software. If the documentation is in machine-readable form, a print-out of the document should be included in the donation.

(iii) If the public domain software is marketed in a box or other packaging, the entire work as distributed, including the packaging, should be deposited.

(iv) If the public domain software is copy protected, two copies of the software must be submitted.

(3) Donations of public domain software with an accompanying letter of explanation must be sent to the following address: Gift Section, Exchange & Gift Division, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20540-4260.

§ 201.27 Initial notice of distribution of digital audio recording devices or media.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the filing of an Initial Notice of Distribution in the Copyright Office as required by section 1003(b) of the Audio Home Recording Act of 1992, Public Law 102-563, title 17 of the United States Code, to obtain a statutory license to import and distribute, or manufacture and distribute, any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium in the United States.

(b) Definitions—(1) An Initial Notice of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices or Media or Initial Notice is a notice under section 1003(b) of the Audio Home Recording Act of 1992, Public Law 102-563, title 17 of the United States Code, which is required by that section to be filed in the Copyright Office by an importer or manufacturer of a digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium who has
§ 201.27

not previously filed notice of the importation or manufacture for distribution of such device or medium in the United States.

(2) The product category of a device or medium is a general class of products made up of functionally equivalent digital audio recording devices or media with substantially the same use in substantially the same environment, including, for example, hand-held portable integrated combination units ("boomboxes"); portable personal recorders; standalone home recorders ("tape decks"); home combination systems ("rack systems"); automobile recorders; configurations of tape media (standard cassettes or microcassettes); and configurations of disc media such as 2½", 3" and 5" discs.

(3) The technology of a device or medium is a product type distinguished by different technical processes for digitally recording musical sounds, such as digital audio tape recorders (DAT), digital compact cassette (DCC), or recordable compact discs, including minidiscs (MD).

(4) The terms digital audio recording device, digital audio recording medium, distribute, manufacture, and transfer price, have the meanings of the same terms as they are used in section 1001 of the Copyright Act, title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Public Law 102-563.

(c) Forms. An Initial Notice form may be obtained from the Copyright Office free of charge, by contacting the Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20557-6400.

(d) Filing Deadline. Initial Notices shall be filed in the Copyright Office no later than 45 days after the commencement of the first distribution of digital audio recording devices or digital audio recording media in the United States, on or after October 28, 1992. A manufacturer or importer shall file an Initial Notice within 45 days of the first distribution for each new product category and each new technology that the manufacturer or importer has not reported in a previous Initial Notice.

(e) Content of Initial Notices. An Initial Notice of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices or Media shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include the following:

(i) The designation "Importer" or "Manufacturer," or both, whichever is applicable, followed by the full legal name of the importer or manufacturer of the digital audio recording device or medium, or if the party named is a partnership, the name of the partnership followed by the name of at least one individual partner;

(ii) Any trade or business name or names, trademarks, or other indicia of origin that the importer or manufacturer uses or intends to use in connection with the importation, manufacture, or distribution of such digital audio recording device or medium in the United States;

(iii) The full United States mailing address of the importer or manufacturer, and the full business address, if different;

(iv) The product category and technology of the devices or media imported or manufactured;

(v) The first date (day, month, and year) that distribution commenced, or is to commence;

(vi) The signature of an appropriate officer, partner, or agent of the importer or manufacturer, as specified by the Initial Notice form; and

(vii) Other information relevant to the importation or manufacture for distribution of digital audio recording devices or media as prescribed on the Initial Notice form provided by the Copyright Office.

(f) Amendments. (1) The Copyright Office will record amendments to Initial Notices submitted to correct an error or omission in the information given in an earlier Initial Notice. An amendment is not appropriate to reflect developments or changes in facts occurring after the date of signature of an Initial Notice.

(2) An amendment shall:

(i) Be clearly and prominently identified as an "Amendment to an Initial Notice of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices or Media;"

(ii) Identify the specific Initial Notice intended to be amended so that it may be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(iii) Clearly specify the nature of the amendment to be made; and
(iv) Be signed and dated in accordance with this section.

(3) The recording of an amendment under this paragraph shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(g) Recordation. (1) The Copyright Office will record the Initial Notices and amendments submitted in accordance with this section by placing them in the appropriate public files of the Office. The Copyright Office will advise manufacturers and importers of errors or omissions appearing on the face of documents submitted to it, and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before the documents will be recorded. However, recordation by the Copyright Office shall establish only the fact and date thereof; such recordation shall in no case be considered a determination that the document was, in fact, properly prepared or that all of the regulatory requirements to satisfy section 1003 of title 17 have been met.

(2) No fee shall be required for the recording of Initial Notices. A fee of $20 payable by personal or company check to the Register of Copyrights shall accompany any Amendment permitted by paragraph (f) of this section.

§ 201.28 Statements of Account for digital audio recording devices or media.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the filing of Statements of Account and royalty fees in the Copyright Office as required by 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and 1004, in order to import and distribute, or manufacture and distribute, in the United States any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium.

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) Annual statement of account is the statement required under 17 U.S.C. 1003, to be filed no later than two months after the close of the accounting period covered by the annual statement.

(2) Device and medium have the same meaning as digital audio recording device and digital audio recording medium, respectively, have in 17 U.S.C. 1003.

(3) Digital audio recording product means digital audio recording devices and digital audio recording media.

(4) Generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), means the auditing standards promulgated by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

(5) Manufacturing or importing party refers to any person or entity that manufactures and distributes, and/or imports and distributes, any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium in the United States, and is required under 17 U.S.C. 1003 to file with the Copyright Office quarterly and annual Statements of Account.

(6) Product category of a device or medium is a general class of products made up of functionally equivalent digital audio recording products with substantially the same use in substantially the same environment, including, for example, hand-held portable integrated combination units ("boomboxes"); portable personal recorders; stand-alone home recorders ("tape decks"); home combination systems ("rack systems"); automobile recorders; configurations of tape media (standard cassettes or microcassettes); and configurations of disc media, such as 2½ inch, 3 inch, or 5 inch discs.

(7) Primary auditor is the certified public accountant retained by the manufacturing or importing party to audit the amounts reported in the annual Statement of Account submitted to the Copyright Office. The primary auditor may be the certified public accountant engaged by the manufacturing or importing party to perform the annual audit of the party's financial statements.

(8) Quarterly statement of account is the statement accompanying royalty payments required under 17 U.S.C. 1003, to be filed for each of the first three quarters of the accounting year, and no later than 45 days after the close of the quarterly period covered by the statement.

(9) Technology of a device or medium is a digital audio recording product-type distinguished by different technical
processes for digitally recording musical sounds, such as digital audio tape recorders (DAT), digital compact cassettes (DCC), or recordable compact discs, including minidiscs (MD).

(10) Distribute, manufacture, transfer price, and serial copying have the meanings set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1001.

(c) Accounting periods and filing deadlines—

(1) Election of filing basis. Statements of Account may be filed on either a calendar or fiscal year basis at the election of the manufacturing party. The election of a calendar or fiscal year basis must be made when the manufacturing or importing party files its first quarterly Statement of Account by appropriate designation on the Form DART/Q submitted. Thereafter the specific calendar or fiscal year accounting period must be designated on each quarterly Statement of Account. The filing basis may be changed at any time upon notification in writing to the Register of Copyrights, accompanied by a statement of reasons as to why the change is to be made and a statement that such change will not affect the aggregate royalties due under the earlier basis. The notification of change in filing basis must be made at least two months before the date the next quarterly Statement of Account is due to be filed.

(2) Quarterly filings. Quarterly Statements of Account shall be filed on Form DART/Q and shall cover a three-month period corresponding to the calendar or fiscal year of the filing party. A quarterly statement shall be filed no later than 45 days after the close of the period it covers.

(3) Annual filings. Annual Statements of Account shall be filed on Form DART/A and shall cover both the fourth quarter of an accounting year and the aggregate of the entire year corresponding to the calendar or fiscal accounting year elected. An annual statement shall be filed no later than two months after the close of the period it covers. As a transitional measure, however, the first annual Statement of Account filed after October 28, 1992, is not due until March 1, 1994, or two months after the end of the calendar or fiscal year in which the manufacturing or importing party first filed a quarterly Statement of Account, whichever is later. The first annual Statement of Account shall cover the entire period from October 28, 1992, to the end of the full accounting year. The appropriate royalty payment, calculated according to the instructions contained in Form DART/A, shall accompany the annual Statement of Account covering royalties due for the filing year; that is, royalties for the fourth quarter and any additional royalties that are due because of adjustments in the aggregate amounts of devices or media distributed.

(4) Early or late filings. Statements of Account and royalty fees received before the end of the particular accounting period covered by the statement will not be processed by the Office. The statement must be filed after the close of the relevant accounting period. Statements of Account and royalty fees received after the 45-day deadline for quarterly statements or the two-month deadline for annual statements will be accepted for whatever legal effect they may have and will be assessed the appropriate interest charge for the late filing.

(d) Forms. (1) Each quarterly or annual Statement of Account shall be submitted on the appropriate form prescribed by the Copyright Office. Computation of the royalty fee shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in the forms and this section. Statement of Account forms are available from the Licensing Division, Library of Congress. Forms and other information may be requested from the Licensing Division by facsimile transmission (FAX), but copies of Statement of Account forms transmitted to the Office by FAX will not be accepted.

(2) Forms prescribed by the Copyright Office are designated Quarterly Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products (Form DART/Q) and Annual Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products (Form DART/A).

(e) Contents of quarterly Statements of Account. (1) Quarterly period and filing. Any quarterly Statement of Account shall cover the full quarter of the calendar or fiscal accounting year for the particular quarter for which it is filed. A separate quarterly statement shall
be filed for each quarter of the first three quarters of the accounting year during which there is any activity relevant to the payment of royalties under 17 U.S.C. 1004. The annual Statement of Account identified in paragraph (f) of this section incorporates the fourth quarter of the accounting year.

(2) General content. Each quarterly Statement of Account shall be filed on Form DART/Q, the “Quarterly Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products,” and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) A designation of the calendar or fiscal year of the annual reporting period;

(ii) A designation of the period, including the beginning and ending day, month, and year of the period covered by the quarter;

(iii) The full legal name of the manufacturing and/or importing party, together with any “doing-business-as” names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of manufacturing, importing, or distributing digital audio recording products;

(iv) The full mailing address of the manufacturing or importing party, including a specific number and street name, or rural route and box number, of the place of business of the person or entity. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(v) A designation of the manufacturing or importing party status, i.e., “Manufacturer,” “Importer,” or “Manufacturer and Importer;”

(vi) The designation “Product Categories” together with the product categories of the digital audio recording products manufactured or imported and distributed during the quarter covered by the statement;

(vii) The designation “Technologies” together with the technologies of the digital audio recording products manufactured or imported and distributed under the AHRA during the quarter covered by the statement;

(viii) The designation “Series or Model Number” followed by the model or series numbers of the digital audio recording products manufactured or imported and distributed under the AHRA during the quarter covered by the statement;

(ix) The “fee code” associated with the product;

(xi) The “source code” for the product category;

(xii) The “transfer price” of the product;

(xiii) The “number of units distributed” for each product;

(xiv) The “minimum fee per unit” for each product;

(xv) The “statutory royalty “rate” for digital audio recording devices or media;

(xvi) The “rate fee” for each product;

(xvii) The appropriate “maximum fee per unit” for each product;

(xviii) A computation of the total royalty payable for the quarter covered by the statement. Filing parties may not round off the figures they list in Space C, the computation section of the form, except for the figure representing the total royalty fee due; in that case, numbers ending in 50 to 99 cents may be rounded up to the next dollar, and numbers ending in one to 49 cents may be rounded down to the next dollar;

(3) Royalty payments and accounting.

(i) The royalty specified in 17 U.S.C. 1004 shall accompany the quarterly and annual Statements of Account. No royalty is payable for redistribution of the same product item unless a credit has been taken for such items. Where royalties are payable for the period covered by the statement, the Statement of Account shall contain the following information for each unique combination of product category, technology, series or model number, fee code, source code, and transfer price:

(A) The total number of digital audio recording media distributed, multiplied by the statutory royalty rate of three percent (3%) of the transfer price;

(B) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory royalty rate of two percent (2%) of the transfer price is payable, multiplied by such percentage rate of the transfer price;
§ 201.28

37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)

(C) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory maximum royalty is limited to eight dollars ($8.00), multiplied by such eight dollar amount;

(D) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory maximum royalty is limited to twelve dollars ($12.00), multiplied by such twelve dollar amount; and

(E) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory minimum royalty is limited to one dollar ($1.00), multiplied by such one dollar amount.

(ii) The amount of the royalty payment shall be calculated in accordance with the instructions specified in the quarterly Statement of Account form. Payment of the royalty fee must be in the form of a certified check, cashier’s check, money order, or electronic payment payable to the Register of Copyrights.

(4) Reduction of royalty fee.

(i) Section 1004(a)(2)(A) of title 17 of the United States Code, provides an instance in which royalty payments may be reduced if the digital audio recording device and such other devices are part of a physically integrated unit, the royalty payment shall be based on the transfer price of the unit, but shall be reduced by any royalty payment made on any digital audio recording device included within the unit that was not first distributed in combination with the unit.

(ii) Notice of this provision together with directions for possible application to a product is contained in the DART/Q Form.

(5) Contact party. Each Statement of Account shall include the name, address, and telephone and facsimile (FAX) numbers of an individual whom the Copyright Office can write or call about the Statement of Account.

(6) Credits for returned or exported products. When digital audio recording products first distributed in the United States for ultimate transfer to United States consumers are returned to the manufacturer or importer as unsold or defective merchandise, or are exported, the manufacturing or importing party may take a credit to be deducted from the royalties payable for the period when the products were returned or exported. The credit may be taken only for returns or exports made within two years following the date royalties were paid for the products. This credit must be reflected in the manufacturing or importing party’s quarterly or annual Statement of Account. If the manufacturer or importer later redistributes in the United States any products for which a credit has been taken, these products must be listed on the Statement of Account, and a new computation of the royalty fee must be made based on the transfer price of the products at the time of the new distribution.

(7) Oath and signature. Each Statement of Account shall include the handwritten signature of an authorized officer, principal, or agent of the filing party. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(i) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the quarterly Statement of Account;

(ii) The date the document is signed;

(iii) The following certification:

I, the undersigned, hereby certify that I am an authorized officer, principal, or agent of the “manufacturing or importing party” identified in Space B.

Penalties for fraud and false statements are provided under 18 U.S.C. 1001 et. seq.

(f) Contents of annual Statements of Account—(1) General contents. Each annual Statement of Account shall be filed on form DART/A, “Annual Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products.” It must be filed by any importer or manufacturer that distributed in the United States, during a given calendar or fiscal year, any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium. The annual statement shall cover the aggregate of the distribution of devices and media for the entire year corresponding to the calendar or fiscal year elected. The annual Statement of Account shall contain the information, oath, and certification prescribed in paragraphs (e)(2)(i) through (e)(7)(iii) of this section, and shall also cover the entire accounting year, including the fourth quarter distribution, and shall also
provide for the reconciliation of the aggregated accounting of digital audio recording devices and media for the reported accounting year.

(2) Reconciliation. Any royalty payment due under sections 1003 and 1004 of title 17 that was not previously paid with the filing party's first three quarterly Statements of Account, shall be reconciled in the annual statement. Reconciliation in the annual Statement of Account provides for adjustments for reductions, refunds, underpayments, overpayments, credits, and royalty payments paid in Quarters 1, 2, and 3, and shall be computed in accordance with the instructions included in the annual Statement of Account. Errors that require reconciliation shall be corrected immediately upon discovery.

(3) Accountant's opinion. Each annual Statement of Account or any amended annual Statement of Account shall be audited by the primary auditor as defined in paragraph (b)(7) of this section. An amendment may be submitted to the Office either as a result of responses to questions raised by a Licensing Division examiner or on the initiative of the manufacturing or importing party to correct an error in the original Statement of Account.

(i) The audit shall be performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). The audit may be performed in conjunction with an annual audit of the manufacturing or importing party's financial statements.

(ii) The CPA shall issue a report, the "primary auditor's report," reflecting his or her opinion as to whether the annual statement presents fairly, in all material respects, the number of digital audio recording devices and media that were imported and distributed, or manufactured and distributed, by the manufacturing or importing party during the relevant year, and the amount of royalty payments applicable to them under 17 U.S.C. chapter 10, in accordance with that law and these regulations.

(iii) The primary auditor's report shall be filed with the Copyright Office together with the annual Statement of Account, within two months after the end of the annual period for which the annual Statement of Account is prepared. The report may be qualified to the extent necessary and appropriate.

(iv) The Copyright Office does not provide a specific form, or require a specific format, for the CPA's review; however, in addition to the above, certain items must be named as audited items. These include the variables necessary to complete Space C of the Statement of Account form. The CPA may place his or her opinion, which will serve as the "primary auditor's report," in the space provided on Form DART/A, or may attach a separate sheet or sheets containing the opinion.

(v) The auditor's report shall be signed by an individual, or in the name of a partnership or a corporation, and shall include city and state of execution, certificate number, jurisdiction of certificate, and date of opinion. The certificate number and jurisdiction are not required if the report is signed in the name of a partnership or a corporation.

(g) Documentation. All filing parties shall keep and retain in their possession, for at least three years from the date of filing, all records and documents necessary and appropriate to support fully the information set forth in quarterly and annual statements that they file.

(h) Corrections, supplemental payments, and refunds—(1) General. Upon compliance with the procedures and within the time limits set forth in this paragraph (h), corrections to quarterly and annual Statements of Account will be placed on record, and supplemental royalty fee payments will be received for deposit, or refunds without interest will be issued, in the following cases:

(i) Where, with respect to the accounting period covered by the quarterly or annual Statement of Account, any of the information given in the statement filed in the Copyright Office is incorrect or incomplete; or

(ii) Where, for any reason except that mentioned in paragraph (h)(2) of this section, calculation of the royalty fee payable for a particular accounting period was incorrect, and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office for that period was either too high or too low.
§201.28 placed on file, supplemental royalty fee payments will not be received for deposit, and refunds will not be issued, where the information in the Statements of Account, the royalty fee calculations, or the payments were correct as of the date on which the accounting period ended, but changes (for example, cases where digital audio recording media were exported) took place later.

(3) Requests that corrections to annual or quarterly Statements of Account be accepted, that fee payments be accepted, or that refunds be issued shall be addressed to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall meet the following conditions:

(i) The request shall be made in writing and must clearly identify the manufacturing or importing party making the request, the accounting period in question, and the purpose of the request. A request for a refund must be received in the Copyright Office before the expiration of two months from the last day of the applicable Statement of Account filing period. A request made by telephone or by telegraphic or similar unsigned communication will be considered to meet this requirement if it clearly identifies the basis of the request, is received in the Copyright Office within the two-month period, and a written request meeting all the conditions of this paragraph is also received in the Copyright Office within 14 days after the end of such two-month period.

(ii) The request must clearly identify the incorrect or incomplete information formerly filed and must provide the correct or additional information.

(iii) In the case where a royalty fee was miscalculated and the amount deposited with the Copyright Office was too large or too small, the request must be accompanied by an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or a statement in accordance with 28 U.S.C. 1746, made and signed in accordance with paragraph (e)(7) of this section. The affidavit or statement shall describe the reasons why the royalty fee was improperly calculated and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculation.

(iv) Following final processing, all requests will be filed with the original Statement of Account in the records of the Copyright Office. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be considered to relieve manufacturing or importing parties of their full obligations under title 17 of the United States Code, and the filing of a correction or supplemental payment shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(v)(A) The request must be accompanied by a filing fee in the amount of $20 for each Statement of Account involved. Payment of this fee may be in the form of a personal or company check, or a certified check, cashier's check, or money order, payable to the Register of Copyrights. No request will be processed until the appropriate filing fees are received.

(B) Requests that a supplemental royalty fee payment be deposited must be accompanied by a remittance in the full amount of such fee. Payment of the supplemental royalty fee must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment payable to the Register of Copyrights. No such request will be processed until an acceptable remittance in the full amount of the supplemental royalty fee has been received.

(vi) All requests submitted under paragraph (h) of this section must be signed by the manufacturing or importing party named in the Statement of Account, or the duly authorized agent of that party in accordance with paragraph (e)(7) of this section.

(vii) A request for a refund is not necessary where the Licensing Division, during its examination of a Statement of Account or related document, discovers an error that has resulted in a royalty overpayment. In this case, the Licensing Division will forward the royalty refund to the manufacturing or importing party named in the Statement of Account. The Copyright Office will not pay interest on any royalty refunds.

(i) Examination of Statements of Account by the Copyright Office. (2) Upon receiving a Statement of Account and royalty fee, the Copyright Office will make an official record of the actual date when such statement and fee were
physically received in the Copyright Office. Thereafter, the Licensing Division will examine the statement for obvious errors or omissions appearing on the face of the documents and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before final processing of the document is completed. If, as the result of communications between the Copyright Office and the manufacturer or importer, an additional fee is deposited or changes or additions are made in the Statement of Account, the date that additional deposit or information was actually received in the Office will be added to the official record.

(2) Completion by the Copyright Office of the final processing of a Statement of Account and royalty fee deposit shall establish only the fact of such completion and the date or dates of receipt shown in the official record. It shall not be considered a determination that the Statement of Account was, in fact, properly prepared and accurate, that the correct amount of the royalty was deposited, that the statutory time limits for filing had been met, or that any other requirements of 17 U.S.C. 1003 et seq. were fulfilled.

(i) Interest on late payments or underpayments. (1) Royalty payments submitted as a result of late payments or underpayments shall include interest, which shall begin to accrue on the first day after the close of the period for filing Statements of Account for all late payments or underpayments of royalties occurring within that accounting period. The accrual period for interest shall end on the date appearing on the certified check, cashier’s check, money order, or electronic payment submitted by the manufacturing or importing party, if the payment is received by the Copyright Office within five business days of that date. If the payment is not received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date, the accrual period shall end on the date of actual receipt by the Copyright Office.

(2) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period shall be the Current Value of Funds rate in accordance with the Treasury Financial Manual, at 1 TFM 6-8025-40, in effect on the first business day after the close of the filing deadline for the relevant accounting period. The interest rate for a particular accounting period may be obtained by consulting the Federal Register for the applicable Current Value of Funds Rate, or by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office.

(3) Interest is not required to be paid on any royalty underpayment or late payment from a particular accounting period if the interest charge is five dollars ($5.00) or less.

(k) Confidentiality of Statements of Account. Public access to the Copyright Office files of Statements of Account for digital audio recording products shall not be provided. Access will only be granted to interested copyright parties in accordance with regulations prescribed by the Register of Copyrights pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1003(c).

[59 FR 4589, Feb. 1, 1994, as amended at 64 FR 36575, July 7, 1999]
§ 201.29

(4) DART confidential material means the Quarterly and Annual Statements of Account, including the Primary Auditor’s Report that is part of the Annual Statements of Account, and the Verifying Auditor’s Report and any other verification information filed with the Copyright Office. It also includes photocopies of notes made by requestors who have had access to these materials that are retained by the Copyright Office.

(5) Interested copyright party means a party as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7).

(6) A Representative is someone, such as a lawyer or accountant, who is not an employee or officer of an interested copyright party or a manufacturing or importing party but is authorized to act on that party’s behalf.

(7) Statements of Account means Quarterly and Annual Statements of Account as required under 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and defined in § 201.28.

(c) Confidentiality. The Copyright Office will keep all DART confidential materials in locked files and disclose them only in accordance with this section. Any person or entity provided with access to DART confidential material by the Copyright Office shall receive such information in confidence and shall use and disclose it only as authorized in 17 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.

(d) Persons allowed access to DART confidential material. Access to DART Statements of Account filed under 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and to Verification Auditor’s Reports or other verification information is limited to:

(1) An interested copyright party as defined in § 201.29(b)(5) or an authorized representative of an interested copyright party, who has been qualified for access pursuant to paragraph (f)(2) of this section;

(2) The Verifying Auditor authorized to conduct verification procedures under § 201.30;

(3) The manufacturing or importing party who filed that Statement of Account or that party’s authorized representative(s); and

(4) Staff of the Copyright Office or the Library of Congress who require access in the performance of their duties under title 17 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.;

(e) Requests for access. An interested copyright party, manufacturing party, importing party, representative, or Verifying Auditor seeking access to any DART confidential material must complete and sign a “DART Access Form.” The requestor must submit a copy of the completed DART Access Form to the Licensing Specialist, Licensing Division. The form must be received in the Licensing Division at least 5 working days before the date an appointment is requested. The form may be faxed to the Licensing Division to expedite scheduling, but a copy of the form with the original signature must be filed with the Office.

(1) A representative of an interested copyright party, a manufacturing party or an importing party shall submit an affidavit of his or her authority (e.g., in the form of a letter of authorization from the interested copyright party or the manufacturing or importing party).

(2) An auditor selected to conduct a verification procedure under § 201.30 shall submit an affidavit of his or her selection to conduct the verification procedure.

(3) DART Access Forms may be requested from, and upon completion returned to: Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20557-6400. They may also be requested or submitted in person at the Licensing Division, Room LM-458, James Madison Memorial Building, First and Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC, between 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m.

(f) Criteria for access to DART confidential material. (1) A Verifying Auditor will be allowed access to any particular Statement of Account and Primary Auditor’s Report required to perform his or her verification function;

(2) Interested copyright parties as defined in paragraph (b)(5) of this section will be allowed access to any DART confidential material as defined in paragraph (b)(4) of this section for verification purposes, except that no interested copyright party owned or controlled by a manufacturing or importing party subject to royalty payment obligations under the Audio Home Recording Act, or who owns or controls such a manufacturing or importing party, may have access to...
DART confidential material relating to any other manufacturing or importing party. In such cases, a representative of the interested copyright party as defined in paragraph (b)(6) of this section may have access for that party, provided that these representatives do not disclose the confidential information contained in the Statement of Account or Primary Auditor's Report to his or her client.

(3) Access to a Verifying Auditor's Report and any other verification material filed in the Office shall be limited to the interested copyright party(s) requesting the verification procedure and to the manufacturing or importing party whose Statement of Account was the subject of the verification procedure.

(g) Denial of access. Any party who does not meet the criteria described in § 201.29(f) shall be denied access.

(h) Content of DART Access Form. The DART Access Form shall include the following information:

(1) Identification of the Statement of Account and Primary Auditor's Report, the Verification Auditor's Report and other verification materials, or notes prepared by requestors who earlier accessed the same items, to be accessed, by both the name (of the manufacturing party or importing party) and the quarter(s) and year(s) to be accessed.

(2) The name of the interested copyright party, manufacturing party, importing party, or verification auditor on whose behalf the request is made, including a street address (not a post office box number), a telephone number, and a telefax number, if any.

(3) If the request for access is by or for an interested copyright party, a statement indicating whether the copyright party is owned or controlled by a manufacturing or importing party subject to a royalty payment obligation, or whether the interested copyright party owns or controls a manufacturing or importing party subject to royalty payments.

(4) The name, address, and telephone number of the person making the request for access and his/her relationship to the party on whose behalf the request is made.

(5) The specific purpose for the request for access, for example, access is requested in order to verify a Statement of Account; in order to review the results of a verification audit; for the resolution of a dispute arising from such an audit; or in order for a manufacturing or importing party to review its own Statement of Account, Primary Auditor's Report, Verification Auditor's Report, or related information.

(6) A statement that the information obtained from access to Statements of Account, Primary Auditor's Report, Verification Auditor's Report, and any other verification audit filings will be used only for a purpose permitted under the Audio Home Recording Act (AHRA) and the DART regulations.

(7) The actual signature of the party or the representative of the party requesting access certifying that the information will be held in confidence and used only for the purpose specified by the Audio Home Recording Act and these regulations.

§ 201.30 Verification of Statements of Account.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the verification of information contained in the Statements of Account by interested copyright parties pursuant to section 1003(c) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(b) Definitions—(1) Annual Statement of Account, generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), and primary auditor have the same meaning as the definition in § 201.28 of this part.

(2) Filer is a manufacturer or importer of digital devices or media who is required by 17 U.S.C. 1003 to file with the Copyright Office Quarterly and Annual Statements of Account and a primary auditor's report on the Annual Statement of Account.

(3) Interested copyright party has the same meaning as the definition in § 201.29 of this part.

(4) Verifying auditor is the person retained by interested copyright parties to perform a verification procedure. He or she is independent and qualified as
§ 201.30 37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)

defined in paragraphs (j)(2) and (j)(3) of this section.

(5) Verification procedure is the process followed by the verifying auditor to verify the information reported on an Annual Statement of Account.

(c) Purpose of verification. The purpose of verification is to determine whether there was any failure of the primary auditor to conduct the primary audit properly or to obtain a reliable result, or whether there was any error in the Annual Statement of Account.

(d) Timing of verification procedure—(1) Requesting a verification procedure. No sooner than three months nor later than three years after the filing deadline of the Annual Statement of Account to be verified, any interested copyright party shall notify the Register of Copyrights of its interest in instituting a verification procedure. Such notification of interest shall also be served at the same time on the filer and the primary auditor identified in the Annual Statement of Account. Such notification shall include the year of the Annual Statement of Account to be verified, the name of the filer, information on how other interested copyright parties may contact the party interested in the verification including name, address, telephone number, facsimile number and electronic mail address, if any, and a statement establishing the party filing the notification as an interested copyright party. The notification shall apply to more than one Annual Statement of Account and more than one filer.

(2) Coordination and selection of verifying auditor. The Copyright Office will publish in the Federal Register notice of having received a notification of interest to institute a verification procedure. Interested copyright parties have one month from the date of publication of the Federal Register notice to notify the party interested in instituting the verification procedure of their intent to join with it and to participate in the selection of the verifying auditor. Any dispute about the selection of the verifying auditor shall be resolved by the parties themselves.

(3) Notification of the filer and primary auditor. As soon as the verifying auditor has been selected, and in no case later than two months after the publication in the Federal Register of the notice described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, the joint interested copyright parties shall notify the Register of Copyrights, the filer, and the primary auditor identified in the Annual Statement of Account to be verified, that they intend or do not intend to initiate a verification procedure.

(4) Commencement of the verification procedure. The verification procedure shall begin no sooner than one month after notice of intent to initiate a verification procedure was given to the filer and the primary auditor by the joint interested copyright parties. The joint interested copyright parties shall grant the filer or the primary auditor a postponement of the beginning of the verification procedure of up to one additional month if either one requests it. Verification procedures shall be conducted at reasonable times during normal business hours.

(5) Anti-duplication rules. A filer shall be subject to no more than one verification procedure per calendar year. An Annual Statement of Account shall be subject to a verification procedure only once.

(e) Scope of verification. The verifying auditor shall limit his or her examination to verifying the information required in the Annual Statement of Account. To the extent possible, the verifying auditor shall inspect the information contained in the primary auditor's report and the primary auditor's working papers. If the verifying auditor believes that access to the records, files, or other materials in the control of the filer is required according to GAAS, he or she may, after consultation with the primary auditor, require the production of these documents as well. The verifying auditor and the primary auditor shall act in good faith using reasonable professional judgment, with the intention of reaching a reasonable accommodation as to the necessity and scope of examination of any additional documents, but the decision to require the production of additional documents is solely that of the verifying auditor.

(f) Verification report. Upon concluding the verification procedure, the
verifying auditor shall render a report enumerating in reasonable detail the procedures performed by the verifying auditor and his or her findings. Such findings shall state whether there was any failure of the primary auditor to conduct properly the primary audit or obtain a reliable result, and whether there was any error in the Annual Statement of Account, itemized by amount and by the filer's elected fiscal year. If there was such failure or error, the report shall specify all evidence from which the verifying auditor reached such conclusions. Such evidence shall be listed and identified in an appendix to the report in sufficient detail to enable a third party to reasonably understand or interpret the evidence on which the verifying auditor based his or her conclusion. If there was no such failure or error, the report shall so state.

(g) Distribution of report. Copies of the verifying auditor's report shall be subject to the confidentiality provisions of § 201.29 and shall be distributed as follows:

(1) One copy, excluding the appendix, if applicable, shall be filed with the Register of Copyrights.

(2) One copy, with the appendix, if applicable, shall be submitted to each of the interested copyright parties who retained the services of the verifying auditor and who are authorized to receive such information according to § 201.29.

(3) One copy, with the appendix, if applicable, shall be submitted to the filer of the Annual Statement of Account.

(4) One copy, with the appendix, if applicable, shall be submitted to the primary auditor.

(h) Retention of report. The Register of Copyrights will retain his or her copy of the verifying auditor's report for three years following the date the copy of the verifying auditor's report is filed.

(i) Costs of verification. The joint interested copyright parties who requested the verification procedure shall pay the fees of the verifying auditor and the primary auditor for their work performed in connection with the verification procedure, except, if the verification procedure results in a judicial determination or the filer's agreement that royalty payments were understated on the Annual Statement of Account, then,

(1) if the amount is less than five percent (5%) of the amount stated on the Annual Statement of Account, that amount shall first be used to pay the fees of the verifying auditor and the primary auditor, and any remaining amount plus any applicable interest on the total amount shall be deposited, allocated by the filer's elected fiscal year, with the Register of Copyrights, or

(2) if the amount is equal to or greater than five percent (5%) of the amount stated on the Annual Statement of Account, the filer shall pay the fees of the verifying auditor and the primary auditor, and, in addition, shall deposit the amount found to be due plus any applicable interest on the total amount, allocated by the filer's elected fiscal year, with the Register of Copyrights.

(j) Independence and qualifications of verifying auditor. (1) The verifying auditor shall be qualified and independent as defined in this section. If the filer has reason to believe that the verifying auditor is not qualified or independent, it shall raise the matter with the joint interested copyright parties before the commencement of the verification procedure, and if the matter is not resolved, it may raise the issue with the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Professional Ethics Division and/or the verifying auditor's State Board of Accountancy while the verification procedure is being performed.

(2) A verifying auditor shall be considered qualified if he or she is a certified public accountant or works under the supervision of a certified public accounting firm.

(3) A verifying auditor shall be considered independent if:

(i) He or she is independent as that term is used in the Code of Professional Conduct of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, including the Principles, Rules and Interpretations of such Code applicable generally to attest engagements (collectively, the "AICPA Code"); and

(ii) He or she is independent as that term is used in the Statements on Auditing Standards promulgated by the
§ 201.31 Procedures for copyright restoration in the United States for certain motion pictures and their contents in accordance with the North American Free Trade Agreement.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures for submission of Statements of Intent pertaining to the restoration of copyright protection in the United States for certain motion pictures and works embodied therein as required by the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act of December 8, 1993, Public Law No. 103-182. On or after January 3, 1995, the Copyright Office will publish in the Federal Register a list of works for which potential copyright owners have filed a complete and timely Statement of Intent with the Copyright Office.

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) Effective filing. To be effective a Statement of Intent must be complete and timely.

(2) Eligible work means any motion picture that was first fixed or published in Mexico or Canada, and any work included in such motion picture that was first fixed or published with this motion picture, if the work entered the public domain in the United States because it was first published on or after January 1, 1978, and before March 1, 1989, without the notice required by 17 U.S.C. 401, 402, or 403, the absence of which has not been excused by the operation of 17 U.S.C. 405, as such sections were in effect during that period.

(3) Fixed means a work ‘fixed’ in a tangible medium of expression when its embodiment in a copy or phonorecord, by or under the authority of the author, is sufficiently permanent or stable to permit it to be perceived, reproduced, or otherwise communicated for a period of more than transitory duration. A work consisting of sounds, images, or both, that are being transmitted, is ‘fixed’ for purposes of this title if a fixation of the work is being made simultaneously with its transmission. 17 U.S.C. 101.

(4) Potential copyright owner means the person who would have owned any of the exclusive rights comprised in a copyright in the United States in a work eligible for copyright restoration under NAFTA, if the work had not fallen into the public domain for failure to comply with the statutory notice requirements in effect at the time of first publication, or any successor in interest to such a person.

(5) Published means distribution of copies of a work to the public by sale or other transfer of ownership, or by rental, lease, or lending. The offering to distribute copies to a group of persons for purposes of further distribution, public performance, or public display, constitutes publication. A public performance or display of a work does not of itself constitute publication.

(c) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide Statement of Intent forms for the use of potential copyright owners who want to restore copyright protection in eligible works.

(d) Requirements for effective Statements of Intent.

(1) The document should be clearly designated as a “Statement of Intent to restore copyright protection in the United States in accordance with the North American Free Trade Agreement.”

(2) Statements of Intent must include:

(i) The title(s) of the work(s) for which copyright restoration is sought, including any underlying work(s) that has a title(s) different from the title of the motion picture, provided all works are owned by the same potential copyright owner;

(ii) The nation of first fixation;

(iii) The nation of first publication;

(iv) The date of first publication;

(v) The name and mailing address (and telephone and telefax, if applicable) of the potential copyright owner of the work;

(vi) The following certification (in its entirety); signed and dated by the potential copyright owner or authorized agent:

Certification and Signature: I hereby certify that each of the above titled works was first fixed or first published in
Copyright Office, Library of Congress

(201.33) Procedures for filing Notices of Intent to Enforce a restored copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.

(a) General. This section prescribes the procedures for submission of Notices of Intent to Enforce a Restored Copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, as required in 17 U.S.C. 104A(a). On or before May 1, 1996, and every four months thereafter, the Copyright Office will publish in the Federal Register a list of works for which Notices of Intent to Enforce have been filed. It will maintain a list of these works. The Office will also make a more complete version of the information contained in the Notice of Intent to Enforce available on its automated database, which can be accessed over the Internet.

(b) Definitions—(1) NAFTA work means a work restored to copyright on January 1, 1995, as a result of compliance with procedures contained in the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act of December 8, 1993, Public Law No. 103-182.

(2) Reliance party means any person who—

(i) With respect to a particular work, engages in acts, before the source country of that work becomes an eligible country under the URAA, which would have violated 17 U.S.C. 106 if the restored work had been subject to copyright protection and who, after the source country becomes an eligible country, continues to engage in such acts;

(ii) Before the source country of a particular work becomes an eligible country, makes or acquires one or more copies or phonorecords of that work; or

(iii) As the result of the sale or other disposition of a derivative work, covered under the new 17 U.S.C. 104A(d)(3), or of significant assets of a person, described in the new 17 U.S.C. 104A(d)(3)

§ 201.33

(A) or (B), is a successor, assignee or licensor of that person.

(3) Restored work means an original work of authorship that—

(i) Is protected under 17 U.S.C. 104A (a);

(ii) Is not in the public domain in its source country through expiration of term of protection;

(iii) Is in the public domain in the United States due to—

(A) Noncompliance with formalities imposed at any time by United States copyright law, including failure of renewal, lack of proper notice, or failure to comply with any manufacturing requirements;

(B) Lack of subject matter protection in the case of sound recordings fixed before February 15, 1972; or

(C) Lack of national eligibility; and

(iv) Has at least one author or rightholder who was, at the time the work was created, a national or domiciliary of an eligible country, and if published, was first published in an eligible country and not published in the United States during the 30-day period following publication in such eligible country.

(4) Source country of a restored work is—

(i) A nation other than the United States; and

(ii) In the case of an unpublished work—

(A) The eligible country in which the author or rightholder is a national or domiciliary, or, if a restored work has more than one author or rightholder, the majority of foreign authors or rightholders are nationals or domiciliaries of eligible countries; or

(B) If the majority of authors or rightholders are not foreign, the nation other than the United States which has the most significant contacts with the work; and

(iii) In the case of a published work—

(A) The eligible country in which the work is first published; or

(B) If the restored work is published on the same day in two or more eligible countries, the eligible country which has the most significant contacts with the work.

(c) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for Notices of Intent to Enforce filed with the Copyright Office. It requests that filers of such notices follow the format set out in Appendix A of this section and give all of the information listed in paragraph (d) of this section. Notices of Intent to Enforce must be in English, and should be typed or printed by hand legibly in dark, preferably black, ink, on 8½ by 11 inch white paper of good quality, with at least a one inch (or three cm) margin.

(d) Requirements for Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.

(1) Notices of Intent to Enforce should be sent to the following address: GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, USA.

(2) The document should be clearly designated as "Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.

(3) Notices of Intent to Enforce must include:

(i) Required information:

(A) The title of the work, or if untitled, a brief description of the work;

(B) An English translation of the title if title is in a foreign language;

(C) Alternative titles if any;

(D) Name of the copyright owner of the restored work, or of an owner of an exclusive right therein;

(E) The address and telephone number where the owner of copyright or the exclusive right therein can be reached; and

(F) The following certification signed and dated by the owner of copyright or the exclusive right therein, or the owner’s authorized agent:

I hereby certify that for each of the work(s) listed above, I am the copyright owner, or the owner of an exclusive right, or the owner’s authorized agent, the agency relationship having been constituted in a writing signed by the owner before the filing of this notice, and that the information given herein is true and correct to the best of my knowledge.

Signature

Name (printed or typed)

As agent for (if applicable)

Date:

(ii) Optional but essential information:

(A) Type of work (painting, sculpture, music, motion picture, sound recording, book, etc.);
(B) Name of author(s);
(C) Source country;
(D) Approximate year of publication;
(E) Additional identifying information (e.g. for movies: director, leading actors, screenwriter, animator; for photographs or books: subject matter; for books: editor, publisher, contributors);
(F) Rights owned by the party on whose behalf the Notice of Intent to Enforce is filed (e.g., the right to reproduce/distribute/publicly display/publicly perform the work, or to prepare a derivative work based on the work, etc.); and
(G) Telefax number at which owner, exclusive rights holder, or agent thereof can be reached.

(4) Notices of Intent to Enforce may cover multiple works provided that each work is identified by title, all the works are by the same author, all the works are owned by the identified copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right, and the rights owned by the party on whose behalf the Notice of Intent is filed are the same. In the case of Notices of Intent to Enforce covering multiple works, the notice must separately designate for each work covered the title of the work, or if untitled, a brief description of the work; an English translation of the title if the title is in a foreign language; alternative titles, if any; the type of work; the source country; the approximate year of publication; and additional identifying information.

(5) Notices of Intent to Enforce works restored on January 1, 1996, may be submitted to the Copyright Office on or after January 1, 1996, through December 31, 1997.

(e) Fee—(1) Amount. The filing fee for recording Notices of Intent to Enforce is 30 U.S. dollars for notices covering one work. For notices covering multiple works as described in paragraph (d)(4) of this section, the fee is 30 U.S. dollars, plus one dollar for each additional work covered beyond the first designated work. For example, the fee for a Notice of Intent to Enforce covering three works would be 32 U.S. dollars. This fee includes the cost of an acknowledgement of recordation.

(2) Method of Payment—(i) Checks, money orders, or bank drafts. The Copyright Office will accept checks, money orders, or bank drafts made payable to the Register of Copyrights. Remittances must be redeemable without service or exchange fees through a United States institution, must be payable in United States dollars, and must be imprinted with American Banking Association routing numbers. International money orders, and postal money orders that are negotiable only at a post office are not acceptable. CURRENCY WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.

(ii) Copyright Office Deposit Account. The Copyright Office maintains a system of Deposit Accounts for the convenience of those who frequently use its services. The system allows an individual or firm to establish a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office and to make advance deposits into that account. Deposit Account holders can charge copyright fees against the balance in their accounts instead of sending separate remittances with each request for service. For information on Deposit Accounts please write: Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559-6000, and request a copy of Circular 5, "How to Open and Maintain a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office."

(iii) Credit cards. For URAA filings the Copyright Office will accept VISA, MasterCard and American Express. Debit cards cannot be accepted for payment. With the NIE, a filer using a credit card must submit a separate cover letter stating the name of the credit card, the credit card number, the expiration date of the credit card, the total amount, and a signature authorizing the Office to charge the fees to the account. To protect the security of the credit card number, the filer must not write the credit card number on the Notice of Intent to Enforce.

(f) Public online access. (1) Almost all of the information contained in the Notice of Intent to Enforce is available online in the Copyright Office History Documents (COHD) file through the Library of Congress electronic information system LC MARVEL through the Internet. Except on Federal holidays, this information may be obtained on terminals in the Copyright Office at the Library of Congress Monday through Friday 8:30 a.m. - 5:00 p.m. U.S.
§ 201.34

Eastern Time or over the Internet
Monday - Friday 6:30 a.m. - 9:30 p.m.
U.S. Eastern Time, Saturday 8:00 a.m. -
5 p.m., and Sunday 1:00 p.m. - 5:00 p.m.
(2) Alternative ways to connect
through Internet are: (i) use the Copy-
right Office Home Page on the World
Wide Web at: http://lcweb.loc.gov/copy-
right, (ii) telnet to locis.loc.gov or the
numeric address 140.147.254.3, or (iii)
telnet to marvel.loc.gov, or the nu-
meric address 140.147.248.7 and log in as
marvel, or (iv) use a Gopher Client to
connect to marvel.loc.gov.

(3) Information available online in-
cludes: the title or brief description if
untitled; an English translation of the
title; the alternative titles if any; the
name of the copyright owner or owner
of an exclusive right; the author;
the type of work; the date of receipt of the
NIE in the Copyright Office; the date of
publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER;
the rights covered by the notice; and
the address, telephone and telefax
number (if given) of the copyright
owner.

(4) Online records of Notices of Intent
to Enforce are searchable by the title,
the copyright owner or owner of an ex-
clusive right, and the author.

(g) NAFTA work. The copyright owner
of a work restored under NAFTA by
the filing of a NAFTA Statement of In-
tent to Restore with the Copyright Of-
Office prior to January 1, 1995, is not re-
quired to file a Notice of Intent to En-
force under this regulation.

APPENDIX A TO § 201.33—NOTICE OF IN-
TENT TO ENFORCE A COPYRIGHT RE-
STORED UNDER THE URUGUAY ROUND
AGREEMENTS ACT (URAA)

1. Title:
(If this work does not have a title, state
"No title." OR
Brief description of work (for untitled
works only):

2. English translation of title (if applicable):

3. Alternative title(s) (if any):

4. Type of work:
(e.g. painting, sculpture, music, motion
picture, sound recording, book)

5. Name of author(s):

6. Source country:

7. Approximate year of publication:

8. Additional identifying information:
(e.g. for movies: director, leading actors,
screenwriter, animator, for photographs:

9. Name of copyright owner:
(Statements may be filed in the name of
the owner of the restored copyright or
the owner of an exclusive right therein.)

10. If you are not the owner of all rights,
specify the rights you own:

11. Address at which copyright owner may be
contacted:

12. Telephone number of owner:

13. Telefax number of owner:

14. Certification and Signature:
I hereby certify that, for each of the
work(s) listed above, I am the copyright
owner, or the owner of an exclusive right, or
the owner's authorized agent, the agency re-
lationship having been constituted in a writ-
ing signed by the owner before the filing of
this notice, and that the information given
herein is true and correct to the best of my
knowledge.

Signature:
Name (printed or typed):
As agent for (if applicable):
Date:

NOTE: Notices of Intent to Enforce must be
in English, except for the original title, and
either typed or printed by hand legibly in
dark, preferably black, ink. They should be
on 8½" by 11" white paper of good quality,
with at least a 1-inch (or 3 cm) margin.

[60 FR 50420, Sept. 29, 1995, as amended at 63
FR 30635, June 5, 1998; 64 FR 12002, Mar. 16,
1999]

§ 201.34 Procedures for filing Correc-
tion Notices of Intent to Enforce a
Copyright Restored under the Uru-
guay Round Agreements Act.

(a) General. This section specifies
the procedures for submission of cor-
corrections of Notices of Intent to Enforce
a Copyright (NIEs) Restored under the
Uruguay Round Agreements Act of De-
cember 8, 1994, as required by 17 U.S.C.
104A(e), as amended by Pub. L. 103-465, 108

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this
section, the following definitions apply.

414
§ 201.34

(1) Major error. A major error in filing a Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act is an error in the name of the copyright owner or rightholder, or in the title of the work (as opposed to its translation, if any) where such error fails to adequately identify the restored work or its owner through a reasonable search of the Copyright Office NIE records. Omission of, or incorrect information regarding, a written agency relationship also constitutes a major error.

(2) Minor error. A minor error in filing a Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act is any error that is not a major error.

(3) Restored work. For the definition of works restored under the URAA, see 37 CFR 201.33.

(c) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for Correction Notices of Intent to Enforce filed with the Copyright Office. It requests that filers of such Correction NIEs follow the format set out in Appendix A of this section and give all information listed in paragraph (d) of this section. Correction NIEs must be in English, and should be typed or legibly printed by hand in dark, preferably black ink, on 8½" by 11" white paper of good quality with at least a 1½ (or three cm) margin.

(d) Requirements for Correction Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act. (1) A correction for a Notice of Intent to Enforce should be clearly designated as a “Correction Notice of Intent to Enforce” or “Correction NIE.”

(2) Correction Notices of Intent to Enforce should be sent to the following address: URAA/GATT, NIEs and Registrations, PO Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, USA.

(3) A Correction NIE shall contain the following information:

(i) The volume and document number of the previous NIE which is to be corrected;

(ii) The title of the work as it appears on the previous NIE, including alternative titles, if they appear;

(iii) The English translation of the title, if any, as it appears on the previous NIE;

(iv) A statement of the erroneous information as it appears on the previous NIE;

(v) A statement of the correct information as it should have appeared and an optional explanation of its correction; or

(vi) A statement of the information to be added. This includes optional information such as:

(A) Type of work;

(B) Rights owned by the party on whose behalf the Correction Notice is filed;

(C) Name of author;

(D) Source country;

(E) Year of publication;

(F) Alternative titles;

(G) An optional explanation of the added information.

(vii) The name and address:

(A) To which correspondence concerning the document should be sent; and

(B) To which the acknowledgment of the recordation of the Correction NIE should be mailed; and

(viii) A certification. The certification shall consist of:

(A) A statement that, for each of the works named above, the person signing the Correction NIE is the copyright owner, or the owner of an exclusive right, or the owner’s authorized agent, and that the information is correct to the best of that person’s knowledge;

(B) The typed or printed name of the person whose signature appears;

(C) The signature and date of signature; and

(D) The telephone and telefax number at which the owner, rightholder, or agent thereof can be reached.

(4) A Correction NIE may cover multiple works in multiple NIE documents for one fee provided that: each work is identified by title; all the works are by the same author; all the works are owned by the same copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right. In the case of Correction NIEs, the notice must separately designate each title to be corrected, noting the incorrect information as it appeared on the previously filed NIE, as well as the corrected information. A single notice covering multiple titles need bear only a single certification.
(5) Copies, phonorecords or supporting documents cannot be made part of the record of a Correction NIE and should not be submitted with the document.

(6) Time for submitting Correction NIEs.

(i) Major errors. The Copyright Office will accept a Correction NIE for a major error concerning a restored work during the 24-month period beginning on the date of restoration of the work, as provided for original NIEs in section 104A(d)(2)(A) of title 17.

(ii) Minor errors. The Office will accept a Correction NIE for a minor error or omission concerning a restored work at any time after the original NIE has been filed, as provided in section 104A(e)(3)(A)(iii) of title 17.

(e) Fee—(1) Amount. The filing fee for recording Correction NIEs is 30 U.S. dollars for each Correction Notice covering one work. For single Correction NIEs covering multiple works, that is, for works by the same author and owned by the same copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right, the fee is 30 U.S. dollars, plus one dollar for each additional work covered beyond the first designated work.

(2) Method of payment. See 37 CFR 201.33(e)(1),(2).

(f) Public online access. Information contained in the Correction Notice of Intent to Enforce is available online in the Copyright Office History Documents (COHD) file through the Library of Congress electronic information system, available through the Internet. This file is available from computer terminals located in the Copyright Office itself or from terminals located in other parts of the Library of Congress through the Library of Congress Information System (LOCIS). Alternative ways to connect through Internet are the World Wide Web (WWW), using the Copyright Office Home Page at: http://www.loc.gov/copyright; directly to LOCIS through the telnet address at locis.loc.gov; or the Library of Congress through gopher LC MARVEL and WWW which are available 24 hours a day. LOCIS is available 24 hours a day, Monday through Friday. For the purpose of researching the full Office record of Correction NIEs on the Internet, the Office has made online searching instructions accessible through the Copyright Office Home Page. Researchers can access them through the Library of Congress Home Page on the World Wide Web by selecting the copyright link. Select the menu item "Copyright Office Records" and/or "URAA, GATT Amends U.S. law." Images of the complete Correction NIEs as filed will be stored on optical disk and will be available from the Copyright Office.

APPENDIX A TO § 201.34—CORRECTION NOTICE OF INTENT TO ENFORCE

CORRECTION OF NOTICE OF INTENT TO ENFORCE

1. Name of Copyright Owner (or owner of exclusive right). If this correction notice is to cover multiple works, the author and the rights owner must be the same for all works covered by the notice.

2. Title(s) (or brief description)
   (a) Work No. 1—
   Volume and Document Number: ______
   English Translation: ______
   (b) Work No. 2 (if applicable)—
   Volume and Document Number: ______
   English Translation: ______
   (c) Work No. 3 (if applicable)—
   Volume and Document Number: ______
   English Translation: ______
   (d) Work No. 4 (if applicable)—
   Volume and Document Number: ______
   English Translation: ______

3. Statement of incorrect information on earlier NIE:

4. Statement of correct (or previously omitted) information:

Give the following only if incorrect or omitted on earlier NIE:

(a) Type of work ______
(b) Rights owned ______
(c) Name of author (of entire work) ______
(d) Source Country ______
(e) Year of Publication (Approximate if precise year is unknown) ______
(f) Alternative titles ______

5. Explanation of error:

6. Certification and Signature: I hereby certify that for each of the work(s) listed above, I am the copyright owner, or the owner's authorized agent, the agency relationship having been constituted in a writing signed by the owner before the filing of this notice, and that the information given herein is true and correct to the best of my knowledge.

Name and Address (typed or printed):
§ 201.35 Initial Notice of Digital Transmission of Sound Recordings under Statutory License.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules under which copyright owners shall receive initial notice of use of their sound recordings under statutory license under section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(b) Definitions. (1) An Initial Notice of Digital Transmission of Sound Recordings under Statutory License is a notice to sound recording copyright owners of the use of their works under section 114(f), and required under this regulation to be filed by a Service in the Copyright Office.

(2) A Service is an entity engaged in the digital transmission of sound recordings, pursuant to section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(c) Forms. A suggested format for the Initial Notices may be found on the Copyright Office website.

(d) Content. An “Initial Notice of Digital Transmission of Sound Recordings under Statutory License” shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include the following:

(1) The full legal name of the Service commencing digital transmission of sound recordings under statutory license;

(2) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the Service. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(3) The telephone number and facsimile number of the Service; and

(4) Information on how to gain access to the online website or home page of the Service, or where information may be posted under these regulations concerning the use of sound recordings under statutory license.

(e) Signature. The Initial Notice shall include the signature of the appropriate officer or representative of the Service transmitting sound recordings under statutory license. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name and title of the person signing the Notice, and by the date of signature.

(f) Filing. A Service shall file the Initial Notice with the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office prior to the first transmission of sound recordings under the license, or by September 3, 1998, in the case of a Service that makes subscription transmissions before or on that date, or by December 1, 1999, in the case of a Service that makes eligible nonsubscription transmissions before, or on, that date. Each Notice shall be accompanied by a filing fee of $20. Initial Notices and amendments will be placed in the public records of the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and posted online where they will be accessible through the Copyright Office website. The address of the Licensing Division is: Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing Division, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20557–6400.

(g) Amendments. A Service shall file with the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office an amendment reporting a change in the information reported in the Initial Notice within 45 days of the change. An amendment shall be accompanied by a fee of $20, and shall:

(1) Be clearly and prominently identified as “An Amendment to an Initial Notice of Digital Transmission of Sound Recordings under Statutory License”;

(2) Identify the specific Initial Notice intended to be amended, by Service name and filing date, so that it may be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(3) Clearly specify the nature of the amendment to be made; and

(4) Be signed and dated in accordance with this section.

§ 201.36 Reports of Use of Sound Recordings under Statutory License.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules under which Services shall serve copyright owners with notice of use of their sound recordings, what the content of that notice should be, and under which records of such use shall be kept and made available.

(b) Definitions. (1) A Collective is a collection and distribution organization that is designated under the statutory license, either by settlement agreement reached under section 114(f)(1)(A) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(i) and adopted pursuant to 37 CFR 251.63(b), or by decision of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP) under section 114(f)(1)(B) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(ii), or by an order of the Librarian pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f).

(2) A Report of Use of Sound Recordings under Statutory License is a report required under this regulation to be provided by the Service transmitting sound recordings under statutory license.

(3) A Service is an entity engaged in the digital transmission of sound recordings pursuant to section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(c) Service. Reports of Use shall be served upon Collectives that are identified in the records of the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office as having been designated under the statutory license, either by settlement agreement reached under section 114(f)(1)(A) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(i) and adopted pursuant to 37 CFR 251.63(b), or by decision of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP) under section 114(f)(1)(B) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(ii), or by an order of the Librarian pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f).

(1) A Report of Use of Sound Recordings under Statutory License is a report required under this regulation to be provided by the Service transmitting sound recordings under statutory license.

(1) Reports of Use shall be served, by certified or registered mail, or by other means if agreed upon by the respective Service and Collective, on or before the twentieth day after the close of each month, commencing with the month succeeding the month in which these regulations become effective.

(d) Posting. In the event that no Collective is designated under the statutory license, or if all designated Collectives have terminated collection and distribution operations, a Service transmitting sound recordings under statutory license shall post and make available online its Reports of Use. Services shall post their Reports of Use online on or before the 20th day after the close of each month, and make them available to all sound recording copyright owners for a period of 90 days. Services may require use of passwords for access to posted Reports of Use, but must make passwords available in a timely manner and free of charge or other restrictions. Services may predicate provision of a password upon:

(1) Information relating to identity, location and status as a sound recording copyright owner; and

(2) A “click-wrap” agreement not to use information in the Report of Use for purposes other than royalty collection, royalty distribution, and determining compliance with statutory license requirements, without the express consent of the Service providing the Report of Use.

(e) Content. A “Report of Use of Sound Recordings under Statutory License” shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include a Service’s “Intended Playlists” for each channel and each day of the reported month.

(1) The “Intended Playlists” shall include a consecutive listing of every recording scheduled to be transmitted, and shall contain the following information in the following order:

(i) The name of the service or entity;

(ii) The channel;

(iii) The sound recording title;

(iv) The featured recording artist, group, or orchestra;

(v) The retail album title (or, in the case of compilation albums created for commercial purposes, the name of the retail album identified by the Service for purchase of the sound recording);

(vi) The recording label;

(vii) The catalog number;

(viii) The International Standard Recording Code (ISRC) embedded in the sound recording, where available and feasible;

(ix) The date of transmission; and

(x) The time of transmission.

(2) The Report of Use shall include a report of any system failure resulting in a deviation from the Intended Playlists of scheduled sound recordings. Such report shall include the
date, time and duration of any such system failure.

(f) Signature. Reports of Use shall include a signed statement by the appropriate officer or representative of the Service attesting, under penalty of perjury, that the information contained in the Report is believed to be accurate and is maintained by the Service in its ordinary course of business. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name and title of the person signing the Report, and by the date of signature.

(g) Format. Reports of Use should be provided on a standard machine-readable medium, such as diskette, optical disc, or magneto-optical disc, and should conform as closely as possible to the following specifications:

1. ASCII delimited format, using pipe characters as delimiter, with no headers or footers;
2. Carats should surround strings;
3. No carats should surround dates and numbers;
4. Dates should be indicated by: MM/DD/YYYY;
5. Times should be based on a 24-hour clock: HH:MM:SS;
6. A carriage return should be at the end of each line; and
7. All data for one record should be on a single line.

(h) Confidentiality. Copyright owners, their agents and Collectives shall not disseminate information in the Reports of Use to any persons not entitled to it, nor utilize the information for purposes other than royalty collection and distribution, and determining compliance with statutory license requirements, without express consent of the Service providing the Report of Use.

(i) Documentation. All compulsory licensees shall, for a period of at least three years from the date of service or posting of the Report of Use, keep and retain a copy of the Report of Use. For reporting periods from February 1, 1996, through August 31, 1998, the Service shall serve upon all designated Collectives and retain for a period of three years from the date of transmission records of use indicating which sound recordings were performed and the number of times each recording was performed, but is not required to produce full Reports of Use or Intended Playlists for those periods.

§ 201.37 Designated collection and distribution organizations for records of use of sound recordings under statutory license.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules under which records of use shall be collected and distributed under section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, and under which records of such use shall be kept and made available.

(b) Definitions. (1) A Collective is a collection and distribution organization that is designated under the statutory license, either by settlement agreement reached under section 114(f)(1)(A) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(i) and adopted pursuant to 37 CFR 251.63(b), or by decision of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP) under section 114(f)(1)(B) or section 114(f)(1)(C)(ii), or by an order of the Librarian pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f).

(2) A Service is an entity engaged in the digital transmission of sound recordings pursuant to section 114(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(c) Notice of Designation as Collective under Statutory License. A Collective shall file with the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office and post and make available online a "Notice of Designation as Collective under Statutory License," which shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall contain the following information:

1. The Collective name, address, telephone number and facsimile number;

2. A statement that the Collective has been designated for collection and distribution of performance royalties under statutory license for digital transmission of sound recordings; and

3. Information on how to gain access to the online website or home page of the Collective, where information may be posted under these regulations concerning the use of sound recordings under statutory license. The address of the Licensing Division is: Library of Congress, Copyright Office, Licensing
§ 201.38 Designation of agent to receive notification of claimed infringement.

(a) General. This section prescribes interim rules under which service providers may provide the Copyright Office with designations of agents to receive notification of claimed infringement under section 512(c)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended. These interim rules shall remain in effect until more comprehensive rules have been promulgated following a notice of proposed rulemaking and receipt of public comments.

(b) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for filing an Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement.

(c) Content. An “Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement” shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include the following information with respect to a single service provider:

(1) The full legal name and address of the service provider;

(2) All names under which the service provider is doing business;

(3) The name of the agent designated to receive notification of claimed infringement;

(4) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the agent designated to receive notification of claimed infringement. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(5) The telephone number, facsimile number, and electronic mail address of the agent designated to receive notification of claimed infringement;

(d) Signature. The Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement shall include the signature of the appropriate officer identifying the Copyright Owners it has served.

(d) Annual Report. The Collective will post and make available online, for the duration of one year, an Annual Report on how the Collective operates, how royalties are collected and distributed, and what the Collective spent that fiscal year on administrative expenses.

(e) Inspection of Reports of Use by Copyright Owners. The Collective shall make copies of the Reports of Use for the preceding three years available for inspection by any sound recording copyright owner, without charge, during normal office hours upon reasonable notice. The Collective shall predicate inspection of Reports of Use upon information relating to identity, location and status as a sound recording copyright owner, and the copyright owner’s written agreement not to utilize the information for purposes other than royalty collection and distribution, and determining compliance with statutory license requirements, without express consent of the Service providing the Report of Use. The Collective shall render its best efforts to locate copyright owners in order to make available records of use, and such efforts shall include searches in Copyright Office public records and published directories of sound recording copyright owners.

(f) Confidentiality. Copyright owners, their agents, and Collectives shall not disseminate information in the Reports of Use to any persons not entitled to it, nor utilize the information for purposes other than royalty collection and distribution, and determining compliance with statutory license requirements, without express consent of the Service providing the Report of Use.

(g) Termination and dissolution. If a Collective terminates its collection and distribution operations prior to the close of its term of designation, the Collective shall notify the Copyright Office, and all Services transmitting sound recordings under statutory license, by certified or registered mail. The dissolving Collective shall provide each such Service with information...
or representative of the service provider designating the agent. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name and title of the person signing the Notice, and by the date of signature.

(e) Filing. A service provider may file the Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement with the Public Information Office of the Copyright Office, Room LM-401, James Madison Memorial Building, Library of Congress, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC, during normal business hours, 9 am to 5 pm. If mailed, the Interim Designation shall be accompanied by a filing fee of $20.00. Designations and amendments will be posted online on the Copyright Office’s website (http://www.loc.gov/copyright).

(f) Amendments. In the event of a change in the information reported in an Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement, a service provider shall file with the Public Information Office of the Copyright Office an amended Interim Designation of Agent to Receive Notification of Claimed Infringement, containing the current information required by section 201.38(c). The amended Interim Designation shall be signed in accordance with the requirements of section 201.38(d) and shall be accompanied by a fee of $20.00.

(g) Termination and dissolution. If a service provider terminates its operations, the entity shall notify the Copyright Office by certified or registered mail.

[63 FR 59234, Nov. 3, 1998]

§201.39 Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules under which copyright owners or their agents may provide notice to qualified libraries and archives (including a nonprofit educational institution that functions as such) that a published work in its last 20 years of copyright protection is subject to normal commercial exploitation, or that a copy or phonorecord of the work can be obtained at a reasonable price, for purposes of section 108(h)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(b) Format. The Copyright Office provides a required format for a Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price, and for continuation sheets for group notices. The required format is set out in Appendix A to this section, and are available from the Copyright Office website (http://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright). The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms. The Notice shall be in English (except for an original title, which may be in another language), typed or printed legibly in dark ink, and shall be provided on 8½×11 inch white paper with a one-inch margin.

(c) Required content. A “Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price” shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include the following:

1. The acronym NLA in capital, and preferably bold, letters in the top right-hand corner of the page;
2. A check-box just below the acronym NLA indicating whether continuation sheets for additional works are attached;
3. The title of the work, or if untitled, a brief description of the work;
4. The author(s) of the work;
5. The type of work (e.g., music, motion picture, book, photograph, illustration, map, article in a periodical, painting, sculpture, sound recording, etc.);
6. The edition, if any (e.g., teacher’s edition) or version, if any (e.g., orchestral arrangement, translation). The French version). If there is no information relating to the edition or version of the work, the notice should so state;
7. The year of first publication;
8. The year the work first secured federal copyright through publication with notice or registration as an unpublished work;
9. The copyright renewal registration number (except this information is not required for foreign works in which copyright is restored pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 104A);
§201.39  37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)

(10) The name of the copyright owner (or the owner of exclusive rights);
(11) If the copyright owner is not the owner of all rights, a specification of the rights owned (e.g., the right to reproduce/distribute/publicly display/publicly perform the work or to prepare a derivative work);
(12) The name, address, telephone number, fax number (if any) and e-mail address (if any) of the person or entity that the Copyright Office should contact concerning the Notice;
(13) The full legal name, address, telephone number, fax number (if any) and e-mail address (if any) of the person or entity that Libraries and Archives may contact concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at reasonable price; and
(14) A declaration made under penalty of perjury that the work identified is subject to normal commercial exploitation, or that a copy or phonorecord of the work is available at a reasonable price.

(d) Additional content. A Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price may include the following:
(1) The original copyright registration number of the work; and
(2) Additional information concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at a reasonable price.

(e) Signature. The Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price shall include the signature of the copyright owner or its agent. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name and title of the person signing the Notice, and by the date of signature.

(f) Multiple works. A Notice to Libraries and Archives may be filed for more than one work. The first work shall be identified using the format required for all Notices to Libraries and Archives. Each additional work in the group must be identified on a separate continuation sheet. The required format for the continuation sheet is set out in Appendix B to this section, and is available from the Copyright Office website (http://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright). A group filing is permitted provided that:
(1) All the works are by the same author;
(2) All the works are owned by the same copyright owner or owner of the exclusive rights therein. If the claimant is not owner of all rights, the claimant must own the same rights with respect to all works in the group;
(3) All the works first secured federal copyright in the same year, through either publication with notice or registration as an unpublished work;
(4) All the works were first published in the same year;
(5) The person or entity that the Copyright Office should contact concerning the Notice is the same for all the works; and
(6) The person or entity that Libraries and Archives may contact concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at reasonable price is the same for all the works.

(g) Filing—(1) Method of filing. The Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price should be addressed to: NLA, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20559–6000. If delivered by hand, it should be delivered during normal business hours, 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., to the Public Information Office, Room LM–401, James Madison Memorial Building, Library of Congress, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC.
(2) Amount. Each Notice shall be accompanied by a filing fee of $50, and (if more than one work is identified in the Notice), $20 for each additional work.
(3) Method of payment—(i) Checks, money orders, or bank drafts. The Copyright Office will accept checks, money orders, or bank drafts made payable to the Register of Copyrights. Remittances must be redeemable without service or exchange fees through a United States institution, must be payable in United States dollars, and must be imprinted with American Banking Association routing numbers. Postal money orders that are negotiable only at a post office and international money orders are not acceptable. CURRENCY IS NOT ACCEPTED.

422
Copyright Office, Library of Congress

§ 201.39

(i) Copyright Office Deposit Account. The Copyright Office maintains a system of Deposit Accounts for the convenience of those who frequently use its services. The system allows an individual or firm to establish a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office and to make advance deposits into that account. Deposit Account holders can charge copyright fees against the balance in their accounts instead of sending separate remittances with each request for service. For information on Deposit Accounts, visit the Copyright Office website or write: Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559-6000, and request a copy of Circular 5, "How to Open and Maintain a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office."

APPENDIX A TO § 201.39—REQUIRED FORMAT OF NOTICE TO LIBRARIES AND ARCHIVES OF NORMAL COMMERCIAL EXPLOITATION OR AVAILABILITY AT REASONABLE PRICE

NLA

☐ Check box if continuation sheets for additional works are attached.

Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price

1. Title of the work (or, if untitled, a brief description of the work):

2. Author(s) of the work:

3. Type of work (e.g., music, motion picture, book, photograph, illustration, map, article in a periodical, painting, sculpture, sound recording, etc.):

4. Edition, if any (e.g., first edition, teacher’s edition) or version, if any (e.g., orchestral arrangement, English translation of French text). If there is no information available relating to the edition or version of the work, the Notice should state, “No information available”:

5. Year of first publication:

6. Year the work first secured federal copyright through publication with notice or registration as an unpublished work:

7. Copyright renewal registration number (not required for foreign works restored under 17 U.S.C. 104A):

8. Full legal name of the copyright owner (or the owner of exclusive rights):

9. The person or entity identified in space 8 owns:

☐ all rights;

☐ the following rights (e.g., the right to reproduce/distribute/publicly display/publicly perform the work or to prepare a derivative work):

10. Person or entity that the Copyright Office should contact concerning the Notice:

☐ Name:

☐ Address:

☐ Telephone:

☐ Fax number (if any):

☐ E-mail address (if any):

11. Person or entity that libraries and archives may contact concerning the work’s normal commercial exploitation or availability at a reasonable price:

☐ Name:

☐ Address:

☐ Telephone:

☐ Fax number (if any):

☐ E-mail address (if any):

Additional Content (OPTIONAL):

12. Original copyright registration number:

13. Additional information concerning the work’s normal commercial exploitation or availability at a reasonable price:

Declaration:

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States:

☐ that each work identified in this notice is subject to normal commercial exploitation.

☐ that a copy or phonorecord of each work identified in this notice is available at a reasonable price.

Signature:

Date:

☐ Typed or printed name:

☐ Title:

APPENDIX B TO § 201.39—REQUIRED FORMAT FOR CONTINUATION SHEET

NLA CON

Page ___ of ___ Pages.

Continuation Sheet for NLA Notice to Libraries and Archives of Normal Commercial Exploitation or Availability at Reasonable Price

1. Title of the work (or, if untitled, a brief description of the work):

2. Type of work (e.g., music, motion picture, book, photograph, illustration, map, article in a periodical, painting, sculpture, sound recording, etc.):

3. Edition, if any (e.g., first edition, second edition, teacher’s edition) or version, if any (e.g., orchestral arrangement, English translation of French text). If there is no information available relating to the edition or version of the work, the Notice should state, “No information available”:

4. Year of first publication:

5. Year the work first secured federal copyright through publication with notice or registration as an unpublished work:

6. Copyright renewal registration number (not required for foreign works restored under 17 U.S.C. 104A):

7. Full legal name of the copyright owner (or the owner of exclusive rights):

8. The person or entity identified in space 8 owns:

☐ all rights;

☐ the following rights (e.g., the right to reproduce/distribute/publicly display/publicly perform the work or to prepare a derivative work):

423
4. Copyright renewal registration number (not required for foreign works restored under 17 U.S.C. 104A): 
   Additional Content (OPTIONAL): 
5. Original copyright registration number: 
6. Additional information concerning the work's normal commercial exploitation or availability at a reasonable price: 

[63 FR 71787, Dec. 30, 1998]

PART 202—REGISTRATION OF CLAIMS TO COPYRIGHT

Sec. 202.1 Material not subject to copyright.
202.2 Copyright notice.
202.3 Registration of copyright.
202.4 Effective date of registration.
202.5–202.9 [Reserved]
202.10 Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.
202.11 Architectural works.
202.12 Restored copyrights.
202.13–202.16 [Reserved]
202.17 Renewals.
202.18 [Reserved]
202.19 Deposit of published copies or phonorecords for the Library of Congress.
202.20 Deposit of copies and phonorecords for copyright registration.
202.21 Deposit of identifying material instead of copies.
202.22 Acquisition and deposit of unpublished television transmission programs.
202.23 Full-term retention of copyright deposits.

APPENDIX A TO PART 202—TECHNICAL GUIDELINES REGARDING SOUND PHYSICAL CONDITION

APPENDIX B TO PART 202—“BEST EDITION” OF PUBLISHED COPYRIGHTED WORKS FOR THE COLLECTIONS OF THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS


§ 202.1 Material not subject to copyright.

The following are examples of works not subject to copyright and applications for registration of such works cannot be entertained:
(a) Words and short phrases such as names, titles, and slogans; familiar symbols or designs; mere variations of typographic ornamentation, lettering or coloring; mere listing of ingredients or contents;
(b) Ideas, plans, methods, systems, or devices, as distinguished from the particular manner in which they are expressed or described in a writing;
(c) Blank forms, such as time cards, graph paper, account books, diaries, bank checks, scorecards, address books, report forms, order forms and the like, which are designed for recording information and do not in themselves convey information;
(d) Works consisting entirely of information that is common property containing no original authorship, such as, for example: Standard calendars, height and weight charts, tape measures and rulers, schedules of sporting events, and lists or tables taken from public documents or other common sources.
(e) Typeface as typeface.


§ 202.2 Copyright notice.

(a) General. (1) With respect to a work published before January 1, 1978, copyright was secured, or the right to secure it was lost, except for works seeking ad interim copyright, at the date of publication, i.e., the date on which copies are first placed on sale, sold, or publicly distributed, depending upon the adequacy of the notice of copyright on the work at that time. The adequacy of the copyright notice for such a work is determined by the copyright statute as it existed on the date of first publication.
(2) If before January 1, 1978, publication occurred by distribution of copies or in some other manner, without the statutory notice or with an inadequate notice, as determined by the copyright statute as it existed on the date of first publication, the right to secure copyright was lost. In such cases, copyright cannot be secured by adding the notice to copies distributed at a later date.
(3) Works first published abroad before January 1, 1978, other than works for which ad interim copyright has been obtained, must have borne an adequate copyright notice. The adequacy of the copyright notice for such works is determined by the copyright statute as it existed on the date of first publication abroad.
(b) Defects in notice. Where the copyright notice on a work published before
January 1, 1978, does not meet the requirements of title 17 of the United States Code as it existed on December 31, 1977, the Copyright Office will reject an application for copyright registration. Common defects in the notice include, among others the following:

1. The notice lacks one or more of the necessary elements (i.e., the word "Copyright," the abbreviation "Copr.," or the symbol ©; the name of the copyright proprietor, or, in the case of a sound recording, the name, a recognizable abbreviation of the name, or a generally known alternative designation, of the copyright owner; and, when required, the year date of publication);

2. The elements of the notice are so dispersed that a necessary element is not identified as a part of the notice; in the case of a sound recording, however, if the producer is named on the label or container, and if no other name appears in conjunction with the notice, his name will be considered a part of the notice;

3. The notice is not in one of the positions prescribed by law;

4. The notice is in a foreign language;

5. The name in the notice is that of someone who had no authority to secure copyright in his name;

6. The year date in the copyright notice is later than the date of actual publication, including the following cases:
   (i) Where the year date in the notice is later than the date of actual publication;
   (ii) Where copyright was first secured by registration of a work in unpublished form, and copies of the same work as later published without change in substance bear a copyright notice containing a year date later than the year of unpublished registration;
   (iii) Where a book or periodical published abroad, for which an interim copyright has been obtained, is later published in the United States without change in substance and contains a year date in the copyright notice later than the year of first publication abroad;

Provided, however, That in each of the three foregoing types of cases, if the copyright was actually secured not more than one year earlier than the year date in the notice, registration may be considered as a doubtful case.

7. A notice is permanently covered so that it cannot be seen without tearing the work apart;

8. A notice is illegible or so small that it cannot be read without the aid of a magnifying glass: Provided, however, That where the work itself requires magnification for its ordinary use (e.g., a microfilm, microcard or motion picture) a notice which will be readable when so magnified, will not constitute a reason for rejection of the claim;

9. A notice is on a detachable tag and will eventually be detached and discarded when the work is put in use;

10. A notice is on the wrapper or container which is not a part of the work and which will eventually be removed and discarded when the work is put to use; the notice may be on a container which is designed and can be expected to remain with the work;

11. The notice is restricted or limited exclusively to an uncopyrightable element, either by virtue of its position on the work, by the use of asterisks, or by other means.


§ 202.3 Registration of copyright.

(a) General. (1) This section prescribes conditions for the registration of copyright, and the application to be made for registration under sections 408 and 409 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(2) For the purposes of this section, the terms audiovisual work, compilation, copy, derivative work, device, fixation, literary work, motion picture, phonorecord, pictorial, graphic and sculptural works, process, sound recording, and their variant forms, have the meanings set forth in section 101 of title 17. The term author includes an employer or other person for whom a work is “made for hire” under section 101 of title 17.

(3) For the purposes of this section, a copyright claimant is either:
   (i) The author of a work;
§ 202.3

(ii) A person or organization that has obtained ownership of all rights under the copyright initially belonging to the author.1

(b) Administrative classification and application forms—(1) Classes of works. For the purpose of registration, the Register of Copyrights has prescribed the classes of works in which copyright may be claimed. These classes, and examples of works which they include, are as follows:

(i) Class TX: Nondramatic literary works. This class includes all published and unpublished nondramatic literary works. Examples: Fiction; nonfiction; poetry; textbooks; reference works; directories; catalogs; advertising copy; and compilations of information.

(ii) Class PA: Works of the performing arts. This class includes all published and unpublished works prepared for the purpose of being performed directly before an audience or indirectly by means of a device or process. Examples: Musical works, including any accompanying words; dramatic works, including any accompanying music; pantomimes and choreographic works; and motion pictures and other audiovisual works.

(iii) Class VA: Works of the visual arts. This class includes all published and unpublished pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works. Examples: Two dimensional and three dimensional works of the fine, graphic, and applied arts; photographs; prints and art reproductions; maps, globes, and charts; technical drawings, diagrams, and models; and pictorial or graphic labels and advertisements.

(iv) Class SR: Sound recordings. This class includes all published and unpublished sound recordings fixed on and after February 15, 1972. Claims to copyright in literary, dramatic, and musical works embodied in phonorecords may also be registered in this class under paragraph (b)(3) of this section if:

(A) Registration is sought on the same application for both a recorded literary, dramatic, or musical work and a sound recording;

(B) The recorded literary, dramatic, or musical work and the sound recording are embodied in the same phonorecord; and

(C) The same claimant is seeking registration of both the recorded literary, dramatic, or musical work and the sound recording.

(v) Class SE: Serials. A serial is a work issued or intended to be issued in successive parts bearing numerical or chronological designations and intended to be continued indefinitely. This class includes periodicals; newspapers; annuals; and the journals, proceedings, transactions, etc. of societies.

(2) Application forms. For the purpose of registration, the Register of Copyrights has prescribed the basic forms to be used for all applications submitted on and after January 1, 1978. Each form corresponds to a class set forth in paragraph (b)(1) of this section and is so designated (“Form TX”; “Form PA”; “Form VA”; “Form SR”; “Form SE”; and “Form SE/Group”). Copies of the forms are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20559-6000. Applications should be submitted in the class most appropriate to the nature of the authorship in which copyright is claimed. In the case of contributions to collective works, applications should be submitted in the class representing the copyrightable authorship in the contribution. In the case of derivative works, applications should be submitted in the class most appropriately representing the copyrightable authorship involved in recasting, transforming, adapting, or otherwise modifying the preexisting work. In cases where a work contains elements of authorship in which copyright is claimed which fall into two or more classes, the application should be submitted in the class most appropriate to the type of authorship that predominates in the work as a whole. However, in any case where registration is sought for a work

1 This category includes a person or organization that has obtained, from the author or from an entity that has obtained ownership of all rights under the copyright initially belonging to the author, the contractual right to claim legal title to the copyright in an application for copyright registration.
consisting of or including a sound recording in which copyright is claimed, the application shall be submitted on Form SR.

(3) Registration as a single work. (i) For the purpose of registration on a single application and upon payment of a single registration fee, the following shall be considered a single work:
(A) In the case of published works: all copyrightable elements that are otherwise recognizable as self-contained works, that are included in a single unit of publication, and in which the copyright claimant is the same; and
(B) In the case of unpublished works: all copyrightable elements that are otherwise recognizable as self-contained works, and are combined in a single unpublished “collection.” For these purposes, a combination of such elements shall be considered a “collection” if:
(1) The elements are assembled in an orderly form;
(2) The combined elements bear a single title identifying the collection as a whole;
(3) The copyright claimant in all of the elements, and in the collection as a whole, is the same; and
(4) All of the elements are by the same author, or, if they are by different authors, at least one of the authors has contributed copyrightable authorship to each element.

Registration of an unpublished “collection” extends to each copyrightable element in the collection and to the authorship, if any, involved in selecting and assembling the collection.

(ii) In the case of applications for registration made under paragraphs (b)(3) through (b)(8) of this section, the “year in which creation of this work was completed”, as called for by the application, means the latest year in which the creation of any copyrightable element was completed.

(4) Group registration of related works: Automated databases. (i) Pursuant to the authority granted by section 408(c)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code, the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for automated databases and their updates or other derivative versions that are original works of authorship, if, where a database (or updates or other revisions thereof), if unpublished, is (or are) fixed, or if published is (or are) published only in the form of machine-readable copies, all of the following conditions are met:
(A) All of the updates or other revisions are owned by the same copyright claimant;
(B) All of the updates or other revisions have the same general title;
(C) All of the updates or other revisions are similar in their general content, including their subject;
(D) All of the updates or other revisions are similar in their organization;
(E) Each of the updates or other revisions as a whole, if published before March 1, 1989, bears a statutory copyright notice as first published and the name of the owner of copyright in each work (or an abbreviation by which the name can be recognized, or a generally known alternative designation of the owner) was the same in each notice;
(F) Each of the updates or other revisions if published was first published, or if unpublished was first created, within a three-month period in a single calendar year; and
(G) The deposit accompanying the application complies with §202.20(c)(2)(vii)(D).

(ii) A single registration may be made on one application for both a database published on a single date, or if unpublished, created on a single date, and also for its copyrightable revisions, including updates covering a three-month period in a single calendar year. An application for group registration of automated databases under section 408(c)(1) of title 17 and this subsection shall consist of:
§ 202.3

(A) A Form TX, completed in accordance with the basic instructions on the form and the Special Instructions for Group Registration of an Automated Database and its Updates or Revisions;

(B) The appropriate filing fee, as required in §201.3(c); and

(C) The deposit required by §202.20(c)(2)(vii)(D).

(5) Group registration of related serials.

(i) Pursuant to the authority granted by section 408(c)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code, the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for a group of serials published at intervals of a week or longer if all the following conditions are met:

(A) The Library of Congress receives two complimentary copies promptly after publication of each issue of the serial.

(B) The single application covers no more than the issues published in a given three month period.

(C) The claim to copyright for which registration is sought is in the collective work.

(D) The collective work authorship is essentially new material that is being published for the first time.

(E) The collective work is a work made for hire.

(F) The author(s) and claimant(s) of the collective work are the same person(s) or organization(s).

(G) Each issue must have been created no more than one year prior to publication and all issues included in the group registration must have been published in the same calendar year.

(ii) To be eligible for group registration of serials, publishers must submit a letter affirming that two complimentary subscription copies promptly after publication of each issue. Notice of revocation of the group registration of serials privilege shall be given in writing and shall be sent to the individual person or organization applying for group registration of serials, at the last address shown in the records of the Copyright Office. A notice of revocation may be given at any time if the requirements of the regulation are not satisfied, but it shall state a specific date of revocation that is at least 30 days later than the date the notice is mailed.

(v) To apply for group registration of serials under section 408(c)(1) of title 17 and this subsection, the following items must be sent together in the same package:

(A) A completed Form SE/Group giving the requested information.

(B) The appropriate filing fee, as required in §201.3(c), for each issue covered by the group registration.

(C) A deposit consisting of one complete copy of the best edition of each issue included in the group registration.

(6) Group registration of daily newspapers.

(i) Pursuant to the authority granted by 17 U.S.C. 408(c)(1), the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, microfilm deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for a group of daily newspapers published in a microfilm format if the following conditions are met:

(A) Registration covers a full month of issues of the same newspaper title published with issue dates in one calendar month.

(B) A completed GDN application form is submitted.

(C) A publication date is specified designating the first and last day that issues in the group were published.

(D) A deposit is made of positive, 35mm silver halide microfilm meeting the Library’s best edition criteria that includes all issues published as final editions in the designated calendar month. In addition to the final edition of the daily newspaper, the claim to copyright and the deposit may also include earlier editions published the same day in a given metropolitan area served by the newspaper, but may not
include national or regional editions distributed beyond a given metropoli-
tan area.

(E) The appropriate filing fee, as re-
quired in §201.3(c), is included with the sub-
mission, or charged to an active de-
posit account.

(F) Registration is sought within
three months after the publication
date of the last issue included in the

(ii) As used in this regulation, news-
papers means serials which are classi-
ified as newspapers under the policy
document "Newspapers Received Cur-
rently in the Library of Con-
gress," which is administered by the
Newspaper Section of the Serials &
Government Publications Division of
the Library of Congress. In general, se-
rials classified as newspapers are seri-
als mainly designed to be a primary
source of written information on cur-
rent events, either local, national, or
international in scope. A newspaper
contains a broad range of news on all
subjects and activities and is not lim-
ited to any specific subject matter.
Newspapers are intended either for the
general public or for a particular eth-
nic, cultural, or national group.

(7) Group registration of contribu-
tions to periodicals. (i) As provided by section
408(c)(2) of title 17 of the United States
Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553, a
single registration, on the basis of a
single application, deposit, and reg-
istration fee, may be made for a group
of works if all of the following condi-
tions are met:
(A) All of the works are by the same
author;
(B) The author of each work is an in-
dividual, and not an employer or other
person for whom the work was made
for hire;
(C) Each of the works first published
as a contribution to a periodical (in-
cluding newspapers) within a twelve-
month period;³
(D) Each of the works, if first pub-
lished before March 1, 1989, bore a sepa-
rate copyright notice, and the name of
the owner of copyright in each work
(or an abbreviation by which the name
can be recognized, or a generally
known alternative designation of the
owner) was the same in each notice;
and
(E) The deposit accompanying the ap-
plication consists of one copy of the en-
tire issue of the periodical, or of the
entire section in the case of a news-
paper, in which each contribution was
first published.

(ii) An application for group registra-
tion under section 408(c)(2) of title 17
and paragraph (b)(7) of this section
shall consist of:
(A) A basic application for registra-
tion on Form TX, Form PA, or Form
VA, ⁴ which shall contain the informa-
tion required by the form and its ac-
companying instructions;
(B) An adjunct form prescribed by
the Copyright Office and designated
"Adjunct Application for Copyright
Registration for a Group of Contribu-
tions to Periodicals (Form GR/CP)",
which shall contain the information re-
quired by the form and its accom-
panying instructions; and
(C) The appropriate filing fee, as re-
quired in §201.3(c), and the deposit re-
quired by paragraph (b)(7)(i)(E) of this
section.

(8) Group registration of daily news-
letters. Pursuant to the authority
granted by 17 U.S.C. 408(c)(1), the Reg-
ister of Copyrights has determined
that, on the basis of a single applica-
tion, deposit, and filing fee, a single
registration may be made for a group
of two or more issues of a daily news-
letter if the following conditions are
met:
(i) As used in this regulation, daily
newsletter means a serial published
and distributed by mail or electronic
media (online or telefacsimile), or in
any medium including but not limited
to, paper, cassette tape, diskette or
CD-ROM. Publication must occur on

³This does not require that each of the
works must have been first published during
the same calendar year; it does require that,
to be grouped in a single application, the ear-
liest and latest contributions must not
have been first published more than twelve
months apart.

⁴The basic application should be filed in
the class appropriate to the nature of au-
thorship in the majority of the contribu-
tions. However, if any of the contribu-
tions consists preponderantly of nondramatic li-
terary material that is in the English lan-
guage, the basic application for the entire
group should be submitted on Form TX.
§ 202.3

at least two days each week and the newsletter must contain news or information of interest chiefly to a special group (for example, trade and professional associations, corporate in-house groups, schools, colleges, or churches).

(ii) The works must be essentially all new collective works or all new issues that have not been published before.

(iii) Each issue must be a work made for hire.

(iv) The author(s) and claimant(s) must be the same person(s) or organization(s) for all of the issues.

(v) All the items in the group must bear issue dates within a single calendar month under the same continuing title.

(vi) Deposit. (A). The deposit for newsletters registered under this section is one complete copy of each issue included in the group.

(B). In addition, if requested in writing by the Copyright Acquisitions Division before an application for registration is submitted, the claimant must give the Library of Congress whichever of the following the Library prefers: either as many as two complimentary subscriptions of the newsletter in the edition most suitable to the Library's needs, or a single positive, 35 mm silver halide microfilm meeting the Library's best edition criteria that includes all issues published as final editions in the designated calendar month. Subscription copies or a microfilm are not required unless expressly requested by the Copyright Acquisitions Division.

(C) The copyright owner of any newsletter that cannot meet the criteria set out in this section may continue to register on Form SE or Short Form SE.

(vii) Registration is sought within three months after the publication date of the last issue included in the group.

(viii) A Form G/DN shall be submitted for daily newsletters bearing issue dates within a single month, together with one copy of each issue, and a filing fee. The application shall designate the first and last day that issues in the group were published.

(9) One registration per work. As a general rule only one copyright registration can be made for the same version of a particular work. However:

(i) Where a work has been registered as unpublished, another registration may be made for the first published edition of the work, even if it does not represent a new version;

(ii) Where someone other than the author is identified as copyright claimant in a registration, another registration for the same version may be made by the author in his or her own name as copyright claimant;

(iii) Where an applicant for registration alleges that an earlier registration for the same version is unauthorized and legally invalid, a registration may be made by that applicant; and

(iv) Supplementary registrations may be made, under the conditions of §201.5 of these regulations, to correct or amplify the information in a registration made under this section.

(c) Application for registration. (1) An application for copyright registration may be submitted by any author or other copyright claimant of a work, or the owner of any exclusive right in a work, or the duly authorized agent of any such author, other claimant, or owner.

(2) An application for copyright registration shall be submitted on the appropriate form prescribed by the Register of Copyrights under paragraph (b) of this section, and shall be accompanied by the appropriate filing fee, as required in §201.3(c), and the deposit required under 17 U.S.C. 408 and §202.20 of these regulations. The application

5 An author includes an employer or other person for whom a work is "made for hire" under 17 U.S.C. 101. This paragraph does not permit an employee or other person working "for hire" under that section to make a later registration in his or her own name. In the case of authors of a joint work, this paragraph does permit a later registration by one author in his or her own name as copyright claimant, where an earlier registration identifies only another author as claimant.

6 In the case of applications for group registration of newspapers, contributions to periodicals, and newsletters, under paragraphs (b)(6), (b)(7), and (b)(8) of this section, the deposits shall comply with the deposits specified in the respective paragraphs, and the fees with those specified in §201.3.
shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions, and shall include a certification. The certification shall consist of:

(i) A designation of whether the applicant is the author of, or other copyright claimant or owner of exclusive rights in, the work, or the duly authorized agent of such author, other claimant, or owner (whose identity shall also be given);

(ii) The handwritten signature of such author, other claimant, owner, or agent, accompanied by the typed or printed name of that person;

(iii) A declaration that the statements made in the application are correct to the best of that person’s knowledge; and

(iv) The date of certification.

An application for registration of a published work will not be accepted if the date of certification is earlier than the date of publication given in the application.

(Pub. L. 94-553; secs. 408, 409, 410, 702)

[43 FR 966, Jan. 5, 1978]

EDITORIAL NOTE: For FEDERAL REGISTER citations affecting §202.3, see the List of CFR Sections Affected in the Finding Aids section of this volume.

§ 202.4 Effective date of registration.

The effective date of registration for claims received in the Copyright Office on or after January 3, 1991, and through December 31, 1991, with a short fee of $10 is the date on which the application, deposit, and $10 fee have all been received in the Copyright Office, provided, the claim is later determined to be acceptable for registration by the Register of Copyrights and a supplementary fee of $10 is received in the Copyright Office. If the supplementary fee is not received promptly after notification of the short fee, the Copyright Office will initiate a proceeding to cancel the copyright registration. If the supplementary fee of $10 is not received in the Copyright Office before the cancellation proceeding is completed, the cancellation will become final and will result in the loss of the effective date of registration. After cancellation, registration could be obtained only by submitting a new application, deposit, and filing fee.

[55 FR 50001, Dec. 4, 1990]

§§ 202.5-202.9 [Reserved]

§ 202.10 Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.

(a) In order to be acceptable as a pictorial, graphic, or sculptural work, the work must embody some creative authorship in its delineation or form. The registrability of such a work is not affected by the intention of the author as to the use of the work or the number of copies reproduced. The availability of protection or grant of protection under the law for a utility or design patent will not affect the registrability of a claim in an original work of pictorial, graphic, or sculptural authorship.

(b) A claim to copyright cannot be registered in a print or label consisting solely of trademark subject matter and lacking copyrightable matter. While the Copyright Office will not investigate whether the matter has been or can be registered at the Patent and Trademark Office, it will register a properly filed copyright claim in a print or label that contains the requisite qualifications for copyright even though there is a trademark on it. However, registration of a claim to copyright does not give the claimant rights available by trademark registrations at the Patent and Trademark Office.


§ 202.11 Architectural works.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the registration of architectural works, as provided for in the amendment of title 17 of the United States Code by the Judicial Improvements Act of 1990, Public Law 101-650.

(b) Definitions. (1) For the purposes of this section, the term architectural work has the same meaning as set forth in section 101 of title 17, as amended.

(2) The term building means humanly habitable structures that are intended to be both permanent and stationary, such as houses and office buildings, and other permanent and stationary structures designed for human occupancy.
including but not limited to churches, museums, gazebos, and garden pavilions.

(c) Registration—(1) Original design. In general, an original design of a building embodied in any tangible medium of expression, including a building, architectural plans, or drawings, may be registered as an architectural work.

(2) Registration limited to single architectural work. For published and unpublished architectural works, a single application may cover only a single architectural work. A group of architectural works may not be registered on a single application form. For works such as tract housing, a single work is one house model, with all accompanying floor plan options, elevations, and styles that are applicable to that particular model.

(3) Application form. Registration should be sought on Form VA. Line one of the form should give the title of the building. The date of construction of the building, if any, should also be designated. If the building has not yet been constructed, the notation “not yet constructed” should be given following the title.

(4) Separate registration for plans. Where dual copyright claims exist in technical drawings and the architectural work depicted in the drawings, any claims with respect to the technical drawings and architectural work must be registered separately.

(5) Publication. Publication of an architectural work occurs when underlying plans or drawings of the building or other copies of the building design are distributed or made available to the general public by sale or other transfer of ownership, or by rental, lease, or lending. Construction of a building does not itself constitute publication for purposes of registration, unless multiple copies are constructed.

(d) Works excluded. The following structures, features, or works cannot be registered:

(1) Structures other than buildings. Structures other than buildings, such as bridges, cloverleafs, dams, walkways, tents, recreational vehicles, mobile homes, and boats.

(2) Standard features. Standard configurations of spaces, and individual standard features, such as windows, doors, and other staple building components.

(3) Pre-December 1, 1990 building designs. The designs of buildings where the plans or drawings of the building were published before December 1, 1990, or the buildings were constructed or otherwise published before December 1, 1990.

§ 202.12 Restored copyrights.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the registration of foreign copyright claims which have been restored to copyright protection under section 104A of 17 U.S.C., as amended by the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Public Law 103-465.

(b) Definitions. (1) For the purposes of this section, restored work and source country, have the definition given in the URAA and §201.33(b) of this chapter.

(2) Descriptive statement for a work embodied solely in machine-readable format is a separate written statement giving the title of the work, nature of the work (for example: computer program, database, videogame, etc.), plus a brief description of the contents or subject matter of the work.

(c) Registration—(1) General. Application, deposit, and filing fee for registering a copyright claim in a restored work under section 104A, as amended, may be submitted to the Copyright Office on or after January 1, 1996. The application, filing fee, and deposit should be sent in a single package to the following address: Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue SE., Washington, DC 20559-6000.

(2) GATT forms. Application for registration for single works restored to copyright protection under URAA should be made on Form GATT. Application for registration for a group of works published under a single series title and published within the same calendar year should also be made on Form GATT. Application for a group of at least two and up to ten individual and related works as described in paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section should be made on Form GATT/GRP. GATT/
URAA forms may be obtained by writing or calling the Copyright Office Hotline at (202) 707-9100. In addition, legible photocopies of these forms are acceptable if reproduced on good quality, 8½ by 11 inch white paper, and printed head to head so that page two is printed on the back of page one.

(3) Fee—(i) Amount. The filing fee for registering a copyright claim in a restored work is 30 U.S. dollars. The filing fee for registering a group of multiple episodes under a series title under paragraph (c)(5) of this section is also $30. The filing fee for registering a group of related works under paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section is 10 U.S. dollars per individual work, with a minimum fee of US $30.

(ii) Method of payment—(A) Checks, money orders, or bank drafts. The Copyright Office will accept checks, money orders, or bank drafts made payable to the Register of Copyrights. Remittances must be redeemable without service or exchange fees through a United States institution, must be payable in United States dollars, and must be imprinted with American Banking Association routing numbers. In addition, international money orders, and postal money orders that are negotiable only at a post office are not acceptable. CURRENCY WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.

(B) Copyright Office Deposit Account. The Copyright Office maintains a system of Deposit Accounts for the convenience of those who frequently use its services. The system allows an individual or firm to establish a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office and to make advance deposits into that account. Deposit Account holders can charge copyright fees against the balance in their accounts instead of sending separate remittances with each request for service. For information on Deposit Accounts please write: Register of Copyrights, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559, and request a copy of Circular 5, "How to Open and Maintain a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office."

(C) Credit cards. For URAA registrations the Copyright Office will accept VISA, MasterCard, and American Express. Debit cards cannot be accepted for payment. With the registration application, an applicant using a credit card must submit a separate cover letter stating the name of the credit card, the credit card number, the expiration date of the credit card, the total amount authorized and a signature authorizing the Office to charge the fees to the account. To protect the security of the credit card number, the applicant must not write the credit card number on the registration application.

(4) Deposit—(i) General. The deposit for a work registered as a restored work under the amended section 104A, except for those works listed in paragraphs (c)(4)(i) through (iv) of this section, should consist of one copy or phonorecord which best represents the copyrightable content of the restored work. In descending order of preference, the deposit should be:

(A) The work as first published;
(B) A reprint or re-release of the work as first published;
(C) A photocopy or identical reproduction of the work as first published;
(D) A revised version which includes a substantial amount of the copyrightable content of the restored work with an indication in writing of the percentage of the restored work appearing in the revision.

(ii) Previously registered works. No deposit is needed for works previously registered in the Copyright Office.

(iii) Works embodied solely in machine-readable format. For works embodied only in machine-readable formats, the deposit requirements are as follows:

(A) One machine-readable copy and a descriptive statement of the work;
(B) Representative excerpts of the work, such as printouts; or, if the claim extends to audiovisual elements in the work, a videotape of what appears on the screen.

(iv) Pictorial, graphic and sculptural works. With the exception of 3-dimensional works of art, the general deposit preferences specified under paragraph (c)(4)(i) of this section shall govern. For 3-dimensional works of art, the preferred deposit is one or more photographs of the work, preferably in color.

(v) Special relief. An applicant who is unable to submit any of the preferred
deposits may seek an alternative deposit under special relief (37 CFR 202.20(d)). In such a case, the applicant should indicate in writing why the deposit preferences cannot be met, and submit alternative identifying materials clearly showing some portion of the copyrightable contents of the restored work which is the subject of registration.

(vi) Motion pictures. If the deposit is a film print (16 or 35 mm), the applicant should contact the Performing Arts Section of the Examining Division for delivery instructions. The telephone number is: (202) 707-6040; the telefax number is: (202) 707-1236.

(5) Group registration. Copyright claims in more than one restored work may be registered as a group in the following circumstances:

(i) Single series title. Works published under a single series title in multiple episodes, installments, or issues during the same calendar year may be registered as a group, provided the owner of U.S. rights is the same for all episodes, installments, or issues. The Form GATT should be used and the number of episodes or installments should be indicated in the title line. The filing fee for registering a group of such works is $30. In general, the deposit requirements applicable to restored works will be applied to the episodes or installments in a similar fashion. In the case of a weekly or daily television series, applicants should first contact the Performing Arts Section of the Examining Division. The telephone number is (202) 707-6040; the telefax number is (202) 707-1236.

(ii) Group of related works. A group of related works may be registered on the Form GATT/GRP, provided the following conditions are met: the author(s) is the same for all works in the group; the owner of all United States rights is the same for all works in the group; all works must have been published in the same calendar year; all works fit within the same subject matter category, i.e., literary works, musical works, motion pictures, etc.; and there are at least two and not more than ten individual works in the group submitted. Applicants registering a group of related works must file for registration on the Form GATT/GRP. The filing fee for registering a group of related works is ten dollars per individual work, with a minimum fee of $30.

(d) Works excluded. Works which are not copyrightable subject matter under title 17 of the U.S. Code, other than sound recordings fixed before February 15, 1972, shall not be registered as restored copyrights.

§§ 202.13–202.16 [Reserved]

§ 202.17 Renewals.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the application for renewal copyright under section 304(a) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Public Law 102-307.

(b) Definition. For purposes of this section, the term posthumous work means a work that was unpublished on the date of the death of the author and with respect to which no copyright assignment or other contract for exploitation of the work occurred during the author’s lifetime.

(c) Renewal registration optional. For works originally copyrighted between January 1, 1964 and December 31, 1977 renewal registration is optional and not a condition for securing copyright for the new and extended forty-seven year second term. As provided in Public Law 102-307, 106 Stat. 264 (Act of June 26, 1992), however, renewal of copyright by registration during the last year of the original term and renewal registration during the forty-seven year extended term of a copyright renewed without registration by operation of Public Law 102-307 differ in legal effect. Among other effects, renewal of copyright by registration during the last year of the original term vests the renewal copyright in the statutory renewal claimant(s) living on the date of registration.

(d) Original term registration. (1) Registration of a claim to copyright in the original twenty-eight year term is not a pre-condition for making a renewal registration, provided the renewal application is accompanied by an Addendum to Form RE and the deposit copy, phonorecord, or identifying
Copyright Office, Library of Congress

§ 202.17

material specified in paragraph (h) of this section.

(2) Original term registration can only be made before the expiration of the original term of copyright in the work.

(e) Renewal time limits. (1) For works originally copyrighted between January 1, 1964, and December 31, 1977, claims to renewal copyright may be registered within the last year of the original term, which begins on December 31 of the 27th year of the copyright, and runs through December 31 of the 28th year of the copyright, or at any time during the extended forty-seven year second term, if the second term is renewed by operation of Public Law 102-307, 106 Stat. 264. The original copyright term for a published work is computed from the date of first publication; the term for a work originally registered in unpublished form is computed from the date of registration in the Copyright Office. To vest the renewal copyright by registration, the required renewal application, fee, and, if original term registration has not been made, the Addendum specified in paragraph (h) of this section must be received in the Copyright Office during the prescribed period before the first term of copyright expires. The Copyright Office has no discretion to extend the renewal time limits for vesting of the renewal copyright by registration.

(2) The provisions of paragraph (e)(1) of this section are subject to the following qualification: In order to vest the renewal copyright by registration, the required renewal application, fee, and, if original term registration has not been made, the Addendum specified in paragraph (h) of this section must be received in the Copyright Office in any case where the year date in the notice on copies distributed by authority of the copyright owner is earlier than the year of first publication, claims to renewal copyright must be registered within the last year of the original copyright term, which begins on December 31 of the 27th year from the year contained in the notice, and runs through December 31 of the 28th year from the year contained in the notice.

(3) Whenever a renewal applicant has cause to believe that a formal application for renewal, which is intended to vest the renewal copyright by registration, and any accompanying Addendum relating to subsistence of first-term copyright, if sent to the Copyright Office by mail, might not be received in the Copyright Office before expiration of the time limits provided by 17 U.S.C. 304(a) for vesting of the renewal copyright by registration, he or she may apply for renewal registration by telegraphic, telefacsimile, or similar written communication. An application made by this method will be accepted only if:

(i) The message is received in the Copyright Office within the specified time limits for vesting by registration;

(ii) The applicant adequately identifies the work involved, the date of first publication or original registration, the name and address of the renewal claimant, and the statutory basis of the renewal claim;

(iii) The fee for renewal registration, if not already on deposit, is received in the Copyright Office before the time for renewal registration has expired; and

(iv) A formal application for renewal (Form RE) (or a fax copy) and in the case of works under paragraph (h) of this section, an accompanying Addendum relating to the subsistence of first-term copyright are also received in the Copyright Office before April 1 of the following year.

(f) Renewal claimants. (1) Except as otherwise provided by paragraphs (f)(2) and (3) of this section, renewal claims may be registered only in the name(s) of the eligible person(s) falling within one of the following classes of renewal claimants specified in section 304(a) of the copyright law. If the work was a new version of a previous work, renewal may be claimed only in the new matter. If the renewal claim is submitted during the last year of the original term of copyright, the renewal must be made in the name(s) of the statutory claimant(s) entitled to claim the renewal on the date the renewal claim is submitted to the Copyright Office for registration. If the renewal claim is submitted during the forty-seven year renewal term, the renewal claim can only be registered in the name(s) of the statutory claimant(s) entitled to claim the renewal on the last day (December 31st) of the original term of copyright.
In the case of any posthumous work or of any periodical, encyclopedia, or other composite work upon which the copyright was originally secured by the proprietor thereof, the renewal claim may be registered in the name of the proprietor;

(ii) In the case of any work copyrighted by a corporate body (otherwise than as assignees or licensees of the individual author) or by an employer for whom such work is made for hire, the renewal claim may be registered in the name of the proprietor; and

(iii) In the case of any other copyrighted work, including a contribution by an individual author to a periodical or to a cyclopedic or other composite work, the renewal claim may be registered in the name(s) of the following person(s) in descending order of eligibility:

(A) The author of the work, if still living;

(B) The widow, widower, or children of the author, if the author is not living;

(C) The author's executors, if there is a will and neither the author nor any widow, widower, or child of the author is living;

(D) The author's next of kin, in the absence of a will and if neither the author nor any widow, widower, or child of the author is living.

(2) The provisions of paragraph (f)(1)(ii) of this section are subject to the following qualification: Notwithstanding the definition of "posthumous work" in paragraph (b) of this section, a renewal claim may be registered in the name of the proprietor of the work, as well as in the name of the appropriate claimant under paragraph (f)(1)(iii) of this section, in any case where a contract for exploitation of the work but no copyright assignment in the work has occurred during the author's lifetime. However, registration by the Copyright Office in this case should not be interpreted as evidencing the validity of the claim.

(3) The provisions of paragraphs (f)(1)(ii) (C) and (D) of this section are subject to the following qualifications:

(i) In any case where:

(A) The author has left a will which names an executor who cannot or will not serve in that capacity; or

(B) The author has left a will which names an executor who has been discharged upon settlement of the estate or removed before the estate has been completely administered, the renewal claim may be registered either in the name of an administrator cum testamento annexo (administrator c.t.a.) or an administrator de bonis non cum testamento annexo (administrator d.b.n.c.t.a.) so appointed by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(ii) In any case described in paragraph (f)(1)(i) of this section, except in the case where the author has left a will without naming an executor and a court appointed administrator c.t.a. or administrator d.b.n.c.t.a. is in existence at the time of renewal registration, the renewal claim also may be registered in the name of the author's next of kin. However, registration by the Copyright Office of the conflicting renewal claims in these cases should not be interpreted as evidencing the validity of either claim.

(g) Application for renewal registration.

(1) Each application for renewal registration shall be submitted on Form RE. Copies of Form RE, and if applicable, the Addendum to Form RE, are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, United States Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559.

(2)(i) An application for renewal registration may be submitted by any eligible statutory renewal claimant as specified in paragraph (f) of this section or by the duly authorized agent of any such claimant.

(ii) An application for renewal registration shall be accompanied by the appropriate fee, as required in § 201.3(c). The application shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions, and shall include a certification. The certification shall consist of:

(A) A designation of whether the applicant is the renewal claimant, or the duly authorized agent of such claimant (whose identity shall also be given); and

(B) The handwritten signature of such claimant or agent, accompanied
by the typewritten or printed name of that person;

(C) A declaration that the statements made in the application are correct to the best of that person’s knowledge; and

(D) The date of certification.

(iii) In the case of an application for renewal registration of a work for which no original registration was made, the application shall be accompanied by an Addendum and deposit material in accordance with paragraph (h) of this section.

(3) Once a renewal registration has been made, the Copyright Office will not accept a duplicate application for renewal registration on behalf of the same renewal claimant.

(h) Addendum for an unregistered work—

(1) Content. If original term registration is not timely made for a work, the renewal application Form RE must be accompanied by an Addendum to Form RE which must contain the following information:

(i) The title of the work;

(ii) The name of the author(s);

(iii) The date of first publication of the work;

(iv) The place of first publication of the work;

(v) The citizenship of the author(s) on the date of first publication of the work;

(vi) The domicile of the author(s) on the date of first publication of the work;

(vii) An averment that, at the time of first publication, all the copies of the work published under the authority of the author or other copyright proprietor bore the copyright notice required by the Copyright Act of 1909, title 17 of the United States Code in effect on December 31, 1977, and that United States copyright subsists in the work; and

(viii) For works of United States origin which were subject to the manufacturing provisions of section 16 of the Copyright Act of 1909 as it existed at the time the work was published, the Addendum must also contain information about the country of manufacture and the manufacturing processes.

(2) Signature. The Addendum must contain the handwritten signature of the renewal claimant or the duly authorized agent of the renewal claimant.

The signature shall (i) be accompanied by the printed typewritten name of the person signing the Addendum and by the date of the signature; and (ii) shall be immediately preceded by the following printed or typewritten statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code:

I certify under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States of America that the foregoing is true and correct.

(3) Deposit requirement for an unregistered work. In addition to the Addendum to Form RE, an application for renewal registration of a work for which no original term registration is made must be accompanied by one copy or phonorecord or identifying material of the work as first published in accordance with the deposit requirements set out in §§202.20 and 202.21 of the Copyright Office regulations for basic registration.

(4) Waiver of the deposit requirement. In a case where the renewal applicant asserts that it is either physically impossible or otherwise an undue hardship to satisfy the deposit requirements of §§202.20 and 202.21, the Copyright Office, at its discretion, may, upon receipt of an acceptable explanation of the inability to submit such copy or identifying material, permit the deposit of the following in the descending order of preference:

(i) A reprint, photocopy, or identifying reproduction of the work as first published; or

(ii)(A) A photocopy of the title page of the work as first published;

(B) A photocopy of the page of the work as first published bearing the copyright notice;

(C) A specification as to the location, relative to each other, of the title and notice pages of the work as first published, if the pages are different; and

(D) A brief description of the copyrightable content of the work, which is sufficient to enable the Copyright Office to examine the work. The Examining Division of the Copyright Office may request deposit of additional descriptive material if the original submission is inadequate.[57 FR 60483, Dec. 21, 1992, as amended at 64 FR 26522, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 36775, July 7, 1999; 65 FR 29819, June 28, 2000]
§ 202.18 Deposit of published copies or phonorecords for the Library of Congress.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of copies and phonorecords of published works for the Library of Congress under section 407 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. The provisions of this section are not applicable to the deposit of copies and phonorecords for purposes of copyright registration under section 408 of title 17, except as expressly adopted in § 202.20 of these regulations.

(b) Definitions. For the purposes of this section:

(1)(i) The best edition of a work is the edition, published in the United States at any time before the date of deposit, that the Library of Congress determines to be most suitable for its purposes. The "best edition" requirement is described in detail at Appendix B to this part.

(ii) Criteria for selection of the "best edition" from among two or more published editions of the same version of the same work are set forth in the statement entitled "Best Edition of Published Copyrighted Works for the Collections of the Library of Congress" (hereafter referred to as the "Best Edition Statement") in effect at the time of deposit.

(iii) Where no specific criteria for the selection of the "best edition" are established in the Best Edition Statement, that edition which, in the judgment of the Library of Congress, represents the highest quality for its purposes shall be considered the "best edition". In such cases:

(A) When the Copyright Office is aware that two or more editions of a work have been published it will consult with appropriate officials of the Library of Congress to obtain instructions as to the "best edition" and (except in cases for which special relief is granted) will require deposit of that edition; and

(B) When a potential depositor is uncertain which of two or more published editions comprises the "best edition", inquiry should be made to the Copyright Acquisitions Division.

(iv) Where differences between two or more "editions" of a work represent variations in copyrightable content, each edition is considered a separate version, and hence a different work, for the purpose of this section, and criteria of "best edition" based on such differences do not apply.

(2) A complete copy includes all elements comprising the unit of publication of the best edition of the work, including elements that, if considered separately, would not be copyrightable subject matter or would otherwise be exempt from mandatory deposit requirements under paragraph (c) of this section. In the case of sound recordings, a "complete" phonorecord includes the phonorecord, together with any printed or other visually perceptible material published with such phonorecord (such as textual or pictorial matter appearing on record sleeves or album covers, or embodied in leaflets or booklets included in a sleeve, album, or other container). In the case of a musical composition published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords:

(i) If the only publication of copies in the United States took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a full score and parts, a full score is a "complete" copy; and

(ii) If the only publication of copies in the United States took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a conductor's score and parts, a conductor's score is a "complete" copy.

In the case of a motion picture, a copy is "complete" if the reproduction of all of the visual and aural elements comprising the copyrightable subject matter in the work is clean, undamaged, undeteriorated, and free of splices, and if the copy itself and its physical housing are free of any defects that would interfere with the performance of the work or that would cause mechanical, visual, or audible defects or distortions.

(3) The terms architectural works, copies, collective work, device, fixed, literary work, machine, motion picture, phonorecord, publication, sound recording, useful article, and their variant forms,
have the meanings given to them in 17 U.S.C. 101.

(c) Exemptions from deposit requirements. The following categories of material are exempt from the deposit requirements of section 407(a) of title 17:

(1) Diagrams and models illustrating scientific or technical works or formulating scientific or technical information in linear or three-dimensional form, such as an architectural or engineering blueprint, plan, or design, a mechanical drawing, or an anatomical model.

(2) Greeting cards, picture postcards, and stationery.

(3) Lectures, sermons, speeches, and addresses when published individually and not as a collection of the works of one or more authors.

(4) Literary, dramatic, and musical works published only as embodied in phonorecords. This category does not exempt the owner of copyright, or of the exclusive right of publication, in a sound recording resulting from the fixation of such works in a phonorecord from the applicable deposit requirements for the sound recording.

(5) Automated databases available only on-line in the United States. The exemption does not include the following: automated databases distributed in the form of machine-readable copies (such as magnetic tape or disks, CD-ROM formats, punch cards, or the like); computerized information works in the nature of statistical compendia, serials, and reference works; works published in a form requiring the use of a machine or device for purposes of optical enlargement (such as film, filmstrips, slide films and works published in any variety of microform); works produced in visually perceptible form but used in connection with optical scanning devices; and works reproduced in CD-ROM formats.

(6) Three-dimensional sculptural works, and any works published only as reproduced in or on jewelry, dolls, toys, games, plaques, floor coverings, wallpaper and similar commercial wall coverings, textiles and other fabrics, packaging material, or any useful article. Globes, relief models, and similar cartographic representations of area are not within this category and are subject to the applicable deposit requirements.

(7) Prints, labels, and other advertising matter, including catalogs, published in connection with the rental, lending, licensing, or sale of articles of merchandise, works of authorship, or services.

(8) Tests, and answer material for tests when published separately from other literary works.

(9) Works first published as individual contributions to collective works. This category does not exempt the owner of copyright, or of the exclusive right of publication, in the collective work as a whole, from the applicable deposit requirements for the collective work.

(10) Works first published outside the United States and later published in the United States without change in copyrightable content, if:

(i) Registration for the work was made under 17 U.S.C. 408 before the work was published in the United States; or

(ii) Registration for the work was made under 17 U.S.C. 408 after the work was published in the United States but before a demand for deposit is made under 17 U.S.C. 407(d).

(11) Works published only as embodied in a soundtrack that is an integral part of a motion picture. This category does not exempt the owner of copyright, or of the exclusive right of publication, in the motion picture, from the applicable deposit requirements for the motion picture.

(12) Motion pictures that consist of television transmission programs and that have been published, if at all, only by reason of a license or other grant to a nonprofit institution of the right to make a fixation of such programs directly from a transmission to the public, with or without the right to make further uses of such fixations.

(d) Nature of required deposit. (1) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of this section, the deposit required to satisfy the provisions of section 407(a) of title 17 shall consist of:

(i) In the case of published works other than sound recordings, two complete copies of the best edition; and
(ii) In the case of published sound recordings, two complete phonorecords of the best edition.

(2) In the case of certain published works not exempt from deposit requirements under paragraph (c) of this section, the following special provisions shall apply:

(i) In the case of published three-dimensional cartographic representations of area, such as globes and relief models, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition of the work will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(ii) In the case of published motion pictures, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition of the work will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section. Any deposit of a published motion picture must be accompanied by a separate description of its contents, such as a continuity, pressbook, or synopsis. The Library of Congress may, at its sole discretion, enter into an agreement permitting the return of copies of published motion pictures to the depositor under certain conditions and establishing certain rights and obligations of the Library with respect to such copies. In the event of termination of such an agreement by the Library it shall not be subject to reinstatement, nor shall the depositor or any successor in interest of the depositor be entitled to any similar or subsequent agreement with the Library, unless at the sole discretion of the Library it would be in the best interests of the Library to reinstate the agreement or enter into a new agreement.

(iii) In the case of any published work deposited in the form of a hologram, the deposit shall be accompanied by:

(A) Two sets of precise instructions for displaying the image fixed in the hologram; and

(B) Two sets of identifying material in compliance with §202.21 of these regulations and clearly showing the displayed image.

(iv) In any case where an individual author is the owner of copyright in a published pictorial or graphic work and (A) less than five copies of the work have been published, or (B) the work has been published and sold or offered for sale in a limited edition consisting of no more than three hundred numbered copies, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition of the work or, alternatively, the deposit of photographs or other identifying material in compliance with §202.21 of these regulations, will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(v) In the case of a musical composition published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords, if the only publication of copies in the United States took place by rental, lease, or lending, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(vi) In the case of published multimedia kits, that include literary works, audiovisual works, sound recordings, or any combination of such works, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(vii) In the case of published computer programs and published computerized information works, such as statistical compendia, serials, and reference works that are not copy-protected, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition as specified in the current Library of Congress Best Edition Statement will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section. If the works are copy-protected, two copies of the best edition are required.

(viii) In the case of published architectural works, the deposit shall consist of the most finished form of presentation drawings in the following descending order of preference:

(A) Original format, or best quality form of reproduction, including offset or silk screen printing;

(B) Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper;

(C) Positive photostat or photodirect positive;

(D) Blue line copies (diazotype or ozalid process). If photographs are submitted, they should be 8 x 10 inches and should clearly show several exterior and interior views. The deposit should disclose
the name(s) of the architect(s) and
draftsperson(s) and the building site.

(e) Special relief. (1) In the case of any
published work not exempt from de-
posit under paragraph (c) of this sec-
tion, the Register of Copyrights may,
after consultation with other appro-
priate officials of the Library of Con-
gress and upon such conditions as the
Register may determine after such con-
sultation:

(i) Grant an exemption from the de-
posit requirements of section 407(a) of
title 17 on an individual basis for single
works or series or groups of works; or

(ii) Permit the deposit of one copy or
phonorecord, or alternative identifying
material, in lieu of the two copies or
phonorecords required by paragraph
(d)(1) of this section; or

(iii) Permit the deposit of incomplete
copies or phonorecords, or copies or
phonorecords other than those nor-
manly comprising the best edition; or

(iv) Permit the deposit of identifying
material which does not comply with
§ 202.21 of these regulations.

(2) Any decision as to whether to
grant such special relief, and the condi-
tions under which special relief is to be
granted, shall be made by the Register
of Copyrights after consultation with
other appropriate officials of the Li-
brary of Congress, and shall be based
upon the acquisition policies of the Li-
brary of Congress then in force.

(3) Requests for special relief under
this paragraph shall be made in writing
to the Chief, Examining Division, shall
be signed by or on behalf of the owner
of copyright or of the exclusive right of
publication in the work, and shall set
forth specific reasons why the request
should be granted.

(4) The Register of Copyrights may,
after consultation with other appro-
priate officials of the Library of Con-
gress, terminate any ongoing or con-
tinuous grant of special relief. Notice
of termination shall be given in writing
and shall be sent to the individual per-
son or organization to whom the grant
of special relief had been given, at the
last address shown in the records of the
Copyright Office. A notice of termi-
nation may be given at any time, but it
shall state a specific date of termi-
nation that is at least 30 days later
than the date the notice is mailed. Ter-
mination shall not affect the validity
of any deposit made earlier under the
grant of special relief.

(f) Submission and receipt of copies and
phonorecords. (1) All copies and
phonorecords deposited in the Copy-
right Office will be considered to be de-
posited only in compliance with sec-
tion 407 of title 17 unless they are ac-
companied by an application for reg-
istration of a claim to copyright in the
work represented by the deposit, and
either a registration fee or a deposit
account number on the application.
Copies or phonorecords deposited with-
out such an accompanying application
and either a fee or a deposit account
notation will not be connected with or
held for receipt of separate applica-
tions, and will not satisfy the deposit
provisions of section 408 of title 17 or
§ 202.20 of these regulations.

(2) All copies and phonorecords de-
posited in the Copyright Office under
section 407 of title 17, unless accom-
panied by written instructions to the
contrary, will be considered to be de-
posited by the person or persons named
in the copyright notice on the work.

(3) Upon request by the depositor
made at the time of the deposit, the
Copyright Office will issue a certificate
of receipt for the deposit of copies or
phonorecords of a work under this sec-
tion. Certificates of receipt will be
issued in response to requests made
after the date of deposit only if the re-
questing party is identified in the
records of the Copyright Office as hav-
ing made the deposit. In either case, re-
quests for a certificate of receipt must
be in writing and accompanied by the
appropriate fee, as required in § 201.3(c).
A certificate of receipt will include
identification of the depositor, the
work deposited, and the nature and for-
mat of the copy or phonorecord depos-
ited, together with the date of receipt.

[51 FR 6403, Feb. 24, 1986, as amended at 54
FR 42299, Oct. 16, 1989; 56 FR 74703, Sept. 19,
1991; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 57 FR 45310,
Oct. 1, 1992; 60 FR 3168, June 30, 1995; 64 FR
29522, June 1, 1999; 64 FR 62978, Nov. 18, 1999]
§ 202.20 Deposit of copies and phonorecords for copyright registration.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of copies and phonorecords of published and unpublished works for the purpose of copyright registration under section 408 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. The provisions of this section are not applicable to the deposit of copies and phonorecords for the Library of Congress under section 407 of title 17, except as expressly adopted in §202.19 of these regulations.

(b) Definitions. For the purposes of this section:

(1) The best edition of a work has the meaning set forth in §202.19(b)(1) of these regulations.

(2) A complete copy or phonorecord means the following:

(i) Unpublished works. Subject to the requirements of paragraph (b)(2)(vi) of this section, a “complete” copy or phonorecord of an unpublished work is a copy or phonorecord representing the entire copyrightable content of the work for which registration is sought;

(ii) Published works. Subject to the requirements of paragraphs (b)(2)(iii) through (vi) of this section, a “complete” copy or phonorecord of a published work includes all elements comprising the applicable unit of publication of the work, including elements that, if considered separately, would not be copyrightable subject matter. However, even where certain physically separable elements included in the applicable unit of publication are missing from the deposit, a copy or phonorecord will be considered “complete” for purposes of registration where:

(A) The copy or phonorecord deposited contains all parts of the work for which copyright registration is sought; and

(B) The removal of the missing elements did not physically damage the copy or phonorecord or garble its contents; and

(C) The work is exempt from the mandatory deposit requirements under section 407 of title 17 of the United States Code and §202.19(c) of these regulations, or the copy deposited consists entirely of a container, wrapper, or holder, such as an envelope, sleeve, jacket, slipcase, box, bag, folder, binder, or other receptacle acceptable for deposit under paragraph (c)(2) of this section;

(iii) Contributions to collective works. In the case of a published contribution to a collective work, a “complete” copy is one complete copy of the best edition of the entire collective work, the complete section containing the contribution if published in a newspaper, the contribution cut from the paper in which it appeared, or a photocopy of the contribution itself as it was published in the collective work.

(iv) Sound recordings. In the case of published sound recordings, a “complete” phonorecord has the meaning set forth in §202.19(b)(2) of these regulations;

(v) Musical scores. In the case of a musical composition published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords:

(A) If the only publication of copies took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a full score and parts, a full score is a “complete” copy; and

(B) If the only publication of copies took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a conductor’s score and parts, a conductor’s score is a “complete” copy;

(vi) Motion pictures. In the case of a published or unpublished motion picture, a copy is “complete” if the reproduction of all of the visual and aural elements comprising the copyrightable subject matter in the work is clean, undamaged, undeteriorated, and free of splices, and if the copy itself and its physical housing are free of any defects that would interfere with the performance of the work or that would cause mechanical, visual, or audible defects or distortions.

(3) The terms architectural works, copy, collective work, device, fixed, literary work, machine, motion picture, phonorecord, publication, sound recording, transmission program, and useful article, and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in 17 U.S.C. 101.

(4) A secure test is a nonmarketed test administered under supervision at specified centers on specific dates, all copies of which are accounted for and
either destroyed or returned to restricted locked storage following each administration. For these purposes a test is not marketed if copies are not sold but it is distributed and used in such a manner that ownership and control of copies remain with the test sponsor or publisher.

(5) Title 17 means title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(6) For the purposes of determining the applicable deposit requirements under this §202.20 only, the following shall be considered as unpublished motion pictures: motion pictures that consist of television transmission programs and that have been published, if at all, only by reason of a license or other grant to a nonprofit institution of the right to make a fixation of such programs directly from a transmission to the public, with or without the right to make further uses of such fixations.

(c) Nature of required deposit. (1) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the deposit required to accompany an application for registration of claim to copyright under section 408 of title 17 shall consist of:

(i) In the case of unpublished works, one complete copy or phonorecord.

(ii) In the case of works first published in the United States before January 1, 1978, two complete copies or phonorecords of the work as first published.

(iii) In the case of works first published in the United States on or after January 1, 1978, two complete copies or phonorecords of the best edition.

(iv) In the case of works first published outside of the United States, one complete copy or phonorecord of the work either as first published or of the best edition. For purposes of this section, any works simultaneously first published within and outside of the United States shall be considered to be first published in the United States.

(2) In the case of certain works, the special provisions set forth in this clause shall apply. In any case where this clause specifies that one copy or phonorecord may be submitted, that copy or phonorecord shall represent the best edition, or the work as first published, as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(i) General. In the following cases the deposit of one complete copy or phonorecord will suffice in lieu of two copies or phonorecords:

(A) Published three-dimensional cartographic representations of area, such as globes and relief models;

(B) Published diagrams illustrating scientific or technical works or formulating scientific or technical information in linear or other two-dimensional form, such as an architectural or engineering blueprint, or a mechanical drawing;

(C) Published greeting cards, picture postcards, and stationery;

(D) Lectures, sermons, speeches, and addresses published individually and not as a collection of the works of one or more authors;

(E) Musical compositions published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords, if the only publication of copies took place by rental, lease, or lending;

(F) Published multimedia kits or any part thereof;

(G) Works exempted from the requirement of depositing identifying material under paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(B)(5) of this section;

(H) Literary, dramatic, and musical works published only as embodied in phonorecords, although this category does not exempt the owner of copyright in a sound recording;

(I) Choreographic works, pantomimes, literary, dramatic, and musical works published only as embodied in motion pictures;

(J) Published works in the form of two-dimensional games, decals, fabric patches or emblems, calendars, instructions for needle work, needle work and craft kits; and

(K) Works reproduced on three-dimensional containers such as boxes, cases, and cartons.

(ii) Motion pictures. In the case of published or unpublished motion pictures, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice. The deposit of a copy or copies for any published or unpublished motion picture must be accompanied by a separate description of its contents, such as a continuity, pressbook,
or synopsis. In any case where the deposit copy or copies required for registration of a motion picture cannot be viewed for examining purposes on equipment in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the description accompanying the deposit must comply with §202.21(h) of these regulations. The Library of Congress may, at its sole discretion, enter into an agreement permitting the return of copies of published motion pictures to the depositor under certain conditions and establishing certain rights and obligations of the Library of Congress with respect to such copies. In the event of termination of such an agreement by the Library, it shall not be subject to reinstatement, nor shall the depositor or any successor in interest of the depositor be entitled to any similar or subsequent agreement with the Library, unless at the sole discretion of the Library it would be in the best interests of the Library to reinstate the agreement or enter into a new agreement. In the case of unpublished motion pictures (including television transmission programs that have been fixed and transmitted to the public, but have not been published), the deposit of identifying material in compliance with §202.21 of these regulations may be made and will suffice in lieu of deposit of an actual copy. In the case of a published pictorial or graphic work, deposit of one complete copy, or of identifying material in compliance with §202.21 of these regulations may be made and will suffice in lieu of deposit of two actual copies where an individual author is the owner of copyright, and either:

(A) Less than five copies of the work have been published; or
(B) The work has been published and sold or offered for sale in a limited edition consisting of no more than 300 numbered copies.

(v) Commercial prints and labels. In the case of prints, labels, and other advertising matter, including catalogs, published in connection with the rental, lease, lending, licensing, or sale of articles of merchandise, works of authorship, or services, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice in lieu of two copies. Where the print or label is published in a larger work, such as a newspaper or other periodical, one copy of the entire page or pages upon which it appears may be submitted in lieu of the entire larger work. In the case of prints or labels physically inseparable from a three-dimensional object, identifying material complying with §202.21 of these regulations must be submitted rather than an actual copy or copies except under the conditions of paragraph (c)(2)(xii)(B)(4) of this section.

(vi) Tests. In the case of tests, and answer material for tests, published separately from other literary works, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice in lieu of two copies. In the case of

(B) Photographs or other identifying material complying with §202.21 of these regulations and clearly showing the displayed image.

The number of sets of instructions and identifying material shall be the same as the number of copies required. In the case of a work in the form of a two-dimensional hologram, the image of which is visible without the use of a machine or device, one actual copy of the work shall be deposited.

(iv) Certain pictorial and graphic works. In the case of any unpublished pictorial or graphic work, deposit of identifying material in compliance with §202.21 of these regulations may be made and will suffice in lieu of deposit of an actual copy. In the case of a published pictorial or graphic work, deposit of one complete copy, or of identifying material in compliance with §202.21 of these regulations, may be made and will suffice in lieu of deposit of two actual copies where an individual author is the owner of copyright, and either:

(A) Less than five copies of the work have been published; or
(B) The work has been published and sold or offered for sale in a limited edition consisting of no more than 300 numbered copies.

(v) Commercial prints and labels. In the case of prints, labels, and other advertising matter, including catalogs, published in connection with the rental, lease, lending, licensing, or sale of articles of merchandise, works of authorship, or services, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice in lieu of two copies. Where the print or label is published in a larger work, such as a newspaper or other periodical, one copy of the entire page or pages upon which it appears may be submitted in lieu of the entire larger work. In the case of prints or labels physically inseparable from a three-dimensional object, identifying material complying with §202.21 of these regulations must be submitted rather than an actual copy or copies except under the conditions of paragraph (c)(2)(xii)(B)(4) of this section.

(vi) Tests. In the case of tests, and answer material for tests, published separately from other literary works, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice in lieu of two copies. In the case of
any secure test the Copyright Office will return the deposit to the applicant promptly after examination: Provided, that sufficient portions, description, or the like are retained so as to constitute a sufficient archival record of the deposit.

(vii) Computer programs and databases embodied in machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format. In cases where a computer program, database, compilation, statistical compendium, or the like, if unpublished is fixed, or if published is published only in the form of machine-readable copies (such as magnetic tape or disks, punched cards, semiconductor chip products, or the like) other than a CD-ROM format, from which the work cannot ordinarily be perceived except with the aid of a machine or device, the deposit shall consist of:

(A) For published or unpublished computer programs, one copy of identifying portions of the program, reproduced in a form visually perceptible without the aid of a machine or device, either on paper or in microform. For these purposes “identifying portions” shall mean one of the following:
   (1) The first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of the source code if reproduced on paper, or at least the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of the source code if reproduced in microform, together with the page or equivalent unit containing the copyright notice, if any. If the program is 50 pages or less, the required deposit will be the entire source code. In the case of revised versions of computer programs, if the revisions occur throughout the entire program, the deposit of the page containing the copyright notice and the first and last 25 pages of source code will suffice; if the revisions do not occur in the first and last 25 pages, the deposit should consist of the page containing the copyright notice and any 50 pages of source code representative of the revised material; or
   (2) Where the program contains trade secret material, the page or equivalent unit containing the copyright notice, if any, plus one of the following: the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of source code with portions of the source code containing trade secrets blocked-out, provided that the blocked-out portions are proportionately less than the material remaining, and the deposit reveals an appreciable amount of original computer code; or for programs consisting of, or less than, 50 pages or equivalent units, entire source code with the trade secret portions blocked-out, provided that the blocked-out portions are proportionately less than the material remaining, and the remaining portion reveals an appreciable amount of original computer code. If the copyright claim is in a revision not contained in the first and last 25 pages, the deposit shall consist of either 20 pages of source code representative of the revised material with no blocked-out portions, or any 50 pages of source code representative of the revised material with portions of the source code containing trade secrets blocked-out, provided that the blocked-out portions are proportionately less than the material remaining and the deposit reveals an appreciable amount of original computer code. Whatever method is used to block out trade secret material, at least an appreciable amount of original computer code must remain visible.

(B) Where registration of a program containing trade secrets is made on the basis of an object code deposit the Copyright Office will make registration under its rule of doubt and warn that no determination has been made concerning the existence of copyrightable authorship.

(C) Where the application to claim copyright in a computer program includes a specific claim in related computer screen displays, the deposit, in addition to the identifying portions specified in paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(A) of this section, shall consist of:
   (1) Visual reproductions of the copyrightable expression in the form of printouts, photographs, or drawings no smaller than 3x3 inches and no larger than 9x12 inches; or
   (2) If the authorship in the work is predominantly audiovisual, a one-half
inch VHS format videotape reproducing the copyrightable expression, except that printouts, photographs, or drawings no smaller than 3x3 inches and no larger than 9x12 inches must be deposited in lieu of videotape where the computer screen material simply constitutes a demonstration of the functioning of the computer program.

(D) For published and unpublished automated databases, compilations, statistical compendia, and the like, so fixed or published, one copy of identifying portions of the work, reproduced in a form visually perceptible without the aid of a machine or device, either on paper or in microform. For these purposes:

(1) Identifying portions shall generally mean either the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of the work if reproduced on paper or in microform.

(2) Datafile and file shall mean a group of data records pertaining to a common subject matter regardless of their size or the number of data items in them.

(3) In the case of individual registration of a revised version of the works identified in paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(D) of this section, the identifying portions deposited shall contain 50 representative pages or data records which have been added or modified.

(4) If the work is an automated database comprising multiple separate or distinct data files, “identifying portions” shall instead consist of 50 complete data records from each data file or the entire data file, whichever is less, and the descriptive statement required by paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(D)(5) of this section.

(5) In the case of group registration for revised or updated versions of a database, the claimant shall deposit identifying portions that contain 50 representative pages or equivalent units, or representative data records which have been marked to disclose (or do in fact disclose satisfactorily) the new material added on one representative publication date if published, or on one representative creation date, if unpublished, and shall also deposit a brief typed or printed descriptive statement containing the notice of copyright information required under paragraphs (c)(2)(vii)(D)(6) or (7) of this section, if the work bears a notice, and:

(i) The title of the database;

(ii) A subtitle, date of creation or publication, or other information, to distinguish any separate or distinct data files for cataloging purposes;

(iii) The name and address of the copyright claimant;

(iv) For each separate file, its name and content, including its subject, the origin(s) of the data, and the approximate number of data records it contains; and

(v) In the case of revised or updated versions of an automated database, information as to the nature and frequency of changes in the database and some identification of the location within the database or the separate data files of the revisions.

(6) For a copyright notice embodied in machine-readable form, the statement shall describe exactly the visually perceptible content of the notice which appears in or with the database, and the manner and frequency with which it is displayed (e.g., at user’s terminal only at sign-on, or continuously on terminal display, or on printouts, etc.).

(7) If a visually perceptible copyright notice is placed on any copies of the work (or on magnetic tape reels or containers therefor), a sample of such notice must also accompany the statement.

(viii) Machine-readable copies of works other than computer programs, databases, and works fixed in a CD-ROM format. Where a literary, musical, pictorial, graphic, or audiovisual work, or a sound recording, except for works fixed in a CD-ROM format and literary works which are computer programs, databases, compilations, statistical compendia or the like, if unpublished has been fixed or, if published, has been published only in machine-readable form, the deposit must consist of identifying material. The type of identifying material submitted should generally be appropriate to the type of work embodied in machine-readable form, but in all cases should be that which best represents the copyrightable content of the work. In all cases the identifying material must include the title of the work. A synopsis may...
Copyright Office, Library of Congress § 202.20

also be requested in addition to the other deposit materials as appropriate in the discretion of the Copyright Office. In the case of any published work subject to this section, the identifying material must include a representation of the copyright notice, if one exists. Identifying material requirements for certain types of works are specified below. In the case of the types of works listed below, the requirements specified shall apply except that, in any case where the specific requirements are not appropriate for a given work, the form of the identifying material required will be determined by the Copyright Office in consultation with the applicant, but the Copyright Office will make the final determination of the acceptability of the identifying material.

(A) For pictorial or graphic works, the deposit shall consist of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations;

(B) For audiovisual works, the deposit shall consist of either a videotape of the work depicting representative portions of the copyrightable content, or a series of photographs or drawings, depicting representative portions of the work, plus in all cases a separate synopsis of the work;

(C) For musical compositions, the deposit shall consist of a transcription of the entire work such as a score, or a reproduction of the entire work on an audiocassette or other phonorecord;

(D) For sound recordings, the deposit shall consist of a reproduction of the entire work on an audiocassette or other phonorecord;

(E) For literary works, the deposit shall consist of a transcription of representative portions of the work including the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units, and five or more pages indicative of the remainder.

(x) Works reproduced in or on sheetlike materials. In the case of any unpublished work that is fixed, or any published work that is published, only in the form of a two-dimensional reproduction on sheetlike materials such as textiles and other fabrics, wallpaper and similar commercial wall coverings, carpeting, floor tile, and similar commercial floor coverings, and wrapping paper and similar packaging material, the deposit shall consist of one copy in the form of an actual swatch or piece of such material sufficient to show all elements of the work in which copyright is claimed and the copyright notice appearing on the work, if any. If the work consists of a repeated pictorial or graphic design, the complete design and at least part of one repetition must be shown. If the sheetlike material in or on which a published work has been reproduced has been embodied in or attached to a three-dimensional object, such as furniture, or any other three-dimensional manufactured article, and the work has been published only in that form, the deposit must consist of identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations instead of a copy. If the sheetlike material in or on which a published work has been reproduced has been embodied in or attached to a two-dimensional object such as wearing apparel, bed linen, or a similar item, and the work has been published only in that form, the deposit must consist of identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations instead of a copy unless the copy can be folded for storage in a form that does not exceed four inches in thickness.

(xii) Works reproduced in or on three-dimensional objects. (A) In the following cases the deposit must consist of identifying material complying with § 201.21 of these regulations instead of a copy or copies:

(1) Any three-dimensional sculptural work, including any illustration or formulation of artistic expression or information in three-dimensional form. Examples of such works include statues, carvings, ceramics, moldings, constructions, models, and maquettes; and

(2) Any two-dimensional or three-dimensional work that, if unpublished, has been fixed, or, if published, has
been published only in or on jewelry, dolls, toys, games, except as provided in paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(B)(3) of this section, or any three-dimensional useful article.

(B) In the following cases the requirements of paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(A) of this section for the deposit of identifying material shall not apply:

(1) Three-dimensional cartographic representations of area, such as globes and relief models;

(2) Works that have been fixed or published only in or on a useful article that comprises one of the elements of the unit of publication of an educational or instructional kit which also includes a literary or audiovisual work, a sound recording, or any combination of such works;

(3) Published games consisting of multiple parts that are packaged and published in a box or similar container with flat sides and with dimensions of no more than 12x24x6 inches;

(4) Works reproduced on three-dimensional containers or holders such as boxes, cases, and cartons, where the container or holder can be readily opened out, unfolded, slit at the corners, or in some other way made adaptable for flat storage, and the copy, when flattened, does not exceed 96 inches in any dimension; or

(5) Any three-dimensional sculptural work that, if unpublished, has been fixed, or, if published, has been published only in the form of jewelry cast in base metal which does not exceed four inches in any dimension.

(xii) Soundtracks. For separate registration of an unpublished work that is fixed, or a published work that is published, only as embodied in a soundtrack that is an integral part of a motion picture, the deposit of identifying material in compliance with §202.21 of these regulations will suffice in lieu of an actual copy of the motion picture.

(xiii) Oversize deposits. In any case where the deposit otherwise required by this section exceeds 96 inches in any dimension, identifying material complying with §202.21 of these regulations must be submitted instead of an actual copy or copies.

(xiv) Pictorial advertising material. In the case of published pictorial advertising material, except for advertising material published in connection with motion pictures, the deposit of either one copy as published or prepublication material consisting of camera-ready copy is acceptable.

(xv) Contributions to collective works. In the case of published contributions to collective works, the deposit of either one complete copy of the best edition of the entire collective work, the complete section containing the contribution if published in a newspaper, the entire page containing the contribution, the contribution cut from the paper in which it appeared, or a photocopy of the contribution itself as it was published in the collective work, will suffice in lieu of two complete copies of the entire collective work.

(xvi) Phonorecords. In any case where the deposit phonorecord or phonorecords submitted for registration of a claim to copyright is inaudible on audio playback devices in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the Office will seek an appropriate deposit in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

(xvii) Group registration of serials. For group registration of related serials, as specified in §202.3(b)(6), the deposit must consist of one complete copy of the best edition of each issue included in the group registration. In addition, two complimentary subscriptions to any serial for which group registration is sought must be entered and maintained in the name of the Library of Congress, and the copies must be submitted regularly and promptly after publication.

(xviii) Architectural works. (A) For designs of unconstructed buildings, the deposit must consist of one complete copy of an architectural drawing or blueprint in visually perceptible form showing the overall form of the building and any interior arrangements of spaces and/or design elements in which copyright is claimed. For archival purposes, the Copyright Office prefers that the drawing submissions consist of the following in descending order of preference:

(1) Original format, or best quality form of reproduction, including offset or silk screen printing;

(2) Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper;
Copyright Office, Library of Congress § 202.20

(3) Positive photostat or photodirect positive;
(4) Blue line copies (diazo or ozalid process).

The Copyright Office prefers that the deposit disclose the name(s) of the architect(s) and draftsperson(s) and the building site, if known.

(B) For designs of constructed buildings, the deposit must consist of one complete copy of an architectural drawing or blueprint in visually perceptible form showing the overall form of the building and any interior arrangement of spaces and/or design elements in which copyright is claimed. In addition, the deposit must also include identifying material in the form of photographs complying with §202.21 of these regulations, which clearly discloses the architectural works being registered. For archival purposes, the Copyright Office prefers that the drawing submissions constitute the most finished form of presentation drawings and consist of the following in descending order of preference:

(1) Original format, or best quality form of reproduction, including offset or silk screen printing;
(2) Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper;
(3) Positive photostat or photodirect positive;
(4) Blue line copies (diazo or ozalid process).

With respect to the accompanying photographs, the Copyright Office prefers 8 x 10 inches, good quality photographs, which clearly show several exterior and interior views. The Copyright Office prefers that the deposit disclose the name(s) of the architect(s) and draftsperson(s) and the building site.

(xix) Works fixed in a CD-ROM format.

(A) Where a work is fixed in a CD-ROM format, the deposit must consist of one complete copy of the entire CD-ROM package, including a complete copy of any accompanying operating software and instructional manual, and a printed version of the work embodied in the CD-ROM, if the work is fixed in print as well as a CD-ROM. A complete copy of a published CD-ROM package includes all of the elements comprising the applicable unit of publication, including elements that if considered separately would not be copyrightable subject matter or could be the subject of a separate registration.

(B) In any case where the work fixed in a CD-ROM package cannot be viewed on equipment available in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the Office will seek an appropriate deposit in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section, in addition to the deposit of the CD-ROM package.

(d) Special relief. (1) In any case the Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and upon such conditions as the Register may determine after such consultation:

(i) Permit the deposit of one copy or phonorecord, or alternative identifying material, in lieu of the one or two copies or phonorecords otherwise required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section;

(ii) Permit the deposit of incomplete copies or phonorecords, or copies or phonorecords other than those normally comprising the best edition; or

(iii) Permit the deposit of an actual copy or copies, in lieu of the identifying material otherwise required by this section; or

(iv) Permit the deposit of identifying material which does not comply with §202.21 of these regulations.

(2) Any decision as to whether to grant such special relief, and the conditions under which special relief is to be granted, shall be made by the Register of Copyrights after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress, and shall be based upon the acquisition policies of the Library of Congress then in force and the archival and examining requirements of the Copyright Office.

(3) Requests for special relief under this paragraph may be combined with requests for special relief under §202.19(e) of these regulations. Whether so combined or made solely under this paragraph, such requests shall be made in writing to the Chief, Examining Division of the Copyright Office, shall be signed by or on behalf of the person signing the application for registration, and shall set forth specific reasons why the request should be granted.
§ 202.21 Deposit of identifying material instead of copies.  
(a) General. Subject to the specific provisions of paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section, and to §§202.19(e)(1)(iv) and 202.20(d)(1)(iv), in any case where the deposit of identifying material is permitted or required under §202.19 or §202.20 of these regulations for published or unpublished works, the material shall consist of photographic prints, transparencies, photostats, drawings, or similar two-dimensional reproductions or renderings of the work, in a form visually perceivable without the aid of a machine or device. In the case of pictorial or graphic works, such material should reproduce the actual colors employed in the work. In all other cases, such material may be in black and white or may consist of a reproduction of the actual colors.  
(b) Completeness; number of sets. As many pieces of identifying material as are necessary to show the entire copyrightable content in the ordinary case, but in no case less than an adequate representation of such content, of the work for which deposit is being made, or for which registration is being sought shall be submitted. Except in cases falling under the provisions of §202.19(d)(2)(iii) or §202.20(c)(2)(ii) with respect to holograms, only one set of such complete identifying material is required.  
(c) Size. Photographic transparencies must be at least 38mm in size and, if such transparencies are 3x3 inches or less, must be fixed in cardboard, plastic, or similar mounts to facilitate identification, handling, and storage. The Copyright Office prefers that transparencies larger than 3x3 inches be mounted in a way that facilitates their handling and preservation, and reserves the right to require such mounting in particular cases. All types of identifying material other than photographic transparencies must be not less than 3x3 inches and not more than 9x12 inches, but preferably 8x10 inches. Except in the case of transparencies, the image of the work must be either lifesize or larger, or if less than lifesize must be large enough to show clearly the entire copyrightable content of the work.  
(d) Title and dimensions. At least one piece of identifying material must, on its front, back, or mount, indicate the title of the work; and the indication of an exact measurement of one or more dimensions of the work is preferred.  
(e) Copyright notice. In the case of works published with notice of copyright, the notice and its position on the work must be clearly shown on at least one piece of identifying material. Where necessary because of the size or position of the notice, a separate drawing or similar reproduction shall be submitted. Such reproduction shall be no smaller than 3x3 inches and no larger than 9x12 inches, and shall show the exact appearance and content of the notice, and its specific position on the work.
(f) For separate registration of an unpublished work that is fixed, or a published work that is published, only as embodied in a soundtrack that is an integral part of a motion picture, identifying material deposited in lieu of an actual copy of the motion picture shall consist of:

(1) A transcription of the entire work, or a reproduction of the entire work on a phonorecord; and

(2) Photographs or other reproductions from the motion picture showing the title of the motion picture, the soundtrack credits, and the copyright notice for the soundtrack, if any.

The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), (d), and (e) of this section do not apply to identifying material deposited under this paragraph (f).

(g)(1) In the case of unpublished motion pictures (including transmission programs that have been fixed and transmitted to the public, but have not been published), identifying material deposited in lieu of an actual copy shall consist of either:

(i) An audio cassette or other phonorecord reproducing the entire soundtrack or other sound portion of the motion picture, and description of the motion picture; or

(ii) A set consisting of one frame enlargement or similar visual reproduction from each 10-minute segment of the motion picture, and a description of the motion picture.

(2) In either case the “description” may be a continuity, a pressbook, or a synopsis but in all cases it must include:

(i) The title or continuing title of the work, and the episode title, if any;

(ii) The nature and general content of the program;

(iii) The date when the work was first fixed and whether or not fixation was simultaneous with first transmission;

(iv) The date of first transmission, if any;

(v) The running time; and

(vi) The credits appearing on the work, if any.

(3) The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), (d), and (e) of this section do not apply to identifying material submitted under this paragraph (g).

(h) In the case where the deposit copy or copies of a motion picture cannot be viewed for examining purposes on equipment in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the “description” required by §202.20(c)(2)(ii) of these regulations may be a continuity, a press-book, a synopsis, or a final shooting script but in all cases must be sufficient to indicate the copyrightable material in the work and include:

(1) The continuing title of the work and the episode title, if any;

(2) The nature and general content of the program and of its dialogue or narration, if any;

(3) The running time; and

(4) All credits appearing on the work including the copyright notice, if any.

The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), (d), and (e) of this section do not apply to identifying material submitted under this paragraph (h).

[51 FR 6409, Feb. 24, 1986]

§ 202.22 Acquisition and deposit of unpublished television transmission programs.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the acquisition of copies of unpublished television transmission programs by the Library of Congress under section 407(e) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553. It also prescribes rules pertaining to the use of such copies in the registration of claims to copyright, under section 408(b)(2).

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section:

(1) The terms copies, fixed, publication, and transmission program and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in section 101 of title 17. The term network station has the meaning given it in section 111(f) of title 17.

(2) Title 17 means title of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94-553.

(c) Off-the-air copying. (1) Library of Congress employees acting under the general authority of the Librarian of Congress may make a fixation of an unpublished television transmission program directly from a transmission to the public in the United States, in accordance with section 407(e)(1) and (4) of Title 17 of the United States Code. The choice of programs selected for fixation shall be based on the Library of Congress acquisition policies.
in effect at the time of fixation. Specific notice of an intent to copy a transmission program off-the-air will ordinarily not be given. In general, the Library of Congress will seek to copy off-the-air a substantial portion of the programming transmitted by non-commercial educational broadcast stations as defined in section 397 of Title 47 of the United States Code, and will copy off-the-air selected programming transmitted by commercial broadcast stations, both network and independent.

(2) Upon written request addressed to the Chief, Motion Picture, Broadcasting and Recorded Sound Division by a broadcast station or other owner of the right of transmission, the Library of Congress will inform the requestor whether a particular transmission program has been copied off-the-air by the Library.

(3) The Library of Congress will not knowingly copy off-the-air any unfixed or published television transmission program under the copying authority of section 407(e) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(4) The Library of Congress is entitled under this paragraph (c) to presume that a television program transmitted to the public in the United States by a noncommercial educational broadcast station as defined in section 397 of Title 47 of the United States Code has been fixed but not published.

(5) The presumption established by paragraph (c)(4) of this section may be overcome by written declaration and submission of appropriate documentary evidence to the Chief, Motion Picture, Broadcasting and Recorded Sound Division, either before or after off-the-air copying of the particular transmission program by the Library of Congress. Such written submission shall contain:

(i) The identification, by title and time of broadcast, of the transmission program in question;

(ii) A brief statement declaring either that the program was not fixed or that it was published at the time of transmission;

(iii) If it is declared that the program was published at the time of transmission, a brief statement of the facts of publication, including the date and place thereof, the method of publication, the name of the owner of the right of first publication, and whether the work was published in the United States with notice of copyright; and

(iv) The actual handwritten signature of an officer or other duly authorized agent of the organization which transmitted the program in question.

(6) A declaration that the program was unfixed at the time of transmission shall be accepted by the Library of Congress, unless the Library can cite evidence to the contrary, and the off-the-air copy will either be

(i) Erased; or

(ii) Retained, if requested by the owner of copyright or of any exclusive right, to satisfy the deposit provision of section 408 of title 17 of the United States Code.

(7) If it is declared that the program was published at the time of transmission, the Library of Congress is entitled under this section to retain the copy to satisfy the deposit requirement of section 407(a) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(8) The Library of Congress in making fixations of unpublished transmission programs transmitted by commercial broadcast stations shall not do so without notifying the transmitting organization or its agent that such activity is taking place. In the case of network stations, the notification will be sent to the particular network. In the case of any other commercial broadcasting station, the notification will be sent to the particular broadcast station that has transmitted, or will transmit, the program. Such notice shall, if possible, be given by the Library of Congress prior to the time of broadcast. In every case the Library of Congress shall transmit such notice no later than fourteen days after such fixation has occurred. Such notice shall contain:

(i) The identification, by title and time of broadcast, of the transmission program in question;

(ii) A brief statement asserting the Library of Congress’ belief that the transmission program has been, or will be by the date of transmission, fixed and is unpublished, together with language converting the notice to a demand for deposit under section 407(a)
and (b) of title 17 of the United States Code, if the transmission program has been published in the United States.

(9) The notice required by paragraph (c)(8) of this section shall not cover more than one transmission program except that the notice may cover up to thirteen episodes of one title if such episodes are generally scheduled to be broadcast at the same time period on a regular basis, or may cover all the episodes comprising the title if they are scheduled to be broadcast within a period of not more than two months.

(d) Demands for deposit of a television transmission program. (1) The Register of Copyrights may make a written demand upon the owner of the right of transmission in the United States to deposit a copy of a specific transmission program for the benefit of the Library of Congress under the authority of section 407(e)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(2) The Register of Copyrights is entitled to presume, unless clear evidence to the contrary is proffered, that the transmitting organization is the owner of the United States transmission right.

(3) Notices of demand shall be in writing and shall contain:

(i) The identification, by title and time of broadcast, of the work in question;

(ii) An explanation of the optional forms of compliance, including transfer of ownership of a copy to the Library, lending a copy to the Library for reproduction, or selling a copy to the Library at a price not to exceed the cost of reproducing and supplying the copy;

(iii) A ninety-day deadline by which time either compliance or a request to adjust the scope of the demand or the method for fulfilling it shall have been received by the Register of Copyrights;

(iv) A brief description of the controls which are placed on the copies' use;

(v) A statement concerning the Register's perception of the publication status of the program, together with language converting this demand to a demand for a deposit, under 17 U.S.C. 407 (a) and (c), if the recipient takes the position that the work is published; and

(vi) A statement that a compliance copy must be made and retained if the notice is received prior to transmission.

(4) With respect to paragraph (d)(3)(ii) of this section, the sale of a copy in compliance with a demand of this nature shall be at a price not to exceed the cost to the Library of reproducing and supplying the copy. The notice of demand should therefore inform the recipient of that cost and set that cost, plus reasonable shipping charges, as the maximum price for such a sale.

(5) Copies transferred, lent, or sold under paragraph (d) of this section shall be of sound physical condition as described in Appendix A to this section.

(6) Special relief. In the case of any demand made under paragraph (d) of this section the Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and upon such conditions as the Register may determine after such consultation,

(i) Extend the time period provided in subparagraph (d)(3)(iii);

(ii) Make adjustments in the scope of the demand; or

(iii) Make adjustments in the method of fulfilling the demand. Any decision as to whether to allow such extension or adjustments shall be made by the Register of Copyrights after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and shall be made as reasonably warranted by the circumstances. Requests for special relief under paragraph (d) of this section shall be made in writing to the Copyright Acquisitions Division, shall be signed by or on behalf of the owner of the right of transmission in the United States and shall set forth the specific reasons why the request shall be granted.

(e) Disposition and use of copies. (1) All copies acquired under this section shall be maintained by the Motion Picture, Broadcasting and Recorded Sound Division of the Library of Congress. The Library may make one archival copy of a program which it has fixed under the provisions of section 407(e)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code and paragraph (c) of this section.
§ 202.23 Full term retention of copyright deposits.

(a) General. (1) This section prescribes conditions under which a request for full term retention, under the control of the Copyright Office, of copyright deposits (copies, phonorecords, or identifying material) of published works may be made and granted or denied pursuant to section 704(e) of title 17 of the United States Code. Only copies, phonorecords, or identifying material deposited in connection with registration of a claim to copyright under title 17 of the United States Code are within the provisions of this section. Only the depositor or the copyright owner of record of the work identified by the copyright deposit, or a duly authorized agent of the depositor or copyright owner, may request full term retention. A fee for this service is fixed by this section pursuant to section 708(a)(11) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(2) For purposes of this section, the Library of Congress shall mean within the confines of Copyright Office buildings and under the control of Copyright Office employees, including retention in a Federal records center, but does not include transfer to the Library of Congress collections.

(3) For purposes of this section, full term retention means retention for a period of 75 years from the date of publication of the work identified by the particular copyright deposit which is retained.

(4) For purposes of this section, copyright deposit or its plural means the copy, phonorecord, or identifying material submitted to the Copyright Office in connection with a published work that is subsequently registered and made part of the records of the Office.

§ 202.24 Registration of claims to copyright.

(1) Copies fixed by the Library of Congress under the provisions of paragraph (c) of this section may be used as the deposit for copyright registration provided that:

(i) The application and fee, in a form acceptable for registration, is received by the Copyright Office not later than ninety days after transmission of the program, and

(ii) Correspondence received by the Copyright Office in the envelope containing the application and fee states that a fixation of the instant work was made by the Library of Congress and requests that the copy so fixed be used to satisfy the registration deposit provisions.

(2) Copies transferred, lent, or sold to the Library of Congress under the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section may be used as the deposit for copyright registration purposes only when the application and fee, in a form acceptable for registration, accompany, in the same container, the copy lent, transferred, or sold, and there is an explanation that the copy is intended to satisfy both the demand issued under section 407(e)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code and the registration deposit provisions.

(g) Agreements modifying the terms of this section. (1) The Library of Congress may, at its sole discretion, enter into an agreement whereby the provision of copies of unpublished television transmission programs on terms different from those contained in this section is authorized.

(2) Any such agreement may be terminated without notice by the Library of Congress.

(b) Form and content of request for full term retention—(1) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons requesting full term retention of copyright deposits.

(2) Requests for full term retention must be made in writing addressed to the Chief, Information and Reference Division of the Copyright Office, and shall (i) be signed by or on behalf of the depositor or copyright owner of record, and (ii) clearly indicate that full term retention is desired.

(3) The request for full term retention must adequately identify the particular copyright deposit to be retained, preferably by including the title used in the registration application, the name of the depositor or copyright owner of record, the publication date, and, if registration was completed earlier, the registration number.

(c) Conditions under which requests will be granted or denied—(1) General. A request that meets the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section will generally be granted if the copyright deposit for which full term retention is requested has been continuously in the custody of the Copyright Office and the Library of Congress has not, by the date of the request, selected the copyright deposit for its collections.

(2) Time of request. The request for full term retention of a particular copyright deposit may be made at the time of deposit or at any time thereafter; however, the request will be granted only if at least one copy, phonorecord, or set of identifying material is in the custody of the Copyright Office at the time of the request. Where the request is made concurrent with the initial deposit of the work for registration, the requestor must submit one copy or phonorecord more than the number specified in §202.20 of for the particular work.

(3) One deposit retained. The Copyright Office will retain no more than one copy, phonorecord, or set of identifying material for a given registered work.

(4) Denial of request for full term retention. The Copyright Office reserves the right to deny the request for full term retention where:

(i) The excessive size, fragility, or weight of the deposit would, in the sole discretion of the Register of Copyrights, constitute an unreasonable storage burden. The request may nevertheless be granted if, within 60 calendar days of the original denial of the request, the requestor pays the reasonable administrative costs, as fixed in the particular case by the Register of Copyrights, of preparing acceptable identifying materials for retention in lieu of the actual copyright deposit;

(ii) The Library of Congress has selected for its collections the single copyright deposit, or both, if two copies or phonorecords were deposited; or

(iii) Retention would result in a health or safety hazard, in the sole judgment of the Register of Copyrights. The request may nevertheless be granted if, within 60 calendar days of the original denial of the request, the requestor pays the reasonable administrative costs, as fixed in the particular case by the Register of Copyrights of preparing acceptable identifying materials for retention in lieu of the actual copyright deposit.

(d) Form of copyright deposit. If full term retention is granted, the Copyright Office will retain under its control the particular copyright deposit used to make registration for the work. Any deposit made on or after September 19, 1978, shall satisfy the requirements of §§202.20 and 202.21.

(e) Fee for full term retention. (1) Pursuant to section 708(a)(11) of title 17 of the United States Code, the Register of Copyrights has fixed the fee for full term retention, as prescribed in §201.3(d), for each copyright deposit granted full term retention.

(2) A check or money order in the amount prescribed in §201.3(d) payable to the Register of Copyrights, must be received in the Copyright Office within 60 calendar days from the date of mailing of the Copyright Office's notification to the requestor that full term retention has been granted for a particular copyright deposit.

(3) The Copyright Office will issue a receipt acknowledging payment of the fee and identifying the copyright deposit for which full term retention has been granted.

(f) Selection by Library of Congress—(1) General. All published copyright deposits are available for selection by the
APPENDIX A TO PART 202—TECHNICAL GUIDELINES REGARDING SOUND PHYSICAL CONDITION

To be considered a copy "of sound physical condition" within the meaning of 37 CFR 202.22(d)(5), a copy shall conform to all the technical guidelines set out in this Appendix.

A. Physical Condition. All portions of the copy that reproduce the transmission program must be:

1. Clean: Free from dirt, marks, spots, fungus, or other smudges, blotches, blemishes, or distortions;
2. Undamaged: Free from burns, blisters, tears, cuts, scratches, breaks, erosion, or other physical damage. The copies must also be free from:
   (i) Any damage that interferes with performance from the tape or other reproduction, including physical damage resulting from earlier mechanical difficulties such as cassette jamming, breaks, tangles, or tape overflow; and
   (ii) Any erasures, damage causing visual or audible defects or distortions or any material remaining from incomplete erasure of previously recorded works.
3. Unspliced: Free from splices in any part of the copy reproducing the transmission program, regardless of whether the splice involves the addition or deletion of material or is intended to repair a break or cut.
4. Undeteriorated: Free from any visual or aural deterioration resulting from aging or exposure to climatic, atmospheric, or other chemical or physical conditions, including heat, cold, humidity, electromagnetic fields, or radiation. The copy shall also be free from excessive brittleness or stretching, from any visible flaking of oxide from the tape base or other medium, and from other visible signs of physical deterioration or excessive wear.

B. Physical Appurtenances of Deposit Copy.

1. Physical Housing of Video Tape Copy. (a) In the case of video tape reproduced for reel-to-reel performance, the deposit copy shall consist of reels of uniform size and length. The length of the reels will depend on both the size of the tape and its running time (the last reel may be shorter). (b) In the case of video tape reproduced for cassette, cartridge, or similar performance, the tape drive mechanism shall be fully operable and free from any mechanical defects.
2. "Leader" or Equivalent. The copy, whether housed in reels, cassettes, or cartridges, shall have a leader segment both preceding the beginning and following the end of the recording.

C. Visual and Aural Quality of Copy:

1. Visual Quality. The copy should be equivalent to an evaluated master tape and must reproduce a flawless and consistent electronic signal that meets industry standards for television screening.
2. Aural Quality. The sound channels or other portions must reproduce a flawless and consistent electronic signal without any audible defects.

APPENDIX B TO PART 202—"BEST EDITION" OF PUBLISHED COPYRIGHTED WORKS FOR THE COLLECTIONS OF THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

The copyright law (title 17, United States Code) requires that copies or phonorecords deposited in the Copyright Office be of the "best edition" of the work. The law states that "The 'best edition' of a work is the edition, published in the United States at any
time before the date of deposit, that the Lib-

rary of Congress determines to be most

suitable for its purposes.” (For works first

published only in a country other than the

United States, the law requires the deposit

of the best edition as first published.)

When two or more editions of the same

version of a work have been published, the

one of the highest quality is generally con-
sidered to be the best edition. In judging

quality, the Library of Congress will adhere
to the criteria set forth below in all but ex-
ceptional circumstances.

Where differences between editions rep-

sent variations in copyrightable content,
each edition is a separate version and “best
edition” standards based on such differences
do not apply. Each such version is a separate
work for the purpose of the copyright law.

The criteria to be applied in determining
the best edition of each of several types of
material are listed below in descending order
of importance. In deciding between two edi-
tions, a criterion-by-criterion comparison
should be made. The edition which first fails
to satisfy a criterion is to be considered of
inferior quality and will not be an acceptable
deposit. Example: If a comparison is made
between two hardbound editions of a book,
one a trade edition printed on acid-free
paper, and the other a specially bound edi-
tion printed on average paper, the former
will be the best edition because the type of
paper is a more important criterion than the
binding.

Under regulations of the Copyright Office,
potential depositors may request authoriza-
tion to deposit copies or phonorecords of
other than the best edition of a specific work
(e.g., a microform rather than a printed edi-
tion of a serial), by requesting “special re-

lief” from the deposit requirements. All re-
quests for special relief should be in writing
and should state the reason(s) why the appli-
cant cannot send the required deposit and
what the applicant wishes to submit instead
of the required deposit.

I. Printed Textual Matter

A. Paper, Binding, and Packaging:

1. Archival-quality rather than less-perma-
nent paper.
2. Hard cover rather than soft cover.
3. Library binding rather than commercial
   binding.
4. Trade edition rather than book club edi-
tion.
5. Sewn rather than glue-only binding.
6. Sewn or glued rather than stapled or spi-
   ral-bound.
7. Stapled rather than spiral-bound or plas-
tic-bound.
8. Bound rather than looseleaf, except
   when future looseleaf insertions are to be
   issued. In the case of looseleaf materials,
   this includes the submission of all binders
   and indexes when they are part of the unit as
published and offered for sale or distribution.
Additionally, the regular and timely receipt
of all appropriate looseleaf updates, supple-
ments, and releases including supplemental
binders issued to handle these expanded
versions, is part of the requirement to prop-
erly maintain these publications.
10. With protective folders rather than
    without (for broadsides).
11. Rolled rather than folded (for broad-
sides).
12. With protective coatings rather than
    without (except broadsides, which should not
    be coated).
B. Rarity:

1. Special limited edition having the great-
   est number of special features.
2. Other limited edition rather than trade
   edition.
3. Special binding rather than trade bind-
   ing.
C. Illustrations:

1. Illustrated rather than unillustrated.
2. Illustrations in color rather than black
   and white.
D. Special Features:

1. With thumb notches or index tabs rather
   than without.
2. With aids to use such as overlays and
   magnifiers rather than without.
E. Size:

1. Larger rather than smaller sizes. (Except
   that large-type editions for the partially-
sighted are not required in place of editions
employing type of more conventional size.)

II. Photographs

A. Size and finish, in descending order of
preference:

1. The most widely distributed edition.
2. 8 x 10-inch glossy print.
3. Other size or finish.
B. Unmounted rather than mounted.
C. Archival-quality rather than less-per-
manent paper stock or printing process.

III. Motion Pictures

Film medium is considered a better qual-
ity than any other medium. The formats
under “film” and “video formats” are listed
in descending order of preference:
A. Film

1. Preprint material with special arrange-
ment.
2. 35mm positive prints.
3. 16mm positive prints.
B. Video Formats

1. One-inch open reel tape
2. Betacam SP
3. D-2
4. Betacam
5. Videodisc
6. Three-quarter inch cassette
7. One-half inch VHS cassette
IV. Other Graphic Matter

A. Paper and Printing:
1. Archival quality rather than less-permanent paper.
2. Color rather than black and white.
3. Larger rather than smaller size.
4. In the case of cartographic works, editions with the greatest amount of information rather than those with less detail.

B. Size and Content:
1. Larger rather than smaller size.
2. In the case of cartographic works, editions with the greatest amount of information rather than those with less detail.

C. Rarity:
1. The most widely distributed edition rather than one of limited distribution.
2. In the case of a work published only in a limited, numbered edition, one copy outside the numbered series but otherwise identical.
3. A photographic reproduction of the original, by special arrangement only.

D. Text and Other Materials:
1. Works with annotations, accompanying tabular or textual matter, or other interpretative aids rather than those without them.

E. Binding and Packaging:
2. If editions have different binding, apply the criteria in I.A.2-I.A.7 above.
3. Rolled rather than folded.
4. With protective coatings rather than without.

V. Phonorecords

A. Compact digital disc rather than a vinyl disc.
B. Vinyl disc rather than tape.
C. With special enclosures rather than without.
D. Open-reel rather than cartridge.
E. Cartridge rather than cassette.
F. Quadraphonic rather than stereophonic.
G. True stereophonic rather than monaural.

VI. Musical Compositions

A. Fullness of Score:
1. Vocal music:
   a. With orchestral accompaniment—
      i. Full score and parts, if any, rather than conductor’s score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to full score only.)
      ii. Conductor’s score and parts, if any, rather than condensed score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to conductor’s score only.)
   b. Unaccompanied: Open score (each part on separate staff) rather than closed score (all parts condensed to two staves).
2. Instrumental music:
   a. Full score and parts, if any, rather than conductor’s score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental,
   lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to full score only.)

B. Printing and Paper:
1. Archival-quality rather than less-permanent paper.

C. Binding and Packaging:
1. Special limited editions rather than trade editions.
2. Bound rather than unbound.
3. If editions have different binding, apply the criteria in I.A.2-I.A.12 above.
4. With protective folders rather than without.

VII. Microforms

A. Related Materials:
1. With indexes, study guides, or other printed matter rather than without.

B. Permanence and Appearance:
1. Silver halide rather than any other emulsion.
2. Positive rather than negative.
3. Color rather than black and white.

C. Format (newspaper and newspaper-formatted serials):
1. Reel microfilm rather than any other microform.
3. Reel microfilm rather than microform cassettes.

D. Format (all other materials):
1. 35 mm rather than 16 mm.

VIII. Machine-Readable Copies

A. Computer Programs
1. With documents and other accompanying material rather than without.
2. Not copy-protected (if copy-protected then with a back-up copy of the disk(s)).

B. Computerized Information Works, Including Statistical Compendia, Serials, or Reference Works:
1. With documentation and other accompanying material rather than without.
Copyright Office, Library of Congress

§ 203.3

3. Not copy-protected rather than copy-protected (if copy-protected then with a backup copy of the disk(s)).
4. Format
   a. PC±DOS or MS±DOS (or other IBM compatible formats, such as XENIX):
      (i) Optical media, such as CD±ROM—best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.
      (ii) 5½ Diskette(s).
      (iii) 3¾ Diskette(s).
   b. Apple Macintosh:
      (i) Optical media, such as CD±ROM—best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.
      (ii) 3½ Diskette(s).
IX. Works Existing in More Than One Medium
   Editions are listed below in descending order of preference.
   A. Newspapers, dissertations and theses, newspaper-formatted serials:
      1. Microform.
      2. Printed matter.
   B. All other materials:
      1. Printed matter.
      3. Phonorecord.


PART 203—FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT: POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

ORGANIZATION

Sec.
203.1 General.
203.2 Authority and functions.
203.3 Organization.

PROCEDURES

203.4 Methods of operation.

AVAILABLE OF INFORMATION

203.5 Inspection and copying.

CHARGES FOR SEARCH FOR REPRODUCTION

203.6 Schedule of fees and methods of payment for services rendered.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C 702; 5 U.S.C 552, as amended.

SOURCE: 43 FR 774, Jan. 4, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

ORGANIZATION

§ 203.1 General.

This information is furnished for the guidance of the public and in compliance with the requirements of section 552 of Title 5, United States Code, as amended.

§ 203.2 Authority and functions.

(a) The administration of the copyright law was entrusted to the Library of Congress by an act of Congress in 1870, and the Copyright Office has been a separate department of the Library since 1897. The statutory functions of the Copyright Office are contained in and carried out in accordance with the Copyright Act. Pub. L. 94±553 (90 Stat. 2541±2602), 17 U.S.C. 101±1101.


§ 203.3 Organization.

(a) In general. The Office of the Register exercises overall direction of the work of the Copyright Office, including work in conjunction with copyright legislation and promulgation of copyright regulations. The Office of the Register of Copyrights includes the legal, administrative, and automation staff.

(b) The Associate Register of Copyright for Operations has oversight of the operating divisions of the Copyright Office. The operating divisions are:

(1) The Receiving and Processing Division, which receives incoming materials, dispatches outgoing materials and establishes control over fiscal accounts.

(2) The Examining Division, which examines all applications and material presented to the Copyright Office for registration of original and renewal copyright claims, and which determines whether the material deposited constitutes copyrightable subject matter and whether the other legal and formal requirements of title 17 have been met.

(3) The Cataloging Division, which prepares the bibliographic description of all copyrighted works registered in the Copyright Office, including the recording of legal facts of copyright pertaining to each work, in an on-line database in which copyright records can be searched; and which also examines and catalogs in an on-line database documents submitted for recordation.
(4) The Information and Reference Division, which provides a national copyright information service through the Public Information Office, educates the public on the copyright law, issues and distributes information materials, responds to reference requests regarding copyright matters, prepares search reports based upon copyright records, certifies copies of legal documents concerned with copyright, and maintains liaison with the United States Customs Service, the Department of the Treasury, and the United States Postal Service on certain matters. The Information and Reference Division also develops, services, stores, and preserves the official records and catalogs of the Copyright Office, including applications for registration, historical records, and materials deposited for copyright registration that are not selected by the Library of Congress for addition to its collections.

(5) The Licensing Division, which implements the sections of the Copyright Act dealing with secondary transmissions of radio and television programs, compulsory licenses for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical, pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works in connection with noncommercial broadcasting. The Licensing Division is in charge of collecting the statutory royalties and distributing these royalties based on either a voluntary agreement among the interested parties or a determination of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

(c) The Copyright General Counsel is a principal legal officer of the Office. The General Counsel has overall supervisory responsibility for the legal staff and primary responsibility for providing liaison on legal matters between the Office and the Congress, the Department of Justice and other agencies of Government, the courts, the legal community, and a wide range of interests affected by the copyright law. The Copyright General Counsel has responsibility for overseeing all functions related to the administration of the compulsory licenses including oversight of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

(d) The Associate Register of Copyrights for International Affairs and Policy is a principal legal adviser to the Register with primary responsibility for the international aspects of copyright protection, as well as legislative and policy matters.

(e) The Associate Register of Copyrights for National Programs is primarily responsible for initiating, planning, developing, and implementing projects and activities related to the Copyright Office electronic registration, recordations, and deposit system (CORDS).

(f) The Office has no field organization.

(g) The Office is located in The James Madison Memorial Building of the Library of Congress, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20559-6000. The Public Information Office is located in Room LM-401. Its hours are 8:30 a.m. to 5 p.m., Monday through Friday except legal holidays. The phone number of the Public Information Office is (202) 707-3000. Informational material regarding the copyright law, the registration process, fees, and related information about the Copyright Office and its functions may be obtained free of charge from the Public Information Office upon request.

(h) All Copyright Office forms may be obtained free of charge from the Public Information Office or by calling the Copyright Office Hotline anytime day or night at (202) 707-9100.

(i) The Copyright Office maintains an "electronic reading room" by making available certain documents and records on its World Wide Web page and by providing access to documents that affect the public in electronic format pursuant to 5 USC 552(a)(2). Copyright Office records in machine-readable form cataloged from January 1, 1978, to the present, including registration information and recorded documents, are available on the Internet. Frequently requested Copyright Office circulars, announcements, and recently proposed as well as final regulations are available on-line. The address for the Copyright Office's home page is: http://www.loc.gov/copyright; information may also be accessed by connecting to the Library of Congress' home page on the World Wide Web. The address is: http://www.loc.gov. Other
Copyright Office, Library of Congress

§ 203.4

Methods of operation.

(a) In accordance with section 552(a)(2) of the Freedom of Information Act, the Copyright Office makes available for public inspection and copying records of copyright registrations and of final refusals to register claims to copyright; statements of policy and interpretations which have been adopted but are not published in the Federal Register; and administrative staff manuals and instructions to the staff that affect a member of the public.

(b) The Copyright Office also maintains and makes available for public inspection and copying current indexes providing identifying information as to matters issued, adopted, or promulgated after July 4, 1967, that are within the scope of 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2). The Copyright Office has determined that publication of these indexes is unnecessary and impractical. Copies of the indexes will be provided to any member of the public upon request at the cost of reproduction.

(c) The material and indexes referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section are available for public inspection and copying at the Public Information Office of the Copyright Office, Room LM–401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC, between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m., Monday through Friday, except legal holidays.

(d) The Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist is responsible for responding to all initial requests submitted under the Freedom of Information Act. Individuals desiring to obtain access to Copyright Office information under the Act should make a written request to that effect either by mail to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information and Publications Section, Information and Reference Division, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559–6000, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays at Room LM–401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC. If a request is made by mail, both the request and the envelope carrying it should be plainly marked Freedom of Information Act Request. Failure to so mark a mailed request may delay the Office response.

(e) Records must be reasonably described. A request reasonably describes records if it enables the Office to identify the records requested by any process that is not unreasonably burdensome or disruptive of Office operations. The Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist will, upon request, aid members of the public to formulate their requests in such a manner as to enable the Office to respond effectively and reduce search costs for the requester.

(f) The Office will respond to all properly marked mailed requests and all personally delivered written requests for records within twenty (20) working days of receipt by the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist. Inquiries should be mailed to: Copyright Office, GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400 Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024. If hand delivered, materials should go to: Copyright Public Information Office, LM 401, James Madison Memorial Building, Library of Congress, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC. Office hours are from 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, excluding holidays. If it is determined that an extension of time greater than ten (10) working days is necessary to respond to a request due to unusual circumstances, as defined in paragraph (i) of this section, the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist shall so notify the requester and give the requester the opportunity to:

1. Limit the scope of the request so that it may be processed within twenty (20) working days, or
2. Arrange with the Office an alternative time frame for processing the request or a modified request. If a request is denied, the written notification will include the basis for the denial, names of all individuals who participated in the determination, and...
§ 203.5 Inspection and copying.

(a) When a request for information has been approved, the person making the request may make an appointment to inspect or copy the materials requested during regular business hours by writing or telephoning the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist at the address or telephone number listed in §203.4(d). Such material may be copied manually without charge, and reasonable facilities are available in the Public Information Office for that purpose. Also, copies of individual pages of such materials will be made available at the price per page.

(i) The Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist will consider requests for expedited processing of requests in cases where the requester demonstrates a compelling need for such processing. The term “compelling need” means:

(1) That a failure to obtain requested records on an expedited basis could reasonably be expected to pose an imminent threat to the life or physical safety of an individual; or

(2) With respect to a request made by a person primarily engaged in disseminating information, urgency to inform the public concerning actual or alleged Federal Government activity. Requesters for expedited processing must include in their requests a statement setting forth the basis for the claim that a “compelling need” exists for the requested information, certified by the requester to be true and correct to the best of his or her knowledge and belief. The Office will determine whether to grant a request for expedited processing and will notify the requester of such determination within ten (10) days of receipt of the request. If a request for expedited processing is approved, documents responsive to the request will be processed as soon as is practicable. Denials of requests for expedited processing may be appealed to the Office of the General Counsel.

AVAILABILITY OF INFORMATION

§ 203.5 Inspection and copying.

(a) When a request for information has been approved, the person making the request may make an appointment to inspect or copy the materials requested during regular business hours by writing or telephoning the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist at the address or telephone number listed in §203.4(d). Such material may be copied manually without charge, and reasonable facilities are available in the Public Information Office for that purpose. Also, copies of individual pages of such materials will be made available at the price per page.
Charges for Search for Reproduction

§ 203.6 Schedule of fees and methods of payment for services rendered.

(a) General. The fee schedule of this section does not apply with respect to the charging of fees for those records for which the Copyright Act of 1976, title 17 of the United States Code (Pub. L. 94±553) requires a fee to be charged. The fees required to be charged are contained in §201.3 of this chapter, or have been established by the Register of Copyrights or Library of Congress pursuant to the requirements of that section. If the Copyright Office receives a request for copies or other services involving the public records or indexes of the Office or for copies of deposited articles for which a fee is required to be charged, the Office will notify the requester of the procedure established to obtain the copies or services and the amount of the chargeable fees. Fees pursuant to title 5 U.S.C., section 552 for all other services not involving the public records of the Copyright Office will be assessed according to the schedule in paragraph (b) of this section. All fees so assessed shall be charged to the requester, except where the charge is limited under paragraph (c) of this section or where a waiver or reduction of fees is granted under paragraph (d) of this section. Requests by record subjects asking for copies of records about themselves shall be processed under the Privacy Act fee schedule found in 37 CFR 204.6.

(b) FOIA requests. In responding to requests under this part the following fees shall be assessed, unless a waiver or reduction in fees is granted pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section:

(1) For copies of certificates of copyright registration, $25.

(2) For copies of all other Copyright Office records not otherwise provided for in this section a minimum fee of $15.00 for up to 15 pages and $.50 per page over 15.

(3) For each hour or fraction of an hour spent in searching for a requested record, $65, except that no search fee shall be assessed with respect to requests by educational institutions, non-commercial scientific institutions, and representatives of the news media. Search fees shall be assessed with respect to all other requests, subject to the limitations of paragraph (c) of this section. Fees may be assessed for time spent searching even if the search fails to locate any responsive records or where the records located are subsequently determined to be entirely exempt from disclosure.

(4) For the issuance of any certification, $65 for each hour or fraction of an hour consumed in respect thereto.

(5) Other costs incurred by the Copyright Office in fulfilling a request will be chargeable at the actual cost of the Office.

(6) For computer searches of records, which may be undertaken through the use of existing programming, the actual direct costs of conducting the search including the cost of operating a central processing unit for that portion of operating time that is directly attributable to searching for records responsive to a request, as well as the direct costs of operator/programmer salary apportionable to search (at no less than $65 per hour or fraction thereof).

(7) No review fees will be charged for time spent in resolving legal or policy issues affecting access to Office records. No charge will be made for the time involved in examining records to determine whether some or all such records may be withheld.

(c) Fee limitations. The following limitations on fees shall apply:

(1) Except for requesters seeking records for commercial use the following will be provided without charge—

(i) The first 100 pages of duplication (or its cost equivalent), and

(ii) The first two hours of search (or its cost equivalent).

(2) No fees will be charged for ordinary packaging and mailing costs.

(d) Waiver or reduction of fees. (1) Records responsive to a request under 5 U.S.C. 552 shall be furnished without charge or at a charge reduced below that established under paragraph (b) of this section where the Office determines, based upon information provided by a requester in support of a fee
waiver request or otherwise made known to the Office, that disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government and is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester. Requests for a waiver or reduction of fees shall be considered on a case-by-case basis.

(2) In order to determine whether the first fee waiver requirement is met—i.e., that disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government—the Office shall consider the following four factors in sequence:

(i) The subject of the request: Whether the subject of the requested records concerns “the operations or activities of the government.”

(ii) The informative value of the information to be disclosed: Whether the disclosure is “likely to contribute” to an understanding of government operations or activities.

(iii) The contribution to an understanding of the subject by the public likely to result from disclosures: Whether disclosure of the requested information will contribute to “public understanding.”

(iv) The significance of the contribution to public understanding: Whether the disclosure is likely to contribute “significantly” to public understanding of government operations or activities.

(3) In order to determine whether the second fee waiver requirement is met—i.e., that disclosure of the requested information is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester—the Office shall consider the following two factors in sequence:

(i) The existence and magnitude of a commercial interest: Whether the requester has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the requested disclosure.

(ii) The primary interest in disclosure: Whether the magnitude of the identified commercial interest of the requester is sufficiently large, in comparison with the public interest in disclosure, that disclosure is “primarily in the commercial interest of the requester.”

(4) Where only a portion of the requested records satisfies both of the requirements for a waiver or reduction of fees under this paragraph, a waiver or reduction shall be granted only as to that portion.

(e) Notice of anticipated fees in excess of $25.00. Where the Office determines or estimates that the fees to be assessed under this section may amount to more than $25.00, the Office shall notify the requester as soon as practicable of the actual or estimated amount of the fees, unless the requester has indicated in advance his willingness to pay fees as high as those anticipated. (If only a portion of the fee can be estimated readily, the Office shall advise the requester that the estimated fee may be only a portion of the total fee.) In cases where a requester has been notified that actual or estimated fees may amount to more than $25.00, the requests will be deemed not to have been received until the requester has agreed to pay the anticipated total fee. A notice to a requester pursuant to this paragraph shall offer him the opportunity to confer with Copyright Office personnel in order to reformulate his request to meet his needs at a lower cost.

(f) Aggregation of requests. Where the Office reasonably believes that a requester or a group of requesters acting in concert is attempting to divide a request into a series of requests for the purpose of evading the assessment of fees, the Office may aggregate any such requests and charge accordingly.

(g) Advance payments. (1) Where the Office estimates that a total fee to be assessed under this section is likely to exceed $250.00, it may require the requester to make an advance payment of an amount up to the entire estimated fee before beginning to process the request, except where it receives a satisfactory assurance of full payment from a requester with a history of prompt payment.

(2) Where a requester has previously failed to pay a records access fee within 30 days of the date of billing, the Office may require the requester to pay
the full amount owed, plus any applicable interest (as provided for in paragraph (h) of this section), and to make an advance payment of the full amount of any estimated fee before the Office begins to process a new request or continues to process a pending request from that requester.

(3) For requests other than those described in paragraphs (g)(1) and (g)(2) of this section, the Office shall not require the requester to make an advance payment, i.e., a payment made before work is commenced or continued on a request. Payment owed for work already completed is not an advance payment.

(h) Charging interest. The Office may assess interest charges on an unpaid bill starting on the 31st day following the day on which the bill was sent to the requester. Once a fee payment has been received by a component of the Office, even if not processed, the accrual of interest shall be stayed. Interest charges shall be assessed at the rate prescribed in section 3717 of Title 31 U.S.C. and shall accrue from the date of billing.


PART 204—PRIVACY ACT: POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

Sec. 204.1 Purposes and scope.
204.2 Definitions.
204.3 General policy.
204.4 Procedure for notification of the existence of records pertaining to individuals.
204.5 Procedures for requesting access to records.
204.6 Fees.
204.7 Request for correction or amendment of records.
204.8 Appeal of refusal to correct or amend an individual's record.
204.9 Judicial review.


Source: 43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

§ 204.1 Purposes and scope.

The purposes of these regulations are:

(a) The establishment of procedures by which an individual can determine if the Copyright Office maintains a system of records in which there is a record pertaining to the individual; and

(b) The establishment of procedures by which an individual may gain access to a record or information maintained on that individual and have such record or information disclosed for the purpose of review, copying, correction, or amendment.

§ 204.2 Definitions.

For purposes of this part:

(a) The term individual means a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence;

(b) The term maintain includes maintain, collect, use, or disseminate;

(c) The term record means any item, collection, or grouping of information about an individual that is maintained by an agency, including, but not limited to, his education, financial transactions, medical history, and criminal or employment history, and that contains his or her name, or the identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the individual, such as a finger or voice print or a photograph;

(d) The term system of records means a group of any records under the control of any agency from which information is retrieved by the name of the individual; and

(e) The term routine use means, with respect to the disclosure of a record, the use of such record for a purpose which is compatible with the purpose for which it was collected.

§ 204.3 General policy.

The Copyright Office serves primarily as an office of public record. Section 705 of title 17, United States Code, requires the Copyright Office to open for public inspection all records of copyright deposits, registrations, recordations, and other actions taken under title 17. Therefore, a routine use of all Copyright Office systems of records created under section 705 of title 17 is disclosure to the public. All Copyright Office systems of records created under section 705 of title 17 are
§ 204.4 Procedure for notification of the existence of records pertaining to individuals.

(a) The Copyright Office will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER, upon the establishment or revision of the system of records, notices of all Copyright Office systems of records subject to the Privacy Act, as provided by 5 U.S.C., section 552a(e)(4). Individuals desiring to know if a Copyright Office system of records contains a record pertaining to them should submit a written request to that effect either by mail to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information Section, Copyright GC/A&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays at Room LM-401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC.

(b) The written request should identify clearly the system of records which is the subject of inquiry, by reference, whenever possible, to the system number and title as given in the notices of systems of records in the FEDERAL REGISTER. Both the written request and the envelope carrying it should be plainly marked “Privacy Act Request.” Failure to so mark the request may delay the Office response.

(c) The Office will acknowledge all properly marked requests made by individuals wishing to gain access to view or copy their records or any information pertaining to the individual, within a reasonable time. The Office will acknowledge in writing an individual’s request to amend a record pertaining to him or her within ten business days.

(d) Since all Copyright Office Records created under section 705 of title 17 are open to public inspection, no identity verification is necessary for individuals who wish to know whether a system of records created under section 705 pertains to them.


§ 204.5 Procedures for requesting access to records.

(a) Individuals desiring to obtain access to Copyright Office information pertaining to them in a system of records other than those created under section 705 of title 17 should make a written request, signed by themselves or their duly authorized agent, to that effect either by mail to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information Section, Copyright GC/A&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays at Room LM-401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC.

(b) The written request should identify clearly the system of records which is the subject of inquiry, by reference, whenever possible, to the system number and title as given in the notices of systems of records in the FEDERAL REGISTER. Both the written request and the envelope carrying it should be plainly marked “Privacy Act Request.” Failure to so mark the request may delay the Office response.

(c) The Office will acknowledge all properly marked requests within 20 working days of receipt; and will notify the requester within 30 working days of receipt when and where access to the record will be granted. If the individual
requested a copy of the record, the copy will accompany such notification.

§ 204.6 Fees.
(a) The Copyright Office will provide, free of charge, one copy to an individual of any record pertaining to that individual contained in a Copyright Office system of records, except where the request is for a copy of a record for which a specific fee is required and identified in § 201.3 of this chapter, in which case that fee shall be charged. For additional copies of records not covered by section 708 the fee will be a minimum of $15.00 for up to 15 pages and $.50 per page over 15. The Office will require prepayment of fees estimated to exceed $25.00 and will remit any excess paid or bill an additional amount according to the differences between the final fee charged and the amount prepaid. When prepayment is required, a request is not deemed “received” until prepayment has been made.
(b) The Copyright Office may waive the fee requirement whenever it determines that such waiver would be in the public interest.

§ 204.7 Request for correction or amendment of records.
(a) Any individual may request the correction or amendment of a record pertaining to her or him. With respect to an error in a copyright registration, the procedure for correction and fee chargeable is governed by section 408(d) of title 17 of the United States Code, and the regulations issued as authorized by that section. With respect to other requests for correction or amendment of records, the Office will respond within ten working days indicating to the requester that the requested correction or amendment has been made or that it has been refused. If the requested correction or amendment is refused, the Office response will indicate the reason for the refusal and the procedure available to the individual to appeal the refusal.

§ 204.8 Appeal of refusal to correct or amend an individual’s record.
(a) An individual who disagrees with a refusal of the Copyright Office to amend his or her record may request a review of the denial. The decision will be made within 30 business days, unless the Office can demonstrate good cause for extending the 30 day period. If the requestor is dissatisfied with the agency’s final determination, the individual may bring a civil action against the Office in the appropriate United States district court. appeal the refusal to correct or amend a record pertaining to the individual. The individual should submit a written appeal to the General Counsel, Copyright Office, Copyright GC/A&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024. Appeals, and the envelopes carrying them, should be plainly marked “Privacy Act Appeal”. Failure to so mark the appeal may delay the Copyright Office General Counsel’s response. An appeal should contain a copy of the request for amendment or correction and a copy of the record alleged to be untimely, inaccurate, incomplete or irrelevant.
(b) The General Counsel will issue a written decision granting or denying the appeal within 30 working days after receipt of the appeal unless, after showing good cause, the General Counsel extends the 30 day period. If the appeal is granted, the requested amendment or correction will be made promptly. If the appeal is denied, in whole or part, the General Counsel’s decision will set forth reasons for the denial. Additionally, the decision will advise the requester that he or she has the right to file with the Copyright Office a concise statement of his or her reasons for disagreeing with the refusal to amend the record and that such statement will be attached to the requester’s record and included in any future disclosure of such record.


§ 204.9 Judicial review.

Within two years of the receipt of a final adverse administrative determination, an individual may seek judicial review of that determination as provided in 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(1).

PART 211—MASK WORK PROTECTION

Sec.
211.1 General provisions.
211.2 Recordation of documents pertaining to mask works.
211.3 Mask work fees.
211.4 Registration of claims of protection in mask works.
211.5 Deposit of identifying material.
211.6 Methods of affixation and placement of mask work notice.


SOURCE: 50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

§ 211.1 General provisions.


(b) Section 201.2 of this chapter relating to the information given by the Copyright Office, and parts 203 and 204 of this chapter pertaining to the Freedom of Information Act and Privacy Act, shall apply, where appropriate, to the administration by the Copyright Office of the Semiconductor Chip Protection Act of 1984, Pub. L. 98–620.

(c) For purposes of this part, the terms semiconductor chip product, mask work, fixed, commercially exploited, and owner, shall have the meanings set forth in section 901 of title 17 U.S.C.

§ 211.2 Recordation of documents pertaining to mask works.

The conditions prescribed in §201.4 of this chapter for recordation of transfers of copyright ownership and other documents pertaining to copyright are applicable to the recordation of documents pertaining to mask works under section 903 of Title 17 U.S.C.

§ 211.3 Mask work fees.

(a) Section 201.3 of this chapter prescribes the fees or charges established by the Register of Copyrights for services relating to mask works.

(b) Section 201.6 of this chapter on the payment and refund of Copyright Office fees shall apply to mask work fees.


§ 211.4 Registration of claims of protection in mask works.

(a) General. This section prescribes conditions for the registration of claims of protection in mask works pursuant to section 908 of Title 17 U.S.C.

(b) Application for registration. (1) For purposes of registration of mask work claims, the Register of Copyrights has designated “Form MW” to be used for all applications submitted on and after January 7, 1985. Copies of the form are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, U.S. Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559. Applications submitted before January 7, 1985 will be dated January 7, 1985.

(2) An application for registration of a mask work claim may be submitted by the owner of the mask work, or the duly authorized agent of any such owner.

468
(i) The owner of a mask work includes a party that has obtained the transfer of all of the exclusive rights in the work, but does not include the transferee of less than all of the exclusive rights, or the licensee of all or less than all of these rights.

(ii) For purposes of eligibility to claim mask work protection pursuant to section 902(a)(1)(A) of 17 U.S.C., the owner of the mask work must be either the initial owner or a person who has obtained by transfer the totality of rights in the mask work under the Act.

(iii) An application for registration shall be submitted on Form MW prescribed by the Register under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, and shall be accompanied by the registration fee and deposit required under 17 U.S.C. 908 and §§ 211.3 and 211.5 of these regulations. The application shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions, and shall include a certification. The certification shall consist of:

(i) A declaration that the applicant is authorized to submit the application and that the statements made are correct to the best of that person’s knowledge; and

(ii) The handwritten signature of the applicant, accompanied by the typed or printed name of that person.

(c) One registration per mask work. (1) Subject to the exception specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, only one registration can generally be made for the same version of a mask work fixed in an intermediate or final form of any semiconductor chip product. However, where an applicant for registration alleges that an earlier registration for the same version of the work is unauthorized and legally invalid and submits for recordation a signed affidavit, a registration may be made in the applicant’s name.

(2) Notwithstanding the general rule permitting only one registration per work, owners of mask works in final forms of semiconductor chip products that are produced by adding metal-connection layers to unpersonalized gate arrays may separately register the entire unpersonalized gate array and the custom metallization layers. Applicants seeking to register separately the entire unpersonalized gate arrays or custom metallization layers should make the nature of their claim clear at Space 8 of application Form MW. For these purposes, an “unpersonalized gate array” is an intermediate form chip product that includes a plurality of circuit elements that are adaptable to be personalized into a plurality of different final form chip products, in which some of the circuit elements are, or will be, connected as gates.

(d) Registration as a single work. Subject to the exception specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, for purposes of registration on a single application and upon payment of a single fee, the following shall be considered a single work.

(1) In the case of a mask work that has not been commercially exploited:

All original mask work elements fixed in a particular form of a semiconductor chip product at the time an application for registration is filed and in which the owner or owners of the mask work is or are the same.

(2) In the case of a mask work that has been commercially exploited:

All original mask work elements fixed in a semiconductor chip product at the time that product was first commercially exploited and in which the owner or owners of the mask is or are the same.

(e) Registration in most complete form. Owners seeking registration of a mask work contribution must submit the entire original mask work contribution in its most complete form as fixed in a semiconductor chip product. The most complete form means the stage of the manufacturing process which is closest to completion. In cases where the owner is unable to register on the basis of the most complete form because he or she lacks control over the most complete form, an averment of this fact must be made at Space 2 of Form MW. Where such an averment is made, the owner may register on the basis of the most complete form in his or her possession. For applicants seeking to register an unpersonalized gate array or custom metallization layers under paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the most complete form is the entire chip on which the unpersonalized gate array or custom metallization layers reside(s), and registration covers those
elements of the chip in which work protection is asserted.

(f) Section 914 Orders. (1) For purposes of this section, the terms Commissioner and Order shall have the meaning given them in the Guidelines for the Submission of Applications for Interim Protection of Mask Works Under 17 U.S.C. 914 (49 F.R. 44517; Nov. 7, 1984) as follows:

(i) Commissioner means the Assistant Secretary of Commerce and Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(ii) Order means an action by the Commissioner issuing or terminating an Order extending to foreign nationals, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities the privilege of making interim registrations for mask works pursuant to Chapter 9 of title 17, U.S.C.

(2) In the case of a mask work which is eligible for registration only after issuance of an Order of the Commissioner pursuant to section 914, 17 U.S.C., applications for registration under section 908 may be submitted, along with the proper identifying material and fee, if a request for issuance of an Order has been made in accordance with the Guidelines. The Copyright Office will process and examine the claims, but will not issue a certificate of registration unless and until an Order is issued pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 914.

(3) The effective date of any registration premised on a section 914, 17 U.S.C. Order shall not be earlier than the effective date of the Order.

(4) Registration premised on a section 914, 17 U.S.C. Order will be refused unless the Order is given an effective date before, and the proper application, deposit of identifying material, and fee are received in the Copyright Office before:

(i) July 1, 1985, in the case of mask works first commercially exploited between July 1, 1983, and November 8, 1984; or

(ii) The expiration of two years following first commercial exploitation, in the case of a mask work commercially exploited on or after November 8, 1984.

(5) Subject to paragraph (e)(4) of this section, registration of a claim premised on a section 914, 17 U.S.C. Order will be made even after the termination or expiration of an Order, provided that a proper application, deposit of identifying material, and fee are received in the Copyright Office while the Order is in effect, and the claim is otherwise entitled to registration under chapter 9 of title 17 U.S.C.

(g) Corrections and amplifications of prior registration. Except for errors or omissions made by the Copyright Office, no corrections or amplifications can be made to the information contained in the record of a completed registration after the effective date of the registration. A document purporting to correct or amplify the information in a completed registration may be recorded in the Copyright Office for whatever effect a court of competent jurisdiction may later give to it, if the document is signed by the owner of the mask work, as identified in the registration record, or by a duly authorized agent of the owner.

§ 211.5 Deposit of identifying material.

(a) General. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of identifying material for registration of a claim of protection in a mask work under section 908 of title 17 U.S.C.

(b) Nature of required deposit. Subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this section, the deposit of identifying material to accompany an application for registration of a mask work claim under §211.4 of these regulations shall consist of:

(1) In the case of a commercially exploited mask work, four reproductions of the mask work fixed in the form of the semiconductor chip product in which it was first commercially exploited. Defective chips may be deposited under this section provided that the mask work contribution would be revealed in reverse dissection of the chips. The four reproductions shall be accompanied by a visually perceptible representation of each layer of the mask work consisting of:

(i) Sets of plastic color overlay sheets;

(ii) Drawings or plots in composite form on a single sheet or on separate sheets; or
(iii) A photograph of each layer of the work fixed in a semiconductor chip product.

The visually perceptible representation of a mask work deposited under this section shall be reproduced on material which can be readily stored in an 8½ x 11 inch format, and shall be reproduced at a magnification sufficient to reveal the basic circuitry design of the mask work and which shall in all cases be at least 20 times magnification.

(2) In the case of a mask work that has not been commercially exploited, one of the following:

(i) Where the mask work contribution in which registration is sought represents twenty percent or more of the area of the intended final form, a visually perceptible representation of the work in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) (i) or (ii) of this section. In addition to the deposit of visually perceptible representations of the work, an applicant may, at his or her option, deposit four reproductions in the most complete form of the mask work as fixed in a semiconductor chip product.

(ii) Where the mask work contribution in which registration is sought represents less than twenty percent of the area of the intended final form, a visually perceptible representation of the work which reveals the totality of the mask work contribution to a person trained in the state of the art. The visually perceptible representations may consist of any combination of plastic color overlay sheets, drawing or plots in composite form, or a photograph or photographs of the entire mask set. If the visually perceptible representation fails to identify all of the elements of the mask work contribution, they may be accompanied by additional explanatory material. The visually perceptible representation of a mask work deposited under this section shall be reproduced on material which can be readily stored in an 8½ x 11 inch format and shall be of sufficient magnification and completeness to reveal all elements of the mask work contribution. In addition to the deposit of visually perceptible representations of the work, an applicant may, at his or her option, deposit four reproductions in the most complete form of the mask work as fixed in a semiconductor chip product.

(c) Trade secret protection. Where specific layers of a mask work fixed in a semiconductor chip product contain information in which trade secret protection is asserted, certain material may be withheld as follows:

(1) Mask works commercially exploited. For commercially exploited mask works no more than two layers of each five or more layers in the work. In lieu of the visually perceptible representations required under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, identifying portions of the withheld material must be submitted. For these purposes, identifying portions shall mean (i) a printout of the mask work design data pertaining to each withheld layer, reproduced in microform, or (ii) visibly perceptible representations in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) (i), (ii), or (iii) of this section with those portions containing sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy blocked out, provided that the portions remaining are greater than those which are blocked out.

(2) Mask work not commercially exploited. For mask works not commercially exploited falling under paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, any layer may be withheld. In lieu of the visually perceptible representations required under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, “identifying portions” shall mean (i) a printout of the mask work design data pertaining to each withheld layer, reproduced in microform, in which sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy has been blocked out or stripped, or (ii) visually perceptible representations in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section with those portions containing sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy blocked out, provided that the portions remaining are greater than those which are blocked out. The identifying portions shall be accompanied by a single photograph of the top or other visible layers of the mask work fixed in a semiconductor chip product in which the sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy has been blocked out, provided that the blocked
§ 211.6 Methods of affixation and placement of mask work notice.

(a) General. (1) This section specifies methods of affixation and placement of the mask work notice that will satisfy the notice requirement in section 909 of title 17 U.S.C. A notice deemed “acceptable” under this regulation shall be considered to satisfy the requirement of that section that it be affixed “in such manner and location as to give reasonable notice” of protection. As provided in that section, the examples specified in this regulation shall not be considered exhaustive of the methods of affixation and positions giving reasonable notice of the claim of protection in a mask work.

(b) Elements of a mask work notice. The elements of a mask work notice shall consist of:

(1) The words mask work, the symbol “M” or the symbol “Ä” (the letter M in a circle); and

(2) The name of the owner or owners of the mask work or an abbreviation by which the name is recognized or is generally known.

(c) Methods of affixation and placement of the notice. In the case of a mask work fixed in a semiconductor chip product, the following locations are acceptable:

(1) A gummed or other label securely affixed or imprinted upon the package or other container used as a permanent receptacle for the product; or

(2) A notice imprinted or otherwise affixed in or on the top or other visible layer of the product.

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995]

PART 212—PROTECTION OF VESSEL HULL DESIGNS

Sec.
212.1 Scope.
212.2 Fees.
212.3 Registration of claims for protection of eligible designs.
212.4 Affixation and placement of design notice.
212.5 Recordation of distinctive identification of vessel hull designer.
212.6 Recordation of transfers and other documents.

SOURCE: 64 FR 36578, July 7, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

§ 212.1 Scope.

The provisions of this part apply to the protection and registration of original designs of vessel hulls under chapter 13 of title 17, United States Code. Design protection and registration under this part are separate from copyright protection and registration. Copyright registration is governed by the provisions of part 202 of this subchapter.
§ 212.2 Fees.

The following fees or charges are established by the Register of Copyrights for services related to designs:

(a) For filing an application for registration of one design: $75;
(b) For filing an application for registration of more than one design: $75, plus $75 for each design beyond the first;
(c) For each page of deposit material identifying the design beyond the third page: $20;
(d)(1) For special handling of an application for registration of a design: $500;
(2) For special handling of each additional design in an application for registration of multiple designs: $50;
(e) For corrections or omissions in the certificate of registration: $65;
(f) For recording of a distinctive identification of an owner: $50;
(g) For providing an additional certificate of registration: $25;
(h) For providing any other certification of Copyright Office records: $65 per hour;
(i) For preparing a search report: $65 per hour;
(j) For expediting a request for certification or search of Office records, the appropriate fees set out in § 201.3(d).

§ 212.3 Registration of claims for protection of eligible designs.

(a) Limitations. Protection is not available for, and an application for registration will not be accepted for:

(1) An otherwise eligible design made public prior to October 28, 1998;
(2) An otherwise eligible design made public on a date more than two years prior to the filing of an application for registration under this section;

(b) Required elements of application. An application is considered filed with the Copyright Office on the date on which the following three items have been received by the Copyright Office:

(1) Completed Form D-VH;
(2) Deposit material identifying the design or designs for which registration is sought; and
(3) The appropriate fee.

(c) Application by owner of design. An application for registration under this section may be made only by the owner or owners of the design, or by the duly authorized agent or representative of the owner or owners of the design.

(d) Application form. Registration must be made on Form D-VH. Forms are available from the Copyright Office and may be reprinted from the Copyright Office’s website (http://www.loc.gov/copyright/forms/formdvh.pdf).

(e) Deposit material.—(1) In General. Identification of the design to be registered may be made in the form of drawings or photographs. No more than two drawings or photographs of the design may appear on a single sheet. Applicants may submit up to three 8½ × 11″ sheets containing drawings or photographs as part of the basic $75 application fee. The fee for each additional sheet beyond three is $20 per sheet. No combinations of drawings and photographs may be submitted on a single sheet. The drawings or photographs that accompany the application must reveal those aspects of the design for which protection is claimed. The registration extends only to those aspects of the design which are adequately shown in the drawings or photographs.

(2) Views. The drawings or photographs submitted should contain a sufficient number of views to make an adequate disclosure of the appearance of the design, i.e. front, rear, right and left sides, top and bottom. While not required, it is suggested that perspective views be submitted to show clearly the appearance and shape of the three dimensional designs.

(3) Drawings. (i) Drawings must be in black ink on white 8½ × 11″ unruled paper. A drawing of a design should include appropriate surface shading which shows clearly the character and contour of all surfaces of any 3-dimensional aspects of the design. Surface shading is also necessary to distinguish between any open and solid areas of the design. Solid black surface shading is not permitted except when used to represent the black color as well as color contrast.

(ii) The use of broken lines in drawings depicting the design is understood to be for illustrative purposes only and forms no part of the claimed design.
Structure that is not part of the design, but that is considered necessary to show the environment in which the design is used, may be represented in the drawing by broken lines. This includes any portion of the vessel hull in which the design is embodied or applied that is not considered part of the design. When the claimed design is only surface ornamentation to the vessel hull, the vessel hull in which it is embodied must be shown in broken lines.

(iii) When broken lines are used, they should not intrude upon or cross the depiction of the design and should not be of heavier weight than the lines used in depicting the design. Where a broken line showing of environmental structure must necessarily cross or intrude upon the representation of the design and obscure the clear understanding of the design, such an illustration should be included as a separate figure, in addition to other figures which fully disclose the subject matter of the design.

(4) Photographs. High quality black and white or color photographs will be accepted provided that they are mounted on plain white 8½” × 11” unlined paper and do not exceed two photographs per sheet. Photographs must be developed on double weight photographic paper and must be of sufficient quality so that all the details of the design are plainly visible and are capable of reproduction on the registration certificate, if issued.

(f) Multiple claims.—(1) In general. Claims for more than one design may be filed in one of two ways. If multiple designs are contained on a single make and model of a vessel hull (and therefore, the information in Space 1 of Form D-VH—the make and model of the vessel that embodies the design—is the same for each of the designs), a single application form may be used for all designs, provided that the information in spaces 3 through 9 is the same for each of the designs. If multiple designs are contained on more than one make and model of a vessel, or the information in spaces 3 through 9 is not the same for each of the multiple designs, then separate applications must be used for each design.

(2) Single application. Where a single application for multiple designs is appropriate, a separate Form D-VH/CON must be used for each design beyond the first appearing on Form D-VH. Each Form D-VH/CON must be accompanied by deposit material identifying the design that is the subject of the Form D-VH/CON, and the deposit material must be attached to the Form D-VH/CON. The Form D-VH and all the Form D-VH/CONS for the single application must be submitted together.

(3) Multiple applications. Where multiple applications for more than one design are required, a Form D-VH must be completed for each design. Deposit material identifying the design must accompany each application. Multiple applications may be filed separately.

(4) Fees. The $75 basic application fee applies to each design submitted, regardless of whether a single application or multiple applications are used.

(g) Written declaration. In lieu of the oath required by 17 U.S.C. 1312(a), the application shall contain a written declaration, as permitted by 17 U.S.C. 1312(b), signed by the applicant, or the applicant’s duly authorized agent or representative. If the design has been made public with the design notice prescribed in 17 U.S.C. 1306, the written declaration shall also describe the exact form and position of the design notice. The written declaration shall read as follows:

The undersigned, as the applicant or the applicant’s duly appointed agent or representative, being hereby warned that willful false statements are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of this application or any resulting registration, hereby declares to the best of his/her knowledge and belief:

(1) That the design has been fixed in a useful article;
(2) That the design is original and was created by the designer(s), or employer if applicable, named in the application;
(3) That those aspects of the design for which registration is sought are not protected by a design patent;
(4) That the design has not previously been registered on behalf of the applicant or the applicant’s predecessor in title; and
(5) That the applicant is the person entitled to protection and to registration under chapter 13 of title 17, United States Code.
(h) Priority claims. An applicant seeking the benefit of 17 U.S.C. 1311 because the applicant has, within the previous 6 months, filed an application for protection of the same design in a foreign country, must provide:

1. Identification of the filing date of the foreign application;
2. Identification of the foreign country in which the application was filed;
3. The serial number or any other identifying number of the foreign application;
4. A certified copy of the foreign application;
5. A translation of the foreign application and a statement, signed by the translator, that the translation is accurate, if the foreign application is in a language other than English; and
6. If requested by the Copyright Office, proof that the foreign country in which the prior application was filed extends to designs of owners who are citizens of the United States, or to applications filed under chapter 13 of title 17, United States Code, similar protection to that provided under chapter 13 of title 17, United States Code.

(i) Effective date of registration. The effective date of registration is the date of publication of the registration by the Copyright Office.

(j) Publication of registration. Publication of registrations of vessel hull designs shall be made on the Copyright Office website (http://www.loc.gov/copyright/vessels).

§ 212.4 Affixation and placement of design notice.

(a) General. (1) This section specifies the methods of affixation and placement of the design notice required by 17 U.S.C. 1306. Sections 1306 and 1307 govern the circumstances under which a design notice must be used and the effect of omission of a design notice. A notice deemed acceptable under this part shall be considered to satisfy the requirements of section 1306 that it be so located and applied as to give reasonable notice of design protection while the useful article embodying the design is passing through its normal channels of commerce. As provided in that section, the examples specified in this part shall not be considered exhaustive of the methods of affixation and locations giving reasonable notice of the claim of protection in the design.

(2) The acceptability of a design notice under these regulations shall depend upon its being legible under normal conditions of use, and affixed in such a manner and position that, when affixed, it may be viewed upon reasonable examination. There is no requirement that a design notice be permanently embossed or engraved into a vessel hull or deck, but it should be affixed in such a manner that, under normal conditions of use, it is not likely to become unattached or illegible.

(b) Elements of a design notice. If the design has been registered, the registration number may be included in the design notice in place of the year of the date on which protection for the design commenced and the name of the owner, an abbreviation by which the name can be recognized, or a generally accepted alternative designation of the owner. The elements of a design notice shall consist of:

1. The words “Protected Design”, the abbreviation “Prot’d Des.”, or the letter “D” within a circle, or the symbol *D*;
2. The year of the date on which protection for the design commenced; and
3. The name of the owner, an abbreviation by which the name can be recognized, or a generally accepted alternative designation of the owner.

(c) Distinctive identification. Any distinctive identification of an owner may be used for purposes of paragraph (b)(3) of this section if it has been recorded by the Register of Copyrights pursuant to §212.5 before the design marked with such identification is registered.

(d) Acceptable locations of notice. The following are acceptable means of affixing and placement of a design notice:

1. In close proximity to the hull identification number required by 33 CFR 181.23;
2. In close proximity to the driver’s console such that it is in plain view from the console;
3. If the vessel is twenty feet in length or less and is governed by 33 CFR 183.21, in close proximity to the capacity marking; and
§ 212.5 Recordation of distinctive identification of vessel hull designer.

(a) General. Any owner of a vessel hull may record a distinctive identification with the Register of Copyrights for purposes of using such distinctive identification in a design protection notice required by 17 U.S.C. 1306. A distinctive identification of an owner may not be used in a design notice before it has first been recorded with the Register.

(b) Forms. The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording distinctive identifications of ownership of a vessel hull. However, persons recording distinctive identifications are encouraged to use the suggested format available on the Copyright Office website (http://www.loc.gov/copyright/vessels).

(c) Recording distinctive identifications. Any distinctive identification of an owner of a vessel hull may be recorded with the Register of Copyrights provided that a document containing the following is submitted:

- The name and address of the owner;
- A statement of the owner that he/she is entitled to use the distinctive identification;
- A statement or depiction of the identification; and
- A recordation fee of $50.

(d) The document should be mailed to: Dept. D-VH, Vessel Hull Registration, P.O. Box 71380, Washington, DC 20024-1380.

§ 212.6 Recordation of transfers and other documents.

The conditions prescribed in § 201.4 of this chapter for recordation of transfers of copyright ownership and other documents pertaining to copyright are applicable to the recordation of documents pertaining to design protection of vessel hulls under 17 U.S.C. chapter 13.
PART 251—COPYRIGHT ARBITRATION ROYALTY PANEL RULES OF PROCEDURE

Subpart A—Organization

§ 251.1 Official addresses.

Subpart B—Public Access to Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel Meetings

§ 251.11 Open meetings.
§ 251.12 Conduct of open meetings.
§ 251.13 Closed meetings.
§ 251.14 Procedure for closed meetings.
§ 251.15 Transcripts of closed meetings.
§ 251.16 Requests to open or close meetings.

Subpart C—Public Access to and Inspection of Records

§ 251.21 Public records.
§ 251.22 Public access.
§ 251.23 FOIA and Privacy Act.

Subpart D—Standards of Conduct

§ 251.30 Basic obligations of arbitrators.
§ 251.31 Financial interests.
§ 251.32 Financial disclosure statement.
§ 251.33 Ex parte communications.
§ 251.34 Gifts and other things of monetary value.
§ 251.35 Outside employment and other activities.
§ 251.36 Pre-arbitration and post-arbitration employment restrictions.
§ 251.37 Use of nonpublic information.
§ 251.38 Billing and commitment to standards.
§ 251.39 Remedies.

Subpart E—Procedures of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels

§ 251.40 Scope.
§ 251.41 Formal hearings.
§ 251.42 Suspension or waiver of rules.
§ 251.43 Written cases.
§ 251.44 Filing and service of written cases and pleadings.
§ 251.45 Discovery and prehearing motions.
§ 251.46 Conduct of hearings: Role of arbitrators.
§ 251.47 Conduct of hearings: Witnesses and counsel.
§ 251.48 Rules of evidence.
§ 251.49 Transcript and record.
§ 251.50 Rulings and orders.
§ 251.51 Closing the record.
§ 251.52 Proposed findings and conclusions.
§ 251.53 Report to the Librarian of Congress.
§ 251.54 Assessment of costs of arbitration panels.
§ 251.55 Post-panel motions.
§ 251.56 Order of the Librarian of Congress.
§ 251.57 Effective date of order.
§ 251.58 Judicial review.

Subpart F—Rate Adjustment Proceedings

§ 251.60 Scope.
§ 251.61 Commencement of adjustment proceedings.
§ 251.62 Content of petition.
§ 251.63 Consideration of petition; settlements.
§ 251.64 Disposition of petition; initiation of arbitration proceeding.
§ 251.65 Deduction of costs of rate adjustment proceedings.

Subpart G—Royalty Fee Distribution Proceedings

§ 251.70 Scope.
§ 251.71 Commencement of proceedings.
§ 251.72 Declaration of controversy: Initiation of arbitration proceeding.
§ 251.73 Deduction of costs of distribution proceedings.


Source: 59 FR 23901, May 9, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—Organization

§ 251.1 Official addresses.

Claims, pleadings, and general correspondence should be addressed to:
§ 251.2 Purpose of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

The Librarian of Congress, upon the recommendation of the Register of Copyrights, may appoint and convene a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP) for the following purposes:

(a) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for the cable compulsory license, 17 U.S.C. 111;

(b) To make determinations concerning royalty rates and terms for making ephemeral recordings, 17 U.S.C. 112(e);

(c) To make determinations concerning royalty rates and terms for the public performance of sound recordings by certain digital audio transmissions, 17 U.S.C. 114;

(d) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for making and distributing phonorecords, and royalty rates and terms for digital transmissions that constitute digital phonorecord deliveries, 17 U.S.C. 115;

(e) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes) whenever a negotiated license expires or is terminated and is not replaced by another such license agreement, 17 U.S.C. 116;

(f) To make determinations concerning royalty rates and terms for the use by noncommercial educational broadcast stations for certain copyrighted works, 17 U.S.C. 118;

(g) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for the satellite carrier compulsory license, 17 U.S.C. 119; and

(h) To make determinations concerning the distribution of cable and satellite carrier royalty fees and digital audio recording devices and media payments deposited with the Register of Copyrights, 17 U.S.C. 111, 119, and chapter 10, respectively.

§ 251.3 Arbitrator lists.

(a) Any professional arbitration association or organization may submit before January 1, 1998, and every two years thereafter, a list of persons qualified to serve as arbitrators on a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel. The list shall contain the following for each person:

(1) The full name, address, and telephone number of the person.

(2) The current position and name of the person’s employer, if any, along with a brief summary of the person’s employment history, including areas of expertise, and, if available, a description of the general nature of clients represented and the types of proceedings in which the person represented clients.

(3) A brief description of the educational background of the person, including teaching positions and membership in professional associations, if any.

(4) A statement of the facts and information which qualify the person to serve as an arbitrator under § 251.5.

(5) A description or schedule detailing fees proposed to be charged by the person for service on a CARP.

(6) Any other information which the professional arbitration association or organization may consider relevant.

(b) After January 1, 1998, and every two years thereafter, the Librarian of Congress shall publish in the Federal Register a list of at least 30, but not more than 75 persons, submitted to the Librarian from at least three professional arbitration associations or organizations. The persons so listed must satisfy the qualifications and requirements of this subchapter and can reasonably be expected to be available to serve as arbitrators on a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel during that calendar year. This list will constitute the “arbitrator list” referred to in this subchapter. With respect to persons on the arbitrator list, the Librarian will
Copyright Office, Library of Congress

§ 251.6 Composition and selection of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

(a) Within ten days after publication of a notice in the Federal Register initiating arbitration proceedings under this subchapter, the Librarian of Congress will, upon recommendation of the Register of Copyrights, select two arbitrators from the arbitrator list for that calendar year.

(b) The two arbitrators so selected shall, within ten days of their selection, choose a third arbitrator from the same arbitrator list. The third arbitrator shall serve as the chairperson of the panel during the course of the proceedings.

(c) If the two arbitrators fail to agree upon the selection of the third, the Librarian will promptly select the third arbitrator from the same arbitrator list.

(d) The third arbitrator so chosen shall serve as the chairperson of the panel during the course of the proceeding. In all matters, procedural or substantive, the chairperson shall act according to the majority wishes of the panel.

(e) Two arbitrators shall constitute a quorum necessary to the determination of any proceeding.

(f) If, before the commencement of hearings in a proceeding, one or more of the arbitrators is unable to continue service on the CARP, the Librarian will suspend the proceeding as provided by §251.8, and will inaugurate a procedure to bring the CARP up to the full complement of three arbitrators. Where one or two vacancies exist, and either or both of the vacant seats were previously occupied by arbitrators selected by the Librarian, the Librarian will select the necessary replacements from the current arbitrator list. If there is one vacancy, and it was previously occupied by the chairperson, the two remaining arbitrators shall select the replacement from the arbitrator list, and the person chosen shall serve as chairperson. If there are two vacant seats, and one of them was previously occupied by the chairperson, the Librarian will select one replacement from the arbitrator list, and that person shall join with the remaining arbitrator to choose the replacement, who shall serve as chairperson.

(g) After hearings have commenced, the Librarian will not suspend the proceedings or inaugurate a replacement procedure unless it is necessary in order for the CARP to have a quorum.
§ 251.7 Actions of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

Any action of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel requiring publication in the Federal Register according to 17 U.S.C. or the rules and regulations of this subchapter shall be published under the authority of the Librarian of Congress and the Register of Copyrights. Under no circumstances shall a CARP engage in rulemaking designed to amend, supplement, or supersede any of the rules and regulations of this subchapter, or seek to have any such action published in the Federal Register.

§ 251.8 Suspension of proceedings.

(a) Where it becomes necessary to replace a selected arbitrator under § 251.6 or to remove and replace a selected arbitrator under subpart D of this part, the Librarian will order a suspension of any ongoing hearing or other proceeding by notice in writing to all parties. Immediately after issuing the order of suspension, and without delay, the Librarian will take the necessary steps to replace the arbitrator or arbitrators, and upon such replacement will issue an order, by notice in writing to all parties, resuming the proceeding from the time and point at which it was suspended.

(b) Where, for any other reason, such as a serious medical or family emergency affecting an arbitrator, the Librarian considers a suspension of a proceeding necessary and fully justified, he may, with the unanimous written consent of all parties to the proceeding, order a suspension of the proceeding for a stated period not to exceed one month.

(c) Any suspension under this section shall result in a complete cessation of all aspects of the proceeding, including the running of any period provided by statute for the completion of the proceeding.

Subpart B—Public Access to Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel Meetings

§ 251.11 Open meetings.

(a) All meetings of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall be open to the public, with the exception of meetings that are listed in § 251.13.

(b) At the beginning of each proceeding, the CARP shall develop the original schedule of the proceeding which shall be published in the Federal Register at least seven calendar days in advance of the first meeting. Such announcement shall state the times, dates, and place of the meetings, the testimony to be heard, whether any of the meetings, or any portion of a meeting, is to be closed, and, if so, which ones, and the name and telephone number of the person to contact for further information.

(c) If changes are made to the original schedule, they will be announced in open meeting and issued as orders to the parties participating in the proceeding, and the changes will be noted in the docket file of the proceeding.

In addition, the contact person for the proceeding shall make any additional efforts to publicize the change as are practicable.

(d) If it is decided that the publication of the original schedule must be made on shorter notice than seven days, that decision must be made by a
§ 251.12 Conduct of open meetings.
Meetings of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel will be conducted in a manner to ensure the greatest degree of openness possible. Reasonable access for the public will be provided at all public sessions. Any person may take photographs, and make audio or video recordings of the proceedings, so long as the panel is informed in advance. The chairperson has the discretion to regulate the time, place, and manner of the taking of photographs or the audio or video recording of the proceedings to ensure the order and decorum of the proceedings. The right of the public to be present does not include the right to participate or make comments.

§ 251.13 Closed meetings.
In the following circumstances, a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel may close meetings, or any portion of a meeting, or withhold information from the public:
(a) If the matter to be discussed has been specifically authorized to be kept secret by Executive Order, in the interests of national defense or foreign policy; or
(b) If the matter relates solely to the internal practices of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel; or
(c) If the matter has been specifically exempted from disclosure by statute (other than 5 U.S.C. 552) and there is no discretion on the issue; or
(d) If the matter involves privileged or confidential trade secrets or financial information; or
(e) If the result might be to accuse any person of a crime or formally censure him or her; or
(f) If there would be a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy; or
(g) If there would be disclosure of investigatory records compiled for law enforcement, or information that if written would be contained in such records, and to the extent disclosure would:
(1) Interfere with enforcement proceedings; or
(2) Deprive a person of the right to a fair trial or impartial adjudication; or
(3) Constitute an unwarranted invasion of personal privacy; or
(4) Disclose the identity of a confidential source or, in the case of a criminal investigation or a national security intelligence investigation, disclose confidential information furnished only by a confidential source; or
(5) Disclose investigative techniques and procedures; or
(h) If premature disclosure of the information would frustrate a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel's action, unless the panel has already disclosed the concept or nature of the proposed action, or is required by law to make disclosure before taking final action; or
(i) If the matter concerns a CARP's participation in a civil action or proceeding or in an action in a foreign court or international tribunal, or an arbitration, or a particular case of formal agency adjudication pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 554, or otherwise involving a determination on the record after opportunity for a hearing; or
(j) If a motion or objection has been raised in an open meeting and the panel determines that it is in the best interests of the proceeding to deliberate on such motion or objection in closed session.

§ 251.14 Procedure for closed meetings.
(a) Meetings may be closed, or information withheld from the public, only by a recorded vote of a majority of arbitrators of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel. Each question, whether to close a meeting or to withhold information, must be voted on separately, except in the case of a series of meetings that are involved, in which case the CARP may vote to keep the discussions closed for 30 days, starting from the first meetings. If the CARP feels that information about a closed meeting must be withheld, the decision to do so must also be the subject of a recorded vote.
(b) Before a discussion to close a meeting or withhold information, the
§ 251.15 Transcripts of closed meetings.

(a) All meetings closed to the public shall be subject either to a complete transcript or, in the case of § 251.13(h) and at the discretion of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, detailed minutes. Detailed minutes shall describe all matters discussed, identify all documents considered, summarize action taken as well as the reasons for it, and record all roll call votes as well as any views expressed.

(b) Such transcripts or minutes shall be kept by the Copyright Office for at least two years, or for at least one year after the conclusion of the proceedings, whichever is later. Any portion of transcripts of meetings which the chairperson of a CARP does not feel is exempt from disclosure under § 251.13 will ordinarily be available to the public within 20 working days of the meeting. Transcripts or minutes of closed meetings will be reviewed by the chairperson at the end of the proceedings of the panel and, if at that time the chairperson determines that they should be disclosed, he or she will resubmit the question to the CARP to gain authorization for their disclosure.

§ 251.16 Requests to open or close meetings.

(a) Any person may request a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel to open or close a meeting or disclose or withhold information. Such request must be captioned “Request to Open” or “Request to Close” a meeting on a specified date concerning a specific subject. The person making the request must state his or her reasons, and include his or her name, address, and telephone number.

(b) In the case of a request to open a meeting that a CARP has previously voted closed, the panel must receive the request within 3 working days of the meeting’s announcement. Otherwise the request will not be heeded, and the person making the request will be so notified. An original and three copies of the request must be submitted.

(c) For a CARP to act on a request to open or close a meeting, the question must be brought to a vote before the panel. If the request is granted, an amended meeting announcement will be issued and the person making the request notified. If a vote is not taken, or if after a vote the request is denied, said person will also be notified promptly.

Subpart C—Public Access to and Inspection of Records

§ 251.21 Public records.

(a) All official determinations of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel will be published in the Federal Register in accordance with § 251.7 and include the relevant facts and reasons for those determinations.

(b) All records of a CARP, and all records of the Librarian of Congress assembled and/or created under 17 U.S.C. 801 and 802, are available for inspection and copying at the address provided in § 251.1 with the exception of:

(1) Records that relate solely to the internal personnel rules and practices of the Copyright Office or the Library of Congress;

(2) Records exempted by statute from disclosure;
Copyright Office, Library of Congress—§ 251.30

Basic obligations of arbitrators.

(a) Definitions. For purposes of these regulations, the following terms shall have the meanings given in this sub-section:

(1) A “selected arbitrator” is a person named by the Librarian of Congress, or by other selected arbitrators, for service on a particular CARP, in accordance with §251.6 of these regulations;

(2) A “listed arbitrator” is a person named in the “arbitration list” published in accordance with §251.3 of these regulations.

(b) General principles applicable to arbitrators. Selected arbitrators are persons acting on behalf of the United States, and the following general principles apply to them. Where a situation is not covered by standards set forth specifically in this subpart, selected arbitrators shall apply these general principles in all cases in determining whether their conduct is proper. Listed arbitrators shall apply these principles where applicable.

(1) Arbitrators are engaged in a matter of trust that requires them to place ethical and legal principles above private gain.

(2) Arbitrators shall not hold financial interests that conflict with the Arbitration Royalty Panel. In the case of records in the possession of a CARP, the Copyright Office shall make arrangements with the panel for access and copying by the person making the request.

(c) Fees. Fees for photocopies of CARP or Copyright Office records are the applicable Office charge. Fees for searching for records, certification of documents, and other costs incurred are as provided in 17 U.S.C. 705, 708.

Subpart D—Standards of Conduct

§ 251.30 Basic obligations of arbitrators.

(a) Definitions. For purposes of these regulations, the following terms shall have the meanings given in this subsection:

(1) A “selected arbitrator” is a person named by the Librarian of Congress, or by other selected arbitrators, for service on a particular CARP, in accordance with §251.6 of these regulations;

(2) A “listed arbitrator” is a person named in the “arbitration list” published in accordance with §251.3 of these regulations.

(b) General principles applicable to arbitrators. Selected arbitrators are persons acting on behalf of the United States, and the following general principles apply to them. Where a situation is not covered by standards set forth specifically in this subpart, selected arbitrators shall apply these general principles in all cases in determining whether their conduct is proper. Listed arbitrators shall apply these principles where applicable.

(1) Arbitrators are engaged in a matter of trust that requires them to place ethical and legal principles above private gain.

(2) Arbitrators shall not hold financial interests that conflict with the
§ 251.31 Financial interests.

(a) No selected arbitrator shall have a direct or indirect financial interest—

(1) In the case of a distribution proceeding, in any claimant to the proceeding whether or not in a voluntary settlement agreement, or any copyright owner who receives royalties from such claimants because of their representation;

(2) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, in any individual, organization or entity that would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding.

(b) “Direct or indirect financial interest” shall include: Being employed by, being a consultant to, being a representative or agent for, being a member or affiliate of, being a partner of, holding any office in, owning any stocks, bonds, or other securities, or deriving any income from the prohibited entity.

(c) “Direct or indirect financial interest” shall not include—

(1) Owning shares in any stock or bond mutual fund or blind trust which might have an interest in a prohibited entity but whose decisions to invest or sell is not under the control of the selected arbitrator, or

(2) Receiving any post-employment benefit such as health insurance or a pension so long as the benefit would not be affected by the outcome of the proceeding.

(d) For the purposes of this section, the financial interests of the following persons will serve to disqualify the selected arbitrator to the same extent as if they were the arbitrator’s own interests:

(1) The arbitrator’s spouse;

(2) The arbitrator’s minor child;

(3) The arbitrator’s general partner, except that the personal financial holdings, including stock and bond investments, of such partner will not serve to disqualify the selected arbitrator; or

(4) An organization or entity for which the arbitrator serves as officer, director, trustee, general partner or employee.

§ 251.32 Financial disclosure statement.

(a) Within 45 days of their nomination, each nominated arbitrator shall file with the Librarian of Congress a confidential financial disclosure statement as provided by the Library of Congress, which statement shall be reviewed by the Librarian and designated Library staff to determine what conflicts of interest, if any, exist according to §251.31.

(b) If any conflicts do exist, the Librarian shall not choose that person for the proceeding for which he or she has the financial conflict, except—

(1) The listed arbitrator may divest himself or herself of the interest that caused the disqualification, and become qualified to serve; or
(2) The listed arbitrator may offer to disclose on the record the conflict of interest causing disqualification. In such instances:

(i) The Librarian shall publish a list detailing the conflicts of interest the listed arbitrators have offered to disclose, and any other matters which, although outside of the scope of the restrictions of §251.31, nevertheless, in the view of the Librarian, raise sufficient concerns to warrant disclosure to the affected parties;

(ii) Such list shall be included in an order issued no later than the commencement of the 45-day precontroversy discovery period;

(iii) Such list shall contain the matters of concern, but shall not contain the names of the listed arbitrators.

(iv) Any party to the proceeding for which the listed arbitrator is being considered may interpose within the 45-day period described in §251.45(b) an objection to that arbitrator being selected. If the objection is raised to a matter found to be within the scope of §251.31, the objection will serve automatically to disqualify the arbitrator. If the objection is raised to a matter found to be outside the scope of §251.31, the objection will be taken into account when the Librarian makes his or her selection, but will not serve automatically to disqualify the arbitrator.

(c) At such time as the two selected arbitrators choose a third arbitrator, they shall consult with the Librarian to determine if any conflicts of interest exist for the third arbitrator. If, in the opinion of the Librarian of Congress, any conflicts of interest do exist, the two selected arbitrators shall be asked to choose another arbitrator who has no conflict of interest.

(d) Within one week of the selection of the CARP, the three selected arbitrators shall file with the Librarian an updated confidential financial disclosure form or, if there are no changes in the arbitrator’s financial interests, a statement to that effect. If any conflicts of interest are revealed on the updated form, the Librarian will suspend the proceeding and replace the selected arbitrator with another arbitrator from the arbitrator list in accordance with the provision of §251.6.

(e) During the following periods of time, the selected arbitrators shall be obliged to inform the Librarian immediately of any change in their financial interests that would reasonably raise a conflict of interest:

(1) During the period beginning with the filing of the updated disclosure form or statement required by paragraph (d) of this section and ending with the submission of the panel’s report to the Librarian, and

(2) If the same arbitrator or arbitrators are recalled to serve following a court-ordered remand, during the time the panel is reconvened.

(f) If the Librarian determines that an arbitrator has failed to give timely notice of a financial interest constituting a conflict of interest, or that the arbitrator in fact has a conflict of interest, the Librarian shall remove that arbitrator from the proceeding.

§ 251.33 Ex parte communications.

(a) Communications with Librarian or Register. No person outside the Library of Congress shall engage in ex parte communication with the Librarian of Congress or the Register of Copyrights on the merit or status of any matter, procedural or substantive, relating to the distribution of royalty fees, the adjustment of royalty rates or the status of digital audio recording devices, at any time whatsoever. This prohibition shall not apply to statements concerning public policies related to royalty fee distribution and rate adjustment so long as they are unrelated to the merits of any particular proceeding.

(b) Selected arbitrators. No interested person shall engage in, or cause someone else to engage in, ex parte communications with the selected arbitrators in a proceeding for any reason whatsoever from the time of their selection to the time of the submission of their report to the Librarian, and, in the case of a remand, from the time of their reconvening to the time of their submission of their report to the Librarian. Incidental communications unrelated to any proceeding, such as an exchange
§ 251.34 Gifts and other things of monetary value.

(a) Selected arbitrators. From the time of selection to the time of the submission of the arbitration panel’s report, whether during the initial proceeding or during a court-ordered remand, no selected arbitrator shall solicit or accept, directly or indirectly, any gift, gratuity, favor, travel, entertainment, service, loan, or any other thing of monetary value from a person or organization that has an interest that would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding, regardless of whether the offer was intended to affect the outcome of the proceeding.

(b) Listed arbitrators. No listed arbitrator shall solicit or accept, directly or indirectly, any gift, gratuity, favor, travel, entertainment, service, loan, or any other thing of monetary value from a person or organization that has an interest in any proceeding for which the arbitrator might be selected, regardless of whether the offer was intended to affect the outcome of the proceeding, except—

(1) A listed arbitrator may accept unsolicited gifts having an aggregate market value of $20 or less per occasion, as long as the aggregate market value of individual gifts received from any one source does not exceed $50 in a calendar year, or

(2) A listed arbitrator may accept a gift given under circumstances in which it is clear that the gift is motivated by a family relationship or personal friendship rather than the potential of the listed arbitrator to decide a future proceeding.

(c) A gift that is solicited or accepted indirectly includes a gift—

(1) Given with the arbitrator’s knowledge and acquiescence to the arbitrator’s parent, sibling, spouse, child, or
dependent relative because of that person's relationship to the arbitrator, or
(2) Given to any other person, including any charitable organization, on the basis of designation, recommendation, or other specification by the arbitrator.

§251.35 Outside employment and other activities.
(a) From the time of selection to the time when all possibility of being selected to serve on a court-ordered remand is ended, no arbitrator shall—
(1) Engage in any outside business or other activity that would cause a reasonable person to question the arbitrator's ability to render an impartial decision;
(2) Accept any speaking engagement, whether paid or unpaid, related to the proceeding or sponsored by a party that would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding; or
(3) Accept any honorarium, whether directly or indirectly paid, for any appearance, speech, or article related to the proceeding or offered by a party who would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding.
(b) Honoraria indirectly paid include payments—
(1) Given with the arbitrator's knowledge and acquiescence to the arbitrator's parent, sibling, spouse, child, or dependent relative because of that person's relationship to the arbitrator, or
(2) Given to any other person, including any charitable organization, on the basis of designation, recommendation, or other specification by the arbitrator.

§251.36 Pre-arbitration and post-arbitration employment restrictions.
(a) The Librarian of Congress will not select any arbitrator who was employed at any time during the period of five years immediately preceding the date of that arbitrator's selection by any party to, or any person, organization or entity with a financial interest in, the proceeding for which he or she is being considered. However, a listed arbitrator may disclose on the record the past employment causing disqualification and may ask the parties to consider whether to allow him or her to serve in the proceeding, in which case any agreement by the parties to allow the listed arbitrator to serve shall be unanimous and shall be incorporated into the record of the proceeding.
(b) No arbitrator may arrange for future employment with any party to, or any person, organization, or entity with a financial interest in, the proceeding in which he or she is serving.
(c) For a period of three years from the date of submission of the arbitration panel's report to the Librarian, no arbitrator may enter into employment with any party to, or any person, organization, or entity with a financial interest in, the particular proceeding in which he or she served.
(d) For purposes of this section, "employed" or "employment" means any business relationship involving the provision of personal services including, but not limited to, personal services as an officer, director, employee, agent, attorney, consultant, contractor, general partner or trustee, but does not include serving as an arbitrator, mediator, or neutral engaged in alternative dispute resolution.

§251.37 Use of nonpublic information.
(a) Unless required by law, no arbitrator shall disclose in any manner any information contained in filings, pleadings, or evidence that the arbitration panel has ruled to be confidential in nature.
(b) Unless required by law, no arbitrator shall disclose in any manner—
(1) Intra-panel communications or communications between the Librarian of Congress and the panel intended to be confidential;
(2) Draft interlocutory rulings or draft decisions; or
(3) The CARP report before its submission to the Librarian of Congress.
(c) No arbitrator shall engage in a financial transaction using nonpublic information, or allow the improper use of nonpublic information, to further his or her private interest or that of another, whether through advice or recommendation, or by knowing unauthorized disclosure.
§ 251.38 Billing and commitment to standards.

(a) Arbitrators are bound by the hourly or daily fee they proposed to the Librarian of Congress when their names were submitted to be listed under § 251.3, and shall not bill in excess of their proposed charges.

(b) Arbitrators shall not charge the parties any expense in addition to their hourly or daily charge, except, in the case of an arbitrator who resides outside the Washington, DC metropolitan area, for travel, lodging, and meals not to exceed the government rate.

(c) When submitting their statement of costs to the parties under § 251.54, arbitrators shall include a detailed account of their charges, including the work performed during each hour or day charged.

(d) Except for support services provided by the Library of Congress, arbitrators shall perform their own work, including research, analysis of the record, and decision-writing.

(e) At the time of selection, arbitrators shall sign an agreement stating that they will abide by all the terms therein, including all of the standards of conduct and billing restrictions specified in this subpart. Any arbitrator who does not sign the agreement will not be selected to serve.

[59 FR 29961, May 9, 1994, as amended at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.39 Remedies.

In addition to those provided above, remedies for the violation of the standards of conduct of this section may include, but are not limited to, the following—

(a) In the case of a selected arbitrator,

1) Removal of the arbitrator from the proceeding;

2) Permanent removal of the arbitrator’s name from the current and any future list of available arbitrators published by the Librarian;

3) Referral of the matter to the bar of which the listed arbitrator is a member.

(b) In the case of an interested party or individual who engaged in the ethical violation—

1) Referral of the matter to the bar or professional association of which the interested individual is a member;

2) Barring the offending individual from current and/or future appearances before the CARP;

3) Designation of an issue in the current or in a future proceeding as to whether the party’s interest should not be dismissed, denied, or otherwise adversely affected.

(d) In all applicable matters of violations of standards of conduct, the Librarian may refer the matter to the Department of Justice, or other legal authority of competent jurisdiction, for criminal prosecution.

Subpart E—Procedures of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels

§ 251.40 Scope.

This subpart governs the proceedings of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels convened under 17 U.S.C. 803 for the adjustment of royalty rates and distribution of royalty fees. This subpart does not apply to other arbitration proceedings specified by 17 U.S.C., or to actions or rulemakings of the Librarian of Congress or the Register of Copyrights, except where expressly provided in the provisions of this subpart.

§ 251.41 Formal hearings.

(a) The formal hearings that will be conducted under the rules of this subpart are rate adjustment hearings and royalty fee distribution hearings. All parties intending to participate in a hearing of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel must file a notice of their intention. A CARP may also, on its own motion or on the petition of an interested party, hold other proceedings it considers necessary to the exercise of its functions, subject to the provisions of § 251.7. All such proceedings will be governed by the rules of this subpart.
§ 251.44 Filing and service of written cases and pleadings.

(a) Filing of pleadings. In a royalty fee distribution proceeding or in a rate adjustment proceeding, the submitting party shall deliver an original and five copies of all filings to the Copyright Office at the address listed in § 251.1, unless otherwise instructed by the Librarian of Congress or the CARP. The Copyright Office will make further distribution to the CARP, as necessary. In no case shall a party tender any written case or pleading by facsimile transmission.

(b) Exhibits. All exhibits must be included with a party’s case; however, in the case of exhibits whose bulk or whose cost of reproduction would unnecessarily encumber the record or burden the party, the Librarian of Congress or the CARP may reduce the number of required copies. Nevertheless, a complete copy must still be submitted to the Copyright Office.

(c) English language translations. In all filings with a CARP or the Librarian of Congress, each submission that
is in a language other than English shall be accompanied by an English-language translation, duly verified under oath to be a true translation. Any other party to the proceeding may, in response, submit its own English-language translation, similarly verified.

(d) Affidavits. The testimony of each witness in a party's written case, direct or rebuttal, shall be accompanied by an affidavit or a declaration made pursuant to 28 U.S.C. 1746 supporting the testimony.

(e) Subscription and verification. (1) The original of all documents filed by any party represented by counsel shall be signed by at least one attorney of record and shall list the attorney's address and telephone number. All copies shall be conformed. Except for English-language translations, written cases, or when otherwise required, documents signed by the attorney for a party need not be verified or accompanied by an affidavit. The signature of an attorney constitutes certification that to the best of his or her knowledge and belief there is good ground to support the document, and that it has not been interposed for purposes of delay.

(2) The original of all documents filed by a party not represented by counsel shall be signed by that party and list that party's address and telephone number.

(3) The original of a document that is not signed, or is signed with the intent to defeat the purpose of this section, may be stricken as sham and false, and the matter shall proceed as though the document had not been filed.

(f) Service. The Librarian of Congress shall compile and distribute to those parties who have filed a notice of intent to participate, the official service list of the proceeding, which shall be composed of the names and addresses of the representatives of all the parties to the proceeding. In all filings, a copy shall be served upon counsel of all other parties identified in the service list, or, if the party is unrepresented by counsel, upon the party itself. Proof of service shall accompany the filing. Parties shall notify the Librarian of any change in the name or address to which service shall be made, and shall serve a copy of such notification on all parties and the CARP.

(g) Oppositions and replies. Except as otherwise provided in this part or by the Librarian of Congress or a CARP, oppositions to motions shall be filed within seven business days of the filing of the motion, and replies to oppositions shall be filed within five business days of the filing of the opposition. Each party must serve all motions, petitions, objections, oppositions, and replies on the other parties or their counsel by means no slower than overnight express mail on the same day the pleading is filed.

§ 251.45 Discovery and prehearing motions.

(a) Request for comment, notice of intention to participate. In the case of a royalty fee distribution proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the time period for filing claims, publish in the Federal Register a notice requesting each claimant on the claimant list to negotiate with each other a settlement of their differences, and to comment by a date certain as to the existence of controversies with respect to the royalty funds described in the notice. Such notice shall also establish a date certain by which parties wishing to participate in the proceeding must file with the Librarian a notice of intention to participate. In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after receiving a petition for rate adjustment filed under §251.62, or, in the case of non-commercial educational broadcasting and satellite carrier, prior to the commencement of proceedings, publish in the Federal Register a notice requesting interested parties to comment on the petition for rate adjustment. Such notice shall also establish a date certain by which parties wishing to participate in the proceeding must file with the Librarian a notice of intention to participate.

(b) Precontroversy discovery, filing of written cases, scheduling. (1)(i) In the case of a royalty fee distribution proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the filing of comments and
§ 251.45

Copyright Office, Library of Congress

notices described in paragraph (a) of this section, designate a 45-day period for precontroversy discovery and exchange of documents. The period will begin with the exchange of written direct cases among the parties to the proceeding. Each party to the proceeding must effect actual delivery of a complete copy of its written direct case on each of the other parties to the proceeding no later than the first day of the 45-day period. At any time during the 45-day period, any party to the proceeding may file with the Librarian prehearing motions and objections, including petitions to dispense with formal hearings under § 251.41(b) and objections to arbitrators appearing on the arbitrator list under § 251.4. Responses to motions, petitions, and objections must be filed with the Librarian within seven business days from the filing of such motions, petitions, and objections. Replies to the responses shall be filed within five business days from the filing of such responses with the Librarian. Each party must serve all motions, petitions, objections, oppositions, and replies on the other parties or their counsel by means no slower than overnight express mail on the same day the pleading is filed.

(ii) Subject to § 251.64, the Librarian shall establish, prior to the commencement of the 45-day period, the date on which arbitration proceedings will be initiated.

(c) Discovery and motions filed with a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel.

(1) A Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall designate a period following the filing of written direct and rebuttal cases with it in which parties may request of an opposing party nonprivileged underlying documents related to the written exhibits and testimony.

(2) After the filing of written cases with a CARP, any party may file with a CARP objections to any portion of another party's written case on any proper ground including, without limitation, relevance, competency, and failure to provide underlying documents. If an objection is apparent from the face of a written case, that objection must be raised or the party may thereafter be precluded from raising such an objection.

(d) Amended filings and discovery. In the case of objections filed with either the Librarian of Congress or a CARP, each party may amend its claim, petition, written case, or direct evidence to respond to the objections raised by other parties, or to the requests of either the Librarian or a panel. Such amendments must be properly filed with the Librarian or the CARP, whenever appropriate, and exchanged with all parties. All parties shall be given a reasonable opportunity to conduct discovery on the amended filings.

§ 251.46 Conduct of hearings: Role of arbitrators.

(a) At the opening of a hearing conducted by a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, the chairperson shall announce the subject under consideration.

(b) Only the arbitrators of a CARP, or counsel as provided in this chapter, shall question witnesses.

(c) Subject to the vote of the CARP, the chairperson shall have responsibility for:

1. Setting the order of presentation of evidence and appearance of witnesses;

2. Administering oaths and affirmations to all witnesses;

3. Announcing the CARP's ruling on objections and motions and all rulings with respect to introducing or excluding documentary or other evidence. In all cases, whether there are an even or odd number of arbitrators sitting at the hearing, it takes a majority vote to grant a motion or sustain an objection. A split vote will result in the denial of the motion or the overruling of the objection;

4. Regulating the course of the proceedings and the decorum of the parties and their counsel, and insuring that the proceedings are fair and impartial; and

5. Announcing the schedule of subsequent hearings.

(d) Each arbitrator may examine any witness or call upon any party for the production of additional evidence at any time. Further examination, cross-examination, or redirect examination by counsel relevant to the inquiry initiated by an arbitrator may be allowed by a CARP, but only to the limited extent that it is directly responsive to the inquiry of the arbitrator.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 63 FR 30635, June 5, 1998]

§ 251.47 Conduct of hearings: Witnesses and counsel.

(a) With all due regard for the convenience of the witnesses, proceedings shall be conducted as expeditiously as possible.

(b) In each distribution or rate adjustment proceeding, each party may present its opening statement with the presentation of its direct case.

(c) All witnesses shall be required to take an oath or affirmation before testifying; however, attorneys who do not appear as witnesses shall not be required to do so.

(d) Witnesses shall first be examined by their attorney and by opposing attorneys for their competency to support their written testimony and exhibits (voir dire).

(e) Witnesses may then summarize, highlight or read their testimony. However, witnesses may not materially supplement or alter their written testimony except to correct it, unless the CARP expands the witness's testimony to complete the record.

(f) Parties are entitled to raise objections to evidence on any proper ground during the course of the hearing, including an objection that an opposing party has not furnished nonprivileged underlying documents. However, they may not raise objections that were apparent from the face of a written case and could have been raised before the hearing without leave from the CARP. See § 251.45(c).

(g) All written testimony and exhibits will be received into the record, except any to which the panel sustains an objection; no separate motion will be required.

(h) If the panel rejects or excludes testimony and an offer of proof is made, the offer of proof shall consist of a statement of the substance of the evidence which it is contended would have been adduced. In the case of documentary or written evidence, a copy of such evidence shall be marked for identification and shall constitute the offer of proof.

(i) The CARP shall discourage the presentation of cumulative evidence, and may limit the number of witnesses that may be heard on behalf of any one party on any one issue.

(j) Parties are entitled to conduct cross-examination and redirect examination. Cross-examination is limited to matters raised on direct examination. Redirect examination is limited to matters raised on cross-examination. The panel, however, may limit cross-examination and redirect examination if in its judgment this evidence or examination would be cumulative or cause undue delay. Conversely, this
subsection does not restrict the discretion of the panel to expand the scope of cross-examination or redirect examination.

(k) Documents that have not been exchanged in advance may be shown to a witness on cross-examination. However, copies of such documents must be distributed to the CARP and to other participants or their counsel at hearing before being shown to the witness at the time of cross-examination, unless the document is not, or will not be, supported by a witness for the cross-examining party, that document can be used solely to impeach the witness's direct testimony and cannot itself be relied upon in findings of fact as rebutting the witness's direct testimony. However, upon leave from the panel, the document may be admitted as evidence without a sponsoring witness if official notice is proper, or if, in the panel's view, the cross-examined witness is the proper sponsoring witness.

(l) A CARP will encourage individuals or groups with the same or similar interests in a proceeding to select a single representative to conduct their examination and cross-examination of any given witness. However, if there is no agreement on the selection of a representative, each individual or group will be allowed to conduct their own examination and cross-examination of any given witness, but only on issues affecting its particular interests, provided that the questioning is not repetitious or cumulative of the questioning of other parties within the group.


§ 251.48 Rules of evidence.

(a) Admissibility. In any public hearing before a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, evidence that is not unduly repetitious or cumulative and is relevant and material shall be admissible. The testimony of any witness will not be considered evidence in a proceeding unless the witness has been sworn.

(b) Documentary evidence. Evidence that is submitted in the form of documents or detailed data and information shall be presented as exhibits. Relevant and material matter embraced in a document containing other matter not material or relevant or not intended as evidence must be plainly designated as the matter offered in evidence, and the immaterial or irrelevant parts shall be marked clearly so as to show they are not intended as evidence. In cases where a document in which material and relevant matter occurs is of such bulk that it would unnecessarily encumber the record, it may be marked for identification and the relevant and material parts, once properly authenticated, may be read into the record. If the CARP desires, a true copy of the material and relevant matter may be presented in extract form, and submitted as evidence. Anyone presenting documents as evidence must present copies to all other participants at the hearing or their attorneys, and afford them an opportunity to examine the documents in their entirety and offer into evidence any other portion that may be considered material and relevant.

(c) Documents filed with a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel or Copyright Office. If the matter offered in evidence is contained in documents already on file with a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel or the Copyright Office, the documents themselves need not be produced, but may instead be referred to according to how they have been filed.

(d) Public documents. If a public document such as an official report, decision, opinion, or published scientific or economic data, is offered in evidence either in whole or in part, and if the document has been issued by an Executive Department, a legislative agency or committee, or a Federal administrative agency (Government-owned corporations included), and is proved by the party offering it to be reasonably available to the public, the document need not be produced physically, but may be offered instead by identifying the document and signaling the relevant parts.

(e) Introduction of studies and analyses. If studies or analyses are offered in evidence, they shall state clearly the study plan, all relevant assumptions, the techniques of data collection, and
§ 251.49 Transcript and record.

(a) An official reporter for the recording and transcribing of hearings shall be designated by the Librarian of Congress. Anyone wishing to inspect or copy the transcript of a hearing may do so at a location specified by the chairperson of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel conducting the hearing.

(b) The transcript of testimony and all exhibits, papers, and requests filed in the proceeding, shall constitute the official written record. Such record shall accompany the report of the determination of the CARP to the Librarian of Congress required by 17 U.S.C. 802(e).

(c) The record, including the report of the determination of a CARP, shall be available at the Copyright Office for public inspection and copying in accordance with § 251.22.

§ 251.50 Rulings and orders.

In accordance with 5 U.S.C., subchapter II, a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel may issue rulings or orders, either on its own motion or that of an interested party, necessary to the resolution of issues contained in the proceeding before it; Provided, that no such rules or orders shall amend, supplement or supersede the rules and regulations contained in this subchapter. See § 251.7.

§ 251.51 Closing the record.

To close the record of hearing, the chairperson of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall make an announcement that the taking of testimony has concluded. In its discretion the panel may close the record as of a future specified date, and allow time for exhibits yet to be prepared to be admitted, provided that the parties to the proceeding stipulate on the record that they waive the opportunity to cross-examine or present evidence with respect to such exhibits. The record in any hearing that has been recessed may not be closed by the chairperson before the day on which the hearing is to resume.

494
Copyright Office, Library of Congress § 251.54

 except upon ten days' notice to all parties.

§ 251.52 Proposed findings and conclusions.

(a) Any party to the proceeding may file proposed findings of fact and conclusions, briefs, or memoranda of law, or may be directed by the chairperson to do so. Such filings, and any replies to them, shall take place at such time after the record has been closed as the chairperson directs.

(b) Failure to file when directed to do so shall be considered a waiver of the right to participate further in the proceeding, unless good cause for the failure is shown.

(c) Proposed findings of fact shall be numbered by paragraph and include all basic evidentiary facts developed on the record used to support proposed conclusions, and shall contain appropriate citations to the record for each evidentiary fact. Proposed findings submitted by someone other than a party in a proceeding shall be restricted to those issues specifically affecting that person.

(d) Proposed conclusions shall be stated separately.

§ 251.53 Report to the Librarian of Congress.

(a) At any time after the filing of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law and any replies thereto specified in § 251.52, and not later than 180 days from publication in the Federal Register of notification of commencement of the proceeding, a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall deliver to the Librarian of Congress a report incorporating its written determination. Such determination shall be accompanied by the written record, and shall set forth the facts that the panel found relevant to its determination.

(b) The determination of the panel shall be certified by the chairperson and signed by all of the arbitrators. Any dissenting opinion shall be certified and signed by the arbitrator so dissenting.

(c) At the same time as the submission to the Librarian of Congress, the chairperson of the panel shall cause a copy of the determination to be delivered to all parties participating in the proceeding.

(d) The Librarian of Congress shall make the report of the CARP and the accompanying record available for public inspection and copying.

§ 251.54 Assessment of costs of arbitration panels.

(a) The ordinary and necessary costs of an arbitrator shall be assessed, in accordance with § 251.38, as follows:

(1) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, the parties to the proceeding shall bear the entire cost thereof in such manner and proportion as the panel shall direct.

(2) In the case of a distribution proceeding, the parties to the proceeding shall bear the total cost of the proceeding in direct proportion to their share of the distribution. These costs shall be considered reasonable costs incurred by the Librarian of Congress and the Copyright Office. Such costs shall be deducted from the royalty fees which have been deposited and collected under title 17 of the United States Code and which are the subject of the distribution proceeding.

(b) Each arbitrator shall itemize his or her expenses on the statement of cost in a format approved by the General Counsel and shall specify the name and address to whom payment should be made. In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, each statement of cost shall specify each party's share of the total cost and the amount owed by that party to each arbitrator, or alternatively, reflect the method of payment agreed upon by the parties and the arbitrators.

(c) The statements of cost shall be sent to the Librarian of Congress no more frequently than once a month.

(1) In the case of a distribution proceeding, the statements of cost shall be sent to the Accounting Operations Section, Financial Services Directorate, Library of Congress, 101 Independence
§ 251.55 Post-panel motions.
(a) Any party to the proceeding may file with the Librarian of Congress a petition to modify or set aside the determination of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel within 14 days of the Librarian’s receipt of the panel’s report of its determination. Such petition shall state the reasons for modification or reversal of the panel’s determination, and shall include applicable sections of the party’s proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law.
(b) Replies to petitions to modify or set aside shall be filed within 14 days of the filing of such petitions.

§ 251.56 Order of the Librarian of Congress.
(a) After the filing of post-panel motions, see §251.55, but within 90 days from receipt of the report of the determination of a panel, the Librarian of Congress shall issue an order accepting the panel’s determination or substituting the Librarian’s own determination. The Librarian shall adopt the determination of the panel unless he or she finds that the determination is arbitrary or contrary to the applicable provisions of 17 U.S.C.
(b) If the Librarian substitutes his or her own determination, the Librarian shall have an additional 30 days to issue the order which shall set forth the reasons for not accepting the panel’s determination, and shall set forth the facts which the Librarian found relevant to his or her determination.
(c) The Librarian shall cause a copy of the order to be delivered to all parties participating in the proceeding. The Librarian shall also publish the order, and the determination of the panel, in the Federal Register.

§ 251.57 Effective date of order.
An order of determination issued by the Librarian under §251.56 shall become effective 30 days following its publication in the Federal Register, unless an appeal has been filed pursuant to §251.58 and notice of the appeal has been served on all parties to the proceeding.

§ 251.58 Judicial review.
(a) Any order of determination issued by the Librarian of Congress under §251.55 may be appealed, by any aggrieved party who would be bound by the determination, to the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Circuit, within 30 days after publication of the order in the Federal Register.
(b) If no appeal is brought within the 30-day period, the order of determination of the Librarian is final, and shall take effect as set forth in the order.
(c) The pendency of any appeal shall not relieve persons obligated to make royalty payments under 17 U.S.C. 111, 112, 114, 115, 116, 118, 119, or 1003, and who would be affected by the determination on appeal, from depositing
Subpart F—Rate Adjustment Proceedings

§ 251.60 Scope.

This subpart governs only those proceedings dealing with royalty rate adjustments affecting cable (17 U.S.C. 111), the making of ephemeral recordings (17 U.S.C. 114), the manufacture and distribution of phonorecords, including digital phonorecord deliveries (17 U.S.C. 115), performances on coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes) (17 U.S.C. 116), noncommercial educational broadcasting (17 U.S.C. 118) and satellite carriers (17 U.S.C. 119). Those provisions of subpart E of this part generally regulating the conduct of proceedings shall apply to rate adjustment proceedings, unless they are inconsistent with the specific provisions of this subpart.

§ 251.61 Commencement of adjustment proceedings.

(a) In the case of cable, ephemeral recordings, certain digital audio transmissions, phonorecords, digital phonorecord deliveries, and coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes), rate adjustment proceedings shall commence with the filing of a petition by an interested party according to the following schedule:

(1) Cable: During 1995, and each subsequent fifth calendar year.

(2) Ephemeral recordings: During a 60-day period prescribed by the Librarian in 1999, 2000, and at 2-year intervals thereafter, or as otherwise agreed to by the parties.

(i) During a 60-day period commencing on July 1, 2001 and at 5-year intervals thereafter, or

(ii) During a 60-day period prescribed by the Librarian in a proceeding to set reasonable terms and rates for a new type of subscription digital audio transmission service; and for an eligible nonsubscription service or a new subscription service:

(A) During a 60-day period prescribed by the Librarian in 1999.

(B) During a 60-day period commencing on July 1, 2000, and at 2-year intervals thereafter.

(C) During a 60-day period prescribed by the Librarian in a proceeding to set reasonable terms and rates for a new type of eligible nonsubscription service or new subscription service, or

(D) As otherwise agreed to by the parties.

(4) Phonorecords: During 1997 and each subsequent tenth calendar year.

(5) Digital phonorecord deliveries: During 1997 and each subsequent fifth calendar year, or as otherwise agreed to by the parties.

(b) Cable rate adjustment proceedings may also be commenced by the filing of a petition, according to 17 U.S.C. 801(b)(2)(B) and (C), if the Federal Communications Commission amends certain of its rules with respect to the carriage by cable systems of broadcast signals, or with respect to syndicated and sports programming exclusivity.

(c) In the case of noncommercial educational broadcasting, a petition is not necessary for the commencement of proceedings. Proceedings commence with the publication of a notice of the initiation of arbitration proceedings in the Federal Register on June 30, 1997, and at five year intervals thereafter.

(d) In the case of the satellite carrier compulsory license, rate adjustment proceedings shall commence on January 1, 1997, in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 119(c)(3)(A), for satellite carriers who
are not parties to a voluntary agreement filed with the Copyright Office in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 119(c)(2).

§ 251.62 Content of petition.
(a) In the case of a petition for rate adjustment proceedings for cable, ephemeral recordings, certain digital audio transmissions, phonorecords, digital phonorecord deliveries, and coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes), the petition shall detail the petitioner’s interest in the royalty rate sufficiently to permit the Librarian of Congress to determine whether the petitioner has a “significant interest” in the matter. The petition must also identify the extent to which the petitioner’s interest is shared by other owners or users; owners or users with similar interests may file a petition jointly.

(b) In the case of a petition for rate adjustment proceedings as the result of a Federal Communications Commission rule change, the petition shall also set forth the actions of the Federal Communications Commission on which the petition for a rate adjustment is based.

§ 251.63 Consideration of petition; settlements.
(a) To allow time for the parties to settle their differences concerning cable, phonorecord, and jukebox rate adjustments, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the filing of the petition under § 251.62 and before the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(1), designate a 30-day period for negotiation of a settlement. The Librarian shall cause notice of the dates for that period to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(b) In the case of a settlement among the parties to a proceeding, the Librarian may, upon the request of the parties, submit the agreed upon rate to the public in a notice-and-comment proceeding. The Librarian may adopt the rate embodied in the proposed settlement without convening an arbitra-

§ 251.64 Disposition of petition; initiation of arbitration proceeding.

After the end of the 45-day precontroversy discovery period, and after the Librarian has ruled on all motions and objections filed under § 251.45, the Librarian will determine the sufficiency of the petition, including, where appropriate, whether one or more of the petitioners’ interests are “significant.” If the Librarian determines that a petition is significant, he or she will cause to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER a declaration of a controversy accompanied by a notice of initiation of an arbitration proceeding. The same declaration and notice of initiation shall be made for noncommercial educational broadcasting and the satellite carrier compulsory license in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 118 and 119, respectively. Such notice shall, to the extent feasible, describe the nature, general structure, and schedule of the proceeding.

§ 251.65 Deduction of costs of rate adjustment proceedings.

In accordance with 17 U.S.C. 802(h)(1), the Librarian of Congress and the Register of Copyrights may assess the reasonable costs incurred by the Library of Congress and the Copyright Office as a result of the rate adjustment proceedings directly to the parties participating in the proceedings.

Subpart G—Royalty Fee Distribution Proceedings

§ 251.70 Scope.
This subpart governs only those proceedings dealing with distribution of royalty payments deposited with the Register of Copyrights for cable (17 U.S.C. 111), satellite carrier (17 U.S.C. 802(h)(1)) and noncommercial educational broadcasting (17 U.S.C. 118).
§ 252.1 Scope.

This part prescribes procedures under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4)(A), whereby parties claiming to be entitled to cable compulsory license royalty fees shall file claims with the Copyright Office.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 252.2 Time of filing.

During the month of July each year, any party claiming to be entitled to cable compulsory license royalty fees for secondary transmissions of one or more of its works during the preceding calendar year shall file a claim to such fees with the Copyright Office. No royalty fees shall be distributed to a party for secondary transmissions during the specified period unless such party has timely filed a claim to such fees.

Claimants may file claims jointly or as a single claim.

[59 FR 23982, May 9, 1994, as amended at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 252.3 Content of claims.

(a) Claims filed by parties claiming to be entitled to cable compulsory license royalty fees shall include the following information:

(1) The full legal name of the person or entity claiming royalty fees.
§ 252.4 Compliance with statutory dates.

(a) Claims filed with the Copyright Office shall be considered timely filed only if:

(1) They are hand delivered, either by the claimant, the claimant’s agent, or a private delivery carrier, to: Office of the Register of Copyrights, Room 403, James Madison Memorial Building, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20540, during normal business hours during the month of July; or

(2) They are addressed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, and are deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and bear a July U.S. postmark.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), in any year in which July 31 falls on a Saturday, Sunday, holiday, or other nonbusiness day within the District of Columbia or the Federal Government, claims received by the Copyright Office by the first business day in August, or properly addressed and deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and postmarked by the first business day in August, shall be considered timely filed.

(c) Claims dated only with a business meter that are received after July 31, will not be accepted as having been timely filed.

(d) No claim may be filed by facsimile transmission.

(e) In the event that a properly addressed and mailed claim is not timely received by the Copyright Office, a claimant may nonetheless prove that the claim was properly filed if it was sent by certified mail return receipt requested, and the claimant can provide a receipt bearing a July date stamp of the U.S. Postal Service, except where paragraph (b) of this section applies. No affidavit of an officer or employee of the claimant, or of a U.S. postal worker will be accepted in lieu of the receipt.


§ 252.5 Copies of claims.

A claimant shall, for each claim submitted to the Copyright Office, file an original and two copies of the claim to cable royalty fees.
Copyright Office, Library of Congress § 253.3


(a) Scope. This section shall apply to the performance during a period beginning January 1, 1998, and ending on December 31, 2002, by the Public Broadcasting Service (PBS), National Public Radio (NPR) and other public broadcasting entities (as defined in §253.2) engaged in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d) of copyrighted published nondramatic musical compositions in the repertory of the American Society of Composers, Authors and Publishers (ASCAP) and Broadcast Music, Inc. (BMI), except for public broadcasting entities covered by §§253.5 and 253.6.

(b) Royalty rates. The following annual royalty rates shall apply to the performance of published nondramatic musical compositions within the scope of this section: $3,320,000 to ASCAP, and $2,123,000 to BMI.

(c) Payment of royalties. The royalty payments specified in paragraph (b) of this section shall be made in two equal payments on July 31 and December 31 of each calendar year, except for 1998, in which year the royalty payments shall also be made in two equal installments, the first of which shall be made within thirty (30) days from the date the Librarian of Congress renders his decision in In the Matter of Adjustment of the Rates for Noncommercial Educational Broadcasting Compulsory License, Docket No. 96-6 CARP NCBRA, and the second of which shall be made on December 31, 1998, subject to 17 U.S.C. 802(g).

(d) Identification of stations. PBS, NPR and/or the Corporation for Public Broadcasting (CPB) shall annually for the years 1999-2002, by not later than January 31 of each such calendar year, and in 1998, within thirty (30) days of the date the Librarian of Congress renders the decision in In the Matter of Adjustment of the Rates for Noncommercial Educational Broadcasting Compulsory License, Docket No. 96-6 CARP NCBRA, furnish to ASCAP and BMI a complete
list of all public broadcasting entities within the scope of this section, as of January 1 of that calendar year. Such lists shall include:

1. A list of all public broadcasting entities operating as television broadcast stations that are associated with PBS ("PBS Stations"), and the PBS licensee with which each PBS Station is associated ("PBS Licensees"), identifying which PBS Licensees are Single Feed Licensees and which are Multiple Feed Licensees, and which PBS Stations or groups of stations are Independently Programmed Stations, as those terms are defined in paragraph (e)(2) of this section;

2. A list of all public broadcasting entities operating as television broadcast stations that are not associated with PBS ("Non-PBS Stations");

3. A list of all public broadcasting entities operating as radio broadcast stations that are associated with NPR ("NPR Stations"), which list shall designate which NPR Stations have six (6) or more full-time employees and which NPR Stations repeat one hundred (100) percent of the programming of another NPR Station; and

4. A list of all public broadcasting entities operating as radio broadcast stations that are not associated with NPR ("Non-NPR Stations"), which list shall designate which Non-NPR Stations have six (6) or more full-time employees.

5. For purposes of this section, Non-PBS Stations and Non-NPR Stations shall include, but not be limited to, public broadcasting entities operating as television and radio broadcast stations which receive or are eligible to receive general operational support from CPB pursuant to the Public Broadcasting Act of 1967, as amended.

(e) Records of use. (1) PBS and NPR shall maintain and, within thirty-one (31) days after the end of each calendar quarter, furnish to ASCAP and BMI copies of their standard cue sheets listing the nondramatic performances of musical compositions on PBS and NPR programs during the preceding quarter (including to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable by PBS and NPR the title, author, publisher, type of use, and manner of performance thereof). PBS and NPR will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such cue sheets. In addition, to the extent the information is reasonably obtainable, PBS shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI the PBS programming feed schedules including, but not limited to, the PBS National Programming Service schedule. PBS and NPR shall make a good faith expeditious effort to provide the data discussed in this paragraph in electronic format where possible.

(2) PBS Licensees shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI, upon request and designation of ASCAP and BMI, music use reports listing all musical compositions broadcast by a particular PBS Station owned by such PBS Licensee showing the title, author, and publisher of each composition, to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable; provided, however, that PBS Licensees shall not be responsible for providing cue sheets for programs for which cue sheets have already been provided by PBS to ASCAP and BMI. PBS Licensees will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such music use reports. In the case where a PBS Licensee operates only one (1) or more PBS Stations each of which broadcasts simultaneously or on a delayed basis all or at least eighty-five (85) percent of the same programming (a "Single Feed Licensee"), that Single Feed Licensee will not be obligated to furnish music use reports to either ASCAP or to BMI for more than one of its PBS Stations in each calendar year. In the case where a PBS Licensee operates two (2) or more PBS Stations which do not broadcast all or at least eighty-five (85) percent of the same programming on a simultaneous or delayed basis (a "Multiple Feed Licensee"), that Multiple Feed Licensee may be required to furnish a music use report for each PBS Station or group of stations which broadcasts less than eighty-five (85) percent of the same programming as that aired by any other PBS Station or group of stations operated by that Multiple Feed Licensee (such station or group of stations being referred to as an "Independently Programmed Station") in each calendar year. In each calendar year, ASCAP and BMI shall each be limited to requesting music
§ 253.3

use reports from PBS Licensees covering a total number of PBS Stations equal to no more than fifty (50) percent of the total of the number of PBS Single Feed Licensees plus the number of Independently Programmed Stations operated by Multiple Feed Licensees; provided, however, that ASCAP and BMI shall be entitled to receive music use reports covering not less than ninety (90) PBS Stations in any given calendar year. Subject to the limitations set forth above, PBS Stations shall be obligated to furnish to ASCAP and BMI such music use reports for each station for a period of no more than seven days in each calendar year.

(3) Non-PBS Stations shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI, upon request and designation of ASCAP and BMI, music use reports listing all musical compositions broadcast by such Non-PBS Stations showing the title, author and publisher of each composition, to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable. Non-PBS Stations will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such music use reports. In each calendar year, ASCAP and BMI shall each be limited to requesting music use reports from no more than fifty (50) percent of Non-PBS Stations. Subject to the limitations set forth above, Non-PBS Stations shall be obligated to furnish music use reports for each station for a period of no more than seven days in each calendar year.

(4) NPR Stations which have six (6) or more full-time employees shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI, upon request and designation of ASCAP and BMI, music use reports listing all musical compositions broadcast by such NPR Station showing the title, author and publisher of each composition, to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable; provided, however, that NPR Stations shall not be responsible for providing cue sheets for programs for which cue sheets have already been provided by NPR to ASCAP and BMI. NPR Stations will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such music use reports. In each calendar year, ASCAP and BMI shall each be limited to requesting music use reports from no more than fifty (50) percent of NPR Stations which have six (6) or more full-time employees. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the number of NPR Stations with six (6) or more employees (from which ASCAP and BMI shall initially designate and request reports) falls below twenty-five (25) percent of the total number of all NPR Stations, then ASCAP and BMI may each request reports from additional NPR Stations, regardless of the number of employees, so that ASCAP and BMI shall each be entitled to receive music use reports from not less than twenty-five (25) percent of all NPR Stations. NPR Stations shall be obligated to furnish music use reports for each station for a period of up to one week in each calendar year to ASCAP and BMI.

(5) Non-NPR Stations which have six (6) or more full-time employees shall furnish to ASCAP and BMI, upon request and designation of ASCAP and BMI, music use reports listing all musical compositions broadcast by such Non-NPR Station showing the title, author and publisher of each composition, to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable. Non-NPR Stations will make a good faith effort to obtain the information to be listed on such music use reports. In each calendar year, ASCAP and BMI shall each be limited to requesting music use reports from no more than fifty (50) percent of the Non-NPR Stations which have six (6) or more full-time employees. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the number of Non-NPR Stations with six (6) or more employees (from which ASCAP and BMI shall initially designate and request reports) falls below twenty-five (25) percent of the total number of all Non-NPR Stations, then ASCAP and BMI may each request reports from additional Non-NPR Stations, regardless of the number of employees, so that ASCAP and BMI shall each be entitled to receive music use reports from not less than twenty-five (25) percent of all Non-NPR Stations. Non-NPR Stations shall be obligated to furnish music use reports for each station for a period of up to one week in each calendar year to ASCAP and BMI.


The following schedule of rates and terms shall apply to the performance by PBS, NPR and other public broadcasting entities engaged in activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d) of copyrighted published nondramatic musical compositions, except for public broadcasting entities covered by §§ 253.5 and 253.6, and except for compositions which are the subject of voluntary license agreements, or compositions in the repertories of ASCAP, BMI or SESAC which are licensed on terms and conditions established by a duly empowered Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel pursuant to the procedures set forth in subchapter B of 37 CFR, part 251.

(a) Determination of royalty rate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1998-2002</td>
<td>$211.53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of PBS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1998-2002</td>
<td>$53.59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in a PBS program:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1998-2002</td>
<td>$18.08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of a station of PBS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1998-2002</td>
<td>$3.81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in a program of a station of PBS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1998-2002</td>
<td>$21.44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of NPR:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1998-2002</td>
<td>$5.20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in a program of a station of NPR:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1998-2002</td>
<td>$1.52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the performance of such a work in an entire series shall be double the single program theme rate.

(10) In the event the work is first performed in a program of a station of PBS or NPR, and such program is subsequently distributed by PBS or NPR, an additional royalty payment shall be made equal to the difference between the rate specified in this section for a program of a station of PBS or NPR, respectively, and the rate specified in this section for a PBS or NPR program, respectively.

(b) Payment of royalty rate. The required royalty rate shall be paid to each known copyright owner not later than July 31 of each calendar year for uses during the first six months of that calendar year, and not later than January 31 for uses during the last six months of the preceding calendar year.

(c) Records of use. PBS and NPR shall, upon the request of a copyright owner of a published musical work who believes a musical composition of such owner has been performed under the terms of this schedule, permit such copyright owner a reasonable opportunity to examine their standard cue sheets listing the nondramatic performances of musical compositions on PBS and NPR programs. Any local PBS and NPR station that shall be required by the provisions of any voluntary license agreement with ASCAP or BMI covering the license period January 1, 1998, to December 31, 2002, to prepare a music use report shall, upon request of a copyright owner who believes a musical composition of such owner has been performed under the terms of this schedule, permit such copyright owner to examine the report.

(d) Terms of use. The fees provided in this schedule for the performance of a musical work in a program shall cover performances of such work in such program for a period of three years following the first performance.


§ 253.5 Performance of musical compositions by public broadcasting entities licensed to colleges and universities.

(a) Scope. This section applies to the performance of copyrighted published
nondramatic musical compositions by noncommercial radio stations which
are licensed to colleges, universities, or other nonprofit educational institu-
tions and which are not affiliated with National Public Radio.

(b) Voluntary license agreements. Not-withstanding the schedule of rates and
terms established in this section, the rates and terms of any license agree-
ments entered into by copyright owners and noncommercial radio stations
within the scope of this section concerning the performance of copyrighted
musical compositions, including performances by noncommercial radio sta-
tions, shall apply in lieu of the rates and terms of this section.

(c) Royalty rate. A public broadcasting entity within the scope of this
section may perform published nondramatic musical compositions subject to
the following schedule of royalty rates:

1) For all such compositions in the
repertory of ASCAP, $231 annually.

2) For all such compositions in the
repertory of BMI, $231 annually.

3) For all such compositions in the
repertory of SESAC, $63 annually.

4) For the performance of any other
such compositions: $1.

(d) Payment of royalty rate. The public
broadcasting entity shall pay the re-
quired royalty rate to ASCAP, BMI and
SESAC not later than January 31 of
each year.

(e) Records of use. A public broad-
casting entity subject to this section
shall furnish to ASCAP, BMI and
SESAC upon request, a music-use re-
port during one week of each calendar
year. ASCAP, BMI and SESAC shall
not in any one calendar year request
more than 10 stations to furnish such
reports.

§ 253.6 Performance of musical com-
positions by other public broad-
casting entities.

(a) Scope. This section applies to the
performance of copyrighted published
nondramatic musical compositions by
radio stations not licensed to colleges,
universities, or other nonprofit edu-
cational institutions and which are not
affiliated with National Public Radio.

(b) Voluntary license agreements. Not-
withstanding the schedule of rates and
terms established in this section, the
rates and terms of any license agree-
ments entered into by copyright own-
ers and noncommercial radio stations
within the scope of this section con-
cerning the performance of copyrighted
musical compositions, including per-
formances by noncommercial radio sta-
tions, shall apply in lieu of the rates
and terms of this section.

(c) Royalty rate. A public broadcasting entity within the scope of this
section may perform published nondramatic musical compositions subject to
the following schedule of royalty rates:

1) For all such compositions in the
repertory of ASCAP, in 1998, $375; in
1999, $390; in 2000, $405; in 2001, $420; in
2002, $440.

2) For all such compositions in the
repertory of BMI, in 1998, $375; in 1999,
$390; in 2000, $405; in 2001, $420; in 2002,
$440.

3) For all such compositions in the
repertory of SESAC, in 1998, $78; in
1999, $82; in 2000, $86; in 2001, $89; in 2002,
$92.

4) For the performance of any other
such compositions, in 1998 through 2002,
$1.

(d) Payment of royalty rate. The public
broadcasting entity shall pay the re-
quired royalty rate to ASCAP, BMI and
SESAC not later than January 31 of
each year.

(e) Records of use. A public broad-
casting entity subject to this section
shall furnish to ASCAP, BMI and
SESAC upon request, a music-use re-
port during one week of each calendar
year. ASCAP, BMI and SESAC each
shall not in any one calendar year re-
quest more than 5 stations to furnish
such reports.
§253.7

compositions subject to voluntary license agreements, or compositions represented by the Harry Fox Agency, Inc., SESAC, and/or the National Music Publishers Association and which are licensed on terms and conditions established by a duly empowered Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel pursuant to the procedures set forth in this subchapter, on and for the radio and television programs of public broadcasting entities, whether or not in synchronization or timed relationship with the visual or aural content, and for the making, reproduction, and distribution of copies and phonorecords of public broadcasting programs containing such nondramatic performances and displays of musical works solely for the purpose of transmission by public broadcasting entities. The rates and terms established in this schedule include the making of the reproductions described in 17 U.S.C. 118(d)(3).

(b) Royalty rate. (1)(i) For uses described in paragraph (a) of this section of a musical work in a PBS-distributed program, the royalty fees shall be calculated by multiplying the following per-composition rates by the number of different compositions in that PBS-distributed program:

1998-2002
Feature ........................................ $106.04
Concert feature (per minute) ....... 31.84
Background ................................. 53.59
Theme:
Single program or first series program ......................... 53.59
Other series program ................ 21.75

(ii) For such uses other than in a PBS-distributed television program, the royalty fee shall be calculated by multiplying the following per-composition rates by the number of different compositions in that program:

1998-2002
Feature ........................................ $8.76
Concert feature (per minute) ...... 2.30
Background ................................. 3.81
Theme:
Single program or first series program ......................... 3.81
Other series program ................ 1.52

(3) For the purposes of this schedule, a "Concert Feature" shall be deemed to be the nondramatic presentation in a program of all or part of a symphony, concerto, or other serious work originally written for concert performance or the nondramatic presentation in a program of portions of a serious work originally written for opera performance.

(4) For such uses other than in a NPR-produced radio program:

1998-2002
Feature ........................................ $.74
Concert feature (per half hour) ... 1.54
Background ................................. .37

(c) Payment of royalty rates. The required royalty rates shall be paid to each known copyright owner not later than July 31 of each calendar year for
§ 253.8 Terms and rates of royalty payments for the use of published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.

(a) Scope. This section establishes rates and terms for the use of published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works by public broadcasting entities for the activities described in 17 U.S.C. 118. The rates and terms established in this schedule include the making of the reproductions described in 17 U.S.C. 118(d)(3).

(b) Royalty rate. (1) The following schedule of rates shall apply to the use of works within the scope of this section:

(i) For such uses in a PBS-distributed program:

(A) For a featured display of a work.

1998-2002 .................................................. $64.78

(B) For background and montage display.

1998-2002 .................................................. $31.59

(C) For use of a work for program identification or for thematic use.

1998-2002 .................................................. $127.71

(D) For the display of an art reproduction copyrighted separately from the work of fine art from which the work was reproduced, irrespective of whether the reproduced work of fine art is copyrighted so as to be subject also to payment of a display fee under the terms of the schedule.

1998-2002 .................................................. $41.95

(ii) For such uses in other than PBS-distributed programs:

(A) For featured display of a work.

1998-2002 .................................................. $41.95

(B) For background and montage display.

1998-2002 .................................................. $21.51

(C) For use of a work for program identification or for thematic use.

1998-2002 .................................................. $85.76
(D) For the display of an art reproduction copyrighted separately from the work of fine art from which the work was reproduced, irrespective of whether the reproduced work of fine art is copyrighted so as to be subject also to payment of a display fee under the terms of this schedule.

1998-2002 ............................................................................. $21.51

For the purposes of this schedule the rate for the thematic use of a work in an entire series shall be double the single program theme rate. In the event the work is first used other than in a PBS-distributed program, and such program is subsequently distributed by PBS, an additional royalty payment shall be made equal to the difference between the rate specified in this section for other than a PBS-distributed program and the rate specified in this section for a PBS-distributed program.

(2) “Featured display” for purposes of this schedule means a full-screen or substantially full-screen display appearing on the screen for more than three seconds. Any display less than full-screen or substantially full-screen, or full-screen for three seconds or less, is deemed to be a “background or montage display”.

(3) “Thematic use” is the utilization of the works of one or more artists where the works constitute the central theme of the program or convey a story line.

(4) “Display of an art reproduction copyrighted separately from the work of fine art from which the work was reproduced” means a transparency or other reproduction of an underlying work of fine art.

(c) Payment of royalty rate. PBS or other public broadcasting entity shall pay the required royalty fees to each copyright owner not later than July 31 of each calendar year for uses during the first six months of that calendar year, and not later than January 31 for uses during the last six months of the preceding calendar year.

(1) Records of use. (1) PBS and its stations or other public broadcasting entity shall maintain and furnish either to copyright owners, or to the offices of generally recognized organizations representing the copyright owners of pictorial, graphic and sculptural works, copies of their standard lists containing the pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works displayed on their programs. Such notice shall include the name of the copyright owner, if known, the specific source from which the work was taken, a description of the work used, the title of the program on which the work was used, and the date of the original broadcast of the program.

(2) Such listings shall be furnished not later than July 31 of each calendar year for displays during the first six months of the calendar year, and not later than January 31 of each calendar year for displays during the second six months of the preceding calendar year.

(e) Filing of use reports with the Copyright Office. (1) PBS and its stations or other public broadcasting entity shall deposit with the Copyright Office copies of their standard lists containing the pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works displayed on their programs. Such notice shall include the name of the copyright owner, if known, the specific source from which the work was taken, a description of the work used, the title of the program on which the work was used, and the date of the original broadcast of the program.

(2) Such listings shall be furnished not later than July 31 of each calendar year for displays during the first six months of the calendar year, and not later than January 31 of each calendar year for displays during the second six months of the preceding calendar year.

(f) Terms of use. (1) The rates of this schedule are for unlimited broadcast use for a period of three years from the date of the first broadcast use of the work under this schedule. Succeeding broadcast use periods will require the following additional payment: Second three-year period—50 percent; each three-year period thereafter—25 percent; provided that a 100 percent additional payment prior to the expiration of the first three-year period will cover broadcast use during all subsequent broadcast use periods without limitation. Such succeeding uses which are subsequent to December 31, 2002, shall be subject to the rates established in this schedule.

(2) Pursuant to the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 118(f), nothing in this schedule shall be construed to permit, beyond
the limits of fair use as provided in 17 U.S.C. 107, the production of a transmission program drawn to any substantial extent from a published compilation of pictorial, graphic, or sculptural works.


§ 253.9 Unknown copyright owners.

If PBS and its stations, NPR and its stations, or other public broadcasting entity is not aware of the identity of, or unable to locate, a copyright owner who is entitled to receive a royalty payment under this part, they shall retain the required fee in a segregated trust account for a period of three years from the date of the required payment. No claim to such royalty fees shall be valid after the expiration of the three year period. Public broadcasting entities may establish a joint trust fund for the purposes of this section. Public broadcasting entities shall make available to the Copyright Office, upon request, information concerning fees deposited in trust funds.


§ 253.10 Cost of living adjustment.

(a) On December 1, 1998, the Librarian of Congress shall publish in the Federal Register a notice of the change in the cost of living as determined by the Consumer Price Index (all consumers, all items) during the period from the most recent index published prior to December 1, 1997, to the most recent index published prior to December 1, 1998. On each December 1 thereafter the Librarian of Congress shall publish a notice of the change in the cost of living during the period from the most recent index published prior to the previous notice, to the most recent Index published prior to December 1, of that year.

(b) On the same date of the notices published pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the Librarian of Congress shall publish in the Federal Register a revised schedule of rates for §253.5 which shall adjust those royalty amounts established in dollar amounts according to the change in the cost of living determined as provided in paragraph (a) of this section. Such royalty rates shall be fixed at the nearest dollar.

(c) The adjusted schedule of rates for §253.5 shall become effective thirty days after publication in the Federal Register.


§ 253.11 Notice of restrictions on use of reproductions of transmission programs.

Any public broadcasting entity which, pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 118, supplies a reproduction of a transmission program to governmental bodies or nonprofit institutions shall include with each copy of the reproduction a warning notice stating in substance that the reproductions may be used for a period of not more than seven days from the specified date of transmission, that the reproductions must be destroyed by the user before or at the end of such period, and that a failure to fully comply with these terms shall subject the body or institution to the remedies for infringement of copyright.

PART 254—ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY RATE FOR COIN-OPERATED PHONORECORD PLAYERS

Sec.
254.1 General.
254.2 Definition of coin-operated phonorecord player.
254.3 Compulsory license fees for coin-operated phonorecord players.


§ 254.1 General.

This part 254 establishes the compulsory license fees for coin-operated phonorecord players beginning on January 1, 1982, in accordance with the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 116.

§ 254.2 Definition of coin-operated phonorecord player.

As used in this part, the term coin-operated phonorecord player is a machine or device that:

(a) Is employed solely for the performance of nondramatic musical works by means of phonorecords upon being activated by insertion of coins, currency, tokens, or other monetary units or their equivalent;

(b) Is located in an establishment making no direct or indirect charge for admission;

(c) Is accompanied by a list of the titles of all the musical works available for performance on it, which list is affixed to the phonorecord player or posted in the establishment in a prominent position where it can be readily examined by the public; and

(d) Affords a choice of works available for performance and permits the choice to be made by the patrons of the establishment in which it is located.

§ 254.3 Compulsory license fees for coin-operated phonorecord players.

(a) Commencing January 1, 1982, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player shall be $25.

(b) Commencing January 1, 1984, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player shall be $50.

(c) Commencing January 1, 1987, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player shall be $63.

(d) If performances are made available on a particular coin-operated phonorecord player for the first time after July 1 of any year, the compulsory license fee for the remainder of that year shall be one half of the annual rate of (a), (b), or (c) of this section, whichever is applicable.

(e) Commencing January 1, 1990, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player is suspended through December 31, 1999, or until such earlier or later time as the March 1990 license agreement between AMOA and ASCAP/BMI/SESAC is terminated.

§ 255.1 General.

This part 255 adjusts the rates of royalties payable under the compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords, including digital phonorecord deliveries, embodying nondramatic musical works, under 17 U.S.C. 115.

§ 255.2 Royalty payable under compulsory license.

With respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord, the royalty payable shall be either four cents, or three-quarters of one cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, for every phonorecord made and distributed on or after July 1, 1981, subject to adjustment pursuant to § 255.3.

§ 255.3 Adjustment of royalty rate.

(a) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1983, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 4.25 cents, or 0.8...
cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (b) through (m) of this section.

(b) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after July 1, 1984, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 4.5 cents, or 0.85 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (b) through (m) of this section.

(c) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1986, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 5.0 cents, or 0.95 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (c) through (m) of this section.

(d) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1988, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 5.25 cents, or 1.0 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (d) through (m) of this section.

(e) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1990, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 5.7 cents, or 1.1 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (e) through (m) of this section.

(f) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1992, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.25 cents, or 1.2 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (f) through (m) of this section.

(g) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1994, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.6 cents, or 1.25 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (g) through (m) of this section.

(h) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1996, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.95 cents, or 1.3 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (h) through (m) of this section.

(i) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1998, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 7.1 cents, or 1.35 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (i) through (m) of this section.

(j) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 2000, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 7.55 cents, or 1.45 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (j) through (m) of this section.

(k) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 2002, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 8.0 cents, or 1.55 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (k) through (m) of this section.

(l) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 2004, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 8.5 cents, or 1.65 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (l) through (m) of this section.

(m) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 2006, the royalty rate payable with respect
§ 255.4  Definition of digital phonorecord delivery.

A “digital phonorecord delivery” is each individual delivery of a phonorecord by digital transmission of a sound recording which results in a specifically identifiable reproduction by or for any transmission recipient of a phonorecord of that sound recording, regardless of whether the digital transmission is also a public performance of the sound recording or any nondramatic musical work embodied therein. A digital phonorecord delivery does not result from a real-time, non-interactive subscription transmission of a sound recording where no reproduction of the sound recording or the musical work embodied therein is made from the inception of the transmission through to its receipt by the transmission recipient in order to make the sound recording audible.

§ 255.5  Royalty rate for digital phonorecord deliveries in general.

(a) For every digital phonorecord delivery made on or before December 31, 1997, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 9.1 cents, or 1.75 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger.

(b) For every digital phonorecord delivery made on or after January 1, 1998, except for digital phonorecord deliveries where the reproduction or distribution of a phonorecord is incident to the transmission which constitutes a digital phonorecord delivery, as specified in 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(C) and (D), the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be the royalty rate prescribed in §255.3 for the making and distribution of a phonorecord made and distributed on the date of the delivery of the physical phonorecord (the “Physical Rate”). In any future proceeding under 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(C) or (D), the royalty rates payable for a compulsory license for digital phonorecord deliveries in general shall be established de novo, and no precedential effect shall be given to the royalty rate payable under this paragraph for any period prior to the period as to which the royalty rates are to be established in such future proceeding.

§ 255.6  Royalty rate for incidental digital phonorecord deliveries.

The royalty rate for digital phonorecord deliveries where the reproduction or distribution of a phonorecord is incident to the transmission which constitutes a digital phonorecord delivery, as specified in 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(C) and (D), is deferred for consideration until the next digital phonorecord delivery rate adjustment proceeding pursuant to the schedule set forth in §255.7; provided, however, that any owner or user of a copyrighted work with a significant interest in such royalty rate, as provided in 17 U.S.C. 803(a)(1), may petition the Librarian of Congress to establish a rate prior to the commencement of the next digital phonorecord delivery rate adjustment proceeding. In the event such a petition is filed, the Librarian of Congress shall proceed in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 115(c)(3)(D), and all applicable regulations, as though the petition had been filed in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 803(a)(1).

§ 255.7  Future proceedings.

§256.2 Royalty fee for compulsory license for secondary transmission by cable systems.

(a) Commencing with the first semiannual accounting period of 1985 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, the royalty rates established by 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(1)(B) shall be as follows:

(1) .893 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for the privilege of further transmitting any nonnetwork programming of a primary transmitter in whole or in part beyond the local service area of such primary transmitter, such amount to be applied against the fees, if any, payable pursuant to paragraphs (a)(2) through (4) and (c);

(2) .893 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for the first distant signal equivalent;

(3) .563 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for each of the second, third and fourth distant signal equivalents; and

(4) .265 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for the fifth distant signal equivalent and each additional distant signal equivalent thereafter.

(b) Commencing with the first semiannual accounting period of 1985 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, the gross receipts limitations established by 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(1)(C) and (D) shall be adjusted as follows:

(1) If the actual gross receipts paid by the subscribers to a cable system for the purpose of this paragraph shall be computed by subtracting from such actual gross receipts the amount by which $146,000 exceeds such actual gross receipts, except that in no case shall a cable system's gross receipts be reduced to less than $5,600. The royalty fee payable under this paragraph shall be 0.5 of 1 per centum regardless of the number of distant signal equivalents, if any; and

(2) If the actual gross receipts paid by the subscribers to a cable system for the purpose of this paragraph shall be 0.5 of 1 per centum regardless of the number of distant signal equivalents, if any.

(c) Notwithstanding paragraphs (a) and (d) of this section, commencing with the first accounting period of 1983
and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, for each distant signal equivalent or fraction thereof not represented by the carriage of:

(1) Any signal which was permitted (or, in the case of cable systems commencing operations after June 24, 1981, which would have been permitted) under the rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on June 24, 1981, or

(2) A signal of the same type (that is, independent, network, or non-commercial educational) substituted for such permitted signal, or

(3) A signal which was carried pursuant to an individual waiver of the rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission, as such rules were in effect on June 24, 1981; the royalty rate shall be, in lieu of the royalty rates specified in paragraphs (a) (2) through (4) and (d) of this section, 3.75 per centum of the gross receipts of the cable systems for each distant signal equivalent; any fraction of a distant signal equivalent shall be computed at its fractional value.

(d) Commencing with the first semiannual accounting period of 1990 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, in the case of a cable system located outside the 35-mile specified zone of a commercial VHF station that places a predicted Grade B contour, in whole or in part, over the cable system, and that is not significantly viewed or otherwise exempt from the FCC's syndicated exclusivity rules in effect on June 24, 1981, for each distant signal equivalent or fraction thereof represented by the carriage of such commercial VHF station, the royalty rate shall be, in addition to the amount specified in paragraph (a) of this section, .309 per centum of such gross receipts for the first distant signal equivalent; .189 per centum of such gross receipts for the second, third, and fourth distant signal equivalents; and .089 per centum of such gross receipts for the fifth distant signal equivalent and each additional distant signal equivalent thereafter;

(3) For purposes of this section top 50 television markets and "second 50 television markets" shall be defined as the comparable terms are defined or interpreted in accordance with 47 CFR 76.51, as effective June 24, 1981.


PART 257—FILING OF CLAIMS TO SATELLITE CARRIER ROYALTY FEES

Sec.
257.1 General.
257.2 Time of filing.
257.3 Content of claims.
257.4 Compliance with statutory dates.
257.5 Copies of claims.
257.6 Separate claims required.


SOURCE: 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

§ 257.1 General.

This part prescribes the procedures under 17 U.S.C. 119(b)(4) whereby parties claiming to be entitled to compulsory license royalty fees for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers of television broadcast signals to the public for private home viewing shall file claims with the Copyright Office.

§ 257.2 Time of filing.

During the month of July each year, any party claiming to be entitled to compulsory license royalty fees for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers during the previous calendar year of television broadcast signals to the public for private home viewing shall
file a claim to such fees with the Copyright Office. No royalty fees shall be distributed to any party during the specified period unless such party has timely filed a claim to such fees. Claimants may file claims jointly or as a single claim.

§ 257.3 Content of claims.
(a) Claims filed by parties claiming to be entitled to satellite carrier compulsory license royalty fees shall include the following information:
   (1) The full legal name of the person or entity claiming royalty fees.
   (2) The telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the person or entity.
   (3) If the claim is a joint claim, a concise statement of the authorization of the filing of the joint claim, and the name of each claimant to the joint claim. For this purpose, a performing rights society shall not be required to obtain from its members or affiliates separate authorizations, apart from their standard membership or affiliate agreements, or to list the name of each of its members or affiliates in the joint claim.
   (4) For individual claims, a general statement of the nature of the claimant’s copyrighted works and identification of at least one secondary transmission by a satellite carrier of such works establishing a basis for the claim. For joint claims, a general statement of the nature of the joint claimants’ copyrighted works and identification of at least one secondary transmission of one of the joint claimants’ copyrighted works by a satellite carrier establishing a basis for the joint claim.
(b) Claims shall bear the original signature of the claimant or of a duly authorized representative of the claimant.
(c) In the event that the legal name and/or full address of the claimant changes after the filing of the claim, the claimant shall notify the Copyright Office of such change. If the good faith efforts of the Copyright Office to contact the claimant are frustrated because of failure to notify the Office of a name and/or address change, the claim may be subject to dismissal.

§ 257.4 Compliance with statutory dates.
(a) Claims filed with the Copyright Office shall be considered timely filed only if:
   (1) They are hand delivered, either by the claimant, the claimant’s agent, or a private delivery carrier, to: Office of the Register of Copyrights, Room 403, James Madison Memorial Building, 101 Independence Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20540, during normal business hours during the month of July; or
   (2) They are addressed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, and are deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and bear a July U.S. postmark.
(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), in any year in which July 31 falls on a Saturday, Sunday, holiday, or other nonbusiness day within the District of Columbia or the Federal Government, claims received by the Copyright Office by the first business day in August, or properly addressed and deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and postmarked by the first business day in August, shall be considered timely filed.
(c) Claims dated only with a business meter that are received after July 31, will not be accepted as having been timely filed.
(d) No claim may be filed by facsimile transmission.
(e) In the event that a properly addressed and mailed claim is not timely received by the Copyright Office, a claimant may nonetheless prove that the claim was properly filed if it was sent by certified mail return receipt requested, and the claimant can provide a receipt bearing a July date stamp of the U.S. Postal Service, except where paragraph (b) of this section applies. No affidavit of an officer or employee of the claimant, or of a U.S. postal
§ 257.5 Copies of claims.

A claimant shall, for each claim submitted to the Copyright Office, file an original and two copies of the claim to satellite carrier royalty fees.

§ 257.6 Separate claims required.

If a party intends to file claims for both cable compulsory license and satellite carrier compulsory license royalty fees during the same month of July, that party must file separate claims with the Copyright Office. Any single claim which purports to file for both cable and satellite carrier royalty fees will be dismissed.

PART 258—ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY FEE FOR SECONDARY TRANSMISSIONS BY SATELLITE CARRIERS

Sec.
258.1 General.
258.2 Definition of syndex-proof signal.
258.3 Royalty fee for secondary transmission of broadcast stations by satellite carriers.


§ 258.1 General.

This part 258 adjusts the rates of royalties payable under the compulsory license for the secondary transmission of broadcast stations by satellite carriers.

[57 FR 19053, May 1, 1992. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994]

§ 258.2 Definition of syndex-proof signal.

A satellite retransmission of a broadcast signal shall be deemed “syndex-proof” for purposes of §258.3(b) if, during any semiannual reporting period, the retransmission does not include any program which, if delivered by any cable system in the United States, would be subject to the syndicated exclusivity rules of the Federal Communications Commission.

[57 FR 19053, May 1, 1992. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994]

§ 258.3 Royalty fee for secondary transmission of broadcast stations by satellite carriers.

(a) Commencing May 1, 1992, the royalty rate for the secondary transmission of broadcast stations for private home viewing by satellite carriers shall be as follows:

(1) 17.5 cents per subscriber per month for superstations.
(2) 14 cents per subscriber per month for superstations whose signals are syndex-proof, as defined in §258.2.
(3) 6 cents per subscriber per month for network stations and noncommercial educational stations.

(b) Commencing January 1, 1998, the royalty fee for secondary transmission of broadcast stations for private home viewing by satellite carriers shall be as follows:

(1) 27 cents per subscriber per month for distant superstations.
(2) 27 cents per subscriber per month for distant network stations.
(3) No royalty rate (zero) for a superstation secondarily transmitted within the station's local market, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 119(d)(11).
(4) No royalty rate (zero) for a network station secondarily transmitted within the station's local market, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 119(d)(11), to subscribers residing in unserved households, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 119(d)(10).

(c) Commencing July 1, 1999, the royalty rate for secondary transmission of broadcast stations for private home viewing by satellite carriers shall be as follows:

(1) 18.9 cents per subscriber per month for distant superstations.
(2) 14.85 cents per subscriber per month for distant network stations.
(3) No royalty rate (zero) for the Public Broadcasting Service satellite feed.

PART 259—FILING OF CLAIMS TO DIGITAL AUDIO RECORDING DEVICES AND MEDIA ROYALTY PAYMENTS

Sec. 259.1 General.
259.2 Time of filing.
259.3 Content of claims.
259.4 Content of notices regarding independent administrators.
259.5 Compliance with statutory dates.
259.6 Copies of claims.


§ 259.1 General.
This part prescribes procedures pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1007(a)(1), whereby interested copyright parties, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7), claiming to be entitled to royalty payments made for the importation and distribution in the United States, or the manufacture and distribution in the United States, of digital audio recording devices and media pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1006, shall file claims with the Copyright Office.

[58 FR 53826, Oct. 18, 1993. Redesignated at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994.]

§ 259.2 Time of filing.
(a) General. During January and February of each succeeding year, every interested copyright party claiming to be entitled to royalty payments made for digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments made for quarterly periods ending during the previous calendar year shall file a claim with the Copyright Office. Claimants may file claims jointly or as a single claim.

(b) Consequences of an untimely filing. No royalty payments for the previous calendar year shall be distributed to any interested copyright party who has not filed a claim to such royalty payments during January or February of the following calendar year.

(c) Authorization. Any organization or association, acting as a common agent, shall be required to obtain from its members or affiliates separate, specific, and written authorization, signed by members, affiliates, or their representatives, to file claims to the Musical Works Fund or the Sound Recordings Fund, apart from their standard agreements, for purposes of royalties filing and fee distribution. Such written authorization, however, will not be required for claimants to the Musical Works Fund where either:

(1) The agreement between the organization or association and its members or affiliates specifically authorizes such entity to represent its members or affiliates before the Copyright Office and/or the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels in royalty filing and fee distribution proceedings; or

(2) The agreement between the organization or association and its members or affiliates, as specified in a court order issued by a court with authority to interpret the terms of the contract, authorizes such entity to represent its members or affiliates before the Copyright Office and/or Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels in royalty filing and fee distribution proceedings.


§ 259.3 Content of claims.
(a) Claims filed by interested copyright parties for digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments shall include the following information:

(1) The full legal name of the person or entity claiming royalty payments.

(2) The telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the person or entity.

(3) A statement as to how the claimant fits within the definition of interested copyright party specified in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7).

(4) A statement as to whether the claim is being made against the Sound Recordings Fund or the Musical Works Fund, as set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b) and to which Subfund of the Sound Recordings Fund (i.e., the copyright owners or featured recording artists Subfund) or the Musical Works Fund (i.e., the music publishers or writers Subfund) the claim is being made against as set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b)(1)-(2).

(5) Identification, establishing a basis for the claim, of at least one musical
§ 259.4 Content of notices regarding independent administrators.

(a) The independent administrator jointly appointed by the interested copyright parties, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7)(A), and the American Federation of Musicians (or any successor entity) for the purpose of managing, and ultimately distributing the royalty payments to nonfeatured vocalists as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b)(1), shall file a notice informing the Copyright Office of his/her full name and address.

(b) Claims shall be in the form of digital musical recordings or analog musical recordings, or (ii) Disseminated to the public in transmissions.

(c) A notice filed under paragraph (a) or (b) of this section shall include the following information:

(1) The full name of the independent administrator;

(2) The telephone number and facsimile number, if any, full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the independent administrator.

(d) Notice shall bear the original signature of the independent administrator or a duly authorized representative of the independent administrator, and shall be filed with the Copyright Office no later than March 31 of each year, commencing with March 31, 1994.

(e) No notice may be filed by facsimile transmission.


§ 259.5 Compliance with statutory dates.

(a) Claims filed with the Copyright Office shall be considered timely filed only if:

(1) They are hand delivered, either by the claimant, the claimant’s agent, or a private delivery carrier, to: Office of the Register of Copyrights, Room 403, James Madison Memorial Building, 101 Independence Avenue SE, Washington, DC 20540, during normal business hours during the month of January or February; or

(2) They are addressed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, and are deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and bear a January or February U.S. postmark.
Copyright Office, Library of Congress § 260.2

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), in any year in which the last day of February falls on Saturday, Sunday, a holiday, or other nonbusiness day within the District of Columbia or the Federal Government, claims received by the Copyright Office by the first business day in March, or properly addressed and deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and postmarked by the first business day in March, shall be considered timely filed.

c) Claims dated only with a business meter that are received after the last day of February, will not be accepted as having been timely filed.

d) No claim may be filed by facsimile transmission.

e) In the event that a properly addressed and mailed claim is not timely received by the Copyright Office, a claimant may nonetheless prove that the claim was properly filed if it was sent by certified mail return receipt requested, and the claimant can provide a receipt bearing a January or February date stamp of the U.S. Postal Service, except where paragraph (b) of this section applies. No affidavit of an officer or employee of the claimant, or of a U.S. postal worker will be accepted in lieu of the receipt.

§ 259.6 Copies of claims.

A claimant shall, for each claim submitted to the Copyright Office, file an original and two copies of the claim to digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments.

§ 260.1 General.

(a) This part 260 establishes terms and rates of royalty payments for the public performance of sound recordings by nonexempt subscription digital transmission services in accordance with the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 114 and 801(b)(1).

(b) Upon compliance with 17 U.S.C. 114 and the terms and rates of this part, a nonexempt subscription digital transmission service may engage in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 114.

§ 260.2 Royalty fees for the digital performance of sound recordings.

(a) Commencing June 1, 1998, the royalty fee for the digital performance of sound recordings by nonexempt subscription digital services shall be 6.5% of gross revenues resulting from residential services in the United States.

(b) A nonexempt subscription digital transmission service (the “Licensee”) shall pay a late fee of 1.5% per month, or the highest lawful rate, whichever is lower, for any payment received after the due date. Late fees shall accrue from the due date until payment is received.

c)(1) For purposes of this section, gross revenues shall mean all monies derived from the operation of the programming service of the Licensee and shall be comprised of the following:

(i) Monies received by Licensee from Licensee’s carriers and directly from residential U.S. subscribers for Licensee’s programming service;

(ii) Licensee’s advertising revenues (as billed), or other monies received from sponsors if any, less advertising agency commissions not to exceed 15% of those fees incurred to recognized advertising agency not owned or controlled by Licensee;

(iii) Monies received for the provision of time on the Programming Service to any third party;

(iv) Monies received from the sale of time to providers of paid programming such as infomercials;
(v) Where merchandise, service, or anything of value is received by Licensee in lieu of cash consideration for the use of Licensee’s programming service, the fair market value thereof or Licensee’s prevailing published rate, whichever is less;

(vi) Monies or other consideration received by Licensee from Licensee’s carriers, but not including monies received by Licensee’s carriers from others and not accounted for by Licensee’s carriers to Licensee, for the provision of hardware by anyone and used in connection with the Programming Service;

(vii) Monies or other consideration received for any references to or inclusion of any product or service on the programming service; and

(viii) Bad debts recovered regarding paragraphs (c)(1) (i) through (vii) of this section.

(2) Gross revenues shall include such payments as set forth in paragraphs (c)(1) (i) through (viii) of this section to which Licensee is entitled but which are paid to a parent, subsidiary, division, or affiliate of Licensee, in lieu of payment to Licensee but not including payments to Licensee’s carriers for the programming service. Licensee shall be allowed a deduction from “gross revenues” as defined in paragraph (c)(1) of this section for affiliate revenue returned during the reporting period and for bad debts actually written off during reporting period.

(d) During any given payment period, the value of each performance of each digital sound recording shall be the same.

§ 260.4 Confidential information and statements of account.

(a) For purposes of this part, confidential information shall include statements of account and any information pertaining to the statements of account designated as confidential by the nonexempt subscription digital transmission service filing the statement. Confidential information shall also include any information so designated in a confidentiality agreement which has been duly executed between a nonexempt subscription digital transmission service and an interested party, or between one or more interested parties; Provided that all such information shall be made available, for the verification proceedings provided for in §§ 260.5 and 260.6 of this part.

(b) Nonexempt subscription digital transmission services shall submit monthly statements of account on a form provided by the agent designated to collect such forms and the monthly royalty payments.

(c) A statement of account shall include only such information as is necessary to verify the accompanying royalty payment. Additional information beyond that which is sufficient to verify the calculation of the royalty fees shall not be included on the statement of account.

37 CFR Ch. II (7–1–00 Edition)
(d) Access to the confidential information pertaining to the royalty payments shall be limited to:

(1) Those employees of the designated agent who are not also employees or officers of a sound recording copyright owner or performing artist, and who, for the purpose of performing their assigned duties during the ordinary course of business, require access to the records; and

(2) An independent and qualified auditor who is not an employee or officer of a sound recording copyright owner or performing artist, but is authorized to act on behalf of the interested copyright owners with respect to the verification of the royalty payments.

(e) The designated agent shall implement procedures to safeguard all confidential financial and business information, including but not limited to royalty payments, submitted as part of the statements of account. Confidential information shall be maintained in locked files.

(f) Books and records relating to the payment of the license fees shall be kept in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles for a period of three years. These records shall include, but are not limited to, the statements of account, records documenting an interested party's share of the royalty fees, and the records pertaining to the administration of the collection process and the further distribution of the royalty fees to those interested parties entitled to receive such fees.

§ 260.5 Verification of statements of account.

(a) General. This section prescribes general rules pertaining to the verification of the statements of account by interested parties according to terms promulgated by a duly appointed copyright arbitration royalty panel, under its authority to set reasonable terms and rates pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 114 and 801(b)(1), and the Librarian of Congress under his authority pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f).

(b) Frequency of verification. Interested parties may conduct a single audit of a nonexempt subscription digital transmission service during any given calendar year.

(c) Notice of intent to audit. Interested parties must submit a notice of intent to audit a particular service with the Copyright Office, which shall publish in the Federal Register a notice announcing the receipt of the notice of intent to audit within 30 days of the filing of the interested parties' notice. Such notification of intent to audit shall also be served at the same time on the party to be audited.

(d) Retention of records. The party requesting the verification procedure shall retain the report of the verification for a period of three years.

(e) Acceptable verification procedure. An audit, including underlying paperwork, which was performed in the ordinary course of business according to generally accepted auditing standards by an independent auditor, shall serve as an acceptable verification procedure for all parties.

(f) Costs of the verification procedure. The interested parties requesting the verification procedure shall pay for the cost of the verification procedure, unless an independent auditor concludes that there was an underpayment of five (5) percent or more; in which case, the service which made the underpayment shall bear the costs of the verification procedure.

(g) Interested parties. For purposes of this section, interested parties are those copyright owners who are entitled to receive royalty fees pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 114(g), their designated agents, or the entity designated by the copyright arbitration royalty panel in 37 CFR 260.3 to receive and to distribute the royalty fees.

§ 260.6 Verification of royalty payments.

(a) General. This section prescribes general rules pertaining to the verification of the payment of royalty fees to those parties entitled to receive such fees, according to terms promulgated by a duly appointed copyright arbitration royalty panel, under its authority to set reasonable terms and rates pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 114 and 801(b)(1), and the Librarian of Congress under his authority pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 802(f).
(b) Frequency of verification. Interested parties may conduct a single audit of the entity making the royalty payment during any given calendar year.

(c) Notice of intent to audit. Interested parties must submit a notice of intent to audit the entity making the royalty payment with the Copyright Office, which shall publish in the Federal Register a notice announcing the receipt of the notice of intent to audit within 30 days of the filing of the interested parties' notice. Such notification of interest shall also be served at the same time on the party to be audited.

(d) Retention of records. The party requesting the verification procedure shall retain the report of the verification for a period of three years.

(e) Acceptable verification procedure. An audit, including underlying paperwork, which was performed in the ordinary course of business according to generally accepted auditing standards by an independent auditor, shall serve as an acceptable verification procedure for all parties.

(f) Costs of the verification procedure. The interested parties requesting the verification procedure shall pay for the cost of the verification procedure, unless an independent auditor concludes that there was an underpayment of five (5) percent or more; in which case, the entity which made the underpayment shall bear the costs of the verification procedure.

(g) Interested parties. For purposes of this section, interested parties are those copyright owners who are entitled to receive royalty fees pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 114(g), or their designated agents.

§ 260.7 Unknown copyright owners.

If the designated collecting agent is unable to identify or locate a copyright owner who is entitled to receive a royalty payment under this part, the collecting agent shall retain the required payment in a segregated trust account for a period of three years from the date of payment. No claim to such payment shall be valid after the expiration of the three-year period. After the expiration of this period, the collecting agent may use the unclaimed funds to offset the cost of the administration of the collection and distribution of the royalty fees.

INDEX TO CHAPTER II—COPYRIGHT OFFICE, LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

**EDITORIAL NOTE:** This listing is provided for information purposes only. It is compiled and kept up-to-date by the Copyright Office, Library of Congress.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access to, and confidentiality of, Statements of Account for digital audio recording devices or media</td>
<td>201.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditor's Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media</td>
<td>201.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access (public) to CARP 1 meetings</td>
<td>251.11 to 251.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account (Statements of) for digital audio recording devices or media</td>
<td>201.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquisition and deposit of unpublished television transmission programs</td>
<td>202.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addresses prescribed for communications with Copyright Office</td>
<td>201.1, 201.2, 201.5, 202.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment (rate) proceedings (CARP) 1</td>
<td>251.60 to 251.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advance notices of potential infringement</td>
<td>201.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affixation (methods of) of copyright notice and positions on works</td>
<td>201.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agreements between copyright owners and public broadcasting entities, Recordation of</td>
<td>201.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend or correct individual's record under Privacy Act, Appeal of refusal to</td>
<td>204.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amendment or correction of records under Privacy Act, Request for</td>
<td>204.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual Statements of Account, Contents of</td>
<td>201.28(f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbitrators (CARP) 1, Financial disclosure statements of</td>
<td>251.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbitrators (CARP) 1, Standards of conduct for</td>
<td>251.30 to 251.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architectural works</td>
<td>202.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architectural works, Deposit of</td>
<td>202.20(c)(2)(xviii)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archives and libraries, Warnings of copyright for use by</td>
<td>201.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arts (visual), registration of (see Pictorial, graphic &amp; sculptural works)</td>
<td>202.10, 202.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arts (visual) registry</td>
<td>201.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment of costs of (CARP) 1 panels</td>
<td>251.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio (digital) recording devices or media, Initial notice of distribution of</td>
<td>201.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio (digital) recording devices or media, Statements of Account for</td>
<td>201.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditor's Reports filed in Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media (Access to, and confidentiality of)</td>
<td>201.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditor's Reports (In general)</td>
<td>201.28, 201.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic registration defined</td>
<td>201.5(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Best Edition</td>
<td>202.19, 202.20, Appendix B to Part 202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blind and physically handicapped, Voluntary license to permit reproduction of nondramatic literary works solely for use of</td>
<td>201.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcasting entities and copyright owners, Recordation of agreements between</td>
<td>201.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 CARP is the acronym for Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel.
Broadcasting entities (public), Performance of musical compositions by ........................................................................253.4, 253.5
Broadcasting entity (public) defined .............................................................................................................253.2
Cable compulsory license, Adjustment of royalty fees for ........................................................................256.1, 256.2
Cable compulsory license, Application of the 3.75% rate ...........................................................................201.17, 256.2
Cable contracts for systems outside 48 contiguous states, Recordation of ...............................................................................................................201.12
Cable royalty fees, Filing of claims for [under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4), 801, and 803] ......................................................................................................................252.1 to 252.5
Cable systems, Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by ..................................................................................................................201.17
Cancellation of completed registrations ........................................................................................................201.7
CARP 1 arbitrators, Financial disclosure statements of ................................................................................251.32
CARP 1 organization ....................................................................................................................................251.1 to 251.8
CARP 1 meetings, Public access to ................................................................................................................251.11 to 251.16
CARP 1 records, Inspection of ......................................................................................................................251.21 to 251.23
Cartographic (three-dimensional) representations of area, such as globes and relief models ............................................................202.20(c)(2)(xi)(B)
Certification and Documents Section, Information and Reference Division, as address for certain requests .................................................................................201.1(c)
Certification of copies or documents, Requests for .......................................................................................201.2(d)
Certification (official) defined .......................................................................................................................201.4(a)
Claimants, Copyright applications ................................................................................................................202.3
Claims to cable royalty fees under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4), 801 and 803 ...............................................................252.1 to 252.5
Coin-operated phonorecord player defined ..................................................................................................254.2
Coin-operated phonorecord players, Adjustment of royalty rate for ..............................................................254.1 to 254.3
Collective works, Deposit of contributions to ................................................................................................202.20(c)(2)(xv)
Colleges and universities, Performance of nondramatic musical compositions by public broadcasting entities licensed to ................................................................................253.5
Commercial prints and labels, Deposit of ......................................................................................................202.20(c)(2)(v)
Communications with Copyright Office, Addresses prescribed for ................................................................201.1
Complete copy defined for mandatory deposit only .......................................................................................202.19(b)(2)
Complete copy for purposes of registration, Definition of ........................................................................202.20(b)(2)
Compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Notice of intention to obtain .................................................................................................................201.18
Compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Royalties and statements of account ..................................................................................................................255.1 to 255.5
Compulsory license for secondary transmissions by cable systems, Statements of Account covering ..............................................................................................................201.17
Computer programs and databases embodied in machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format, Deposit of ......................................................................................202.20(c)(2)(vii)
Computer shareware, Recordation of documents pertaining to....................................................................201.26
Computer software (public domain), Recordation of documents regarding donation of ...................................................201.26
Conduct standards for CARP 1 arbitrators ..................................................................................................251.30 to 251.39
Confidentiality of, and access to, Statements of Account, Auditor's Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media ..............................................................................................................201.29
Congress (Library of), Deposit of published copies or phonorecords for ......................................................202.19
Congress (Library of), Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to ................................................................202.23
Contents of Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for secondary cable transmissions ..........................................................................................................................201.17
Contributions to collective works, Deposit of ................................................................................................202.20(c)(2)(xv)
Copies and phonorecords, Deposit for copyright registration of ........................................................................202.20
Definitions:

Date of recordation defined ............................................................. 201.4(a), 201.26(f)
Date (effective) of registration .......................................................................... 202.4

Databases and computer programs embodied in machine-readable copies

Costs of CARP1 panels, Assessment of ............................................................. 251.54

Correspondence (official), Access and requests for copies of................. 201.2(c) & (d)

Corrections and amplifications of copyright registrations................................ 201.5

Correction or amendment of records under Privacy Act, Request for............... 204.7

Copyright Warning for software lending by nonprofit libraries....................... 201.24

Copyright restoration under Uruguay Round Agreements Act........................ 201.33

Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP)1: Rules and Procedures

Access (public) to CARP 1 meetings........................................................ 251.11 to 251.16
Conduct standards of CARP 1 arbitrators ................................................... 251.30 to 251.39
Ex parte communications ............................................................................. 251.33
Inspection of CARP 1 records ...................................................................... 251.21 to 251.23
Organization of CARP 1, ........................................................................ 251.1 to 251.8
Procedures of CARP 1 panels................................................................. 251.40 to 251.58
Public access to CARP 1 meetings .............................................................. 251.11 to 251.16
Rate adjustment proceedings ........................................................................... 251.60 to 251.65
Records (CARP), 1 Inspection of .................................................................. 251.21 to 251.23
Royalty fee distribution proceedings ......................................................... 251.70 to 251.73
Standards of conduct for CARP 1 arbitrators ............................................. 251.30 to 251.39

Copyright deposits, Full-term retention of.................................................... 202.23
Copyright deposits (unpublished), Transfer to Library of Congress of.......... 201.23
Copyright, Material not subject to ................................................................. 202.1
Copyright notice, General ........................................................................... 202.20
Copyright notice, Methods of affixation and position.................................... 201.20
Copyright Office fees. See Fees .................................................................. 201.3
Copyright Office, Information given by ......................................................... 201.2
Copyright Office, Proper address for mail and other communications with......................................................................................... 201.1
Copyright owners and broadcasting entities, Recordation of agreements between........................................................................................................ 201.9
Copyright, Registration of claims to ............................................................. 202.3
Copyright restoration for certain motion pictures and their contents under NAFTA, 3 Procedures for .......................................................... 201.31
Copyright restoration under Uruguay Round Agreements Act ....................... 201.33
Copyright Warning for software lending by nonprofit libraries ..................... 201.24
Correction or amendment of records under Privacy Act, Request for.............. 204.7
Corrections and amplifications of copyright registrations, ................................. 201.5
Correspondence (official), Access and requests for copies of, ........................ 201.2(c) & (d)
Costs of CARP 1 panels, Assessment of ..................................................... 251.54

Databases and computer programs embodied in machine-readable copies

other than CD-ROM format, Deposit of ..................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(viii)

Date (effective) of registration ...................................................................... 202.4

Date of recordation defined........................................................................... 201.4(a), 201.26(f)

Definitions:

Advance Notice of Potential Infringement .................................................. 201.22(a)(1)
Annual Statement of Account (compulsory license) ....................................... 201.19(a)(2)
Architectural works ...................................................................................... 202.11(b)
Basic registration ......................................................................................... 201.5(a)
Cable system .................................................................................................. 201.17(b)(2)
Cancellation .................................................................................................... 201.7(a)
Certification (official) .................................................................................... 201.4(e)

3NAFTA is the acronym for North American Free Trade Agreement.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coin-operated phonorecord player</td>
<td>254.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete copy (deposit for registration)</td>
<td>202.20(b)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete copy (manditory deposit)</td>
<td>202.19(b)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer shareware</td>
<td>201.26(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contributions to collective works</td>
<td>202.20(b)(2)(i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current base rate (cable systems)</td>
<td>201.17(h)(1)(i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of recordation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital audio transmissions, Arbitration concerning rates and terms</td>
<td>251.2, 251.61, 251.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital phonorecord delivery</td>
<td>255.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital subscription transmissions, Initial notice of use of works</td>
<td>201.35 - 201.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Warning of Copyright</td>
<td>201.14(a)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distant signal equivalent</td>
<td>201.17(b)(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distributor (satellite carrier)</td>
<td>201.11(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document designated as pertaining to computer shareware</td>
<td>201.26(b)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross receipts for basic service (cable systems)</td>
<td>201.17(b)(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Individual (Privacy Act)</td>
<td>204.2(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local service area of a primary transmitter</td>
<td>201.17(b)(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masthead</td>
<td>201.20(b)(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monthly Statement of Account (compulsory license)</td>
<td>201.19(a)(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motion pictures</td>
<td>202.20(b)(2)(vi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musical scores</td>
<td>202.20(b)(2)(v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAFTA 3 work</td>
<td>201.33(b)(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network station (satellite carrier)</td>
<td>201.11(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice (initial) of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices</td>
<td>201.27(h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of objection to certain noncommercial performances</td>
<td>201.13(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-the-air copying</td>
<td>202.22(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order Warning of Copyright</td>
<td>201.14(a)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posthumous work (renewal)</td>
<td>202.17(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential copyright owner (NAFTA)3</td>
<td>201.31(b)(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary transmission (satellite carrier)</td>
<td>201.11(b)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privacy Act</td>
<td>204.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public broadcasting entity</td>
<td>253.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public domain computer software</td>
<td>201.26(b)(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication (NAFTA)3</td>
<td>201.31(b)(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record (Privacy Act)</td>
<td>204.2(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registration (supplementary)</td>
<td>201.5(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reliance party</td>
<td>201.33(b)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renewal (posthumous work)</td>
<td>202.17(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restored work</td>
<td>201.33(b)(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine use (Privacy Act)</td>
<td>204.2(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satellite carrier</td>
<td>201.11(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary transmission (satellite carrier)</td>
<td>201.11(b)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure test</td>
<td>202.20(b)(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single-leaf work</td>
<td>201.20(b)(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound recordings</td>
<td>202.20(b)(2)(iv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source country</td>
<td>201.33(b)(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscriber (satellite carrier)</td>
<td>201.11(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superstation (satellite carrier)</td>
<td>201.11(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplementary registration</td>
<td>201.5(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syndex-proof signal (satellite retransmission)</td>
<td>258.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System of records (Privacy Act)</td>
<td>204.2(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title page</td>
<td>201.20(b)(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unserved household (satellite carrier)</td>
<td>201.11(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning of Copyright for Software Rental</td>
<td>201.24(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deposit accounts</td>
<td>201.6(b)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Deposit (Acquisition and) of unpublished television transmission programs ................................................................. 202.22
Deposit (mandatory) of published copies or phonorecords for Library of Congress ...................................................................................................................... 202.19
Deposit of copies for registration by category:
Architectural works ................................................................................................................................. 202.20(c)(2)(xviii)
Certain pictorial and graphic works ........................................................................................................ 202.20(c)(2)(iv)
Commercial prints and labels ................................................................................................................ 202.20(c)(2)(v)
Computer programs and databases embodied in machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format ........................................................................................................ 202.20(c)(2)(vi)
Contributions to collective works ........................................................................................................ 202.20(c)(2)(v)
Generally .................................................................................................................................................. 202.20(c)(2)(i)
Group registration of serials .................................................................................................................. 202.20(c)(2)(xvii)
Holograms ............................................................................................................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(iii)
Machine-readable copies of works other than computer programs, databases, and works fixed in a CD-ROM format ........................................................................................................ 202.20(c)(2)(viii)
Oversize deposits ..................................................................................................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(xiii)
Phonorecords ........................................................................................................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(xvii)
Pictorial advertising material .................................................................................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(xvi)
Soundtracks .............................................................................................................................................. 202.20(c)(2)(xi)
Tests ......................................................................................................................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(vi)
Works fixed in a CD-ROM format ......................................................................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(xix)
Works reproduced in or on sheetlike materials .................................................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(x)
Works reproduced in or on three-dimensional objects ...................................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(xi)
Deposit of copies for registration (special relief) ......................................................................................... 202.20(d)
Deposit of copies under 17 U.S.C. 407, Presumption as to .................................................................... 202.19(f)
Deposit of identifying material instead of copies .................................................................................. 202.21
Deposit of identifying material (Mask works) ....................................................................................... 211.5
Deposit of oversize material .................................................................................................................. 202.20(c)(2)(xii)
Deposit requirements under 17 U.S.C. 407(a), Exemption from ............................................................. 202.19(c)
Deposits (copyright), Full-term retention of ......................................................................................... 202.23
Deposits, Requests for copies of ........................................................................................................... 201.1(c)
Deposits (unpublished copyright), Transfer to Library of Congress of .................................................. 201.23
Digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments, Filing of claims to ........................................ 259.1 to 259.6
Digital audio recording devices or media (Access to, and confidentiality of, Statements of Account, Auditor's Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for) .................................................. 201.29
Digital audio recording devices or media, Initial notice of distribution .................................................. 201.27
Digital audio recording devices or media, Statements of account for .................................................... 201.28
Digital phonorecord delivery, definition of .......................................................................................... 255.4
Digital phonorecord delivery, royalty rate for ....................................................................................... 255.5
Digital subscription transmissions of sound recordings, Rates and terms ........................................ 260.1 to 260.5
Disclosure (financial) statements of CARP arbitrators ........................................................................ 251.32
Displays [and] nondramatic performances of musical works for public broadcasting entities .......... 253.7
Distribution proceedings (CARP) for royalty fees ............................................................................ 251.70 to 251.73
Documents pertaining to computer shareware, and public domain computer software, Recordation of ........................................................................................................ 201.14(c)
Documents, recordable ........................................................................................................................ 201.26
Documents, Recordation of .................................................................................................................. 201.4
Effective date of registration ................................................................................................................... 202.4
Errors corrected by supplementary registration ..................................................................................... 201.5
Errors (minor) or omissions in registration ............................................................................................. 201.7(d)
Exemption from deposit requirements under 17 U.S.C. 407(a) ............................................................ 202.19(c)
Extended renewal term, Notices of termination of transfers and licenses
covering................................................................. 201.10
Fees, Generally for Copyright Office services........................................ 201.3
Freedom of Information Act................................................................... 203.6
Licensing Division service fees................................................................. 201.3(e)
Mask works........................................................................................... 201.3(c)
Payment and Refunds................................................................................ 201.6
Privacy Act............................................................................................... 204.6
Registration, recordation and related services........................................ 201.3(c)
Special services......................................................................................... 201.3(d)
Filing and service of written cases and pleadings with CARP 1
Documents............... 251.44
Financial disclosure statement of CARP 1 arbitrators......................... 251.32
Forms for recordation not provided by Copyright Office..................... 201.4(b)
Forms, Registration.................................................................................. 202.3(b)(2)
Forty-eight contiguous states, Recordation of certain contracts by cable
systems located outside of................................................................. 201.12
Freedom of Information Act (FOIA), Electronic Records, public inspection
and search .............................................................................................. 203.3 to 203.6
Freedom of Information Act (FOIA): Policies and Procedures.............. Part 203
Authority and functions ......................................................................... 203.2
FOIA and Privacy Act (CARP 1 proceedings)........................................ 251.23
In general.................................................................................................. 203.1
Inspection and copying............................................................................ 203.5
Methods of operation................................................................................ 203.4
Organization [of the Copyright Office].................................................... 203.3
Schedule of fees and methods of payment for services rendered............ 203.6
Full-term retention of copyright deposits................................................ 202.23
Graphic works, Pictorial, sculptural, and................................................. 202.10
Handicapped; physically or blind, Voluntary license to permit reproduc-
tion of nondramatic literary works solely for use of those who
are........................................................................................................ 201.15
Holograms, Deposit of............................................................................ 202.20(c)(2)(iii)
Identifying material instead of copies, Deposit of..................................... 202.21
Identifying material for Mask works, Deposit of...................................... 211.5
Indexes, See Records:
Individual defined for purposes of Privacy Act ..................................... 204.2(a)
Information given by Copyright Office................................................. 201.2
Infringement, Advance notices of potential.............................................. 201.22
Initial notice of distribution of digital audio recording devices or
media...................................................................................................... 201.27
Inquiries by mail, etc.; addresses............................................................... 201.1
Inspection and copying of records............................................................ 201.2(b)
Inspection and copying of records under the Freedom of Information Act
(FOIA).................................................................................................. 203.5
Inspection of CARP 1 records................................................................. 251.21 to 251.23
Judicial review of determinations by the Librarian of Congress in
CARP 1 proceedings.............................................................................. 251.50
Labels, Deposit of commercial prints and............................................. 202.20(c)(v)
Lending of software by nonprofit libraries, Warning of copyright for...... 201.24
Library of Congress, Deposit of published copies or phonorecords for..... 202.19
Library of Congress, Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to...... 201.23
Libraries and archives, Warning of copyright for use by....................... 201.14
Libraries and archives, Notice of normal commercial exploitation or
availability at reasonable price............................................................ 201.39
Libraries (Nonprofit), Warning of copyright for software lending by...... 201.24

528
Index

License (compulsory) for making/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Notice of intention to obtain .................................. 201.18
License (voluntary) solely for use of blind2 and physically handicapped ................................................................. 201.15
Licenses and transfers covering extended renewal term, Notices of termination of....................................................... 201.10
Licenses (compulsory) for secondary transmissions by cable systems, Statements of account covering................................................................. 201.17
Licenses (statutory) for secondary transmissions for private home viewing, Satellite carrier statements of account covering .................................................................................... 201.11
Licensing Division; inquiries/address ...................................................................................................................... 201.1
Machine-readable copies of works other than computer programs, databases, and works fixed in a CD-ROM format, Deposit of ................ 202.20(c)(2)(viii)
Machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format, Computer programs and databases embodied in .................................................. 202.20(c)(2)(vii)
Mail and other communications with Copyright Office, Proper address for ........................................................................................................... 201.1
Mask Work Protection:
Deposit of identifying material .......................................................................................................................... 211.5
General provisions .............................................................................................................................................. 211.1
Mask work fees ..................................................................................................................................................... 201.3(c), 211.3
Methods of affixation and placement of mask work notice ....................................................................................... 211.6
Recordation of documents pertaining to mask works .............................................................................................. 211.2
Registration of claims of protection for mask works ............................................................................................. 211.4
Material not subject to copyright ....................................................................................................................... 202.1
Media, Initial notice of distribution of digital audio recording devices of .......................................................................................................................... 201.27
Meetings of CARP 3, Public access to .................................................................................................................. 251.11 to 251.16
Motion pictures and their contents, Procedures for copyright restoration in accordance with NAFTA 3 for certain ................................ 201.31
Motion pictures, Deposit of ................................................................................................................................. 202.20(c)(2)(ii)
Musical compositions, Performance by public broadcasting entities of ...................................................................................................... 253.4 to 253.6
Musical works (nondramatic), Notice of intention to obtain compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of ................................................................. 201.18
NAFTA, Procedures for copyright restoration of certain motion pictures and the contents in accordance with .................................... 201.31
Noncommercial educational broadcasting ........................................................................................................... 253.11
Noncommercial performances of nondramatic literary or musical works, Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of .......................................................................................... 201.13
Noncommercial literary or musical works, Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of ................................................................. 201.13
Noncommercial literary works, License to permit reproduction solely for use of blind and physically handicapped2, ........................................ 201.15
Nondramatic musical works, Notice of intention to obtain compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of ................................................................. 201.18
Nondramatic musical works, Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of ................................................................. 201.19
Nondramatic performances and displays of musical works for public broadcasting entities .................................................................................................................. 253.7
Nonprofit libraries, Warning of copyright for lending of software by .............................................................................. 201.24
Notice (Mask work), Method of affixation and placement of ....................................................................................... 211.6
Notice of copyright ............................................................................................................................................... 202.2
Notice of copyright, Methods of affixation and positions on works ..................................................................................... 201.20
Contributions to collective works ....................................................................................................................... 201.20(f)
Motion pictures and other audiovisual works .......................................................................................................... 201.20(h)
Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works .................................................................................................................. 201.20(g)
Single-leaf works ................................................................................................................................................... 201.20(e)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Works published in book form</td>
<td>201.20(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Works reproduced in machine-readable copies</td>
<td>201.20(g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice (initial) of distribution of digital audio recording devices or media</td>
<td>201.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notices of Intent to Enforce a restored copyright, Correction notices, Procedures for filing</td>
<td>201.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notices of Intent to Enforce a restored copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Procedures for filing</td>
<td>201.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice of intention to obtain compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords</td>
<td>201.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notices (advance) of potential infringement</td>
<td>201.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of nondramatic literary or musical works</td>
<td>201.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notices of termination of transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term</td>
<td>201.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objection (Notice of) to certain noncommercial performances of nondramatic literary or musical works</td>
<td>201.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-the-air copying of unpublished television transmission programs</td>
<td>202.22(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization of CARP by copyright holders, Procedures for filing</td>
<td>251.1 to 251.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oversize deposits</td>
<td>202.20(c)(2)(xiii)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panels (CARP), Procedures of</td>
<td>251.40 to 251.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performances of musical compositions by public broadcasting entities</td>
<td>253.4 to 253.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performances of nondramatic literary or musical works, Notices of objection to certain noncommercial</td>
<td>201.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phonorecords, Deposit for copyright registration</td>
<td>202.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phonorecords for Library of Congress, Deposit of published</td>
<td>202.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Notice of intention to obtain compulsory license for making/distributing</td>
<td>201.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making and distributing</td>
<td>255.1 to 255.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pictorial advertising material, Deposit of</td>
<td>202.20(c)(2)(xiv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works for public broadcasting entities</td>
<td>202.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works published by public broadcasting entities, Terms and rates of royalty payments for the use of</td>
<td>253.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positions and methods of affixation of copyright notice</td>
<td>201.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presumption as to deposit of copies under 17 U.S.C. 407</td>
<td>202.19(f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prints (commercial) and labels, Deposit of</td>
<td>202.20(c)(2)(iv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privacy Act and FOIA (CARP)</td>
<td>251.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privacy Act: Policies and Procedures</td>
<td>Part 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appeal of refusal to correct or amend an individual’s record</td>
<td>204.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>204.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fees</td>
<td>204.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General policy</td>
<td>204.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judicial review</td>
<td>204.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedure for notification of the existence of records pertaining to individuals</td>
<td>204.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedures for requesting access to records</td>
<td>204.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request for correction or amendment of records</td>
<td>204.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private home viewing, Satellite carrier statements of account covering statutory licenses for secondary transmissions for</td>
<td>201.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedures for copyright restoration in U.S.A. of certain motion pictures and their contents in accordance with NAFTA</td>
<td>201.31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Procedures of CARP 1 panels ................................................................. 251.40 to 251.58
Proceedings for CARP 1 royalty fee distribution ............................ 251.70 to 251.73
Proceedings for rate adjustment (CARP 1) ..................................... 251.60 to 251.65
Public access to CARP 1 meetings ..................................................... 251.11 to 251.16
Public access to CARP 1 records ....................................................... 251.21 to 251.23
Public broadcasting entities, Nondramatic performances and displays of musical works for ................................................................. 253.7
Public broadcasting entities, Performance of musical compositions by ................................................................................................. 253.4 to 253.6
Public broadcasting entities, Recordation of agreements between copy-right owners and ........................................................................ 201.9
Public domain computer software, Recordation of documents pertaining to donation of ........................................................................ 201.26
Published copies or phonorecords, Deposit (mandatory) for Library of Congress ................................................................................ 202.19
Rate adjustment proceedings (CARP 1) ............................................. 251.60 to 251.65
Rate adjustment proceedings for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers (CARP) ................................................................. 258.1 - 258.3
Record of individual under Privacy Act, Appeal of refusal to correct or amend .................................................................................. 204.8
Recordability of documents (general requirements) .......................... 201.4(c)
Recordation, Date of ............................................................................ 201.4(e)
Recordation fees .................................................................................. 201.4(d)
Recordation forms not necessary ......................................................... 201.4(b)
Recordation of agreements between copyright owners and public broad-casting entities ........................................................................ 201.9
Recordation of cable contracts for systems outside the 48 contiguous states ................................................................................... 201.12
Recordation of transfers and other documents .................................... 201.4
Recording devices (digital audio) or media, Initial notice of distribution of ............................................................................................ 201.27
Recording devices (digital audio) or media, Statements of account for ................................................................................................. 201.28
Records and indexes, Inspection and copying of ................................ 201.2(b)
Records (CARP 1), Inspection of .............................................................. 251.21 to 251.23
Records; filings; addresses for requests ............................................. 201.1
Records, Request under Privacy Act for amendment or correction of .................................................................................. 204.7
Records (System of) under Privacy Act .............................................. 204.2(d)
Records under Freedom of Information Act (FOIA), Inspection and copy-ing of ...................................................................................... 203.5
Reference and Bibliography Section as address for search requests .................................................................................. 201.1(d)
Refund of Copyright Office fees .......................................................... 201.6
Refusal to correct or amend an individual’s record, Appeal of .......... 204.8
Registration (basic), Effect of supplementary registration on .............. 201.5(d)
Registration (copyright), Deposit of copies and phonorecords for .................................................................................. 202.20
Registration, Effective date of ............................................................... 202.4
Registration of copyright ..................................................................... 202.3
Registration of group of related works ................................................ 202.3(b)(4) to (8)
Automated databases .......................................................................... 202.3(b)(4)
Contributions to periodicals ................................................................. 202.3(b)(7)
Daily newsletters ................................................................................. 202.3(b)(8)
Daily newspapers .................................................................................. 202.3(b)(6)
Serials .................................................................................................... 202.3(b)(5)
Registrations and recordations, Requests for searches of ................. 201.1(d)
Registrations (completed), Cancellation of ........................................ 201.7
Registrations (corrected and amplified) ............................................... 201.5
Registrations (supplementary) ............................................................... 201.5
Standards of conduct for CARP arbitrators ..................................... 251.30 to 251.39
Specialty stations designated under cable compulsory license ......................... 256.2
Special Services (Copyright Office), Fees for ................................................ 201.3(d)
Special relief (mandatory deposit under 17 U.S.C. 407)................................. 202.19(e)
Special relief (deposit of copies for registration)......................................... 202.20(d)
Soundtracks, Deposit of .................................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(xii)
Software (public domain computer), Recordation of documents pertaining to .................. 201.26
Software lending by nonprofit libraries, Warning of copyright for.................. 201.24
Serials, Group registration of.......................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(xvii)
Search of records, Requests for ..................................................................... 201.1(d)
Sculptural works (Pictorial, graphic, and) ...................................................... 202.10
Royalty (cable) fees, Filing of claims under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4), 801, 803, .... 252.1 to 252.5
Royalty fee (CARP) distribution proceedings .................................................. 251.70 to 251.73
Royalty fee for cable compulsory license, Adjustment of ...................... 256.1 and 256.2
Royalty fee for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers, Adjust- ment of .............................................................. 258.1 to 258.3
Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for mak- ing/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works................. 201.19
Royalty payable under compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords ........................................................... 255.1 to 255.3, 255.5
Royalty payments for digital audio recording devices and media, Filing of claims to.............................. 259.1 to 259.6
Royalty payments for use of published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works .............................................................................. 253.8
Royalty rate for coin-operated phonorecorder players, Adjustment of ... 254.1 to 254.3
Satellite carrier royalty fees, Filing of claims to............................................ 257.1 to 257.6
Satellite carrier statements of account and royalty fees covering li- censes for secondary transmissions for private home viewing................. 201.11
Satellite carriers, Adjustment of royalty fee for secondary transmissions by............................................... 258.1 to 258.3
Sculptural works (Pictorial, graphic, and) ...................................................... 202.10
Search of records, Requests for ..................................................................... 201.1(d)
Secondary transmission by cable systems, Royalty fee for compulsory li- cense for.................................................................................. 256.2
Secondary transmission by satellite carriers, Royalty fee for................. 258.3
Second transmissions by cable systems, Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for................................................................. 201.17
Serials, Group registration of.......................................................... 202.20(c)(2)(xvii)
Shareware (computer), Recordation of documents pertaining to ................................. 201.26
Software lending by nonprofit libraries, Warning of copyright for ................................. 201.24
Software (public domain computer), Recordation of documents pert-aining to donation of ...................................................................... 201.26
Soundtracks, Deposit of .............................................................................. 202.20(c)(2)(xii)
Special relief (deposit of copies for registration)......................................... 202.20(d)
Special relief (mandatory deposit under 17 U.S.C. 407)................................. 202.19(e)
Special Services (Copyright Office), Fees for ................................................. 201.3(d)
Specialty stations designated under cable compulsory license ......................... 256.2
Standards of account (and royalties) under compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works................. 201.19
Statements of account and royalty fees (satellite carrier) covering li- censes for secondary transmissions for private home viewing................. 201.11
Statements of Account, Auditor's Reports, etc. filed in Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media, Access to and confiden- tiality of ......................................................................................... 201.29
Index

Statements of account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by cable systems ................................................................. 201.17
Statements of account for digital audio recording devices or media........ 201.28
Statements of Account (in general) .................................................... 201.11, 201.17, 201.19, 201.28, 201.29
Statements of account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by cable systems ................................................................. 201.17

Statutory licenses for secondary transmissions for private home viewing, Satellite carrier statements of account and royalty fees covering ................................................................. 201.11
Supplementary registration application (form and content) ..................... 201.5(c)
Supplementary registration, Effect on basic registration of ...................... 201.5(d)
Syndex-proof signal (satellite carrier retransmission), Definition of .......... 258.2
System of records under Privacy Act .................................................... 204.2(d)
Television broadcast signals transmitted by satellite carriers to the public for private home viewing, Adjustment of royalties payable under compulsory license for ................................................................. 258.1 to 258.3
Television broadcast signals transmitted by satellite carriers to the public for private home viewing, Procedures for filing claims for compulsory license royalty fees covering ................................................................. 257.1 to 257.6
Television transmission programs (unpublished), Acquisition and deposit of ...................................................................................... 202.22
Termination of transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term, Notices of ...................................................................................... 201.10
Tests, Deposit of .................................................................................. 202.20(c)(2)(vi)
Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to Library of Congress .......... 201.23
Transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term, Notices of termina- tion of ...................................................................................... 201.10
Transfers and other documents, Recordation of ....................................... 201.4
Transmit programs (television), Acquisition and deposit of unpublished ...................................................................................... 201.23
Unpublished television transmission programs, Acquisition and deposit of ...................................................................................... 202.22
Use (routine) under Privacy Act ............................................................... 204.2(e)
Verification information filed in Copyright Office for digital audio re- cording devices or media, Access to and confidentiality of ......................... 201.29
Visual Arts Registry ................................................................................ 201.25
Visually perceptible and machine-readable material other than a CD- ROM format, Deposit of copies containing both .................................. 202.20(c)(2)(ix)
Voluntary license to permit reproduction of nondramatic literary works solely for use of the blind and physically handicapped 2 .................................. 201.15
Warning of copyright for software lending by nonprofit libraries ............ 201.24
Warnings (display) of copyright for use by certain libraries and archives ...................................................................................... 201.14
Works:
Architectural ...................................................................................... 202.11
Nondramatic literary ........................................................................... 201.13
Nondramatic musical .......................................................................... 201.13, 201.18, and 201.19
Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural .......................................................... 202.10
Works consisting of sounds, images, or both, Advance notices of poten- tial infringement of .......................................................................... 201.22
Works fixed in CD-ROM format, Deposit of ........................................ 202.20(c)(2)(ix)
Works reproduced in or on sheetlike materials, Deposit of ..................... 202.20(c)(2)(x)
Works reproduced in or on three-dimensional objects, Deposit of ............ 202.20(c)(2)(xi)
Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper are acceptable deposits for archival purposes in connection with the registration of claims to copyright in architectural works .................................. 202.20(c)(2)(xviii)
CHAPTER IV—ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR TECHNOLOGY POLICY, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Rights to inventions made by nonprofit organizations and small business firms under Government grants, contracts, and cooperative agreements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>404</td>
<td>Licensing of Government owned inventions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART 401—RIGHTS TO INVENTIONS MADE BY NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS AND SMALL BUSINESS FIRMS UNDER GOVERNMENT GRANTS, CONTRACTS, AND CO-OPERATIVE AGREEMENTS

Sec. 401.1 Scope.
401.2 Definitions.
401.3 Use of the standard clauses at § 401.14.
401.4 Contractor appeals of exceptions.
401.5 Modification and tailoring of clauses.
401.6 Exercise of march-in rights.
401.7 Small business preference.
401.8 Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.
401.9 Retention of rights by contractor employee inventor.
401.10 Government assignment to contractor of rights in invention of government employee.
401.11 Appeals.
401.12 Licensing of background patent rights to third parties.
401.13 Administration of patent rights clauses.
401.14 Standard patent rights clauses.
401.15 Deferred determinations.
401.16 Electronic filing.
401.17 Submissions and inquiries.

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 206 and the delegation of authority by the Secretary of Commerce to the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Technology Policy at sec. 3(g) of DOO 10-18.

SOURCE: 52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

§ 401.1 Scope.

(a) Traditionally there have been no conditions imposed by the government on research performers while using private facilities which would preclude them from accepting research funding from other sources to expand, to aid in completing or to conduct separate investigations closely related to research activities sponsored by the government. Notwithstanding the right of research organizations to accept supplemental funding from other sources for the purpose of expediting or more comprehensively accomplishing the research objectives of the government sponsored project, it is clear that the ownership provisions of these regulations would remain applicable in any invention “conceived or first actually reduced to practice in performance” of the project. Separate accounting for the two funds used to support the project in this case is not a determining factor.

(1) To the extent that a non-government sponsor established a project which, although closely related, falls outside the planned and committed activities of a government-funded project and does not diminish or distract from the performance of such activities, inventions made in performance of the non-government sponsored project would not be subject to the conditions of these regulations. An example of such related but separate projects would be a government sponsored project having research objectives to expand scientific understanding in a field and a closely related industry sponsored project having as its objectives the application of such new knowledge to develop usable new technology. The time relationship in conducting the two projects and the use of new fundamental knowledge from one in the performance of the other are not important determinants since most inventions rest on a knowledge base built up by numerous independent research efforts extending over many years. Should such an invention be claimed by the performing organization to be the product of non-government sponsored research and be challenged by the sponsoring agency as being reportable to the government as a “subject invention”, the challenge is appealable as described in § 401.11(d).

(2) An invention which is made outside of the research activities of a government-funded project is not viewed as a “subject invention” since it cannot be shown to have been “conceived or first actually reduced to practice” in performance of the project. An obvious example of this is a situation where an instrument purchased with government funds is later used, without interference with or cost to the government-funded project, in making an invention all expenses of which involve only non-government funds.

(b) This part implements 35 U.S.C. 202 through 204 and is applicable to all Federal agencies. It applies to all funding agreements with small business firms and nonprofit organizations executed after the effective date of this part, except for a funding agreement
made primarily for educational purposes. Certain sections also provide guidance for the administration of funding agreements which predate the effective date of this part. In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 212, no scholarship, fellowship, training grant, or other funding agreement made by a Federal agency primarily to an awardee for educational purposes will contain any provision giving the Federal agency any rights to inventions made by the awardee.

(c) The march-in and appeals procedures in §§ 401.6 and 401.11 shall apply to any march-in or appeal proceeding under a funding agreement subject to Chapter 18 of Title 35, U.S.C., initiated after the effective date of this part even if the funding agreement was executed prior to that date.

(d) At the request of the contractor, a funding agreement for the operation of a government-owned facility which is in effect on the effective date of this part shall be promptly amended to include the provisions required by §§ 401.3(a) unless the agency determines that one of the exceptions at 35 U.S.C. 202(a)(i) through (iv) § 401.3(a)(8) through (iv) of this part is applicable and will be applied. If the exception at § 401.3(a)(iv) is determined to be applicable, the funding agreement will be promptly amended to include the provisions required by § 401.3(c).

(e) This regulation supersedes OMB Circular A–124 and shall take precedence over any regulations dealing with ownership of inventions made by small businesses and nonprofit organizations which are inconsistent with it. This regulation will be followed by all agencies pending amendment of agency regulations to conform to this part and amended Chapter 18 of Title 35. Only deviations requested by a contractor and not inconsistent with Chapter 18 of Title 35, United States Code, may be made without approval of the Secretary. Modifications or tailoring of clauses as authorized by § 401.5 or § 401.3, when alternative provisions are used under § 401.3(a)(1) through (4), are not considered deviations requiring the Secretary's approval. Three copies of proposed and final agency regulations supplementing this part shall be submitted to the Secretary at the office set out in § 401.16 for approval for consistency with this part before they are submitted to the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) for review under Executive Order 12291 or, if no submission is required to be made to OMB, before their submission to the Federal Register for publication.

(f) In the event an agency has outstanding prime funding agreements that do not contain patent flow-down provisions consistent with this part or earlier Office of Federal Procurement Policy regulations (OMB Circular A–124 or OMB Bulletin 81–22), the agency shall take appropriate action to ensure that small business firms or nonprofit organizations that are subcontractors under any such agreements and that received their subcontracts after July 1, 1981, receive rights in their subject inventions that are consistent with Chapter 18 and this part.

(g) This part is not intended to apply to arrangements under which nonprofit organizations, small business firms, or others are allowed to use government-owned research facilities and normal technical assistance provided to users of those facilities, whether on a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis. This part is also not intended to apply to arrangements under which sponsors reimburse the government or facility contractor for the contractor employee's time in performing work for the sponsor. Such arrangements are not considered "funding agreements" as defined at 35 U.S.C. 201(b) and § 401.2(a) of this part.

§ 401.2 Definitions.

As used in this part—

(a) The term funding agreement means any contract, grant, or cooperative agreement entered into between any Federal agency, other than the Tennessee Valley Authority, and any contractor for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work funded in whole or in part by the Federal government. This term also includes any assignment, substitution of parties, or subcontract of any type entered into for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under a funding agreement as defined in the first sentence of this paragraph.
(b) The term contractor means any person, small business firm or nonprofit organization which is a party to a funding agreement.

(c) The term invention means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protectable under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 et seq.).

(d) The term subject invention means any invention of a contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under a funding agreement; provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of contract performance.

(e) The term practical application means to manufacture in the case of a composition of product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(f) The term made when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(g) The term small business firm means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this part, the size standards for small business concerns involved in government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.5 will be used.

(h) The term nonprofit organization means universities and other institutions of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

(i) The term Chapter 18 means Chapter 18 of Title 35 of the United States Code.

(j) The term Secretary means the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Technology Policy.

(k) The term electronically filed means any submission of information transmitted by an electronic or optical-electronic system.

(l) The term electronic or optical-electronic system means a software-based system approved by the agency for the transmission of information.

(m) The term patent application or “application for patent” includes a provisional or nonprovisional U.S. national application for patent as defined in 37 CFR 1.9(a)(2) and (a)(3), respectively, or an application for patent in a foreign country or in an international patent office.

(n) The term initial patent application means a nonprovisional U.S. national application for patent as defined in 37 CFR 1.9(a)(3).

§ 401.3 Use of the standard clauses at §401.14.

(a) Each funding agreement awarded to a small business firm or nonprofit organization (except those subject to 35 U.S.C. 212) shall contain the clause found in §401.14(a) with such modifications and tailoring as authorized or required elsewhere in this part. However, a funding agreement may contain alternative provisions—

(1) When the contractor is not located in the United States or does not have a place of business located in the United States or is subject to the control of a foreign government; or

(2) In exceptional circumstances when it is determined by the agency that restriction or elimination of the right to retain title to any subject invention will better promote the policy and objectives of Chapter 18 of Title 35 of the United States Code; or

(3) When it is determined by a government authority which is authorized
§ 401.3

by statute or executive order to conduct foreign intelligence or counterintelligence activities that the restriction or elimination of the right to retain title to any subject invention is necessary to protect the security to such activities; or

(4) When the funding agreement includes the operation of the government-owned, contractor-operated facility of the Department of Energy primarily dedicated to that Department's naval nuclear propulsion or weapons related programs and all funding agreement limitations under this subparagraph on the contractor's right to elect title to a subject invention are limited to inventions occurring under the above two programs.

(b) When an agency exercises the exceptions at § 401.3(a)(2) or (3), it shall use the standard clause at § 401.14(a) with only such modifications as are necessary to address the exceptional circumstances or concerns which led to the use of the exception. For example, if the justification relates to a particular field of use or market, the clause might be modified along lines similar to those described in § 401.14(b). In any event, the clause should provide the contractor with an opportunity to receive greater rights in accordance with the procedures at § 401.15. When an agency justifies and exercises the exception at § 401.3(a)(2) and uses an alternative provision in the funding agreement on the basis of national security, the provision shall provide the contractor with the right to elect ownership to any invention made under such funding agreement as provided by the Standard Patent Rights Clause found at § 401.14(a) if the invention is not classified by the agency within six months of the date it is reported to the agency, or within the same time period the Department of Energy does not, as authorized by regulation, law or Executive order or implementing regulations thereto, prohibit unauthorized dissemination of the invention. Contracts in support of DOE's naval nuclear propulsion program are exempted from this paragraph.

(c) When the Department of Energy exercises the exception at § 401.3(a)(4), it shall use the clause prescribed at § 401.14(b) or substitute thereto with such modification and tailoring as authorized or required elsewhere in this part.

(d) When a funding agreement involves a series of separate task orders, an agency may apply the exceptions at § 401.3(a)(2) or (3) to individual task orders, and it may structure the contract so that modified patent rights provisions will apply to the task order even though the clauses at either § 401.14(a) or (b) are applicable to the remainder of the work. Agencies are authorized to negotiate such modified provisions with respect to task orders added to a funding agreement after its initial award.

(e) Before utilizing any of the exceptions in § 401.3(a) of this section, the agency shall prepare a written determination, including a statement of facts supporting the determination, that the conditions identified in the exception exist. A separate statement of facts shall be prepared for each exceptional circumstances determination, except that in appropriate cases a single determination may apply to both a funding agreement and any subcontracts issued under it or to any funding agreement to which such an exception is applicable. In cases when § 401.3(a)(2) is used, the determination shall also include an analysis justifying the determination. This analysis should address with specificity how the alternate provisions will better achieve the objectives set forth in 35 U.S.C. 200. A copy of each determination, statement of facts, and, if applicable, analysis shall be promptly provided to the contractor or prospective contractor along with a notification to the contractor or prospective contractor of its rights to appeal the determination of the exception under 35 U.S.C. 202(b)(4) and § 401.4 of this part.

(f) Except for determinations under § 401.3(a)(3), the agency shall also provide copies of each determination, statement of fact, and analysis to the Secretary. These shall be sent within 30 days after the award of the funding agreement to which they pertain. Copies shall also be sent to the Chief Counsel for Advocacy of the Small Business Administration if the funding agreement is with a small business firm. If the Secretary of Commerce believes
that any individual determination or pattern of determinations is contrary to the policies and objectives of this chapter or otherwise not in conformance with this chapter, the Secretary shall so advise the head of the agency concerned and the Administrator of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy and recommend corrective actions.

(g) To assist the Comptroller General of the United States to accomplish his or her responsibilities under 35 U.S.C. 202, each Federal agency that enters into any funding agreements with nonprofit organizations or small business firms shall accumulate and, at the request of the Comptroller General, provide the Comptroller General or his or her duly authorized representative the total number of prime agreements entered into with small business firms or nonprofit organizations that contain the patent rights clause in this part or under OMB Circular A-124 for each fiscal year beginning with October 1, 1982.

(h) To qualify for the standard clause, a prospective contractor may be required by an agency to certify that it is either a small business firm or a nonprofit organization. If the agency has reason to question the status of the prospective contractor as a small business firm, it may file a protest in accordance with 13 CFR 121.9. If it questions nonprofit status, it may require the prospective contractor to furnish evidence to establish its status as a nonprofit organization.

§ 401.4 Contractor appeals of exceptions.

(a) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(b)(4) a contractor has the right to an administrative review of a determination to use one of the exceptions at § 401.3(a)(1) through (4) if the contractor believes that a determination is either contrary to the policies and objectives of this chapter or constitutes an abuse of discretion by the agency. Paragraph (b) of this section specifies the procedures to be followed by contractors and agencies in such cases. The assertion of such a claim by the contractor shall not be used as a basis for withholding or delaying the award of a funding agreement or for suspending performance under an award. Pending final resolution of the claim the contract may be issued with the patent rights provision proposed by the agency; however, should the final decision be in favor of the contractor, the funding agreement will be amended accordingly and the amendment made retroactive to the effective date of the funding agreement.

(b)(1) A contractor may appeal a determination by providing written notice to the agency within 30 working days from the time it receives a copy of the agency's determination, or within such longer time as an agency may specify in its regulations. The contractor's notice should specifically identify the basis for the appeal.

(2) The appeal shall be decided by the head of the agency or by his/her designee who is at a level above the person who made the determination. If the notice raises a genuine dispute over the material facts, the head of the agency or the designee shall undertake, or refer the matter for, fact-finding.

(3) Fact-finding shall be conducted in accordance with procedures established by the agency. Such procedures shall be as informal as practicable and be consistent with principles of fundamental fairness. The procedures should afford the contractor the opportunity to appear with counsel, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses and confront such persons as the agency may rely upon. A transcribed record shall be made and shall be available at cost to the contractor upon request. The requirement for a transcribed record may be waived by mutual agreement of the contractor and the agency.

(4) The official conducting the fact-finding shall prepare or adopt written findings of fact and transmit them to the head of the agency or designee promptly after the conclusion of the fact-finding proceeding along with a recommended decision. A copy of the findings of fact and recommended decision shall be sent to the contractor by registered or certified mail.

(5) Fact-finding should be completed within 45 working days from the date the agency receives the contractor's written notice.

(6) When fact-finding has been conducted, the head of the agency or designee shall base his or her decision on
§ 401.5 Modification and tailoring of clauses.

(a) Agencies should complete the blank in paragraph (g)(2) of the clauses at §401.14 in accordance with their own or applicable government-wide regulations such as the Federal Acquisition Regulation. In grants and cooperative agreements (and in contracts, if not inconsistent with the Federal Acquisition Regulation) agencies wishing to apply the same clause to all subcontractors as is applied to the contractor may delete paragraph (g)(2) of the clause and delete the words “to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization” from paragraph (g)(3). Also, if the funding agreement is a grant or cooperative agreement, paragraph (g)(3) may be deleted. When either paragraph (g)(2) or paragraphs (g)(2) and (3) are deleted, the remaining paragraph or paragraphs should be renumbered appropriately.

(b) Agencies should complete paragraph (l), “Communications”, at the end of the clauses at §401.14 by designating a central point of contact for communications on matters relating to the clause. Additional instructions on communications may also be included in paragraph (l).

(c) Agencies may replace the italicized words and phrases in the clauses at §401.14 with those appropriate to the particular funding agreement. For example, “contracts” could be replaced by “grant,” “contractor” by “grantee,” and “contracting officer” by “grants officer.” Depending on its use, “Federal agency” can be replaced either by the identification of the agency or by the specification of the particular office or official within the agency.

(d) When the agency head or duly authorized designee determines at the time of contracting with a small business firm or nonprofit organization that it would be in the national interest to acquire the right to sublicense foreign governments or international organizations pursuant to any existing treaty or international agreement, a sentence may be added at the end of paragraph (b) of the clause at §401.14 as follows:

'This license will include the right of the government to sublicense foreign governments, their nationals, and international organizations, pursuant to the following treaties or international agreements:

---

The blank above should be completed with the names of applicable existing treaties or international agreements, agreements of cooperation, memoranda of understanding, or similar arrangements, including military agreements relating to weapons development and production. The above language is not intended to apply to treaties or other agreements that are in effect on the date of the award but which are not listed. Alternatively, agencies may use substantially similar language relating the government’s rights to specific treaties or other agreements identified elsewhere in the funding agreement. The language may also be modified to
make clear that the rights granted to the foreign government, and its nationals or an international organization may be for additional rights beyond a license or sublicense if so required by the applicable treaty or international agreement. For example, in some exclusive licenses or even the assignment of title in the foreign country involved might be required. Agencies may also modify the language above to provide for the direct licensing by the contractor of the foreign government or international organization.

(e) If the funding agreement involves performance over an extended period of time, such as the typical funding agreement for the operation of a government-owned facility, the following language may also be added:

The agency reserves the right to unilaterally amend this funding agreement to identify specific treaties or international agreements entered into or to be entered into by the government after the effective date of this funding agreement and effectuate those license or other rights which are necessary for the government to meet its obligations to foreign governments, their nationals and international organizations under such treaties or international agreements with respect to subject inventions made after the date of the amendment.

(f) Agencies may add additional subparagraphs to paragraph (f) of the clauses at §401.14 to require the contractor to do one or more of the following:

(1) Provide a report prior to the close-out of a funding agreement listing all subject inventions or stating that there were none.

(2) Provide, upon request, the filing date, patent application number and title; a copy of the patent application; and patent number and issue date for any subject invention in any country in which the contractor has applied for a patent.

(3) Provide periodic (but no more frequently than annual) listings of all subject inventions which were disclosed to the agency during the period covered by the report.

(g) If the contract is with a nonprofit organization and is for the operation of a government-owned, contractor-operated facility, the following will be substituted for paragraph (k)(3) of the clause at §401.14(a):

(3) After payment of patenting costs, licensing costs, payments to inventors, and other expenses incidental to the administration of subject inventions, the balance of any royalties or income earned and retained by the contractor during any fiscal year on subject inventions under this or any successor contract containing the same requirement, up to any amount equal to five percent of the budget of the facility for that fiscal year, shall be used by the contractor for scientific research, development, and education consistent with the research and development mission and objectives of the facility, including activities that increase the licensing potential of other inventions of the facility. If the balance exceeds five percent, 75 percent of the excess above five percent shall be paid by the contractor to the Treasury of the United States and the remaining 25 percent shall be used by the contractor only for the same purposes as described above. To the extent it provides the most effective technology transfer, the licensing of subject inventions shall be administered by contractor employees on location at the facility.

(h) If the contract is for the operation of a government-owned facility, agencies may add the following at the end of paragraph (f) of the clause at §401.14(a):

(5) The contractor shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to ensure that subject inventions are promptly identified and timely disclosed and shall submit a description of the procedures to the contracting officer so that the contracting officer may evaluate and determine their effectiveness.

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987, as amended at 60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§401.6 Exercise of march-in rights.

(a) The following procedures shall govern the exercise of the march-in rights of the agencies set forth in 35 U.S.C. 203 and paragraph (j) of the clause at §401.14.

(b) Whenever an agency receives information that it believes might warrant the exercise of march-in rights, before initiating any march-in proceeding, it shall notify the contractor in writing of the information and request informal written or oral comments from the contractor as well as information relevant to the matter. In the absence of any comments from the contractor within 30 days, the agency may, at its discretion, proceed with the procedures below. If a comment is received within 30 days, or later if the
§ 401.6 37 CFR Ch. IV (7–1–00 Edition)

agency has not initiated the procedures below, then the agency shall, within 60 days after it receives the comment, either initiate the procedures below or notify the contractor, in writing, that it will not pursue march-in rights on the basis of the available information.

(c) A march-in proceeding shall be initiated by the issuance of a written notice by the agency to the contractor and its assignee or exclusive licensee, as applicable and if known to the agency, stating that the agency is considering the exercise of march-in rights. The notice shall state the reasons for the proposed march-in in terms sufficient to put the contractor on notice of the facts upon which the action would be based and shall specify the field or fields of use in which the agency is considering requiring licensing. The notice shall advise the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) of its rights, as set forth in this section and in any supplemental agency regulations. The determination to exercise march-in rights shall be made by the head of the agency or his or her designee.

(d) Within 30 days after the receipt of the written notice of march-in, the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) may submit in person, in writing, or through a representative, information or argument in opposition to the proposed march-in, including any additional specific information which raises a genuine dispute over the material facts upon which the march-in is based. If the information presented raises a genuine dispute over the material facts, the head of the agency or designee shall undertake or refer the matter to another official for fact-finding. Fact-finding shall be conducted in accordance with the procedures established by the agency. Such procedures shall be as informal as practicable and be consistent with principles of fundamental fairness. The procedures should afford the contractor the opportunity to appear with counsel, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses and confront such persons as the agency may present. A transcribed record shall be made and shall be available at cost to the contractor upon request. The requirement for a transcribed record may be waived by mutual agreement of the contractor and the agency. Any portion of the march-in proceeding, including a fact-finding hearing that involves testimony or evidence relating to the utilization or efforts at obtaining utilization that are being made by the contractor, its assignee, or licensees shall be closed to the public, including potential licensees. In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), agencies shall not disclose any such information obtained during a march-in proceeding to persons outside the government except when such release is authorized by the contractor (assignee or licensee).

(f) The official conducting the fact-finding shall prepare or adopt written findings of fact and transmit them to the head of the agency or designee promptly after the conclusion of the fact-finding proceeding along with a recommended determination. A copy of the findings of fact shall be sent to the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) by registered or certified mail. The contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) and agency representatives will be given 30 days to submit written arguments to the head of the agency or designee; and, upon request by the contractor oral arguments will be held before the agency head or designee that will make the final determination.

(g) In cases in which fact-finding has been conducted, the head of the agency or designee shall base his or her determination on the facts found, together with any other information and written or oral arguments submitted by the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) and agency representatives, and any other information in the administrative record. The consistency of the exercise of march-in rights with the policy and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200 shall also be considered. In cases referred for fact-finding, the head of the agency or designee may reject only those facts that have been found to be clearly erroneous, but must explicitly state the rejection and indicate the basis for the contrary finding. Written notice of the determination whether march-in rights will be exercised shall be made by the head of the agency or designee and sent to the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) by certified or registered mail within 90 days.
401.8 Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.

(a) Paragraph (h) of the clauses at §401.14 and its counterpart in the clause at Attachment A to OMB Circular A-124 provides that agencies have the right to receive periodic reports from the contractor on utilization of inventions. Agencies exercising this right should accept such information, to the extent feasible, in the format that the contractor normally prepares it for its own internal purposes. The prescription of forms should be avoided. However, any forms or standard questionnaires that are adopted by an agency for this purpose must comply with the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act.Copies shall be sent to the Secretary.

(b) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5) and the terms of the clauses at §401.14, agencies shall not disclose such information to persons outside the government. Contractors will continue to provide confidential markings to help prevent inadvertent release outside the agency.
§ 401.9 Retention of rights by contractor employee inventor.

Agencies which allow an employee/inventor of the contractor to retain rights to a subject invention made under a funding agreement with a small business firm or nonprofit organization contractor, as authorized by 35 U.S.C. 202(d), will impose upon the inventor at least those conditions that would apply to a small business firm contractor under paragraphs (d)(1) and (3); (f)(4); (h); (i); and (j) of the clause at §401.14(a).

§ 401.10 Government assignment to contractor of rights in invention of government employee.

In any case when a Federal employee is a co-inventor of any invention made under a funding agreement with a small business firm or nonprofit organization and the Federal agency employing such co-inventor transfers or reassigns the right it has acquired in the subject invention from its employee to the contractor as authorized by 35 U.S.C. 202(e), the assignment will be made subject to the same conditions as apply to the contractor under the patent rights clause of its funding agreement. Agencies may add additional conditions as long as they are consistent with 35 U.S.C. 201-206.

§ 401.11 Appeals.

(a) As used in this section, the term standard clause means the clause at §401.14 of this part and the clauses previously prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22.

(b) The agency official initially authorized to take any of the following actions shall provide the contractor with a written statement of the basis for his or her action at the time the action is taken, including any relevant facts that were relied upon in taking the action.

(1) A refusal to grant an extension under paragraph (c)(4) of the standard clauses.

(2) A request for a conveyance of title under paragraph (d) of the standard clauses.

(3) A refusal to grant a waiver under paragraph (i) of the standard clauses.

(4) A refusal to approve an assignment under paragraph (k)(1) of the standard clauses.

(5) A refusal to grant an extension of the exclusive license period under paragraph (k)(2) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22.

(c) Each agency shall establish and publish procedures under which any of the agency actions listed in paragraph (b) of this section may be appealed to the head of the agency or designee. Review at this level shall consider both the factual and legal basis for the actions and its consistency with the policy and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200-206.

(d) Appeals procedures established under paragraph (c) of this section shall include administrative due process procedures and standards for fact-finding at least comparable to those set forth in §401.6(e) through (g) whenever there is a dispute as to the factual basis for an agency request for a conveyance of title under paragraph (d) of the standard clause, including any dispute as to whether or not an invention is a subject invention.

(e) To the extent that any of the actions described in paragraph (b) of this section are subject to appeal under the Contract Dispute Act, the procedures under the Act will satisfy the requirements of paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section.

§ 401.12 Licensing of background patent rights to third parties.

(a) A funding agreement with a small business firm or a domestic nonprofit organization will not contain a provision allowing a Federal agency to require the licensing to third parties of inventions owned by the contractor that are not subject inventions unless such provision has been approved by the agency head and a written justification has been signed by the agency head. Any such provision will clearly state whether the licensing may be required in connection with the practice of a subject invention, a specifically identified work object, or both. The agency head may not delegate the authority to approve such provisions or to sign the justification required for such provisions.
(b) A Federal agency will not require the licensing of third parties under any such provision unless the agency head determines that the use of the invention by others is necessary for the practice of a subject invention or for the use of a work object of the funding agreement and that such action is necessary to achieve practical application of the subject invention or work object. Any such determination will be on the record after an opportunity for an agency hearing. The contractor shall be given prompt notification of the determination by certified or registered mail. Any action commenced for judicial review of such determination shall be brought within sixty days after notification of such determination.

§ 401.13 Administration of patent rights clauses.

(a) In the event a subject invention is made under funding agreements of more than one agency, at the request of the contractor or on their own initiative the agencies shall designate one agency as responsible for administration of the rights of the government in the invention.

(b) Agencies shall promptly grant, unless there is a significant reason not to, a request by a nonprofit organization under paragraph (k)(2) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22 inasmuch as 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7) has since been amended to eliminate the limitation on the duration of exclusive licenses. Similarly, unless there is a significant reason not to, agencies shall promptly approve an assignment by a nonprofit organization to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions when a request for approval has been necessitated under paragraph (k)(1) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22 because the patent management organization is engaged in or holds a substantial interest in other organizations engaged in the manufacture or sale of products or the use of processes that might utilize the invention or be in competition with embodiments of the invention. As amended, 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7) no longer contains this limitation. The policy of this subsection should also be followed in connection with similar approvals that may be required under Institutional Patent Agreements, other patent rights clauses, or waivers that predate Chapter 18 of Title 35, United States Code.

(c) The President's Patent Policy Memorandum of February 18, 1983, states that agencies should protect the confidentiality of invention disclosure, patent applications, and utilization reports required in performance or in consequence of awards to the extent permitted by 35 U.S.C. 205 or other applicable laws. The following requirements should be followed for funding agreements covered by and predating this part 401.

(1) To the extent authorized by 35 U.S.C. 205, agencies shall not disclose to third parties pursuant to requests under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) any information disclosing a subject invention for a reasonable time in order for a patent application to be filed. With respect to subject inventions of contractors that are small business firms or nonprofit organizations, a reasonable time shall be the time during which an initial patent application may be filed under paragraph (c) of the standard clause found at § 401.14(a) or such other clause may be used in the funding agreement. However, an agency may disclose such subject inventions under the FOIA, at its discretion, after a contractor has elected not to retain title or after the time in which the contractor is required to make an election if the contractor has not made an election within that time. Similarly, an agency may honor a FOIA request at its discretion if it finds that the same information has previously been published by the inventor, contractor, or otherwise. If the agency plans to file itself when the contractor has not elected title, it may, of course, continue to avail itself of the authority of 35 U.S.C. 205.

(2) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 205, agencies shall not disclose or release for a period of 18 months from the filing date of the patent application to third parties pursuant to requests under the Freedom of Information Act, or otherwise, copies of any document which the agency obtained under this clause which is part of an application.
§401.14 Standard patent rights clauses.

(a) The following is the standard patent rights clause to be used as specified in §401.3(a).

Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations)

(a) Definitions

(1) Invention means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 et seq.).

(2) Subject invention means any invention of the contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this contract, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of contract performance.

(3) Practical Application means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(4) Made when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(5) Small Business Firm means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3-8 and 13 CFR 121.3-12, respectively, will be used.

(6) Nonprofit Organization means an university or other institution of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal
(b) Allocation of Principal Rights

The Contractor may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Contractor retains title, the Federal government shall have a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the United States the subject invention throughout the world.

(c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Application by Contractor

(1) The contractor will disclose each subject invention to the Federal Agency within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to contractor personnel responsible for patent matters. The disclosure to the agency shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the contractor, the invention under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to the agency, the Contractor will promptly notify the agency of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the contractor.

(2) The Contractor will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying the Federal agency within two years of disclosure to the Federal agency. However, in any case where publication, on sale or public use has initiated the one year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the United States, the period for election of title may be shortened by the agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The contractor will file its initial patent application on a subject invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the United States after a publication, on sale, or public use. The contractor will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application or six months from the date permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications where such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure, election, and filing under subparagraphs (1), (2), and (3) may, at the discretion of the agency, be granted.

(d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title

The contractor will convey to the Federal agency, upon written request, title to any subject invention—

(1) If the contractor fails to disclose or elect title to the subject invention within the times specified in (c), above, or elects not to retain title; provided that the agency may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the contractor to disclose or elect within the specified times.

(2) In those countries in which the contractor fails to file patent applications within the times specified in (c) above; provided, however, that if the contractor has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in (c) above, but prior to its receipt of the written request of the Federal agency, the contractor shall continue to retain title in that country.

(3) In any country in which the contractor decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(e) Minimum Rights to Contractor and Protection of the Contractor Right to File

(1) The contractor will retain a nonexclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the contractor fails to disclose the invention within the times specified in (c), above. The contractor's license extends to its domestic subsidiary and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the contractor is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the contractor was legally obligated to do so at the time the contract was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of the Federal agency except when transferred to the successor of that party of the contractor's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The contractor's domestic license may be revoked or modified by the funding Federal agency to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of
§ 401.14  
the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37 CFR part 404 and agency licensing regulations (if any). This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the contractor has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at the discretion of the funding Federal agency when requested under the Contract Disputes Act in connection with proceedings under paragraph (j) of this clause, and the contractor will not, as part of the consideration for the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractor’s subject inventions. (3) The contractor will include in all other subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work the patent rights clause required by (cite section of agency implementing regulations or FAR). (3) In the case of subcontracts, at any tier, when the prime award with the Federal agency was a contract (but not a grant or cooperative agreement), the agency, subcontractor, and the contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and the Federal agency with respect to the matters covered by the clause; provided, however, that nothing in this paragraph is intended to confer any jurisdiction under the Contract Disputes Act in connection with proceedings under paragraph (j) of this clause. 
(H) REPORTING ON UTILIZATION OF SUBJECT INVENTIONS  
The contractor agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of subject inventions or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the contractor or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the contractor, and such other data and information as the agency may reasonably specify. The
contractor also agrees to provide additional reports as may be requested by the agency in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by the agency in accordance with paragraph (j) of this clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), the agency agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the government without permission of the contractor.

(i) Preference for United States Industry

Notwithstanding any other provision of this clause, the contractor agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject inventions in the United States unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by the Federal agency upon a showing by the contractor or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the United States or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in Rights

The contractor agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, the Federal agency has the right in accordance with the procedures in 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the agency to require the contractor, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances, and if the contractor, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request the Federal agency has the right to grant such a license itself if the Federal agency determines that:

1. Such action is necessary because the contractor or assignee has not taken, or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use.
2. Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the contractor, assignee or their licensees;
3. Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the contractor, assignee or licensees; or
4. Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this clause has not been obtained or waived because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for Contracts with Nonprofit Organizations

If the contractor is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

1. Rights to a subject invention in the United States may not be assigned without the approval of the Federal agency, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the contractor;
2. The contractor will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when the agency deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;
3. The balance of any royalties or income earned by the contractor with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidental to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific research or education; and
4. It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject invention that are small business firms and that it will give a preference to a small business firm when licensing a subject invention if the contractor determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally as likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided, that the contractor is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the contractor. However, the contractor agrees that the Secretary may review the contractor’s licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the contractor will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures, or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary’s review discloses that the contractor could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the requirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(l) Communication

(Complete According to Instructions at 401.5(b))

(b) When the Department of Energy (DOE) determines to use alternative provisions under §401.3(a)(4), the standard clause at §401.14(a), of this section,
§ 401.15 Deferred determinations.

(a) This section applies to requests for greater rights in subject inventions made by contractors when deferred determination provisions were included in the funding agreement because one of the exceptions at §401.3(a) was applied, except that the Department of Energy is authorized to process deferred determinations either in accordance with its waiver regulations or this section. A contractor requesting greater rights should include with its request information on its plans and intentions to bring the invention to practical application. Within 90 days after receiving a request and supporting information, or sooner if a statutory bar to patenting is imminent, the agency should seek to make a determination.

(b) If the circumstances of concerns which originally led the agency to invoke an exception under §401.3(a) are not applicable to the actual subject invention or are no longer valid because of subsequent events, the agency should allow the contractor to retain title to the invention on the same conditions as would have applied if the standard clause at §401.14(a) had been used originally, unless it has been licensed.

(c) If paragraph (b) is not applicable the agency shall make its determination based on an assessment whether its own plans regarding the invention will better promote the policies and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200 than will contractor ownership of the invention. Moreover, if the agency is concerned only about specific uses or applications of the invention, it shall consider leaving title in the contractor with additional conditions imposed upon the contractor's use of the invention for such applications or with expanded government license rights in such applications.

(d) A determination not to allow the contractor to retain title to a subject invention or to restrict or condition its title with conditions differing from
those in the clause at § 401.14(a), unless made by the head of the agency, shall be appealable by the contractor to an agency official at a level above the person who made the determination. This appeal shall be subject to the procedures applicable to appeals under § 401.11 of this part.

§ 401.16 Electronic filing.
Unless otherwise requested or directed by the agency,
(a) The written report required in (c)(1) of the standard clause in § 401.14(a) may be electronically filed;
(b) The written election required in (c)(2) of the standard clause in § 401.14(a) may be electronically filed; and
(c) The close-out report in (f)(1) and the information identified in (f)(2) and (f)(3) of § 401.5 may be electronically filed.
[60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§ 401.17 Submissions and inquiries.
All submissions or inquiries should be directed to Director, Technology Competitiveness Staff, Office of Technology Policy, Technology Administration, telephone number 202-482-2100, Room H4418, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.
[60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

PART 404—LICENSING OF GOVERNMENT OWNED INVENTIONS

Sec.
404.1 Scope of part.
404.2 Policy and objective.
404.3 Definitions.
404.4 Authority to grant licenses.
404.5 Restrictions and conditions on all licenses granted under this part.
404.6 Nonexclusive licenses.
404.7 Exclusive and partially exclusive licenses.
404.8 Application for a license.
404.9 Notice to Attorney General.
404.10 Modification and termination of licenses.
404.11 Appeals.
404.12 Protection and administration of inventions.
404.13 Transfer of custody.
404.14 Confidentiality of information.

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 206 and the delegation of authority by the Secretary of Commerce to the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Technology Policy at sec. 3(g) of DOO 10-18.
SOURCE: 50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

§ 404.1 Scope of part.
This part prescribes the terms, conditions, and procedures upon which a federally owned invention, other than an invention in the custody of the Tennessee Valley Authority, may be licensed. It supersedes the regulations at 41 CFR Subpart 101-4.1. This part does not affect licenses which (a) were in effect prior to July 1, 1981; (b) may exist at the time of the Government’s acquisition of title to the invention, including those resulting from the allocation of rights to inventions made under Government research and development contracts; (c) are the result of an authorized exchange of rights in the settlement of patent disputes; or (d) are otherwise authorized by law or treaty.

§ 404.2 Policy and objective.
It is the policy and objective of this subpart to use the patent system to promote the utilization of inventions arising from federally supported research or development.

§ 404.3 Definitions.
(a) Federally owned invention means an invention, plant, or design which is covered by a patent, or patent application in the United States, or a patent, patent application, plant variety protection, or other form of protection, in a foreign country, title to which has been assigned to or otherwise vested in the United States Government.
(b) Federal agency means an executive department, military department, Government corporation, or independent establishment, except the Tennessee Valley Authority, which has custody of a federally owned invention.
(c) Small business firm means a small business concern as defined in section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration.
(d) Practical application means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and,
§ 404.4 Authority to grant licenses.

Federally owned inventions shall be made available for licensing as deemed appropriate in the public interest. Federal agencies having custody of federally owned inventions may grant non-exclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive licenses thereto under this part.

§ 404.5 Restrictions and conditions on all licenses granted under this part.

(a)(1) A license may be granted only if the applicant has supplied the Federal agency with a satisfactory plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, and with information about the applicant's capability to fulfill the plan.

(2) A license granting rights to use or sell under a federally owned invention in the United States shall normally be granted only to a licensee who agrees that any products embodying the invention or produced through the use of the invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States.

(b) Licenses shall contain such terms and conditions as the Federal agency determines are appropriate for the protection of the interests of the Federal Government and the public and are not in conflict with law or this part. The following terms and conditions apply to any license:

(1) The duration of the license shall be for a period specified in the license agreement, unless sooner terminated in accordance with this part.

(2) The license may be granted for all or less than all fields of use of the invention or in specified geographical areas, or both.

(3) The license may extend to subsidiaries of the licensee or other parties if provided for in the license but shall be nonassignable without approval of the Federal agency, except to the successor of that part of the licensee's business to which the invention pertains.

(4) The licensee may provide the license the right to grant sublicenses under the license, subject to the approval of the Federal agency. Each sublicense shall make reference to the license, including the rights retained by the Government, and a copy of such sublicense shall be furnished to the Federal agency.

(5) The license shall require the licensee to carry out the plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, to bring the invention to practical application within a period specified in the license, and to continue to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public.

(6) The license shall require the licensee to report periodically on the utilization or efforts at obtaining utilization that are being made by the licensee, with particular reference to the plan submitted.

(7) Licenses may be royalty-free or for royalties or other consideration.

(8) Where an agreement is obtained pursuant to § 404.5(a)(2) that any products embodying the invention or produced through use of the invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States, the license shall recite such agreement.

(9) The license shall provide for the right of the Federal agency to terminate the license, in whole or in part, if:

(i) The Federal agency determines that the licensee is not executing the plan submitted with its request for a license and the licensee cannot otherwise demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Federal agency that it has taken or can be expected to take within a reasonable time effective steps to achieve practical application of the invention;

(ii) The Federal agency determines that such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations issued after the date of the license and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the licensee;

(iii) The licensee has willfully made a false statement of or willfully omitted a material fact in the license application or in any report required by the license agreement; or
(iv) The licensee commits a substantial breach of a covenant or agreement contained in the license.

(10) The license may be modified or terminated, consistent with this part, upon mutual agreement of the Federal agency and the licensee.

(11) Nothing relating to the grant of a license, nor the grant itself, shall be construed to confer upon any person any immunity from or defenses under the antitrust laws or from a charge of patent misuse, and the acquisition and use of rights pursuant to this part shall not be immunized from the operation of state or Federal law by reason of the source of the grant.

§ 404.6 Nonexclusive licenses.

(a) Nonexclusive licenses may be granted under federally owned inventions without publication of availability or notice of a prospective license.

(b) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5, the nonexclusive license may also provide that, after termination of a period specified in the license agreement, the Federal agency may restrict the license to the fields of use or geographic areas, or both, in which the licensee has brought the invention to practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. However, such restriction shall be made only in order to grant an exclusive or partially exclusive license in accordance with this subpart.

§ 404.7 Exclusive and partially exclusive licenses.

(a)(1) Exclusive or partially exclusive domestic licenses may be granted on federally owned inventions three months after notice of the invention’s availability has been announced in the Federal Register, or without such notice where the Federal agency determines that expeditious granting of such a license will best serve the interest of the Federal Government and the public; and in either situation, only if;

(i) Notice of a prospective license, identifying the invention and the prospective licensee, has been published in the Federal Register, providing opportunity for filing written objections within a 60-day period;

(ii) After expiration of the period in § 404.7(a)(1)(i) and consideration of any written objections received during the period, the Federal agency has determined that;

(A) The interests of the Federal Government and the public will best be served by the proposed license, in view of the applicant’s intentions, plans, and ability to bring the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention’s utilization by the public;

(B) The desired practical application has not been achieved, or is not likely expeditiously to be achieved, under any nonexclusive license which has been granted, or which may be granted, on the invention;

(C) Exclusive or partially exclusive licensing is a reasonable and necessary incentive to call forth the investment of risk capital and expenditures to bring the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention’s utilization by the public;

(D) The proposed terms and scope of exclusivity are not greater than reasonably necessary to provide the incentive for bringing the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention’s utilization by the public;

(iii) The Federal agency has not determined that the grant of such license will tend substantially to lessen competition or result in undue concentration in any section of the country in any line of commerce to which the technology to be licensed relates, or to create or maintain other situations inconsistent with the antitrust laws; and

(iv) The Federal agency has given first preference to any small business firms submitting plans that are determined by the agency to be within the capabilities of the firms and as equally likely, if executed, to bring the invention to practical application as any plans submitted by applicants that are not small business firms.

(2) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5, the following terms and conditions apply to domestic exclusive and partially exclusive licenses;

(i) The license shall be subject to the irrevocable, royalty-free right of the Government of the United States to
§ 404.8 Application for a license.

An application for a license should be addressed to the Federal agency having custody of the invention and shall normally include:

(a) Identification of the invention for which the license is desired including the patent application serial number or patent number, title, and date, if known;

(b) Identification of the type of license for which the application is submitted;

(c) Name and address of the person, company, or organization applying for the license and the citizenship or place of incorporation of the applicant;

(d) Name, address, and telephone number of the representative of the applicant to whom correspondence should be sent;

(e) Nature and type of applicant's business, identifying products or services which the applicant has successfully commercialized, and approximate number of applicant's employees;

(f) Source of information concerning the availability of a license on the invention;

(g) A statement indicating whether the applicant is a small business firm as defined in §404.3(c);

(h) A detailed description of applicant's plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, which should include:

(1) A statement of the time, nature and amount of anticipated investment of capital and other resources which applicant believes will be required to bring the invention to practical application;

(2) In addition to the provisions of §404.5 the following terms and conditions apply to foreign exclusive and partially exclusive licenses:

(i) The license shall be subject to the irrevocable, royalty-free right of the Government of the United States to practice and have practiced the invention on behalf of the United States and on behalf of any foreign government or international organization pursuant to any existing or future treaty or agreement with the United States.

(ii) The license shall be subject to any licenses in force at the time of the grant of the exclusive or partially exclusive license.

(iii) The license may grant the licensee the right to take any suitable and necessary actions to protect the licensed property, on behalf of the Federal Government.

(c) Federal agencies shall maintain a record of determinations to grant exclusive or partially exclusive licenses.
(2) A statement as to applicant's capability and intention to fulfill the plan, including information regarding manufacturing, marketing, financial, and technical resources;

(3) A statement of the fields of use for which applicant intends to practice the invention; and

(4) A statement of the geographic areas in which applicant intends to manufacture any products embodying the invention and geographic areas where applicant intends to use or sell the invention, or both;

(i) Identification of licenses previously granted to applicant under federally owned inventions;

(j) A statement containing applicant's best knowledge of the extent to which the invention is being practiced by private industry or Government, or both, or is otherwise available commercially; and

(k) Any other information which applicant believes will support a determination to grant the license to applicant.

§ 404.9 Notice to Attorney General.

A copy of the notice provided for in § 404.7(a)(1)(i) and (b)(1)(i) will be sent to the Attorney General.

§ 404.10 Modification and termination of licenses.

Before modifying or terminating a license, other than by mutual agreement, the Federal agency shall furnish the licensee and any sublicensee of record a written notice of intention to modify or terminate the license, and the licensee and any sublicensee shall be allowed 30 days after such notice to remedy any breach of the license or show cause why the license shall not be modified or terminated.

§ 404.11 Appeals.

In accordance with procedures prescribed by the Federal agency, the following parties may appeal to the agency head or designee any decision or determination concerning the grant, denial, interpretation, modification, or termination of a license:

(a) A person whose application for a license has been denied.

(b) A licensee whose license has been modified or terminated, in whole or in part; or

(c) A person who timely filed a written objection in response to the notice required by § 404.7(a)(1)(i) or § 404.7(b)(1)(i) and who can demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Federal agency that such person may be damaged by the agency action.

§ 404.12 Protection and administration of inventions.

A Federal agency may take any suitable and necessary steps to protect and administer rights to federally owned inventions, either directly or through contract.

§ 404.13 Transfer of custody.

A Federal agency having custody of a federally owned invention may transfer custody and administration, in whole or in part, to another Federal agency, of the right, title, or interest in such invention.

§ 404.14 Confidentiality of information.

Title 35, United States Code, section 209, provides that any plan submitted pursuant to § 404.8(h) and any report required by § 404.5(b)(6) may be treated by the Federal agency as commercial and financial information obtained from a person and privileged and confidential and not subject to disclosure under section 552 of Title 5 of the United States Code.
CHAPTER V—UNDER SECRETARY FOR TECHNOLOGY, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Uniform patent policy for rights in inventions made by government employees</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>501</td>
<td></td>
<td>561</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART 501—UNIFORM PATENT POLICY FOR RIGHTS IN INVENTIONS MADE BY GOVERNMENT EMPLOYEES

Sec. 501.1 Purpose.
501.2 Scope.
501.3 Definitions.
501.4 Determination of inventions and rights.
501.5 Agency liaison officer.
501.6 Criteria for the determination of rights in and to inventions.
501.7 Agency determination.
501.8 Appeals by employees.
501.9 Patent protection.
501.10 Dissemination of this part and of implementing regulations.
501.11 Submissions and inquiries.


SOURCE: 53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

§ 501.1 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to provide for the administration of a uniform patent policy for the Government with respect to the rights in inventions made by Government employees and to prescribe rules and regulations for implementing and effectuating such policy.

[61 FR 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

§ 501.2 Scope.

This part applies to any invention made by a Government employee and to any action taken with respect thereto.

§ 501.3 Definitions.

(a) The term Secretary, as used in this part, means the Under Secretary of Commerce for Technology.

(b) The term Government agency, as used in this part, means any Executive department or independent establishment of the Executive branch of the Government (including any independent regulatory commission or board, any corporation wholly owned by the United States, and the Smithsonian Institution), but does not include the Department of Energy for inventions made under the provisions of 42 U.S.C. 2182, the Tennessee Valley Authority, or the Postal Service.

(c) The term Government employee, as used in this part, means any officer or employee, civilian or military, of any Government agency, including any special Government employee as defined in 18 U.S.C. 202 or an individual working for a Federal agency pursuant to the Intergovernmental Personnel Act (IPA), 5 U.S.C. 1304 and 3371–3376, or a part-time consultant or part-time employee as defined in 29 U.S.C. 2101(a)(8) except as may otherwise be provided by agency regulation approved by the Secretary.

(d) The term invention, as used in this part, means any art or process, machine, manufacture, design, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof, or any variety of plant, which is or may be patentable under the patent laws of the United States.

(e) The term made as used in this part in relation to any invention, means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention as stated in In re King, 3 USPQ2d (BNA) 1747 (Comm'r Pat. 1987).

[61 FR 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

§ 501.4 Determination of inventions and rights.

Each Government agency has the approval of the Secretary to determine whether the results of research, development, or other activity in the agency constitute an invention within the purview of Executive Order 10096, as amended by Executive Order 10930 and Executive Order 10695, and to determine the rights in and to the invention in accordance with the provisions of §§ 501.6 and 501.7.

[61 FR 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

§ 501.5 Agency liaison officer.

Each Government agency shall designate a liaison officer to represent the agency before the Secretary: Provided, however, that the Departments of the Army, the Navy, and the Air Force may each designate a liaison officer.
§ 501.6 Criteria for the determination of rights in and to inventions.

(a) The following rules shall be applied in determining the respective rights of the Government and of the inventor in and to any invention that is subject to the provisions of this part:

(1) The Government shall obtain, except as herein otherwise provided, the entire right, title and interest in and to any invention made by any Government employee:

(i) During working hours, or
(ii) With a contribution by the Government of facilities, equipment, materials, funds or information, or of time or services of other Government employees on official duty, or
(iii) Which bears a direct relation to or is made in consequence of the official duties of the inventor.

(2) In any case where the contribution of the Government, as measured by any one or more of the criteria set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, to the invention is insufficient equitably to justify a requirement of assignment to the Government of the entire right, title and interest in and to such invention, or in any case where the Government has insufficient interest in an invention to obtain the entire right, title and interest therein (although the Government could obtain same under paragraph (a)(1) of this section), the Government agency concerned shall leave title to such invention in the employee, subject however, to the reservation to the Government of a nonexclusive, irrevocable, royalty-free license in the invention with power to grant licenses for all governmental purposes. The terms of such reservation will appear, where practicable, in any patent, domestic or foreign, which may issue on such invention. Reference is made to section 15 of the Federal Technology Transfer Act of 1986 (15 U.S.C. 3710d) which requires a Government agency to allow the inventor to retain title to any covered invention when the agency does not intend to file a patent application or otherwise promote commercialization.

(3) In applying the provisions of paragraphs (a)(1) and (2) of this section to the facts and circumstances relating to the making of a particular invention, it shall be presumed that an invention made by an employee who is employed or assigned:

(i) To invent or improve or perfect any art or process, machine, design, manufacture, or composition of matter;
(ii) To conduct or perform research, development work, or both,
(iii) To supervise, direct, coordinate, or review Government financed or conducted research, development work, or both, or
(iv) To act in a liaison capacity among governmental or non-governmental agencies or individuals engaged in such research or development work, falls within the provisions of paragraph (a)(1) of this section, and it shall be presumed that any invention made by any other employee falls within the provisions of paragraph (a)(2) of this section. Either presumption may be rebutted by a showing of the facts and circumstances in the case and shall not preclude a determination that these facts and circumstances justify leaving the entire right, title and interest in and to the invention in the Government employee, subject to law.

(4) In any case wherein the Government neither:

(i) Obtains the entire right, title and interest in and to an invention pursuant to §501.6(a)(1) and the employee does not appeal, no further review is required.
(ii) Reserves a nonexclusive, irrevocable, royalty-free license in the invention, with power to grant licenses for all governmental purposes, pursuant to the provisions of paragraph (a)(2) of this section, the Government shall leave the entire right, title and interest in and to the invention in the Government employee, subject to law.


§ 501.7 Agency determination.

(a) If the agency determines that the Government is entitled to obtain title pursuant to §501.6(a)(1) and the employee does not appeal, no further review is required.

(b) In the event that a Government agency determines, pursuant to paragraph (a)(2) or (a)(4) of §501.6, that title to an invention will be left with the employee, the agency shall notify the
employee of this determination. In cases pursuant to §501.6(a)(2) where the Government's insufficient interest in the invention is evidenced by its decision not to file a patent application, the agency may impose on the employee any one or all of the following conditions or any other conditions that may be necessary in a particular case:

1. That a patent application be filed in the United States and/or abroad, if the Government has determined that it has or may need to practice the invention;
2. That the invention not be assigned to any foreign-owned or controlled corporation without the written permission of the agency; and
3. That any assignment or license of rights to use or sell the invention in the United States shall contain a requirement that any products embodying the invention or produced through the use of the invention be substantially manufactured in the United States. The agency shall notify the employee of any conditions imposed.

(c) In the case of a determination under either paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, the agency shall promptly provide the employee with:

1. A signed and dated statement of its determination and reasons therefor; and


§ 501.8 Appeals by employees.

(a) Any Government employee who is aggrieved by a Government agency determination pursuant to §§501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2), may obtain a review of any agency determination by filing, within 30 days (or such longer period as the Secretary may, for good cause shown in writing, fix in any case) after receiving notice of such determination, two copies of an appeal with the Secretary. The Secretary then shall forward one copy of the appeal to the agency liaison officer of the Government agency.

(b) On receipt of a copy of an appeal filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the agency liaison officer shall notify the employee with a copy of a report containing the following information about the invention involved in the appeal:

1. A copy of the agency's statement specified in §501.7(c);
2. A description of the invention in sufficient detail to identify the invention and show its relationship to the employee's duties and work assignments;
3. The name of the employee and employment status, including a detailed statement of official duties and responsibilities at the time the invention was made; and
4. A detailed statement of the points of dispute or controversy, together with copies of any statements or written arguments filed with the agency, and of any other relevant evidence that the agency considered in making its determination of Government interest.

(c) Within 25 days (or such longer period as the Secretary may, for good cause shown, fix in any case) after the transmission of a copy of the agency report to the employee, the employee may file a reply with the Secretary and file one copy with the agency liaison officer.

(d) After the time for the inventor's reply to the Government agency's report has expired and if the inventor has so requested in his or her appeal, a date will be set for hearing of oral arguments before the Secretary, by the employee (or by an attorney whom he or she designates by written power of attorney filed before, or at the hearing) and a representative of the Government agency involved. Unless it shall be otherwise ordered before the hearing begins, oral arguments will be limited to thirty minutes for each side. The employee need not retain an attorney or request an oral hearing to secure full consideration of the facts and his or her arguments. The employee may expedite such consideration by notifying the Secretary when he or she does not intend to file a reply to the agency report.

(e) After a hearing on the appeal, if a hearing was requested, or after expiration of the period for the inventor's reply to the agency report if no hearing is set, the Secretary shall issue a decision on the matter within 120 days, which decision shall be final after a
§ 501.9 Patent protection.

(a) A Government agency, upon determining that an invention coming within the scope of §§ 501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2) has been made, shall promptly determine whether patent protection will be sought in the United States by or on behalf of the agency for such invention. A controversy over the respective rights of the Government and of the employee shall not unnecessarily delay the filing of a patent application by the agency to avoid the loss of patent rights. In cases coming within the scope of § 501.6(a)(2), the filing of a patent application shall be contingent upon the consent of the employee.

(b) Where there is an appealed dispute as to whether §§ 501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2) applies in determining the respective rights of the Government and of an employee in and to any invention, the agency may determine whether patent protection will be sought in the United States pending the Secretary's decision on the dispute. If the agency decides that an application for patent should be filed, the agency will take such rights as are specified in § 501.6(a)(2), but this shall be without prejudice to acquiring the rights specified in paragraph (a)(1) of that section should the Secretary so decide.

(c) Where an agency has determined to leave title to an invention with an employee under § 501.6(a)(2), the agency will, upon the filing of an application for patent, take the rights specified in that paragraph without prejudice to the subsequent acquisition by the Government of the rights specified in paragraph (a)(1) of that section should the Secretary so decide.

(d) Where an agency has filed a patent application in the United States, the agency will, within 8 months from the filing date of the U.S. application, determine if any foreign patent applications should also be filed. If the agency chooses not to file an application in any foreign country, the employee may request rights in that country subject to the conditions stated in § 501.7(b) that may be imposed by the agency. Alternatively, the agency may permit the employee to retain foreign rights by including in any assignment to the Government of an unclassified U.S. patent application on the invention an option for the Government to acquire title in any foreign country within 8 months from the filing date of the U.S. application.

§ 501.10 Dissemination of this part and of implementing regulations.

Each Government agency shall disseminate to its employees the provisions of this part, and any appropriate implementing agency regulations and delegations. Copies of any such regulations shall be sent to the Secretary. If the Secretary identifies an inconsistency between this part and the agency regulations or delegations, the agency, upon being informed by the Secretary of the inconsistency, shall take prompt action to correct it.

§ 501.11 Submissions and inquiries.

All submissions or inquiries should be directed to Chief Counsel for Technology, telephone number 202-482-1984, Room H4835, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington DC 20230.

[61 FR 41000, Aug. 7, 1996]
FINDING AIDS

A list of current CFR titles, subtitles, chapters, subchapters and parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are included in the CFR Index and Finding Aids volume to the Code of Federal Regulations which is published separately and revised annually.

Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference
Table of CFR Titles and Chapters
Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
List of CFR Sections Affected
Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference

(Revised as of July 1, 2000)

The Director of the Federal Register has approved under 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR Part 51 the incorporation by reference of the following publications. This list contains only those incorporations by reference effective as of the revision date of this volume. Incorporations by reference found within a regulation are effective upon the effective date of that regulation. For more information on incorporation by reference, see the preliminary pages of this volume.

37 CFR
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO)

34 chemin des Colombettes, 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland
# Table of CFR Titles and Chapters

(Revised as of June 23, 2000)

## Title 1—General Provisions

I Administrative Committee of the Federal Register (Parts 1—49)  
II Office of the Federal Register (Parts 50—299)  
IV Miscellaneous Agencies (Parts 400—500)

## Title 2—[Reserved]

## Title 3—The President

I Executive Office of the President (Parts 100—199)

## Title 4—Accounts

I General Accounting Office (Parts 1—99)  
II Federal Claims Collection Standards (General Accounting Office—Department of Justice) (Parts 100—299)

## Title 5—Administrative Personnel

I Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1—1199)  
II Merit Systems Protection Board (Parts 1200—1299)  
III Office of Management and Budget (Parts 1300—1399)  
V The International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board (Parts 1500—1599)  
VI Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board (Parts 1600—1699)  
VII Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations (Parts 1700—1799)  
VIII Office of Special Counsel (Parts 1800—1899)  
IX Appalachian Regional Commission (Parts 1900—1999)  
XI Armed Forces Retirement Home (Part 2100)  
XIV Federal Labor Relations Authority, General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority and Federal Service Impasses Panel (Parts 2400—2499)  
XV Office of Administration, Executive Office of the President (Parts 2500—2599)  
XVI Office of Government Ethics (Parts 2600—2699)  
XXI Department of the Treasury (Parts 3100—3199)  
XXII Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (Part 3201)
Title 5—Administrative Personnel—Continued

XXIII Department of Energy (Part 3301)
XXIV Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (Part 3401)
XXV Department of the Interior (Part 3501)
XXVI Department of Defense (Part 3601)
XXVIII Department of Justice (Part 3801)
XXIX Federal Communications Commission (Parts 3900–3999)
XXX Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation (Parts 4000–4099)
XXXI Farm Credit Administration (Parts 4100–4199)
XXXIII Overseas Private Investment Corporation (Part 4301)
XXXV Office of Personnel Management (Part 4501)
XL Interstate Commerce Commission (Part 5001)
XLI Commodity Futures Trading Commission (Part 5101)
XLII Department of Labor (Part 5201)
XLIII National Science Foundation (Part 5301)
XLV Department of Health and Human Services (Part 5501)
XLVI Postal Rate Commission (Part 5601)
XLVII Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Part 5801)
L Department of Transportation (Part 6001)
LI Export-Import Bank of the United States (Part 6201)
LII Department of Education (Parts 6300–6399)
LIV Environmental Protection Agency (Part 6401)
LVII General Services Administration (Part 6701)
LVIII Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (Part 6801)
LIX National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Part 6901)
LX United States Postal Service (Part 7001)
LXI National Labor Relations Board (Part 7101)
LXII Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (Part 7201)
LXIII Inter-American Foundation (Part 7301)
LXV Department of Housing and Urban Development (Part 7501)
LXVI National Archives and Records Administration (Part 7601)
LXIX Tennessee Valley Authority (Part 7901)
LXXI Consumer Product Safety Commission (Part 8101)
LXXII Department of Agriculture (Part 8301)
LXXIV Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission (Part 8401)
LXXVI Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board (Part 8601)
LXXVII Office of Management and Budget (Part 8701)
LXXVIII Office of Management and Budget (Part 8701)

Title 6—[Reserved]

Title 7—Agriculture

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of Agriculture (Parts 0–26)
Subtitle B—Regulations of the Department of Agriculture
Title 7—Agriculture—Continued

I Agricultural Marketing Service (Standards, Inspections, Marketing Practices), Department of Agriculture (Parts 27—209)

II Food and Nutrition Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 210—299)

III Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 300—399)

IV Federal Crop Insurance Corporation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 400—499)

V Agricultural Research Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 500—599)

VI Natural Resources Conservation Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 600—699)

VII Farm Service Agency, Department of Agriculture (Parts 700—799)

VIII Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration (Federal Grain Inspection Service), Department of Agriculture (Parts 800—899)

IX Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Fruits, Vegetables, Nuts), Department of Agriculture (Parts 900—999)

X Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Milk), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1000—1199)

XI Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Miscellaneous Commodities), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1200—1299)

XII Northeast Dairy Compact Commission (Parts 1300—1399)

XIV Commodity Credit Corporation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1400—1499)

XV Foreign Agricultural Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1500—1599)

XVI Rural Telephone Bank, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1600—1699)

XVII Rural Utilities Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1700—1799)

XVIII Rural Housing Service, Rural Business-Cooperative Service, Rural Utilities Service, and Farm Service Agency, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1800—2099)

XXVI Office of Inspector General, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2600—2699)

XXVII Office of Information Resources Management, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2700—2799)

XXVIII Office of Operations, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2800—2899)

XXIX Office of Energy, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2900—2999)

XXX Office of the Chief Financial Officer, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3000—3099)

XXXI Office of Environmental Quality, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3100—3199)

XXXII Office of Procurement and Property Management, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3200—3299)
Title 7—Agriculture—Continued

XXXIII Office of Transportation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3300—3399)
XXXIV Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3400—3499)
XXXV Rural Housing Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3500—3599)
XXXVI National Agricultural Statistics Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3600—3699)
XXXVII Economic Research Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3700—3799)
XXXVIII World Agricultural Outlook Board, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3800—3899)
XLII Rural Business-Cooperative Service and Rural Utilities Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 4200—4299)

Title 8—Aliens and Nationality

I Immigration and Naturalization Service, Department of Justice (Parts 1—599)

Title 9—Animals and Animal Products

I Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1—199)
II Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration (Packers and Stockyards Programs), Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)
III Food Safety and Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 300—599)

Title 10—Energy

I Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Parts 0—199)
II Department of Energy (Parts 200—699)
III Department of Energy (Parts 700—999)
X Department of Energy (General Provisions) (Parts 1000—1099)
XVII Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII Northeast Interstate Low-Level Radioactive Waste Commission (Part 1800)

Title 11—Federal Elections

I Federal Election Commission (Parts 1—9099)

Title 12—Banks and Banking

I Comptroller of the Currency, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)
Title 12—Banks and Banking—Continued

II Federal Reserve System (Parts 200—299)
III Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (Parts 300—399)
IV Export-Import Bank of the United States (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Thrift Supervision, Department of the Treasury (Parts 500—599)
VI Farm Credit Administration (Parts 600—699)
VII National Credit Union Administration (Parts 700—799)
VIII Federal Financing Bank (Parts 800—899)
IX Federal Housing Finance Board (Parts 900—999)
XI Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council (Parts 1100—1199)
XIV Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation (Parts 1400—1499)
XV Department of the Treasury (Parts 1500—1599)
XVII Office of Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII Community Development Financial Institutions Fund, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1800—1899)

Title 13—Business Credit and Assistance

I Small Business Administration (Parts 1—199)
III Economic Development Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)
IV Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board (Parts 400—499)
V Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board (Parts 500—599)

Title 14—Aeronautics and Space

I Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II Office of the Secretary, Department of Transportation (Aviation Proceedings) (Parts 200—399)
III Commercial Space Transportation, Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
V National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade

SUBTITLE A—OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY OF COMMERCE (PARTS 0—29)
SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS RELATING TO COMMERCE AND FOREIGN TRADE
I Bureau of the Census, Department of Commerce (Parts 30—199)
II National Institute of Standards and Technology, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)
III International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)
Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade—Continued

IV  Foreign-Trade Zones Board, Department of Commerce (Parts 400—499)

VII Bureau of Export Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 700—799)

VIII Bureau of Economic Analysis, Department of Commerce (Parts 800—899)

IX National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 900—999)

XI Technology Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 1100—1199)

XIII East-West Foreign Trade Board (Parts 1300—1399)

XIV Minority Business Development Agency (Parts 1400—1499)

SUBTITLE C—Regulations Relating to Foreign Trade Agreements

XX Office of the United States Trade Representative (Parts 2000—2099)

SUBTITLE D—Regulations Relating to Telecommunications and Information

XXIII National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 2300—2399)

Title 16—Commercial Practices

I  Federal Trade Commission (Parts 0—999)

II  Consumer Product Safety Commission (Parts 1000—1799)

Title 17—Commodity and Securities Exchanges

I  Commodity Futures Trading Commission (Parts 1—199)

II  Securities and Exchange Commission (Parts 200—399)

IV  Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)

Title 18—Conservation of Power and Water Resources

I  Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, Department of Energy (Parts 1—399)

III Delaware River Basin Commission (Parts 400—499)

VI Water Resources Council (Parts 700—799)

VIII Susquehanna River Basin Commission (Parts 800—899)

XIII Tennessee Valley Authority (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 19—Customs Duties

I  United States Customs Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)

II  United States International Trade Commission (Parts 200—299)

III  International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)
Title 20—Employees’ Benefits

I Office of Workers’ Compensation Programs, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)
II Railroad Retirement Board (Parts 200—399)
III Social Security Administration (Parts 400—499)
IV Employees’ Compensation Appeals Board, Department of Labor (Parts 500—599)
V Employment and Training Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 600—699)
VI Employment Standards Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 700—799)
VII Benefits Review Board, Department of Labor (Parts 800—899)
VIII Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries (Parts 900—999)
IX Office of the Assistant Secretary for Veterans’ Employment and Training, Department of Labor (Parts 1000—1099)

Title 21—Food and Drugs

I Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—1299)
II Drug Enforcement Administration, Department of Justice (Parts 1300—1399)
III Office of National Drug Control Policy (Parts 1400—1499)

Title 22—Foreign Relations

I Department of State (Parts 1—199)
II Agency for International Development (Parts 200—299)
III Peace Corps (Parts 300—399)
IV International Joint Commission, United States and Canada (Parts 400—499)
V Broadcasting Board of Governors (Parts 500—599)
VII Overseas Private Investment Corporation (Parts 700—799)
IX Foreign Service Grievance Board Regulations (Parts 900—999)
X Inter-American Foundation (Parts 1000—1099)
XI International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, United States Section (Parts 1100—1199)
XII United States International Development Cooperation Agency (Parts 1200—1299)
XIII Board for International Broadcasting (Parts 1300—1399)
XIV Foreign Service Labor Relations Board; Federal Labor Relations Authority; General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority; and the Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel (Parts 1400—1499)
XV African Development Foundation (Parts 1500—1599)
XVI Japan-United States Friendship Commission (Parts 1600—1699)
XVII United States Institute of Peace (Parts 1700—1799)
Title 23—Highways

I Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—999)

II National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)

III National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 24—Housing and Urban Development

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 0—99)

SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Housing and Urban Development

I Office of Assistant Secretary for Equal Opportunity, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 100—199)

II Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing-Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 200—299)

III Government National Mortgage Association, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 300—399)

IV Office of Housing and Office of Multifamily Housing Assistance Restructuring, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 400—499)

V Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 500—599)

VI Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 600—699) [Reserved]

VII Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Housing Assistance Programs and Public and Indian Housing Programs) (Parts 700—799)

VIII Office of the Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Section 8 Housing Assistance Programs, Section 202 Direct Loan Program, Section 202 Supportive Housing for the Elderly Program and Section 811 Supportive Housing for Persons With Disabilities Program) (Parts 800—899)

IX Office of Assistant Secretary for Public and Indian Housing, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 900—999)

X Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Interstate Land Sales Registration Program) (Parts 1700—1799)

XI Office of Inspector General, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2000—2099)

XX Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 3200—3899)

XXV Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation (Parts 4100—4199)
Title 25—Indians

I Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—299)
II Indian Arts and Crafts Board, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)
III National Indian Gaming Commission, Department of the Interior (Parts 500—599)
IV Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation (Parts 700—799)
V Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior, and Indian Health Service, Department of Health and Human Services (Part 900)
VI Office of the Assistant Secretary-Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior (Part 1001)
VII Office of the Special Trustee for American Indians, Department of the Interior (Part 1200)

Title 26—Internal Revenue

I Internal Revenue Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—799)

Title 27—Alcohol, Tobacco Products and Firearms

I Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—299)

Title 28—Judicial Administration

I Department of Justice (Parts 0—199)
III Federal Prison Industries, Inc., Department of Justice (Parts 300—399)
V Bureau of Prisons, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)
VI Offices of Independent Counsel, Department of Justice (Parts 600—699)
VII Office of Independent Counsel (Parts 700—799)

Title 29—Labor

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of Labor (Parts 0—99)
Subtitle B—Regulations Relating to Labor
I National Labor Relations Board (Parts 100—199)
II Office of Labor-Management Standards, Department of Labor (Parts 200—299)
III National Railroad Adjustment Board (Parts 300—399)
IV Office of Labor-Management Standards, Department of Labor (Parts 400—499)
V Wage and Hour Division, Department of Labor (Parts 500—899)
IX Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission (Parts 900—999)
X National Mediation Board (Parts 1200—1299)
Title 29—Labor—Continued

XII Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service (Parts 1400—1499)
XIV Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (Parts 1600—1699)
XVII Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1900—1999)
XX Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2200—2499)
XXV Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 2500—2599)
XXVII Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2700—2799)
XL Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation (Parts 4000—4999)

Title 30—Mineral Resources

I Mine Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)
II Minerals Management Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—299)
III Board of Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)
IV Geological Survey, Department of the Interior (Parts 400—499)
VI Bureau of Mines, Department of the Interior (Parts 600—699)
VII Office of Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Department of the Interior (Parts 700—799)

Title 31—Money and Finance: Treasury

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of the Treasury (Parts 0—50)
Subtitle B—Regulations Relating to Money and Finance
I Monetary Offices, Department of the Treasury (Parts 51—199)
II Fiscal Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 200—399)
IV Secret Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of the Treasury (Parts 500—599)
VI Bureau of Engraving and Printing, Department of the Treasury (Parts 600—699)
VII Federal Law Enforcement Training Center, Department of the Treasury (Parts 700—799)
VIII Office of International Investment, Department of the Treasury (Parts 800—899)

Title 32—National Defense

Subtitle A—Department of Defense
I Office of the Secretary of Defense (Parts 1—399)
V Department of the Army (Parts 400—699)
VI Department of the Navy (Parts 700—799)
Title 32—National Defense—Continued

VII Department of the Air Force (Parts 800—1099)
   SUBTITLE B—Other Regulations Relating to National Defense
   XII Defense Logistics Agency (Parts 1200—1299)
   XVI Selective Service System (Parts 1600—1699)
   XVIII National Counterintelligence Center (Parts 1800—1899)
   XIX Central Intelligence Agency (Parts 1900—1999)
   XX Information Security Oversight Office, National Archives and
       Records Administration (Parts 2000—2099)
   XXI National Security Council (Parts 2100—2199)
   XXIV Office of Science and Technology Policy (Parts 2400—2499)
   XXVII Office for Micronesian Status Negotiations (Parts 2700—2799)
   XXVIII Office of the Vice President of the United States (Parts 2800—
       2899)

Title 33—Navigation and Navigable Waters

I Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 200—399)
IV Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation, Department
   of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 34—Education

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary, Department of Education
   (Parts 1—99)
SUBTITLE B—Regulations of the Offices of the Department of Education
   I Office for Civil Rights, Department of Education (Parts 100—199)
   II Office of Elementary and Secondary Education, Department of
       Education (Parts 200—299)
   III Office of Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Depart-
       ment of Education (Parts 300—399)
   IV Office of Vocational and Adult Education, Department of Edu-
       cation (Parts 400—499)
   V Office of Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs,
       Department of Education (Parts 500—599)
   VI Office of Postsecondary Education, Department of Education
       (Parts 600—699)
   VII Office of Educational Research and Improvement, Department of
       Education (Parts 700—799)
   XI National Institute for Literacy (Parts 1100—1199)
SUBTITLE C—Regulations Relating to Education
   XII National Council on Disability (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 35—Panama Canal

I Panama Canal Regulations (Parts 1—299)
Title 36—Parks, Forests, and Public Property

I National Park Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)
II Forest Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)
III Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 300—399)
IV American Battle Monuments Commission (Parts 400—499)
V Smithsonian Institution (Parts 500—599)
VII Library of Congress (Parts 700—799)
VIII Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (Parts 800—899)
IX Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation (Parts 900—999)
X Presidio Trust (Parts 1000—1099)
XI Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (Parts 1100—1199)
XII National Archives and Records Administration (Parts 1200—1299)
XIV Assassination Records Review Board (Parts 1400—1499)
XV Oklahoma City National Memorial Trust (Part 1501)

Title 37—Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

I Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce (Parts 1—199)
II Copyright Office, Library of Congress (Parts 200—299)
IV Assistant Secretary for Technology Policy, Department of Commerce (Parts 400—499)
V Under Secretary for Technology, Department of Commerce (Parts 500—599)

Title 38—Pensions, Bonuses, and Veterans’ Relief

I Department of Veterans Affairs (Parts 0—99)

Title 39—Postal Service

I United States Postal Service (Parts 1—999)
III Postal Rate Commission (Parts 3000—3099)

Title 40—Protection of Environment

I Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1—799)
V Council on Environmental Quality (Parts 1500—1599)
VII Environmental Protection Agency and Department of Defense; Uniform National Discharge Standards for Vessels of the Armed Forces (Parts 1700—1799)

Title 41—Public Contracts and Property Management

Subtitle B—Other Provisions Relating to Public Contracts
50 Public Contracts, Department of Labor (Parts 50-1—50-999)
Title 41—Public Contracts and Property Management—Continued

51 Committee for Purchase From People Who Are Blind or Severely Disabled (Parts 51-1—51-99)
60 Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor (Parts 60-1—60-999)
61 Office of the Assistant Secretary for Veterans Employment and Training, Department of Labor (Parts 61-1—61-999)

Subtitle C—Federal Property Management Regulations System

101 Federal Property Management Regulations (Parts 101-1—101-99)
102 Federal Management Regulation (Parts 102-1—102-299)
105 General Services Administration (Parts 105-1—105-999)
109 Department of Energy Property Management Regulations (Parts 109-1—109-99)
114 Department of the Interior (Parts 114-1—114-99)
115 Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 115-1—115-99)
128 Department of Justice (Parts 128-1—128-99)

Subtitle D—Other Provisions Relating to Property Management [Reserved]

Subtitle E—Federal Information Resources Management Regulations System

201 Federal Information Resources Management Regulation (Parts 201-1—201-99) [Reserved]

Subtitle F—Federal Travel Regulation System

300 General (Parts 300-1—300.99)
301 Temporary Duty (TDY) Travel Allowances (Parts 301-1—301-99)
302 Relocation Allowances (Parts 302-1—302-99)
303 Payment of Expenses Connected with the Death of Certain Employees (Part 303-70)
304 Payment from a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses (Parts 304-1—304-99)

Title 42—Public Health

I Public Health Service, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—199)
IV Health Care Financing Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Inspector General—Health Care, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1999)

Title 43—Public Lands: Interior

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of the Interior (Parts 1—199)
Subtitle B—Regulations Relating to Public Lands
I Bureau of Reclamation, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—499)
II Bureau of Land Management, Department of the Interior (Parts 1000—9999)
Title 43—Public Lands: Interior—Continued

III Utah Reclamation Mitigation and Conservation Commission (Parts 10000—10005)

Title 44—Emergency Management and Assistance

I Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 0—399)

IV Department of Commerce and Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 45—Public Welfare

SUBTITLE A—DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES (PARTS 1—199)

SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS RELATING TO PUBLIC WELFARE

II Office of Family Assistance (Assistance Programs), Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 200—299)

III Office of Child Support Enforcement (Child Support Enforcement Program), Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)

IV Office of Refugee Resettlement, Administration for Children and Families Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)

V Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)

VI National Science Foundation (Parts 600—699)

VII Commission on Civil Rights (Parts 700—799)

VIII Office of Personnel Management (Parts 800—899)

X Office of Community Services, Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1099)

XI National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities (Parts 1100—1199)

XII Corporation for National and Community Service (Parts 1200—1299)

XIII Office of Human Development Services, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1300—1399)

XVI Legal Services Corporation (Parts 1600—1699)

 XVII National Commission on Libraries and Information Science (Parts 1700—1799)

XVIII Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation (Parts 1800—1899)

XXI Commission on Fine Arts (Parts 2100—2199)

XXIII Arctic Research Commission (Part 2301)

XXIV James Madison Memorial Fellowship Foundation (Parts 2400—2499)

XXV Corporation for National and Community Service (Parts 2500—2599)
Title 46—Shipping

I Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II Maritime Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—399)
III Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage), Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
IV Federal Maritime Commission (Parts 500—599)

Title 47—Telecommunication

I Federal Communications Commission (Parts 0—199)
II Office of Science and Technology Policy and National Security Council (Parts 200—299)
III National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System

1 Federal Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1—99)
2 Department of Defense (Parts 200—299)
3 Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)
4 Department of Agriculture (Parts 400—499)
5 General Services Administration (Parts 500—599)
6 Department of State (Parts 600—699)
7 United States Agency for International Development (Parts 700—799)
8 Department of Veterans Affairs (Parts 800—899)
9 Department of Energy (Parts 900—999)
10 Department of the Treasury (Parts 1000—1099)
12 Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)
13 Department of Commerce (Parts 1300—1399)
14 Department of the Interior (Parts 1400—1499)
15 Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1500—1599)
16 Office of Personnel Management Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1600—1699)
17 Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1700—1799)
18 National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1800—1899)
19 Broadcasting Board of Governors (Parts 1900—1999)
20 Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Parts 2000—2099)
21 Office of Personnel Management, Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation (Parts 2100—2199)
23 Social Security Administration (Parts 2300—2399)
24 Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2400—2499)
25 National Science Foundation (Parts 2500—2599)
28 Department of Justice (Parts 2800—2899)
29 Department of Labor (Parts 2900—2999)
Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System—Continued

34 Department of Education Acquisition Regulation (Parts 3400—3499)
35 Panama Canal Commission (Parts 3500—3599)
44 Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 4400—4499)
51 Department of the Army Acquisition Regulations (Parts 5100—5199)
52 Department of the Navy Acquisition Regulations (Parts 5200—5299)
53 Department of the Air Force Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (Parts 5300—5399)
54 Defense Logistics Agency, Department of Defense (Part 5452)
57 African Development Foundation (Parts 5700—5799)
61 General Services Administration Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6100—6199)
63 Department of Transportation Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6300—6399)
99 Cost Accounting Standards Board, Office of Federal Procurement Policy, Office of Management and Budget (Parts 9900—9999)

Title 49—Transportation

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of Transportation (Parts 1—99)
Subtitle B—Other Regulations Relating to Transportation
I Research and Special Programs Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 100—199)
II Federal Railroad Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—299)
III Federal Motor Carriers Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 300—399)
IV Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
V National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 500—599)
VI Federal Transit Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 600—699)
VII National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK) (Parts 700—799)
VIII National Transportation Safety Board (Parts 800—999)
X Surface Transportation Board, Department of Transportation (Parts 1000—1399)
XI Bureau of Transportation Statistics, Department of Transportation (Parts 1400—1499)

Title 50—Wildlife and Fisheries
I United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)
Title 50—Wildlife and Fisheries—Continued

Chap.

II National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)

III International Fishing and Related Activities (Parts 300—399)

IV Joint Regulations (United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior and National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce); Endangered Species Committee Regulations (Parts 400—499)

V Marine Mammal Commission (Parts 500—599)

VI Fishery Conservation and Management, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 600—699)

CFR Index and Finding Aids

Subject/Agency Index
List of Agency Prepared Indexes
Parallel Tables of Statutory Authorities and Rules
List of CFR Titles, Chapters, Subchapters, and Parts
Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
### Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR

(Revised as of June 23, 2000)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administrative Committee of the Federal Register</td>
<td>1, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Research Projects Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations</td>
<td>5, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advisory Council on Historic Preservation</td>
<td>36, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African Development Foundation</td>
<td>22, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency for International Development, United States</td>
<td>22, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Marketing Service</td>
<td>7, I, IX, X, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Research Service</td>
<td>7, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture Department</td>
<td>5, LXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Marketing Service</td>
<td>7, I, IX, X, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Research Service</td>
<td>7, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service</td>
<td>7, III; 9, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Financial Officer, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Credit Corporation</td>
<td>7, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service</td>
<td>7, XXXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Research Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Quality, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm Service Agency</td>
<td>7, VII, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Crop Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>7, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Nutrition Service</td>
<td>7, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food Safety and Inspection Service</td>
<td>9, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Agricultural Service</td>
<td>7, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Service</td>
<td>36, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration</td>
<td>7, VIII; 9, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Resources Management, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Library</td>
<td>7, XL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Statistics Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Resources Conservation Service</td>
<td>7, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement and Property Management, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Business-Cooperative Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Development Administration</td>
<td>7, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Housing Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XXXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Telephone Bank</td>
<td>7, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Utilities Service</td>
<td>7, XVII, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Agriculture, Office of</td>
<td>7, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Agricultural Outlook Board</td>
<td>7, XXXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Force Department</td>
<td>32, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement</td>
<td>48, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of</td>
<td>27, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMTRAK</td>
<td>49, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Battle Monuments Commission</td>
<td>36, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Indians, Office of the Special Trustee</td>
<td>25, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service</td>
<td>7, III; 9, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appalachian Regional Commission</td>
<td>5, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board</td>
<td>36, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency</td>
<td>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arctic Research Commission</td>
<td>45, XXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armed Forces Retirement Home</td>
<td>5, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army Department</td>
<td>32, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineers, Corps of</td>
<td>33, II; 36, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assassination Records Review Board</td>
<td>36, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefits Review Board</td>
<td>20, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of People Who Are</td>
<td>34, V; 41, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Board for International Broadcasting</td>
<td>22, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcasting Board of Governors</td>
<td>22, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census Bureau</td>
<td>15, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Intelligence Agency</td>
<td>32, XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Financial Officer, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Support Enforcement, Office of</td>
<td>45, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children and Families, Administration for</td>
<td>45, II, III, IV, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil Rights, Commission on</td>
<td>45, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil Rights, Office for</td>
<td>34, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard</td>
<td>33, I; 46, I; 49, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage)</td>
<td>46, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commerce Department</td>
<td>44, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census Bureau</td>
<td>15, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Affairs, Under Secretary</td>
<td>37, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Analysis, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Development Administration</td>
<td>13, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Management and Assistance</td>
<td>44, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Administration, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishery Conservation and Management</td>
<td>50, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign-Trade Zones Board</td>
<td>15, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Trade Administration</td>
<td>15, III; 19, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institute of Standards and Technology</td>
<td>15, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Marine Fisheries Service</td>
<td>50, II, IV; 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration</td>
<td>15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Telecommunications and Information</td>
<td>15, XXIII; 47, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Weather Service</td>
<td>15, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patent and Trademark Office</td>
<td>37, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Assistant</td>
<td>37, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary for Secretary of Commerce, Office of Technology, Under Secretary for</td>
<td>15, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Administration</td>
<td>15, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Policy, Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>37, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial Space Transportation</td>
<td>14, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Credit Corporation</td>
<td>7, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Futures Trading Commission</td>
<td>5, XLI; 17, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Planning and Development, Office of Assistant</td>
<td>24, V; 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary for Community Services, Office of</td>
<td>45, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comptroller of the Currency</td>
<td>12, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission</td>
<td>29, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Product Safety Commission</td>
<td>5, LXXI; 16, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service</td>
<td>7, XXXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright Office</td>
<td>37, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporation for National and Community Service</td>
<td>45, XII, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Accounting Standards Board</td>
<td>48, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Council on Environmental Quality</td>
<td>40, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customs Service, United States</td>
<td>19, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Contract Audit Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Department</td>
<td>5, XXVI; 32, Subtitle A; 40, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Research Projects Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Force Department</td>
<td>32, VII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Army Department

Defense Intelligence Agency
Defense Logistics Agency
Engineers, Corps of
Federal Acquisition Regulation
National Imagery and Mapping Agency
Navy Department
Secretary of Defense, Office of
Defense Contract Audit Agency
Defense Intelligence Agency
Defense Logistics Agency
Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board
Delaware River Basin Commission
Drug Enforcement Administration
East-West Foreign Trade Board
Economic Affairs, Under Secretary
Economic Analysis, Bureau of
Economic Development Administration
Economic Research Service
Education, Department of
Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of
Civil Rights, Office of
Educational Research and Improvement, Office of
Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of
Postsecondary Education, Office of
Secretary of Education, Office of
Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of
Vocational and Adult Education, Office of
Educational Research and Improvement, Office of
Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of
Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board
Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board
Employees' Compensation Appeals Board
Employees Loyalty Board
Employment and Training Administration
Employment Standards Administration
Endangered Species Committee
Energy, Department of
Federal Acquisition Regulation
Federal Energy Regulatory Commission
Property Management Regulations
Energy, Office of
Engineers, Corps of
Engraving and Printing, Bureau of
Environmental Protection Agency
Federal Acquisition Regulation
Property Management Regulations
Environmental Quality, Office of
Equal Employment Opportunity Commission
Equal Opportunity, Office of Assistant Secretary for
Executive Office of the President
Administration, Office of
Environmental Quality, Council on
Management and Budget, Office of
National Drug Control Policy, Office of
National Security Council
Presidential Documents
Science and Technology Policy, Office of
Trade Representative, Office of the United States
Export Administration, Bureau of
Export-Import Bank of the United States
Family Assistance, Office of
Farm Credit Administration
Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation

CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
32; 33, I; 36, I, 48

51
32
32
32
48, 2
32
32; 48, 52
32
32
32
32
32
32
21, II
15, XIII
37, V
15, VIII
13, III
7, XXXVII
5, LIII
34, V
34, II
34, XI
34, VI
34, Subtitle A
34, III
34, IV
34, VII
34, II
13, V
34, IV
20, I
5, V
20, VI
50, I
5, XXIII; 10, II, III, X
48, 9
5, XXV; 18, I
41, 109
7, XXXIX
32, II; 36, I
31, VI
5, LIV; 40, I, VII
48, 15
41, 125
7, XXXI
5, LIII; 29, XIV
24, I
3, I
5, XV
40, V
25, III, LXXVII; 48, 99
23, III
32, XXI; 47, 2
3
32, XXIV; 47, II
15, XX
15, VII
5, LIII; 12, IV
45, I
5, XXXI; 12, VI
5, XXX; 12, XIV
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Farm Service Agency</td>
<td>7, VII, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Aviation Administration</td>
<td>14, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial Space Transportation</td>
<td>14, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Claims Collection Standards</td>
<td>4, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Communications Commission</td>
<td>5, XXIX; 47, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of</td>
<td>41, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Crop Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>7, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>5, XXII; 12, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Election Commission</td>
<td>11, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Emergency Management Agency</td>
<td>44, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Energy Regulatory Commission</td>
<td>5, XXIV; 18, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council</td>
<td>12, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Financing Bank</td>
<td>12, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Highway Administration</td>
<td>23, 1, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight Office</td>
<td>12, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Housing Finance Board</td>
<td>12, 1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Labor Relations Authority, and General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority</td>
<td>5, XIV; 22, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Law Enforcement Training Center</td>
<td>31, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Management Regulation</td>
<td>41, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Maritime Commission</td>
<td>46, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service</td>
<td>29, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission</td>
<td>5, LXXIV; 29, XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration</td>
<td>49, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Prison Industries, Inc.</td>
<td>28, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Procurement Policy Office</td>
<td>48, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Property Management Regulations</td>
<td>41, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Railroad Administration</td>
<td>49, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Register, Administrative Committee of the Federal Reserve System</td>
<td>1, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Reserve System</td>
<td>12, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Board of Governors</td>
<td>5, LVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board</td>
<td>5, VI, LXXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Service Impasses Panel</td>
<td>5, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Trade Commission</td>
<td>5, XLVII; 16, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Transit Administration</td>
<td>49, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Travel Regulation System</td>
<td>41, Subtitle F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine Arts, Commission on</td>
<td>45, XXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiscal Service</td>
<td>31, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Service, United States</td>
<td>50, I, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishery Conservation and Management</td>
<td>50, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
<td>21, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Nutrition Service</td>
<td>7, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food Safety and Inspection Service</td>
<td>9, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Agricultural Service</td>
<td>7, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Assets Control, Office of</td>
<td>31, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States</td>
<td>45, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Service Grievance Board</td>
<td>22, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Service Impasses Disputes Panel</td>
<td>22, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Service Labor Relations Board</td>
<td>22, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign-Trade Zones Board</td>
<td>15, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Service</td>
<td>36, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Accounting Office</td>
<td>4, I, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Services Administration</td>
<td>5, LVII; 41, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract Appeals, Board of</td>
<td>48, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Management Regulation</td>
<td>41, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Property Management Regulations</td>
<td>41, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Travel Regulation System</td>
<td>41, Subtitle F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>41, 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment From a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses</td>
<td>41, 304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency</td>
<td>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment of Expenses Connected With the Death of Certain Employees</td>
<td>41, 303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relocation Allowances</td>
<td>41, 302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary Duty (TDY) Travel Allowances</td>
<td>41, 301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geological Survey</td>
<td>30, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government Ethics, Office of</td>
<td>5, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government National Mortgage Association</td>
<td>24, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration</td>
<td>7, VIII; 9, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation</td>
<td>45, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health and Human Services, Department of</td>
<td>5, XLV; 45, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Support Enforcement, Office of</td>
<td>45, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children and Families, Administration for</td>
<td>45, II, III, IV, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Services, Office of</td>
<td>45, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family Assistance, Office of</td>
<td>45, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
<td>21, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health Care Financing Administration</td>
<td>42, 1V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Development Services, Office of</td>
<td>45, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Health Service</td>
<td>25, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General (Health Care), Office of</td>
<td>42, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Health Service</td>
<td>42, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refugee Resettlement, Office of</td>
<td>45, 1V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health Care Financing Administration</td>
<td>42, 1V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing and Urban Development, Department of</td>
<td>5, L XV; 24, Subtitle B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Planning and Development, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, V, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal Opportunity, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight, Office of</td>
<td>12, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government National Mortgage Association</td>
<td>24, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, II, VIII, X, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General, Office of</td>
<td>24, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifamily Housing Assistance Restructuring, Office of</td>
<td>24, 1V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public and Indian Housing, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, 1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary, Office of</td>
<td>24, Subtitle A, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, II, VIII, X, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Development Services, Office of</td>
<td>45, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immigration and Naturalization Service</td>
<td>8, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent Counsel, Office of</td>
<td>28, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Affairs, Bureau of</td>
<td>25, I, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Affairs, Office of the Assistant Secretary</td>
<td>25, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Arts and Crafts Board</td>
<td>25, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Health Service</td>
<td>25, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Resources Management, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Security Oversight Office, National Archives and Records Administration</td>
<td>32, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture Department</td>
<td>7, XXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health and Human Services Department</td>
<td>42, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing and Urban Development Department</td>
<td>24, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Institute of Peace, United States</td>
<td>22, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-American Foundation</td>
<td>5, L XIII; 22, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intergovernmental Relations, Advisory Commission on</td>
<td>5, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior Department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Indians, Office of the Special Trustee</td>
<td>25, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endangered Species Committee</td>
<td>50, 1V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Property Management Regulations System</td>
<td>41, 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Service, United States</td>
<td>50, 1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geological Survey</td>
<td>30, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Affairs, Bureau of</td>
<td>25, I, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Affairs, Office of the Assistant Secretary</td>
<td>25, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Arts and Crafts Board</td>
<td>25, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land Management, Bureau of</td>
<td>43, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals Management Service</td>
<td>30, II</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

591
Agency | CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
--- | ---
Mines, Bureau of | 30, VI
National Indian Gaming Commission | 25, III
National Park Service | 36, I
Reclamation, Bureau of | 43, I
Secretary of the Interior, Office of | 43, Subtitle A
Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Board of | 30, III
Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Office of | 30, VII
Internal Revenue Service | 26, I
International Revenue Service | 26, I
International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, United States Section | 22, XI
International Development, United States Agency for | 22, XII
Federal Acquisition Regulation | 48, 7
International Development Cooperation Agency, United States | 22, XII
States
International Fishing and Related Activities | 50, III
International Investment, Office of | 31, VIII
International Joint Commission, United States and Canada | 22, IV
International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board | 5, V
International Trade Administration | 15, III; 19, III
International Trade Commission, United States | 19, II
Interstate Commerce Commission | 5, XL
James Madison Memorial Fellowship Foundation | 45, XXIV
Japan—United States Friendship Commission | 22, XVI
Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries | 20, VIII
Justice Department
Drug Enforcement Administration | 21, II
Federal Acquisition Regulation | 48, 28
Federal Claims Collection Standards | 4, II
Federal Prison Industries, Inc. | 28, III
Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States | 45, V
States
Immigration and Naturalization Service | 8, I
Offices of Independent Counsel | 28, VI
Prisons, Bureau of | 28, V
Property Management Regulations | 41, 128
Labor Department
Benefits Review Board | 20, VII
Employees’ Compensation Appeals Board | 20, IV
Employment and Training Administration | 20, V
Employment Standards Administration | 20, VI
Federal Acquisition Regulation | 48, 29
Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of | 41, 60
Federal Procurement Regulations System | 41, 50
Labor-Management Standards, Office of | 29, II, IV
Mine Safety and Health Administration | 30, I
Occupational Safety and Health Administration | 29, XVII
Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration | 29, XXV
Public Contracts | 41, 50
Secretary of Labor, Office of | 29, Subtitle A
Veterans’ Employment and Training, Office of the Assistant Secretary for | 41, 61; 20, IX
Wage and Hour Division | 29, V
Workers’ Compensation Programs, Office of | 20, I
Labor-Management Standards, Office of | 29, II, IV
Land Management, Bureau of | 43, II
Legal Services Corporation | 45, XVI
Library of Congress | 36, VII
Copyright Office | 37, II
Management and Budget, Office of | 5, III, LXXVII; 48, 99
Marine Mammal Commission | 50, V
Maritime Administration | 46, II
Merit Systems Protection Board | 5, II
Micronesian Status Negotiations, Office for | 32, XXVII
Mine Safety and Health Administration | 30, I
Minerals Management Service | 30, II
Mines, Bureau of | 30, VI
Minority Business Development Agency | 15, XIV
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title,Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous Agencies</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetary Offices</td>
<td>31, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifamily Housing Assistance Restructuring, Office of</td>
<td>24, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Library</td>
<td>7, XLI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Statistics Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National and Community Service, Corporation for</td>
<td>45, XII, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Archives and Records Administration</td>
<td>5, LXVI; 36, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Security Oversight Office</td>
<td>32, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Bureau of Standards</td>
<td>15, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Capital Planning Commission</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Commission for Employment Policy</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Commission on Libraries and Information Science</td>
<td>45, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Council on Disability</td>
<td>34, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Counterintelligence Center</td>
<td>32, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Credit Union Administration</td>
<td>12, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Drug Control Policy, Office of</td>
<td>21, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities</td>
<td>45, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Highway Traffic Safety Administration</td>
<td>23, II, III; 49, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Imagery and Mapping Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Indian Gaming Commission</td>
<td>25, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institute for Literacy</td>
<td>34, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institute of Standards and Technology</td>
<td>15, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Labor Relations Board</td>
<td>5, LIX; 29, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Marine Fisheries Service</td>
<td>50, II, IV, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Mediation Board</td>
<td>29, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration</td>
<td>15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Park Service</td>
<td>36, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Railroad Adjustment Board</td>
<td>29, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK)</td>
<td>49, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Science Foundation</td>
<td>5, XLIII; 45, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Security Council</td>
<td>32, XXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Security Council and Office of Science and Technology Policy</td>
<td>47, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Telecommunications and Information Administration</td>
<td>15, XXIII; 47, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Transportation Safety Board</td>
<td>49, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Weather Service</td>
<td>15, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Resources Conservation Service</td>
<td>7, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation, Office of</td>
<td>25, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navy Department</td>
<td>32, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation</td>
<td>24, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northeast Dairy Compact Commission</td>
<td>7, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northeast Interstate Low-Level Radioactive Waste Commission</td>
<td>10, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear Regulatory Commission</td>
<td>5, XLVIII; 10, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupational Safety and Health Administration</td>
<td>29, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission</td>
<td>29, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offices of Independent Counsel</td>
<td>28, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oklahoma City National Memorial Trust</td>
<td>36, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations Office</td>
<td>7, XXXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overseas Private Investment Corporation</td>
<td>5, XXXIII; 22, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panama Canal Commission</td>
<td>48, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panama Canal Regulations</td>
<td>35, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patent and Trademark Office</td>
<td>37, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment From a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses</td>
<td>41, 304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment of Expenses Connected With the Death of Certain Employees</td>
<td>41, 303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peace Corps</td>
<td>22, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation</td>
<td>36, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration</td>
<td>29, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation</td>
<td>29, XL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personnel Management, Office of</td>
<td>5, I, XXXV; 45, VIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

593
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Employees Group Life Insurance</td>
<td>48, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postal Rate Commission</td>
<td>5, XLVI; 39, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postal Service, United States</td>
<td>5, LX; 39, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postsecondary Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>President's Commission on White House Fellowships</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presidential Documents</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presidio Trust</td>
<td>36, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prisons, Bureau of</td>
<td>28, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement and Property Management, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Assistant Secretary</td>
<td>37, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Contracts, Department of Labor</td>
<td>41, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public and Indian Housing, Office of Assistant Secretary for Public</td>
<td>24, 1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Health Service</td>
<td>42, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Railroad Retirement Board</td>
<td>20, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reclamation, Bureau of</td>
<td>43, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refugee Resettlement, Office of</td>
<td>45, 1V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Action Planning Commissions</td>
<td>13, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relocation Allowances</td>
<td>41, 302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research and Special Programs Administration</td>
<td>49, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Business-Cooperative Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Development Administration</td>
<td>7, XLIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Housing Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XXXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Telephone Bank</td>
<td>7, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Utilities Service</td>
<td>7, XVII, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation</td>
<td>33, 4V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science and Technology Policy, Office of</td>
<td>32, XXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science and Technology Policy, Office of, and National Security Council</td>
<td>47, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret Service</td>
<td>31, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Securities and Exchange Commission</td>
<td>17, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Service System</td>
<td>32, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Business Administration</td>
<td>13, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smithsonian Institution</td>
<td>36, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Security Administration</td>
<td>20, III; 48, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soldiers’ and Airmen’s Home, United States</td>
<td>5, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Counsel, Office of</td>
<td>5, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of</td>
<td>34, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Department</td>
<td>22, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Board of</td>
<td>30, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Office of</td>
<td>30, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Transportation Board</td>
<td>49, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susquehanna River Basin Commission</td>
<td>18, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Administration</td>
<td>15, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Policy, Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>37, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology, Under Secretary for</td>
<td>37, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tennessee Valley Authority</td>
<td>5, LXIX; 18, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrift Supervision Office, Department of the Treasury</td>
<td>12, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade Representative, United States, Office of</td>
<td>15, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation, Department of</td>
<td>5, L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard</td>
<td>33, 1; 46, 1; 49, 1V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage)</td>
<td>46, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial Space Transportation</td>
<td>14, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract Appeals, Board of</td>
<td>48, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Management and Assistance</td>
<td>44, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Aviation Administration</td>
<td>14, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Highway Administration</td>
<td>23, 1, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration</td>
<td>49, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Railroad Administration</td>
<td>49, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Transit Administration</td>
<td>49, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maritime Administration</td>
<td>46, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Highway Traffic Safety Administration</td>
<td>23, 11, III; 49, V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

594
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Research and Special Programs Administration</td>
<td>49, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation</td>
<td>33, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Transportation, Office of</td>
<td>14, II; 49, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Transportation Board</td>
<td>49, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Statistics Bureau</td>
<td>49, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Statistics Bureau</td>
<td>49, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel Allowances, Temporary Duty (TDY)</td>
<td>41, 301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treasury Department</td>
<td>5, XXI; 12, XV; 17, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of</td>
<td>27, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Development Financial Institutions Fund</td>
<td>12, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comptroller of the Currency</td>
<td>12, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customs Service, United States</td>
<td>19, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engraving and Printing, Bureau of</td>
<td>31, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Law Enforcement Training Center</td>
<td>31, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiscal Service</td>
<td>31, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Assets Control, Office of</td>
<td>31, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Revenue Service</td>
<td>26, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Investment, Office of</td>
<td>31, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetary Offices</td>
<td>31, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret Service</td>
<td>31, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of the Treasury, Office of</td>
<td>31, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrift Supervision, Office of</td>
<td>12, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truman, Harry S. Scholarship Foundation</td>
<td>45, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States and Canada, International Joint Commission</td>
<td>22, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States and Mexico, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States Section</td>
<td>22, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utah Reclamation Mitigation and Conservation Commission</td>
<td>43, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veterans Affairs Department</td>
<td>38, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veterans’ Employment and Training, Office of the Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>41, 61; 20, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vice President of the United States, Office of</td>
<td>32, XXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocational and Adult Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wage and Hour Division</td>
<td>29, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Resources Council</td>
<td>18, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workers’ Compensation Programs, Office of</td>
<td>20, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Agricultural Outlook Board</td>
<td>7, XXXVIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of CFR Sections Affected

All changes in this volume of the Code of Federal Regulations which were made by documents published in the Federal Register since January 1, 1986, are enumerated in the following list. Entries indicate the nature of the changes effected. Page numbers refer to Federal Register pages. The user should consult the entries for chapters and parts as well as sections for revisions.


1986

37 CFR

Chapter I
1.24 Revised .................................. 28057
Effective date corrected .......................... 28556
2 Authority citation revised ....................... 28057, 28709
2.1 Revised ................................... 28709
2.6 Introductory text republished; (a), (n), (o), and (q) revised .... 28057
Effective date corrected; text corrected ............... 28556
2.21 (a) introductory text republished; (a)(3) revised .... 29921
2.52 Revised .................................. 29921
2.54 Removed ................................ 29922
2.58 (b) revised ................................ 29922
2.101 (b) revised ............................. 28709
2.112 (a) revised ............................. 28710
2.114 (c) revised ............................. 28710
2.132 (c) revised ............................. 28710
2.145 (d)(1) revised ............................ 28710

Chapter II
201 Policy statement ................................ 599
201.2 (b)(2) and (c)(1) amended ............. 30062
201.17 (f)(3) temporarily waived ............... 599
(k) added; interim ............................ 30216
(k) revised ................................... 45112
202 Authority citation revised ................. 6403
202.19 Revised ................................ 6403
202.20 Revised ................................ 6405
202.21 Revised ................................ 6409

Chapter III
304.5 (c) amended ............................. 43609

37 CFR—Continued

Chapter III—Continued
306.3 Revised .................................. 27537
306.4 Removed .................................. 27537
Chapter IV
401 Added; interim ........................... 25511

1987

37 CFR

Chapter I
1.1 (f) added ................................... 9394
1.8 (a)(2)(xi) revised ......................... 20046
1.20 (n) added ................................ 9394
1.61 Removed ................................ 20046
1.70 Removed ................................ 20046
1.101 (a) revised ............................. 20046
1.114 Revised ................................. 20046
1.401—1.499 (Subpart C) Authority citation revised ................. 20047
1.401 (g) redesignated as (i); new (g) and (h) added .......... 20047
1.414 Revised ................................ 20047
1.416 Added .................................... 20047
1.431 (d)(2) revised .......................... 20047
1.432 (b) revised ............................. 20047
1.445 Heading and (a) revised ................. 20047
1.472 Redesignated from 1.475 ................ 20047
1.475 Redesignated as 1.472; new 1.475 added ................. 20047
1.476 Redesignated from 1.481 and (a) revised ................ 20048
1.477 Redesignated from 1.482 and heading and (b) revised .... 20048
1.480—1.489 Undesignated center heading added ............... 20048
1.480 Added ................................... 20048
## 37 CFR—Continued

### Chapter I—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>(g) added</td>
<td>16413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>(a)(2) revised</td>
<td>47807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised</td>
<td>47807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>(e) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23733</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>47606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>(c) and (d) revised</td>
<td>47808</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1988

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>(g) added</td>
<td>16413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>(a)(2) revised</td>
<td>47807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised</td>
<td>47807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>(e) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23733</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>47606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>(c) and (d) revised</td>
<td>47808</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Policy decision</td>
<td>2493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.4</td>
<td>(c)(1) revised; (c) introductory text republished</td>
<td>3118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.8</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.20</td>
<td>(c)(2)(ii) amended</td>
<td>29690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.6</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>8456</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>49011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.3</td>
<td>(a), (b) and (c) amended; (d) and (e) added; eff. 7-15-87</td>
<td>22637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.5</td>
<td>(e)(2) correctly revised</td>
<td>23546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.6</td>
<td>(d) and (e)(1) revised</td>
<td>41711</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>8554</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>304.5</td>
<td>(c)(1) through (4) revised</td>
<td>48535</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>(e) revised</td>
<td>47808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.71</td>
<td>(d) and (e) added</td>
<td>47808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>Heading and (a) revised</td>
<td>47808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.84</td>
<td>(a), (b) introductory text, (i), (j) and (l) revised; (b)(2) redesignated as (b)(3); new (b)(2), (n), (o) and (p) added</td>
<td>47809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.85</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>47810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.131</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23734</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.152</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>47810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.192</td>
<td>(a) revised; (c) and (d) added; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23734</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.193</td>
<td>(b) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.194</td>
<td>(b) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.196</td>
<td>(b)(1) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.302</td>
<td>(c) added</td>
<td>16414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.378</td>
<td>(b)(1) and (c)(1) revised</td>
<td>47810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.421</td>
<td>(f) revised; (g) added</td>
<td>47810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.480</td>
<td>(d) revised</td>
<td>47810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.604</td>
<td>(a) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.607</td>
<td>(a) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.612</td>
<td>(a) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.637</td>
<td>(e)(1)(vi) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.662</td>
<td>(b) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.145</td>
<td>(b)(3) added</td>
<td>16414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>(b) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23736</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>(d) and (e) removed</td>
<td>38950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.10</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>38950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.23</td>
<td>(c)(13) revised; (c)(19) and (29) added</td>
<td>41278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.157</td>
<td>(a) corrected</td>
<td>13120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>(Subchapter C and part) Added; eff. 8-1-88</td>
<td>24447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>39734</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Policy decision</td>
<td>2493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.4</td>
<td>(c)(1) revised; (c) introductory text republished</td>
<td>3118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.8</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.3</td>
<td>Registration decision</td>
<td>21817</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.20</td>
<td>(c)(2)(ii) amended</td>
<td>29690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.6</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>8456</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1988

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>(g) added</td>
<td>16413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>(a)(2) revised</td>
<td>47807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised</td>
<td>47807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>(e) revised; eff. 9-12-88</td>
<td>23733</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>47606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>(c) and (d) revised</td>
<td>47808</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 1989

**37 CFR**

**Chapter I**

1.1 (h) added ................................ 37588
1.8 (a)(2)(xiv), (xv), and (xvi) added ..... 37588
1.12 (a) and (c) revised .................. 6900
1.14 (e) revised .......................... 6900
1.16 (a), (b), (d) through (i), and not revised .............. 6900
1.17 (a) through (h), and (j) through (m) revised; existing (i) redesignated as (i)(1) and re-revised; new (i)(2) added .... 6901
(g), (h), (i)(1), and (m) corrected ...... 9431
(i)(1) revised ........................... 47518
1.18 Revised ................................ 6901
1.19 Revised ................................ 6901
(a)(1) corrected .......................... 9432
1.20 Revised ................................ 6902
(i) and (j) corrected ...................... 8053
1.21 Introductory text and (b) re-revised; (a), (b)(1), (d) through (j), (l), and (m) re-revised ............. 6902
(b) corrected ............................ 8053
(e) corrected ............................. 9432
d and (g) corrected ...................... 34282
(n) added ................................. 47518
(o) through (q) added ..................... 50349
(o) corrected ............................. 51550
1.26 (c) revised ............................ 6902
1.53 (b) and (c) revised ................ 47518
1.55 (a) revised ........................... 47518
1.60 (a) removed; (b) revised; new (c) added .......... 47519
1.62 (e) revised; (j) added .............. 47519
1.96 (b)(1) revised ......................... 47519
1.102 (d) revised .......................... 6903
1.103 (a) revised .......................... 6903
1.113 Revised .............................. 29551
(b) corrected ............................. 32637
1.117 Revised .............................. 6903
Corrected .................................. 9432
1.177 Revised .............................. 6903
Corrected .................................. 9432
1.191 (b) and (d) revised; (e) added ........ 29552
1.196 (a), (b) and (d) revised; (e) and (f) added .......... 29552
1.197 (b) and (c) revised ................. 29552
1.296 Revised ............................. 6903
1.301 Revised ............................. 29552
1.303 (c) revised .......................... 29553
(c) corrected ............................. 32637
1.304 Revised ............................. 29553

#### 37 CFR—Continued

**Chapter I—Continued**

1.313 (a) revised .......................... 6903
(a) corrected ............................ 9432
1.314 Revised ............................. 6903
1.334 (c) revised .......................... 6903
1.445 (a) introductory text re-revised; (a)(2) and (3) revised .. 6903
Heading and (a) introductory text corrected; (a)(2)(iii) correctly redesignated as (a)(3) ........... 9432
1.451 (b) revised ........................... 6903
1.482 (a) revised; (a)(1)(i), (ii), (iii).......... 6904
1.492 Introductory text and (a) re-republished; (a)(1) through (3); (b), (d) and (f) revised ........... 6904
1.550 (c) revised ........................... 29553
1.645 (a) and (b) revised ................ 29553
1.658 (b) revised .......................... 29553
1.666 (b) revised .......................... 6904
1.710 Revised .............................. 30379
1.720 (e)(2) and (f) revised; (e)(3) added .................. 30380
1.740 (a)(4), (9), (10), and (13) revised ............. 30380
1.741 (a)(2) and (5) revised ................ 30380
1.765 (a) revised ........................... 30381
1.775 Heading and (a), (b), (c), and (d) introductory text re-revised .................. 30381
1.777 Added ................................. 30381
1.779 Added ................................. 30382
1.786 (b) revised ........................... 30382
1.801—1.809 (Subpart G) Undesignated center heading and sections added .......................... 34680
2 Technical correction ........................ 51550
2.2 Added ................................. 37588
2.6 (a) and (q) revised .................... 6904
Introductory text re-republished; (u) and (v) added .......... 37588
(w) added; eff. to 2-12-90 and suspended .................. 50949
2.18 Revised ............................... 37588
2.21 (a)(5) and (6) revised ................ 37588
2.24 Revised ............................... 37588
2.31 Revised ............................... 37589
2.33 (a)(1)(ix) redesignated as (a)(1)(x); Heading, (a)(1)(ii), (iv) through (vii), new (x), (2), (b), (c) revised; new (a)(1)(ix) and (d) added .................. 37589
2.38 (a) revised ............................. 37589
2.39 Revised ............................... 37589
2.41 Revised ............................... 37590
2.42 Revised ............................... 34807
2.44 Revised ............................... 37590

599
List of CFR Sections Affected

37 CFR—Continued 54 FR Page 1990

Chapter III—Continued 301.45 Redesignated as 301.51 .......... 12616
Added ................................. 12617
301.46 Removed ....................... 12616
Added ................................. 12617
301.47 Redesignated as 301.50 ....... 12616
Added ................................. 12617
301.48 Redesignated as 301.52 ....... 12616
Added ................................. 12617
301.49 Removed; new 301.49 redesignated from 301.51 . ... 12616
(e), (f), (g), (j), (k), (l) removed; (h) and (i) redesignated as (e) and (f) ................. 12618
301.50 Redesignated as 301.55; new 301.50 redesignated from 301.47 ................. 12616
301.51 Redesignated as 301.49; new 301.51 redesignated from 301.45 ................. 12616
301.52 Removed ....................... 12616
Redesignated from 301.48 ........... 12617
301.53 Removed; new 301.53 redesignated from 301.54 ................. 12616
(d) removed........................... 12618
301.54 Redesignated as 301.53; new 301.54 redesignated from 301.55 ................. 12616
301.55 Redesignated as 301.54 ........ 12616
New 301.55 redesignated from 301.50 ................. 12616
301.63 Revised ....................... 12618
301.64 Revised ....................... 12618
301.66 (a) revised ..................... 12618
301.70 Revised ....................... 32811
301.71 (c) added ....................... 32811
301.74 (a) revised ..................... 12618
301.80—301.83 (Subpart H) Added ....................... 12618
302 Authority citation amended ....................... 12619
302.1 Amended ....................... 12619
302.2 Removed ....................... 12619
302.3 Removed ....................... 12619
302.6 Removed ....................... 12619
302.7 (a) and (b) introductory text revised ....................... 12619
302.8 Revised ....................... 12619
302.10 Amended ....................... 12619
304.5 (c)(1) through (4) revised ........ 49977
305.2 Revised ....................... 12619
305.4 Revised ....................... 12619
307.3 Revised ....................... 46066
308.2 (a) and (b) amended ......... 12619
Added ................................. 32811

Chapter I 1.16 Notice (a) through (d) and (f) through (j) revised; authority citation added; interim 49041
1.17 Notice .......................... 49041
Revised; interim ........................ 49041
1.20 Notice .......................... 49051
Heading, (d), (h) through (j) and (m) and authority citation revised; interim ................. 49042
1.821—1.825 Undesignated center heading and sections added ....... 18245
1.801—1.825 (Subpart G) Appendix A added ................. 18250
Appendix B added ..................... 18254
2.6 (w) suspension lifted; eff. 11-13-90 ................. 37468

Chapter II 201.11 (c)(3) revised ............... 49998
201.17 (h)(1)(ii) and (2)(ii) revised ............... 49999
202.3 (b)(5) and (6) redesignated as (b)(6) and (7); new (b)(5) added ................. 50557
202.4 Added ........................... 50001
202.20 (c)(2)(xvii) added ............... 50557

Chapter III 301.1 Revised ..................... 28196
301.61 (b)(3) revised ................... 28197
301.63 Revised ....................... 28197
304.5 (c)(1) through (4) revised ........ 49616
306 Authority citation revised ............... 28197
306.3 (e) added ....................... 28197
308 Authority citation revised ............... 33613
308.2 (d)(1) and (2) revised ............... 33613
(d) introductory text revised ............... 48601

Chapter IV 401 Authority citation revised ............... 38983
404 Authority citation revised ............... 38983

Chapter V 501 Authority citation revised ............... 38883
501.3 (a) amended ....................... 38883

601
List of CFR Sections Affected

37 CFR—Continued  56 FR Page
Chapter III—Continued
305.4 Introductory text repub-
lished; (b) revised .................. 2438
307.3 Revised .......................... 37 CFR 56158
308.2 (d) introductory text re-
vised ................................. 12122
309.3 Introductory text repub-
lished; (e) and (f) added .......... 2438
309.4 Introductory text repub-
lished; (b) revised ................. 2438

1992

37 CFR  57 FR Page
Chapter I
1.12 (a) and (d) revised ............ 29641
1.16 (a) through (d), (f) through (j)
and not revised ................... 38194
1.17 (i)(1) revised; (p) added ....... 2033
(i)(2) revised ...................... 29642, 32439
(b) through (g), (j) and (m)
through (o) revised .............. 38194
1.18 Revised .......................... 38195
1.19 (b)(4), (f) and (h) revised .... 38195
1.20 (a), (c), (e), (f), (g) and (i)
revised .............................. 38195
(i) revised; interim ............... 36450
1.21 (a)(1), (5), (6), (b)(2), (3), (e)
and (i) revised; (p) added and
suspended ......................... 38195
(a)(6) corrected ................... 40493
1.26 (a) and (c) revised ............ 38195
1.28 (d)(2) revised ................... 2033
1.32 Removed ........................ 29642
1.46 Revised ........................ 29642
1.48 (a) revised ..................... 56447
1.51 (b) revised ..................... 2033
1.52 (c) revised ..................... 2033
1.56 Revised ........................ 2034
1.60 (b) and (c) revised; (d)
added .............................. 56447
1.63 (b)(3) and (d) revised .......... 2034
1.67 (c) added ....................... 2034
1.97 Revised ........................ 2034
1.98 Revised ........................ 2035
1.99 Removed ........................ 2035
1.104 (e) revised .................... 29642
1.175 (a)(7) revised ................ 2035
1.193 (c) removed ................... 2035
1.251 (a) and (c) revised .......... 2035
1.313 (b) revised ................... 2035
1.331—1.335 Undesignated center
heading revised .................. 29642
1.331 Removed ........................ 29642
1.332 Removed ........................ 29642
1.333 Removed ........................ 29642
1.334 Removed ........................ 29642

37 CFR—Continued  57 FR Page
Chapter I—Continued
1.378 (a), (b) and (c) revised; in-
terim ................................ 56450
1.445 (a) revised .................... 38195
Corrected .......................... 40493
1.442 (a) introductory text, (1) and
(2)(ii) revised .................... 38196
1.492 (a)(1), (2), (3), (5) and (b)
through (d) revised .............. 38196
1.555 Revised ........................ 2036
2.6 (a)(1) and (b)(7) revised; (a)(19)
added .............................. 38196
2.87 Revised .......................... 38196
(c) corrected ........................ 40493
2.185—2.187 Undesignated center
heading removed .................. 29642
2.185 Removed ........................ 29642
2.196 Removed ........................ 29642
2.187 Removed ........................ 29642
3 Added ............................ 29642
10.23 (c)(10) and (11) revised ...... 2036
Chapter II
201 Authority citation revised ..... 3296
201.5 (b)(2)(iv) revised ............. 60482
201.11 (h)(2) and (3) revised ...... 61834
201.17 (k) added; eff. 1–1–94 ....... 3296
(i)(2)(i) and (ii) revised; (i)(2)(ii)
added .............................. 61834
201.27 Added; interim ............... 35465
202.1 (e) added ....................... 6202
202.3 (b)(6) and (7) redesignated as
(b)(7) and (8); new (b)(6)
added .............................. 39616
202.11 Added .......................... 45310
202.17 Revised ........................ 60483
202.19 (b)(3) revised; (b)(4) re-
moved; (d)(2)(viii) added ...... 45310
202.20 (b)(3) revised; (c)(2)(xviii)
added .............................. 45310
Chapter III
304 Revised .......................... 60954
310 Added ........................... 19053
Technical correction .............. 21152

1993

37 CFR  58 FR Page
Chapter I
1 Technical correction .............. 64155
1.4 Heading revised; (d), (e) and (f)
added ................................ 54501
1.5 (a) revised ....................... 54501
1.6 Revised .......................... 54501
(d)(3) corrected .................... 64154
1.8 Revised .......................... 54502
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>37 CFR—Continued</th>
<th>58 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I—Continued</td>
<td>1.487 Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(2) introductory text corrected</td>
<td>1.488 (a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9 (d) revised</td>
<td>1.492 Introductory text and (e) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13 Revised</td>
<td>1.494 (a) through (d) and (g) revised; (h) removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14 (b) revised</td>
<td>1.496 (a) through (e) and (h) revised; (i) removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.17 (h) revised</td>
<td>1.499 Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrected</td>
<td>1.601 (q) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.19 (a)(3) revised</td>
<td>1.607 (a)(5)(i) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.20 (i) revised</td>
<td>1.637 (a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.28 (c) revised</td>
<td>1.639 (c) revised; (d) through (g) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.55 (a) revised</td>
<td>1.655 (a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.71 (d) revised</td>
<td>1.741 (a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.78 (a) revised</td>
<td>1.821 (h) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.84 Revised</td>
<td>1.19 Technical correction........64154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(1)(i) corrected</td>
<td>2.145 (c)(3) and (d)(1) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g)(3) and (h)(2) corrected</td>
<td>2.165 (a)(1) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.88 Removed</td>
<td>5 Technical correction........64155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.123 Revised</td>
<td>10 Technical correction........64154, 64155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.136 (a) revised</td>
<td>10.9 (c) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.137 Revised</td>
<td>10.18 Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.152 Revised</td>
<td>10.23 (c)(9) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.155 (b), (c) and (d) revised; (e) and (f) added</td>
<td>10.48 (b) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.165 Revised</td>
<td>201 Technical citation revised......9546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.191 (d) revised</td>
<td>201.17 Regulation at 57 FR 3296 eff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.192 (a), (c) introductory text and (d) revised</td>
<td>201.26 Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.193 (b) revised</td>
<td>201.28 Added; interim ..........9546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.194 (b) revised</td>
<td>202.3 (b)(3)(ii), (f)(ii) introductory text, (ii)(C) and (c)(2) Footnote 6amended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.196 (f) revised</td>
<td>Chapter III Nomenclature change; heading revised; interim..........67691</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.197 (b) revised</td>
<td>301 Technical correction..........8655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.304 (a) and (c) revised</td>
<td>Heading revised; interim..........67691</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.312 (b) revised</td>
<td>Authority citation revised........67691</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.316 (b), (c) and (d) revised; (e) and (f) added</td>
<td>Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.317 Revised</td>
<td>(g) and (h) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.321 Revised</td>
<td>301.12 Revised; interim..........6445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.352 (a) revised</td>
<td>Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.366 (b) revised</td>
<td>(g) and (h) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.371 (a), (b), (c) and (e) revised</td>
<td>301.17 Revised; interim..........6445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.431 (b)(1) through (3)(ii), (c) and (d) revised; (e) removed</td>
<td>Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.432 Revised</td>
<td>(g) and (h) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.434 (a) revised</td>
<td>301.17 Revised; interim..........6445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.435 (a)(4) added</td>
<td>Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.445 (d) revised; (e) added</td>
<td>301.70 Revised; interim..........6445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.451 (a) revised</td>
<td>Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.455 (a) revised</td>
<td>301.71 (d) added; interim..........6445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.475 Revised</td>
<td>Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# List of CFR Sections Affected

## 37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regulation at</th>
<th>58 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37 CFR—Continued</td>
<td>59 FR Page</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter I

1. Technical correction..............45757
   1.16 (a), (b), (d) and (f) through (j) revised ...........43740
   1.17 (b) through (g), (j) and (m) through (p) revised ...........43740
   1.18 Revised .........................43741
   1.20 (c), (e), (f), (g), (l)(1) and (j) revised .................43741
   1.21 (p) removed .....................43741
   1.97 (c)(2) amended ..................32658
   1.175 Corrected; CFR correction ......................18300
   1.445 (a) revised .....................43741
   1.482 (a)(1) and (2)(ii) revised ...............43741
   1.492 (a)(1) through (5), (b) and (d) revised ..............43742
   (a)(5) correctly revised .............47082
   2.6 (a)(1) revised ...................257

### Chapter II

201—211 (Subchapter A) Heading added; interim .............23981
201 Authority citation revised ..........12164, 38371, 67635

## 1994

### 37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regulation at</th>
<th>59 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37 CFR—Continued</td>
<td>59 FR Page</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter I

1.1 Technical correction..............45757
1.16 (a), (b), (d) and (f) through (j) revised ...........43740
1.17 (b) through (g), (j) and (m) through (p) revised ...........43740
1.18 Revised .........................43741
1.20 (c), (e), (f), (g), (l)(1) and (j) revised .................43741
1.21 (p) removed .....................43741
1.97 (c)(2) amended ..................32658
1.175 Corrected; CFR correction ......................18300
1.445 (a) revised .....................43741
1.482 (a)(1) and (2)(ii) revised ...............43741
1.492 (a)(1) through (5), (b) and (d) revised ..............43742
(a)(5) correctly revised .............47082
2.6 (a)(1) revised ...................257

### Chapter II

201—211 (Subchapter A) Heading added; interim .............23981
201 Authority citation revised ..........12164, 38371, 67635
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Revisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.67</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>(a)(1) and (2) revised; (a)(3) and (4) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.83</td>
<td>(a) and (c) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>(d) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.101</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.102</td>
<td>(d) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.103</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.129</td>
<td>Undesignated center heading and section added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.131</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.137</td>
<td>(c) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.177</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.192</td>
<td>(c)(1) through (7) redesignated as (c)(3) through (9); (a), (c) introductory text, new (7), new (8) introductory text, new (v) and (d) revised; new (c)(1) and new (2) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.312</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.313</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.314</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.316</td>
<td>(d) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.317</td>
<td>(d) removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.412</td>
<td>(c)(6) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.421</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.445</td>
<td>(a)(5) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.482</td>
<td>(a)(1) and (2)(ii) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.492</td>
<td>(a), (b) and (d) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.601</td>
<td>(f), (g), (j) through (n) and (q) revised; (r) and (s) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.602</td>
<td>(c) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.603</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.604</td>
<td>(a)(1) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.605</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.606</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.607</td>
<td>(a)(4) revised; (a)(6) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.608</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.609</td>
<td>(b)(1), (2) and (3) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.610</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.611</td>
<td>(b), (c)(6), (7) and (d) revised; (c)(8) redesignated as (c)(9); new (c)(8) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.612</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.613</td>
<td>(c) and (d) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.614</td>
<td>(a) and (c) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.615</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.616</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.617</td>
<td>(a), (b), (d), (e), (g) and (h) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.618</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.621</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.622</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.623</td>
<td>Heading and (a) introductory text revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.624</td>
<td>Heading, (a) and (c) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.625</td>
<td>(a) introductory text revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.626</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.627</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.628</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.629</td>
<td>(a), (c)(1) and (d) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.630</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.631</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.632</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.633</td>
<td>(a), (b), (f), (g) and (i) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.634</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.635</td>
<td>(c), (d) and (f) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.636</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.637</td>
<td>(a), (b), (c)(1)(v), (vi), (2)(i), (iii), (3)(ii), (4)(ii), (d) introductory text, (e)(1)(viii), (2)(vii), (f)(2) and (h)(4) revised; (c)(1)(vii), (e)(1)(ix) and (2)(viii) added; (c)(2)(iv), (3)(iii) and (d)(4) removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.638</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.639</td>
<td>(a), (b), (c) and (d)(1) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.640</td>
<td>(a), (b), (c), (d) introductory text, (1), (3) and (e) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.641</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.642</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.643</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.644</td>
<td>(a) introductory text, (1), (2), (b), (c), (d), (f) and (g) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.645</td>
<td>(a), (b) and (d) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.646</td>
<td>(c)(5) redesignated as (c)(6); (a)(1), (2), (b), (c) introductory text, (1), (4), new (6), (d) and (e) revised; new (c)(5) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.647</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.651</td>
<td>(a), (c)(1), (2), (3) and (d) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.652</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.653</td>
<td>(a), (b), (c) introductory text, (1), (4), (d), (g) and (i) revised; (c)(5), (f) and (h) removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.654</td>
<td>(a) and (d) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.655</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.656</td>
<td>(b)(1) through (6) redesignated as (b)(3) through (8); (a), new (b)(5), new (6), (d), (e), (g), (h) and (i) revised; new (b)(1) and (2) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.657</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.658</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

607
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
<th>37 CFR—Continued</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.660</td>
<td>(e) added</td>
<td>14530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.662</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised</td>
<td>14530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.664</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>14530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.666</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
<td>20228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.671</td>
<td>(h) redesignated as (i); (a) introductory text, (c)(1), (2), (6), (7), (e), (f), (g) and new (i) revised; new (h) and (j) added</td>
<td>14530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.672</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>14531</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.673</td>
<td>(a), (b) introductory text, (c), (d), (e) and (g) revised</td>
<td>14532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.674</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td>14533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.675</td>
<td>(d) revised</td>
<td>14533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.676</td>
<td>(a)(4) revised</td>
<td>14533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.677</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>14533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.678</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>14533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.679</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>14533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.682</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>14533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.683</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>14534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.684</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>14534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.685</td>
<td>(d) and (e) revised</td>
<td>14534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.687</td>
<td>(c) revised</td>
<td>14535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.688</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>14535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.690</td>
<td>(a), (b) and (c) revised</td>
<td>14535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.701</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>20228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.750</td>
<td>Revised; eff. 7-11-95</td>
<td>25618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.760</td>
<td>Heading revised; eff. 7-11-95</td>
<td>25618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.765</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td>eff. 7-11-95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.780</td>
<td>Revised; eff. 7-11-95</td>
<td>25618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.785</td>
<td>Revised; eff. 7-11-95</td>
<td>25618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.790</td>
<td>Added; eff. 7-11-95</td>
<td>25619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.791</td>
<td>Added; eff. 7-11-95</td>
<td>25619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>(b)(1)(ii), (iii), (2)(i) and (ii) revised</td>
<td>41023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>36462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.21</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>20228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.31</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
<td>20229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>44120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>41023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>(c) revised</td>
<td>21440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.155</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td>64126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>25998, 34168, 50420, 57937</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.1</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.5</td>
<td>(b)(2)(iv), (c)(1) and (iii) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.7</td>
<td>(c)(4)(ii) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.10</td>
<td>(d)(1) and (3) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.11</td>
<td>(f), (g)(3)(iii)(B), (v) and (vi) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 CFR—Continued</td>
<td>60 FR Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter II—Continued</td>
<td>60 FR Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.15</td>
<td>(c) amended</td>
<td>57937</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.16</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.17</td>
<td>(b)(2)(A) and (B) redesignated as (b)(2)(i) and (ii); (c)(1), (g) introductory text, (h)(4)(iii) and (8) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.21</td>
<td>(c)(4) added; (j)(3)(i) amended; (j)(3)(ii) introductory text revised</td>
<td>57938</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.26</td>
<td>(b)(2) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.29</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>25998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.31</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>50420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.33</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>50420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Policy decision</td>
<td>21983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.2</td>
<td>(b)(1) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.3</td>
<td>(b)(3)(ii) amended; (b)(8) redesignated as (b)(9); new (b)(8) added; (c)(2) Footnote 6 revised</td>
<td>15875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.10</td>
<td>(a) and (b) removed; (c) redesignated as (b); new (a) added</td>
<td>15606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.12</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>50422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.18</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>34169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.19</td>
<td>(b)(1)(ii), (iii)(B) and (e)(3) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.20</td>
<td>(b)(2)(iii) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.22</td>
<td>(d)(6)(iii) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.23</td>
<td>(e)(1) and (2) amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Appendix A amended</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.3</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>34168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>34169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.4</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>34169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.5</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>34169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.7</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>34169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211.15</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>34169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211.16</td>
<td>(b)(1) amended</td>
<td>34169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.13</td>
<td>(f) amended</td>
<td>8197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.32</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>8197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.33</td>
<td>(c) amended</td>
<td>8197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.38</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>8197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.44</td>
<td>(e)(1) and (g) amended</td>
<td>8197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.48</td>
<td>(f)(1)(ii) revised</td>
<td>8197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.50</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>8197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.52</td>
<td>(c) amended; (d) added</td>
<td>8197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.72</td>
<td>Corrected</td>
<td>8199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252.1</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>8198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.5</td>
<td>(c)(1), (2) and (3) revised</td>
<td>61655</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 253.6  | (c)(4) amended | 8198.
List of CFR Sections Affected

37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37 CFR—Continued</td>
<td>61 FR</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I—Continued</td>
<td>61 FR</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>254.2</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>8198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255.1</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>61657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255.3</td>
<td>(f) and (g) redesignated as (g) and (h); (a) through (e) and new (g) amended; new (f) added</td>
<td>8198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255.4</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>34169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255.5</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>61657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256.1</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>8198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.1</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>8198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.2</td>
<td>(a) and (b) amended</td>
<td>8198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.3</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>8198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.4</td>
<td>(a) and (b) amended</td>
<td>8198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 CFR—Continued</td>
<td>61 FR</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I—Continued</td>
<td>61 FR</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Heading and (a) revised; (g) removed</td>
<td>39587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>56446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>(f) added</td>
<td>42802</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td>56446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>(a)(1)(i)(A) and (2)(ii) revised</td>
<td>56447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>(h) added</td>
<td>56447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>56447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>(c) added</td>
<td>28002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>Heading, (a), (b) and (e) revised</td>
<td>42802</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>(a), (b), (d) and (f) through (i) revised; (m) added</td>
<td>39587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>(b) through (g), (j), (m) through (p), (r) and (s) revised</td>
<td>39587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>39588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>(c), (e), (f), (g), (i)(1), (2), (j)(1), (2) and (3) revised</td>
<td>39588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>(a)(1), (3) and (6) revised</td>
<td>39588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.52</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised</td>
<td>42803</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# 37 CFR—Continued

## Chapter II—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>251.45</td>
<td>63718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.58</td>
<td>37215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.60</td>
<td>37215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.61 (a)</td>
<td>37215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.62 (a)</td>
<td>37216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.63 (a)</td>
<td>37216, 63718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252.4 (e)</td>
<td>63718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.5 (c)(1), (2) and (3)</td>
<td>60613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257.4 (e)</td>
<td>63718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.2 (c)</td>
<td>63718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.5 (e)</td>
<td>63718</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Chapter V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>501.3 Revised; interim</td>
<td>40999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501.4 Revised; interim</td>
<td>40999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501.5 Added; interim</td>
<td>40999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501.6 (a)(1) introductory text, (iii), (2), (3)(i) and (4)(i) revised; interim</td>
<td>40999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501.8 (a) and (b) revised; (c) and (d) redesignated as (d) and (e); new (c) added; interim</td>
<td>41000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501.9 Revised; interim</td>
<td>41000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501.11 Added; interim</td>
<td>41000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 1997

### 37 CFR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>43100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 (d) revised; (g) added</td>
<td>53180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 (d)(3), (6) and (e) revised; (f) added</td>
<td>53180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8 (a)(2)(i)(A) and (b) revised</td>
<td>53181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9 (d) and (f) revised</td>
<td>53181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10 (d) and (e) revised</td>
<td>53181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11 (b) revised</td>
<td>53181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14 (a) revised; (f) added</td>
<td>53182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.16 (a), (b), (d) and (f) through (i) revised</td>
<td>40452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) and (l) revised</td>
<td>53182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.17 (b) through (g), (j), (m) through (p), (r) and (s) revised</td>
<td>40452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) through (d), (h), (i) and (q) revised; (e), (f) and (g) removed</td>
<td>53182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(q) correctly revised</td>
<td>61235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.18 Revised</td>
<td>40452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.19 (a)(2) and (3) revised</td>
<td>40452</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.20 (c), (e), (f), (g), (i)(1), (3), (2) and (3) revised</td>
<td>40453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.21 (a)(2)(i), (6) and (j) revised</td>
<td>40453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l) and (n) revised</td>
<td>53183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.26 (a) revised</td>
<td>53183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.27 Revised</td>
<td>53183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.28 (a) and (c) revised</td>
<td>53183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.33 (a) and (b) revised</td>
<td>53184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.41 (a) revised</td>
<td>53184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.47 Revised</td>
<td>53184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.48 Revised</td>
<td>53185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.51 Revised</td>
<td>53185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.52 (a), (c) and (d) revised</td>
<td>53186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.53 Revised</td>
<td>53186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.54 Revised</td>
<td>53188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.55 (a) revised</td>
<td>53188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.59 Revised</td>
<td>53188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.60 Removed</td>
<td>53188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.62 Removed</td>
<td>53188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.63 (a) and (d) revised; (e) added</td>
<td>53188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.67 (b) revised</td>
<td>53189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.69 (b) revised</td>
<td>53189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.78 (a) revised</td>
<td>53189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.84 (a)(2)(i), (b), (c) and (g) revised</td>
<td>53190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.91 Revised</td>
<td>53190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.92 Removed</td>
<td>53190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.97 (c), (d) and (e) revised</td>
<td>53190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.101 Removed</td>
<td>53190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.102 (a) revised</td>
<td>53191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.103 (a) revised</td>
<td>53191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.104 Revised</td>
<td>53191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.105 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.106 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.107 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.108 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.109 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.110 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.111 (b) revised</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.112 Revised</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.113 Revised</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.115 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.116 Headings and (a) revised</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.117 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.118 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.119 Removed</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.121 Revised</td>
<td>53192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.121 (a)(4) correctly removed</td>
<td>61235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.122 Removed</td>
<td>53193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.123 Removed</td>
<td>53193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.124 Removed</td>
<td>53193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.125 Revised</td>
<td>53193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.126 Revised</td>
<td>53194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.133 (b) revised</td>
<td>53194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.134—1.139 Undesignated center heading revised</td>
<td>53194</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## List of CFR Sections Affected

### 37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section Affected</th>
<th>Revised Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.134</td>
<td>53194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.135</td>
<td>53194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.136</td>
<td>53194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.137</td>
<td>53194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.139</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.142</td>
<td>53195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.144</td>
<td>53195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.146</td>
<td>53195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.152</td>
<td>53195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.154</td>
<td>53195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.155</td>
<td>53195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.163</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.167</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.171</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.172</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.175</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.182</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.184</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.191</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.192</td>
<td>53196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.193</td>
<td>53197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.194</td>
<td>53197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.196</td>
<td>53197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.197</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.198</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.291</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.293</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.294</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.304</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.312</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.316</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.317</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.318</td>
<td>53198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.324</td>
<td>53199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.325</td>
<td>53199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.366</td>
<td>53199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.377</td>
<td>53199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.378</td>
<td>53199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.425</td>
<td>53199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.445</td>
<td>40453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.462</td>
<td>40453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.482</td>
<td>40453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.484</td>
<td>53199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.485</td>
<td>53200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.488</td>
<td>53200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.492</td>
<td>40453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.494</td>
<td>53200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.495</td>
<td>53200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.510</td>
<td>53200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.530</td>
<td>53200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.550</td>
<td>53201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.770</td>
<td>53201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.785</td>
<td>53201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.790</td>
<td>53201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.795</td>
<td>53201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.804</td>
<td>53202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.805</td>
<td>53202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section Affected</th>
<th>Revised Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.805</td>
<td>53202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6 (b)(4) and (10)</td>
<td>40453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.11</td>
<td>53202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.21</td>
<td>53202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.26</td>
<td>53202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.27</td>
<td>53202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.31</td>
<td>53202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.41</td>
<td>53202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.51</td>
<td>53203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.58</td>
<td>53203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.71</td>
<td>53203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.73</td>
<td>53203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>53203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2 (b) revised; (c) and (d) removed</td>
<td>53203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3 (c) revised</td>
<td>53203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4 (a) and (d) revised</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5 (b) and (e) revised</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6 Removed</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7 Removed</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8 Removed</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.11</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13 Revised</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.14</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.15</td>
<td>53204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.16 Removed</td>
<td>53205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.17 Removed</td>
<td>53205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.18 Revised</td>
<td>53205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.19 Revised</td>
<td>53205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.20 Removed</td>
<td>53205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.25 (c) removed</td>
<td>53206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.31 Removed</td>
<td>53206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.32 Removed</td>
<td>53206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.33 Removed</td>
<td>53206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Removed</td>
<td>53206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.18 Revised</td>
<td>53206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.23 (c)(15) revised</td>
<td>53206</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter I

- 201 Authority citation revised ..... 18710
- 201.1 (a) and (b) amended ..... 35420
- (c) and (d) amended ..... 35421
- (b) amended ..... 40457
- (c) and (d) revised ..... 35421
- 201.2 (b)(5) amended ..... 35421
- 201.5 (c)(2) amended ..... 35421
- 201.17 (b)(1), (2) introductory text and (e)(2)(i) amended ..... 18710
- (h)(2)(iv) added ..... 23362
- 201.34 Added; interim ..... 55739
- 201.23 (b)(2) amended ..... 35421
- (b)(5)(iii) amended ..... 66822
- 201.23 (c)(15) revised ..... 53206

### Chapter II

- 201 Authority citation revised ..... 18710
- 201.1 (a) and (b) amended ..... 35420
- (c) and (d) amended ..... 35421
- (b) amended ..... 40457
- (c) and (d) revised ..... 35421
- 201.2 (b)(5) amended ..... 35421
- 201.5 (c)(2) amended ..... 35421
- 201.17 (b)(1), (2) introductory text and (e)(2)(i) amended ..... 18710
- (h)(2)(iv) added ..... 23362
- 201.34 Added; interim ..... 55739
- 201.23 (b)(2) amended ..... 35421
- (b)(5)(iii) amended ..... 66822
37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regulation</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>202.20 (c)(2)(vii)(A)(2) and (D)(1) amended</td>
<td>35421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix B amended</td>
<td>51603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>35742</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>35742</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.2 (i) revised; interim</td>
<td>55742</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.4 (f) revised; (i) added; interim</td>
<td>55742</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.6 (b)(6) amended; interim</td>
<td>55742</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>62262, 62404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>258 Revised</td>
<td>55759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14 (g) added; interim</td>
<td>29617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 63 FR 29617 confirmed</td>
<td>66041</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) through (d) and (f) through (j) revised</td>
<td>39733, 67579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 63 FR 39733 eff. date delayed to 10-10-98</td>
<td>52610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(1) through (5), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (r) and (s) revised</td>
<td>39733, 67580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 63 FR 39733 eff. date delayed to 10-10-98</td>
<td>52610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.18 Revised</td>
<td>39733, 67580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 63 FR 39733 eff. date delayed to 10-10-98</td>
<td>52610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.76 (a), (g) and (h) revised</td>
<td>48097</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.85 (a), (g) and (h) revised</td>
<td>48097</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I—Continued</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.87</td>
<td>(c) revised</td>
<td>40097</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.101</td>
<td>(d)(1) revised</td>
<td>40097</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.102</td>
<td>(d) revised</td>
<td>40097</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.111</td>
<td>(b) and (c)(1) revised</td>
<td>40097</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.117</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised</td>
<td>40097</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.119</td>
<td>(d) revised</td>
<td>40097</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.120</td>
<td>(e) and (h) redesignated as (e)(1) and (h)(1); (e)(2) and (h)(2) added; (a), new (e)(1), (g)(1) and new (h)(1) revised</td>
<td>40097</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.121</td>
<td>(a)(1), (c) and (d) revised</td>
<td>40099</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.122</td>
<td>(b)(1), (d)(1) and (2) revised</td>
<td>40099</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.123</td>
<td>(b) and (f) revised</td>
<td>40099</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.125</td>
<td>(c) revised</td>
<td>40099</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.127</td>
<td>(a), (b), (d), (e)(1) and (f) revised</td>
<td>40099</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) correctly revised</td>
<td>52159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.134</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td>48100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.146</td>
<td>(e)(1) revised</td>
<td>48100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.41</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>52159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter II</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.17</td>
<td>(b)(2) introductory text, (e)(2)(i), (f)(1), (h)(3)(iii)(B)(1) and (9) introductory text amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.18</td>
<td>(a)(3) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.19</td>
<td>(a)(3) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.22</td>
<td>(e)(1) revised</td>
<td>66042</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.29</td>
<td>(e)(3) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.32</td>
<td>Table revised</td>
<td>29138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.33</td>
<td>(e)(1) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.35</td>
<td>Added; interim; eff. 7-20-98</td>
<td>34296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.36</td>
<td>Added; interim; eff. 7-20-98</td>
<td>34296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.37</td>
<td>Added; interim; eff. 7-20-98</td>
<td>34297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.38</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>59234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.39</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>71787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.23</td>
<td>(e)(1) and (2) amended</td>
<td>29139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.3</td>
<td>Regulation at 62 FR 55742 confirmed</td>
<td>1927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.4</td>
<td>Regulation at 62 FR 55742 confirmed; (f) and (i)(2) amended</td>
<td>1927</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 37 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter II—Continued</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.6</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>29139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211.3</td>
<td>(a)(1), (2) and (7) amended</td>
<td>29139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251</td>
<td>CARP arbitration list</td>
<td>9419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.2</td>
<td>(c) through (g) redesignated as (c) through (h); new (b) added; new (c) revised</td>
<td>65556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.3</td>
<td>(a) introductory text and (b) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.6</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.30</td>
<td>(a)(1) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.32</td>
<td>(d) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.43</td>
<td>(e) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.46</td>
<td>(c)(3) and (d) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.47</td>
<td>(e), (f), (l) and (k) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.48</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.58</td>
<td>(c) amended</td>
<td>65556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.60</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>30635, 65556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.61</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td>65556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.62</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>65557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252.4</td>
<td>(a)(1) amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.1</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>2144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.3</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>49836</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.4</td>
<td>Introductory text and (a)(1) through (8) revised; (c) amended</td>
<td>2144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.5</td>
<td>(c)(1), (2) and (3) revised</td>
<td>2145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.6</td>
<td>(c) revised</td>
<td>2145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.7</td>
<td>(a) revised; (b)(1)(i), (ii), (2), (4) and (5) amended</td>
<td>2145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.8</td>
<td>(e) heading amended</td>
<td>30635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.9</td>
<td>(e) amended</td>
<td>30636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.10</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>2145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.13</td>
<td>(a) through (h) amended; (i) through (m) added</td>
<td>7289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256.2</td>
<td>(b)(2) introductory text amended</td>
<td>30636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256.4</td>
<td>(a)(1) (c) and (m) amended</td>
<td>39739</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257.4</td>
<td>(a)(1) amended</td>
<td>30636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>258.1</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>30636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.5</td>
<td>(a)(1) amended</td>
<td>30636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>25413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260.3</td>
<td>(e) amended</td>
<td>30636</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 37 CFR

#### 1999

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>(a)(2) revised</td>
<td>48917</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>(a)(2) amended; (d)(1) introductory text and (ii) revised; (d)(1)(iii) added</td>
<td>48917</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.146 (d) revised; (i) and (j) 
2.111 (c)(1) revised .........................48924 
2.101 (d)(1) revised.........................48924 
2.89 (a), (b) and (d) revised; (g) 
amended; (h) added ...............48923 
2.146 (d) revised; (i) and (j) 
added........................................48924
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 37 CFR—Continued

**Chapter II—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201.25</td>
<td>(d) revised</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.26</td>
<td>(e) revised</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.27</td>
<td>(c) and (e)(1) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.28</td>
<td>(c)(4) and (e)(4)(i) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.29</td>
<td>(e)(3) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.30</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.31</td>
<td>(d)(1) revised</td>
<td>12902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.32</td>
<td>(a) and (b)(1) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.33</td>
<td>(d)(1) revised</td>
<td>12902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.34</td>
<td>(e) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.35</td>
<td>(f) amended</td>
<td>39819</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.36</td>
<td>(b)(1) and (c) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.37</td>
<td>(c)(3) added; interim</td>
<td>50759, 66392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.38</td>
<td>(c)(2) introductory text footnote revised</td>
<td>29523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.39</td>
<td>(b)(7)(ii) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.40</td>
<td>(c)(1) amended</td>
<td>12902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.41</td>
<td>(c)(3)(i), (5)(i) and (ii) amended</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.42</td>
<td>(g)(2)(ii) amended</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.43</td>
<td>(f)(2) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.44</td>
<td>(b)(1)(i) and (ii) amended</td>
<td>62978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.45</td>
<td>(c)(2)(i)(D)(3), (4), (5) and (xi)(A)(2) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.46</td>
<td>(a) and (c)(1) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.47</td>
<td>(e)(1) and (2) amended</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.48</td>
<td>(c)(1), (2) and (d) amended</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.49</td>
<td>(g) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.50</td>
<td>(f)(2) amended</td>
<td>36755</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.51</td>
<td>(a), (b)(1), (3), (4) and (6) amended</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.52</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.53</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.54</td>
<td>(a) and (b)(1) amended</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.55</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.56</td>
<td>(a) and (b) amended</td>
<td>29522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.57</td>
<td>(c) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.58</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.59</td>
<td>(c) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.60</td>
<td>(d) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.61</td>
<td>(e) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.62</td>
<td>(f) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.63</td>
<td>(g) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.64</td>
<td>(h) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.65</td>
<td>(i) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.66</td>
<td>(j) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.67</td>
<td>(k) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.68</td>
<td>(l) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.69</td>
<td>(m) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.70</td>
<td>(n) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.71</td>
<td>(o) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.72</td>
<td>(p) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.73</td>
<td>(q) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.74</td>
<td>(r) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.75</td>
<td>(s) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.76</td>
<td>(t) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.77</td>
<td>(u) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.78</td>
<td>(v) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.79</td>
<td>(w) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.80</td>
<td>(x) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.81</td>
<td>(y) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.82</td>
<td>(z) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 37 CFR—Continued

**Chapter II—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>251.54</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>25201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.55</td>
<td>(e) amended</td>
<td>36575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.56</td>
<td>(a) and (b) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.57</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>36576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.58</td>
<td>(f) amended</td>
<td>39819</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2000

(Regulations published from January 1, 2000, through July 1, 2000)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37 CFR</td>
<td>65 FR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>14871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>Revised; interim</td>
<td>14871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>(e) added; (l) revised; interim</td>
<td>14871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>(m) revised; eff. 7-24-00</td>
<td>33455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>33455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>(c)(3) redesignated (c)(4); new (c)(3) added; (d)(1) revised; interim</td>
<td>14871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>(a)(3) revised; interim</td>
<td>14872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>(b) revised; interim</td>
<td>14872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.104</td>
<td>(c)(4) revised; interim</td>
<td>14872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.113</td>
<td>Revised; interim</td>
<td>14872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.114</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>14872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.116</td>
<td>Revised; interim</td>
<td>14873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.198</td>
<td>Revised; interim</td>
<td>14873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.312</td>
<td>Revised; interim</td>
<td>14873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.313</td>
<td>Revised; interim</td>
<td>14873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.89</td>
<td>Corrected</td>
<td>36633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>3129</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter II**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201.11</td>
<td>(a) amended; (c) and (d) revised</td>
<td>39619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.13</td>
<td>(d)(11)(v) and (e) table amended</td>
<td>39619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.14</td>
<td>(a)(1), (iv), (2), (3)(i) and (c)(2)(ii) amended; (d) revised</td>
<td>39619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.15</td>
<td>(c)(1)(viii)(C) and (2) amended</td>
<td>39619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.17</td>
<td>(c)(4)(iii), (ix) and (d) amended</td>
<td>39619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.25</td>
<td>(d) and (f) amended</td>
<td>39619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.26</td>
<td>(g)(3) amended</td>
<td>39619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.35</td>
<td>(f) amended</td>
<td>39619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Changes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.36</td>
<td>(c), (f) and (g) introductory text amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.37</td>
<td>(b) heading amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.3</td>
<td>(b)(3)(i)(A) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.17</td>
<td>(g)(2)(i) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.23</td>
<td>(d) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.3</td>
<td>(a), (b)(2) and (g) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.4</td>
<td>(c), (d), (f) introductory text, (2) and (g) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.4</td>
<td>(a) and (c) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.5</td>
<td>(a) and (c) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.7</td>
<td>(a) and (b) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.8</td>
<td>(a) and (b) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.44</td>
<td>(f) heading added</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.64</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252.4</td>
<td>(a)(1) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256.2</td>
<td>(b)(2) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257.4</td>
<td>(a)(1) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.5</td>
<td>(a)(1) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260.2</td>
<td>(c)(1)(v) amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>